

**WARNING:** ALL INDIVIDUALS INTERESTED IN BIDDING ON THIS PROJECT MUST OBTAIN THE FINAL PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS FROM THE DEPARTMENT MANAGING THE PROJECT OR AS OTHERWISE STATED IN THE ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS FOR THE PROJECT. DO NOT USE THE PLANS AND SPECIFICATIONS POSTED ON THE CLERK OF THE BOARD'S WEBSITE FOR BIDDING ON THIS PROJECT.



Building knowledge

# Job Order Contract Technical Specifications

Book 1 CSI Divisions 01 - 43 June 2021

County of San Bernardino,  
General Building JOC  
Project No. General Building, GBJOC16



**GORDIAN®**

This Page Intentionally Left Blank

NOT FOR BID

## 01 General Requirements

01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 51 13 00	Panelboards
01 52 13 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 54 23 00	Scaffolding Tubular Steel
01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal
01 56 26 00a	Erosion Control
01 58 13 00	Signage
01 71 23 16	Cutting and Patching
01 74 19 00	Construction Waste Management

## 02 Existing Conditions

02 32 13 00	Subsurface Drilling, Sampling, And Testing
02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 16 13	Building Demolition
02 58 13 00	Farm-Type Wire Fencing
02 58 13 00a	Snow And Other Temporary Fencing
02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
02 61 13 00a	Precision Testing Of Underground Fuel Oil Tanks
02 61 13 00b	Hydrostatic Pressure Testing Of Air Receiving Tanks
02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials
02 61 26 00a	Removal Of Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 82 16 00	Encapsulation (Lock-Down) Of Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 82 33 00	Removal Of Nonfriable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 83 19 13	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 83 19 13a	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tcpl Sampling And Analysis
02 84 16 00	Removal Of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors and Fluorescent Light Tubes
02 84 16 00a	Interior Lighting
02 84 16 00b	Exterior Lighting
02 84 33 00	Overhead Electrical Distribution
02 87 13 33	Mold Remediation
02 87 16 13	Bird And Bird Waste Abatement

## 03 Concrete

03 01 30 71	Concrete Rehabilitation
03 01 30 71a	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing
03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 11 16 13	Rusticated Concrete Finishes
03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 31 13 00	Cement Concrete Pavement
03 31 13 00a	Roller Compacted Concrete Pavement
03 31 13 00b	Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
03 31 13 00c	Steel Reinforced Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
03 31 13 00d	Fiber Reinforced Portland Cement Concrete Overlays
03 35 23 00	Exposed Aggregate Surface Concrete Walls
03 37 13 00	Shotcrete
03 37 13 00a	Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete
03 41 16 00	Precast Lightweight Roof Slabs
03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 41 26 00	Unbonded Post-Tensioned Concrete
03 51 13 00	Cementitious Wood-Fiber Deck
03 51 16 00	Gypsum Plank Decking
03 51 16 00a	Gypsum Concrete Decks
03 53 14 00	Concrete Floor Topping
03 54 16 00	Cement-Based Underlayment

## 04 Masonry

---

04 01 20 91	Clay Masonry Restoration And Cleaning
04 05 23 16	Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim
04 23 13 00	Glass Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 41 00 00	Dimension Stone Cladding
04 41 00 00a	Interior Stone Facing
04 42 43 00	Stone Masonry
04 72 00 00	Architectural Precast Concrete

## 05 Metals

---

05 05 21 00	Structural Steel
05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 14 13 00	Structural Aluminum
05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 21 19 00	Steel Joists
05 31 13 00	Steel Deck
05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings
05 53 13 00	Gratings
05 58 16 00	Ornamental Formed Metal
05 73 23 00	Miscellaneous Ornamental Metals
05 73 23 00a	Ornamental Railings

## 06 Wood, Plastics, and Composites

---

06 01 20 91	Wood Restoration
06 01 40 91	Door Hardware
06 05 23 00	Timber Bridge Components
06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 05 23 00b	Heavy Timber Construction
06 05 73 33	Wood Decking
06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 11 16 00	Rough Carpentry Renovation
06 15 13 00	Exterior Rough Carpentry
06 16 23 00	Sheathing
06 17 13 00	Structural Glued-Laminated Timber
06 17 53 00	Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Trusses
06 22 13 00	Exterior Finish Carpentry
06 22 13 00a	Interior Finish Carpentry
06 25 16 00	Paneling
06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 42 19 00	Plastic Paneling
06 46 29 00	Exterior Architectural Woodwork
06 48 13 00	Wood Doors
06 51 13 00	Plastic Lumber
06 51 13 00a	Composite Plastic Lumber
06 51 13 00b	Structural Plastic Lumber
06 74 13 00	Pultruded Fiberglass Industrial Grating
06 82 00 00	Pultruded Fiberglass Structural Shapes

## 07 Thermal And Moisture Protection

07 05 13 00	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 05 13 00a	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00b	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00c	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 05 13 00d	Preparation for Re-Roofing
07 11 13 00	Bituminous Dampproofing
07 13 13 00	Bituminous Waterproofing
07 13 53 00	Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing
07 14 13 00	Hot Fluid-Applied Rubberized Asphalt Waterproofing
07 14 16 00	Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing
07 16 13 00	Modified Cement Waterproofing
07 16 16 00	Crystalline Waterproofing
07 16 19 00	Metal-Oxide Waterproofing
07 17 13 00	Bentonite Waterproofing
07 19 13 00	Water Repellents
07 21 13 13	Modified Bitumous Protected Membrane Roofing
07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 24 13 00	Polymer-Based Exterior Insulation And Finish System (EIFS)
07 24 13 00a	Water-Drainage Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)
07 31 13 13	Asphalt Shingles
07 31 16 00	Metal Shingles
07 31 26 00	Slate Shingles
07 31 29 13	Wood Shingles And Shakes
07 31 33 00	Composite Rubber Shingles
07 32 13 00	Clay Roof Tiles
07 32 16 00	Concrete Roof Tiles
07 41 13 00	Metal Roof Panels
07 41 13 00a	Sheet Metal Roofing
07 42 13 19	Glazing
07 42 93 00	Siding
07 46 16 00	Metal Wall Panels
07 46 16 00a	Metal Plate Wall Panels
07 46 63 00	Insulated-Core Metal Wall Panels
07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 53 16 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 54 19 00	Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing
07 54 23 00	Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing
07 56 00 00	Coated Foamed Roofing
07 63 00 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
07 63 00 00a	Common Work Results for Plumbing
07 63 00 00b	Common Work Results for HVAC
07 71 23 00	Manufactured Roof Specialties
07 72 13 00	Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units
07 72 13 00a	Intake and Relief Ventilators
07 72 23 00	Roof Accessories
07 81 16 00	Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials
07 84 13 16	Through-Penetration Firestop Systems
07 84 13 16a	Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
07 84 13 16b	Firestopping
07 84 56 13	Board Fire Protection
07 91 23 00	Joint Sealants
07 95 13 13	Architectural Joint Systems
07 95 13 16	Roof Expansion Assemblies

## 08 Openings

08 01 52 61	Wood Windows
08 05 13 00	Steel Doors And Frames
08 05 13 00a	Flush Wood Doors
08 11 63 13	Steel Storm Doors
08 11 63 13a	Security Window Screens and Doors
08 11 63 23	Aluminum Storm Doors
08 11 73 00	Sliding Metal Fire Doors
08 12 13 13	Steel Entry Doors
08 12 13 13a	Stainless Steel Doors And Frames

08 14 16 00	Stile And Rail Wood Doors
08 16 13 00	Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Doors and Frames
08 31 13 00	Access Doors And Frames
08 32 13 00	Sliding Aluminum-Framed Glass Doors
08 32 19 00	Sliding Wood-Framed Glass Doors
08 33 16 00	Overhead Coiling Grilles
08 33 23 11	Overhead Coiling Doors
08 33 36 00	Side Coiling Grilles
08 34 53 00	Detention Doors And Frames
08 34 53 00a	Security Grilles
08 34 73 16	Sound Control Doors
08 35 13 13	Folding Doors
08 36 13 00	Sectional Overhead Doors
08 38 13 00	Flexible Doors
08 42 13 00	Aluminum-Framed Entrances And Storefronts
08 42 26 00	All-Glass Entrances And Storefronts
08 42 29 23	ICU/CCU Entrance Doors
08 42 33 00	Revolving Entrance Doors
08 44 13 00	Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
08 44 13 00a	Structural-Sealant-Glazed Curtain Walls
08 44 13 00b	Sloped Glazing Assemblies
08 45 23 00	Unit Skylights
08 45 23 00a	Metal-Framed Skylights
08 45 23 00b	Structured-Polycarbonate-Panel Assemblies
08 45 23 00c	Fiberglass-Sandwich-Panel Assemblies
08 51 13 00	Aluminum Windows
08 51 13 00a	Aluminum Replacement Windows
08 51 23 00	Steel Windows
08 51 69 00	Aluminum Storm Windows
08 53 13 00	Vinyl Windows
08 56 19 00	Security Windows
08 62 00 00	Roof Windows
08 71 11 00	Detention Door Hardware
08 71 13 00	Automatic Door Operators
08 83 13 00	Mirrors
08 84 00 00	Plastic Glazing
08 87 23 16	Fragment Retention Film For Glass
08 88 53 00	Security Glazing
08 90 00 00	Louvers And Vents

## 09 Finishes

09 01 30 91	Ceramic Tile
09 01 60 91	Portland Cement Terrazzo Flooring
09 01 60 91a	Carpet
09 22 13 13	Gypsum Plaster
09 22 13 13a	Gypsum Veneer Plaster
09 22 13 13b	Portland Cement Plaster
09 22 16 13	Non-Load-Bearing Steel Framing
09 22 36 23	Lath and Plaster Renovation
09 23 13 00	Gypsum Board Renovation
09 28 13 00	Gypsum Board
09 28 13 00a	Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assemblies
09 51 13 00	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
09 51 23 00	Acoustical Tile Ceilings
09 54 23 00	Acoustical Metal Pan Ceilings
09 54 23 00a	Linear Metal Ceilings
09 63 13 00	Brick Flooring
09 64 00 00	Wood Flooring
09 64 23 00	Wood Sports-Floor Assemblies
09 65 13 13	Cork Flooring
09 65 13 13a	Resilient Wall Base And Accessories
09 65 13 33	Resilient Floor Tile
09 65 13 33a	Linoleum Floor Coverings
09 65 23 00	Resilient Sheet Flooring
09 65 66 00	Fluid-Applied Athletic Flooring



09 65 66 00a	Resilient Sports-Floor Coverings
09 66 23 00	Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring
09 67 16 00	Resinous Flooring
09 68 13 00	Carpet Tile
09 69 13 00	Access Flooring
09 72 13 00	Wall Coverings
09 84 13 00	Acoustical Wall Panels
09 91 13 00	Exterior Painting
09 91 13 00a	Wood Stains and Transparent Finishes
09 91 13 00b	High-Temperature-Resistant Coatings
09 91 23 00	Interior Painting
09 91 23 00a	Multicolored Interior Coatings
09 93 23 13	Floor Treatment Refinishing Wood Floors
09 96 00 00	High-Performance Coatings
09 96 56 00	Fiberglass Reinforced Epoxy Coating
09 96 66 00	Cementitious Coatings

## 10 Specialties

10 01 50 11	Metal Lockers
10 11 13 13	Visual Display Surfaces
10 14 00 00	Vitrified Brick Pavement Replacement
10 14 53 11	Traffic Signs
10 21 13 13	Toilet Compartments
10 21 13 19	Solid Surface Material Toilet Compartments
10 21 16 17	Shower and Dressing Compartments
10 21 16 17a	Cubicle Curtains and Tracks
10 22 13 00	Wire Mesh Partitions
10 22 19 13	Demountable Partitions
10 22 43 00	Operable Panel Partitions
10 26 13 00	Impact-Resistant Wall Protection
10 28 13 13	Toilet And Bath Accessories
10 28 13 13a	Detention Toilet Accessories
10 28 16 13	Bath Accessories
10 28 19 16	Plumbing Fixtures
10 44 13 00	Fire Protection Cabinets
10 44 16 13	Fire Extinguishers
10 51 13 00	Wire Basket Lockers
10 51 26 00	Solid Plastic Lockers
10 55 23 23	Postal Specialties
10 56 13 16	Metal Storage Shelving
10 71 13 13	Exterior Shutters
10 73 13 13	Awnings
10 73 26 13	Extruded Aluminum Walkway Cover
10 75 16 00	Flagpoles
10 81 13 00	Oriented Flexible Netting Bird Barrier
10 86 00 00	Detention Furniture

## 11 Equipment

11 12 16 00	Parking Control Equipment
11 12 16 00a	Prefabricated Control Booths
11 13 13 00	Loading Dock Equipment
11 14 13 16	Turnstiles
11 21 63 00	Food Service Equipment
11 30 13 13	Residential Appliances
11 30 13 13a	Refrigerators
11 30 13 13b	Gas Ranges
11 30 13 13c	Electric Ranges
11 30 13 13d	Range Hoods
11 32 13 00	Unit Kitchens
11 41 33 00	Residential Casework
11 52 13 13	Projection Screens
11 66 13 00	Playground Equipment And Structures
11 68 13 00	Recreational Facilities



11 68 23 13	Playing Fields
11 82 19 00	Packaged Incinerators
11 82 26 00	Waste Compactors
11 98 12 00	Detention Enclosures

## 12 Furnishings

12 01 60 00	Fixed Audience Seating
12 21 13 13	Horizontal Louver Blinds
12 21 13 13a	Vertical Louver Blinds
12 22 13 00	Draperies and Tracks
12 24 13 00	Roller Shades
12 24 13 00a	Pleated Shades
12 31 16 00	Stone Countertops
12 31 16 00a	Kitchen Casework, Stainless Steel Cabinets
12 36 61 16	Solid Polymer Fabrications
12 48 13 13	Floor Mats And Frames
12 48 13 13a	Foot Grilles
12 62 23 00	Portable Bleachers

## 13 Special Construction

13 12 13 00	Water Distribution
13 34 16 13	Fixed Wood Bleachers (Exterior)
13 34 16 13a	Demountable Bleachers (Exterior)
13 34 16 13b	Grandstands And Bleachers
13 34 19 00	Metal Building Systems
13 42 63 16	Security Ceiling Systems
13 47 13 13	Cathodic Protection

## 14 Conveying Equipment

14 01 30 71	Electric Traction Elevators
14 01 30 71a	Hydraulic Elevators
14 31 00 00	Escalators
14 32 00 00	Moving Walks
14 42 13 00	Wheelchair Lifts
14 91 82 00	Chutes

## 21 Fire Suppression

21 05 13 00	Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression Equipment
21 05 19 00	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
21 05 19 00a	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
21 05 23 00	Piped Utilities Basic Materials And Methods
21 05 23 00a	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
21 05 23 00b	General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
21 05 48 13	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Fire-Suppression Piping And Equipment
21 07 00 00	Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation
21 11 19 00	Fire-Suppression Standpipes
21 13 13 00	Wet-Pipe Fire-Suppression Sprinklers
21 13 16 00	Dry-Pipe Fire-Suppression Sprinklers
21 13 39 00	Foam Fire Extinguishing
21 22 16 00	Clean-Agent Extinguishing Systems
21 24 00 00	Fiberglass Reinforced Polyester (FRP) Flush Doors
21 30 00 00	Electric-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps
21 30 00 00a	Diesel-Drive, Centrifugal Fire Pumps

21 31 13 00	Pressure-Maintenance Pumps
21 31 13 00a	Controllers for Fire-Pump Drivers

## 22 Plumbing

22 01 40 81	Emergency Plumbing Fixtures
22 05 13 00	Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment
22 05 16 00	Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping
22 05 29 00	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 05 48 13	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping And Equipment
22 05 53 00	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 05 76 00	Sanitary Sewerage
22 05 76 00a	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 07 19 00	Plumbing Insulation
22 11 16 00	Domestic Water Piping
22 11 16 00a	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
22 11 16 00b	Storm Drainage Piping
22 11 16 00c	Hydronic Piping
22 11 16 00d	Steam And Condensate Piping
22 11 16 00e	Refrigerant Piping
22 11 16 00f	General-Service Compressed-Air Piping
22 11 16 00g	Compressed-Air Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
22 11 16 00h	Vacuum Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
22 11 16 00i	Gas Piping For Laboratory And Healthcare Facilities
22 11 19 00	Electronic Air Cleaners
22 11 23 13	Water Distribution Pumps
22 11 23 13a	Packaged Booster Pumps
22 11 23 23	Water Supply Wells
22 11 23 23a	Hydronic Pumps
22 12 23 13	Electric, Domestic Water Heaters
22 12 23 13a	Fuel-Fired, Domestic Water Heaters
22 12 23 26	Underground Storage Tanks
22 13 19 00	High-Efficiency Particulate Filtration
22 13 19 26	Interceptors
22 13 29 13	Packaged Sewage Pumping Stations
22 13 29 13a	Lift Station
22 13 29 13b	Sewage Pumps
22 14 29 13	Sump Pumps
22 15 13 00	General-Service Packaged Air Compressors and Receivers
22 31 16 00	Water Softeners
22 35 23 13	Domestic Water Heat Exchangers
22 42 19 00	Porcelain Steel Bathtub Liners and Surrounds
22 43 00 00	Medical Plumbing Fixtures
22 46 13 13	Security Plumbing Fixtures
22 47 13 00	Drinking Fountains And Water Coolers
22 66 83 16	Chemical-Waste Systems for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities

## 23 Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC)

23 01 10 91	Sequence Of Operation
23 01 10 91a	Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing
23 01 30 51	Air Duct Cleaning
23 01 50 61	Cast-Iron Boilers
23 01 60 71	Condensing Units
23 05 13 00	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
23 05 16 00	Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping
23 05 29 00	Steam Distribution
23 05 29 00a	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 05 48 13	Vibration And Seismic Controls For HVAC Piping And Equipment
23 05 53 00	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 07 13 00	HVAC Insulation
23 09 00 00	HVAC Instrumentation And Controls
23 09 23 53	Enclosed Controllers
23 11 23 00	Relief Wells
23 11 23 00a	Monitoring Wells

23 11 23 00b	Facility Natural-Gas Piping
23 11 23 00c	Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping
23 21 13 23	Facility Fuel-Oil Piping
23 21 13 23a	Radiant Heating Piping
23 21 23 23	Electric-Drive, Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps
23 21 23 23a	Diesel-Drive, Vertical-Turbine Fire Pumps
23 22 23 13	Steam Condensate Pumps
23 25 13 00	HVAC Water Treatment
23 31 13 13	Metal Ducts
23 31 13 13a	HVAC Casings
23 31 13 16	Tailpipe Exhaust Equipment
23 31 13 19	Duct Accessories
23 31 16 13	Nonmetal Ducts
23 33 13 13	Draft Control Devices
23 34 13 00	Axial Fans
23 34 16 00	Centrifugal Fans
23 34 16 00a	Power Ventilators
23 34 33 00	Air Curtains
23 36 13 00	Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles
23 36 16 00	Air Terminal Units
23 41 13 00	Air Filters
23 41 13 00a	Gas-Phase Air Filtration
23 51 13 13	Breechings, Chimneys, And Stacks
23 52 13 00	Electric Boilers
23 52 16 13	Condensing Boilers
23 52 33 13	Water-Tube Boilers
23 52 36 00	Fire-Tube Boilers
23 53 16 00	Feedwater Equipment
23 53 16 00a	Deaerators
23 54 16 13	Furnaces
23 55 23 13	Radiant Heating and Cooling Units
23 55 23 13a	Radiant-Heating Electric Panels
23 55 33 00	Fuel-Fired Unit Heaters
23 55 33 00a	Unit Heaters
23 57 13 00	Heat Exchangers
23 61 16 00	Centrifugal Water Chillers
23 61 16 00a	Rotary-Screw Water Chillers
23 62 13 00	Indirect-Fired Absorption Water Chillers
23 63 13 00	Air-Cooled Condensers
23 63 13 00a	Split-System Air-Conditioning Units
23 64 13 16	Direct-Fired Absorption Water Chillers
23 64 16 16	Fan-Coil Units
23 64 23 13	Scroll Water Chillers
23 64 23 16	Reciprocating Water Chillers
23 65 13 16	Cooling Towers
23 72 13 00	Air-To-Air Energy Recovery Units
23 73 13 00	Modular Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units
23 74 16 13	Rooftop Replacement Air Units
23 74 16 13a	Self-Contained Air-Conditioners
23 74 16 13b	Unit Ventilators
23 74 23 13	Direct-Fired, Makeup Air Units
23 74 23 13a	Indirect-Fired, Packaged H&V Units
23 76 13 00	Dehumidification Units
23 81 13 11	Packaged Terminal Air Conditioners
23 81 23 12	Computer-Room Air-Conditioners
23 82 16 11	Air Coils
23 82 29 00	Convection Heating Units
23 84 13 23	Humidifiers

## 26 Electrical

26 05 00 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 13 16	Conductors And Cables
26 05 13 16a	Undercarpet Cables
26 05 13 16b	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 05 19 13	Underfloor Raceways For Electrical Systems

26 05 19 16	Common Work Results for Communications
26 05 19 16a	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 19 16b	Electrical Renovation
26 05 19 16c	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables
26 05 19 16d	Communications Equipment Room Fittings
26 05 19 16e	Communications Backbone Cabling
26 05 19 16f	Communications Horizontal Cabling
26 05 19 16g	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security
26 05 26 00	Lightning Protection
26 05 26 00a	Grounding And Bonding
26 05 29 00	Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems
26 05 29 00a	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems
26 05 33 16	Raceways And Boxes
26 05 33 16a	Wiring Devices
26 05 36 00	Cable Trays
26 05 53 00	Electrical Identification
26 05 53 00a	Intercommunications and Program Systems
26 09 23 00	Lighting Controls
26 09 23 00a	Lighting Control Devices
26 09 23 00b	Electrical Power Monitoring And Control
26 09 23 00c	Motor-Control Centers
26 09 23 00d	Central Dimming Controls
26 09 23 00e	Modular Dimming Controls
26 11 13 00	Secondary Unit Substations
26 11 16 11	Switchgear
26 12 13 00	Medium-Voltage Transformers
26 12 13 00a	Low-Voltage Transformers
26 24 13 00	Electricity Metering
26 24 13 00a	Enclosed Switches And Circuit Breakers
26 24 13 00b	Switchboards
26 24 19 00	Power Distribution Units
26 25 13 00	Enclosed Bus Assemblies
26 28 13 00	Fuses
26 29 23 00	Variable Frequency Controllers
26 31 00 00	Photovoltaic Energy Equipment
26 32 13 13	Packaged Engine Generators
26 33 43 00	Central Battery Inverters
26 33 43 00a	Nurse Call
26 33 43 00b	Public Address and Mass Notification Systems
26 33 53 00	Static Uninterruptible Power Supply
26 35 33 16	Power Factor Correction Capacitors
26 36 13 00	Transfer Switches
26 43 13 00	Transient Voltage Suppression
26 55 61 00	Stage Lighting
26 55 68 00	Sports Lighting

## 27 Communications

27 11 19 00	Loose-Tube Gel-Filled Fiber Optic Cables
27 51 43 00	Educational Intercommunications and Program Systems
27 53 13 13	Clock And Program Control

## 28 Electronic Safety and Security

28 16 11 00	Perimeter Security
28 16 11 00a	Intrusion Detection
28 16 11 00b	Security Access
28 21 31 00	Video Surveillance
28 46 00 00	Oil/Water Separator
28 46 21 17	Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System
28 46 21 17a	Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System

## 31 Earthwork

31 01 20 00	Earthwork
31 05 13 00	Subdrainage
31 11 00 00	Site Clearing
31 13 13 00	Tree Protection And Trimming
31 23 16 13	Excavation Support And Protection
31 23 16 26	Embankment
31 23 19 00	Dewatering
31 24 13 00	Levee Closure
31 25 14 13	Geosynthetic Fabric
31 25 14 23	Unit Pavers
31 25 14 26	Silt Fences
31 31 16 13	Termite Control
31 31 19 13	Soil Sterilization
31 32 13 16	Soil Stabilization-Lime
31 32 13 19	Soil Stabilization-Vibroflotation
31 32 19 16	Sewage Treatment Lagoons
31 32 19 16a	Pond Reservoir Liners
31 36 13 00	Wire Mesh Gabions
31 37 13 00	Riprap
31 62 13 23	Prestressed Concrete Piles
31 62 16 16	Steel H Piles
31 62 16 19	Concrete-Filled Steel Piles
31 62 19 00	Timber Piles
31 64 13 00	Drilled Piers
31 66 15 00	Resistance Pier Systems

## 32 Exterior Improvements

32 01 11 53	Traffic Coatings
32 01 13 61	Asphalt Paving
32 01 13 61a	Crack Sealing Of Bituminous Pavements
32 01 13 61b	Spray Applications, Seal Coats, And Surface Treatments
32 01 16 71	Grinding/Grooving Pavement
32 01 16 74	Bituminous Rejuvenation
32 01 16 74a	Cold Mix Recycling
32 01 16 74b	Central Plant Hot-Mix Recycling
32 11 16 16	Crushed Stone Paving
32 11 16 16a	Crushed Stone
32 11 16 16b	Select Gravel
32 12 13 13	Bituminous Paving-Repair And Resurfacing
32 12 13 13a	Asphaltic Concrete Overlays
32 13 13 33	Decorative Cement Concrete Pavement
32 14 09 00	Exterior Plants
32 14 11 00	Asphalt Concrete Sidewalks
32 14 11 00a	Miscellaneous Sidewalks
32 14 11 00b	Precast Sidewalks And Pavers
32 14 33 13	Porous Unit Paving
32 16 13 13	Steel Curbs
32 17 26 00	Tactile/Detectable Warning Tile
32 18 16 13	Playground Surface Systems
32 18 16 13a	Track, Court, And Playground Markings
32 18 16 13b	Synthetic Running Track Surface
32 18 23 29	Colored Athletic Wearing Surface
32 18 23 29a	Synthetic Turf
32 31 11 00	Chain-Link Fences And Gates
32 31 13 13	High-Security Chain-Link Fences And Gates
32 31 19 00	Ornamental Metal Fences and Gates
32 31 29 00	Permanent Wood Fencing
32 32 13 00	Segmental Retaining Walls
32 33 13 00	Miscellaneous Site and Street Furnishings
32 33 23 00	Site Furnishings
32 84 13 00	Irrigation Systems
32 91 13 16	Tree Relocation

32 91 13 33	Lawns And Grasses
32 91 19 13	Concrete Revetment
32 91 19 13a	Septic Tank Systems

### 33 Utilities

33 01 10 58	Repair And Maintenance Of Imhoff Tanks
33 01 10 58a	Sewer Line Cleaning
33 01 10 71	Pipe Lining
33 01 30 81	Repair And Maintenance Of Siphon Tank And Siphons
33 01 30 81a	Underground Ducts And Utility Structures
33 05 07 13	Trenchless Excavation Using Microtunneling
33 11 13 00	Well Repair
33 14 13 23	Sand Drains
33 14 13 23a	Hydronic Distribution
33 14 13 23b	Ground-Loop Heat-Pump Piping
33 42 11 00	Storm Drainage
33 42 13 13	Culverts

### 34 Transportation

34 41 13 00	Electrical Traffic Control Signals
34 71 13 13	Beam-Type Guardrail
34 71 13 16	Active Vehicle Barriers

### 35 Waterway and Marine Construction

35 24 23 00	Dredging
-------------	----------

### 41 Material Processing and Handling Equipment

41 22 23 13	Material Handling Hoists
41 22 23 13a	Monorails With Air Motor Powered Hoist
41 22 23 13b	Monorails With Electric Powered Hoists
41 22 23 13c	Monorails With Manual Hoist

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID





**SECTION 01 22 16 00 - NO SPECIFICATION REQUIRED**

1.1 GENERAL

- A. A separate specification is not required for this item. The description given in the line item of the Construction Task Catalog completely defines the item.

1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION - (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 22 16 00

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 22 20 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 22 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 51 13 00 - PANELBOARDS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for panelboards. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Distribution panelboards.
  - b. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
  - c. Load centers.
  - d. Electronic-grade panelboards.

#### C. Definitions

1. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
2. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - a. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
  - b. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - c. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - d. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - e. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - f. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - g. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - h. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
3. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
4. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.
5. Operation and maintenance data

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.



- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
  - 1. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
  - 2. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407 **OR** NEMA PB 1.
- H. Project Conditions
  - 1. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by the Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
    - a. Notify the Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
    - b. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without the Owner's written permission.
    - c. Comply with NFPA 70E.
- I. Warranty
  - 1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. General Requirements For Panelboards
  - 1. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems".
  - 2. Enclosures: Flush **OR** Surface **OR** Flush- and surface, **as directed**, -mounted cabinets.
    - a. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
      - 1) Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
      - 2) Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
      - 3) Kitchen or Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
      - 4) Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
      - 5) Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5 **OR** Type 12, **as directed**.
    - b. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
    - c. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
    - d. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
    - e. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
    - f. Finishes:
      - 1) Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
      - 2) Back Boxes: Galvanized steel **OR** Same finish as panels and trim, **as directed**.
      - 3) Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
    - g. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder **OR** metal frame with transparent protective cover, **as directed**.
  - 3. Incoming Mains Location: Top **OR** Bottom **OR** Top and bottom, **as directed**.
  - 4. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
    - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.

- b. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
    - c. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
    - d. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
    - e. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
  5. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
    - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum **OR** Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity, **as directed**.
    - b. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type.
    - c. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type.
    - d. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
    - e. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
    - f. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
    - g. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
  6. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
  7. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
  8. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.
  9. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.
- B. Distribution Panelboards
1. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
  2. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
    - a. For doors more than **36 inches (914 mm)** high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
  3. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Fused switch **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.
  4. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in **OR** Bolt-on, **as directed**, circuit breakers.
  5. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
  6. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
  7. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically **OR** mechanically, **as directed**, held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
    - a. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
    - b. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit **OR** 24-V control circuit, **as directed**.
- C. Lighting And Appliance Branch-Circuit Panelboards
1. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
  2. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.
  3. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in **OR** Bolt-on, **as directed**, circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
  4. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically **OR** mechanically, **as directed**, held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.





- a. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
  - b. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit **OR** 24-V control circuit, **as directed**.
- 5. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- 6. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.
  
- D. Load Centers
  - 1. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.
  - 2. Mains: Circuit breaker **OR** Lugs only, **as directed**.
  - 3. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
  - 4. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.
  
- E. Electronic-Grade Panelboards
  - 1. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral TVSS; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 after installing TVSS.
  - 2. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
  - 3. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
  - 4. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.
  - 5. Buses:
    - a. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
    - b. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.
  - 6. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, plug-in **OR** wired-in **OR** bolt-on, **as directed**, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular, **as directed**, type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, short-circuit current rating complying with UL 1449, second edition, and matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, redundant suppression circuits, with individually fused metal-oxide varistors.
    - a. Accessories:
      - 1) Fuses rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
      - 2) Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
      - 3) Integral disconnect switch.
      - 4) Redundant suppression circuits.
      - 5) Redundant replaceable modules.
      - 6) Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
      - 7) LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
      - 8) Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
      - 9) Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
      - 10) Four **OR** Six, **as directed**,-digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
    - b. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
    - c. Minimum single-impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2.
      - 1) Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
      - 2) Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
      - 3) Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
    - d. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
    - e. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347, **as directed**,-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:

- 1) Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
- f. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall be as follows:
- 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- g. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
- 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- h. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240-, 480-, or 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
- 1) Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
- F. Disconnecting And Overcurrent Protective Devices
1. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with series-connected rating **OR** interrupting capacity, **as directed**, to meet available fault currents.
    - a. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
    - b. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
    - c. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replaceable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
      - 1) Instantaneous trip.
      - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
      - 3) Long- and short-time time adjustments.
      - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and  $I^2t$  response.
    - d. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
    - e. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
    - f. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
    - g. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
    - h. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
      - 1) Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
      - 2) Lugs: Compression **OR** Mechanical, **as directed**, style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
      - 3) Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
      - 4) Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted **OR** Remote-mounted, **as directed**, relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.



- 5) Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted **OR** Universal-mounted **OR** Integral **OR** Din-rail-mounted, **as directed**, communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Monitoring And Control".
  - 6) Shunt Trip: 120 **OR** 24, **as directed**, -V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent of rated voltage.
  - 7) Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional **OR** with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second, **as directed**, time delay.
  - 8) Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch **OR** Two SPDT switches, **as directed**, with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - 9) Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
  - 10) Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - 11) Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
  - 12) Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
  - 13) Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on **OR** off, **as directed**, position.
  - 14) Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
  2. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
    - a. Fuses, and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Fuses".
    - b. Fused Switch Features and Accessories: Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
    - c. Auxiliary Contacts: One **OR** Two, **as directed**, normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.
- G. Panelboard Suppressors
1. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, solid-state, parallel-connected, non-modular type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
    - a. Accessories:
      - 1) LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
      - 2) Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
      - 3) One set of dry contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, for remote monitoring of protection status.
  2. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, plug-in **OR** wired-in **OR** bolt-on, **as directed**, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) **OR** non-modular, **as directed**, type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:
    - a. Accessories:
      - 1) Fuses rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
      - 2) Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
      - 3) Integral disconnect switch.
      - 4) Redundant suppression circuits.
      - 5) Redundant replaceable modules.
      - 6) Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
      - 7) LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
      - 8) Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
      - 9) Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position

on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

- 10) Four **OR** Six, **as directed**, -digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.
- b. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 160 kA per mode/320 kA per phase **OR** 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase **OR** 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase, **as directed**.
- c. Minimum single-impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2.
  - 1) Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.
- d. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
- e. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 **OR** 208Y/120 **OR** 600Y/347, **as directed**, -V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:
  - 1) Line to Neutral: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 800 V for 480Y/277 **OR** 400 V for 208Y/120 **OR** 1200 V for 600Y/347, **as directed**.
- f. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall be as follows:
  - 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- g. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240/120-V, three-phase, four-wire circuits with high leg shall be as follows:
  - 1) Line to Neutral: 400 V, 800 V from high leg.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 400 V.
  - 3) Neutral to Ground: 400 V.
- h. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for 240-, 480-, or 600-V, three-phase, three-wire, delta circuits shall be as follows:
  - 1) Line to Line: 2000 V for 480 V **OR** 1000 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.
  - 2) Line to Ground: 1500 V for 480 V **OR** 800 V for 240 V **OR** 2500 V for 600 V, **as directed**.

#### H. Accessory Components And Features

1. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
2. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407 **OR** NEMA PB 1.1, **as directed**.
2. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - a. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.



- b. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
- c. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
- d. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
- e. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
3. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
4. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems".
5. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
6. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
7. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
8. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
9. Stub four **1-inch (27-GRC)** empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four **1-inch (27-GRC)** empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
10. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing, **as directed**.
11. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Identification

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
2. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads, **as directed**; incorporate the Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
3. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".
4. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

C. Field Quality Control

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - a. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - b. Test continuity of each circuit.
3. Tests and Inspections:
  - a. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - b. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - c. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - 1) Initial Infrared Scanning: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - 2) Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Final Completion.
    - 3) Instruments and Equipment:

- a) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- 4. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- 5. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Adjusting
  - 1. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated **OR** as specified in Division 26 Section "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study", **as directed**.
  - 3. Load Balancing: After Final Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
    - a. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
    - b. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
    - c. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
    - d. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.
- E. Protection
  - 1. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 01 51 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



## SECTION 01 52 13 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Summary

1. This Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

#### B. Definitions

1. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by the Owner, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

#### C. Use Charges

1. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, the Owner's construction forces, the Owner, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Water Service: Water from the Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
3. Electric Power Service: Electric power from the Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

#### D. Submittals

1. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
2. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before the Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Pavement: Comply with Division 32 Section(s) "Asphalt Paving" OR "Concrete Paving", **as directed**.
2. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails **OR** with galvanized barbed-wire top strand, **as directed**.
3. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 9-gage, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-



mm-) OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete **OR** galvanized steel, **as directed**, bases for supporting posts.

4. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, **6 feet (1.8 m) OR 8 feet (2.4 m)**, **as directed**, high, framed with four **2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm)** rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than **8 feet (2.4 m)** apart.
5. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Gypsum Board: Minimum **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** thick by **48 inches (1219 mm)** wide by maximum available lengths; regular-type panels with tapered edges. Comply with ASTM C 36/C 36M.
7. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.
8. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09.

#### B. Temporary Facilities

1. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
2. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - a. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - b. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and **4-foot- (1.2-m-)** square tack board.
  - c. Drinking water and private toilet.
  - d. Coffee machine and supplies.
  - e. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of **68 to 72 deg F (20 to 22 deg C)**.
  - f. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of **20 fc (215 lx)** at desk height.
3. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - a. Store combustible materials apart from building.

#### C. Equipment

1. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
2. HVAC Equipment: Unless the Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - a. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - b. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  - c. Permanent HVAC System: If the Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in system and remove at end of construction.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.

- a. For greenfield sites if reduced site disturbance is required for LEED-NC Credit SS 5.1: Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in General Requirements.
  2. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.
- B. Temporary Utility Installation
  1. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
    - a. Arrange with utility company, the Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
  2. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
    - a. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system **OR** private system indicated, **as directed**, as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.  
**OR**  
 Water Service: Use of the Owner's existing water service facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
    - a. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated water promptly from pans.
  4. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
    - a. Toilets: Use of the Owner's existing toilet facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
  5. Heating **OR** Heating and Cooling, **as directed**: Provide temporary heating **OR** heating and cooling, **as directed**, required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  6. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
  7. Electric Power Service: Use of the Owner's existing electric power service will be permitted, as long as equipment is maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner.  
**OR**  
 Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
    - a. Install electric power service overhead **OR** underground, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Connect temporary service to the Owner's existing power source, as directed by the Owner.
  8. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
    - a. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
    - b. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
  9. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line for each field office.
    - a. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
      - 1) Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer in each field office.



- b. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
  - 1) Police and fire departments.
  - 2) Ambulance service.
  - 3) Contractor's home office.
  - 4) the Owner's office.
  - 5) the Owner's office.
  - 6) Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- c. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
- 10. Electronic Communication Service: Provide temporary electronic communication service, including electronic mail, in common-use facilities.
  - a. Provide DSL **OR** T-1 line, **as directed**, in primary field office.

#### C. Support Facilities Installation

- 1. General: Comply with the following:
  - a. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within **30 feet (9 m)** of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - b. Maintain support facilities until near Final Completion. Remove before Final Completion. Personnel remaining after Final Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to the Owner.
- 2. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated **OR** within construction limits indicated, **as directed**, on Drawings.
  - a. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- OR**
- 3. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
  - a. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  - b. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - c. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
  - d. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Final Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving".
- 4. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  - b. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- 5. Parking: Provide temporary **OR** Use designated areas of the Owner's existing, **as directed**, parking areas for construction personnel.
- 6. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - a. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  - b. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- 7. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Provide Project identification and other signs as indicated on Drawings, **OR as directed**. Install signs where indicated to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  - b. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

8. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with General Requirements for progress cleaning requirements.
  9. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
    - a. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
  10. Temporary Elevator Use: Refer to Division 14 for temporary use of new elevators.
  11. Existing Elevator Use: Use of the Owner's existing elevators will be permitted, as long as elevators are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore elevators to condition existing before initial use, including replacing worn cables, guide shoes, and similar items of limited life.
    - a. Do not load elevators beyond their rated weight capacity.
    - b. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect elevator car and entrance doors and frame. If, despite such protection, elevators become damaged, engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.
  12. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
  13. Existing Stair Usage: Use of the Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, as long as stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
    - a. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If, despite such protection, stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.
  14. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.
- D. Security And Protection Facilities Installation
1. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  2. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  3. Stormwater Control: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
  4. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
  5. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Final Completion. Obtain extended warranty for the Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
  6. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin **OR** When excavation begins, **as directed**, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
    - a. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - b. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Provide the Owner with one set of keys, **as directed**.



7. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
8. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
9. Covered Walkway: Erect structurally adequate, protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals along adjacent public street(s). Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings, **OR as directed**.
  - a. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
  - b. Provide wood-plank overhead decking, protective plywood enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  - c. Extend back wall beyond the structure to complete enclosure fence.
  - d. Paint and maintain in a manner approved by the Owner.
10. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - a. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
11. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by the Owner and tenants from fumes and noise.
  - a. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant plywood on construction operations side.
  - b. If containment of airborne particles and dust generated by construction activities is critical to occupants of other spaces in building, e.g., occupied healthcare facilities: Construct dustproof partitions with 2 layers of **3-mil (0.07-mm)** polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with 2 layers of **3-mil (0.07-mm)** polyethylene sheet, extending sheets **18 inches (460 mm)** up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant plywood.
    - 1) Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than **48 inches (1219 mm)** between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
  - c. Insulate partitions to provide noise protection to occupied areas.
  - d. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
  - e. Protect air-handling equipment.
  - f. Weather strip openings.
  - g. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
12. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NEPA 241.
  - a. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure **OR** construction, **as directed**, areas.
  - b. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - d. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

#### E. Operation, Termination, And Removal

1. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
2. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.

- a. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
3. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
4. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Final Completion.
5. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Final Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - a. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. the Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - b. Remove temporary paving not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent paving. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. At Final Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in General Requirements

END OF SECTION 01 52 13 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 52 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 52 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 52 19 00	01 52 13 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 53 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 54 23 00 - SCAFFOLDING TUBULAR STEEL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of scaffolding-tubular steel. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Tubular steel or aluminum scaffolding system shall comply with OSHA Safety and Health Standards, Section 29 CFR, 1926/1910.

### 1.3 EXECUTION - (Section not used.)

END OF SECTION 01 54 23 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 54 23 00a - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unit masonry assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
  - a. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
  - b. Decorative concrete masonry units.
  - c. Pre-faced concrete masonry units.
  - d. Concrete brick.
  - e. Face brick.
  - f. Building (common) brick.
  - g. Hollow brick.
  - h. Glazed brick.
  - i. Structural-clay facing tile.
  - j. Firebox brick.
  - k. Clay flue lining units.
  - l. Stone trim units.
  - m. Mortar and grout.
  - n. Reinforcing steel.
  - o. Masonry joint reinforcement.
  - p. Ties and anchors.
  - q. Embedded flashing.
  - r. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
  - s. Masonry-cell insulation.
  - t. Cavity-wall insulation.

#### C. Definitions

1. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths ( $f'_m$ ) at 28 days.
2. Determine net-area compressive strength ( $f'_m$ ) of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Tables 2105.2 in the International Building Code, **as directed.**  
**OR**  
Determine net-area compressive strength ( $f'_m$ ) of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed.**

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
3. Samples for each type and color of exposed masonry units and colored mortars.



4. Material Certificates: For each type of product indicated. Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards.
5. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - a. For masonry units include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
6. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below.
  - a. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 67.
  - b. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 140.
  - c. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, per ASTM C 780 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - d. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, per ASTM C 1019 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
  - a. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction **OR** typical exterior wall, **as directed**, in sizes approximately **48 inches (1200 mm)** long by **48 inches (1200 mm)** high.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
2. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
3. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
4. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
5. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

H. Project Conditions

1. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.3 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
2. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Concrete Masonry Units (CMUs)

1. Shapes: Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
2. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength for exposed units and where indicated.
3. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **1900 psi (13.1 MPa) OR 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) OR 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) OR 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.
4. Decorative Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **1900 psi (13.1 MPa) OR 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) OR 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) OR 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.
  - c. Pattern and Texture:
    - 1) Standard pattern, ground finish.
    - 2) Standard pattern, split-face finish.
    - 3) Standard pattern, split-ribbed finish.
    - 4) Scored vertically, standard finish.
    - 5) Triple scored vertically, standard finish.
5. Pre-faced Concrete Masonry Units: Lightweight hollow **OR** solid, **as directed**, concrete units complying with ASTM C 90 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, with manufacturer's standard smooth resinous facing complying with ASTM C 744.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **1900 psi (13.1 MPa) OR 2150 psi (14.8 MPa) OR 2800 psi (19.3 MPa) OR 3050 psi (21.0 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Size: Manufactured with pre-faced surfaces having **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-)** wide returns of facing to create **1/4-inch- (6.5-mm-)** wide mortar joints with modular coursing.
6. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C 55 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **2500 psi (17.3 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Weight Classification: Lightweight **OR** Medium weight **OR** Normal weight, **as directed**.

### B. Concrete And Masonry Lintels

1. General: Provide either concrete or masonry lintels, at Contractor's option, complying with requirements below.
2. Concrete Lintels:
  - a. Precast units matching concrete masonry units and with reinforcing bars indicated or required to support loads indicated.

**OR**

Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Masonry Lintels: Made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout.

### C. Brick

1. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
  - a. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
  - b. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.



2. Face Brick: ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX **OR** FBS **OR** FBA, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** **OR** **4400 psi (30.3 MPa)** **OR** **5500 psi (37.9 MPa)** **OR** **6400 psi (44.1 MPa)** **OR** **8000 psi (55.2 MPa)** **OR** **8400 psi (57.9 MPa)**, **as directed**.
  - b. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than **30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm)** per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
  - c. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  - d. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from **10 feet (3 m)**.
  - e. Size: **As directed**.
3. Building (Common) Brick: ASTM C 62 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW **OR** NW, MW, or SW, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** **OR** **4400 psi (30.3 MPa)** **OR** **5500 psi (37.9 MPa)** **OR** **6400 psi (44.1 MPa)** **OR** **8000 psi (55.2 MPa)** **OR** **8400 psi (57.9 MPa)**, **as directed**.
  - b. Size: Match size of face brick.
4. Hollow Brick: ASTM C 652 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) **OR** H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area) , **as directed**, Type HBX **OR** HBS **OR** HBA **OR** HBB, **as directed**.
  - a. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** **OR** **4400 psi (30.3 MPa)** **OR** **5500 psi (37.9 MPa)** **OR** **6400 psi (44.1 MPa)** **OR** **8000 psi (55.2 MPa)** **OR** **8400 psi (57.9 MPa)**, **as directed**.
  - b. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
  - c. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing per ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from **10 feet (3 m)**.
  - d. Size: **As directed**.
5. Glazed Face Brick: ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX **OR** FBS **OR** FBA, **as directed**; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
6. Glazed Face Brick: ASTM C 1405, Class Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Grade S (Select) **OR** SS (Select Sized or Ground Edge), **as directed**.
7. Glazed Face Brick: Either ASTM C 1405, Class Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Grade S (Select) or ASTM C 216 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Type FBX; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
8. Glazed Hollow Brick: Hollow brick complying with ASTM C 652 **OR** IBC , **as directed**, Grade SW **OR** MW or SW, **as directed**, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) **OR** H60V (void areas between 40 and 60 percent of gross cross-sectional area), **as directed**, Type HBX **OR** HBS **OR** HBA, **as directed**; with glaze complying with ASTM C 126.
  - a. Size: **As directed**.
  - b. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.

D. Structural-Clay Facing Tile

1. General:
  - a. Provide solid, multicored, or hollow units, with shape and direction of cores optional, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Provide multicored units designed for use in reinforced, grouted masonry.
  - c. Provide special shapes where required for corners, jambs, coved bases, sills, and other special conditions indicated that cannot be produced by sawing standard units.

2. Glazed Structural-Clay Facing Tile: ASTM C 126, Grade S (Select) **OR** SS (Select Sized or Ground Edged), **as directed**.
    - a. Size: **As directed**.
    - b. Provide Type I (single-faced units) where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed, and Type II (double-faced units) where two opposite finished faces are exposed when units are installed.
  3. Unglazed Structural-Clay Facing Tile: ASTM C 212, Type FTX **OR** FTS, **as directed**, Standard **OR** Special-Duty, **as directed**, class.
    - a. Number of Faces: Single faced where only one finished face is exposed when units are installed **OR** Double faced where both finished faces are exposed when units are installed, **as directed**.
- E. Fireplace And Chimney Lining Units
1. Firebox Brick: ASTM C 1261, size required to produce lining thickness indicated.
  2. Clay Flue Lining Units: ASTM C 315.
- F. Stone Trim Units
1. Granite: ASTM C 615.
    - a. Description: Fine **OR** Medium, **as directed**,-grained, white **OR** pink **OR** gray **OR** black, **as directed**, stone. Uniform pattern, without veining.
  2. Limestone: ASTM C 568, Classification I Low **OR** II Medium **OR** III High, **as directed**, -Density.
  3. Marble: ASTM C 503, Classification I Calcite **OR** II Dolomite **OR** III Serpentine **OR** IV Travertine, **as directed**.
    - a. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained, white stone with only slight veining.
  4. Quartz-Based Stone: ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed**.
  5. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** Smooth **OR** Machine tooled, 4 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 6 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 8 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Chat sawed **OR** Split face **OR** Rock face (pitched face), **as directed**.
    - a. Finish for Tops of Sills and Soffits of Lintels: Sand rubbed **OR** Split face, **as directed**.
  6. Provide stone units accurately shaped, with exposed faces dressed true, and with beds and joints at right angles to faces.
    - a. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
    - b. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
    - c. For marble, comply with recommendations in MIA's "Dimensional Stone--Design Manual IV."
- G. Mortar And Grout Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction.
  2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Type S.
  3. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
  4. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  5. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  6. Mortar Pigments: Iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
  7. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime or masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
    - a. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
    - b. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
    - c. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
  8. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

- a. For joints less than **1/4 inch (6.5 mm)** thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
- b. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- c. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
- d. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
9. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
10. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for structural-clay tile facing units.
11. Refractory Mortar Mix: Ground fireclay or non-water-soluble, calcium aluminate, medium-duty refractory mortar that passes ASTM C 199 test; or an equivalent product acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
12. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
13. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
14. Water: Potable.

#### H. Reinforcement

1. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**.
2. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Interior Walls: Mill- **OR** Hot-dip, **as directed**, galvanized, carbon steel.
  - b. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel.
  - c. Wire Size for Side Rods: W1.7 or **0.148-inch (3.8-mm)** **OR** W2.8 or **0.188-inch (4.8-mm)**, **as directed**, diameter.
  - d. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W1.7 or **0.148-inch (3.8-mm)** **OR** W2.8 or **0.188-inch (4.8-mm)**, **as directed** diameter.
  - e. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: W1.7 or **0.148-inch (3.8-mm)** **OR** W2.8 or **0.188-inch (4.8-mm)**, **as directed** diameter.
  - f. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than **16 inches (407 mm)** o.c.
  - g. Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
  - h. Multiwythe Masonry:
    - 1) Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than **4 inches (100 mm)** in width, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry **4 inches (100 mm)** or less in width.
    - 2) Tab type, with 1 side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with rectangular tabs sized to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face.
    - 3) Adjustable (two-piece) type, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe and with ties that extend into facing wythe. Ties engage eyes or slots in reinforcement and extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face. Ties have hooks or clips to engage a continuous wire in the facing wythe.
  - i. Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel continuous wire.

#### I. Ties And Anchors

1. Materials:
  - a. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 coating.
  - b. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.

- c. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
- d. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, **G60 (Z180)** zinc coating.
- e. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- f. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
- g. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- h. Stainless Steel bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM a 666, Type 304.
2. Corrugated Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than **7/8 inch (22 mm)** wide with corrugations having a wavelength of **0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 12.7 mm)** and an amplitude of **0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm)** made from steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR** stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**, not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm) OR 0.053 inch (1.3 mm) OR 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) OR 0.097 inch (2.5 mm)**, **as directed**, thick. Ties made from galvanized steel sheet may be used in interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend **2 inches (50 mm)** parallel to face of veneer.
4. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** wide.
  - a. Z-shaped ties with ends bent 90 degrees to provide hooks not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** long may be used for masonry constructed from solid units or hollow units laid with cells horizontal.
  - b. Where wythes do not align **OR** are of different materials, **as directed**, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**.
  - c. Wire: Fabricate from **3/16-inch- (4.8-mm-) OR 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-)**, **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, wire. Mill-galvanized wire ties may be used in interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structure: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - a. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped **1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Tie Section for Steel Frame: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within **1 inch (25 mm)** of masonry face, made from **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) OR 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-)**, **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed** wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Connector Section for Concrete: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from **0.053-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**. **0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) OR 0.108-inch- (2.7-mm-)**, **as directed**, thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Tie Section for Concrete: Corrugated metal ties with dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and sized to extend to within **1 inch (25 mm)** of masonry face.
6. Partition Top anchors: **0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-)** thick metal plate with **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** diameter metal rod **6 inches (150 mm)** long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**.
7. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide by **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick by **24 inches (600 mm)** long, with ends turned up **2 inches (50 mm)** or with cross pins.
  - a. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** Epoxy coating **0.020 inch (0.51 mm)** thick **OR** Rust-inhibitive paint, **as directed**.
8. Stone Anchors: Fabricate dowels, cramps, and other stone anchors from stainless steel.
9. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors



- a. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
- 1) Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch (1.3 mm).
- b. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
- 1) Anchor Section:
    - a) Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and slotted holes for inserting wire tie.
    - b) Sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
    - c) Gasketed sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
  - 2) Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication OR 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication OR 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet OR 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, as directed.
  - 3) Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) OR 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-), as directed, diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel OR stainless-steel, as directed, wire.
- c. Slip-in, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and an anchor section designed to interlock with metal studs and be slipped into place as sheathing is installed.
- 1) Wire-Type Anchor: Bent wire anchor section with an eye to receive the wire tie. Wire tie has a vertical leg that slips into the eye of anchor section and allows vertical adjustment. Both sections are made from 3/16-inch (4.8-mm), hot-dip galvanized wire.
  - 2) Strap-and-Wire Type Anchor: Flat metal strap with notch to interlock with flange of metal stud and two holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section. Strap is made from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication; anchor wire tie is made from 3/16-inch (4.8-mm), hot-dip galvanized wire.
- d. Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a metal anchor section and a connector section designed to engage a continuous wire embedded in the veneer mortar joint.
- 1) Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and slotted holes for inserting connector section.
  - 2) Connector Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal bent plate; sheet metal clip; or wire tie and rigid extruded vinyl clip designed to engage continuous wire. Size connector to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.
  - 3) Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication OR 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication OR 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet OR 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, as directed.

- 4) Fabricate wire connector sections from **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-)** -OR **0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-)**, **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** stainless, **as directed**, steel wire.
  - e. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, **No. 10 (4.8-mm)** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than 3 exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
  - f. Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: Proprietary fastener consisting of carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank, complying with ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, **No. 10 (4.8-mm)** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads.
- J. Miscellaneous Anchors
1. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron wedge-type inserts.
  2. Dovetail Slots in Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips, of slot size indicated, fabricated from **0.034-inch (0.9-mm)**, galvanized steel sheet.
  3. Anchor Bolts: Headed or L-shaped steel bolts complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.
  4. Postinstalled Anchors: Provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in solid or grouted unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
    - a. Corrosion Protection:
      - 1) Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (5 microns) for Class SC 1 service condition (mild).
      - 2) Stainless-steel components complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group 1 or 4)** for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors.
- K. Embedded Flashing Materials
1. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual OR Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" as directed.
    - a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, **0.016 inch (0.4 mm)** thick.
    - b. Copper: ASTM B 370, Temper H00 or H01, cold-rolled copper sheet, **10-oz./sq. ft. (3-kg/sq. m)** weight or **0.0135 inch (0.34 mm)** thick for fully concealed flashing; **16-oz./sq. ft. (5-kg/sq. m)** weight or **0.0216 inch (0.55 mm)** thick elsewhere.
    - c. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections **96 inches (2400 mm)** long minimum, but not exceeding **12 feet (3.6 m)**. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
    - d. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, with ribs at **3-inch (75-mm)** intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
    - e. Metal Drip Edges: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches (75 mm)** into wall and **1/2 inch (13 mm)** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
    - f. Metal Flashing Terminations: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches (75 mm)** into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for **3/4 inch (19 mm)** and down into joint **3/8 inch (10 mm)** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
    - g. Metal Expansion-Joint Strips: Fabricate from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, to shapes indicated.
  2. Flexible Flashing: For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Copper-Laminated Flashing: **5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) OR 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m), as directed**, copper sheet bonded with asphalt between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
- b. Asphalt-Coated Copper Flashing: **5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) OR 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m), as directed**, copper sheet coated with flexible asphalt. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
- c. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than **0.030 inch (0.8 mm) OR 0.040 inch (1.0 mm), as directed**.
- d. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy **0.025 inch (0.6 mm)** thick, with a **0.015-inch- (0.4-mm-)** thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive.
- e. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637, **0.040 inch (1.0 mm)** thick.
3. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from high-density polyethylene incorporating chemical stabilizers that prevent UV degradation. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts that are designed to be built into mortar bed joints and weep collected moisture to the exterior of CMU walls and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.
4. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:
  - a. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
  - b. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
  - c. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing urethane **OR** polysulfide silicone **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
5. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer.
- L. Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories
  1. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.
  2. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall.
  3. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
  4. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton or UV-resistant synthetic fiber, **1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm)** in diameter, in length required to produce **2-inch (50-mm)** exposure on exterior and **18 inches (450 mm)** in cavity between wythes. Use only for weeps.
    - b. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, **3/8-inch (9-mm)** OD by **4 inches (100 mm)** long.
    - c. Rectangular Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Clear butyrate, **3/8 by 1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches (9 by 38 by 89 mm)** long.
    - d. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth **1/8 inch (3 mm)** less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - e. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth **1/8 inch (3 mm)** less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
    - f. Aluminum Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, L-shaped units made from sheet aluminum, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a vertical channel with louvers stamped in web and with a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; painted before installation to

- comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting", in color approved to match that of mortar.
- g. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, offset, T-shaped units made from flexible, injection-molded PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color approved by Architect to match that of mortar.
5. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
    - a. Provide one of the following configurations:
      - 1) Strips, full-depth of cavity and **10 inches (250 mm)** wide, with dovetail shaped notches **7 inches (175 mm)** deep.
      - 2) Strips, not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** thick and **10 inches (250 mm)** wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
      - 3) Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
  6. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from **0.142-inch (3.6-mm)** steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.
- M. Insulation
1. Loose-Granular Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C 549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).
  2. Molded-Polystyrene Insulation Units: Rigid, cellular thermal insulation formed by the expansion of polystyrene-resin beads or granules in a closed mold to comply with ASTM C 578, Type I. Provide specially shaped units designed for installing in cores of masonry units.
  3. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV **OR X, as directed**, closed-cell product extruded with an integral skin.
  4. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I.
  5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I (aluminum-foil-faced), Class 2 (glass-fiber-reinforced).
  6. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.
- N. Masonry Cleaners
1. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains from new masonry without damaging masonry. Use product approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.
- O. Mortar And Grout Mixes
1. General: Do not use admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
    - b. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland cement and lime.
    - c. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  2. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
  3. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 **OR** BIA Technical Notes 8A **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Proportion Specification.
  4. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 **OR** BIA Technical Notes 8A **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**, Property Specification.
    - a. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M **OR** S, **as directed**.
    - b. For reinforced masonry, use Type S **OR** N, **as directed**.
    - c. For mortar parge coats, use Type S or N.



- d. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- e. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- 5. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  - a. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - b. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
- 6. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
- 7. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - a. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Table 21-C in the International Building Code, **as directed**, for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  - b. Provide grout with a slump of **8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm)** as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- 8. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: Mix epoxy pointing mortar to comply with mortar manufacturer's written instructions.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

- 1. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- 2. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
- 3. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- 4. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds **30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm)** per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.
- 5. Comply with tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
  - a. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
  - b. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.

#### B. Laying Masonry Walls

- 1. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- 2. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal **4-inch (100-mm)** horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- 3. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- 4. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- 5. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout **24 inches (600 mm)** under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.

#### C. Mortar Bedding And Jointing

1. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:
    - a. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
    - b. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
    - c. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
    - d. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  2. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
  3. Lay structural-clay tile as follows:
    - a. Lay vertical-cell units with full head joints, unless otherwise indicated. Provide bed joints with full mortar coverage on face shells and webs.
    - b. Lay horizontal-cell units with full bed joints, unless otherwise indicated. Keep drainage channels, if any, free of mortar. Form head joints with sufficient mortar so excess will be squeezed out as units are placed in position.
    - c. Maintain joint thicknesses indicated except for minor variations required to maintain bond alignment. If not indicated, lay walls with **1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6- to 10-mm-)** thick joints.
    - d. Where epoxy-mortar pointed joints are indicated, rake out setting mortar to a uniform depth of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** and point with epoxy mortar.
  4. Set firebox brick in full bed of refractory mortar with full head joints. Form joints by buttering both surfaces of adjoining brick and sliding it into place. Make joints just wide enough to accommodate variations in size of brick, approximately **1/8 inch (3 mm)**. Tool joints smooth on surfaces exposed to fire or smoke.
  5. Install clay flue liners to comply with ASTM C 1283. Install flue liners ahead of surrounding masonry. Set clay flue liners in full bed of refractory mortar **1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm)** thick. Strike joints flush on inside of flue to provide smooth surface. Maintain expansion space between flue liner and surrounding masonry except where surrounding masonry is required to provide lateral support for flue liners.
  6. Set stone **OR** cast-stone, **as directed**, trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
  7. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Composite Masonry
1. Bond wythes of composite masonry together using one of the following methods:
    - a. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for **4.5 sq. ft. (0.42 sq. m) OR 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m)**, **as directed**, of wall area spaced not to exceed **36 inches (914 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c. horizontally and **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within **12 inches (305 mm)** of openings and space not more than **36 inches (915 mm)** apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. vertically.
      - 1) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties.
    - b. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
      - 1) Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes **OR** tab-type reinforcement, **as directed**.
      - 2) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
  2. Collar Joints: Solidly fill collar joints by parging face of first wythe that is laid and shoving units of other wythe into place.
  3. Collar Joints in Clay Tile Masonry: After each course is laid, fill the vertical, longitudinal joint between wythes solidly with mortar at exterior walls, except cavity walls, and interior walls and partitions.

4. Corners: Provide interlocking masonry unit bond in each wythe and course at corners, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Intersecting and Abutting Walls: Unless vertical expansion or control joints are shown at juncture, bond walls together as follows:
    - a. Provide individual metal ties not more than **8 inches (203 mm)** OR **16 inches (406 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.
    - b. Provide continuity with masonry joint reinforcement by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
    - c. Provide rigid metal anchors not more than **24 inches (610 mm)** OR **48 inches (1220 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c. If used with hollow masonry units, embed ends in mortar-filled cores.
- E. Cavity Walls
1. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
    - a. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for **4.5 sq. ft. (0.42 sq. m)** OR **2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m)**, **as directed**, of wall area spaced not to exceed **36 inches (914 mm)** OR **24 inches (610 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c. horizontally and **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within **12 inches (305 mm)** of openings and space not more than **36 inches (915 mm)** apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. vertically.
    - b. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
      - 1) Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes OR tab-type reinforcement, **as directed**.
      - 2) Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
      - 3) Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
    - c. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
  2. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
  3. Parge cavity face of backup wythe in a single coat approximately 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick. Trowel face of parge coat smooth.  
**OR**  
Coat cavity face of backup wythe to comply with Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing".
- F. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions, with edges butted tightly. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry.
- G. Masonry-Cell Insulation
1. Pour granular insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of insulation to 1 story in height, but not more than **20 feet (6 m)**.
  2. Install molded-polystyrene insulation units into masonry unit cells before laying units.
- H. Masonry Joint Reinforcement
1. General: Install in mortar with a minimum cover of **5/8 inch (16 mm)** on exterior side of walls, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**.
  2. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
  4. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

- I. Anchoring Masonry To Structural Members
1. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
    - a. Provide an open space not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
    - c. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. vertically and **36 inches (915 mm)** o.c. horizontally.
- J. Anchoring Masonry Veneers
1. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing **OR** concrete and masonry backup, **as directed**, with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Fasten screw-attached and seismic anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to concrete and masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners.
    - b. Insert slip-in anchors in metal studs as sheathing is installed. Provide one anchor at each stud in each horizontal joint between sheathing boards.
    - c. Embed tie sections **OR** connector sections and continuous wire, **as directed**, in masonry joints. Provide not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
    - d. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
    - e. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. vertically and **32 inches (813 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c. horizontally with not less than 1 anchor for each **3.5 sq. ft. (0.33 sq. m) OR 2.67 sq. ft. (0.25 sq. m)**, **as directed**, of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (305 mm)** of openings and at intervals, not exceeding **36 inches (914 mm)**, around perimeter.
- K. Control And Expansion Joints
1. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
  2. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", but not less than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
    - a. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.
- L. Lintels
1. Provide concrete or masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than **12 inches (305 mm)** for brick-size units and **24 inches (610 mm)** for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
  2. Provide minimum bearing of **8 inches (200 mm)** at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Flashing, Weep Holes, Cavity Drainage, And Vents
1. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
  2. Install flashing as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
    - b. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing **6 inches (150 mm)** at ends and turn up not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** to form end dams.

- c. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
- d. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
3. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
4. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
5. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
  - a. Use specified weep/vent products or open head joints to form weep holes.
  - b. Space weep holes **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
6. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in Part 2 "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
7. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent products or open head joints to form vents.
  - a. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

N. Reinforced Unit Masonry Installation

1. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - a. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - b. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
2. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.5 in the International Building Code, **as directed**.
  - a. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - b. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 **OR** Section 2104.6 in the International Building Code, **as directed**, for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - c. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than **60 inches (1520 mm)**.

O. Field Quality Control

1. Inspectors: Engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.
  - a. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:
3. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each **5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m)** of wall area or portion thereof.
4. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 67.



5. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 140.
6. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 780 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
7. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 1019 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.

P. Parging

1. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in 2 uniform coats to a total thickness of **3/4 inch (19 mm)** with a steel-trowel finish. Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

Q. Cleaning

1. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
2. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - a. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
  - b. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
  - c. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - d. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
  - e. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - f. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

R. Masonry Waste Disposal

1. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - a. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within **18 inches (450 mm)** of finished grade.
  - b. Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 01 54 23 00a

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 54 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 54 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 55 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 55 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

NOT FOR BID





**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 56 26 00 - SEDIMENT REMOVAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for sediment removal.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall remove all material from areas as required to meet project requirements. Water and sediment removed from these areas shall be discharged to a sedimentation basin constructed and maintained by the Contractor. All work shall be in strict compliance with Pollution Control requirements and Dewatering requirements. All material removed shall be disposed of in an approved landfill in accordance with all State and Federal Regulations.

END OF SECTION 01 56 26 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 56 26 00a - EROSION CONTROL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of mesh or netting for erosion control. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Jute Mesh: Fed. Spec. CCC-C-467.
2. Plastic Mesh: Manufacturer's recommendation.
3. Plastic Netting: Manufacturer's recommendation.
4. Polypropylene Mesh: Manufacturer's recommendation.
5. Woven Fabric Fence: EPA specifications.
6. Hay-Bales: EPA specifications.

### 1.3 EXECUTION:

- A. Preparation: Grade, compact, fertilize, and seed the area to be protected.
- B. Installation: Apply blankets either horizontally or vertically to the slope. In ditches, apply blanket in direction of water flow. Lap and anchor blankets according to the manufacturer's instructions. Install woven fabric fence and hay bales adjacent to all excavated areas.

END OF SECTION 01 56 26 00a

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 56 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 29 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 56 39 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 57 13 00	01 56 26 00	Sediment Removal

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 58 13 00 - SIGNAGE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for signage. Product shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Plaques.
  - b. Dimensional illuminated and non-illuminated characters.
  - c. Panel signs.
  - d. Illuminated panel signs.
  - e. Photoluminescent markings and signs.

#### C. Definitions

1. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
  - a. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - b. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
  - c. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For each sign type and for each color and texture required.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
3. Provide exit signs in accordance with NFPA 101, Building Code, and Fire Code.
4. Comply with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 101 - Life Safety Code.
5. Comply with Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) - 924 - Standard for Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment.

#### F. Field Quality Control

1. With room light fixtures illuminated, measure amount of illumination on face of each exit sign using handheld light meter.
2. Ensure that each location has minimum of 5 foot-candles of illumination.

#### G. Warranty

1. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within Five years from date of Final Completion.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.
2. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.
3. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 6063-T5.
4. Brass Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C85200 (high-copper yellow brass).
5. Brass, Yellow, Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000.
6. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).
7. Bronze Plate: ASTM B 36/B 36M.
8. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M.
9. Steel:
  - a. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating, either commercial or forming steel.
  - b. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold-rolled, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B, exposed **OR** Electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 591/A 591M, with steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
  - d. Steel Members Fabricated from Plate or Bar Stock: ASTM A 529/A 529M or ASTM A 572/A 572M, **42,000-psi (290-MPa)** minimum yield strength.
  - e. For steel exposed to view on completion, provide materials having flat, smooth surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials whose surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
10. Fiberglass Sheet: Molded, seamless, thermosetting, glass-fiber-reinforced polyester panels with a minimum tensile strength of **15,000 psi (103 MPa)** when tested according to ASTM D 638 and with a minimum flexural strength of **30,000 psi (207 MPa)** when tested according to ASTM D 790.
11. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), Type UVA (UV absorbing).
12. Polycarbonate Sheet: Of thickness indicated, manufactured by extrusion process, coated on both surfaces with abrasion-resistant coating:
  - a. Impact Resistance: **16 ft-lbf/in. (854 J/m)** per ASTM D 256, Method A.
  - b. Tensile Strength: **9000 lbf/sq. in. (62 MPa)** per ASTM D 638.
  - c. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: **340,000 lbf/sq. in. (2345 MPa)** per ASTM D 790.
  - d. Heat Deflection: **265 deg F (129 deg C)** at **264 lbf/sq. in. (1.82 MPa)** per ASTM D 648.
  - e. Abrasion Resistance: 1.5 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions of a Taber abraser with a load of 500 g per ASTM D 1044.
13. Applied Vinyl: Die-cut characters from vinyl film of nominal thickness of **3 mils (0.076 mm)** with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing, suitable for exterior applications.

### B. Plaques

1. Cast Plaques: Provide castings free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects, as follows:
  - a. Plaque Material: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**.
  - b. Background Texture: Manufacturer's standard pebble **OR** leatherette **OR** matte **OR** stipple, **as directed**, texture.
  - c. Border Style: Square, polished **OR** Plain bevel **OR** Projected bevel **OR** Raised flat band **OR** Double-raised line border, **as directed**.
  - d. Mounting: Rosettes and fasteners matching plaque finish **OR** Concealed studs, **as directed**, noncorroding, **as directed**, for substrates encountered.
2. Etched Plaques: Provide metal sheet or plate for etching, as follows:
  - a. Plaque Material: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Bronze, **as directed**.

- b. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
- c. Color(s): As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- d. Edge Style: Square, polished **OR** Plain bevel, **as directed**.
- e. Mounting: Concealed studs **OR** Exposed fasteners, **as directed**, noncorroding, **as directed**, for substrates encountered.
- f. Thickness: **0.125 inch (3.18 mm) OR 0.250 inch (6.35 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.

C. Dimensional Characters

1. Cast Characters: Produce characters with smooth flat faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects. Cast lugs into back of characters and tap to receive threaded mounting studs. Alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated. Comply with the following requirements.
  - a. Character Material: Aluminum **OR** Brass **OR** Bronze, **as directed**.
  - b. Thickness: As indicated.
  - c. Color(s): As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - d. Mounting: Rosettes and fasteners matching character finish **OR** Concealed studs, **as directed**, noncorroding, **as directed**, for substrates encountered.
2. Aluminum Extrusions: Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Finish: Anodized **OR** Painted, **as directed**.
  - b. Thickness: As indicated.
  - c. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
  - d. Color(s): As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - e. Mounting: Concealed studs, noncorroding, **as directed**, for substrates encountered.
3. Fabricated Channel Characters: Form exposed faces and sides of characters to produce surfaces free from warp and distortion. Include internal bracing for stability and attachment of mounting accessories. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Illuminated Backlighting **OR** Frontlighting, **as directed**, Channel Characters: Manufacturer's standard fluorescent tube **OR** fiber-optic **OR** LED **OR** neon tube, **as directed**, lighting including transformers, insulators, and other components. Make provisions for servicing and concealing connections to building electrical system.
  - b. Aluminum Sheet: Not less than **0.090 inch (2.29 mm)** thick.
    - 1) Finish: Anodized **OR** Painted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
    - 3) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - c. Bronze Sheet: Not less than **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - d. Brass Sheet: Not less than **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - e. Copper Sheet: Not less than **0.032 inch (0.81 mm) OR 0.048 inch (1.22 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - f. Steel Sheet: Painted, not less than **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** thick for face and **0.031 inch (0.78 mm)** thick for returns.
    - 1) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - g. Stainless-Steel Sheet: Not less than **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** thick for face and **0.031 inch (0.78 mm)** thick for returns.
    - 1) Finish: No. 4 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
  - h. Provide manufacturer's hardware for projection mounting of backlighting, **as directed**, channel characters at distance from wall surface indicated.
  - i. Provide translucent acrylic face sheet of thickness indicated. Attach characters to sheet metal back channels. Provide required to illuminate sign faces evenly.
    - 1) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - j. Provide open-front, sheet metal channel characters.
4. Molded Plastic Characters: Thermoformed **OR** Injection molded, **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. Illuminated Characters: Manufacturer's standard fluorescent tube **OR** fiber-optic **OR** LED **OR** neon tube, **as directed**, lighting including transformers, insulators, and other components. Make provisions for servicing and concealing connections to building electrical system.

- b. Integral Color **OR** Painted Finish, **as directed**: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- 5. Cutout Characters: Provide characters with square-cut, smooth, eased, **as directed**, edges. Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Acrylic: **0.25 inch (6.35 mm) OR 0.50 inch (12.7 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
    - 1) Metal face laminated to acrylic base with painted edges, **as directed**.
      - a) Brass Face: Satin **OR** Polished, **as directed**, finish.
      - b) Stainless-Steel Face: No. 4 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**, finish.
      - c) Metal Thickness: **0.030 inch (0.76 mm)**.
    - 2) Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
    - 3) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - b. Aluminum Sheet: **0.125 inch (3.18 mm) OR 0.25 inch (6.35 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
    - 1) Finish: Anodized **OR** Painted, **as directed**.
    - 2) Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
    - 3) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - c. Brass Sheet, Yellow: **0.125 inch (3.18 mm) OR 0.25 inch (6.35 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Bronze Sheet: **0.125 inch (3.18 mm) OR 0.25 inch (6.35 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - e. Vinyl: Pressure sensitive, **3.5 mils (0.09 mm)** thick.
    - 1) Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
    - 2) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - f. Mounting: Adhesive **OR** Flush **OR** Projected **OR** Back bar **OR** Bracket, **as directed**, with concealed noncorroding studs, **as directed**, for substrates encountered.

#### D. panel signs

- 1. Interior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm) OR 0.080 inch (2.03 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Laminated, Aluminum-Faced Sheet: **0.020-inch- (0.51-mm-)** thick aluminum sheet laminated to each side of **0.197-inch- (5.0-mm-) OR 0.394-inch- (10.0-mm-)**, **as directed**, thick, corrugated **OR** phenolic **OR** acrylic, **as directed**, backing with painted edges, **as directed**.
  - c. Laminated, Polycarbonate-Faced Sheet: **0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-)** thick, polycarbonate face sheet laminated to each side of **0.197-inch- (5.0-mm-) OR 0.394-inch- (10.0-mm-)**, **as directed**, thick phenolic backing.
  - d. Acrylic Sheet: **0.060 inch (1.52 mm) OR 0.080 inch (2.03 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - e. PVC Sheet: **0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) OR 0.080-inch- (2.03-mm-)**, **as directed**, thick, extruded, high-impact PVC plastic in color to match face color **OR** with painted finish, **as directed**.
  - f. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: **0.048 inch (1.21 mm)** thick.
  - g. Phenolic-Backed Photopolymer Sheet: Provide light-sensitive, water-wash photopolymer face layer bonded to a phenolic base layer to produce a composite sheet with overall, face layer, and base-layer thicknesses, respectively, of **0.120, 0.040, and 0.080 inch (3.0, 1.0, and 2.03 mm) OR 0.160, 0.040, and 0.120 inch (4.06, 1.0, and 3.04 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - h. Laminated Sheet: High-pressure engraved stock with contrasting color, **as directed**, face laminated to acrylic core in finishes and color combinations indicated **OR** as selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - i. Laminated, Etched Photopolymer: Raised graphics with Braille, **as directed**, **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** above surface with contrasting colors in finishes and color combinations indicated **OR** as selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, and laminated to acrylic back.
  - j. Laminated, Sandblasted Polymer: Raised graphics with Braille, **as directed**, **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** above surface with contrasting colors in finishes and color combinations indicated **OR** as selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**, and laminated to acrylic back.
  - k. Edge Condition: Square cut **OR** Beveled **OR** Bullnose, **as directed**.
  - l. Corner Condition: Square **OR** Rounded to radius indicated, **as directed**.

- m. Mounting: Framed **OR** Unframed **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - 1) Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Projection, **as directed**, mounted with concealed anchors **OR** magnetic tape **OR** two-face tape, **as directed**.
  - 2) Manufacturer's standard anchors for substrates encountered.
- n. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
- o. Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- p. Tactile Characters: Characters and Grade 2 Braille raised **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** above surface with contrasting colors.
- 2. Exterior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm) OR 0.080 inch (2.03 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - b. Laminated, Aluminum-Faced Sheet: **0.020-inch- (0.51-mm-) thick aluminum sheet laminated to each side of 0.197-inch- (5.0-mm-) OR 0.394-inch- (10.0-mm-), as directed**, thick, corrugated **OR** phenolic **OR** acrylic, **as directed**, backing with painted edges, **as directed**.
  - c. Acrylic Sheet: **0.060 inch (1.52 mm) OR 0.080 inch (2.03 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - d. Fiberglass Sheet: **0.090-inch- (2.29-mm-) OR 0.125-inch- (3.18-mm-), as directed**, thick sheet.
  - e. Edge Condition: Square cut **OR** Beveled **OR** Bullnose, **as directed**.
  - f. Corner Condition: Square **OR** Rounded to radius indicated, **as directed**.
  - g. Mounting: Framed **OR** Unframed **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - 1) Wall **OR** Soffit **OR** Projection, **as directed**, mounted.
    - 2) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding, **as directed**, anchors for substrates encountered.
  - h. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
  - i. Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- 3. Laminated Interior **OR** Exterior, **as directed**, Signs: Solid phenolic panel core with graphic image covered with thermosetting resin face layer.
  - a. Surface Finish: Mat **OR** Beaded **OR** Gloss **OR** UV resistant, outdoor, **as directed**.
  - b. Edge Condition: Square cut **OR** Beveled **OR** Bullnose, **as directed**.
  - c. Corner Condition: Square **OR** Rounded to radius indicated, **as directed**.
  - d. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6 mm)**, **as directed**.
- 4. Brackets: Fabricate brackets and fittings for bracket-mounted signs from extruded aluminum to suit panel sign construction and mounting conditions indicated. Factory paint brackets in color matching background color of panel sign **OR** matching sample, **as directed**.
- 5. Panel Sign Frames:
  - a. PVC Frames: Extruded, high-impact PVC plastic.
    - 1) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range **OR** Match face color, **as directed**.
    - 2) Depth: As indicated.
    - 3) Profile: Square **OR** Beveled **OR** Rounded, **as directed**.
    - 4) Corner Condition: Square **OR** Rounded to radius indicated, **as directed**.
    - 5) Mounting: As indicated.
      - a) Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Projection, **as directed**, mounted with concealed anchors **OR** magnetic tape **OR** two-face tape, **as directed**.
      - b) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding, **as directed**, anchors for substrates encountered.
  - b. Extruded-Aluminum Frames: Mitered with concealed anchors and welded, **as directed**.
    - 1) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - 2) Depth: As indicated.
    - 3) Profile: Square **OR** Beveled **OR** Rounded, **as directed**.
    - 4) Corner Condition: Square **OR** Rounded to radius indicated, **as directed**.
    - 5) Mounting: As indicated.
      - a) Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Projection, **as directed**, mounted with concealed anchors **OR** magnetic tape **OR** two-face tape, **as directed**.



- b) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding, **as directed**, anchors for substrates encountered.
  - c. Metal Frames:
    - 1) Bronze Plate: Not less than **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
    - 2) Brass Plate: Not less than **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
    - 3) Steel Sheet: Painted, not less than **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** thick for face and **0.031 inch (0.78 mm)** thick for returns.
      - a) Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - 4) Stainless-Steel Sheet: Not less than **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** thick for face and **0.031 inch (0.78 mm)** thick for returns.
    - 5) Depth: As indicated.
    - 6) Corner Condition: Square **OR** Rounded to radius indicated, **as directed**.
    - 7) Mounting: As indicated.
      - a) Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Projection, **as directed**, mounted with concealed anchors **OR** magnetic tape **OR** two-face tape, **as directed**.
      - b) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding, **as directed**, anchors for substrates encountered.
- 6. Changeable Message Inserts: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages in the form of slide-in inserts **OR** transparent covers with paper inserts printed by the Owner **OR** changeable panel inserts for use in fixed frames, **as directed**.
  - a. Furnish insert material and software for creating text and symbols for PC-Windows **OR** Macintosh, **as directed**, computers for the Owner production of paper inserts.
  - b. Furnish insert material cut-to-size for changeable message insert.
- 7. Tactile and Braille Sign: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with domed or rounded shape.
  - a. Panel Material: Opaque acrylic sheet **OR** Photopolymer **OR** Clear acrylic sheet with opaque color coating, subsurface applied, **as directed**.
  - b. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
- 8. Engraved Copy: Machine engrave letters, numbers, symbols, and other graphic devices into panel sign on face indicated to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth.
  - a. Engraved Plastic Laminate: Engrave through exposed face ply of plastic-laminate sheet to expose contrasting core ply.
  - b. Engraved Metal: Fill engraved copy with enamel.
  - c. Engraved Opaque Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved copy with enamel.
  - d. Face-Engraved Clear Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved copy with enamel. Apply opaque background color coating to back face of acrylic sheet.
- 9. Subsurface Copy: Apply minimum **4-mil- (0.10-mm-)** thick vinyl copy to back face of clear acrylic sheet forming panel face to produce precisely formed opaque image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- 10. Subsurface Engraved Acrylic Sheet: Reverse-engrave back face of clear acrylic sheet. Fill resulting copy with enamel. Apply opaque background color coating over enamel-filled copy.
- 11. Applied Vinyl: Die-cut characters from vinyl film of nominal thickness of **3 mils (0.076 mm)** with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing. Apply copy to exposed face of panel sign **OR** glass **OR** doors **OR** wall surfaces, **as directed**.
  - a. Panel Material: Opaque acrylic sheet **OR** Clear acrylic sheet with opaque color coating, subsurface applied, **as directed**.
- 12. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background and frame colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and are UV and water resistant for three **OR** five, **as directed**, years for application intended.
  - a. Custom Paint Colors: Match Pantone, **as directed**, color matching system.
  - b. Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

E. Photoluminescent Markings and Signs

1. All photoluminescent exit path markings, signs and materials shall be approved by Authorities having jurisdiction and meet minimum performance requirements.
2. Photoluminescent Signs: Self-contained, single **OR** double, **as directed**, face, as follows:
  - a. Manufacturer's standard aluminum **OR** plastic, **as directed**, frame with translucent lettering and transparent polycarbonate face.
  - b. Exit sign, UL 924.
  - c. Mounting: As indicated.
    - 1) Wall **OR** Ceiling **OR** Projection, **as directed**, mounted with concealed anchors.
  - d. Face Color: Red **OR** Green **OR** Black, **as directed**.
  - e. Frame Color: As indicated **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - f. Service Life: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years.
  - g. New Buildings.
    - 1) All new buildings of three or more stories in height shall be provided with approved photoluminescent exit path markings in all enclosed exit stairwells.
  - h. Existing buildings.
    - 1) All Group E, I, R-1 and R-2 occupancies in buildings of three or more stories in height shall be provided with approved photoluminescent exit path markings in all enclosed exit stairwells.
  - i. All other occupancies in buildings four or more stories in height shall be provided with approved photoluminescent exit path markings in all enclosed exit stairwells.
  - j. Exception: Exit path markings in existence at the time of the adoption and or at the time of this ordinance may continue to exist as installed as long as they are in proper working order.

F. Accessories

1. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.
2. Fasteners: Stainless or corrosion-resistant; type best suited to application.

G. Fabrication

1. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
  - a. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  - b. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
  - c. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.
  - d. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

H. Finishes, General

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

**I. Aluminum Finishes**

1. Clear Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 clear anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, over a satin (directionally textured) **OR** polished (buffed) **OR** nonspecular as fabricated, **as directed**, mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.
2. Color Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, in light bronze **OR** medium bronze **OR** dark bronze **OR** gold **OR** black, **as directed**, applied over a satin (directionally textured) **OR** polished (buffed) **OR** nonspecular as fabricated, **as directed**, mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
  - a. Organic Coating: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**, medium gloss.

**J. Steel Finishes**

1. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Factory Priming for Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
  - a. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer, selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.
3. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of **2 mils (0.05 mm)**.

**K. Stainless-Steel Finishes**

1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
2. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4 finish.
3. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8 finish.
4. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

**L. Copper-Alloy Finishes**

1. Sheet or Plate Finish: Medium satin (directionally textured) **OR** Smooth specular (mirrorlike), buffed, **as directed**, finish.
  - a. Raised Finish: Satin **OR** Polished **OR** Painted, **as directed**.
  - b. Recessed Finish: Etched, painted, **as directed**.
2. Cast-Bronze **OR** Cast-Brass, **as directed**, Character Finishes: Manufacturer's standard satin finish, **as directed**, with exposed surfaces free from porosity, burrs, and rough spots; with returns finished with fine-grain air blast.
3. Cast-Bronze Plaque Finishes: Exposed surfaces free of porosity, burrs, and rough spots; with returns finished with fine-grain air blast.
  - a. Raised Areas: Hand-tool and buff borders and raised copy to produce manufacturer's standard satin **OR** polished, **as directed**, finish.
  - b. Background Finish: Painted **OR** Dark oxidized **OR** Green patina, **as directed**.
4. Clear Protective Coating: Coat exposed surfaces of copper alloys with manufacturer's standard, clear organic coating specially designed for coating copper-alloy products.

M. Acrylic Sheet Finishes

1. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background and frame colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for three **OR** five, **as directed**, years for application intended.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - b. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within **3 inches (75 mm)** of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
2. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
  - a. Two-Face Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.
  - b. Hook-and-Loop Tapes: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces.
  - c. Magnetic Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces.
  - d. Silicone-Adhesive Mounting: Attach signs to irregular, porous, or vinyl-covered surfaces.
  - e. Shim Plate Mounting: Provide **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** thick, concealed aluminum shim plates with predrilled and countersunk holes, at locations indicated, and where other mounting methods are not practicable. Attach plate with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate. Attach panel signs to plate using method specified above.
  - f. Mechanical Fasteners: Use nonremovable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.
  - g. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide matching opaque plate on opposite side of glass to conceal mounting materials.
3. Bracket-Mounted Signs: Provide manufacturer's standard brackets, fittings, and hardware for mounting signs that project at right angles from walls and ceilings. Attach brackets and fittings securely to walls and ceilings with concealed fasteners and anchoring devices to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Dimensional Characters: Mount characters using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for character form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy paper template to establish character spacing and to locate holes for fasteners.
  - a. Flush Mounting: Mount characters with backs in contact with wall surface.
  - b. Projected Mounting: Mount characters at projection distance from wall surface indicated.
5. Cast-Metal Plaques: Mount plaques using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for type of wall surface indicated.
  - a. Concealed Mounting: Mount plaques by inserting threaded studs into tapped lugs on back of plaque. Set in predrilled holes filled with quick-setting cement.
  - b. Face Mounting: Mount plaques using exposed fasteners with rosettes attached through face of plaque into wall surface.
6. Photoluminescent Marking and Signs
  - a. Approved stair markings shall be provided for all enclosed stairways in buildings three or more stories above grade or three or more levels below grade and in any exit pathways leading from the stairways with the exception of ground floor lobbies leading to the exterior of the building in the following manner:
  - b. Horizontal Leading Edge of each stair step shall be marked by Option 1 or Option 2.



- 1) Option 1: A minimum one inch and a maximum of two inches (25 mm) shaped contrasting marker of photoluminescent material on both side edges of the step. These markers shall be placed a minimum of 0inch to a maximum of 1/2inch (13 mm) from the leading edge of the step parallel to the nose of the step or landing.
- 2) Option 2: A minimum one inch and a maximum of two inches (25mm) "zig-zag" pattern contrasting marker of photoluminescent material on both sides of the step. This shall be a continuous pattern along the walls of the stair step. (See Option 1 & 2 attachments)
- c. Stair Landings shall also be marked with a contrasting photoluminescent pathway marker located around the perimeter wall and across the face or floor in front of non-exit doors, on or within four inches (102 mm) of the floor. The dimensions, distances and locations shall be consistent and uniform throughout the same exit. Any spaces intervening between portions of the stairwell shall be marked as directed by the Owner. (See attachments)
- d. Photoluminescent Directional Signs shall be placed in the following locations:
  - 1) Stairwell or exit: directional arrow visible upon opening the door into the stairwell or exit indicating the direction of travel.
  - 2) Transfer levels: A directional arrow on the wall. Exception: Markings shall be as directed by the Owner if walls are not available.
  - 3) Wherever egress direction is not clear, (turns along horizontal extensions; at transitions from vertical to horizontal direction; at "T" intersections; etc.) a directional arrow or outlined path (or both as determined by the Owner) shall be installed.
- e. Door frames (top and sides) of all stair entry, intermediate and final exit doors of the enclosed stairway shall be marked with a solid and continuous contrasting one inch minimum and a two inch maximum (25 mm) stripe of photoluminescent material.
- f. An approved photoluminescent "exit" sign shall be mounted on all stair entry, intermediate and final exit doors or adjacent to the door (on the latch side) within 18 inch (455 mm) of the floor. The sign shall state "EXIT", "FINAL EXIT", "EXIT THROUGH LOBBY", or "EXIT TO STREET". These signs shall be required to be UL 924 listed if they are to be viewed at a distance of 50 feet or more.
- g. Handrails shall be marked with a minimum one inch and a maximum of two inches (25 mm) solid and continuous stripe of photoluminescent material either on the handrail or on the wall adjacent to handrail.
- h. Obstacles at or below six feet six inches (1981 mm) in height and projecting more than four inches (102 mm) into the egress path shall be outlined with markings no less than one inch (25 mm) in width and not more than a two inches maximum comprised of a pattern of alternating equal bands of photoluminescent material and black, with the alternating bands no more than two inches in width and angled at 45 degrees. Examples of such obstacles include standpipes, hose cabinets, wall projections, and restricted height areas.
- i. Exit pathways shall be marked with a minimum one inch and a maximum of two inches (25 mm) solid and continuous stripe of photoluminescent pathway marking material on or within four inches of the floor along each side of the pathway. Pathways more than 50 feet in length shall have directional arrows along the wall at intervals not exceeding 50 feet.
- j. Minimum Lighting Requirements:
  - 1) All installed photoluminescent materials shall be exposed to a minimum of two foot candles of fluorescent light illumination at all times while the building is occupied or if incandescent lighting is used, the photoluminescent material chosen must be capable of meeting the minimum brightness rating required by this standard with the lighting provided.
  - 2) Motion sensor activated lighting is prohibited in the stairwells addressed by this standard.
  - 3) Timers on stairwell lighting, if used, shall be set to turn on the lights not less than one hour before the building is occupied each day.
- k. Maintenance Requirements:
  - 1) Owners shall maintain the required photoluminescent signs and markings in good repair. Every 12 months owners shall perform a visual inspection of the signs and

markings with the normal lighting turned on. Signs and/or markings that are missing, damaged, loose or that show signs of wear shall be noted and properly repaired or replaced.

B. Cleaning And Protection

1. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 01 58 13 00

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 58 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 66 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
01 71 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 71 23 16 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cutting and patching. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

#### C. Definitions

1. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
2. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

#### D. Submittals

1. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed. Include the following information:
  - a. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
  - b. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's appearance and other significant visual elements.
  - c. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
  - d. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
  - e. Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: List services/systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services/systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long services/systems will be disrupted.
  - f. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involve adding reinforcement to structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of reinforcement with original structure.
  - g. the Owner's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. LEED Requirements for Building Reuse:
  - a. Credit MR 1.1 and 1.2, **as directed**: Maintain existing building structure (including structural floor and roof decking) and envelope (exterior skin and framing, excluding window assemblies and nonstructural roofing material) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - b. Credit MR 1.3: Maintain existing interior nonstructural elements (interior walls, doors, floor coverings, and ceiling systems) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - c. Credit MR 1.2 and 1.3, **as directed**: Maintain existing nonshell, nonstructural components (walls, flooring, and ceilings) not indicated to be removed; do not cut such existing construction beyond indicated limits.



2. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
  - a. **Refer to the Owner for list of elements that might otherwise be overlooked as structural elements and that require Architect's or Construction Manager's approval of a cutting and patching proposal.**
3. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operating elements include the following:
  - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
  - b. Air or smoke barriers.
  - c. Fire-suppression systems.
  - d. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
  - e. Control systems.
  - f. Communication systems.
  - g. Conveying systems.
  - h. Electrical wiring systems.
  - i. Operating systems of special construction in Division 13.
4. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch miscellaneous elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Miscellaneous elements include the following:
  - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  - b. Membranes and flashings.
  - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
  - d. Equipment supports.
  - e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
5. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
6. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

F. Warranty

1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
2. In-Place Materials: Use materials identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - a. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
2. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
3. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
4. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize **OR** prevent, **as directed**, interruption to occupied areas.

#### B. Performance

1. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - a. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
2. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - a. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - b. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - c. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - d. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - e. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - f. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
3. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections.
  - a. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
  - b. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - 1) Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - 2) Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  - c. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - 1) Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.





- d. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  - e. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.
4. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

END OF SECTION 01 71 23 16

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 74 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 01 74 19 00 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Summary

1. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

- a. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

**Note: All salvageable materials remain the property of the Owner and shall be turned over as directed when specified in the Job Order.**

- b. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- c. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

#### B. Definitions

1. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
2. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
3. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
5. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
6. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

#### C. Performance Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**

1. General: Develop waste management plan that results in end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 50 **OR** 75, **as directed**, percent by weight of total waste generated by the Work.
2. Salvage/Recycle Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible including the following materials:

**OR**

Salvage/Recycle Goals **OR** Requirements, **as directed**: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible. Owner has established minimum goals for the following materials:

- a. Demolition Waste:
  - 1) Asphaltic concrete paving.
  - 2) Concrete.
  - 3) Concrete reinforcing steel.
  - 4) Brick.
  - 5) Concrete masonry units.
  - 6) Wood studs.
  - 7) Wood joists.
  - 8) Plywood and oriented strand board.
  - 9) Wood paneling.
  - 10) Wood trim.
  - 11) Structural and miscellaneous steel.
  - 12) Rough hardware.
  - 13) Roofing.
  - 14) Insulation.
  - 15) Doors and frames.

- 16) Door hardware.
- 17) Windows.
- 18) Glazing.
- 19) Metal studs.
- 20) Gypsum board.
- 21) Acoustical tile and panels.
- 22) Carpet.
- 23) Carpet pad.
- 24) Demountable partitions.
- 25) Equipment.
- 26) Cabinets.
- 27) Plumbing fixtures.
- 28) Piping.
- 29) Supports and hangers.
- 30) Valves.
- 31) Sprinklers.
- 32) Mechanical equipment.
- 33) Refrigerants.
- 34) Electrical conduit.
- 35) Copper wiring.
- 36) Lighting fixtures.
- 37) Lamps.
- 38) Ballasts.
- 39) Electrical devices.
- 40) Switchgear and panelboards.
- 41) Transformers.
- b. Construction Waste:
  - 1) Site-clearing waste.
  - 2) Masonry and CMU.
  - 3) Lumber.
  - 4) Wood sheet materials.
  - 5) Wood trim.
  - 6) Metals.
  - 7) Roofing.
  - 8) Insulation.
  - 9) Carpet and pad.
  - 10) Gypsum board.
  - 11) Piping.
  - 12) Electrical conduit.
  - 13) Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
    - a) Paper.
    - b) Cardboard.
    - c) Boxes.
    - d) Plastic sheet and film.
    - e) Polystyrene packaging.
    - f) Wood crates.
    - g) Plastic pails.

D. Submittals

- 1. Waste Management Plan: Submit 3 copies of plan within 7 **OR** 30, **as directed**, days of date established for commencement of the Work **OR** the Notice to Proceed **OR** the Notice of Award, **as directed**.

2. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit three copies of report. Include separate reports for demolition and construction waste, **as directed**. Include the following information:
    - a. Material category.
    - b. Generation point of waste.
    - c. Total quantity of waste in **tons (tonnes)**.
    - d. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in **tons (tonnes)**.
    - e. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in **tons (tonnes)**.
    - f. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in **tons (tonnes)**.
    - g. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
  3. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Final Completion, submit three copies of calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
  4. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
  5. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
  6. LEED Submittal: LEED letter template for Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2, **as directed**, signed by Contractor, tabulating total waste material, quantities diverted and means by which it is diverted, and statement that requirements for the credit have been met.
  7. Qualification Data: For Waste Management Coordinator and refrigerant recovery technician.
  8. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: LEED Accredited Professional by U.S. Green Building Council. Waste management coordinator may also serve as LEED coordinator.
  2. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
  3. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of Waste Management Coordinator.
    - b. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
    - c. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
    - d. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
    - e. Review waste management requirements for each trade.
- F. Waste Management Plan
1. General: Develop plan consisting of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Include separate sections in plan for demolition and construction waste if Project requires selective demolition or building demolition. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
  2. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition, site-clearing, and construction waste generated by the Work. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
  3. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.



- a. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
  - b. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - c. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
  - d. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location on Project site where materials separation will be located.
4. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Include the following:
- a. Total quantity of waste.
  - b. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  - c. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
  - d. Revenue from salvaged materials.
  - e. Revenue from recycled materials.
  - f. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.
  - g. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
  - h. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  - i. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Plan Implementation

1. General: Implement waste management plan as approved by the Owner. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
  - a. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls" for operation, termination, and removal requirements.
2. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan. Coordinator shall be present at Project site full time for duration of Project.
3. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work occurring at Project site.
  - a. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  - b. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
4. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - a. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
  - b. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

### B. Salvaging Demolition Waste

1. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work:
    - a. Clean salvaged items.
    - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
    - c. Store items in a secure area until installation.
    - d. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
    - e. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
  2. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation: Not permitted.
  3. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use:
    - a. Clean salvaged items.
    - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
    - c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
    - d. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site **OR** off-site **OR** designated by Owner, **as directed**.
    - e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- C. Recycling Demolition And Construction Waste, General
1. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
  2. Recycling Receivers and Processors: Refer to the Owner for available recycling receivers and processors.
  3. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Owner **OR** accrue to Contractor **OR** be shared equally by Owner and Contractor, **as directed**.
  4. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical.
    - a. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until they are removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
      - 1) Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
    - b. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
    - c. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
    - d. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
    - e. Remove recyclable waste off Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.
- D. Recycling Demolition Waste
1. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum **1-1/2-inch (38-mm) OR 4-inch (100-mm), as directed**, size.
    - a. Crush asphaltic concrete paving and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill.
  2. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
  3. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
    - a. Pulverize concrete to maximum **1-1/2-inch (38-mm) OR 4-inch (100-mm), as directed**, size.
    - b. Crush concrete and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as satisfactory soil for fill or subbase.
  4. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
    - a. Pulverize masonry to maximum **3/4-inch (19-mm) OR 1-inch (25-mm) OR 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) OR 4-inch (100-mm), as directed**, size.





- 1) Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill **OR** satisfactory soil for fill or subbase, **as directed**.
  - 2) Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use as mineral mulch.
  - b. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.
  5. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
  6. Metals: Separate metals by type.
    - a. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
    - b. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
  7. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.
  8. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
  9. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
    - a. Separate suspension system, trim, and other metals from panels and tile and sort with other metals.
  10. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
    - a. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
  11. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
  12. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
  13. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
  14. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
  15. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.
  16. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.
- E. Recycling Construction Waste
1. Packaging:
    - a. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
    - b. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
    - c. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
    - d. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
  2. Site-Clearing Wastes: Chip brush, branches, and trees on-site **OR** at landfill facility, **as directed**.
    - a. Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of chipped organic waste as organic mulch.
  3. Wood Materials:
    - a. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
    - b. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
      - 1) Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
  4. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
    - a. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
      - 1) Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.

F. Disposal Of Waste

1. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
2. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.  
**OR**  
Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
3. Disposal: Transport waste materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.  
**OR**  
Disposal: Transport waste materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
01 74 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 32 13 00 - SUBSURFACE DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for drilling, sampling and testing for subsurface investigation of soils.

#### B. System Description: The purpose of the work specified herein is to determine the type, nature, and characteristics of subsurface materials and the extent and conditions of the various materials as they exist to the depths and at the locations specified. This is to be accomplished by means of auger borings, drive sample borings, undisturbed sample borings, core drilling, pressure testing, or test pits.

1. Auger Borings and Sampling: An auger boring is any boring made in unconsolidated soils with a conventional manually or power-driven earth auger for the purpose of obtaining samples of subsurface materials. Auger boring and sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1452.
2. Drive Sample Borings and Sampling: A drive sample boring is a boring made through unconsolidated or partly consolidated sediments or decomposed rock by means of a mechanically driven sampler. The purpose of these borings is to obtain knowledge of the composition, the thickness, the depth, the sequence, the structure, and the pertinent physical properties of foundation or borrow materials. Drive sample boring and sampling shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1587. Standard Penetration Tests (SPT) shall be performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586.
3. Undisturbed Sample Borings and Sampling: An undisturbed sample boring is a boring made to obtain soil samples which, when tested, will show properties as close to the in situ (in place) properties as any sample which can be obtained. All undisturbed sampling shall be accomplished in accordance with ASTM D 1587.
4. Core Drilling: Drilling of cores shall be performed as per ASTM D 2113. The method used shall provide equally good recovery of cores from both hard and soft rocks.
5. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): Hydraulic pressure testing is the process of forcing water under pressure into subsurface rock formations through pre-drilled holes for the purpose of determining the subsurface leakage conditions and possible grouting requirements.
6. Test Pit Excavation and Sampling: A test pit is any excavation in soil, hardpan, decomposed rock, or other unconsolidated or partially consolidated overburden materials which has an open cross-sectional area large enough to permit efficient excavation and shoring/lining, engineering and geological inspection and photographing of the subsurface soils and manual undisturbed sampling from within the test pit. All test pits shall be excavated, dewatered (if necessary), shored/lined and protected from surface water drainage in accordance with all applicable Federal, State, local, and OSHA safety regulations.
7. Bearing Capacity: ASTM D 1149.
8. Soils Classification: ASTM D 2487, ASTM D 2488, MIL-STD 619.

#### C. Submittals

1. Permits, Certifications, and Licenses: Comply with all Federal, State and local laws, regulations and ordinances relating to the performance of this work. The Contractor shall, at its own expense, procure all required permits, certifications and licenses required of him by Federal, State, and local law for the execution of this work. Furnish copies of all such documents to the Owner prior to starting work.
2. Drilling, Sampling, and Testing Plan: Prior to starting work, submit a plan for drilling, sampling, testing, and safety. The plan shall include, but not be limited to, the proposed method of drilling and sampling including a description of the equipment and sampling tools that will be used, a listing of any subcontractors to include a description of how the subcontractors will be used and a description of all methods and procedures that will be utilized to ensure a safe operation and to protect the environment. This submittal shall also include a statement of the prior experience, in



the type of work described in these specifications, of the person or persons designated to perform the work specified herein. No work shall be performed until this plan has been approved and no deviation from the approved plan will be permitted without prior approval by the Owner.

3. Drilling Log: Submit complete, legible copies of drilling log and records to the Owner within 5 days after a hole or test pit is completed.

D. Care And Delivery Of Samples

1. General: The Contractor shall be solely responsible for preserving all samples in good condition. Keep samples from freezing and from undue exposure to the weather, and shall keep all descriptive labels and designations on sample jars, tubes, and boxes clean and legible until final delivery. Except as otherwise specified, deliver samples safely to test facility, **as directed**. Deliver samples within the time limits specified for each type of investigation or in accordance with schedules prepared by the Owner.
2. Undisturbed Samples: Take every precaution to avoid damage to samples as a result of careless handling and undue delay in shipping. Ship samples in containers approved by the Owner, of sufficient durability to protect the samples from any damage during shipment. Pack sample tubes in vermiculite or other equal material approved by the Owner to protect the samples against vibration. Avoid exposing sealed and crated samples to precipitation, direct sunlight, freezing and temperatures in excess of **100 degrees F (38 degrees C)**. Samples permitted to freeze, even partially, shall be replaced by the Contractor at its expense. In general, no undisturbed samples shall remain on the site of sampling for more than one week before shipment. Store and ship samples with the tube in a horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**, position in order to prevent consolidation and segregation or change of water content.

E. Project/Site Conditions

1. Environmental Requirements
  - a. In order to prevent and to provide for abatement and control of any environmental pollution arising from Contractor activities in the performance of this contract, the Contractor and its subcontractors shall comply with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws, regulations, and ordinances concerning environmental pollution control and abatement.
    - 1) The Contractor shall be responsible for keeping informed of all updates and changes in all applicable laws, regulations, and ordinances.
    - 2) The Contractor shall not pollute lakes, ditches, rivers, springs, canals, waterways, groundwaters, or reservoirs with drill fluids, fuels, oils, bitumens, calcium chloride, insecticides, herbicides, or other materials that may be harmful to the environment or a detriment to outdoor recreation.
2. Field Measurements: The approximate locations of drill holes or test pits shall be as directed. The actual locations will be established in the field by the Owner prior to the start of work. The elevations of the established locations will also be provided by the Owner prior to the start of work. The Contractor will provide access to the locations as it deems necessary for the prosecution of the work. Since no separate payment will be made for access construction, all costs associated with this shall be included in the cost of drilling or excavating.

F. Sequencing And Scheduling

1. Schedule of Drilling, Sampling and Testing: The schedule of Drilling, Sampling, and Testing is listed in the following schedule:

SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING AND TESTING

HOLE NO. or PIT NO.	METHOD	DEPTH FT(M)	VERTICAL or INCLINED	SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS
------------------------	--------	----------------	-------------------------	-------------------------

2. Order of Work: The order in which the work is to be accomplished will be determined in the field by the Owner.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Containers: Furnish jars, tubes, and boxes that meet the following requirements. All such containers will become the property of the Owner and the cost thereof shall be included in the contract price for the applicable item for which payment is provided.
1. Sample Jars: Sample jars shall be **1 pint (0.5 L) OR 1 quart (1.0 L), as directed**, capacity, wide-mouth over **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** in diameter, glass **OR** plastic, **as directed**, jars with moisture-tight screw tops.
  2. Shipping Boxes: Boxes for shipping sample jars shall be corrugated cardboard **OR** wooden, **as directed**, boxes that have the capacity to hold no more than 12 sample jars and the strength to contain and protect the jars and their contents under ordinary handling and environmental conditions.
  3. Tubes and Crates: Undisturbed samples shall be shipped in thin walled Shelby tubes packed in crates.
  4. Core Boxes: Longitudinally partitioned, hinged top, wooden core boxes constructed of plywood and dressed lumber or other approved materials shall be used for all rock cores. As many core boxes as may be required shall be used to box all core. Core boxes shall be completely equipped with all necessary partitions, hinges, and a hasp for holding down the cover. In addition, the Contractor shall provide wood spacers made of surfaced lumber (not plywood) and having dimensions that are **1/8 inch (3 mm)** less than the inside dimensions of the individual core box troughs and no less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick for blocking the core in the boxes and for providing a marking space to identify core runs and pull depths/elevations. The quantities of these blocks that are required are: ten blocks per core box for **3-inch (75-mm)** or smaller core, five blocks per core box for **4-inch (100-mm)** and PQ core, and three blocks per core box for **6-inch (150-mm)** core. The box should have the following capacities:
 

<b>6-inch (150-mm) core</b>	single row of core
<b>4-inch (100-mm) or PQ core</b>	2 rows of core
<b>3-inch (75-mm) or smaller core</b>	3 or 4 rows of core

The maximum length of a core box shall be **4 feet (1.2 m)** for **3-inch (75 mm)** or smaller core and shall be dimensioned so that a box will hold **12 to 16 feet (3.6 to 4.9 m)** of core. The maximum length of a core box for core that is larger than **3 inches (75 mm)** shall be **5 feet (1.5 m)**.
- B. Labels
1. Sample Jar Labels: A printed or type-written, fade resistant and waterproof label shall be affixed to the outside of each jar and shall contain the following information:
 

PROJECT _____	LOCATION _____
(Such as Table Rock Dam)	(Such as Borrow Area B)
HOLE NO. _____	STATION _____
JAR NO. _____ of _____ JARS	
TOP ELEV. OF HOLE _____	DEPTH OF SAMPLE _____
DESCRIPTION OF MATERIAL _____	
(Such as moist, silty, medium sand)	
  2. Shipping Box Labels: Each box of jar samples shall be identified with weatherproof and wear-proof labels indicating the following:
 

PROJECT: [_____]
LOCATION: [_____]
JAR SAMPLES FROM HOLE OR HOLES: [_____]
  3. Core Box Labels: Core boxes shall be identified with stenciled labels. The information on this label shall contain the following:
 

PROJECT: [_____]
HOLE NO. [_____]
BOX NO. [_____]
TOTAL NUMBER OF BOXES FOR THE HOLE: [_____]

## 1.3 EXECUTION



A. Mobilization and Demobilization

1. Mobilization: Mobilization shall consist of the delivery to the site of all plant, equipment, materials and supplies to be furnished by the Contractor, the complete assembly in satisfactory working order of all such plant and equipment at the jobsite and the satisfactory storage at the site of all such materials and supplies.
2. Demobilization: Demobilization shall consist of the removal from the site of all plant, equipment, materials and supplies after completion of the work and also includes, at the direction of the Owner, the cleanup and removal of all scrap, waste backfill material, waste drilling fluid, soil contaminated with engine/hydraulic oil, backfilling all sumps or excavations resulting from the operations and, in general, returning the site as close to its original condition as possible.

B. Equipment and Supplies

1. Auger Boring and Sampling: The equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making auger borings shall include, but not be limited to, standard continuous flight augers and/or standard cup-type earth augers, similar or equal to the Iwan Auger and not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** in diameter unless otherwise approved. The augers shall be completely equipped with all the accessories necessary for boring and sampling of overburden materials to the depths and diameters specified or shown on the drawings.
2. Drive Sample Boring and Sampling: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making drive sample borings shall include, but not be limited to, standard **2-inch (50 mm)** split barrel **OR** solid barrel, **as directed**, drive samplers and power-driven drilling machinery of a type or types approved by the Owner, complete with a drive-hammer of the weight as required to meet project requirements, and all other accessories for taking samples of all types of soils or decomposed rock at the locations and to the depths indicated in the schedule in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING. The drive shoe for the split barrel samplers shall be of hardened steel and shall be replaced or repaired when it becomes dented or distorted. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all casing, drill stem, drill bits, drill fluid and additives, pumps, and power necessary to accomplish the required boring and sampling.
3. Undisturbed Sample Boring and Sampling: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for making undisturbed sample borings shall include, but not be limited to, power-driven drilling machinery of an approved type or types complete with the special devices and accessories enumerated and described hereinafter. Drilling machinery shall be of the hydraulic feed type. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all samplers, casing, drill stem, drill bits, drill fluid and additives, pumps, and power necessary to accomplish the required boring and sampling. Drill casing, if used, shall be of such minimum inside diameter as to allow use of the selected sampler.
  - a. Sands and Cohesive Soils: The sampling device used to sample fine to medium grain sands and cohesive soils shall be a fixed or stationary piston type that uses a **3-inch (75-mm) OR 5-inch (125-mm)**, **as directed**, diameter thin wall Shelby tube. Subject to the approval of the Owner, floating or free piston and non-piston type samplers may be used provided adequate means, such as check valve or vacuum system, are provided to prevent loss of samples.
  - b. Stiff and Dense Soils: The sampling device for obtaining samples of stiff and dense soils shall be similar or equal to a Denison double tube, swivel head core barrel, or a Pitcher sampler and must be approved by the Owner prior to use.
4. Core Drilling - Size BX and NX Core: Equipment to be furnished by the Contractor for core drilling shall include core-drilling machinery of a type or types approved by the Owner complete with all the accessories needed to take continuous rock cores of a diameter consistent with bit size to the depths specified. The Contractor shall use, as a minimum, a standard ball-bearing, swivel-head, double-tube core barrel, or equivalent. The capacity of the core barrel shall not exceed **10.5 feet (3.2 m)** of core. Supplies for core drilling to be furnished by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, all casing, drill rods, core barrels, coring bits, piping, pumps, water, tools, and power required for drilling and all boxes and containers required for core samples. Selection of the type of bit shall be at the Contractor's discretion provided that the selected bit produces high quality rock core. (see paragraph SUPPLEMENTAL BORINGS or PITS). The

- Contractor's drilling equipment shall be capable of drilling inclined as well as vertical core holes as specified.
5. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): Pressure testing equipment to be furnished by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, a water pump with a minimum capacity of **50 gallons per minute (3.15 liters per second)** that is capable of delivering a constant discharge pressure with double expander packers with rubber expansion elements set **5 feet (1.5 m) OR 10 feet (3 m), as directed**, apart with piping so arranged that water may be admitted either below the bottom packer element or between the two packer elements, a pressure relief valve, a pressure gage capable of measuring water pressures to the nearest **10 psi (1.45 kPa)** and water meter capable of measuring flows to the nearest **1.6 gallon(s) per minute (0.1 liter(s) per second)**. Supplies shall include, but not be limited to, all accessory valves, gages, surge tanks, stopcocks, plugs, expanders, potable water for testing, standby pumps, fuels, pipes, pressure hose, and tools necessary for maintaining uninterrupted tests for each boring to be tested. The pressure test equipment shall be configured so that the pressure gage is located at the top of the hole, a by-pass water line and valve are located between the pump and the gage, a flow meter is located between the by-pass and the pressure gage, and a valve is located in the line between the flow meter and the pressure gage. All equipment and supplies used for pressure testing shall be approved by the Owner prior to use.
  6. Test Pit Excavation and Sampling: Selection of the test pit excavation, shoring/lining and dewatering (if necessary) methods and equipment shall be at the Contractor's discretion but must be approved by the Owner. When the number of test pits to be excavated is large, and when adaptable mechanical trenching equipment is available, the Owner may require that such mechanical excavating equipment be used to expedite completion of the pits. Supplies which the Contractor shall furnish for obtaining undisturbed samples shall include, but not be limited to, split metal cylinders and/or metal or wooden boxes of acceptable sizes and types. Accessories to be supplied by the Contractor shall include, but not be limited to, a small sample trimming shovel or spade, hatchet, trimming knife, wax and facilities for melting and brushing same, trowels, labels, and boxes for shipping samples. The Contractor shall also furnish all materials required for shoring/lining to comply with all applicable safety regulations. The Owner may require the Contractor to salvage and re-use this shoring/lining material in successive test pits.
- C. Identifying Samples: Sample jars, shipping boxes, and labels shall comply with paragraphs SAMPLE JARS, SHIPPING BOXES, and LABELS, respectively. The Contractor shall take all precautions required to insure that the shipping boxes are not subjected to rough handling or damaging environmental conditions, and complies with paragraph CARE AND DELIVERY OF SAMPLES. A copy of the boring log for the portion of the boring that the samples came from shall be enclosed in the shipping box.
- D. Auger Boring and Sampling: Samples shall be labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Samples shall be obtained for each change of overburden material and at maximum vertical intervals as directed by the Owner. In order to retain the natural moisture content of the material to the fullest extent possible, all samples shall be of sufficient volume to completely fill the sample jars and the samples shall be placed in the sample jars as soon as possible after they are taken from the hole. All sample jars shall be labeled. In general, no sample shall remain on the site of boring for more than 1 week after being taken from the boring and placed in a jar.
- E. Drive Sample Boring and Sampling: Samples shall be labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Drive sample borings drilled through overburden materials shall be suitably cased to permit obtaining drive samples of the size or sizes specified or as directed. Samples shall be taken either continuously or at a change in materials in accordance with instructions contained in the SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING or as otherwise directed by the Owner. To minimize the compacting effect of casing driving when casing is used to stabilize a boring, the bottom of the casing shall be kept as high above the soil sampling zone as conditions permit. If hollow stem auger is used as a casing and/or to advance the boring, a plug assembly must be used to keep soil from entering the inside of the auger. Above the water table, samples shall be obtained from a dry hole. Below the water table, water shall be maintained within the hole at or above the groundwater level.

Where information on the natural water content of soils above the water table is not needed and when approved by the Owner, boreholes may be drilled without casing by using a suitable drilling fluid to prevent collapse of sidewalls. When a drilling fluid is used, soil sampling shall be done by such means that will prevent inclusion of drilling fluid in the samples. The samples shall be placed in sample jars as soon as possible after they are taken from the hole and, when possible, the volume of the sample shall be large enough to completely fill the sample jar in order that the natural moisture content of the material may be retained to the fullest extent possible. All samples shall be labeled. No sample shall remain at the site of boring for more than one week after being taken from the hole.

- F. **Undisturbed Sample Boring And Sampling:** In general, labeling of undisturbed samples shall conform to paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. Particular care shall be taken to indicate the top and bottom of each sample tube. Tubes and crates for undisturbed samples shall be labeled "DO NOT JAR OR VIBRATE" and "HANDLE, HAUL, AND SHIP IN A HORIZONTAL **OR** VERTICAL POSITION," **as directed**.
1. **Procedure:** The procedure for Undisturbed Sample Boring and Sampling shall be the same as outlined in paragraph DRIVE SAMPLE BORING AND SAMPLING, except that the sampling device shall be advanced downward by one continuous, smooth drive using the drill rig's hydraulic feed system. The hydraulic down pressure shall be read and recorded at **6 inch (150 mm)** intervals during each sample drive. The sampling device for stiff and dense soils shall be advanced by continuous rotation of the outer cutting barrel in conjunction with use of drill fluid circulation. Driving of any undisturbed sampling device by means such as a drop hammer will not be permitted.
  2. **Sealing**
    - a. **Alternate 1:** The soil sample obtained in a thin wall Shelby tube shall be retained in the tube and sealed on both ends with a mechanically expandable O-ring sealing disk of the appropriate size.
    - b. **Alternate 2:** The soil sample obtained in a thin wall Shelby tube shall be extruded from the tube in the field as soon as the tube is removed from the boring by a method approved by the Owner. The extruded soil sample shall immediately be wrapped in aluminum foil or thin plastic wrap and placed in the center of a metal bottomed, waxed cardboard or plastic tube that has a diameter of at least **1 inch (25 mm)** larger than the diameter of the soil sample, is at least **1-inch (25 mm)** longer than the length of the soil sample, and has at least **1/2-inch (13 mm)** of congealed 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax in the bottom. The annular space between the soil sample and the tube shall be filled with a 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax to a distance of at least **1/2-inch (13 mm)** above the top of the soil sample.
    - c. **Alternate 3:** Both ends of the soil sample tube/liner obtained with a Denison barrel, or its equivalent, shall be cleaned out to remove all drill fluid contaminated and/or disturbed soil or to a minimum distance of **2 inches (50 mm)** from the ends of the tube/liner. Any material removed that is not contaminated with drill fluid shall be placed in a sample jar and labeled in accordance with paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES. The cleaned out ends of the sample liner tube shall then be sealed with a 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax. A metal or wooden disk, having a diameter just slightly smaller than the inside diameter of the liner tube shall be inserted into the wax to a distance of **1/4-inch (6 mm)** from the end of the soil sample. The wax plugs shall be flush with the ends of the tube and a final seal consisting of a metal cap or tape shall be placed over the ends of the tube.
- G. **Core Hole Overburden Drilling:** Where samples of overburden materials are required in connection with core drilling, the soil overburden shall be drilled and sampled in accordance with the applicable provisions for the type of samples required. Where sampling of the overburden materials is not required, the Contractor may utilize any method and equipment for drilling and, if required, casing through the overburden that will not affect the quality of the core drilling from the rock surface downward in accordance with these specifications. The method chosen must be approved by the Owner prior to starting any overburden drilling.

H. Core Drilling - Size BX and NX core.

1. Procedure: All holes shall be drilled vertically **OR** at the inclined angles listed in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING, **as directed**, to the bottom elevations or depths specified unless indicated in the schedule of borings or directed to be drilled otherwise. Off-setting of borings from the locations specified in the Plan of Borings or as shown on the drawings, will not be permitted without prior approval. Casing through the overburden may be required. This casing shall be sealed in the rock at the elevation where rock is encountered prior to commencement of rock coring. The Contractor shall operate its drills at such speeds and with such down pressures and shall control drill fluid pressures and quantities to insure maximum core quality and recovery in whatever kind of rock is encountered. Where soft or broken rock is encountered, the Contractor shall reduce the length of runs to **5 feet (1.5 m)** or less in order to reduce and/or keep core loss and core disturbance to the minimum. Failure to comply with the foregoing procedures shall constitute justification for the Owner to require redrilling, at the Contractor's expense, of any boring from which the core recovery is unsatisfactory. The Contractor shall exercise particular care in recording zones of water loss, cavities, rod jerks, rough drilling and other unusual and non-ordinary coring experiences that, supplementing the core record, will throw light on the nature and the extent of any fracturing or abnormalities.
2. Arrangement of Core: Core boxes shall comply with paragraph CORE BOXES. All cores shall be arranged neatly in the partitioned boxes in the same sequence in which they occurred before removal from the hole. Facing the open box with the hinged cover above and the open box below, cores shall be arranged in descending sequence beginning at the left end of the trough nearest the hinges and continuing in the other troughs from left to right. The highest part of the core shall be placed in box 1, and the lower portions of the core shall be placed in the other boxes in consecutive order.
3. Preservation of Core: Representative samples of core shall be wrapped in aluminum foil or thin plastic wrap or cheese cloth and then sealed by applying paraffin wax to the outside of the wrapping material prior to placing the core in the core box. This sealing process shall be accomplished as soon as possible after the core is removed from the core barrel. The minimum length of core that is preserved from each boring shall be no less than 2.5 times the core diameter. Spacer blocks shall be marked and placed in the core box to show where samples have been removed.
4. Labeling, Marking and Packing Core: Stenciled labels for core boxes complying with paragraph CORE BOX LABELS shall be placed on the inside and outside of the top cover in addition to each end. In addition, the depths (or elevations) of each core run/pull shall be marked with a black waterproof pen on the spacer blocks that are placed between core pulls. When a box is full, the space between the core and the trough sides shall be filled with finely ground vermiculite or other packing material approved by the Owner.
5. Disposition of Core: While on site, the Contractor shall protect the filled core boxes from direct sunlight, precipitation, and freezing by some form of the Owner approved shelter that allows ventilation to the boxes. Upon completion of core drilling and sampling operations, core boxes containing cores shall be stored in an area provided by the Owner near the site of drilling **OR** shipped or delivered to address provided by the Owner, **as directed**.

- I. Pressure Testing (Hydraulic): The Contractor shall pressure-test each hole commencing at the top of bedrock and progressing downward to the bottom of the hole or to such depths as determined by the Owner below which testing of the hole is not necessary. Where core data from the test holes indicate only isolated zones that are open or fractured, pressure testing may be limited by the Owner to these zones only. Water pressure employed for each lift shall be determined in the field by the Owner and shall not exceed of depth **one pound per square inch per foot (22.6 kPa per meter)** of depth to the upper expander. The pressure test will be divided into two phases; the first phase will be a flow test which shall then be followed by the second phase which is a duration test. In performing the first phase, water is pumped slowly at first, and the flow then gradually increased to the point where the predetermined maximum pressure is maintained, by adjusting the valve on the by-pass line. The allowable pressure shall be held for 1 minute before any readings are taken. The volume of flow into the test section shall be measured for a period of 5 minutes during which time the pressure shall not vary by more than **5 psi (34.5 kPa )**. After this 5-minute test, the second phase shall be started by closing the valve located





between the flow meter and the pressure gage. The drop in pressure is then read for a period of 5 minutes at 15 to 30-second intervals. In some situations, such as in a very tight formation, the Owner may eliminate phase one of the test. The Contractor may be required to make check tests at its own expense if the testing equipment or its assembly and arrangement are found to be faulty during or after the testing of any holes. The Contractor shall record all gage and meter readings made during a pressure test on a suitable form approved by the Owner.

J. Test Pit Excavation And Sampling

1. Excavation: The test pits shall be excavated in the order scheduled in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING, and shall be excavated to depths and dimensions indicated in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING. Before excavating pits, the Contractor shall thoroughly familiarize itself with work site and with all available subsurface data, particularly groundwater conditions. Regardless of the method of excavation employed, the pits shall be excavated, dewatered and shored/lined in conformance with all applicable safety regulations.
2. Sampling: Soil samples shall be obtained from each pit at the depths/elevations indicated in paragraph SCHEDULE OF DRILLING, SAMPLING, AND TESTING **OR** at depths determined by the Owner, **as directed**. In obtaining samples from test pits, the undisturbed in situ (in place) natural physical and structural characteristics of the sampled materials shall be preserved insofar as possible both while samples are being taken and during shipment to the point of testing. In cohesive and partially cohesive soils this may be accomplished by isolating the soil column or cube to be sampled by gently trenching around it and knife-trimming it to the required dimensions of the split cylinder or box. A thin coating of melted 50/50 mixture of paraffin and microcrystalline wax shall then be applied quickly but gently to the sample with a paint brush to seal it against loss of moisture. The metal or wooden sample container, with the top and bottom removed shall then be placed over the wax coated sample such that the sample is centered within the container and the top of the container sides are at least **1 inch (25 mm)** above the top of the sample. The spaces between the sample and the side walls of the container shall then be filled with melted wax. After this wax has congealed, the space between the top of the sample container sides and the top of the sample shall be filled with wax. After this wax has congealed, it shall be trimmed so that when the top of the sample container is installed there is no void between the container top and the wax. After the container top is installed, the soil column or cube shall then be cut off a few hundred **inches (millimeters)** below the container, the sample and container inverted and removed from the pit and the sample trimmed at the base so that the bottom of the sample is at least **1 inch (25 mm)** below the bottom of the container. This space shall be filled with wax and, after the wax has congealed, it shall be trimmed so that when the bottom of the container is installed, there shall be no void between the wax and the bottom of the container. Where overburden materials to be sampled are only partially cohesive, it is best not to expose the entire soil column before waxing. By exposing and waxing small sections at a time, the sample will be subjected to less disturbance. Where natural moisture content is an important factor, delay shall be avoided in taking the sample in order that the natural moisture content of the material may be retained to the fullest extent.
3. Disposition of Samples: Samples shall be packed in vermiculite or a packing material approved by the Owner and shipped in sturdy wooden boxes of strength and construction sufficient to guarantee against damage during shipment. Boxes should be no larger than is required for shipping two such samples. All sample boxes shall be marked FRAGILE-HANDLE WITH CARE and shall be identified by labels, similar to those as specified in paragraph IDENTIFYING SAMPLES, attached to the outside of each box. Extreme care shall be taken to indicate the top and bottom of each sample. The Contractor shall avoid exposing sealed and crated samples to precipitation and extremes of temperature. Undisturbed samples permitted to freeze, even partially, shall be replaced by the Contractor at its expense. The Contractor shall not hold these samples at the site of sampling for a period in excess of one week. Prior to shipment, each sealed and boxed sample shall be checked for correct labeling.

- K. Supplemental Borings or Pits: Borings or Pits that are abandoned or from which unsatisfactory samples or cores are obtained will be supplemented by other borings or pits adjacent to the original in order that satisfactory samples or the required information will be obtained. Actual locations of any supplemental borings or pits will be established by the Owner. Penetration to the depth where the original was abandoned or to the depths where unsatisfactory samples were obtained may be made by any method selected by the Contractor that in the opinion of the Owner will permit satisfactory completion and sampling below the elevation where the last satisfactory sample was obtained in the abandoned or satisfactory sampling in the reaches where satisfactory samples were not obtained in the original borings or pits. No payment will be made for supplemental borings or pits that are required to be drilled or excavated to replace borings or pits that were abandoned or from which satisfactory samples were not obtained because of mechanical failure of drilling and sampling equipment, negligence on the part of the Contractor, or other preventable cause for which the Contractor is responsible except that payment will be made for acceptable portions of these supplementary borings or pits below the depths or outside the reaches for which payment was made for the original borings or pits.
- L. Backfilling
1. Drill Holes: Unless otherwise noted in these specifications or directed by the Owner, all drill holes shall be backfilled and abandoned in accordance with all Federal, State, and local laws, regulations and ordinances. The Contractor shall preserve all holes in good condition until final measurement and until the records and samples have been accepted. As a minimum, all holes shall be grouted from the bottom of the hole to within **2 feet (600 mm)** of the ground. All grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe that is inserted to the bottom of the boring to ensure that the grout fills the full extent of the hole. The remaining ungrouted portion of the hole shall be backfilled with local soil and tamped. All backfilling operations shall be performed in the presence of the Owner and, if required by regulation, Federal, State, and local officials. No separate payment will be made for backfilling drill holes. The cost of this work shall be included in the drilling costs.
  2. Test Pits: The Contractor shall backfill all test pits with local soil compacted to original densities as directed by the Owner. No separate payment will be made for backfilling test pits. The cost of this work shall be included in the test pit excavation costs.
- M. Records: The Contractor shall keep accurate driller's logs and records of all work accomplished under this contract and shall deliver complete, legible copies of these logs and records to the Owner upon completion of the work or at such other time or times as it may be directed. All such records shall be recorded during the actual performance of the work and shall be preserved in good condition and order by the Contractor until they are delivered and accepted. The Owner shall have the right to examine and review all such records at any time prior to their delivery to him and shall have the right to request changes to the record keeping procedure. The following information shall be included on the logs or in the records for each hole or test pit:
1. Hole or Test Pit number or designation and elevation of top of hole or test pit.
  2. Driller's name and Geologist's name.
  3. Make, size, and manufacturer's model designation of drilling, sampling, pressure testing, and test-pit excavating equipment.
  4. Type of drilling, sampling, and pressure testing operation by depth.
  5. Hole diameter.
  6. Dates and time by depths when test-pit excavation, drilling, sampling, and pressure testing operations were performed.
  7. Time required for drilling each run and pressure testing each interval tested.
  8. Drill action, rotation speed, hydraulic pressure, water pressure, tool drops, and any other unusual and non-ordinary experience which could indicate the subsurface conditions encountered.
  9. Depths at which samples or cores were recovered or attempts made to sample or core including top and bottom depth of each run and of each interval pressure tested.
  10. Classification or description by depths of the materials sampled, cored, or penetrated using the Unified Soil Classification System (ASTM D 2487) and including a description of moisture conditions, consistency and other appropriate descriptive information described in paragraph

SUPPLEMENTAL BORINGS or PITS of ASTM D 2488. This classification or description shall be made immediately after the samples or cores are retrieved.

11. Classification and description by depths of rock materials sampled or cored including rock type, composition, texture, presence and orientation of bedding, floiation, or fractures, presence of vugs or other interstices, and the RQD for each cored interval.
12. Indication of penetration resistance such as drive-hammer blows given in blows per foot for driving sample spoons and casing and the pressure in applied to push thin-wall or piston-type samplers.
13. **Weight** (**Force**) of drive hammer.
14. Percentage of sample or core recovered per run.
15. Depth at which groundwater is encountered initially and when stabilized.
16. Depths at which drill water is lost and regained and amounts.
17. Depths at which the color of the drill water return changes.
18. Type and weight of drill fluid.
19. Depth of bottom of hole.
20. Pressures employed in pressure testing.

NOT FOR BID

TABLE 1 - COMMON CORE DIAMETERS  
CORE DIAMETER

	in.	(mm)	HOLE DIAMETER	in.	(mm)
Conventional Core Barrels					
AWG	1.185	(30.1)	1.890	(48.0)	
BWG	1.655	(42.0)	2.360	(60.0)	
NWG	2.155	(54.7)	2.980	(75.7)	
HWG	3.000	(76.2)	3.907	(99.2)	
Wireline Core Barrels*					
A	1.064	(27.0)	1.890	(48.0)	
B	1.432	(36.5)	2.360	(60.0)	
N	1.875	(47.6)	2.980	(75.7)	
H	2.450	(62.2)	3.716	(94.4)	
	3.345	(85.0)	4.827	(122.6)	
Large Diameter Series					
2-3/4" X 3-7/8"	2.690	(68.3)	3.875	(98.4)	
4" X 5-1/2"	3.970	(100.8)	5.495	(139.6)	
6" X 7-3/4"	5.970	(151.6)	7.750	(196.9)	

\*No Industry Standard for Wireline Sizes. Diameters shown for wireline core barrels are nominal and vary between manufacturers.

END OF SECTION 02 32 13 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 32 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 41 13 13 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for selective demolition. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
  - b. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
  - c. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

#### C. Definitions

1. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
2. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to the Owner ready for reuse, **as directed**.
3. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
4. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### D. Materials Ownership

1. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain the Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to the Owner.
  - a. Coordinate with the Owner's archaeologist **OR** historical adviser, **as directed**, who will establish special procedures for removal and salvage.

#### E. Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For demolition firm, professional engineer, refrigerant recovery technician, **as directed**.
2. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - a. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure the Owner's building manager's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  - b. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  - c. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - d. Use of elevator and stairs.
  - e. Locations of proposed dust- and noise-control temporary partitions and means of egress, including for other tenants affected by selective demolition operations.
  - f. Coordination of the Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of the Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
  - g. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from building.
3. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.



4. Predemolition Photographs or Videotapes: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.
5. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
  - a. Comply with submittal requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".

F. Quality Assurance

1. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
2. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.
3. LEED Requirements for Building Reuse:
  - a. Credit MR 1.1 and 1.2, **as directed**: Maintain existing building structure (including structural floor and roof decking) and envelope (exterior skin and framing, excluding window assemblies and nonstructural roofing material) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - b. Credit MR 1.3: Maintain existing interior nonstructural elements (interior walls, doors, floor coverings, and ceiling systems) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
  - c. Credit MR 1.2 and 1.3, **as directed**: Maintain existing nonshell, nonstructural components (walls, flooring, and ceilings) not indicated to be demolished; do not demolish such existing construction beyond indicated limits.
4. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
5. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.
6. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - b. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - c. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - d. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - e. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

G. Project Conditions

1. the Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so the Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
2. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
  - a. Before selective demolition, items will be removed as directed by the Owner.
3. Notify the Owner of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
4. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work **OR** have been removed by the Owner under a separate contract, **as directed**.
  - b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner. the Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.

**OR**

5. Hazardous Materials: It is unknown whether hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner and the Owner. the Owner will remove hazardous materials under a separate contract.
6. Hazardous Materials (if asbestos abatement is part of Work of this Contract): Hazardous materials are present in construction to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
  - a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
7. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
8. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - a. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

H. Warranty

1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

1.2 PRODUCTS (Not Used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Utility Services And Mechanical/Electrical Systems

1. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
2. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - a. the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - b. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  - c. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - d. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.
    - 1) Where entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.

B. Preparation

1. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
2. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - a. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - b. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.



- c. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
- d. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
- e. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling.
- 3. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - a. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

#### C. Selective Demolition, General

- 1. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - a. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  - b. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - c. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  - d. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - e. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - f. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  - g. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  - h. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  - i. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".
- 2. Reuse of Building Elements: Project has been designed to result in end-of-Project rates for reuse of building elements as follows. Do not demolish building elements beyond what is indicated on Drawings without the Owner's approval.
  - a. Building Structure and Shell: 75 **OR** 100, **as directed**, percent.
  - b. Nonshell Elements: 50 percent.
- 3. Removed and Salvaged Items:
  - a. Clean salvaged items.
  - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to the Owner.
  - d. Transport items to the Owner's storage area on-site **OR** off-site **OR** designated by the Owner **OR** indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- 4. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
  - a. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.
  - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  - c. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

- d. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
  5. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by the Owner, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned, **as directed**, and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.
- D. Selective Demolition Procedures For Specific Materials
1. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Cut concrete to a depth of at least **3/4 inch (19 mm)** at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete indicated for selective demolition. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.  
**OR**  
Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals, using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
  2. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
  3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
  4. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
    - a. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
  5. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. Refer to Division 07 for new roofing requirements.
    - a. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
    - b. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.
  6. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.
- E. Disposal Of Demolished Materials
1. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, **as directed**, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
    - a. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
    - b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
    - c. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
    - d. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal".
  2. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.  
**OR**  
Burning: Burning of demolished materials will be permitted only at designated areas on the Owner's property, **as directed**, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
  3. Disposal: Transport demolished materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on the Owner's property.  
**OR**  
Disposal: Transport demolished materials off the Owner's property and legally dispose of them.
- F. Cleaning





1. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

G. Selective Demolition Schedule

1. Existing Items **OR** Construction, **as directed**, to Be Removed, as directed by the Owner.
2. Existing Items to Be Removed and Salvaged, as directed by the Owner.
3. Existing Items to Be Removed and Reinstalled, as directed by the Owner.
4. Existing Items to Remain, as directed by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 41 13 13

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 41 13 13a - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE REMOVAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for portland cement concrete removal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Section Includes:

1. Provide all labor, materials and equipment required for the removal work and disposal of existing Portland Cement Concrete indicated on the drawings and specified, including but not limited to the following:
  - a. Saw cutting existing concrete pavements, sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters noted on drawings to be removed.
  - b. Saw cutting existing concrete sidewalks for new tree pit openings (refer to drawings for locations).
  - c. Saw cutting existing bituminous paving noted on drawings to be removed.
  - d. Removal and disposal of demolished concrete sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters, including concrete removed for new tree pit openings.
  - e. Removal and disposal of demolished bituminous paving.
  - f. All excavating, rough grading and compacting as required to establish subgrade for new sidewalks, and Subgrade and Sub-Base for driveways.
  - g. Providing, placing and grading sand fill under new sidewalks. Top of compacted subgrades shall allow for the placement of sidewalks plus thickness of sand fill.
  - h. Removal and disposal of excavated material.

#### C. Special Requirements:

1. Protection: Provide protection barricades, maintain all lights and signals and other measures as required by federal, state, and municipal laws, for the full period of demolition operations and remove same when directed. In removing work, perform all work required to protect and maintain adjacent property, streets, alleys, sidewalks, curbs, and other structures remaining in place.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Backfilling Material:

1. Sand: Natural sand, with the following gradation: 100% passing the 1 sieve-, 65-100% passing the No. 4 sieve; 40-90% passing the No. 10 sieve- 30-80% passing the No. 16 sieve- 10-50% passing the No. 50 sieve; 0-30% passing the No. 100 sieve, and 0-10% passing the No. 200 sieve.
2. Crushed Stone: Crushed stone having a #57 crusher run gradation.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Demolition:

1. The contractor shall accept the site as it finds it and shall inform itself as to the character and types of work to be removed. The Owner assumes no responsibility for the condition of the existing construction to be removed or demolished.
2. No demolition shall be commenced until a program of operations has been coordinated with the Owner, except that preparatory work may be started if specifically approved by the Owner.



3. Operations shall be done in such manner as to avoid hazards to persons and property and interference with use of adjacent areas or interruption of free passage to and from such areas. Maintain Pedestrian access to all private entrances where construction of new sidewalks is in progress. Provide temporary walk ways or other means as required to maintain entry into the private properties, complying with all laws and ordinances and as approved by the Owner. Care shall be taken to prevent the spread of dust and flying particles.
4. Demolition and removal work shall be executed in a careful and orderly manner. Accumulation of rubbish will not be permitted.
5. After work is started, it shall be continued to completion at a rate that will allow the balance of the work to be completed within the time specified. If extra shifts are necessary beyond regular working hours, the work shall proceed with a minimum of nuisance to surrounding properties.
6. Contractor shall determine the nature and extent of demolition that will be necessary by comparing the drawings with the existing field conditions. It is expressly understood that this contract includes all work of a demolition nature that may be required or necessary for a full and complete execution of the work, whether particularly referred to herein or not.

B. Removal And Excavation:

1. When removing existing sidewalks, driveways, curbs and gutters provisions shall be made for satisfactory transition between replacements and the portion remaining in place. The contractor shall saw cut to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches with a concrete sawing machine to prevent the surface from spalling when the concrete is broken out. This work shall be done in such a manner that a straight joint will be secured.
2. It shall be the responsibility of the contractor to determine the thickness of the existing sidewalk to be removed. No additional compensation will be allowed because of variations from the assumed thickness or from the thickness shown on the plans.
3. After existing concrete sidewalks and driveways have been removed, excavate to depth required for sand fill.
4. The bottoms of all excavations shall be properly leveled off and all loose materials shall be removed from excavations. All wood, timber and organic materials, that are exposed at the bottom of all excavations, shall be removed and the area backfilled with sand and compacted.
5. Any excess or unauthorized excavation shall be backfilled with sand and compacted, at no additional cost to the Owner.
6. No backfill shall be placed in standing water, on frozen ground or on surfaces which have not been approved by the Commissioner.
7. Backfilling for all areas shall be approved material. Backfill shall be compacted to 95% maximum density in accordance with ASTM D 1557.
8. Contractor shall determine the nature and extent of excavation work that will be necessary by comparing the drawings with the existing areas to be excavated. It is expressly understood that this contract includes all work of an excavation nature that may be required or necessary for a complete execution of all excavation work, whether particularly referred to herein or not.

C. Disposal Of Materials:

1. All demolished and unsuitable materials, including excavated earth removed to establish required grade elevations shall be disposed of legally in such a manner that public or private property will not be damaged or endangered.

D. Clean-Up:

1. On completion of the demolition work, excavation work and before acceptance by the Owner, clean the areas affected, including areas outside the limits of the contractor's work area where permission to work has been granted. Remove surplus construction material or debris resulting from the demolition work and excavation work, and dispose of legally off the site.
2. Access routes to and from the site shall be kept clean of debris resulting from the work.

END OF SECTION 02 41 13 13a

## SECTION 02 41 16 13 - BUILDING DEMOLITION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for building demolition. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Demolition and removal of buildings and site improvements.
  - b. Abandoning in place **OR** Removing, **as directed**, below-grade construction.
  - c. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and abandoning in-place **OR** removing, **as directed**, site utilities.
  - d. Salvaging items for reuse by the Owner.

#### C. Definitions

1. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged.
2. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to the Owner ready for reuse. Include fasteners or brackets needed for reattachment elsewhere.

#### D. Materials Ownership

1. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
2. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to the Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of the Owner.
  - a. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to the Owner.

#### E. Informational Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
2. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit informational report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control, **as directed**. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
  - a. Adjacent Buildings: Detail special measures proposed to protect adjacent buildings to remain.
3. Schedule of Building Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - a. Detailed sequence of demolition work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
  - b. Temporary interruption of utility services.
  - c. Shutoff and capping or re-routing of utility services.
4. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to the Owner prior to start of demolition.
5. Predemolition Photographs **OR** Video, **as directed**: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by building demolition operations. Submit before the Work begins.
6. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
7. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that



recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.
4. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be demolished.
  - b. Review structural load limitations of existing structures.
  - c. Review and finalize building demolition schedule and verify availability of demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - d. Review and finalize protection requirements.
  - e. Review procedures for noise control and dust control.
  - f. Review procedures for protection of adjacent buildings.
  - g. Review items to be salvaged and returned to the Owner.

G. Project Conditions

1. Buildings to be demolished will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of the Work.
2. Buildings immediately adjacent to demolition area will be occupied. Conduct building demolition so operations of occupied buildings will not be disrupted.
  - a. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice of activities that will affect operations of adjacent occupied buildings.
  - b. Maintain access to existing walkways, exits, and other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings.
    - 1) Do not close or obstruct walkways, exits, or other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
3. the Owner assumes no responsibility for buildings and structures to be demolished.
  - a. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
  - b. Before building demolition, the Owner will remove certain items, as directed by the Owner.
4. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work.
  - b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and the Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner under a separate contract.

**OR**

- Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in buildings and structures to be demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
- a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - c. the Owner will provide material safety data sheets for materials that are known to be present in buildings and structures to be demolished because of building operations or processes performed there.
5. On-site storage or sale of removed items or materials is not permitted.

H. Coordination

1. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with the Owner's on-site operations **OR** operations of adjacent occupied buildings, **as directed**.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Soil Materials

1. Satisfactory Soils: Satisfactory Soils: For soils which is to be used for backfilling voids that result from demolition operations in below-grade areas, comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Examination

1. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting demolition operations.
2. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction provided by the Owner. the Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
3. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs **OR** video, **as directed**, of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
4. Perform **OR** Engage a professional engineer to perform, **as directed**, an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during building demolition operations.
  - a. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
5. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.

### B. Preparation

1. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction before starting demolition.
2. Existing Utilities: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utilities serving buildings and structures to be demolished.
  - a. the Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.  
**OR**  
Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies, **as directed**.
  - b. If removal, relocation, or abandonment of utility services will affect adjacent occupied buildings, then provide temporary utilities that bypass buildings and structures to be demolished and that maintain continuity of service to other buildings and structures.
  - c. Cut off pipe or conduit a minimum of **24 inches (610 mm)** below grade. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.  
**OR**  
Existing Utilities: Refer to Division 22 AND Division 26 for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utilities. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing, **as directed**.
3. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent unexpected movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  - a. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.
4. Salvaged Items: Comply with the following:
  - a. Clean salvaged items of dirt and demolition debris.
  - b. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - c. Store items in a secure area until delivery to the Owner.
  - d. Transport items to storage area designated by the Owner **OR** indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - e. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

C. Protection

1. Existing Facilities: Protect adjacent walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during demolition operations. Maintain exits from existing buildings.
2. Existing Utilities: Maintain utility services to remain and protect from damage during demolition operations.
  - a. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving adjacent occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1) Provide at least 72 hours' notice to occupants of affected buildings if shutdown of service is required during changeover.
3. Temporary Protection: Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, and as indicated. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities And Controls".
  - a. Protect adjacent buildings and facilities from damage due to demolition activities.
  - b. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
  - c. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
  - d. Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - e. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around building demolition area and to and from occupied portions of adjacent buildings and structures.
  - f. Protect walls, windows, roofs, and other adjacent exterior construction that are to remain and that are exposed to building demolition operations.
  - g. Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust, noise, and dirt migration to occupied portions of adjacent buildings.
4. Remove temporary barriers and protections where hazards no longer exist. Where open excavations or other hazardous conditions remain, leave temporary barriers and protections in place.

D. Demolition, General

1. General: Demolish indicated existing buildings and site improvements completely. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - a. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - b. Maintain fire watch during and for a specified time after flame cutting operations as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - d. Locate building demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
2. Engineering Surveys: During demolition, perform surveys to detect hazards that may result from building demolition activities.
3. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct building demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - a. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Use water mist and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations. Do not use water when it may damage adjacent construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
4. Explosives: Use of explosives is not permitted, **unless directed otherwise**.

E. Demolition By Mechanical Means

1. Proceed with demolition of structural framing members systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete building demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
2. Remove debris from elevated portions of the building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - a. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to minimize ground impact and dust generation.
3. Salvage: Items to be salvaged are indicated on Drawings **OR** below, **as directed**:
  - a. Doors and door hardware.
  - b. Windows.
  - c. Cabinets.
  - d. Mirrors.
  - e. Chalkboards.
  - f. Tackboards.
  - g. Marker boards.
  - h. Plumbing fixtures.
  - i. Other items as directed.
4. Below-Grade Construction: Abandon foundation walls and other below-grade construction. Cut below-grade construction flush with grade.  
**OR**  
Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction that are within footprint of new construction and extending **5 feet (1.5 m)** outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon below-grade construction outside this area.
  - a. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, completely **OR** to at least **6 inches (150 mm)** below grade **OR** to at least **12 inches (300 mm)** below grade **OR** to depths indicated, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Below-Grade Construction: Demolish foundation walls and other below-grade construction.
  - b. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, completely **OR** to at least **6 inches (150 mm)** below grade **OR** to at least **12 inches (300 mm)** below grade **OR** to depths indicated, **as directed**.
5. Existing Utilities: Abandon existing utilities and below-grade utility structures. Cut utilities flush with grade.  
**OR**  
Existing Utilities: Demolish existing utilities and below-grade utility structures that are within **5 feet (1.5 m)** outside footprint indicated for new construction. Abandon utilities outside this area.
  - a. Fill abandoned utility structures with satisfactory soil materials **OR** recycled pulverized concrete, **as directed**, according to backfill requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - b. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
  - c. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.  
**OR**  
Existing Utilities: Demolish and remove existing utilities and below-grade utility structures.
  - a. Piping: Disconnect piping at unions, flanges, valves, or fittings.
  - b. Wiring Ducts: Disassemble into unit lengths and remove plug-in and disconnecting devices.

F. Demolition By Explosives – ONLY IF APPROVED BY THE OWNER

1. Explosives: Perform explosive demolition according to governing regulations.
  - a. Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to, or using explosives on, Project site.
  - b. Do not damage adjacent structures, property, or site improvements when using explosives.
2. Comply with recommendation in Explosives Consultant's report.





G. Site Restoration

1. Below-Grade Areas: Rough grade below-grade areas ready for further excavation or new construction.

**OR**

Below-Grade Areas: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from building demolition operations with satisfactory soil materials **OR** recycled pulverized concrete **OR** recycled pulverized masonry, **as directed**, according to backfill requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

2. Site Grading: Uniformly rough grade area of demolished construction to a smooth surface, free from irregular surface changes. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.

H. Repairs

1. Promptly repair damage to adjacent buildings caused by demolition operations.

I. Disposal Of Demolished Materials

1. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in EPA approved landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. See Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management And Disposal" for recycling and disposal of demolition waste.
  - a. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - b. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
2. Do not burn demolished materials.

J. Cleaning

1. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by building demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before building demolition operations began.
  - a. Clean roadways of debris caused by debris transport.

END OF SECTION 02 41 16 13

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 41 16 13	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 41 16 13	02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 19 13	01 71 23 16	Cutting and Patching
02 41 19 13	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 41 19 13	02 41 16 13	Building Demolition
02 41 19 13	02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 41 19 16	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 41 19 16	02 41 16 13	Building Demolition
02 41 19 16	02 41 13 13a	Portland Cement Concrete Removal
02 42 21 35	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 42 21 47	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 43 13 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 58 13 00 - FARM-TYPE WIRE FENCING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of farm-type wire fencing. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Fabric shall be galvanized steel wire complying with ASTM A 116.

#### B. Framework

1. Steel
  - a. Posts shall comply with ASTM A 702, T-section, zinc-coated.
  - b. Stays shall be 9-1/2 gauge twisted wire, galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 641, Class 3.
2. Wood: Posts shall be cut from cedar, Douglas fir, pine, or other approved species of timber. Posts shall be peeled, treated, dressed, and cured and shall contain no unsound knots. All posts shall match existing post dimensions. All wood posts and braces shall be given a pressure preservative treatment in a closed retort. The treatment shall comply with AWPA C2.
  - a. Preservative. Wood cut or sawed after treatment shall have the cut surfaces well-coated with the preservative used in the treatment. All wood shall be pressure treated in accordance with AWPA C1 or AWPA C2, as applicable.

#### C. Braces: Steel braces shall have the same configuration as line posts and uprights without the anchor plate. Braces shall meet all of the requirements for wood posts.

#### D. Connectors

1. Wire for Attaching Fabric to Posts shall be 12-1/2 gauge or coarser, galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 641, Class 3.
2. Staples and Nails shall comply with Fed. Spec. FF-N-105. Staples and nails shall be zinc-coated and of sufficient length for purpose required.

#### E. Gates

1. Tubular Steel:
  - a. Frame shall be a minimum of 1-3/8 inch outside diameter tubular steel, braced with a sturdy center bar and diagonal adjustable brace wire to prevent sagging. Gates shall be fitted with hinges. All material shall be hot-dipped zinc-coated.
  - b. Fabric for Gates shall be as specified for the fence and shall be securely tied to the framework at top, bottom, and sides with 9-gauge wire.
2. Angle Iron
  - a. Frame shall be fabricated of angle iron with cross ties and stays of light angle iron. Frame shall be zinc-coated in compliance with ASTM A 120 or A 153.
  - b. Fabric for Gates shall be as specified for the fence and shall be securely tied to the framework at top, bottom, and sides with 9-gauge wire.
3. Wood: Provide a 3/8-inch minimum diameter galvanized steel truss rod and turnbuckle.

- F. Barbed Wire shall comply with ASTM A 121 and shall be made from 2 strands of 12-1/2 gauge galvanized steel wire, twisted, with four-point barbs spaced five inches apart. Wire shall have Class 2 zinc coating.
- G. Hardware:
1. Gate Hardware shall include the following:
    - a. Bottom Hinge shall be designed to carry the weight of the gate.
    - b. The Upper Hinge shall be adjustable.
    - c. Lock with Chain shall be 1-3/4 inch size complying with ASTM F 883.
    - d. Keeper shall automatically engage and hold the gate leaf open until manually released.
    - e. Center Plunger Rod.
    - f. Center Stop.
    - g. Vertical Lift.
    - h. Sliding Track.
  2. Lightning Arresters, Insulators and Insulator Clamps, Fasteners, Signs, and Other Accessories shall be provided and installed as required.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Wood Posts: Hold in line in a true vertical position by temporary bracing until backfilling is completed. Compact by hand tamping or other suitable methods to a density comparable to that of adjacent ground. Refasten all braces, gates, hardware, fabric, and other accessories.
2. Steel Posts: Steel posts shall be held in a vertical position and driven to the required depths by an approved post driver. Tops of posts shall not be damaged by driving operation.
3. Corner, Brace, or End Panels: Corner, brace, or end panels shall be constructed at the beginning and terminal ends, at gate openings, at all intersections, at all corners or changes in horizontal alignment of fences, in existing fence on both sides of junction with new fence, (except when junction is at a corner already braced), and on both sides of cattle guards.
4. Pull Posts shall be constructed when the distance of unbraced fencing exceeds 640 feet. Pull posts shall be spaced equidistant in the fence at intervals of 640 feet or less.
5. Wire Installation: Barbed and/or woven wire fabric shall be stretched to proper tension and securely fastened to posts. Top and bottom wires of fabric shall be tied or stapled to each post. Tie or staple every other wire to alternating posts. Every wire shall be tied to corner, pull, end, and gate posts. Wire for tying woven wire fabric and barbed wire shall be 9-gauge.
6. Restretching Existing Fabric: Fabric indicated to be restretched shall be restretched to proper tension and refastened to posts. Excess fabric extending beyond the post shall be removed.
7. Alignment: Finished fencing shall be plumb and in proper alignment with posts, and all wire work shall be taut.

END OF SECTION 02 58 13 00

## SECTION 02 58 13 00a - SNOW AND OTHER TEMPORARY FENCING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of snow and other temporary fencing. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Pickets:

1. Size: Wood pickets shall be 3/8 inch thick, 1-1/2 inches wide, and 48 inches high.
2. Coating: Red oil paint or stain.
3. Spacing: Approximately 2 inches apart.
4. Attachment: Bind together with 3 double strands of wire.

#### B. Framework:

1. Materials: Wire shall be 13 ga. galvanized steel, complying with ASTM A 641.
2. Types: The framework shall consist of 3 parallel double strands of wire twisted between pickets to hold them securely in place.
3. Wire Connectors: Wire for attaching fabric to metal posts shall be 9 ga.
4. Staples and Nails shall comply with Fed. Spec. FF-N-105. Staples and nails shall be zinc-coated and of sufficient length for purpose required.

#### C. Gates:

1. Frame: Frame shall consist of 2 parallel horizontal wooden members with pickets attached at two-inch spacing.
2. Bracing: 2 wooden members laced diagonally on the gate between the frame boards.
3. Hardware shall include 2 strap hinges, latching device, and stop bar, all of zinc-coated steel, in compliance with ASTM A 153.

#### D. Supports:

1. Steel: Line posts and uprights shall be drive type, T sections, and provided with suitable anchor plate. The sections shall be hot-rolled steel complying with ASTM A 702, galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 123. The T sections shall have the following minimum sizes:

Post Length (Feet) Post Weight (Pounds)

5	7.32
5 1/2	7.99
6	8.65
6 1/2	9.32
7	9.98
7 1/2	10.64
8	11.31
9	12.64
10	13.97

2. Wood: Posts shall be cut from cedar, Douglas fir, pine, or other approved species of timber. Posts shall be peeled, treated, dressed, and cured. All wood posts and braces shall be given a pressure preservative treatment in a closed retort. The treatment shall comply with Fed. Spec. TT-W-571. Wood cut or sawed after treatment shall have the cut surfaces well brush-coated with the preservative used in the treatment.
3. Braces: Steel braces shall have same configuration as line posts and uprights without the anchor plate. Wood braces shall be treated No. 2 or better grade, Douglas fir or southern yellow pine. Braces shall meet all of the requirements for wood posts.
4. Location: Posts shall be evenly spaced to adequately support the fence framework.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Wood Posts: Hold in line in a true vertical position by temporary bracing until backfilling is completed. Compact by hand tamping or other suitable methods to a density comparable to that of adjacent ground.
2. Steel Posts: Hold in a vertical position and drive to the required depths by an approved post driver. Post tops shall not be damaged during driving.
3. Corner, Brace, Or End Panels: Construct corner, brace, or end panels at the beginning and terminal ends, at gate openings, at all intersections, and at all corners or changes in horizontal alignment of fences, in existing fence on both sides of junction with new fence (except when junction is at a corner already braced).
4. Pull Posts shall be constructed when the distance of unbraced fencing exceeds 640 feet. Pull posts shall be spaced equidistant in the fence at intervals of 640 feet or less.
5. Framework Installation: Stretch to proper tension and securely fasten to posts. Top and bottom wires of fabric shall be tied or stapled to each post. Tie or staple every other wire to alternating posts. Every wire shall be tied or stapled to corner, pull, end, and gate posts. Wire for tied fabrics shall be 9 ga.
6. Picket Replacement: Where required, new pickets shall be securely fastened into the existing wire framework using 13 ga. galvanized wire.
7. Restretching Existing Fabric: Fabric designated to be restretched shall be restretched to proper tension and refastened to posts. Excess fabric extending beyond the post shall be removed.

END OF SECTION 02 58 13 00a

## SECTION 02 61 00 00 - EXCAVATION AND HANDLING OF CONTAMINATED MATERIAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for excavation and handling of contaminated material. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings: Separate cross-sections of each area before and after excavation and after backfilling.
2. Product Data: Work Plan within 30 calendar days after notice to proceed. No work at the site, with the exception of site inspections and surveys, shall be performed until the Work Plan is approved. The Contractor shall allow 30 calendar days in the schedule for the Owner's review. No adjustment for time or money will be made if resubmittals of the Work Plan are required due to deficiencies in the plan. At a minimum, the Work Plan shall include:
  - a. Schedule of activities.
  - b. Method of excavation and equipment to be used.
  - c. Shoring or side-wall slopes proposed.
  - d. Dewatering plan.
  - e. Storage methods and locations for liquid and solid contaminated material.
  - f. Borrow sources and haul routes.
  - g. Decontamination procedures.
  - h. Spill contingency plan.
3. Closure Report: Three (3) copies of the Closure Report within 14 calendar days of work completion at the site.
4. Test Reports
  - a. Backfill
  - b. Surveys
  - c. Confirmation Sampling and Analysis
  - d. Sampling of Stored Material
  - e. Sampling Liquid
  - f. Compaction
  - g. Test results.

#### C. Surveys

1. Surveys shall be performed immediately prior to and after excavation of contaminated material to determine the volume of contaminated material removed. Surveys shall also be performed immediately after backfill of each excavation. The Contractor shall provide cross-sections on **25 foot (7.6 meter)** intervals and at break points for all excavated areas. Locations of confirmation samples shall also be surveyed and shown on the drawings.

#### D. Regulatory Requirements

1. Permits and Licenses: The Contractor shall obtain required federal, state, and local permits for excavation and storage of contaminated material. Permits shall be obtained at no additional cost the Owner.
2. Air Emissions: Air emissions shall be monitored and controlled in accordance with the Owner's Environmental Requirements.

#### E. Chemical Testing

1. Required sampling and chemical analysis shall be conducted in accordance with local requirements and the Owner's requirements.





## F. Scheduling

1. The Contractor shall notify the Owner five (5) calendar days prior to the start of excavation of contaminated material. the Owner will **OR** The Contractor shall, **as directed**, be responsible for contacting regulatory agencies in accordance with the applicable reporting requirements.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Backfill

1. Backfill material shall be obtained from the location indicated on the drawings **OR** offsite sources approved by the Owner, **as directed**. Backfill shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D 2487 as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP, SM, SC, ML, MH, CL, or CH and shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, snow, ice or frozen materials. Backfill material shall be tested for the parameters listed below at a frequency of once per 3000 **cubic yards (cubic meters)**. A minimum of one set of classification tests shall be performed per borrow source. One backfill sample per borrow source shall also be collected and tested for the chemical parameters listed below.

<u>Physical Parameter</u>	<u>Test Method</u>
Grain Size	ASTM D 422
Compaction	ASTM D 698

Backfill shall not be used until borrow source chemical and physical test results have been submitted and approved.

## B. Spill Response Materials

1. The Contractor shall provide appropriate spill response materials including, but not limited to the following: containers, adsorbents, shovels, and personal protective equipment. Spill response materials shall be available at all times when contaminated materials/wastes are being handled or transported. Spill response materials shall be compatible with the type of materials and contaminants being handled.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

## A. Existing Structures And Utilities

1. No excavation shall be performed until site utilities have been field located. The Contractor shall take the necessary precautions to ensure no damage occurs to existing structures and utilities. Damage to existing structures and utilities resulting from the Contractor's operations shall be repaired at no additional cost to the Owner. Utilities encountered that were not previously shown or otherwise located shall not be disturbed without approval from the Owner.

## B. Clearing

1. Clearing shall be performed to the limits shown on the drawings in accordance with Division 2 Section "Site Clearing."

## C. Contaminated Material Removal

1. Excavation: Areas of contamination shall be excavated to the depth and extent shown on the drawings and not more than **0.2 feet (60 mm)** beyond the depth and extent shown on the drawings unless directed by the Owner. Excavation shall be performed in a manner that will limit spills and the potential for contaminated material to be mixed with uncontaminated material. An excavation log describing visible signs of contamination encountered shall be maintained for each area of excavation. Excavation logs shall be prepared in accordance with ASTM D 5434.
2. Shoring: If workers must enter the excavation, it shall be evaluated, shored, sloped or braced as required by U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) EM 385-1-1 and U.S. National Archives and Records Administration (NARA) 29 CFR 1926 section 650.

3. Dewatering: Surface water shall be diverted to prevent entry into the excavation. Dewatering shall be limited to that necessary to assure adequate access, a safe excavation, prevent the spread of contamination, and to ensure that compaction requirements can be met. No dewatering shall be performed without prior approval of the Owner.
- D. Confirmation Sampling And Analysis
  1. the Owner shall be present to inspect the removal of contaminated material from each site. After all material suspected of being contaminated has been removed, the excavation shall be examined for evidence of contamination. If the excavation appears to be free of contamination, field analysis shall be used to determine the presence of contamination using a real time vapor monitoring instrument **OR** immunoassay field kits, **as directed**. Excavation of additional material shall be as directed by the Owner. After all suspected contaminated material is removed, confirmation samples shall be collected and analyzed.
  2. Samples shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner. A minimum of one sample shall be collected from the bottom and each side wall of the excavation. Based on test results, the Contractor shall propose any additional excavation which may be required to remove material which is contaminated above action levels. Additional excavation shall be subject to approval by the Owner. Locations of samples shall be marked in the field and documented on the as-built drawings.
- E. Contaminated Material Storage
  1. Material shall be placed in temporary storage immediately after excavation **OR** after treatment while awaiting test results, **as directed**. The following paragraphs describe acceptable methods of material storage. Storage units shall be in good condition and constructed of materials that are compatible with the material or liquid to be stored. If multiple storage units are required, each unit shall be clearly labeled with an identification number and a written log shall be kept to track the source of contaminated material in each temporary storage unit.
  2. Stockpiles
    - a. Stockpiles shall be constructed to isolate stored contaminated material from the environment. The maximum stockpile size shall be as directed by the Owner. Stockpiles shall be constructed to include:
      - 1) A chemically resistant geomembrane liner free of holes and other damage. Non-reinforced geomembrane liners shall have a minimum thickness of **20 mils (0.5 mm)**. Scrim reinforced geomembrane liners shall have a minimum weight of **40 lbs. per 1000 square feet (20 kg/100 square meters)**. The ground surface on which the geomembrane is to be placed shall be free of rocks greater than **0.5 inches (12 mm)** in diameter and any other object which could damage the membrane.
      - 2) Geomembrane cover free of holes or other damage to prevent precipitation from entering the stockpile. Non-reinforced geomembrane covers shall have a minimum thickness of **10 mils (0.25 mm)**. Scrim reinforced geomembrane covers shall have a minimum weight of **26 lbs. per 1000 square feet (13 kg/100 square meters)**. The cover material shall be extended over the berms and anchored or ballasted to prevent it from being removed or damaged by wind.
      - 3) Berms surrounding the stockpile, a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** in height. Vehicle access points shall also be bermed.
      - 4) The liner system shall be sloped to allow collection of leachate. Storage and removal of liquid which collects in the stockpile, in accordance with paragraph Liquid Storage.
  3. Roll-Off Units: Roll-off units used to temporarily store contaminated material shall be water tight. A cover shall be placed over the units to prevent precipitation from contacting the stored material. The units shall be located as shown on the drawings. Liquid which collects inside the units shall be removed and stored in accordance with paragraph Liquid Storage.
  4. Liquid Storage: Liquid collected from excavations and stockpiles shall be temporarily stored in **55 gallon barrels (220 L barrels) OR 500 gallon tanks (2000 L tanks)**, **as directed**. Liquid storage containers shall be water-tight and shall be located as shown on the drawings.

**F. Sampling****1. Sampling of Stored Material**

- a. Samples of stored material shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner.
- b. Stored material with contaminant levels that exceed the action levels shall be treated offsite. Analyses for contaminated material to be taken to an offsite treatment facility shall conform to local, state, and federal criteria as well as to the requirements of the treatment facility. Documentation of all analyses performed shall be furnished to the Owner. Additional sampling and analyses to the extent required by the approved offsite treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner **OR** subject to approval by the Owner, **as directed**.

**OR**

Stored material with contaminant levels that exceed the action levels shall be treated onsite.

**2. Sampling Liquid**

- a. Liquid collected from excavations **OR** storage areas **OR** decontamination facilities, **as directed**, shall be sampled at a frequency of once for every 500 gallons (2,000 L) of liquid collected.
- b. Liquid with contaminant levels that exceed action levels shall be treated offsite. Analyses for contaminated liquid to be taken to an offsite treatment facility shall conform to local, state, and federal criteria as well as to the requirements of the treatment facility. Documentation of all analyses performed shall be furnished to the Owner. Additional sampling and analysis to the extent required by the approved offsite treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility receiving the material shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner **OR** subject to approval by the Owner.

**OR**

Liquid with contaminant levels that exceed action levels shall be treated onsite.

**3. Sampling Beneath Storage Units**

- a. Samples from beneath each storage unit shall be collected prior to construction of and after removal of the storage unit. Samples shall be collected at a frequency as directed by the Owner from a depth interval of 0 to 0.5 feet (0 to 0.15 m).
- b. Based on test results, soil which has become contaminated above action levels shall be removed at no additional cost to the Owner. Contaminated material which is removed from beneath the storage unit shall be handled in accordance with paragraph Sampling of Stored Material. as directed by the Owner and at no additional cost to the Owner, additional sampling and testing shall be performed to verify areas of contamination found beneath stockpiles have been cleaned up to below action levels.

**G. Spills**

1. In the event of a spill or release of a hazardous substance (as designated in NARA 40 CFR 302), pollutant, contaminant, or oil (as governed by the Oil Pollution Act [OPA], 33 U.S.C. 2701 et seq.), the Contractor shall notify the Owner immediately. If the spill exceeds the reporting threshold, the Contractor shall follow the pre-established procedures as described in the Contingency Plan for immediate reporting and containment. Immediate containment actions shall be taken to minimize the effect of any spill or leak. Cleanup shall be in accordance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations. as directed by the Owner, additional sampling and testing shall be performed to verify spills have been cleaned up. Spill cleanup and testing shall be done at no additional cost to the Owner.

**H. Backfilling**

1. Confirmation Test Results: Excavations shall be backfilled immediately after all contaminated materials have been removed and confirmation test results have been approved. Backfill shall be placed and compacted to the lines and grades shown on the drawings.

2. Compaction: Approved backfill shall be placed in lifts with a maximum loose thickness of **8 inches (200 mm)**. Soil shall be compacted to 90 percent of ASTM D 698 **OR** ASTM D 1557, **as directed**, maximum dry density. Density tests shall be performed at a frequency of once per **10,000 square feet (930 square meters)** per lift. A minimum of one density test shall be performed on each lift of backfill placed. Field in-place dry density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, or ASTM D 2922. If ASTM D 2922 is used, a minimum of one in ten tests shall be checked using ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2167. Test results from ASTM D 1556 or ASTM D 2167 shall govern if there is a discrepancy with the ASTM D 2922 test results.
- I. Disposal Requirements
  1. Offsite disposal of contaminated material shall be in accordance with Division 2 Section "Disposal of Hazardous Materials."
- J. Closure Report
  1. Three copies of a Closure Report shall be prepared and submitted within 14 calendar days of completing work at the site. The report shall be labeled with the contract number, project name, location, date, and name of general contractor. The Closure Report shall include the following information as a minimum:
    - a. A cover letter signed by a responsible company official **OR** Professional Engineer registered in the state of the work who is a responsible company official, **as directed**, certifying that all services involved have been performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the contract documents and regulatory requirements.
    - b. A narrative report including, but not limited to, the following:
      - 1) site conditions, ground water elevation, and cleanup criteria;
      - 2) excavation logs;
      - 3) field screening readings;
      - 4) quantity of materials removed from each area of contamination;
      - 5) quantity of water/product removed during dewatering;
      - 6) sampling locations and sampling methods;
      - 7) sample collection data such as time of collection and method of preservation;
      - 8) sample chain-of-custody forms; and
      - 9) source of backfill.
    - c. Copies of all chemical and physical test results.
    - d. Copies of all manifests and land disposal restriction notifications.
    - e. Copies of all certifications of final disposal signed by the responsible disposal facility official.
    - f. Waste profile sheets.
    - g. Scale drawings showing limits of each excavation, limits of contamination, known underground utilities within **50 feet (15 m)** of excavation, sample locations, and sample identification numbers. On-site stockpile, storage, treatment, loading, and disposal areas shall also be shown on the drawings.
    - h. Progress Photographs. Color photographs shall be used to document progress of the work. A minimum of four views of the site showing the location of the area of contamination, entrance/exit road, and any other notable site conditions shall be taken before work begins. After work has been started, activities at each work location shall be photographically recorded daily **OR** weekly, **as directed**. Photographs shall be a minimum of **3 x 5 inches (76.2 x 127.0 mm)** and shall include:
      - 1) Soil removal and sampling.
      - 2) Dewatering operations.
      - 3) Unanticipated events such as spills and the discovery of additional contaminated material.
      - 4) Contaminated material/water storage, handling, treatment, and transport.
      - 5) Site or task-specific employee respiratory and personal protection.
      - 6) Fill placement and grading.



- 7) Post-construction photographs. After completion of work at each site, the Contractor shall take a minimum of four views of each excavation site. A digital version of all photos shown in the report shall be included with the Closure Report. Photographs shall be a minimum of 3 inches by 5 inches (76mm by 127 mm) and shall be mounted back-to-back in double face plastic sleeves punched to fit standard three ring binders. Each print shall have an information box attached. The box shall be typewritten and arranged as follows:
- Project Name: Direction of View:  
Location: Date/Time:  
Photograph No.: Description of View:

END OF SECTION 02 61 00 00

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 61 13 00 - UNDERGROUND STORAGE TANK REMOVAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for the underground storage tank removal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Work Plan: The Work Plan within 30 days after notice to proceed. The Contractor shall allow 30 days in the schedule for the Owner's review and approval. No adjustment for time or money will be made for resubmittals required as a result of noncompliance.
2. Qualifications: A document indicating that the Contractor meets the specified requirements.
3. Reports
  - a. Backfill Material.
  - b. Tank Contents Verification.
  - c. Contaminated Water Disposal.
  - d. Soil Examination, Testing, and Analysis.
  - e. Reports including the chain-of-custody records.
  - f. Backfilling.
  - g. Copies of all laboratory and field test reports.
  - h. Tank Closure Report: 3 copies of the report for each UST site opened, prepared in a standard 3-ring binder, within 14 days of completing work at each site. Each binder shall be labeled with contract number, project name, location and tank number; each binder shall be indexed. A copy of the report shall be furnished to the Installation Environmental Coordinator.
4. Records
  - a. Salvage Rights: A record of the disposition of salvaged materials at the end of the contract.
5. Qualifications
  - a. The Contractor shall have a minimum of 2 years of tank removal experience and shall be certified by the State in which the Project is located for tank removal work.
  - b. Laboratory Services: For laboratory services the Contractor shall be validated in accordance with state certification requirements.
  - c. Support Staff: The Contractor shall identify all staff involved for the various components, including personnel collecting and shipping samples. The qualifications of these staff members shall be detailed by the Contractor.

#### C. Regulatory Requirements

1. Permits and Licenses: The Contractor, as required or as directed by the Owner, shall obtain local, state, or federal permits and licenses that directly impact the Contractor's ability to perform the work prior to commencing removal operations.
2. Statutes and Regulations: Tank closures shall be carried out in accordance with 40 CFR 280, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 264, and 40 CFR 265 as well as the applicable local and State regulations. Hazardous material and/or waste shall be transported in accordance with applicable local and State regulations.

#### D. Project/Site Conditions: See the Detailed Scope of Work

1. Sequencing and Scheduling: The Contractor shall notify the Installation Environmental Coordinator and the Owner 5 days prior to tank removal. The Contractor shall be responsible for contacting the Implementation Agency (IA) in accordance with the applicable reporting requirements.

**2. Work Plan**

- a. The Contractor shall develop, implement, maintain, and supervise as part of the work, a comprehensive plan for tank removal and related operations. As a minimum the plan shall include, but not be limited to, excavation, removal, and ultimate disposal of the tank, its contents, and any contaminated materials. The Work Plan shall be based on work experience, on the requirements of this specification, and on the following references from the American Petroleum Institute:

API RP 1604.  
API Standard 2015.  
API RP 2003.  
API Publication 2217A.  
API Publication 2219.

No work at the site, with the exception of site inspections and mobilization, shall be performed until the Work Plan is approved. At a minimum, the Work Plan shall include:

- 1) Discussion of the removal approach, tank cleaning, and tank cutting procedures.
- 2) A Sampling and Analysis Plan.
- 3) Methods to be employed for product, sludge, vapor, and pumpable liquid removal; purging and inerting; and storage methods proposed for control of surface water.
- 4) Treatment options.
- 5) Identification of waste, tank and contaminated soil transporters and means of transportation.
- 6) Treatment, disposal, and alternate facilities, and means of treatment, disposal or remediation.
- 7) Borrow source.
- 8) Spill prevention plan.
- 9) Spill contingency plan.
- 10) Decontamination procedures, shoring plan, and safety measures.

**1.2 PRODUCTS****A. Backfill Material**

1. Backfill shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D 2487 as GW, GP, GM, GC, SW, SP, SM, SC, MH, CL, or CH and shall be free from roots and other organic matter, trash, debris, snow, ice or frozen materials. If off-site materials are used, soil classification test results shall be approved prior to bringing the material onsite. The testing frequency for backfill material shall be 1 per 1000 cubic yards or a minimum of 1 test. Non-contaminated material removed from the excavation shall be used for backfill in accordance with Paragraph BACKFILLING.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. General Requirements**

1. Safety Guidelines: Personnel shall abide by the safety guidelines specified in Division 01.
2. Burning and Explosives: Use of explosives or burning debris will not be allowed.
3. Protection of Existing Structures and Utilities: The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to avoid damage to existing structures, their appurtenances, monitoring wells, or utilities that may be affected by work activities. Any damage to utilities or monitoring wells resulting from the Contractor's operations shall be repaired at no expense to the Owner. The Contractor shall coordinate with the installation to locate underground utilities prior to beginning construction. Utilities encountered which were not previously shown or otherwise located shall not be disturbed without approval from the Owner.
4. Shoring: Shoring requirements shall be provided.

**B. Tank Contents Verification**



1. Sampling: Tank product, pumpable liquids, tank coatings and sludge shall be sampled by the Contractor. If the data is not adequate, additional sampling and analysis to the extent required by the approved permitted treatment, storage or disposal (TSD) facility receiving the material shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Meeting all regulatory requirements, including the preparation of hazardous materials and waste for transportation shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
  2. Analysis: Tank contents shall be tested by the Contractor for the parameters listed herein. Analyses shall include total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH), benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene and xylene (BETX), and lead.
  3. Characterization: Prior to removing any of the tank contents, the contents shall be characterized to determine if the tank contents must be disposed as a hazardous or special waste or in a special manner based on local, state, and Federal disposal regulations. Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be characterized in accordance with 40 CFR 261 and 40 CFR 279. The waste contents determination and accompanying test results for each phase present in the tank shall be submitted to the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for any additional requirements identified by the disposal facility. The tank contents shall not be removed until approval is given by the Owner.
- C. Clearing, Grubbing And Removals
1. Areas designated for clearing and grubbing shall be cleared of all trees, stumps, down timber, brush, rubbish, roots larger than 75 mm (3 inches) in diameter, and matted roots prior to commencing operations. Concrete or asphalt pavement shall be saw cut at the limits of removal, broken and removed with the resulting debris disposed of as directed by the Owner. Chain link fence shall be removed and salvaged for reuse or disposed of off-site, as directed by the Owner.
- D. Topsoil
1. Uncontaminated topsoil shall be stripped and stockpiled separately for reuse at a location approved by the Owner if it meets the requirements of clean fill given in Paragraph BACKFILLING. Additional topsoil in excess of that produced by excavation shall be obtained where directed by the Owner. All areas disturbed by tank removal operations, other than areas to receive pavement or similar surface under this contract, shall be topsoiled. Topsoil shall be used wherever directed by the Owner.
- E. Preparations For Excavation: Before excavating, the Contractor shall drain product piping back to the tank, remove residual liquids trapped in the product lines, and remove all product from the tank; and the tank shall be purged and vented in accordance with API RP 1604, and as specified herein.
1. Removal of Product, Pumpable Liquids, and Sludge: Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be contained, and stored onsite, prior to disposal. Contaminated water shall be treated as specified. Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be analyzed and segregated to recover reusable products by the Owner prior to being transported to the designated location or treatment, storage and disposal (TSD) facility. Tank product, pumpable liquids, and sludge shall be removed and disposed of by the Contractor. No Owner facilities shall be used for permanent storage or disposal of the wastes. Temporary storage on Owner's facilities will be allowed only until testing is complete, manifests (if necessary) are complete, and transportation is arranged. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining all required permits. Usable product shall be the property of the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide approved containers, vehicles, equipment, labor, signs, labels, placards and manifests and associated land disposal restriction notices and notifications, necessary for accomplishment of the work, including materials necessary for cleaning up spills that could occur from tank removal operations.
  2. Contaminated Water Disposal:
    - a. Sampling, Analysis, and Containment
      - 1) Contaminated water shall be sampled and analyzed both prior to and after treatment. Contaminated water produced from excavation operations and tank pumping treated onsite, shall be analyzed for pH; benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene, and xylene (BETX); total lead; oil and grease; total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH). Sampling and analysis shall be performed prior to disposal for every 200,000 L





(50,000 gallons) of contaminated water treated. Analysis for contaminated water to be taken to an off-site treatment facility shall conform to the requirements of the treatment facility with documentation of all analyses performed furnished to the Owner in accordance with paragraph RECORDS.

- 2) Contaminated water shall be contained, stored onsite, and analyzed and disposed of by the Contractor in accordance with applicable Federal and state disposal regulations. The Contractor shall provide approved containers, vehicles, equipment, labor, signs, labels, placards and manifests and associated land disposal notices and notifications, necessary for accomplishment of the work.
  - b. Treatment: Contaminated water shall be treated by oil water separation, filtering, air stripping and activated carbon, or other means as approved by the Owner. If contaminated water is to be treated onsite, the proposed treatment shall be specified in the Work Plan and submitted for approval. Temporary storage and treatment equipment shall be installed at a location approved by the Owner. Treated effluent shall be sampled and analyzed and the results approved by the Owner before discharge to the sanitary sewer or the surface. Effluent shall be treated and discharged in accordance with the discharge permit.
- F. Purging And Inerting: After the tank and piping contents have been removed, but prior to excavation beyond the top of the tank, the Contractor shall disconnect all the piping (except the piping needed to purge or inert the tank). Flammable and toxic vapors shall be purged from the tank or the tank made inert in accordance with API RP 1604, with the exceptions that filling with water shall not be used and, if dry ice is employed, the Contractor shall use a minimum of 1.8 kg per 500 L (3 pounds per 100 gallons) of tank volume. The tank atmosphere shall be continuously monitored for combustible vapors if the tank is purged, or continuously monitored for oxygen if the tank is inerted.
- G. Excavation: Excavation areas, as well as work near roadways, shall be marked as directed by the Owner.
1. Exploratory Trenches: Exploratory trenches shall be excavated as necessary to determine the tank location, limits and the location of ancillary equipment.
  2. Tank Excavation: Excavation around the perimeter of the tank shall be performed limiting the amount of potentially petroleum contaminated soil that could be mixed with previously uncontaminated soil. Petroleum contaminated soil shall be segregated in separate stockpiles. The Contractor shall maintain around the tank an excavation of sufficient size to allow workers ample room to complete the work, but also protect the workers from sliding or cave-ins. Sheet piling, bracing, or shoring shall be installed in the absence of adequate side slopes if there is a need for workers to enter the excavated area. Surface water shall be diverted to prevent direct entry into the excavation. Dewatering of the excavation may require a discharge permit by the State and shall be limited to allow adequate access to the tank and piping, to assure a safe excavation, and to ensure that compaction and moisture requirements are met during backfilling. Dewatering may result in the production of petroleum contaminated water and/or free product. Free product shall be recovered from the groundwater only as part of necessary dewatering.
  3. Piping Excavation: Excavation shall be performed as necessary to remove tank piping and ancillary equipment in accordance with paragraphs: Shoring, Tank Excavation, and Open Excavations.
  4. Open Excavations: Open excavations and stockpile areas shall be secured while awaiting confirmation test results from the soil beneath the tank. The excavation shall be backfilled as soon as possible after tank and contaminated soil removals have been completed and confirmation samples have been taken. The Contractor shall divert surface water around excavations to prevent water from directly entering into the excavation.
  5. Stockpiles: Uncontaminated excavated soil and petroleum contaminated soil that is not a state-regulated hazardous waste shall be stockpiled and used for backfill in the tank excavation prior to using borrow material or disposed of off-site. Excavated material that is regulated by the state as a hazardous waste shall be considered contaminated and shall be placed in containers such as drums, roll-offs or dumpsters for sampling in accordance with paragraph Stockpiled Material

Sampling. Uncontaminated soil shall be stockpiled separately from the contaminated soil, a safe distance away from, but adjacent to, the excavation.

H. Removal Of Piping, Ancillary Equipment, And Tank

1. Piping and Ancillary Equipment: All piping and ancillary equipment shall be disconnected from the tank. The piping shall be removed completely (interior and exterior of the tank). All tank ancillary equipment and piping connections shall be capped, except those connections necessary to inert the tank within the excavation zone. The piping exterior and ancillary equipment shall be cleaned to remove all soil and inspected for signs of corrosion and leakage. The Contractor shall ensure no spillage of the piping contents occurs, as specified in the Work Plan, and as required in paragraph SPILLS. If the soil under and around the tank pad is contaminated, the tank pad shall be removed and disposed of off-site at an approved non-hazardous or hazardous waste facility, as required. If the soil under and around the tank pad is not contaminated, the tank pad shall remain in place.
2. Tank: The tank shall be removed from the excavation and the exterior cleaned to remove all soil and inspected for signs of corrosion, structural damage, or leakage. All materials coming into contact with the tank, or in the vicinity of the excavation such as shovels, slings and tools shall be of the non-sparking type. After removal from the excavation, the tank shall be placed on a level surface at an approved location and secured with wood blocks to prevent movement.
3. Contaminated Soil, Tank and Piping Excavation Examination: After the tank has been removed from the ground, the adjacent and underlying soil shall be examined for any evidence of leakage. The soil shall be visually inspected for staining after removal of all obviously contaminated soil, then screened for the presence of volatile and/or semi-volatile contamination using a real time vapor monitoring instrument or immunoassay field kits, as required. Uncontaminated soil or petroleum contaminated soil not regulated by the state as hazardous waste shall be transported off-site for disposal. Contaminated soil or suspected contaminated soil shall be containerized. the Owner shall determine the extent of the contaminated soil to be removed from each site. The Contractor shall report any evidence indicating that the amount of contaminated soil may exceed the individual site limit specified, to the Owner the same day it is discovered. If minimal additional excavation is required, the Owner may allow the Contractor to proceed. If extensive contamination is encountered, the excavation shall be sampled and backfilled in accordance with paragraph BACKFILLING. After the known contaminated soil is removed, the excavation shall be sampled and analyzed.

I. Tank Cleaning

1. Exterior: Soil shall be removed from the exterior of the tank, piping, and associated equipment to eliminate soil deposition on roadways during transportation to a temporary storage area, ensure markings will adhere to the surfaces, and simplify tank cutting. Soil shall be removed using non-sparking tools. Removed uncontaminated soil and soil not regulated by the state as a hazardous waste shall be recovered and used as backfill in the former tank excavation. Soil believed to be contaminated shall be removed and containerized.
2. Temporary Storage: If the tank is stored after the tank exterior is cleaned and ancillary equipment is removed, and prior to being cut into sections, the tank shall be labeled as directed in API RP 1604, placed on blocks, and temporarily stored in the area of the existing tank site. Prior to cleaning the tank interior the tank atmosphere shall be monitored for combustible vapors and purged or inerted if combustible vapors are detected.
3. Interior:
  - a. The tank interior shall be cleaned using a high pressure (greater than 500 psi (3.45 Mpa)), low volume (less than 2 gpm (0.13 L/s)) water spray or steam cleaned until all loose scale and sludge is removed, and contamination, in the form of a sheen, is no longer visible in the effluent stream. The interior surfaces of piping shall also be cleaned, to the extent possible, using the same method used for cleaning the tank. Contaminated water generated from interior cleaning operations (of both piping and tank) shall not exceed the following quantities for each UST cleaned:

UST VOLUME (LITERS)

PERCENT OF UST VOLUME



3,785 or less	5
37,850 or less	5 or 378 L, whichever is less
75,700 or less	1 or 568 L, whichever is less
greater than 75,700	1 or 946 L, whichever is less

UST VOLUME (GALLONS)	PERCENT OF UST VOLUME
1,000 or less	5
10,000 or less	5 or 100 gal., whichever is less
20,000 or less	1 or 150 gal., whichever is less
greater than 20,000	1 or 250 gal., whichever is less.

- b. All contaminated water resulting from cleaning operations shall be handled in accordance with paragraph Contaminated Water Disposal. Cleaning shall be accomplished eliminating, to the greatest extent possible, the need for personnel to enter the tank. Cleaning shall be done using specially designed tank cleaning equipment which allows the tank to be cleaned prior to cutting into sections without requiring personnel to enter the tank or, if less specialized equipment is used, the tank shall be partially dissected to overcome confined space entry hazards.

J. Soil Examination, Testing, And Analysis

1. Tank Excavation Sampling Procedures: After soil known to be contaminated has been removed or after soil excavation is complete, the excavation shall be sampled with procedures, number, location, and methodology in accordance with state regulations. Samples shall be obtained from the pits, in accordance with ASTM D 1587, using a backhoe with a Shelby tube attached to the bucket.
2. Stockpiled Material Sampling: Sampling locations, number and specific procedures shall be as required by the implementing agency and the disposal facility.
3. Analysis: Soil samples from the excavation and stockpiled material shall be tested in accordance with the approved Sampling and Analysis Plan for the following parameters: total petroleum hydrocarbon (TPH); benzene, ethylbenzene, toluene, xylene (BETX); toxicity characteristic leaching procedure (TCLP). Copies of all test results shall be provided to the Owner.

- K. Backfilling: The tank area and any other excavations shall be backfilled only after the soil test results have been approved. Contaminated soil removal shall be complete after the bottom of the tank excavation is determined to have soil contamination levels below the state standards of approval by the Owner. The excavation shall be dewatered if necessary. Stockpiled material subjected to chemical confirmation testing shall be used as backfill if it is found to conform to the requirements of clean fill per appropriate state and local regulations. Backfill consisting of clean fill shall be placed in layers with a maximum loose thickness of 200 mm (8 inches) and compacted to 90 percent maximum density for cohesive soils and 95 percent maximum density for cohesionless soils. Density tests shall be performed by an approved commercial testing laboratory or by facilities furnished by the Contractor. Test results shall be attached to contractor's Quality Control Report. A minimum of 1 density test shall be performed on each lift. Laboratory tests for moisture density relations shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1557, Method B, C, or D, or ASTM D 3017. A mechanical tamper may be used provided that the results are correlated with those obtained by the hand tamper. Field in-place density shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2922, or ASTM D 2167.

L. Disposal Requirements

1. Treatment, Disposal, and Recycling: Disposal of hazardous or special wastes shall be in accordance with all local, State, and Federal solid and hazardous waste laws and regulations; and conditions specified herein. This work shall include all necessary personnel, labor, transportation, packaging, detailed analyses (if required for disposal, manifesting or completing waste profile sheets), equipment, and reports. Product and pumpable liquids removed from the tank shall be recycled to the greatest extent practicable. The tanks removed shall be disposed of

- at one of the state approved facilities. Each tank disposed of in this manner shall be manifested as required by the State to document delivery and acceptance at the disposal facility.
2. Tank and Ancillary Equipment Disposal: After the tank, piping, and ancillary equipment have been removed from the excavation and the tank cleaned, the tank shall be cut into sections with no dimension greater than 1500 mm (5 feet). Tank and piping sections shall be disposed of in a State approved off-site disposal facility or in a salvage yard. The tank shall be cut into sections prior to being taken from the tank removal site. The Contractor shall not sell the tank intact. Ancillary equipment shall be disposed of at an approved off-site disposal facility or a salvage yard. Piping shall be disconnected from the tank and removed or grouted full of a portland cement and water slurry consisting of 22.7 L (6 gallons) of clean water per 42.6 kg (94 pound) sack of portland cement, thoroughly mixed and free of lumps, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Transportation of Wastes: Transportation shall be provided in accordance with Department of Transportation (DOT) Hazardous Material Regulations and State and local requirements, including obtaining all necessary permits, licenses, and approvals. Evidence that a State licensed hazardous waste or waste transporter is being used shall be included in the SUBMITTALS.
  4. Salvage Rights: The Contractor shall retain the rights to salvage value of recycled or reclaimed product and metal not otherwise identified, so long as the requirements of 40 CFR 266 and 40 CFR 279, or the applicable State requirements are met. At the end of the contract, the Contractor shall provide documentation on the disposition of salvaged materials.
  5. Records: Records shall be maintained of all waste determinations, including appropriate results of analyses performed, substances and sample location, the time of collection, and other pertinent data as required by 40 CFR 280, Section 74 and 40 CFR 262 Subpart D. Transportation, treatment, disposal methods and dates, the quantities of waste, the names and addresses of each transporter and the disposal or reclamation facility, shall also be recorded and available for inspection, as well as copies of the following documents:
    - a. Manifests.
    - b. Waste analyses or waste profile sheets.
    - c. Certifications of final treatment/disposal signed by the responsible disposal facility official.
    - d. Land disposal notification records required under 40 CFR 268 for hazardous wastes.
  6. Hazardous/Special Waste Manifests: Manifesting shall conform to Federal, State and local requirements.
  7. Documentation of Treatment or Disposal: The wastes, other than recyclable or reclaimable product or metal, shall be taken to a treatment, storage, or disposal facility which has EPA or appropriate state permits and hazardous or special waste identification numbers and complies with the provisions of the disposal regulations. Documentation of acceptance of special waste by a facility legally permitted to treat or dispose of those materials shall be furnished to the Owner not later than 5 working days following the delivery of those materials to the facility; and a copy shall be included in the Tank Closure Report. A statement of agreement from the proposed treatment, storage or disposal facility and certified transporters to accept hazardous or special wastes shall be furnished to the Owner not less than 14 days before transporting any wastes. If the Contractor selects a different facility than is identified in the contract, documentation shall be provided for approval to certify that the facility is authorized and meets the standards specified in 40 CFR 264.
- M. Spills: Immediate containment actions shall be taken as necessary to minimize effect of any spill or leak. Cleanup shall be in accordance with applicable Federal, State, local laws and regulations, and district policy at no additional cost to the Owner.
- N. Tank Closure Report: Tank Closure Reports shall include the following information as a minimum:
1. A cover letter signed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State in which the Project is located certifying that all services involved have been performed in accordance with the terms and conditions of this specification.
  2. A narrative report describing what was encountered at each site, including:
    - a. condition of the UST.
    - b. any visible evidence of leaks or stained soils.
    - c. results of vapor monitoring readings.

- d. actions taken including quantities of materials treated or removed.
- e. reasons for selecting sample locations.
- f. sample locations.
- g. collection data such as time of collection and method of preservation.
- h. reasons for backfilling site.
- i. whether or not groundwater was encountered.
3. Copies of all analyses performed for disposal.
4. Copies of all waste analyses or waste profile sheets.
5. Copies of all certifications of final disposal signed by the responsible disposal installation official.
6. Information on who sampled, analyzed, transported, and accepted all wastes encountered, including copies of manifests, waste profile sheets, land disposal restriction, notification and certification forms, certificates of disposal, and other pertinent documentation.
7. Copies of all analyses performed for confirmation that underlying soil is not contaminated, with copies of chain-of-custody for each sample. Analyses shall give the identification number of the sample used. Sample identification numbers shall correspond to those provided on the one-line drawings.
8. Scaled one-line drawings showing tank locations, limits of excavation, limits of contamination, underground utilities within 15 m (50 feet) sample locations, and sample identification numbers.
9. Progress Photographs. The Contractor shall take a minimum of 4 views of the site showing such things as the location of each tank, entrance/exit road, and any other notable site condition before work begins. After work has been started at the site, the Contractor shall photographically record activities at each work location daily. Photographs shall be 76.2 x 127.0 mm (3 x 5 inches) and shall include:
  - a. Soil removal, handling, and sampling.
  - b. Unanticipated events such as discovery of additional contaminated areas.
  - c. Soil stockpile area.
  - d. Tank.
  - e. Site or task-specific employee respiratory and personal protection.
  - f. Fill placement and grading.
  - g. Post-construction photographs. After completion of work at each site, the Contractor shall take a minimum of four (4) views of the site. Prints shall illustrate the condition and location of work and the state of progress. The photographs shall be mounted and enclosed back-to-back in a double face plastic sleeve punched to fit standard three ring binders. Each color print shall show an information box, 40 x 90 mm (1-1/2 x 3-1/2 inches). The information box for the 76.2 x 127.0 mm (3 x 5 inch) photographs shall be scaled down accordingly, or taped to the bottom of the photo. The box shall be typewritten and arranged as follows:
    - Project No.
    - Contract No.
    - Location
    - Contractor/Photographer
    - Photograph No. Date/Time:
    - Description
    - Direction of View

END OF SECTION 02 61 13 00



## SECTION 02 61 13 00a - PRECISION TESTING OF UNDERGROUND FUEL OIL TANKS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for the precision testing of underground fuel oil tanks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. The Contractor shall furnish all the necessary labor and equipment to complete the Precision Fuel Oil Tank Testing at various buildings under the jurisdiction of the Owner. The pertinent quantity and the capacity of the tanks will be listed on each Job Order. When the contractor elects to use a volumetric tank tester, it shall be responsible to fill up and "top off" tank to a maximum of 100 gallons prior to the start of testing. The cost to "top off" tank will be the contractor's responsibility.
- B. The Contractor shall provide the material and labor necessary for the drilling and tapping of the existing oil tank manhole cover and the installation of new air bleeder valves. The air bleeder valve shall be a Hoffman Specialty #40 or #41 or their approved equal.
- C. Coordination of Work: Prior to performing any test, the contractor shall notify the Owner of the scheduled test date. Designated personnel from the Owner shall take necessary actions to coordinate fuel oil delivery and shall inform the contractor of the date and time of the fuel delivery. The contractor shall ascertain that the tanks are filled to capacity and shall be responsible to have the tanks "topped off" up to a maximum of 100 gallons prior to the start of testing. The contractor shall make arrangements to perform the testing within forty-eight (48) hours of notification that the oil tank has been filled. The Contractor's responsibility to "top off" tank only applies when the contractor elects to utilize a volumetric tank tester.
- D. Test Equipment: The Contractor shall be limited to using state approved Precision Testing methods equal to the following:
  - Ainlay Tank Tegrity Tester
  - Horner EZY 3
  - Hunter Leak Lokator
  - Tank Auditor
  - Petro Tite
- E. Test Results: The Contractor will be required to submit written reports of test results as noted below.
  1. The test reports' format shall be approved by the testing equipment manufacturer and the state.
  2. The Contractor shall submit one (1) type written report within seven (7) days of completion of the testing to the Owner.
  3. The Contractor shall submit one copy of the report to the state within thirty (30) days of completion of the testing. Proof of submission shall be appended to the request for payment.
  4. The test results shall include, but not be limited to:
    - a. Name and/or Number of Building
    - b. Address of Building

- c. Date and Time of Test
  - d. Results of test including (Actual Data Calculations Graphs)
  - e. Test Method
  - f. Name and address of Contractor
  - g. Signature of test technician
5. Should the test indicate a leakage condition, the contractor shall perform the following:
- a. Initiate procedure to isolate piping from tank and determine the source of the leak. This work shall be performed after notification of the Owner.
  - b. Submit a written proposal and cost estimate for work required to be performed to repair leak. Recommended proposal shall be submitted to the Owner within 48-hours after determining source of leak. No repair work shall proceed without authorization by the Owner.
  - c. Notify the state of leak discovered in underground buried tank. This notification shall take place within 2 hours of determining source of leak.
  - d. In these cases, the Owner may direct the Contractor to complete the work or exercise its option to perform the required work by its own forces or under separate contract.
6. After completion of the remedial work when applicable, the contractor shall perform a re-test, and shall issue a final test report in aforementioned format. The contractor shall be paid 50% of the bid unit price for the re-test.

END OF SECTION 02 61 13 00a

## SECTION 02 61 13 00b - HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE TESTING OF AIR RECEIVING TANKS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing of labor and equipment for the hydrostatic pressure testing of air receiving tanks. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. General

1. Disconnect all piping and remove safety valve from air receiving tank and temporarily plug all openings on the disconnected tank.
2. Perform hydrostatic test at not less than twice the charging pressure, at 70 degrees Fahrenheit, for fifteen (15) minutes in accordance with the Administrative Code of the applicable Authority.
3. Test shall be performed in the presence of a representative of the Inspection Unit. Contractor shall notify the Owner's Inspection Unit seventy-two (72) hours prior to test.
4. At the completion of each test, contractor shall reconnect all piping and reinstall all removed equipment.
5. The Contractor shall issue an affidavit of test to the Owner. The affidavit shall state the date of test, testing pressure and the maximum working pressure allowable until the next test.
6. Furnish and install a glass enclosed aluminum frame of suitable size to display affidavit. Frame shall be open at the top for easy access to affidavit. Frame shall be firmly affixed in a permanent location adjacent to receiver tank as directed by the Owner.

#### B. Intent: Pursuant to the provisions of the Administrative Code of applicable Authority, and in the interest of public safety, the Owner requires that:

1. All compressed air tanks shall be tested by a person who has received a Certificate of Fitness from the Owner to conduct such a test in the manner and to the pressure set forth in the code before being continued in use.
2. Licensed testers shall submit ten (10) day notice of appointments to the Owner.
3. A sworn statement by the person conducting the test, in proper affidavit form, attesting to the completion of such test, shall be filed with the Owner's office and a copy thereof posted on the premises.
4. The submission of such an affidavit or posting a copy thereof, where the required test has not been carried out in accordance with the foregoing provisions of law, shall be cause for the revocation of the Certificate of Fitness, denial of the required permits to maintain and operate equipment and may also subject the individual to criminal liability for filing a false affidavit and a fine of up to five hundred dollars, imprisonment of up to six months, or both.

END OF SECTION 02 61 13 00b



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 61 13 00	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 61 13 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 61 26 00 - DISPOSAL OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for disposal of hazardous materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Definition

1. Hazardous materials shall be defined as asbestos containing materials, lead-based paint, PCBs, bird waste, and other materials categorized as hazardous by the EPA.

#### C. Submittals

1. Before start of work: At the pre-construction meeting, the Contractor shall submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until these submittal are returned with Owner's Representative stamp indicating that the submittal is returned for unrestricted use.
  - a. Copy of State or local license for hazardous waste hauler.
  - b. Certificate of at least one on-site supervisor which has satisfactorily completed the OSHA 40 hour Health and Safety course for handling hazardous materials.
  - c. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed the OSHA 40-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials.
  - d. List of the employees scheduled to perform this work.
  - e. Schedule of start and finish times and dates for this work.
  - f. Name and address of landfill where these waste materials are to be deposited. Include contact person and telephone number.
  - g. Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) for all materials to be removed.
  - h. If contractor introduces any chemical into the work environment, a MSDS for that chemical must be presented to the Owner's Representative prior to use.
  - i. Transporter must have notified the EPA and/or other appropriate local government agency in advance of its intentions to transport hazardous materials and, if applicable, receive an identification number.
  - j. Contingency Plan for handling emergencies with spills or leaks.
  - k. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed the OSHA 24-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Drums: Recovery or salvage drums acceptable for disposal of hazardous waste. Prior approval of drums is required. Drums or containers must meet the required OSHA, EPA (40 CFR Parts 264-264 and 300), and DOT Regulations (49 CFR Parts 171-178). Use of damaged containers shall not be allowed.
2. Labels: As required by the EPA and OSHA for handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
3. Absorbent Material: Clay, soil or any commercially available absorbent used for the purpose of absorbing hazardous or potentially hazardous materials.

### 1.3 EXECUTION



- A. All waste shall be transported and disposed of in accordance with all federal, state and local guidelines and regulations. The contractor is to obtain all permits, licenses, etc., which are necessary for the transporting and disposal of hazardous waste.
- B. Waste haulers shall maintain waste manifest and shipment record forms.

END OF SECTION 02 61 26 00

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 61 26 00a - REMOVAL OF FRIABLE ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of friable asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Description

1. Furnish all labor, materials, facilities, equipment, services, employee training and testing, permits and agreements necessary to perform the work required for asbestos removal, encapsulation, repair, clean-up, decontamination, re-insulation and all other work in accordance with these specifications, in accordance with the latest regulations from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the recommendations of National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), and any other applicable federal, state and local government regulations. Whenever there is a conflict or overlap of the above references, the most stringent provision is applicable.
2. The work specified herein shall be performed by competent persons trained, knowledgeable and qualified in the state-of-the-art techniques of asbestos abatement, handling and subsequent cleaning of contaminated areas.

#### C. Scope

1. The quantities of materials and limits of abatement work area(s) shall be verified by the asbestos contractor.

#### D. Asbestos Hazard

1. Asbestos-containing material when damaged or disturbed is subject to fiber releases. Wet methods are a primary means of controlling fiber release.
2. Strict compliance with each of the provisions outlined in these specifications for the encapsulation, repair and handling of asbestos-containing material is of great importance, because:
  - a. The inhalation of airborne asbestos fibers can cause a very serious and often fatal disease.
  - b. Workers may not be aware they are inhaling asbestos fibers.
  - c. Symptoms of the disease do not appear for many years.
  - d. Only the Contractor and its employees can prevent the inhalation of asbestos fibers, which can lead to the development of asbestos-related disease.
  - e. No insurance is available to provide for asbestos-related disease.

#### E. Other Hazardous Material

1. Contractor shall comply with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.62 - Lead in Construction when demolishing any equipment or architectural component identified as lead-containing or lead-based paint. The work of this project is considered a demolition activity.
2. the Owner anticipates that a substantial amount of the Project will involve lead paint.

#### F. Qualifications

1. the Owner and the Owner's Representative will verify and approve the experience of the Asbestos Abatement Contractor based upon submission at the time of bidding by Contractor evidence of the following:
  - a. Experience: Provide the names and locations of at least three asbestos abatement projects of comparable size and complexity comparable with this work. Provide the names



and telephone numbers of contact person at previous projects. Provide the final air monitoring decontamination fiber levels achieved.

- b. Personnel: Provide the name(s) of "Competent Person" as defined by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.32(f) - Asbestos. Demonstrate the education and specialized training with successful completion of examination of an EPA approved course. Provide evidence of participation in five projects of complexity comparable with this project.
- c. Licensing and Certification: The Contractor must hold a current, valid asbestos license issued by the State in which the work is to be performed.

G. Notices And Record Keeping

1. Contractor shall maintain for at least 30 years, a record for each asbestos project in which the Contractor engages. Each record shall include the following information: name, address, and social security number of all personnel involved with the project, the name address and social security number of the OSHA "Competent Person" who will supervise the work, the amount of asbestos material that was removed, repaired, encapsulated or disturbed, the commencement and completion date of the work, copies of Hazardous Waste Manifest(s), personal air monitoring results and any other appropriate information.
2. The Contractor shall send written notification as required by USEPA National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61, Subpart M) to the Owner, at least 10 working days prior to beginning any work on asbestos-containing materials.
3. Include the following information:
  - a. Name and address of the Owner or operator.
  - b. Description of the facility being demolished or renovated, including the size, age, and prior use of the facility.
  - c. Estimate of the approximate amount of asbestos material present in the facility in terms of linear feet of pipe, and surface area on other facility components. For facilities in which the amount of asbestos materials is less than 80 linear meters (260 linear feet) on pipes and less than 15 square meters (160 square feet) on other facility components, explain techniques of estimation.
  - d. Location of the facility being demolished or renovated.
  - e. Scheduled starting and completion dates of demolition or renovation.
  - f. Nature of planned demolition or renovation and method(s) to be used.
  - g. Procedures to be used to comply with the requirements of USEPA National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61 Subpart M).
  - h. Name and location of the waste disposal site where the asbestos waste material will be deposited.
4. Prior to commencement of work, the Contractor shall submit the following documents to the Owner's Representative. No work will be allowed to start until these documents have been approved:
  - a. The schedule of the work, including manpower, length and number of work shifts. Schedule shall be coordinated with the Owner's full occupancy of all areas of the building.
  - b. Satisfactory proof that written notification has been provided to the EPA regional office and the Owner.
  - c. Proof that all required permits, disposal site locations, and arrangements for transportation and disposal of asbestos-contaminated materials, supplies and the like have been obtained.
  - d. Complete a worker certificate indicating that all employees have had instruction and training on the hazards of asbestos exposure, the use and fitting of respirators, protective dress, wet and dry decontamination procedures, entry and exit from work areas, and all aspects of work procedures and protective measures.
  - e. Documentation indicating that all employees have received appropriate medical examinations and have successfully passed fit testing for the respirator to be worn. As a

- minimum, medical exams must be consistent with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(K)(9)(viii)(G)- Asbestos Regulation.
- f. Samples of signs to be used in and around the work area to comply with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(K)(9)(viii)(I)- Asbestos regulations and as required by federal, state and municipal regulations.
  - g. Material Safety Data Sheets (OSHA form 174 or equivalent) for all chemicals used during work performed under this section.
  - h. Encapsulation data and encapsulation procedures.
  - i. Design of pressure differential system including calculation used to arrive at the number of machines necessary to achieve one air change per every 10 minutes.
  - j. Location of personnel and material decontamination units for each work area.
5. Contractor shall provide written notification to the Owner's Representative of its intent to start work at least five days in advance. In no case will the Contractor start work until authorization to proceed is given.
  6. During the work, Contractor shall maintain a daily log which will be kept at the job site. Items to be included in the daily log shall include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Meetings, purpose, attendees, discussions, items of resolution.
    - b. Visitations, authorized and unauthorized.
    - c. Sign-in sheets of all personnel entering and leaving the work area.
    - d. Special or unusual events (i.e., barrier breaching equipment failures).
    - e. Personal air monitoring results.
    - f. Two copies of the daily log are required for Project Closeout.
- H. Terminology (Definitions)
1. Abatement - Procedures to control fiber release from asbestos-containing materials. Includes removal, enclosure or encapsulation.
  2. Air Lock - A system for permitting ingress or egress without permitting air movement between any two adjacent areas consisting of two curtained doorways. The air lock must be maintained in an uncontaminated condition at all times.
  3. Air Monitoring; - The process of measuring the asbestos fiber content of a specific volume of air in a stated period of time using methods approved or recommended by OSHA, EPA, NIOSH or other method approved by the Owner or the Owner's Representative.
  4. Amended water - Water to which a surfactant has been added.
  5. Asbestos - A generic name given to a number of naturally occurring hydrated mineral silicates that possess a unique crystalline structure, are incombustible in air, and are separable into fibers. Asbestos includes the asbestiform varieties of Chrysotile (serpentine), Crocidolite (Riebeckite), Amosite (Cummingtonite-Grunente), Anthophyllite, Actinolite, and Tremolite.
  6. Asbestos-containing material (ACM) - Any material that contains more than 1 percent asbestos by weight as determined by Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM).
  7. Authorized Visitor - the Owner or its designated representative, or a representative of any regulatory or other agency having jurisdiction over the project.
  8. Class I - Asbestos work means activities involving the removal of thermal systems insulation (TSI) and surfacing ACM and PACM.
  9. Class II - Asbestos work means activities involving the removal of ACM which is not TSI or surfacing material. This includes, but is not limited to, the removal of asbestos-containing wallboard, floor tile and sheeting, roofing and siding shingles, and construction mastics.
  10. Class III - Asbestos work means repair and maintenance operations where "ACM" including TSI and surfacing ACM and PACM is likely to be disturbed.
  11. Class IV - Asbestos work means maintenance and custodial activities during which employees contact but do not disturb ACM or PACM and activities to clean-up dust, waste and debris resulting from Class I, II and III activities.
  12. Critical Barrier - A unit of temporary construction which provides the only separation between an asbestos work area and an adjacent, potentially occupied, space. The critical barrier is composed of at least one intact sheet of polyethylene sheeting.





13. Decontamination Enclosure System - A series of connected rooms with curtained doorways between any two adjacent rooms, for the decontamination of workers or of materials and equipment. A decontamination system contains at least two air locks.
14. Disposal - All procedures necessary to transport and deposit the asbestos-contaminated material stripped and removed from the building in a waste disposal site in compliance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations.
15. Disposal Site - A site approved by the EPA for the disposal of asbestos-containing wastes.
16. Encapsulant - A liquid which can be applied to asbestos-containing materials and which controls the possible release of fibers from the materials.
17. Encapsulation - The use of an agent to seal the surface (bridging encapsulant) or penetrate the bulk (penetrating encapsulant) of the asbestos-containing material.
18. HEPA -High Efficiency Particulate Air - A type of filter which is 99.97% efficient at filtering particles of 0.3 micrometers in diameter.
19. HEPA Vacuum Equipment - Vacuuming equipment equipped with a HEPA filter in the exhaust outlet, and so designed and maintained that 99.97% of all particles of 0.3 micrometer in diameter in the inlet air are collected and retained.
20. Negative Pressure Respirators - Respirators which function by the wearer breathing in air through a filter.
21. NIOSH - National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health.
22. the Owner's Representative - Authorized Consultants
23. Permissible Exposure Level (PEL) - A level of airborne fibers specified by OSHA as an occupational exposure standard for asbestos. It is 0.1 f/cc of air, eight-hour TWA, as measured by Phase Contrast Microscopy.
24. Repair - The restoration of damaged or deteriorated asbestos-containing material to intact condition.
25. Respirator Protection Program - A set of procedures and equipment required by OSHA if employees wear negative pressure respirators or if fiber levels are above the PEL.
26. Surfactant - Chemical wetting agent added to water to improve penetration, thus reducing the amount of water required for a given operation or area, and enhancing the effect of the water in reducing fiber release.
27. Thermal Systems Insulation - Material applied to pipes, fittings, boilers, breeching, tanks, ducts or other interior structural components to prevent heat loss or gain, or water condensation, or for other purposes.
28. Wet Cleaning - The process of eliminating asbestos contamination from building surfaces and objects by using cloths and mops or other cleaning tools that have been dampened with clean water and afterwards disposing of these cleaning tools as asbestos-contaminated waste.

I. Permits And Licenses:

1. The Contractor must maintain current licenses as required by applicable state or local jurisdictions for the removal, transporting, disposal or other regulated activity relative to the work of this contract.

J. Regulations

1. This section sets forth governmental regulations and industry standards which are included and incorporated herein by reference and made a part of the specifications. This section also sets forth those notices and permits which are known to the Owner and which either must be applied for and received, or which must be given to governmental agencies before start of work.
2. Except to the extent that more explicit or more stringent requirements are written directly into the contract documents, all applicable codes, regulations, and standards have the same force and effect (and are made a part of the contract documents by reference) as if copied directly into the contract documents, or as if published copies are bound herewith.
3. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility and liability for the compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations pertaining to work practices, hauling, disposal, and protection of workers, visitors to the site, and persons occupying areas adjacent to the site. The Contractor

is responsible for providing medical examinations and maintaining medical records of personnel as required by the applicable federal, state, and local regulations. The Contractor shall hold the Owner and the Owner's Representative harmless for failure to comply with any applicable work, hauling, disposal, safety, health or other regulation on the part of itself, its employees, or its Sub-Contractors.

4. Federal requirements which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials include but are not limited to the following regulations:
  - a. U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, (OSHA), including but not limited to:
    - 1) U.S. Department of Labor, OSHA, including, but not limited to:
      - a) Occupational Exposure to Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite and Actinolite; Final Rules  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 1001  
Part 1926, Section 1101 of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - b) Respiratory Protection  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 134 of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - c) Construction Industry  
Title 29, Part 1926.1011, of the Code of Federal Regulation
      - d) Access to Employee Exposure and Medical Records  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 2 of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - e) Hazard Communication  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 1200 of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - f) Specifications for Accident Prevention Signs and Tags  
Title 29, Part 1910, Section 145 of the Code of Federal Regulations
    - 2) U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) including, but not limited to:
      - a) Asbestos Abatement Projects Rule  
40 CFR Part 762  
CPTS 62044, FRL 2843-9  
Federal Register, Vol. 50 No. 134, July 12, 1985  
P28530-28540
      - b) Regulation for Asbestos  
Title 40, Part 61, Subpart A of the Code of Federal Regulations
      - c) National Emission Standard for Asbestos  
Title 40, Part 61, Subpart M (Revised Subpart B) of the Code of Federal Regulations
    - 3) State requirements which govern asbestos abatement work and/or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials.
    - 4) Contractor shall abide by all local requirements which govern asbestos abatement work or hauling and disposal of asbestos waste materials including the following:
      - a) American National Standards Institute (ANSI)  
1430 Broadway  
New York, NY 10018  
(212) 354-3300
      - b) Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems Publication Z9.2-79
      - c) Practices for Respiratory Protection Publication Z288.2-80
      - d) American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)  
1916 Race Street  
Philadelphia, PA 19103  
(215) 299-5400
      - e) Specification for Encapsulants for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials
      - f) Safety and Health Requirements Relating to Occupational Exposure to Asbestos



K. the Owner's Representative

1. the Owner's Representative is authorized by the Owner to perform the following:
  - a. Have free access to all asbestos work areas.
  - b. To assist in interpretation of procedures.
  - c. To advise on all provisions of the contract documents pertaining to the control of asbestos.
  - d. To stop work if, in the course of performing their monitoring duties, an instance of substantial nonconformance with the contract documents is observed.
  - e. To stop work if a situation presenting a health hazard to workers or the Owner's employees or occupants of the building is observed.
  - f. To act as the Owner's liaison in technical matters involving the asbestos-related work.
  - g. To perform air sampling inside and outside the asbestos work area during the project. The Contractor shall cooperate fully with the Owner's Representative, its agents and employees, and ensure cooperation of its workers during collection of air samples and work area inspections.
  - h. the Owner's Representative role in advising the Owner on environmental health matters does not relieve the Contractor's obligation to comply with all applicable health and safety regulations. Air monitoring results generated by the Owner's Representative shall not be used by the Contractor to represent compliance with regulatory agency requirements for monitoring of worker's exposure to airborne asbestos, nor shall any other activity on the part of the Owner's Representative represent the Contractor's compliance with applicable health and safety regulations.

L. Pre-Construction Conference

1. An initial progress meeting recognized as "Pre-Construction Conference" shall be held prior to start of any work. Contractor shall meet at project site, with General Superintendent, the Owner, the Owner's Representative, and other entities concerned with asbestos abatement work. Record discussions and agreements and furnish copy to each participant. Provide at least 72 hours advance notice to all participants prior to convening Pre-Construction Conference.
2. This is an organizational meeting, to review responsibilities and personnel assignments, to locate the containment and decontamination areas; and temporary facilities including power, light, water, etc.
3. Submit waivers on forms, and executed in a manner acceptable to the Owner. Administrative requirements that must proceed or coincide with Contractor's submittal for final payment shall consist of the following:
  - a. Completion of project closeout requirements.
  - b. Completion of items specified for completion beyond time of Final Completion (regardless of whether special payment application was previously made).
  - c. Assurance, satisfactory to the Owner, that unsettled claims will be settled and that work not actually completed and accepted will be completed without undue delay.
  - d. Transmittal of required project construction records to the Owner.
  - e. Landfill receipts for all asbestos-containing material.
  - f. Proof, satisfactory to the Owner, that taxes, fees and similar obligations of Contractor have been paid.
  - g. Removal of temporary facilities, services, surplus materials, rubbish and similar elements.
  - h. Consent of surety for final payment.

M. Project Closeout

1. Project closeout is the term used to describe certain collective project requirements that indicate completion of the work to be fulfilled near the end of the contract time. Also, in preparation for final acceptance of the work by the Owner, as well as, final payment to the Contractor and the normal termination of the Contract.
2. Include supporting documentation for completion as indicated in these contract documents.
3. Submit a statement on accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
4. Advise the Owner of pending insurance change-over requirements.

5. Submit specific warranties, workmanship and maintenance bonds, maintenance agreements, final certifications and similar documents.
6. Obtain and submit releases enabling the Owner's full, unrestricted use of the work area and access to services and utilities. Where required, include occupancy permits, operating certificates and similar releases.
7. Results of the completed inspection will form the initial "punch-list" for final acceptance.
8. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all personal air monitoring results.
9. Complete the following cleaning operations as outlined in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures" before requesting the Owner's Representative inspection for certification of Final Completion.
  - a. Remove exposed labels in finished spaces which are not required as permanent labels on materials supplied as part of the work, except for "Asbestos", "Asbestos Free", or Thermal Insulation Labels specified elsewhere.
  - b. Clean transparent materials, affected by the work including mirrors and window/door glass, to a polished condition, removing substances which are noticeably vision-obscuring materials. Replace broken glass and damaged transparent materials.
  - c. Clean exposed hard-surfaced finishes affected by the work, to a dirt-free condition, free of dust, stains, films and similar distracting substances. Except as otherwise indicated, avoid disturbance of natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to original reflective condition.
  - d. Clean plumbing fixtures affected by the work to a sanitary condition, free of stains including those resulting from water exposure.
  - e. Replace all HVAC filters using materials supplied by the Owner or clean non-replaceable filters after minimum of two days of operation of HVAC equipment.
  - f. Clean light fixtures and lamps, which have been affected by the work so as to function with full efficiency. Replace lamps where inoperable.
  - g. Repair any damage to wall, ceiling and floor surfaces caused by installation and removal of the polyethylene sheeting.

N. Personnel Protection

1. Prior to commencement of work, the workers shall be instructed and be knowledgeable in the areas described in Paragraph "Submittals and Notices" having to do with employees.
2. Worker Protection - shall comply with 29 CFR 1910.134 (Respiratory Protection).
  - a. Because there is no known safe level of exposure to asbestos, it is prudent to reduce worker's exposures to as low a level as possible. Proper respiratory protection is critical in minimizing exposure.
  - b. Workers shall be provided, as a minimum, with personally issued and marked respirators equipped with high efficiency particulate filters approved by NIOSH to be worn in the designated work area and/or whenever a potential exposure to asbestos exists. Sufficient filters shall be provided for replacement as required by the workers or applicable regulations. Disposable respirators shall not be used.
  - c. No worker shall be exposed to levels greater than 0.01 f/cc as determined by the protection factor of the respirator worn and the work area fiber levels.
  - d. Whenever powered purifying respirator protection is used, a sufficient supply of replacement batteries and HEPA filter cartridges shall be provided to the workers.
  - e. Air monitoring required by OSHA is work of the Contractor and not covered in this specification. Contractor shall post, on a daily basis, results of the air monitoring results from the previous shift. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all personal air monitoring tests and results will be furnished to the Owner and the Owner's Representative prior to Contractor's Request for Final Payment.
  - f. During encapsulation operations or usage of other organic base aerosols (e.g., spray glue, expanding foam), workers shall be provided with combination cartridges consisting of organic vapor and HEPA sections.

- g. Workers shall be provided with sufficient sets of protective full-body clothing to be worn in the designated work area and/or whenever potential exposure to asbestos exists. Such clothing shall include, but not be limited to, full-body coveralls, headgear and gloves. Workers shall assure that hoods covering their hair are worn in the designated work areas at all times. Eye protection and hard hats shall be provided as required by applicable safety regulations. Eye protection shall be worn during encapsulation operations. Non-disposable type protective clothing and footwear shall be left in the work area until the end of the asbestos abatement work, at which time such items will be disposed of as asbestos waste.
      - h. Non-skid footwear shall be provided to all abatement workers. Disposable clothing shall be adequately sealed to the footwear to prevent body contamination.
      - i. Protective clothing shall not be worn in lieu of street clothing outside the work area.
      - j. Visitor Clothing: The Contractor shall provide authorized visitors with suitable respirator, protective clothing, headgear, eye protection, and footwear as described herein, whenever they enter the work area.
    - 3. Decontamination and Work Procedures: The decontamination and work procedures to be followed by workers shall be posted as described in these specifications.
    - 4. Worker and Authorized Visitor Protection Procedures:
      - a. Each worker and authorized visitor shall, upon entering the job site, remove street clothes in a designated clean change area and put on a respirator with new filters and clean protective clothing before entering the work area.
      - b. The Contractor's employees shall perform a positive/negative respirator fit test each time it enters the work area. If leakage occurs, the respirator must be re-adjusted or replaced.
      - c. Workers shall maintain their respirators in a safe operating condition. The condition of respirators shall be checked daily.
      - d. Workers and visitors shall complete the decontamination procedures as outlined in the specification upon exiting the work area.
      - e. Workers shall not eat, drink, smoke, or chew gum or tobacco in or near the asbestos work areas.
      - f. Workers shall be fully protected with respirators and protective clothing immediately prior to the first disturbance of asbestos-containing or contaminated materials and until final cleanup is completed.
  - O. Air Monitoring
    - 1. The airborne fiber counts outside the work area will be monitored to detect faults in the work area isolation such as contamination of the building outside of the work areas with airborne asbestos fibers, failure of filtration or rupture in the negative pressure system. Should any of the above occur, the Contractor shall immediately cease asbestos abatement activities until the fault is corrected. Work shall not recommence until authorized by the Owner's Representative. In the case of mini-enclosures the Owner's Representative will monitor air in a remote location of the residence to determine the baseline of asbestos.
    - 2. The airborne fiber counts in the work area will be monitored. The purpose of this air monitoring will be to detect airborne fiber counts which may significantly challenge the ability of the work area isolation procedures to protect the balance of the building or outside of the building from contamination by airborne fibers. In the case of mini-enclosures the Owner's representative may monitor air outside of several enclosures if they are in close proximity.
    - 3. Contractor shall maintain an average airborne count inside the work area of less than 0.5 f/cc. If the fiber counts rise above this figure for any sample taken, revise work procedures to lower fiber counts. If the TWA fiber count for any work shift or eight-hour period exceeds 0.5 f/cc, stop all work, leave pressure differential system in operation and notify the Owner's Representative. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.
    - 4. If airborne fiber counts exceed 1.0 f/cc for any period of time cease all work until fiber counts fall below 0.5 f/cc and notify the Owner's Representative. Do not recommence work until authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.

5. If any air sample taken outside of the work area exceeds the 0.01 f/cc of air, Contractor shall immediately and automatically stop all work. If this air sample was taken inside the building and outside of critical barriers around the work area, immediately erect new critical barriers to isolate the affected area from the balance of the building. Erect Critical Barriers at the next existing structural isolation of the involved space (e.g., wall, ceiling, and floor). Leave Critical Barriers in place until completion of work and insure that the operation of the negative pressure system in the work area results in a flow of air from the balance of the building into the affected area.
6. If the exit from the clean room of the personnel decontamination unit enters the affected area, establish a temporary decontamination facility consisting of a shower room and changing room. After cleaning and decontamination of the affected area remove the shower room and leave the changing room in place as an air lock.
7. After certification of visual inspection in the work area, remove critical barriers separating the work area from the affected area. Final air samples will be taken within the entire area.
8. The following procedure will be used to resolve any disputes regarding fiber types when a project has been stopped due to excessive airborne fiber counts. "Airborne Fibers" referred to above include all fibers regardless of composition as counted in the Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) NIOSH 7400 Method procedures. If work has stopped due to high airborne fiber counts, air samples will be secured in the same area by the Owner's Representative for analysis by electron microscopy. "Airborne fibers" counted in samples analyzed by Scanning or Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) shall be only asbestos fibers, but of any diameter and length. Subsequent to analysis by Electron Microscopy the number of airborne fibers shall be determined by multiplying the number of fibers, regardless of composition, counted by the PCM NIOSH 7400 Method procedure by a number equal to asbestos fibers counted divided by all fibers counted in the electron microscopy analysis.
9. If electron microscopy is used to arrive at the basis for determining airborne fiber counts in accordance with the above paragraph, and if the average of airborne asbestos fibers in all samples taken exceeds 0.1 f/cc, or if any one sample exceeds 0.2 f/cc, then the cost of such analysis will be born by the Contractor, at no additional cost to the Owner.
10. the Owner's Representative will secure at least the following air samples to establish a base line before start of work involving large enclosures:

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Analysis Method	Detection Limit f/cc	Minimum Volume Liters	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Outside Each Work Area	1-3	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16

11. Base Line is an action level expressed in f/cc, which is ten percent greater than the largest of the following:
  - a. Average of the samples collected on cellulose ester filters outside each work area.
  - b. Average of the samples collected on cellulose ester filters outside the building.
  - c. 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter.
12. Daily: From start of work of Paragraph "Temporary Enclosure" through the work of Paragraph "Project Decontamination," the Owner may be taking the following samples on a daily basis. The location of each air sample will be determined by the Owner's Representative.
  - a. Baseline
  - b. Work Area
13. For larger enclosures samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with the following filter media:
 

PCM: 0.8 micrometer mixed cellulose ester.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Analysis Method	Detection Limit f/cc	Minimum Volume Liters	Rate LPM
------------------	-------------------	-----------------	----------------------	-----------------------	----------



Each Work Area	2	PCM	0.01	1,900 as required by conditions	2-16
Outside Each Work Area Critical Barrier	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Clean Room	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16
Equip Decon	1	PCM	0.01	1,900	2-16

14. Additional samples may be taken at the Owner or the Owner's Representative discretion. If airborne fiber counts exceed allowed limits, additional samples will be taken as necessary to monitor fiber levels.
15. The services of a testing laboratory will be employed by the Owner to perform laboratory analysis of the air samples. Samples will be sent daily so that verbal reports on air samples can be obtained in a timely manner. A complete record, certified by the testing laboratory, of all air monitoring tests and results will be furnished to the Owner's Representative, the Owner and the Contractor.
16. Air samples may be analyzed on site by the Owner's Representative, if they are to be analyzed by the NIOSH 7400 Method.
17. Cellulose ester filters will be analyzed using the PCM NIOSH 7400 Method. Thus analysis will be carried out at a laboratory located off the job site.
18. At the completion of the work in occupied areas and prior to the dismantling of the isolation system, final air clearance will be conducted by the Owner's Representative.
19. Decontamination of the work area will be considered complete when all samples indicate fiber levels are less than 0.01 f/cc of air as analyzed by PCM NIOSH 7400 Method or an average of less than 70 structures per square millimeter of filter area as analyzed by TEM; Level II AHERA Method.
20. The Contractor may conduct its own air monitoring and laboratory testing. If it elects to do this the cost of such air monitoring and laboratory testing shall be included in the Contract Sum.

P. Equipment Removal Procedures

1. Clean all external surfaces of contaminated waste containers and equipment thoroughly by wet sponging or HEPA vacuuming before moving such items into the equipment decontamination enclosure system washroom for final cleaning and removal to uncontaminated areas. Ensure that personnel do not leave the work areas through the equipment decontamination enclosure system.

Q. Disposal Activities

1. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to comply with current federal, state and local regulations concerning the waste handling, transportation, and disposal of asbestos-containing material (ACM) and accompanying solvents or residues.
2. The Contractor will document actual disposal of the waste at the designated landfill by completing Disposal Certificate or submitting proof of landfill receipt.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. All Contractor's equipment delivered to the site shall be free of asbestos contamination.
2. Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces, and under cover sufficient to prevent damage or contamination.
3. Damaged or deteriorating materials shall not be used and shall be removed from the premises. Materials that become contaminated shall be disposed of in accordance with applicable regulations.

4. Polyethylene flame retardant sheet of 6-mil thickness shall be used unless otherwise specified. Polyethylene sheeting shall be sized to minimize the frequency of joints. Polyethylene sheeting must satisfy the National Fire Prevention Association Standard 701, "Small Scale Fire Test for Flame Resistant Textile and Film."
5. Adhesive tape shall be capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of polyethylene and for use in attachment of polyethylene sheet to finished or unfinished surfaces of similar materials and shall be capable of adhering under dry and wet conditions, including use of amended water. Contractor shall use adhesive tape compatible with finished surfaces.
6. Protective devices such as, but not limited to, disposable clothing, respirators, gloves, hard hats, etc. shall be used.
7. Wetting agent shall be a mixture of 50/50 polyoxyethylene ether and polyglycol ester or equivalent commercial product.
8. Encapsulant materials shall be the bridging and penetrating type and conform with the following characteristics:
  - a. Encapsulants shall not be solvent-based or utilize a hydrocarbon in the liquid in which the solid parts of the encapsulant are suspended.
  - b. Encapsulant shall not be flammable.
9. A non-hardening lagging sealer for enclosing and sealing raw exposed edges and surfaces of asbestos-containing materials.
10. Pre-mixed or job mixed insulating plaster manufactured for use on plumbing equipment shall be used when repairing damaged thermal insulation material.
11. Non-woven fibrous glass mat and open weave glass fiber mat cloth for repair of thermal systems insulation.
12. Fire retardant sealant shall prevent fire, smoke, water and toxic fumes from penetrating through sealants. Sealant shall have a flame spread, smoke and fuel contribution of zero, and shall be ASTM and Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) rated for three hours for standard method of fire test for fire stop systems.

B. Tools And Equipment

1. Provide suitable tools for repair and encapsulation of asbestos-containing materials and for removal of asbestos-containing materials that are beyond repair. Wire brushes shall not be used as a means of removing or cleaning asbestos-containing materials from surfaces, if they are used as the surface is being sprayed with water or amended water.
2. Provide sufficient number of HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaners equipped with pick-up adapters, steel floor wands, crevice tools, and carpet tools.
3. Airless sprayers capable of spraying amended water shall be provided in sufficient number to allow continuous uninterrupted work.
4. Asbestos filtration devices shall utilize high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtration systems.
5. Transportation equipment, as required, shall be suitable for loading, temporary storage, and unloading of contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property, and shall be quiet in motion if used within the building.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Safety Procedures For Power And Lighting

1. The use of wet methods for removal, repair, encapsulation or cleaning procedures increases the potential for electrical shock when working around electrical panels, conduit, light fixtures, alarm systems, junction boxes, transformers, etc. In coordination with the Owner, de-energize as much electrical equipment as possible to prevent electrical shock to employees performing the work. The Contractor shall use the following precautions:
  - a. Use non-conductive tools and vacuum attachments.
  - b. Utilize "hot line" covers over energized cables and power lines when possible.



- c. Ensure all electrical equipment in use is properly grounded before the job starts. Check outlets, wiring, extension cords and power pickups.
- d. Avoid stringing wiring across floors. Elevate wiring if possible.
- e. Ensure electrical outlets are tightly sealed and taped to avoid water spray.
- f. Determine operating voltages of equipment and lines before working on or near energized parts.
- g. Energized parts must be insulated or guarded from employee contact and other conductive objects. Extension cords must be three-wire type and connected to a Ground Fault Interrupter (GFI) circuit.
- h. Lock or secure de-energized circuits at panel and post warning signs.
- i. Seal heating vents with two layers of polyethylene sheeting prior to the start of work. The Contractor shall repair any damage caused by Contractor's operations to duct work, grilles, dampers, louvers or HVAC equipment at the completion of the work at Contractor's expense. Coordinate all lock out and or de-energizing with the Owner.

B. Temporary Facilities

- 1. Use qualified tradesmen for installation of temporary services and facilities. Locate temporary services and facilities where they will serve the entire project adequately and result in minimum interference with the performance of the work and operations of the building. Coordinate all installations and shut downs with building owner.
- 2. Relocate, modify and extend services and facilities as required during the course of work so as to accommodate the entire work of the project.
- 3. Provide new or used materials and equipment that are undamaged and in serviceable condition. Provide only materials and equipment that are recognized as being suitable for the intended use, by compliance with appropriate standards.
- 4. During the erection and/or moving of scaffolding, care must be exercised so that the polyethylene floor covering is not damaged.
- 5. Clean, as necessary, debris from non-slip surfaces.
- 6. At the completion of abatement work, clean all construction aids within the work area, wrap in one layer of 6-mil polyethylene sheet and seal before removal from the work area.
- 7. Temporary water service connections to the Owner's water system shall include back flow protection. Valves shall be temperature and pressure rated for operation of the temperatures and pressures encountered.
- 8. Employ heavy-duty abrasion-resistant hoses with a pressure rating 50 percent greater than the maximum pressure of the water distribution system to provide water into each work area and to each Decontamination Unit. Provide fittings as required to allow for connection to existing wall hydrants or spouts, as well as temporary water heating equipment, branch piping, showers, shut-off nozzles and equipment.
- 9. Electrical Services shall comply with applicable NEMA, NECA and UL standards and governing regulations for materials and layout of temporary electric service.
- 10. Provide a weatherproof, grounded temporary electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics to accommodate performance of work during the construction period. Install temporary lighting adequate to provide sufficient illumination for safe work and traffic conditions in every area of work.
- 11. Provide receptacle outlets equipped with ground fault circuit interrupters, reset button and pilot light, for plug-in connection of power tools and equipment.
- 12. Use only grounded extension cords; use "hard-service" cords where exposed to abrasion and traffic. Use single lengths or use waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electric cords, if single lengths will not reach areas of work. All cords shall be elevated off the floor inside the containment area.
- 13. Temporary wiring in the work area shall be type UL non-metallic sheathed cable located overhead and exposed for surveillance. Do not wire temporary lighting with plain, exposed (insulated) electrical conductors. Provide liquid tight enclosures or boxes for wiring devices.

14. Provide Type "A" fire extinguishers for temporary offices and similar spaces where there is minimal danger of electrical or grease-oil-flammable liquid fires. In other locations provide type "ABC" dry chemical extinguishers, or a combination of several extinguishers of NFPA recommended types for the exposures in each case.
15. Use of the Owner's existing toilet facilities, as indicated, will be permitted, so long as these facilities are properly cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to the Owner. At Final Completion, restore these facilities to the condition prevalent at the time of initial use. All provisions of these specifications regarding leaving the work area must be met.
16. When mini-enclosures area being used all of the requirements above will be enforced by the Owner's Representative. The construction and set-up of the mini-enclosures may be done by the Abatement Contractor.

C. Pressure Differential System

1. Before start of work Contractor shall submit design of pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not begin work until system has been approved by the Owner's Representative. Include in the submittal the following:
  - a. Number of pressure differential machines required and the calculations necessary to determine the number of machines.
  - b. Description of projected air-flow within work area and methods required to provide adequate air flow in all portions of the work area.
2. If the enclosure is not a mini-enclosure, the Contractor must supply the required number of asbestos air filtration units to the site in accordance with these specifications. Each unit shall include the following:
  - a. Cabinet constructed of steel or other durable materials able to withstand damage from rough handling and transportation. The width of the cabinet should be less than 30 inches to fit through standard-size doorways. Cabinet shall be factory sealed to prevent asbestos-containing dust from being released during use, transport, or maintenance. Access to and replacement of all air filters shall be from intake end. Unit shall be mounted on casters or wheels.
  - b. Rate capacity of fan according to useable air-moving capacity under actual operating conditions. Use centrifugal-type fan.
  - c. The final filter shall be the HEPA type. The filter media (folded into closely pleated panels) must be completely sealed on all edges with a structurally rigid frame.
  - d. A continuous rubber gasket shall be located between the filter and the filter housing to form a tight seal.
  - e. Provide HEPA Units that are individually tested and certified on site by an independent testing agency to have an efficiency of not less than 99.97 percent when challenged with 0.3  $\mu$  dioctylphthlaate (DOP) particles when tested in accordance with Military Standard Number 2182 and Army Instruction Manual 136-300-175A. Provide filters that bear a UL586 label to indicate ability to perform under specified conditions.
  - f. Pre-filters, which protect the final filter by removing the larger particles, are required to prolong the operating life of the HEPA filter. Two stages of pre-filtration are required. The first-stage pre-filter shall be a low-efficiency type (e.g., for particles 10 microns and larger). The second-stage (or intermediate) filter shall have a medium efficiency (e.g., effective for particles down to 5 microns). Pre-filters and intermediate filters shall be installed either on or in the intake grid of the unit and held in place with special housings or clamps.
  - g. Each unit shall be equipped with a Magnahelic gauge or manometer to measure the pressure drop across filters and indicate when filters have become loaded and need to be changed. A table indicating the useable air-handling capacity for various static pressure readings on the Magnahelic gauge shall be affixed near the gauge for reference, or the Magnahelic reading indicating at what point the filters should be changed, noting Cubic Feet per Minute (CFM) air delivery at that point. Provide units equipped with an elapsed time meter to show the total accumulated hours of operation.

- h. The unit shall have an electrical (or mechanical) lockout to prevent fan from operating without a HEPA filter. Units shall be equipped with automatic shutdown system to stop fan in the event of a major rupture in the HEPA filter or blocked air discharge. Warning lights are required to indicate normal operation, too high a pressure drop across the filters (i.e., filter overloading), and too low of a pressure drop (i.e., major rupture in HEPA filter or obstructed discharge).
  - i. Electrical components shall be approved by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) and Underwriters' Laboratories (UL). Each unit shall be equipped with overload protection sized for the equipment. The motor, fan, fan housing, and cabinet shall be grounded.
  - j. If a mini-enclosure is used the air filtration unit may be a HEPA filtered vacuum with a flow rate of at least 100 cubic feet per minute (CFM).
- 3. Provide a fully operational pressure differential system within the work area maintaining continuously a pressure differential across work area enclosures of 0.02 inches of water for glove bag operations and mini-containments. Demonstrate to the Owner's Representative the pressure differential by use of pressure differential meter or a manometer, before disturbance of any asbestos-containing materials. In the case of a mini-enclosure visual evidence of pressure differential through the use of a smoke generation tube shall be sufficient as in paragraph C.13 of this section.
- 4. Continuously monitor and record the pressure differential between the work area and the building outside of the work area.
- 5. Provide fully operational negative pressure systems supplying a minimum of one air change every ten minutes (six changes per hour), less in the instance of a mini-enclosure. Determine the volume in cubic feet of the work area by multiplying floor area by ceiling height. Determine total ventilation requirement in cubic feet per minute (cfm) for the work area by dividing this volume by the air change rate.
- 6.  $\text{Ventilation Required (CFM)} = \text{Volume of work area (cu. ft.)} / 10 \text{ min.}$
- 7. Determine number of units needed to achieve ten-minute change rate by dividing the ventilation requirement (CFM) above capacity of exhaust unit(s) used. Capacity of a unit for purposes of this section is the capacity in cubic feet per minute with fully loaded filters (pressure differential which causes loaded filter warning light to come on) in the machines labeled operating characteristics.
- 8. Add one additional unit as a backup in case of equipment failure or machine shutdown for filter changing.
- 9. Locate exhaust unit(s) so that makeup air enters work area primarily through decontamination facilities and traverses work area as much as possible. This may be accomplished by positioning the unit(s) at a maximum distance from the worker access opening or other makeup air sources.
- 10. Vent to outside of building, unless authorized in writing by the Owner's Representative.
- 11. Each unit shall be serviced by a dedicated minimum 115v-20A circuit with overload device tied into an existing building electrical panel which has sufficient spare capacity to accommodate the load of all pressure differential units connected. Dedication of an existing circuit may be accomplished by shutting down existing loads on the circuit.
- 12. Test pressure differential system before any asbestos-containing material is wetted or removed. After the work area has been prepared, the decontamination facility set up, and the exhaust unit(s) installed, start the unit(s) (one at a time). Demonstrate operation and testing of pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative.
- 13. Demonstrate of operations of the pressure differential system to the Owner's Representative will include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - a. Plastic barriers and sheeting move lightly in toward work area.
  - b. Curtain of decontamination units move lightly in toward work area.
  - c. There is a noticeable movement of air through the decontamination unit. Use stroke tube to demonstrate air movement from clean room, and from equipment room to work area.
  - d. Use smoke tubes to demonstrate a positive motion of air across all area in which work is to be performed.

- e. Use a differential pressure meter or manometer to demonstrate a pressure difference of at least 0.02 inches (as allowed) of water across every barrier separating the work area from the balance of the building or outside. This is not required in the case of a mini enclosure.
14. Start exhaust units before beginning work (before any asbestos-containing material is disturbed). After abatement work has begun, run units continuously to maintain a constant negative pressure until decontamination of the work area is complete. Do not turn off units at the end of the work shift or when abatement operations temporarily stop.
15. Do not shut down pressure differential system during encapsulating procedures, unless authorized by the Owner's Representative in writing. Start abatement work at a location farthest from the exhaust units and proceed toward them. If an electric power failure occurs, immediately stop all abatement work and do not resume until power is restored and exhaust units are operating again.
16. At completion of abatement work, allow exhaust units to run as specified to remove airborne fibers that may have been generated during abatement work and cleanup and to purge the work area with clean makeup air. The units may be required to run for a longer time after decontamination, if dry or only partially wetted asbestos material was encountered during any abatement work. In the case of a mini-enclosure the vacuum may be removed and the entrance sealed following encapsulation until the clearance sample is collected.
17. Prior to final air test, remove pre-filter and wipe out inside lip of negative air machine.
18. When a final inspection and the results of final air tests indicate that the area has been decontaminated, exhaust units may be removed from the work area. Before removal from the work area, remove and properly dispose of pre-filter, and seal Intake to the machine with 6-mil polyethylene to prevent environmental contamination from the filters.

D. Work Area Preparation

1. The work area is the location where asbestos-abatement work occurs. It is a variable of the extent of work of the contract. It may be a portion of a room, a single room, or a complex of rooms. A "work area" is considered contaminated during the work, and must be isolated from the balance of the building, and decontaminated at the completion of the asbestos-control work.
2. Pre-clean fixed objects, walls and floor surfaces within the proposed work areas using HEPA filtered vacuum equipment and wet cleaning methods as appropriate.
3. Seal all openings, supply and exhaust vents, and convectors within ten feet of the work area with 6-mil polyethylene sheeting secured and completely sealed with plastic adhesion tape.
4. Contact fire control agencies to review procedures prior to start of work.
5. Provide flame resistant polyethylene sheeting that conforms to requirements set forth by the National Fire Protection Association Standard 701, Small Scale Fire Test for Flame-resistant Textiles and Films. Provide largest size possible to minimize seams, four- or six- mils thick, frosted or black.
6. Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene and supporting surface.
7. Completely isolate the work area from other parts of the building so as to prevent asbestos-containing dust or debris from passing beyond the isolated area. Should the area beyond the work area(s) become contaminated with asbestos-containing dust or debris as a consequence of the work, clean those areas in accordance with the procedures indicated in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures." All such required cleaning or decontamination shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner.
8. Place all tools (i.e., scaffolding, staging) necessary for the work in the area to be isolated prior to erection of plastic sheeting temporary enclosure.
9. Disable ventilation systems or any other system bringing air into or out of the work area. Disable system by disconnecting wires, removing circuit breakers, by lockable switch or other positive means that will prevent accidental premature restarting of equipment.
10. Remove and dispose of all electrical and mechanical items, such as lighting fixtures, clocks, diffusers, registers, escutcheon plates, etc., which cover any part of the surface on which work is to be performed.



11. All general construction items such as cabinets, casework, doors and window trim, moldings, ceilings, trim, etc., which cover the surface of the work as required to prevent interference with the work. To be performed by the Owner: clean, decontaminate and reinstall all such materials, upon completion of all removal work with materials, finishes, and workmanship to match existing installations before start of work.
12. Permit Access to the work area only through the Decontamination Unit. All other means of access shall be closed off and sealed and warning signs displayed on the clean side of the sealed access.
13. Provide Warning Signs at each visual and physical barriers reading as follows in both English and Spanish:

<u>Legend</u>	<u>Notation</u>
KEEP OUT	3" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
BEYOND THIS POINT	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
ASBESTOS ABATEMENT WORK	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
IN PROGRESS	1" Sans Serif Gothic or Block
BREATHING ASBESTOS DUST MAY BE	14 Point Gothic
HAZARDOUS TO YOUR HEALTH	

14. Alternate methods of containing the work area may be submitted to the Owner's Representative for approval. Do not proceed with any such method(s) without prior written approval of the Owner's Representative.
15. Individually seal all ventilation openings (supply and exhaust), lighting fixtures, clocks, doorways, windows, convectors and speakers, and other openings into the work area with plastic adhesion tape alone or with polyethylene sheeting at least 4-mil in thickness, taped securely in place with plastic adhesion tape. Maintain seal until all work including Project Decontamination is completed. Take care in sealing off lighting fixtures to avoid melting or burning of sheeting.
16. Provide sheet plastic barriers at least 6-mil in thickness as required to completely seal openings from the work area into adjacent areas. Seal the perimeter of all sheet plastic barriers with plastic adhesion tape or spray cement.
17. Where applicable, construct framing of the containment out of fire treated wood or aluminum studs. Mini-enclosure frames may be constructed of Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) tubing.
18. Cover all walls in work area extending to the underside of the ceiling grid system with one layer of polyethylene sheeting, at least 6-mil in thickness, mechanically supported and sealed with plastic adhesion tape or spray-glue in the same manner as "Critical Barrier" sheet plastic barriers. Tape all joints with plastic adhesion tape. Contractor shall be responsible for repair of damaged wall finishes.
19. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting (exclude for floor tile and adhesive).
20. Provide Pressure Differential System per Paragraph "Pressure Differential System."
21. If the enclosure barrier is breached in any manner that could allow the passage of asbestos debris or airborne fibers, then add the affected area to the work area, enclose it as required by this section of the specification and decontaminate it as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Procedures."
22. Establishing a Mini-Containment area:
  - a. Establish work area so that unauthorized entry is prevented; Construct a two-compartment fire treated wood frame around work area; install one layer 6-mil polyethylene sheeting to structural members and two layers 6 mil polyethylene sheeting to the floor. Exception: no floor required if mini-containment is being constructed to perform a floor tile activity. Seal all edges to wall, ceiling, and floor surfaces with duct tape. Install viewing inspection windows, where feasible.
  - b. Seal all penetrations with duct tape such as pipes, electrical conduit, or ducts contained within the mini-containment.

- c. Install triple 6-mil polyethylene flaps at both doorways. Place portable sprayer with clean water, disposable towels, and pre-labeled disposal bag in air lock.
- d. Install appropriate signs on outside of mini-containment area.
- e. Install HEPA vacuum; extend hose into mini-containment area for general vacuuming, negative air, and cleaning of disposal suit.
- f. Accumulate all loose materials for disposal. Place in approved container. Apply appropriate labels. Adequately wet clean all wall, floor, tool and equipment surfaces.
- g. Abatement worker must wear two disposable suits. Remove outer suit in work area and place in a plastic bag. Enter air lock.
- h. In air lock, wet wipe respirator and wash hands with clean water. Remove respirator and place in a clean plastic bag. Proceed to remote shower unit where inner suit may be removed.

E. Worker Protection

1. This section describes the equipment and procedures required for protecting workers against asbestos contamination and other work place hazards except for respiratory protection.
2. Respiratory Protection is specified in Paragraph "Respiratory Protection."
3. Train in accordance with EPA's Model Accreditation Plan, 40 CFR 763 - Asbestos, all workers in the dangers inherent in handling asbestos and breathing asbestos dust and in proper work procedures and personal and area protective measures. Include but do not limit the topics covered in the course to the following:
  - a. Methods of recognizing asbestos.
  - b. Health effects associated with asbestos.
  - c. Relationship between smoking and asbestos in producing lung cancer.
  - d. Nature of operations that could result in exposure to asbestos.
4. Importance of and instruction in the use of necessary protective controls, practices and procedures to minimize exposure including:

Engineering controls  
Work practices  
Respirators  
Housekeeping procedures  
Hygiene facilities  
Protective clothing  
Decontamination procedures  
Emergency procedures  
Waste disposal procedures  
Appropriate work practices for the work  
Requirements of medical surveillance program  
Review of OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(G) - Asbestos  
Pressure differential systems  
Work practices including hands on or on job training  
Personal decontamination procedures  
Air monitoring, personal and area

5. Provide medical examinations for all workers who may encounter an airborne fiber level of 0.1 f/cc or greater for an 8 hour time weighted average. In the absence of specific airborne fiber data, provide medical examination for all workers who will enter the work area for any reason. Examination shall, at minimum, meet OSHA requirements as set forth in 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(G) - Asbestos. In addition, provide an evaluation of the individual's ability to work in environments capable of producing heat stress in the worker.
6. Before start of work Contractor shall submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until receipt of the Owner's Representative.



- a. An original signed copy of the Certificate of Worker's Acknowledgement found at the end of this specification, for each worker who is to be at the job site or enter the work area.
  - b. Courses outline or name of institution providing the worker training course.
  - c. Report from medical examination conducted within last 12 months as part of compliance with OSHA medical surveillance requirements for each worker who is to enter the work area.
7. Provide disposable full-body coveralls and disposable head covers, and require that they be worn by all workers in the work area. Provide a sufficient number for all required changes, for all workers in the work area.
  8. Provide work boots with non-skid soles, and where required by OSHA, foot protectives, for all workers. Provide boots at no cost to workers. Paint uppers of all boots red with water proof enamel. Do not allow boots to be removed from the work area for any reason, after being contaminated with asbestos-containing material. Dispose of boots as asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work.
  9. Provide head protectives (hard hats) as required by OSHA for all workers, and provide four spares for use by the Owner's Representative, and the Owner. Label hats with same warning labels as used on disposal bags. Require hard hats to be worn at all times that work is in progress that may potentially cause head injury. Provide hard hats with plastic strap type suspension. Require hats to remain in the work area throughout the work. Thoroughly clean, decontaminate and bag hats before removing them from work area at the end of the work.
  10. Provide eye protectives (goggles) as required by OSHA for all workers involved in scraping, spraying, or any other activity which may potentially cause eye injury.
  11. Provide work gloves to all workers and require that they be worn at all times in the work area. Do not remove gloves from work area. Dispose of gloves as asbestos contaminated waste at the end of the work.
  12. Respirators, disposable coveralls, head covers, and footwear covers shall be provided by the contractor for the Owner, the Owner's Representative, and other authorized representatives who may inspect the job site.
  13. Provide worker protection as required by the most stringent OSHA and/or EPA standards applicable to the work. The following procedures are minimums to be adhered to regardless of fiber count in the work area.
  14. Each time work is entered, remove all street clothes in the changing room of the Personnel Decontamination Unit and put on new disposable coverall, new head cover, and a clean respirator. Proceed through shower room to equipment room and put on work boots.
  15. In the event a mini-enclosure is used refer to Paragraph "Work Area Preparation" for personal decontamination procedures.

F. Respiratory Protection

1. Instruct and train each worker involved in asbestos abatement or maintenance and repair of friable asbestos-containing materials in proper respiratory use and require that each worker always wear a respirator, properly fitted on the face in the work area from the start of any operation which may cause airborne asbestos fibers until the work area is completely decontaminated. Use respiratory protection appropriate for the fiber level encountered in the work place or as required for other toxic or oxygen-deficient situations encountered.
2. Except to the extent that more stringent requirements are written directly into the Contract Documents, the following regulations and standards have the same force and effect (and are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference) as if copied directly into the Contract Documents, or as if published copies were bound herewith. Where there is a conflict in requirements set forth in these regulations and standards meet the more stringent requirement.
  - a. OSHA - U.S. Department of Labor Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Safety and Health Standards 29 CFR 1910, Section 1001 and Section 1910.134.29 CFR 1926.
  - b. ANSI - American National Standard Practices for Respiratory Protection. ANSI Z88.2-1980.
  - c. NIOSH - National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.

d. MSHA - Mine Safety and Health Administration.

G. Type Of Respiratory Protection Required

1. Provide Respiratory Protection as indicated in paragraph below. Where paragraph below does not apply, determine the proper level of protection by dividing the expected or actual airborne fiber count in the work area by the "protection factors" given below. The level of respiratory protection which supplies an airborne fiber level inside the respirator, at the breathing zone of the wearer, at or below 0.01 fibers/cubic centimeter is the minimum level of protection allowed.
2. Eight-hour Time Weighted Average (TWA) of asbestos fibers to which any worker may be exposed shall not exceed 0.1 fibers/cubic centimeter.
3. For purposes of this section fibers are defined as all fibers regardless of composition as counted in the OSHA Reference Method (ORM), NIOSH P&CAM 239 or 7400 procedure, or asbestos fibers of any size as counted using either a scanning or transmission electron microscope.
4. Require that respiratory protection be used at all times that there is any possibility of disturbance of asbestos-containing materials whether intentional or accidental.
5. Require that a respirator be worn by anyone in a work area at all times, regardless of activity, during a period that starts with any operation which could cause airborne fibers until the area has been cleared for re-occupancy.

H. Respiratory Protection Factor

<u>Respirator Type</u>	<u>Protection Factor</u>
Air purifying: Negative pressure respirator High efficiency filter Half facepiece	10
Air purifying: Negative pressure respirator High efficiency filter Full facepiece	50
Powered-air purifying (PAPR): Positive pressure respirator High efficiency filter Half or Full facepiece	100
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator continuous-flow Half or full facepiece	100
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator pressure demand Full facepiece	1000
Type C supplied air: Positive pressure respirator pressure demand Full facepiece Equipped with an auxiliary positive pressure Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA)	over 1000
Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA): Positive Pressure respirator	over 1000



Pressure demand  
Full facepiece

- I. Air Purifying Respirator
1. Provide half face or full face type respirators. Equip full-face respirators with a nose cup or other anti-fogging device as would be appropriate for use in air temperatures less than 32 degrees Fahrenheit.
  2. Provide, at a minimum, HEPA type filters labeled with NIOSH and MSHA certification for "Radionuclides, Radon Daughters, Dust, Fumes, Mists including Asbestos-Containing Dusts and Mists" and color coded in accordance with ANSI Z228.2 (1980). In addition, a chemical cartridge section may be added, if required, for solvents, etc., in use. In this case, provide cartridges that have each section of the combination canister labeled with the appropriate color code and NIOSH/MSHA Certification.
  3. Supply with a sufficient quantity of respirator filters approved for asbestos, so that workers can change filters during the work day. Require that respirators be wet-rinsed, and filters discarded, each time a worker leaves the work area. Require that new filters be installed each time a worker re-enters the work area. Store respirators and filters at the job site in the changing room and protect totally from exposure to asbestos prior to their use. Do not use single use, disposable or quarterface respirators.
- J. Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR)
1. Provide full-facepiece type respirators. Provide nose-cups for full-facepiece respirators. Provide, at a minimum, HEPA type cartridges approved by NIOSH/MSHA and certified for use in atmospheres containing asbestos dusts.
  2. Provide, at a minimum, one extra battery pack for each respirator so that one can be charging while one is in use.
  3. Provide non-cloth belts capable of being decontaminated in shower.
  4. Supply with a sufficient quantity of high efficiency respirator filters approved for asbestos so that workers can change filters at any time that flow through the face piece decreases to the level at which the manufacturer recommends filter replacement. Require that regardless of flow, filter cartridges be replaced after 40 hours of use. Require that HEPA elements in filter cartridges be protected from wetting during showering. Require entire exterior housing of respirator including blower unit, filter cartridges, hoses, battery pack, face mask, belt, and cords to be washed each time a worker leaves the work area. Caution should be used to avoid shorting battery pack during washing.
- K. Required Respiratory Protection
1. Regardless of airborne fiber levels, require the following minimum level of respiratory protection:
    - a. Half-face air purifying respirators may be used during set-up of the containment and removal of the material so long as fiber counts inside the respirator do not exceed .01 f/cc fibers per cubic centimeter.
- L. Decontamination Units -Three-Stage
1. Provide a Personnel Decontamination Unit consisting of a serial arrangement of rooms or spaces, Changing Room, Shower Room, Equipment Room adjacent to each full containment area.
  2. Require all persons without exception to pass through this decontamination unit for entry into and exiting from the work area for any purpose. Do not remove equipment or materials through Personnel Decontamination Unit.
  3. Changing (Clean) Room:
    - a. Provide a room that is physically and visually separated from the rest of the building for the purpose of changing into protective clothing.
    - b. Locate so that access to work area from changing room is through shower room.

- c. Separate changing room from the building by a double-sheeted polyethylene flapped doorway.
- d. Provide sub-panel at changing room to accommodate all removal equipment. Power sub-panel directly from a building electrical panel. Connect all electrical branch circuits in decontamination unit and particularly any pumps in shower room to a ground-fault circuit protection device.
- 4. Shower Room:
  - a. Provide a completely water tight operational shower to be used for transit by cleanly dressed workers heading for the work area from the changing room, or for showering by workers headed out of the work area after undressing in the equipment room.
  - b. Construct room by providing a shower pan and two shower walls in a configuration that will cause water running down walls to drip into pan. Install a freely draining wood floor in shower pan at elevation of top of pan.
  - c. Separate this room from rest of building, drying room and airlock with airtight walls fabricated of 6-mil polyethylene.
  - d. Provide splash proof entrances to Drying Room and Airlock.
- 5. Equipment Room (contaminated area):
  - a. Require work equipment, footwear and additional contaminated work clothing to be left here. This is a change and transit area for workers. Separate this room from the work area by a 6-mil polyethylene flap doorway.
  - b. Separate this room from the rest of the building, the shower room and work area with airtight walls fabricated of 6-mil polyethylene.
- 6. Clean Room: Provide Clean Room to isolate the holding room from the building exterior.
- 7. Load-out Area:
  - a. The load-out area is the transfer area from the building to a truck or dumpster.
  - b. Wet wipe bags before they are passed through the equipment decon-chamber.
  - c. When cleaning is complete pass items into holding room. Close all doorways except the doorway between the holding room and the Clean Room.
  - d. Workers from the area outside the containment area enter holding area and remove decontaminated equipment and/or containers for disposal.
  - e. Require these workers to wear full protective clothing and appropriate respiratory protection.
  - f. At no time is a worker from an uncontaminated area to enter the enclosure when a removal worker is inside.
  - g. Post an approximately 20 inch x 14 inch manufactured caution sign at each entrance to the work area displaying the following legend with letter sizes and styles of a visibility required by OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(J) - Asbestos.

LEGEND  
DANGER

ASBESTOS

**CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD**  
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED  
IN THIS AREA

- h. Provide spacing between respective lines at least equal to the height of the respective upper line.
- i. Additional Signage: Shall also be posted in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.1101(k)(9)(viii)(J) - Asbestos

DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD



**AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY**  
**RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING**  
**ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA**  
**DANGER**  
**ASBESTOS**  
**CANCER AND LUNG HAZARD**  
**KEEP OUT**

- j. Post an approximately 10 inch by 14 inch manufactured sign at each entrance to each work area displaying the following legend with letter sizes and styles of a visibility at least equal to the following:

LEGEND

NOTATION

No Food, Beverages or Tobacco Permitted	3/4 inch Block
All Persons Shall Don Protective Clothing (Coverings) Before Entering the Work Area	3/4 inch Block
All Persons Shall Shower Immediately After Leaving Work Area and Before Entering the Changing Area	3/4 inch Block

M. Decontamination Procedures

1. Contractor shall require all workers and visitors to adhere to the following personal decontamination procedures whenever they leave the work area:
  - a. Require that all workers use the following decontamination procedure as a minimum requirement whenever leaving the work area.
  - b. When exiting area, remove disposable coveralls, disposable head covers, and disposable footwear covers or boots in the Equipment Room.
  - c. Still wearing respirators, proceed to showers. Showering is mandatory. Care must be taken to follow reasonable procedures in removing the respirator to avoid asbestos fibers while showering. The following procedure is required as a minimum:
    - 1) Thoroughly wet body including hair and face. If using a PAPR, hold blower unit above head to keep canisters dry.
    - 2) With respirator still in place thoroughly wash body, hair, respirator face piece, and all parts of the respirator except the blower unit and battery pack on a PAPR. Pay particular attention to seal between face and respirator and under straps.
    - 3) Take a deep breath, hold it and/or exhale slowly, completely wet hair, face, and respirator. While still holding breath, remove respirator and hold it away from face before starting to breathe.
    - 4) Carefully wash face-piece of respirator inside and out.
  - d. If using PAPR, shut down in the following sequence, first cap inlets to filter cartridges, then turn off blower unit (this sequence will help keep debris which has collected on the inlet side of filter from dislodging and contaminating the outside of the unit). Thoroughly wash blower unit and hoses. Carefully wash battery pack with wet rag. Be extremely cautious of getting water in battery pack as this will short out and destroy battery.
    - 1) Shower completely with soap and water.
    - 2) Rinse thoroughly.
    - 3) Rinse shower room walls and floor prior to exit.
    - 4) Proceed from shower to changing room and change into street clothes or into new disposable work items.

- e. Require that all workers use the following decontamination procedure as a minimum requirement whenever leaving the work area with a half or full face cartridge type respirator:
  - 1) When exiting area, remove disposable coveralls, disposable headcovers, and disposable footwear covers or boots in the equipment room.
  - 2) Still wearing respirators, proceed to showers. Showering is mandatory. Care must be taken to follow reasonable procedures in removing the respirator and filters to avoid asbestos fibers while showering. The following procedure is required as a minimum:
    - 3) Thoroughly wet body from neck down.
    - 4) Wet hair as thoroughly as possible without wetting the respirator filter if using an air purifying type respirator.
    - 5) Take a deep breath, hold it and/or exhale slowly, complete wetting of hair, thoroughly wetting face, respirator and filter (air purifying respirator). While still holding breath, remove respirator and hold it away from face before starting to breath.
    - 6) Dispose of wet filters from air purifying respirator.
    - 7) Carefully wash facepiece of respirator inside and out.
    - 8) Shower completely with soap and water.
    - 9) Rinse thoroughly.
    - 10) Rinse shower room walls and floor prior to exit.
    - 11) Proceed from shower to changing room and change into street clothes or into new disposable work items.

N. Project Decontamination

1. If the asbestos abatement work is on damaged or friable materials, then the building space is deemed contaminated before start of the work and in need of decontamination. In this case, the procedure includes two cleanings of the primary barrier plastic prior to its removal and two cleanings of the room surfaces to remove any new or existing contamination.
2. Work of this section includes the decontamination of air in the work area which has been, or may have been contaminated by the elevated airborne asbestos fiber levels generated during abatement activities, or which may previously have had elevated fiber levels due to friable materials in the space.
3. Work of this section also includes the cleaning, decontamination, and removal of temporary facilities installed prior to abatement work and decontamination of all surfaces (ceiling, walls, floor) of the work area, and all furniture or equipment in the work area.
4. First Cleaning
  - a. Carry out a first cleaning of all surfaces of the work area including items of remaining sheeting, tools, scaffolding and/or staging by use of damp-cleaning and mopping, and/or a HEPA filtered vacuum. (Note: A HEPA vacuum will fail if used with wet material). Do not perform dry dusting or dry sweeping. Use each surface of a cleaning cloth one time only and then dispose as contaminated waste. Continue this cleaning until there is no visible debris from removed materials on plastic sheeting or other surfaces. Upon authorization of the Owner's Representative proceed with encapsulation of substrate.
  - b. Perform encapsulation of substrate where required at this time. Maintain pressure differential system in operation during encapsulation work. Allow encapsulant to dry before proceeding with removal of Secondary layer of plastic.
5. Second Cleaning
  - a. Upon authorization of the Owner's Representative, remove all Primary Barrier sheeting and Material Decontamination Unit, if there is one, leaving only the following:
    - 1) Critical Barrier which forms the sole barrier between the work area and other portions of the building or outside.
    - 2) Critical Barrier Sheeting over lighting fixtures and clocks, ventilation openings, doorways, convectors, speakers and other openings.



- 3) Personnel Decontamination Unit.
    - 4) Pressure Differential System in continuous operation.
  - b. Remove all filters in Air Handling System(s) and dispose of as asbestos-containing waste.
6. Final Cleaning: Carry out a final cleaning of all surfaces in the work in the same manner as the first cleaning immediately after removal of primary plastic. This cleaning is now being applied to existing room surfaces. Take care to avoid water marks or other damage to surfaces.
7. Visual Inspection: Perform a complete visual inspection with the Owner's Representative of the entire work area including decontamination unit, all plastic sheeting, seals over ventilation openings, doorways, windows, and other openings; look for debris from any sources, residue on surfaces, dust or other matter. If any such debris, residue, dust or other matter is found repeat cleaning and continue decontamination procedure from that point. When the area is visually clean, complete the certification at the end of this section.
8. Final Air Sampling
  - a. After the work area is found to be visually clean, air samples will be taken and analyzed in accordance with the procedures set forth in Paragraph "Powered Air Purifying Respirator (PAPR).
  - b. If Release Criteria are not met, repeat cleaning and continue decontamination procedure from that point.
  - c. If Release Criteria is met, remove the interior of the decontamination unit leaving in place only the Critical Barriers separating the work area from the rest of the building and the operating negative pressure system.
  - d. Any small quantities of residual material found upon removal of the plastic sheeting shall be removed with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner and local area protection. If significant quantities, as determined by the Owner's Representative, are found then the entire area affected shall be decontaminated as specified herein for the cleaning.

O. Work Area Clearance

1. Air Monitoring
  - a. Visual Inspection is required as a prerequisite of air testing.
  - b. To determine if the elevated airborne asbestos structure concentration during abatement operations have been reduced to the specified level, the Owner's Representative will secure samples and analyze them according to the following procedures.
2. Aggressive Sampling
  - a. All air samples will be taken using aggressive sampling techniques as follows. (There are no standards available for flow rate of leaf blowers or large fans. However, this information is not critical to the success of the procedure).
  - b. Before sampling pumps are started, the exhaust from forced-air equipment (leaf blower with at least 1 horsepower electric motor) will be swept against all walls, ceilings, floors, ledges and other surfaces in the room. This procedure will be continued for five minutes per 10,000 cubic feet of room volume.
  - c. Air samples will be collected in areas subject to normal air circulation away from room corners, obstructed locations, and sites near windows, doors or vents.
3. Schedule of Air Samples
  - a. General: The number and volume of air samples taken and analytical methods used by the Owner's Representative will be in accordance with the following schedule. Sample volumes given may vary depending upon the analytical instruments used. In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples will be taken and analyzed by either PCM or TEM analysis.
  - b. Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) Samples:
    - 1) In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples will be taken and analyzed by either PCM or TEM analysis as follows:
    - 2) Samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with filter media: TEM - 0.45 micrometer mixed cellulose ester or 0.40 micrometer polycarbonate, with 5.0 micron mixed cellulose ester backing filter.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Detection Limit (f/cc)	Minimum Volume (Liters)	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	5	0.005	1,300	2-10

- 3) TEM Analysis will be performed using the analysis method set forth in the AHERA Regulation 40 CFR Part 763 Appendix A.
- 4) Asbestos Structures referred to in this Section include asbestos fibers, bundles, clusters, or matrices, as defined by method of analysis.
- 5) Decontamination of the work site is complete when all the sample results are below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeters (f/cc) of air or 70 structures per square millimeter.
- c. Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM) Samples:
  - 1) In each homogeneous work area after completion of all cleaning work, samples may be taken and analyzed as follows:
  - 2) Samples will be analyzed by PCM for clearance in areas where ceiling tile and/or pipe insulation are removed
  - 3) Samples will be collected on 25 mm cassettes with filter media: PCM - 0.8 micrometer mixed cellulose ester.

Location Sampled	Number of Samples	Detection Limit (s/cc)	Minimum Volume (Liters)	Rate LPM
Each Work Area	1-5	0.01	2,400	2-10

- 4) PCM Analysis: Fibers on each filter will be measured using the NIOSH 7400 Method entitled "Fibers" published in the NIOSH Manual of Analytical Methods, 3rd Edition, Second Supplement, August 1987.
- 5) Fibers: Referred to in this section include fibers regardless of composition as counted by the phase contrast microscopy method used
- 6) Decontamination of the work site is complete when all the sample results are below 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeters (f/cc) of air or 70 structures per square millimeter.
4. Failure of Clearance Sampling: Should results from analysis of final clearance air samples not meet the specified criteria, Contractor will be responsible for the payment of all costs, including Consultant's time for subsequent clearance air sampling. The costs associated with subsequent re-sampling for final clearance shall be deducted from the Contractor's final payment of the contract amount.

P. Removal Of Pipe Insulation

1. The work of this section applied to the removal of asbestos-containing Pipe Insulation.
  - a. Place one layer of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting directly below the work. The sheet shall be of sufficient size to completely wrap the pipe once it has been removed.
  - b. Thoroughly wet the ends of the pipe with amended water and scrape off a minimum of 6 inches of asbestos wrap from both ends of the pipe. Immediately place the wetted material into pre-labeled asbestos disposal bag(s).
  - c. Detach the pipe at each scraped end and place the pipe onto one sheet of 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Wrap the pipe with the 6-mil fire retardant polyethylene sheeting. Contractor shall wrap the pipe with a second sheet of 6-mil, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting and label as asbestos-containing material. Dispose of the bag(s) and duct in accordance with the Paragraph "Handling and Disposal of Asbestos Contaminated Waste" of this specification.
  - d. Upon clearance from the Owner's Representative, Contractor shall remove the 6-trail, fire retardant polyethylene sheeting from the openings.

Q. Glove Bag Removal

1. The work of this section applies to full containment or glovebag removal.
2. Isolate the area in accordance with Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
3. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area.
4. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Pressure Differential System."
  - a. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, Contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method.
  - b. Thoroughly wet to satisfaction of the Owner's Representative, asbestos-containing insulation to be removed prior to stripping and/or tooling to reduce fiber dispersal into the air. Accomplish wetting by a fine spray (mist) of amended water or removal encapsulant. Saturate material sufficiently to wet the substrate without causing excess dripping. Allow time for removal encapsulant to penetrate material thoroughly. If amended water is used, spray material repeatedly during the work process to maintain a continuously wet condition. If a removal encapsulant is used, apply in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. If insulation is covered with canvas, Contractor will wet the exterior covering and slice it with utility knife while saturating the material.
  - c. Mist work area continuously with amended water whenever necessary to reduce airborne fiber levels using commercially available "foggers."
  - d. Remove saturated asbestos-containing material in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As it is removed, simultaneously pack material while still wet into disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside and move to wash down station adjacent to material decontamination unit.
  - e. Evacuate air from disposal bags with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner before sealing.
  - f. Contractor must always clean area of visible asbestos debris prior to end of shift.
5. These procedures shall be followed to remove pipe insulation elbows:
  - a. Install critical barriers to isolate the work site. Install 2 or 3 Stage Decontamination Units.
  - b. HEPA vacuum the work site.
  - c. Provide negative air machine in addition to those required, in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 2-inch diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
  - d. Locate intake of duct so that airflow is horizontally and slightly downward into intake. Replace primary filter on negative air machine at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes. Allow no more than one scraping or brushing activity per negative air machine.
  - e. Check pipe where the work will be performed. Wrap damaged (broken lagging, hanging, etc.), pipe in 6 mil plastic and "candy-stripe" with duct tape. Place one layer of duct tape around undamaged pipe at each end where the glovebag will be attached.
  - f. Place necessary tools into pouch located inside glovebag. This will usually include: bone saw, utility knife, rags, scrub brush, wire cutters, tin snips and pre-wetted cloth.
  - g. Place one strip of plastic adhesion tape along the edge of the open top slit of glove bag for reinforcement.
  - h. Place the glove bag around section of pipe to be worked on and staple top together through reinforcing tape. Next, tape the ends of glovebag to pipe itself, where previously covered with plastic or tape.
  - i. Use smoke tube and aspirator bulb to test seal. Place tube into water sleeve (two-inch opening to glovebag) squeezing bulb and filling bag with visible smoke. Remove smoke tube and twist water sleeve closed. While holding the water sleeve tightly, gently squeeze glovebag and by using a flashlight, look for smoke leaking out, (especially at the top and ends of the glovebag). If leaks are found, tape closed using plastic adhesion tape and re-test.
  - j. Insert wand from garden sprayer through water sleeve. Plastic adhesion tape water sleeve tightly around the wand to prevent leakage.

- k. One person places its hands into the long-sleeved gloves while the second person directs garden sprayer at the work.
- l. Use bone saw, if required, to cut insulation at each end of the section to be removed. A bone saw is a serrated heavy gauge wire with ring-type handles at each end. Throughout this process, spray amended water or removal encapsulant on the cutting area to keep dust to a minimum.
- m. Remove insulation using putty knives or other tools. Place pieces in bottom of bag without dropping.
- n. Rinse all tools with water inside the bag and place back into pouch.
- o. Using scrub brush, rags and water, scrub and wipe down the exposed pipe. (Inexpensive horse rub-down mittens work well for this).
- p. Remove water wand from water sleeve and attach the small nozzle from HEPA-filtered vacuum. Turn on the vacuum only briefly to collapse the bag.
- q. Remove the vacuum nozzle, twist water sleeve closed and seal with plastic adhesion tape.

R. Handling And Disposal Of Asbestos-Containing Waste

- 1. All waste and asbestos contaminated waste shall be double bagged in pre-labeled 6-mil airtight puncture resistant bags. Labeling shall be in accordance with OSHA and EPA requirements.
  - a. Bags of asbestos-containing waste shall be sealed with tape in the work area. Asbestos waste shall not be allowed to dry out prior to sealing bags. While in the work area, bags shall be decontaminated of any bulk debris by wet wiping. Bags shall be pre-labeled in accordance with OSHA and EPA.
  - b. The Contractor shall ensure that the sealed bags are transported to the waste disposal site.
- 2. The Contractor shall establish a manifest system to enable the Owner to report the quantity of asbestos waste being deposited at the landfill. Contractor shall report the quantity of waste in pounds or tons as appropriate. The Contractor must be able to demonstrate custody over all asbestos waste from the time it is removed from the work area until it is deposited at the land fill.
  - a. Copies of the manifest and any receipts generated during the handling and disposal process shall be provided to the Owner's Representative and the Owner.
  - b. Final manifest and documents must be provided to the Owner's Representative and the Owner within two weeks of the removal of the asbestos materials from the site by the waste hauler.

S. Encapsulation Of Asbestos-Containing Materials

- 1. General provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01, apply to work of this section.
  - a. The work includes the sealing of all piping or vessels from which asbestos-containing insulation has been removed with one coat of a lock down encapsulant.
  - b. Where repair work is being performed, the end will be sealed with a minimum of one coat of bridging encapsulant.
- 2. Submittals
  - a. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical information including label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
  - b. Installation Instructions: Submit manufacturer's installation instructions with specific project requirements noted.
  - c. Performance Warrantee: Submit manufacturer's performance guarantee.
  - d. Certification: Submit written approval of entity installing the encapsulant from encapsulant manufacturer.
  - e. Material Safety Data Sheet: Submit the Material Safety Data Sheet, or equivalent, in accordance with the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200) for each surfactant and encapsulating material proposed for use on the work. Include a separate attachment for each sheet indicating the specific worker protective equipment proposed for use with the material indicated.





3. Deliver materials to the job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:
  - a. Name or title of material
  - b. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture
  - c. Manufacturer's name
  - d. Thinning Instructions
  - e. Application Instructions
4. Deliver materials together with a copy of the OSHA Material Safety Data Sheet for the material.
5. Job Conditions
  - a. Apply encapsulating materials only when environmental conditions in the work area are as required by the manufacturer's instructions.
6. Quality Assurance
  - a. Installation of Spray-on Encapsulation Materials: Install spray-on materials by a firm and personnel approved by the manufacturer of the primary materials.
  - b. Testing: Test material to be encapsulated using methods set forth in ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants Spray-or-Trowel-Applied for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."
  - c. Performance Warranty: Submit written Performance Warranty, executed by the manufacturer and co-signed by the Contractor, agreeing to repair/replace spray-on work which has cracked, fallen from substrate, or otherwise deteriorated to a condition where it would not perform effectively for its intended purposes due substantially to defective materials or workmanship and not due to abuse by occupants, improper maintenance, non-foreseeable ambient exposures or other causes beyond anticipated conditions and manufacturer's/contractor's control.
  - d. Compatibility: Selection and use of encapsulant shall be compatible with replacement materials. Submit manufacturer's data indicating compatibility with replacement materials.
7. Product Selection
  - a. Encapsulants: Provide penetrating or bridging type encapsulants specifically designed for application to asbestos-containing material.
  - b. Standards: Product shall be rated as acceptable for use intended when field tested in accordance with ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants Spray-or-Trowel-Applied for Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."
  - c. Fire Safety: Use only materials that have a flame spread index of less than 25, when dry, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
8. Manufacturers
  - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products, which may be incorporated in the work, include, but are not limited to the following:
    - 1) Penetrating Encapsulants: As currently accepted by the EPA. Refer to most recent EPA approval list.
    - 2) Bridging Encapsulants: As currently accepted by the EPA. Refer to most recent EPA approval list.
9. General
  - a. Prior to applying any encapsulating material, ensure that application of the sealer will not cause the base material to fail and allow the sealed material to fall of its own weight or separate from the substrate. Should Contractor doubt the ability of the installation to support the sealant, request direction from the Owner's Representative before proceeding with the encapsulating work.
  - b. Do Not Commence Application of encapsulating materials until all removal work within the work area has been completed.
10. Worker Protection
  - a. Before beginning work with any material for which a Material Safety Data Sheet has been submitted, provide workers with the required protective equipment. Require that appropriate protective equipment be used at all times.

- b. In addition to protective breathing equipment required by OSHA requirements or by this specification, use painting pre-filters on respirators to protect the dust filters when organic solvent based encapsulants are used.
  - 11. Substrate
    - a. Apply lock down encapsulant to all substrate after all asbestos-containing materials have been removed. Apply in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions for use of the encapsulation as an asbestos coating. Any deviations from such printed instructions shall be approved by the Owner's Representative in writing prior to commencing work.
    - b. Apply encapsulant with an airless spray gun with air pressure and nozzle orifice as recommended by the encapsulant manufacturer.
- T. Removal Of Floor Tile
  - 1. This section applies to the removal of floor tile.
    - a. Prior to start of work, wet wipe all surfaces including floor tile to remove any visible dust.
    - b. Isolate the room by sealing hallway or doors and installing critical barriers on all ducting, windows and other penetrations of the room, in the specified area. Install a splash guard a minimum of 4 feet high on the walls of the room with one layer of 6-mil fire retardant poly.
    - c. Install a two-stage decontamination configuration contiguous (under certain conditions may be remote) with the work in accordance with Paragraph "Decontamination Units."
    - d. Using water or amended water in a Hudson-type sprayer or garden sprayer, lightly mist the area where the material is to be removed. This may take several passes with the hose of the sprayer. Allow time for the water to soak into the material.
    - e. Immediately place individual tiles in proper asbestos disposal bags. Vacuum collapse the bag, twist the neck of the bag, tape with duct tape, fold the twisted portion over onto itself and tape again. Wipe the outside of the bag with clean damp cloths and place the bag into a second prelabeled disposal bag. Tape shut the second bag.
- U. Removal Of Fireproofing
  - 1. The work of this section applies to the removal of all asbestos containing fireproofing including all over-spray that may be located on concrete block, columns, metal deck, beams, fixtures conduit and ducting.
    - a. Isolate the floor per Paragraph "Temporary Enclosure."
    - b. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area.
    - c. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance to Paragraph "Temporary Pressure Differential and Air Circulation System."
    - d. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method.
    - e. Pre-clean columns, beams, electrical, mechanical and plumbing systems in the work area using wet wipe and HEPA vacuuming methods. Mask off with flame retardant polyethylene sheeting to protect from contamination during bulk abatement.
    - f. Thoroughly wet to satisfaction of the Owner's Representative, asbestos-containing fireproofing to be removed prior to stripping and/or tooling to reduce fiber dispersal into the air. Accomplish wetting by a fine spray (mist) of amended water or removal encapsulant. Saturate material sufficiently to wet the substrate without causing excess dripping. Allow time for removal encapsulant to penetrate material thoroughly. If amended water is used, spray material repeatedly during the work process to maintain a continuously wet condition. If a removal encapsulant is used, apply in strict accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - g. Mist work area continuously with amended water whenever necessary to reduce airborne fiber levels using commercially available "foggers."
    - h. Remove saturated asbestos-containing material in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As it is removed, simultaneously pack material while still wet into

disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside and move to wash down station adjacent to material decontamination unit.

- i. Evacuate air from disposal bags with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner before sealing.
- j. Provide Pressure Differential Machine in addition to those required in Paragraph "Pressure Differential System," in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 12" diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
- k. Locate intake of duct so that air flow is horizontally and slightly down-ward into intake. Replace primary filter on pressure differential machine at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes. Allow no more than one scraping or brushing activity per pressure differential machine.

V. Removal Of Wall Plaster: HEPA vacuum work site.

- 1. Place two layers of 6-mil flame retardant polyethylene sheeting on the floor adjacent to the wall to be demolished. Pull the wall down in manageable sections onto the polyethylene sheeting. Control dust and fiber release by misting the air and lightly wetting the material with amended water from a Hudson-type sprayer or garden sprayer as it is demolished.
- 2. Wrap the first layer of polyethylene sheeting around the material and seal with duct tape. Wrap the second layer of polyethylene sheeting around the bundle and seal with duct tape.
- 3. Label and dispose of the entire bundle.
- 4. Provide Pressure Differential Machine in addition to those required in Paragraph "Pressure Differential System," in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that exhaust is into the work area, oriented in a direction away from the work. Extend a 12-inch diameter flexible non-collapsing duct from the intake end to a point no more than 4'-0" from any scraping or brushing activity.
- 5. Locate intake of duct so that air flow is horizontally and slightly down-ward into intake. Replace primary filter on negative air machine at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes.

W. Clean-Up Of Asbestos-Containing Debris On Ceiling Tile Or Solid Ceiling

- 1. This section applies to the decontamination of the entire plaster ceiling, removal of existing fiberglass on duct work and removal of all batt insulation covering the existing plaster ceiling.
  - a. Isolate the floor per Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
  - b. Construct a decontamination unit as described in Paragraph "Decontamination Units" and attach to the work area. General Contractor will give direction regarding exact location of decontamination unit(s).
  - c. Set up pressure differential isolation and ventilation of the work area in accordance with Paragraph "Temporary Pressure Differential and Air Circulation System."
  - d. Upon approval of the enclosure by the Owner's Representative, contractor may proceed to remove the material using the following method:
- 2. These procedures shall be followed to for clean up of asbestos-containing debris on existing plaster ceiling:
  - a. This work will be performed prior to the removal of fireproofing. The isolation of the work area is considered essential to the pre-cleaning activities for the total area. Isolate the area in accordance with Paragraph "Temporary Facilities."
  - b. Remove asbestos-containing debris and fiberglass batt and duct insulation and decontaminate the area using the following procedures:
    - 1) Remove all small debris with the HEPA vacuum.
    - 2) Gently mist all fiberglass insulation, remove from ducts and ceiling and place into pre-labeled hazardous disposal bags and dispose of in accordance with Paragraph "Disposal of Asbestos Containing Waste Material."
    - 3) Exposure of ducting will expose all fireproofing overspray, this material may be removed during the removal of fireproofing from decks and beams.

- 4) Pick up all large visible debris on the ceiling or any horizontal surfaces and place in the bottom of a 6-mil polyethylene disposal bag conforming to the requirements of Paragraph "Disposal of Asbestos-Containing Waste." Place pieces in the bag without dropping and avoiding unnecessary disturbance and release of material.
      - 5) HEPA vacuum the entire plaster ceiling surface.
    - c. Upon completion of the decontamination of the area request a visual inspection of the ceiling and other horizontal surfaces. This area will be considered a portion of work area for the duration of the work and will be included in the final encapsulation of the area.
  - X. Removal Of Adhesive: This section applies to the removal of all asbestos-containing floor tile and adhesive, sheet vinyl flooring, vinyl floor tile, and baseboard adhesive, etc.
    1. Ensure that workers are equipped with proper respiratory protection. In addition to the HEPA cartridges, respirators must also be equipped with organic solvent cartridges.
    2. Provide HEPA filtered fan units in the vicinity of the work. Arrange so that units exhaust outside the building. Replace primary filters on HEPA filtered fan units at an interval of no greater than 30 minutes.
    3. Apply adhesive removal solvent as recommended by manufacturer after removal of floor tile has been completed.
    4. Provide tile adhesive (mastic) remover that meets the following criteria:
      - a. Flash Point: 122E or greater.
      - b. Special Precautions: No heavy smoke generated if ignited.
      - c. Health Effects: Limited to mild skin rash or eye irritation.
      - d. Respiratory Protection: MSHA - NIOSH approved Organic vapor cartridges in conjunction with standard HEPA filters.
      - e. Petroleum Distillates: None.
      - f. Odor: Pine, Citrus or none.

**Use of diesel fuel in the removal of tile and baseboard adhesive is strictly prohibited.**

5. Remove adhesive in small sections from all areas. Do not allow material to dry out. As adhesive is removed, simultaneously pack rags contaminated with adhesive material into disposal bags. Twist neck of bags, bend over and seal with minimum three wraps of duct tape. Clean outside of bag and move to material decontamination unit.
        6. Upon completion of adhesive removal, thoroughly clean bare substrate of all solvent residue.
        7. Place adhesive residue in proper asbestos disposal bags. Vacuum collapse the bag, twist the neck of the bag, tape with duct tape, fold the twisted portion over onto itself and tape again. Wipe the outside of the bag with clean damp cloths and place bag into second prelabeled disposal bag. Tape shut the second bag.

**CERTIFICATE OF WORKER'S ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

PROJECT NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

PROJECT ADDRESS: \_\_\_\_\_

CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

**WORKING WITH ASBESTOS CAN BE DANGEROUS. INHALING ASBESTOS FIBERS HAS BEEN LINKED WITH VARIOUS TYPES OF CANCER IF YOU SMOKE AND INHALE ASBESTOS FIBERS, THE CHANCE THAT YOU WILL DEVELOP LUNG CANCER IS GREATER THAN THAT OF THE NON-SMOKING PUBLIC.**

Your employer's contract with the Owner for the above project requires that: You be supplied with the proper respirator and be trained in its use. You be trained in safe work practices and in the use of the equipment found on the job. You receive a medical examination. These things are to have been done at no cost to you. By signing this certification you are assuring the Owner that your employer has met these obligations to you.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION: I have been trained in the proper use of respirators, and informed of the type respirator to be used on the above referenced project. I have a copy of the written respiratory protection manual issued by my employers. I have been equipped at no cost with the respirator to be used on the above project.

TRAINING COURSE: I have been trained in the dangers inherent in handling asbestos and breathing asbestos dust and in proper work procedures and personal and area protective measures. The topics covered in the course included the following:

- Physical characteristics of asbestos
- Health hazards associated with asbestos
- Respiratory protection
- Use of protective equipment
- Pressure differential systems
- Work practices including hands-on or on-the-job training
- Personal decontamination procedures
- Air monitoring, personal and area

MEDICAL EXAMINATION: I have had a medical examination within the last 12 months which was paid for by my employer. This examination included: health history, pulmonary function tests and may have included an evaluation of a chest x-ray.

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Witness \_\_\_\_\_

Printed Name \_\_\_\_\_ Social Security Number \_\_\_\_\_

**CERTIFICATION OF VISUAL INSPECTION****AREA** \_\_\_\_\_

In accordance with Paragraph "Project Decontamination" the Contractor hereby certifies that it has visually inspected the work area (all surfaces including pipes, beams, ledges, walls, ceiling and floor, Decontamination Unit, sheet plastic, etc.) and has found no dust, debris or residue.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title \_\_\_\_\_

**OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE CERTIFICATION**

the Owner's Representative hereby certifies that it has accompanied the Contractor on its visual inspection and verifies that this inspection has been thorough and to the best of its knowledge and belief, the Contractor's certification above is a true and honest one.

Signature \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_

Print Title \_\_\_\_\_



### RESPIRATORY PROTECTION PROGRAM

Project Name \_\_\_\_\_

Location \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Based upon airborne asbestos-fiber counts encountered on previous projects of similar type working on materials similar to those found on the above referenced project. The following level of respiratory protection is proposed for the indicated operations to maintain an Airborne Fiber Count (as measured by the NIOSH 7400 Method) below the specified Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) inside the respirator face piece.

Operation	Anticipated f/cc	Respiratory Protection	Protection Factor	f/cc in Mask
Installing sheet plastic				
Removing trim in contact with asbestos-containing material				
Removal of architectural finish or fireproofing				
Removal of pipe insulation				
Removal of fitting insulation				
Encapsulation of pipe and boiler insulation				
Gross debris removal				
Cleaning "primary" sheet plastic				
Cleaning "critical" barrier				
Removing Decontamination Unit				
Other				

The Contractor certifies that to the best of its knowledge and belief the above represent a true and accurate representation of Airborne Fiber Counts to be expected for the operations indicated, and are based upon airborne fiber data from past projects with similar materials and operations.

Contractor \_\_\_\_\_

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Print Name \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

END OF SECTION 02 61 26 00a



Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 65 00 00	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 65 00 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 65 00 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
02 65 00 00	02 61 13 00a	Precision Testing Of Underground Fuel Oil Tanks
02 65 00 00	02 61 13 00b	Hydrostatic Pressure Testing Of Air Receiving Tanks
02 81 00 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 81 00 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials

NOT FOR BID





**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 82 16 00 - ENCAPSULATION (LOCK-DOWN) OF ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for encapsulation (lock-down) of asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: Manufacturers technical information including label analysis and application instructions for each material proposed for use.
2. Installation Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions with specific project requirements noted.
3. Performance Warranty: Manufacturers performance guarantee.
4. Material Safety Data Sheet: Material Safety Data Sheet in accordance with the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200) for each surfactant and encapsulating material proposed for use on the work. Include a separate attachment for each sheet indicating the specific worker protective equipment proposed for use with the material indicated.

#### C. Delivery And Storage: Deliver materials to the job site in original, new and unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and following information:

1. Name or title of material
2. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture
3. Manufacturer's name
4. Thinning instructions
5. Application instructions
6. Deliver materials together with a copy of the OSHA Material
7. Safety Data Sheet for the material.

#### D. Job Conditions: Apply encapsulating materials only when environmental conditions in the work area are as required by the manufacturer's instructions.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Testing: Test material to be encapsulated using methods set forth in ASTM E1494 "Standard Practice for Encapsulants for Spray-or-Trowel-Applied Friable Asbestos-Containing Building Materials."

#### F. Warranty

1. Performance Warranty: Contractor shall submit written Performance Warranty, executed by the contractor, agreeing to repair/replace spray-on work which has cracked, fallen from substrate, or otherwise deteriorated to a condition where it would not perform effectively for its intended purposes due substantially to defective materials or workmanship and not due to abuse by occupants, improper maintenance, unforeseeable ambient exposures or other causes beyond anticipated conditions and contractors control. Warranty period shall be for at least one year after date of Final Completion.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials



1. Encapsulant system shall be an acrylic, elastomeric type, spray, brush or roller-applied, tinted penetrating or tinted bridging type, specifically designed for application to asbestos-containing material. System shall be equal to Global Encasement System as manufactured by GLOBAL Encasement Inc., 132-32nd Street, Union City, NJ 07087 U.S.A., Tel. (800) 266-3982/(201) 902-9770.
  - a. All encasement topcoat materials shall be warranted to be heavy-bodied, from the same manufacturer, and shall be long lasting, highly-pure (low VOC) materials that remain flexible, chalk resistant and resist cracking, peeling, algae and fungus that can cause future indoor air quality concerns.
  - b. To allow for building movement without cracking or disturbing fibrous materials, coating systems shall have passed testing to ASTM standards for adhesion, permeability, aged flexibility and with aged elasticity for the encasement system of over 250%.
  - c. Coatings shall be Class A Fire Rated, water-based, non-toxic, safe and easy to use, contain no hazardous ingredients by OSHA definition, comply with all known building codes and be non-flammable.
  - d. Coating materials shall have low VOC (Volatile Organic Compound) content.
  - e. Coating materials shall not release health threatening toxic smoke and fumes in a fire and shall comply with all known building codes.
  - f. Coating materials shall have passed the following testing standards:
    - 1) ASTM E 119 fire tests demonstrating that applying a multi-layer system over fireproofing does not adversely affect the fireproof rating of the fireproofing (3 hour test).
    - 2) UPITT Combustion Toxicity Test proving nothing toxic is released in a fire.
    - 3) ASTM E 84 and E162 fire tests for "Class A" - Surface Flammability and Burning Characteristics (Flame Spread = 0, Smoke Developed = 5).
    - 4) "Pull-off Adhesion" test per ASTM E736 equals or exceeds 9,950 lbs./sq. ft. (89.1 lbs./sq. in.).
    - 5) ASTM D 1653 and E96 "Water Vapor Permeability" (showing the rate that water vapor can pass through the system).
    - 6) Impact Resistance, "Tensile Strength" shall exceed 150 psi; "Elongation" shall exceed 250%.
    - 7) System shall be mildew resistant, impact resistant, scrub resistant, non-yellowing, non-chalking, highly blister resistant, rust resistant, highly chemical resistant and shall remain flexible after 1000 hour ASTM Accelerated Weather testing.
    - 8) Water-Based materials (low VOC) Volatile Organic Content of Primer-Sealer-Neutralizer = 0.1 g/L (0.001 lb./gal.) and Encasement Top Coat = 0.1 g/L (0.001 lb./gal.) as tested by EPA Method 24.
    - 9) Materials comply with applicable standards for installation on interior and/or exterior surfaces of a building.
    - 10) Encasement Systems shall provide additional water-proofing protection.

B. Related Materials:

1. Elastomeric architectural sealants, caulking compounds, primers, and similar materials shall be approved by the manufacturer of the encasement coatings. All materials used shall be applied in accordance with its manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Applicable Standards

1. Product shall be rated as acceptable for use intended when field tested in accordance with ASTM E 1494.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. General

Encapsulation (Lock-Down) Of Asbestos-Containing Materials

June 2021

1. Prior to applying any encapsulating material in Work Areas, Contractor shall obtain final visual inspection approval by the Project Administrator.
  2. Prior to applying any encapsulating material, Contractor shall ensure that application of the sealer will not cause the base material to fail and allow the sealed material to fall of its own weight or separate from the substrate. Should Contractor doubt the ability of the installation to support the sealant, request direction from the Owner's Representative before proceeding with the encapsulating work.
  3. Do Not Commence Application of encapsulating materials until all removal work within the work area has been completed.
- B. Worker Protection
1. Before beginning work with any material for which a Material Safety Data Sheet has been submitted provide workers with the required protective equipment. Require that appropriate protective equipment be used at all times.
- C. Application
1. Comply with all manufacturer's instructions for particular conditions of installation. Consult with manufacturer's technical representative for conditions not covered.
  2. Encapsulate all surfaces in full compliance with manufacturer's procedures.
  3. At completion of Encapsulation and before removal of Work Area enclosures and Pressure Differential System, decontaminate space in accordance with requirements of manufacturer's instructions.
  4. Remove all debris from the project site and restore area to proper conditions by cleaning all surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.
  5. At completion of work submit manufacturer's record of inspection of completed work and Manufacturers Performance Guarantee executed by both manufacturer and Contractor.

END OF SECTION 02 82 16 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 82 33 00 - REMOVAL OF NONFRIABLE ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of nonfriable asbestos-containing materials. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Definitions

1. ACM: Asbestos Containing material which is any material containing more than one percent asbestos.
2. Amended Water: Water containing a wetting agent or surfactant with a maximum surface tension of 2.9 Pa 29 dynes per centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1331.
3. Area Sampling: Sampling of asbestos fiber concentrations which approximates the concentrations of asbestos in the theoretical breathing zone but is not actually collected in the breathing zone of an employee.
4. Asbestos: The term asbestos collectively refers to a naturally occurring mineral known by the following specific names: chrysotile, amosite, crocidolite, tremolite, anthophyllite, and actinolite.
5. Asbestos control Area: That area where asbestos removal operations are performed. The area shall be isolated by physical boundaries to assist in the prevention of the uncontrolled access by non-qualified persons.
6. Asbestos Fibers: Those fibers having an aspect ratio of at least 3:1 and longer than-5 micrometers as determined by National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) Method 7400.
7. Asbestos Permissible Exposure Limit: 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter of air as an e-hour time weighted average measured in the breathing zone as by defined 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other Federal legislation having legal jurisdiction for the protection of workers health.
8. Background: The ambient airborne asbestos concentration in an uncontaminated area as measured prior to any asbestos hazard abatement efforts. Background concentrations for contaminated areas are measured in similar but asbestos free locations.
9. Contractor: The Contractor is that individual, or entity under contract to the Owner to perform the herein listed work.
10. Contractor/Supervisor (Asbestos abatement): A person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited as a Contractor/Supervisor under a State Model Accreditation Plan or EPA Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763.
11. Critical Barrier: The layer of polyethylene sheeting that covers an opening or penetration in a room or area that is to become a negative pressure enclosure.
12. Encapsulation: The abatement of an asbestos hazard through the appropriate use of chemical encapsulants.
13. Encapsulants: Specific materials in various forms used to chemically or physically entrap asbestos fibers in various configurations to prevent these fibers from becoming airborne. There are four types of encapsulants as follows which must comply with performance requirements as specified herein.
  - a. Removal Encapsulant (can be used as a wetting agent)
  - b. Bridging Encapsulant (used to provide a tough, durable surface coating to asbestos containing material)
  - c. Penetrating Encapsulant (used to penetrate the asbestos containing material encapsulating all asbestos fibers and preventing fiber release due to routine mechanical damage)
  - d. Lock-Down Encapsulant (used to seal off or "lock-down" minute asbestos fibers left on surfaces from which asbestos containing material has been removed).



14. Friable Asbestos Material: Any material containing more than one percent asbestos that can be crumbled, pulverized, or reduced to powder by hand pressure when dry.
15. Glovebag Technique: Those asbestos removal and control techniques put forth in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
16. HEPA Filter Equipment: High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filtered vacuum and/or exhaust ventilation equipment with a filter system capable of collecting and retaining asbestos fibers. Filters shall retain 99.97 percent of particles 0.3 microns or larger as indicated in UL 586.
17. the Owner: That qualified person employed directly by the Owner to monitor, sample, inspect the work, and advise the Owner.
18. Negative Pressure Enclosure (NPE): That engineering control technique described as a negative pressure enclosure in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
19. Non-friable Asbestos Material: Material that contains asbestos in which the fibers have been immobilized by a bonding agent, coating, binder, or other material so that the asbestos is well bound and will not normally release asbestos fibers during any appropriate use, handling, storage or transportation. It is understood that asbestos fibers may be released under other conditions such as demolition, renovation, removal, or mishap.
20. Personal Sampling: Air sampling which is performed to determine asbestos fiber concentrations within the breathing zone of a specific employee, as performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.
21. Competent Person (CP): A person who has successfully completed training and is therefore accredited under a legitimate State Model Accreditation Plan or EPA Model Accreditation Plan as described in 40 CFR 763 as a Contractor/Supervisor and shall be appropriately licensed according to the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed.
22. TEM: Refers to Transmission Electron Microscopy.
23. Time Weighted Average (TWA): The TWA is an 8-hour time weighted average airborne concentration of asbestos fibers.
24. Wetting Agent: A chemical added to water to reduce the water's surface tension thereby increasing the water's ability to soak into the material to which it is applied. An equivalent wetting agent must have a surface tension of at most 2.9 Pa 29 dynes per centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1331.

C. Requirements

1. Description of Work: The work covered by this section includes the handling and control of asbestos containing materials and describes some of the resultant procedures and equipment required to protect workers, the environment and occupants of the building or area, or both, from contact with airborne asbestos fibers. The work also includes the disposal of any asbestos containing materials generated by the work. More specific operational procedures shall be outlined in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan called for elsewhere in this specification. The asbestos work includes the use of non-friable removal technique(s) which is governed by 40 CFR 763 as indicated. Provide non-friable removal technique(s) as outlined in this specification for the locations indicated.
2. Medical Requirements: Provide medical requirements including but not limited to medical surveillance and medical record keeping as listed in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
  - a. Medical Examinations: Before exposure to airborne asbestos fibers, provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by 29 CFR 1926.1101 or other pertinent State or local directives. This requirement must have been satisfied within the 12 months prior to the start of work on this contract. The same medical examination shall be given on an annual basis to employees engaged in an occupation involving asbestos and within 30 calendar days before or after the termination of employment in such occupation. Specifically identify x-ray films of asbestos workers to the consulting radiologist and mark medical record jackets with the word "ASBESTOS."
  - b. Medical Records: Maintain complete and accurate records of employees' medical examinations, medical records, and exposure data for a period of 30 years after termination of employment and make records of the required medical examinations and

- exposure data available for inspection and copying to: The Assistant Secretary of Labor for Occupational Safety and Health (OSHA), or authorized representatives of them, and an employee's physician upon the request of the employee or former employee.
- c. Medical Certification: Submit written certification for each worker and contractor/supervisor, signed by a licensed physician indicating that the worker and contractor/supervisor has met or exceeded all of the medical prerequisites listed herein and in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and 29 CFR 1910.134 as prescribed by law.
  3. Training: Train all personnel involved in the asbestos control work in accordance with United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) training criteria or State training criteria whichever is more stringent. The Contractor shall document the training by providing a copy of a current training certification to the the Owner for each person assigned to work on this project. Furnish each employee with respirator training and fit testing documentation as required by 29 CFR 1910.134. Provide instruction on the engineering and other hazard control techniques and procedures to be used on this project.
    - a. Employee Training: Submit copies of training certificates for each employee indicating that the employee has received training at the appropriate level in accordance with 40 CFR 763.
  4. Permits, Licenses, and Notifications: Notify the local air pollution control district/agency and the the Owner in writing 10 working days prior to commencement of work in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M or applicable state and local regulations. Obtain necessary permits or licenses in conjunction with asbestos removal, encapsulation, hauling, and disposal. Post the permit and/or license at the work site, visible from a non-controlled area. Notify the local fire department 3 days prior to removing fire-proofing material from the building including notice that the material contains asbestos.
  5. Environment, Safety and Health Compliance: Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART A, and 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M or applicable State or local regulations regarding handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of asbestos waste materials. Submit matters of interpretation of standards to the appropriate administrative agency for resolution before starting the work. Where the requirements of this specification, applicable regulations, or referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement shall apply.
    - a. Site Inspection: While performing asbestos engineering control work, the Contractor shall be subject to on-site inspection by the Federal, State, or local regulatory agencies and the Contracting Officer or its designated representative. If the work is found to be in violation of Federal, State, or local regulations or this specification, the Contracting Officer or its representative will issue a stop work order to be in effect immediately and until the violation is resolved. All related costs including standby time required to resolve the. violation shall be at the Contractor's expense.
  6. Respiratory Protection Program: Establish and implement a respirator program as required by ANSI 288.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134. Submit a written program manual or operating procedure including methods of compliance with regulatory statutes.
    - a. Respirator Program Records: Submit records of the respirator program as required by ANSI 288.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134.
  7. Contractor/Supervisor (Asbestos Abatement): The Contractor shall be represented on-site by a trained contractor/Supervisor. This person shall be on-site at all times when asbestos work is in progress. The Qualified Person, as defined herein, can be the Contractor/Supervisor.
  8. Hazard Communication: Adhere to all parts of 29 CFR 1910.1200 and 29 CFR 1926.59. Provide the Contracting Officer with a copy of the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials brought to the site. Review the Asbestos Survey Report(s) provided by the the Owner, if any.
  9. Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan: Submit a detailed plan of the safety precautions such as lockout, tag-out, tryout, fall protection, and confined space entry procedures and equipment and work procedures to be used in the removal of materials containing asbestos. The plan shall be prepared by the Contractor (and reviewed and signed by an asbestos consultant (LAC) licensed according to the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed) for review and





recommendation for approval by the the Owner. The plan shall be forwarded to the the Owner for final approval at least 10 days prior to beginning abatement activities. The plan shall include but not be limited to the detailed description of personal protective equipment and work practices to be used including, but not limited to, respiratory protection, type of whole-body protection , the location of asbestos control areas including clean and dirty areas, buffer zones, showers, storage areas, change rooms, removal method, interface of trades involved in the construction, sequencing of asbestos related work, disposal plan, type of wetting agent and asbestos encapsulant to be used, locations of local exhaust equipment, planned air sampling strategies, and a detailed description of the method to be employed in order to control environmental pollution. The plan shall also include both fire and medical emergency response plans. The Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan must be approved in writing prior to starting any asbestos work.

10. Testing Laboratory: Submit the name, address, and telephone number of each testing laboratory selected for the sampling, analysis, and reporting of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers along with evidence that each laboratory selected holds the appropriate State license and/or permits and certification that each laboratory is American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) accredited and that persons counting the samples have been judged proficient by current inclusion on the AIHA Asbestos Analysis Registry (AAR) and successful participation of the laboratory in the Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT) Program. Where analysis to determine asbestos content in bulk materials or transmission electron microscopy is required, submit evidence that the laboratory is accredited by the National Institute of Science and Technology (NIST) under National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for asbestos analysis.
11. Landfill Approval: Submit written evidence that the landfill for disposal is approved for asbestos disposal by the USEPA and State and local regulatory agency(s).
12. Waste Shipment Records/Asbestos Waste Manifest: Submit waste shipment records and/or asbestos manifest records, prepared in accordance with applicable Federal, State, or local regulations, signed and dated by an agent of the landfill, certifying the amount of asbestos materials delivered to the landfill, within 3 days after delivery.
13. Negative Exposure Assessment: Submit objective data demonstrating that the method(s) used for the specified non-friable ACM removal does not release airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers exceeding the TWA PEL or excursion limit. This data may be from previous work within the last 12 months or from initial exposure assessments on this project. Data from previous work must have been gathered by the firm employed on this contract, using workers trained to the same level, with the ACM and workplace conditions "closely resembling" the conditions for this contract.
14. Contractor Daily Reports: Prepare a written report for each day that asbestos work is being accomplished. The report should be submitted to the the Owner monthly. The report as a minimum shall include the following, where applicable:
  - a. Daily Visual Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report documenting compliance with the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan and Federal, State, or local regulations.
  - b. Air Sampling Reports: Complete fiber counting within 24 hours of the "time off" of the sample pump. Notify the the Owner immediately of any airborne levels of asbestos fibers in excess of the acceptable limits. Sampling results shall be submitted to the the Owner the day following receipt. The affected employees will be provided copies of the results where required by law within 3 working days. These results shall be signed by the air sampler and the testing laboratory employee that analyzed the sample.
  - c. Pressure Differential Recordings for Local Exhaust System-Not Used
  - d. Asbestos Disposal Quantity Report: The Contractor shall record and report daily the amount of asbestos containing material removed and the amount transported for disposal. Deliver the report for the previous day and cumulative totals with amounts of material removed reported in linear meters or square meters linear feet or square feet as described initially in this specification and the amounts of material transported for disposal reported in cubic meters yards.

D. Submittals

1. Submit the following in accordance with Section "Submittal Procedures."
  - a. Vacuums and tools
  - b. Respirators
  - c. Wetting Agent
  - d. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for all materials proposed for transport to the project site
  - e. Local exhaust system
  - f. Pressure differential automatic recording instrument
  - g. Daily Reports
  - h. Asbestos hazard abatement plan
  - i. Testing laboratory
  - j. Training Certificates
  - k. Landfill approval
  - l. Employee training
  - m. Medical certification requirements
  - n. Waste shipment records/Asbestos waste manifest
  - o. Respiratory Protection Program
  - p. Negative Exposure Assessment
  - q. Local Exhaust system
  - r. Show compliance with ANSI Z9.2 by providing manufacturers' certifications.
  - s. Permits, licenses, and Notifications
  - t. Rental equipment
  - u. Respirator program records
  - v. Protective clothing decontamination quality control records
  - w. Protective clothing decontamination facility notification.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Glovebags-Not Used
2. Rental Equipment: Provide a copy of the written notification to the rental company concerning the intended use of the equipment and the possibility of asbestos contamination of the equipment.
3. Protective Clothing Decontamination Quality Control Records: Provide all records that document quality control for the decontamination of reusable outer protective clothing.
4. Protective Clothing Decontamination Facility Notification: Submit written evidence that persons who decontaminate, store, or transport asbestos contaminated clothing used in the performance of this contract were duly notified in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Encapsulants

1. See Division 21 Section "Facility Fire-suppression Water-service Piping".

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Equipment

1. Respirators: Select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). Provide personnel engaged in pre-cleaning, cleanup, handling, and removal of asbestos containing materials with the appropriate respiratory protection as specified in 29 CFR 1910.134.
2. Exterior Whole Body Protection



- a. Outer Protective Clothing: Provide personnel exposed to asbestos with disposable "non-breathable," or reusable "non-breathable" whole body outer protective clothing, head coverings, gloves, and foot coverings. Provide disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Cloth gloves may be worn inside the plastic or rubber gloves for comfort, but shall not be used alone. Make sleeves secure at the wrists, make foot coverings secure at the ankles, and make clothing secure at the neck by the use of tape. Reusable whole body outer protective clothing shall be either disposed of as asbestos contaminated waste upon exiting from the asbestos regulated work area or be properly decontaminated.
  - b. Work Clothing-Not Used
  - c. Decontamination of Reusable Outer Protective Clothing: When reusable outer protective clothing is used, transport the double bagged clothing to a previously notified commercial/industrial decontamination facility for decontamination. Perform non-destructive testing to determine the effectiveness of asbestos decontamination. If representative sampling is used, ensure the statistical validity of the sampling results. If representative sampling is used, reject any entire batch in which any of the pieces exceed 40 fibers per square millimeter. Inspect reusable protective clothing prior to use to ensure that it will provide adequate protection and is not or is not about to become ripped, torn, deteriorated, or damaged, and that it is not visibly contaminated. Notify, in writing, all personnel involved in the decontamination of reusable outer protective clothing as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101.
  - d. Eye Protection: Provide goggles to personnel engaged in asbestos abatement operations when the use of a full face respirator is not required.
3. Warning Signs and Labels: Provide bilingual warning signs printed in English and Spanish at all approaches to asbestos control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary protective steps required before entering the area. Provide labels and affix to all asbestos materials, scrap, waste, debris, and other products contaminated with asbestos.
- a. Warning Sign: Provide vertical format conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 minimum 20 by 14 inches (500 by 355 mm) displaying the following legend in the lower panel:

DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
MAY CAUSE CANCER  
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS  
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY  
WEAR RESPIRATORY PROTECTION AND  
PROTECTIVE CLOTHING IN THIS AREA
  - b. Warning Labels: Provide labels conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101 of sufficient size to be clearly legible, displaying the following legend:

DANGER  
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS  
MAY CAUSE CANCER  
CAUSES DAMAGE TO LUNGS  
DO NOT BREATHE DUST  
AVOID CREATING DUST
  - c. Provide the following asbestos labels, of sufficient size to be clearly legible, for display on waste containers (bags or drums) which will be used to transport asbestos contaminated

material in accordance with United States Department of Transportation 49 CFR Parts 171 and 172.

NA2212, (WASTE) ASBESTOS, 9, PGIII

4. Vacuums and Tools: Vacuums shall be leak proof to the filter and equipped with HEPA filters. Filters on vacuums shall conform to ANSI Z9.2 and UL 586. Do not use power tools to remove asbestos containing materials unless the tool is equipped with effective, integral HEPA filtered exhaust ventilation systems. Remove all residual asbestos from reusable tools prior to storage or reuse.
- B. General
1. Pre-Asbestos Work Conference: The Contractor and the Contractor/Supervisor shall meet with the Contracting officer prior to beginning work, to discuss in detail the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan, including work procedures and safety precautions. Once approved by the Owners Engineer, the plan will be enforced as if a part of this specification. Any changes required in the specification as a result of the plan shall be identified specifically in the plan to allow for free discussion and approval by the Owners Engineer prior to starting work.
  2. Asbestos Control Area Requirements: The Contractor shall demarcate the asbestos control area(s) using physical barriers and signs to prevent access by unauthorized personnel. This area is defined by 29 CFR 1926.1101 as the regulated area.
  3. Work Procedure: Perform asbestos related work in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101, 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, applicable State or local regulation, and as specified herein. Use wet removal procedures. Personnel shall wear and utilize protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, drinking, chewing gum or tobacco, or applying cosmetics shall not be permitted in the asbestos control area(s). Personnel of other trades not engaged in the removal of asbestos containing material shall not be exposed at any time to airborne concentrations of asbestos. If an asbestos fiber release or spill, stop work immediately, correct the condition to the satisfaction of the Owners Engineer, including clean-up and clearance sampling, if appropriate, prior to resumption of work.
  4. Furnishings: Furniture will be removed from the area of work by the Owner before asbestos work begins.
  5. Pre-cleaning: Wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces potentially contaminated with asbestos prior to establishment of an enclosure.
- C. Removal Procedures: Wet asbestos containing material with a fine spray of amended water during removal, cutting, or other handling so as to reduce the emission of airborne fibers. Remove material and immediately place in 0.15 mm 6 mil plastic disposal bags. Remove asbestos containing material in a gradual manner, with continuous application of the amended water in such a manner that no asbestos material is disturbed prior to being adequately wetted. Where unusual circumstances prohibit the use of 0.15 mm 6 mil plastic bags, submit an alternate proposal for containment of asbestos fibers to the Owner's Engineer for approval. Asbestos containing material shall be containerized while wet. At no time shall asbestos containing material be allowed to accumulate or become dry. Handle asbestos containing material as indicated in 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, applicable State or local regulation, and 29 CFR 1926.1101.
1. Exposed Pipe Insulation Edges-Not Used
  2. Negative Pressure Enclosure: Block and seal openings in areas where the release of airborne asbestos fibers can be expected. Establish an asbestos negative pressure enclosure with the use of curtains, portable partitions, or other enclosures in order to prevent the escape of asbestos fibers from the contaminated asbestos work area.
    - a. Personnel/Equipment Decontamination Unit: Provide a temporary facility with a separate equipment/dirty change room and clean change room. Provide a shower that complies with 29 CFR 1926.51 in between the dirty room and clean room for personnel required to wear whole body protective clothing. Provide two separate lockers for each asbestos worker, one in each locker room. Keep street clothing and street shoes in the clean locker. HEPA



vacuum and remove asbestos contaminated disposable protective clothing while still wearing respirators at the boundary of the asbestos work area and seal in impermeable bags or containers for disposal. Do not wear work clothing between home and work. All employees shall shower before changing into street clothes. Collect used shower water and filter with approved water filtration equipment to remove asbestos contamination. Dispose of filters and residue as asbestos waste. Discharge clean water to the sanitary system. Dispose of asbestos contaminated work clothing as asbestos contaminated waste or properly decontaminate as specified in the Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan.

- b. Waste Load-Out Unit: Provide a separate temporary area expressly for short-term storage of bagged asbestos containing material that is ready for disposal. The unit shall be the only port used to transfer waste to a truck, dumpster, or other approved on-site storage facility. It shall not be used for personnel egress. A waste load-out unit shall be integral to each negative pressure enclosure.

3. Non-friable Removal Procedures:

- a. Under normal conditions EPA Category II, non-friable asbestos containing materials may not be considered hazardous; however, this material may release airborne asbestos fibers during demolition and removal; therefore it must be handled in a manner to prevent the release of asbestos fibers. At no time will this material be mechanically chipped, sawed, sanded, or ground.
- b. Prior to beginning removal, establish an Asbestos Control Area and install Critical Barriers as specified elsewhere in this section. Submit a Negative Exposure Assessment which is less than 12 months old to the the Owner for approval or conduct air sampling as specified elsewhere in this section to establish the exposure levels for the exact removal method being used. The Contractor will establish the correct level of Personal Protective Equipment required.
- c. Acceptable methods of removal include, but are not limited to, the use of dry ice, a heat gun or lamp, citrus-based solvents, and hand tools with amended water. Removal shall be accomplished to keep the ACM substantially intact. Breakage into small pieces is an unacceptable work practice. The method shall be detailed in the Asbestos Abatement Plan and shall not be changed during the removal without Contracting Officer approval.
- d. Upon completion of the removal and clean-up, but prior to removal of critical barriers, the Contractor Testing company shall conduct a visual inspection of all areas affected by the removal. Re-clean as required.

D. Field Quality Control Requirements

- 1. Visual Inspections: The the Owner will conduct periodic inspections of all areas where asbestos removal and activities are in progress to ensure compliance with the approved Asbestos Hazard Abatement Plan and Federal/State regulatory requirements. This inspection shall include confirmation of proper control/containment/enclosure, worker protection, housekeeping, exhaust equipment operation, decontamination procedures, proper wetting and disposal, and inspection of work progress and work practices. Each activity will be documented as acceptable or noted as unacceptable with justification for the non-compliance.
- 2. Air Sampling: Sampling of airborne concentrations of asbestos fibers shall be performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.1101 and as specified herein. Unless otherwise specified, use NIOSH Method 7400 for sampling and analysis. Air Sampling may be duplicated by the Government at the discretion of the Contracting Officer. If the air sampling results obtained by the Government differ from those results obtained by the Contractor, the Government will determine which results predominate.
  - a. Sampling Prior to Asbestos Work (Not Used)
  - b. Sampling During Asbestos Work
    - 1) The Contractor's testing company shall perform area sampling as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.1101 and governing environmental regulations. Perform area sampling at least once every week close to the work inside the enclosure, outside the personnel/equipment decontamination unit entrance to the enclosure.

- 2) If sampling outside the enclosure shows airborne levels have exceeded background or 0.01 fibers per cubic centimeter, whichever is greater, stop all work, correct the condition(s) causing the fiber release, and notify the the Owner immediately. Determine by testing if adjacent areas are contaminated. If so the Contractor shall clean the contaminated areas, visually inspect, and sample the areas as specified herein.
- 3) The Contractor shall conduct personal sampling of at least 25% of the workers engaged in asbestos handling (removal, disposal, transport and other associated work) throughout the duration of the project. If the quantity of airborne asbestos fibers monitored at the breathing zone of the workers at any time exceeds 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter, notify the PQP immediately, evaluate work practices, and take corrective action to reduce airborne asbestos fibers.

E. Clean-Up And Disposal

1. Housekeeping

- a. Essential parts of asbestos dust control are housekeeping and clean-up procedures. Maintain surfaces of the asbestos control area free of accumulations of asbestos fibers. Give meticulous attention to restricting the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the general area. Use HEPA filtered vacuum cleaners. DO NOT BLOW DOWN THE SPACE WITH COMPRESSED AIR. All asbestos waste shall be placed in an approved on-site storage facility or transported for disposal daily. When asbestos removal is complete, all asbestos waste is removed from the work-site, and final clean-up is completed, the PQP shall visually inspect the asbestos control area for cleanliness. After final clean-up and acceptable pre-clearance airborne concentrations are attained but before the local exhaust system is turned off and the negative pressure enclosure removed), remove all pre-filters on the building HVAC system and provide new pre-filters.
- b. Dispose of filters as asbestos contaminated materials. Reestablish HVAC,. mechanical, and electrical systems in proper working order.

2. Title to Materials: All waste materials, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of as specified in applicable Federal, State, and local regulations and herein.

3. Disposal of Asbestos

- a. Collect all removed asbestos containing material, contaminated materials, contaminated water, scrap, debris, bags, containers, expendable equipment, and asbestos contaminated clothing which may produce airborne asbestos fibers and place in sealed fiber-proof, waterproof, non-returnable containers (e.g. double plastic bags 0.15 mm 6 mils thick, cartons, drums or cans). Wastes within the containers must be adequately wet in accordance with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M. Affix a warning and Department of Transportation (DOT) label to each container including the bags or use at least 0.15 mm 6 mils thick bags with the approved warnings and DOT labeling preprinted on the bag.
- b. Each container or bag shall clearly indicate that the waste generator is the Owner and the development at which the waste is generated, and the Job Order number of the project.
- c. Prevent contamination of the transport vehicle (especially if the transport vehicle is a rented truck likely to be used in the future for non-asbestos purposes). These precautions include lining the vehicle cargo area with plastic sheeting (similar to work area enclosure) and thorough cleaning of the cargo area after transport and unloading of asbestos debris is complete. Dispose of waste asbestos material at an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) or State-approved asbestos landfill off the Owner's property. For temporary storage, store sealed impermeable bags in asbestos waste drums or skids. An area for interim storage of asbestos waste-containing drums or skids will be coordinated with the the Owner. Procedure for hauling and disposal shall comply with 40 CFR 61-SUBPART M, State, regional, and local standards. Sealed plastic bags may be dumped from drums into the burial site unless the bags have been broken or damaged. Damaged bags shall remain



in the drum and the entire contaminated drum shall be buried. Uncontaminated drums may be recycled. Workers unloading the sealed drums shall wear appropriate respirators and personal protective equipment when handling asbestos materials at the disposal site.

END OF SECTION 02 82 33 00

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 82 33 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 82 33 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials
02 82 33 00	02 61 26 00a	Removal Of Friable Asbestos-Containing Materials
02 82 33 00	02 82 16 00	Encapsulation (Lock-Down) Of Asbestos-Containing Materials

---

NOT FOR BID





**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 83 19 13 - REMOVAL AND DISPOSAL OF LEAD-CONTAINING PAINT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the removal and disposal of lead-based or lead-containing paint. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Definitions

1. Action Level: Employee exposure, without regard to use of respirators, to an airborne concentration of lead of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air averaged over an 8 hour period in an occupational/industrial environment.
2. Area Sampling: Sampling of lead concentrations within the lead control area and inside the physical boundaries which is representative of the airborne lead concentrations but is not collected in the breathing zone of personnel.
3. Competent Person (CP): As used in this section, refers to a person employed by the Contractor who is trained in the recognition and control of lead hazards in accordance with current federal, State, and local regulations. An industrial hygienist or safety professional certified for comprehensive practice by the American Board of Industrial Hygiene or by the Board of Certified Safety Professionals is the best choice.
4. Contaminated Room: Room for removal of contaminated personal protective equipment (PPE).
5. Decontamination Shower Facility: That facility that encompasses a clean clothing storage room, and a contaminated clothing storage and disposal rooms, with a shower facility in between.
6. Eight-Hour Time Weighted Average (TWA): Airborne concentration of lead to which an employee is exposed, averaged over an 8 hour workday as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62.
7. High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) Filter Equipment: HEPA filtered vacuuming equipment with a UL 586 filter system capable of collecting and retaining lead-contaminated paint dust. A high efficiency particulate filter means 99.97 percent efficient against 0.3 micron or larger size particles.
8. Lead: Metallic lead, inorganic lead compounds, and organic lead soaps.
9. Lead-Based Paint (LBP): Paint or other surface coating that contains lead in excess of 1.0 milligrams per centimeter squared or 0.5 percent by weight.
10. Lead-Based Paint Hazard (LBP Hazard): Any condition that causes exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil, lead-based paint that is deteriorated or present in accessible surfaces, friction surfaces, or impact surfaces that would result in adverse human health effects.
11. Lead-Containing Paint (LCP): Lead-based paint or other similar surface coating containing lead or lead compound in excess of 0.06 percent by weight of the total nonvolatile content of the paint.
12. Lead Control Area: An enclosed area or structure, constructed as a temporary containment equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust, which prevents the spread of lead dust, paint chips, or debris existing as a condition of lead-based paint removal operations. The lead control area is also isolated by physical boundaries to prevent unauthorized entry of personnel.
13. Lead Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL): Fifty micrograms per cubic meter of air as an 8 hour time weighted average as determined by 29 CFR 1926.62. If an employee is exposed for more than eight hours in a work day, the PEL shall be determined by the following formula:  
$$\text{PEL (micrograms/cubic meter of air)} = 400/\text{No. hrs. worked per day.}$$
14. Personal Sampling: Sampling of airborne lead concentrations within the breathing zone of an employee to determine the 8 hour time weighted average concentration in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. Samples shall be representative of the employees' work tasks. Breathing zone shall be considered an area within a hemisphere, forward of the shoulders, with a radius of **6 to 9 inches (150 to 225 mm)** and centered at the nose or mouth of an employee.

15. Physical Boundary: Area physically roped or partitioned off around an enclosed lead control area to limit unauthorized entry of personnel. As used in this section, "inside boundary" shall mean the same as "outside lead control area but inside boundary."

C. Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Product Data:
  - a. Vacuum filters
  - b. Respirators
2. Test Reports
  - a. Sampling results
  - b. Assessment data report
3. Certificates
  - a. Qualifications of CP
  - b. Testing laboratory</SUB> qualifications
  - c. Third party consultant qualifications
  - d. Lead-Based Paint/Lead-Containing Paint Removal Plan including CP approval (signature, date, and certification number)
  - e. Rental equipment notification
  - f. Respiratory protection program
  - g. Hazard communication program
  - h. EPA approved hazardous waste treatment or disposal facility for lead disposal
  - i. Hazardous waste management plan
  - j. Vacuum filters
4. Manufacturer's Instructions
  - a. Chemicals and equipment
  - b. Materials
  - c. Material safety data sheets for all chemicals
5. Closeout Submittals
  - a. Completed and signed hazardous waste manifest from treatment or disposal facility
  - b. Certification of medical examinations
  - c. Employee training certification

D. Qualifications Of CP

1. Submit name, address, and telephone number of the CP selected to perform responsibilities specified in paragraph entitled "Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities." Provide previous experience of the CP. Submit proper documentation that the CP is trained and licensed and certified in accordance with Federal, State, and local laws.

E. Third Party Consultant Qualifications

1. Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the third party consultant selected to perform the wipe sampling for determining concentrations of lead in dust or soil sampling. Submit proper documentation that the consultant is trained and certified as an inspector technician or inspector/risk assessor by the USEPA authorized State (or local) certification and accreditation program.

F. Testing Laboratory

1. Submit the name, address, and telephone number of the testing laboratory selected to perform the air and wipe and soil sampling, testing, and reporting of airborne concentrations of lead. Use a laboratory accredited under the EPA National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program (NLLAP) by either the American Association for Laboratory Accreditation (A2LA) or the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) and that is successfully participating in the Environmental Lead Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program to perform sample analysis.

G. Lead-Based Paint/Lead-Containing Paint Removal Plan (LBP/LCPRP)

1. Submit a detailed job-specific plan of the work procedures to be used in the removal of LBP/LCP. The plan shall include a sketch showing the location, size, and details of lead control areas, location and details of decontamination facilities, viewing ports, and mechanical ventilation system. Include in the plan, eating, drinking, smoking and sanitary procedures, interface of trades, sequencing of lead related work, collected waste water and paint debris disposal plan, air sampling plan, respirators, personal protective equipment, and a detailed description of the method of containment of the operation to ensure that airborne lead concentrations of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air and baseline lead dust/soil concentrations are not reached or exceeded outside of the lead control area. Include site preparation and cleanup procedures. Include occupational and environmental sampling, training and strategy, sampling methodology, frequency, duration of sampling, and qualifications of sampling personnel in the air sampling portion of the plan.
- H. Occupational And Environmental Sampling Results
  1. Submit occupational and environmental sampling results to the the Owner within three working days of collection, signed by the testing laboratory responsible official, the employee that performed the sampling, and the CP.
    - a. The sampling results shall represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. The data shall represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead.
    - b. Submit worker exposure data conducted during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62.
    - c. The initial monitoring shall determine the requirements for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the compliance program (LBP/LCP) in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
- I. Occupational And Environmental Assessment Data Report:
  1. Some LBP/LCP removal work may not require full implementation of the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62. Based on the experience of the Contractor and/or the use of a specific process or method for performing the work, the Contractor may be able to provide historic data (previous 12 months) to demonstrate that airborne exposures are controlled below the action level. Such methods or controls shall be fully presented in the LBP/LCPRP. To reduce the full implementation of 29 CFR 1926.62, the Contractor shall provide documentation in an Assessment Data Report.
  2. Submit occupational and environmental assessment report to the the Owner prior to start of work, signed by the testing laboratory responsible official, and the CP.
    - a. Submit a report that supports the determination regarding the reduction of the need to fully implement the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62 and supporting the LBP/LCP. The exposure assessment shall represent each job classification, or if working conditions are similar to previous jobs by the same employer, provide previously collected exposure data that can be used to estimate worker exposures in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62. The data shall represent the worker's regular daily exposure to lead for stated work.
    - b. Submit worker exposure data conducted during the task based trigger operations of 29 CFR 1926.62 with a complete process description in supporting a negative assessment.
    - c. The initial assessment shall determine the requirement for further monitoring and the need to fully implement the control and protective requirements including the compliance program (LBP/LCPRP) in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
- J. Quality Assurance
  1. Medical Examinations: Initial medical surveillance as required by 29 CFR 1926.62 shall be made available to all employees exposed to lead at any time (1 day) above the action level. Full medical surveillance shall be made available to all employees on an annual basis who are or may be exposed to lead in excess of the action level for more than 30 days a year or as required by 29 CFR 1926.62. Adequate records shall show that employees meet the medical surveillance requirements of 29 CFR 1926.33, 29 CFR 1926.62, and 29 CFR 1926.103.



- a. Medical Records: Maintain complete and accurate medical records of employees for a period of at least 30 years or for the duration of employment plus 30 years, whichever is longer.
  - b. Medical Surveillance: Provide medical surveillance to all personnel exposed to lead as indicated in 29 CFR 1926.62.
2. Competent Person (CP) Responsibilities
  - a. Certify training as meeting all federal, State, and local requirements.
  - b. Review and approve lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan for conformance to the applicable referenced standards.
  - c. Continuously inspect lead-based paint removal work for conformance with the approved plan.
  - d. Perform air and wipe sampling.
  - e. Ensure work is performed in strict accordance with specifications at all times.
  - f. Control work to prevent hazardous exposure to human beings and to the environment at all times.
  - g. Certify the conditions of the work as called for elsewhere in this specification.
3. Training: Train each employee performing paint removal, disposal, and air sampling operations prior to the time of initial job assignment and annually thereafter, in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.21, 29 CFR 1926.62, and State and local regulations.
  - a. Training Certification: Submit a certificate for each employee, signed and dated by the approved training source, stating that the employee has received the required lead training.
4. Respiratory Protection Program
  - a. Furnish each employee required to wear a negative pressure respirator or other appropriate type with a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least annually thereafter as required by 29 CFR 1926.62.
  - b. Establish and implement a respiratory protection program as required by ANSI Z88.2, 29 CFR 1926.103, 29 CFR 1926.62, and 29 CFR 1926.55.
5. Hazard Communication Program: Establish and implement a Hazard Communication Program as required by 29 CFR 1926.59.
6. Hazardous Waste Management: The Hazardous Waste Management Plan shall comply with applicable requirements of federal, State, and local hazardous waste regulations and address:
  - a. Identification and classification of hazardous wastes associated with the work.
  - b. Estimated quantities of wastes to be generated and disposed of.
  - c. Names and qualifications of each contractor that will be transporting, storing, treating, and disposing of the wastes. Include the facility location and operator and a 24-hour point of contact. Furnish two copies of EPA, or State and local hazardous waste permit applications or permits or manifests, as required, and EPA Identification numbers.
  - d. Names and qualifications (experience and training) of personnel who will be working on-site with hazardous wastes.
  - e. List of waste handling equipment to be used in performing the work, to include cleaning, volume reduction, and transport equipment.
  - f. Spill prevention, containment, and cleanup contingency measures including a health and safety plan to be implemented in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.65.
  - g. Work plan and schedule for waste containment, removal and disposal. Wastes shall be cleaned up and containerized daily.
  - h. Unit cost for hazardous waste disposal according to this plan.
7. Environmental, Safety and Health Compliance: In addition to the detailed requirements of this specification, comply with laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations of Federal, State, and local authorities regarding removing, handling, storing, transporting, and disposing of lead waste materials. Comply with the applicable requirements of the current issue of 29 CFR 1926.62. Submit matters regarding interpretation of standards to the the Owner for resolution before starting work. Where specification requirements and the referenced documents vary, the most stringent requirement shall apply.

8. Pre-Construction Conference: Along with the CP, meet with the the Owner to discuss in detail the hazardous waste management plan and the lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan, including work procedures and precautions for the removal plan.

K. Equipment

1. Respirators: Furnish appropriate respirators approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Department of Health and Human Services, for use in atmospheres containing lead dust. Respirators shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.
2. Special Protective Clothing: Furnish personnel who will be exposed to lead-contaminated dust with proper disposable uncontaminated, reusable protective whole body clothing, head covering, gloves, and foot coverings as required by 29 CFR 1926.62. Furnish proper disposable plastic or rubber gloves to protect hands. Reduce the level of protection only after obtaining approval from the CP.
3. Rental Equipment Notification: If rental equipment is to be used during lead-based paint handling and disposal, notify the rental agency in writing concerning the intended use of the equipment. Furnish a copy of the written notification to the the Owner.
4. Vacuum Filters: UL 586 labeled HEPA filters.
5. Equipment for Owner's Personnel: Furnish the the Owner with two complete sets of personal protective equipment (PPE) daily, as required herein, for entry into and inspection of the paint removal work within the lead controlled area. Personal protective equipment shall include disposable whole body covering, including appropriate foot, head, and hand protection. PPE shall remain the property of the Contractor. Respiratory protection for the the Owner will be provided by the Owner.

L. Removal

1. Title to Materials: Materials resulting from demolition work, except as specified otherwise, shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be disposed of in accordance with Division 02 Section(s) "Selective Structure Demolition" OR "Structure Demolition", except as specified herein.

1.2 PRODUCT

A. Chemicals

1. Submit applicable Material Safety Data Sheets for all chemicals used in paint removal work. Use the least toxic product approved by the the Owner.

B. Materials

1. The soluble metal content and the total metal content shall not exceed values which would cause a material to be classified as a hazardous waste.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Protection

1. Notification: Notify the the Owner 20 days prior to the start of any paint removal work.
2. Lead Control Area Requirements
  - a. If LBP will be removed by means which will not likely create airborne, lead-containing dust (such as careful wet scraping or chemical stripping), establish a lead control area by situating critical barriers and physical boundaries around the area or structure where LBP/LCP removal operations will be performed.
  - b. If removal practice will create airborne, lead-containing dust (such as sanding, abrasive blasting, thermal cutting, demolition, or needle gun use), utilize full containment procedures - Contain removal operations by the use of critical barriers and HEPA filtered exhaust **OR** a negative pressure enclosure system with decontamination facilities and with HEPA filtered exhaust if required by the CP, **as directed**. For containment areas larger than **1,000 square feet (100 square meters)** install a minimum of two **18 inch (450 mm)** square viewing



- ports. Locate ports to provide a view of the required work from the exterior of the enclosed contaminated area. Glaze ports with laminated safety glass.
3. Protection of Existing Work to Remain: Perform paint removal work without damage or contamination of adjacent areas. Where existing work is damaged or contaminated, restore work to its original condition or better.
  4. Boundary Requirements: Provide physical boundaries around the lead control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that airborne concentrations of lead will not reach 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
    - a. Physical Boundary: Provide physical boundaries around the lead control area by roping off the area designated in the work plan or providing curtains, portable partitions or other enclosures to ensure that airborne concentrations of lead will not reach 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
    - b. Warning Signs: Provide warning signs at approaches to lead control areas. Locate signs at such a distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary precautions before entering the area. Signs shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR 1926.62.
  5. Furnishings:
    - a. The Owner will remove furniture and equipment from the building before lead-based paint removal work begins.  
**OR**  
Furniture and equipment will remain in the building. Protect and cover furnishings or remove furnishings from the work area and store in a location approved by the the Owner.  
**OR**  
Existing furniture and equipment is lead contaminated, decontaminate, dispose of as lead contaminated waste.
  6. Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC) Systems: Shut down, lock out, and isolate HVAC systems that supply, exhaust, or pass through the lead control areas. Seal intake and exhaust vents in the lead control area with 6 mil (0.15 mm) plastic sheet and tape. Seal seams in HVAC components that pass through the lead control area. Provide temporary HVAC system for areas in which HVAC has been shut down outside the lead control area.
  7. Decontamination Shower Facility: Provide clean and contaminated change rooms and shower facilities in accordance with this specification and 29 CFR 1926.62.
  8. Eye Wash Station: Where eyes may be exposed to injurious corrosive materials, suitable facilities for quick drenching or flushing of the eyes shall be provided within the work area.
  9. Mechanical Ventilation System
    - a. Use adequate ventilation to control personnel exposure to lead in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62.
    - b. To the extent feasible, use fixed local exhaust ventilation connected to HEPA filters or other collection systems, approved by the CP. Local exhaust ventilation systems shall be designed, constructed, installed, and maintained in accordance with ANSI Z9.2.
    - c. Vent local exhaust outside the building only and away from building ventilation intakes.
    - d. Use locally exhausted, power actuated, paint removal tools.
  10. Personnel Protection: Personnel shall wear and use protective clothing and equipment as specified herein. Eating, smoking, or drinking or application of cosmetics is not permitted in the lead control area. No one will be permitted in the lead control area unless they have been appropriately trained and provided with protective equipment.
- B. Work Procedures: Perform removal of lead-based paint in accordance with approved lead-based paint/lead-containing paint removal plan. Use procedures and equipment required to limit occupational and environmental exposure to lead when lead-based paint is removed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62, except as specified herein. Dispose of removed paint chips and associated waste in compliance with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), federal, State, and local requirements.
1. Personnel Exiting Procedures: Whenever personnel exit the lead-controlled area, they shall perform the following procedures and shall not leave the work place wearing any clothing or equipment worn during the work day:

- a. Vacuum themselves off.
  - b. Remove protective clothing in the contaminated change room, and place them in an approved impermeable disposal bag.
  - c. Shower **OR** Wash hands and face at the site, **as directed**, don appropriate disposable or uncontaminated reusable clothing; move to an appropriate facility; shower.
  - d. Change to clean clothes prior to leaving the physical boundary designated around the lead control area.
2. Air and Wipe Sampling
  - a. Air sample for lead in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and as specified herein. Air and wipe sampling shall be directed or performed by the CP.
    - 1) The CP shall be on the job site directing the air and non-clearance wipe sampling and inspecting the lead-based paint removal work to ensure that the requirements of the contract have been satisfied during the entire lead-based paint removal operation.
    - 2) Collect personal air samples on employees who are anticipated to have the greatest risk of exposure as determined by the CP. In addition, collect air samples on at least 25 percent of the work crew or a minimum of two employees, whichever is greater, during each work shift.
    - 3) Submit results of air samples, signed by the CP, within 72 hours after the air samples are taken. Notify the the Owner immediately of exposure to lead at or in excess of the action level of 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air outside of the lead control area.
    - 4) For high profile, sensitive work such as present in family housing, child care facilities, administrative buildings, kitchens, barracks, etc., surface dust sampling to determine clearance (i.e., that the work has not contaminated surfaces within and adjacent to the control area) should be performed by a third party to reduce a conflict of interest. Samples must be conducted by an individual not paid or employed or otherwise compensated by the LBP/LCP removal Contractor. State or local regulations may require third party testing if the LBP/LCP removal operation is considered a lead hazard reduction activity.
    - 5) Before any work begins, collect and analyze baseline or soil wipe samples in accordance with methods defined in federal, State, and local standards inside and outside of the physical boundary to assess the degree of dust contamination in the facility prior to lead-based paint removal.
  - b. Air Sampling During Paint Removal Work: Conduct area air sampling daily, on each shift in which lead-based paint removal operations are performed, in areas immediately adjacent to the lead control area. Sufficient area monitoring shall be conducted to ensure unprotected personnel are not exposed at or above 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air. If 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air is reached or exceeded, stop work, correct the conditions(s) causing the increased levels. Notify the the Owner immediately. Determine if condition(s) require any further change in work methods. Removal work shall resume only after approval is given by the CP and the the Owner. For outdoor operations, at least one sample on each shift shall be taken on the downwind side of the lead control area.
3. Lead-Based Paint Removal
  - a. Manual or power sanding of interior and exterior surfaces is not permitted. Provide methodology for removing LBP in work plan. Remove paint within the areas designated on the drawings in order to completely expose the substrate. Take whatever precautions necessary to minimize damage to the underlying substrate.
  - b. Avoid flash rusting or deterioration of the substrate. Provide surface preparations for painting in accord with Division 07.
  - c. Provide methodology for removing LBP/LCP removal processes to minimize contamination of work areas outside the control area with lead-contaminated dust or other lead-contaminated debris/waste and to ensure that unprotected personnel are not exposed to hazardous concentrations of lead. Describe this LBP/LCP removal process in the LBP/LCPRP.





- d. Indoor Lead Paint Removal: Perform manual **OR** mechanical **OR** thermal **OR** chemical, **as directed**, paint removal in lead control areas using enclosures, barriers, or containments and powered locally exhausted paint removal tools. Collect residue and/or debris for disposal in accordance with federal, State, and local requirements.
- e. Outdoor Lead Paint Removal: Perform outdoor removal as indicated in federal, State, and local regulations and in the LBP/CPRP. The worksite preparation (barriers or containments) shall be job dependent and presented in the LBP/LCPRP.
- f. Sampling After Paint Removal: After the visual inspection, conduct soil sampling if bare soil is present during external removal operations and collect air samples inside and outside the lead control area to determine the airborne levels of lead inside and outside the work area. Collect wipe samples according to the HUD protocol contained in HUD Guidelines to determine the lead content of settled dust and dirt in micrograms per **square foot (square meter)** of surface area and parts per million (ppm) or micrograms per gram (µg/g) for soil.
- 4. Cleanup and Disposal
  - a. Cleanup: Maintain surfaces of the lead control area free of accumulations of paint chips and dust. Restrict the spread of dust and debris; keep waste from being distributed over the work area. Do not dry sweep or use compressed air to clean up the area. At the end of each shift and when the paint removal operation has been completed, clean the area of visible lead paint contamination by vacuuming with a HEPA filtered vacuum cleaner, wet mopping the area and wet wiping the area as indicated by the CP. Reclean areas showing dust or residual paint chips or debris. After visible dust, chips and debris is removed, wet wipe and HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the work area. If adjacent areas become contaminated at any time during the work, clean, visually inspect, and then wipe sample all contaminated areas. The CP shall then certify in writing that the area has been cleaned of lead contamination before restarting work.
  - b. Clearance Certification
    - 1) The CP shall certify in writing that the final air samples collected inside and outside the lead control area are less than 30 micrograms per cubic meter of air; the respiratory protection used for the employees was adequate; the work procedures were performed in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and 40 CFR 745; and that there were no visible accumulations of material and dust containing lead left in the work site. Do not remove the lead control area or roped off boundary and warning signs prior to the the Owner's acknowledgement of receipt of the CP certification.
    - 2) A third party consultant shall certify surface wipe sample results collected inside and outside the work area are less than 100 micrograms per **square foot (0.1 square meter)** on uncarpeted floors, less than 500 micrograms per **square foot (0.1 square meter)** on interior window sills and less than 800 micrograms per **square foot (0.1 square meter)** on window troughs **OR** not significantly greater than the initial surface loading determined prior to work, **as directed**.
    - 3) For exterior paint removal work, soil samples taken at the exterior of the work site shall be used to determine if soil lead levels had increased at a statistically significant level (significant at the 95 percent confidence limit) from the soil lead levels prior to the work. If soil lead levels do show a statistically significant increase above any applicable Federal or State standard for lead in soil, the soil shall be remediated back to the pre-work level.
  - c. Testing of Lead-Based Paint Residue and Used Abrasive: Test paint residue and used abrasive in accordance with 40 CFR 261 for hazardous waste.
  - d. Disposal
    - 1) Collect lead-contaminated waste, scrap, debris, bags, containers, equipment, and lead-contaminated clothing which may produce airborne concentrations of lead particles. Label the containers in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.62 and 40 CFR 261. Dispose of lead-contaminated waste material at an EPA or State approved hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility off Owner's property.

- 2) Store waste materials in U.S. Department of Transportation (49 CFR 178) approved 55 gallon (208 liter) drums. Properly label each drum to identify the type of waste (49 CFR 172) and the date the drum was filled. The the Owner or an authorized representative will assign an area for interim storage of waste-containing drums. Do not store hazardous waste drums in interim storage longer than 90 calendar days from the date affixed to each drum.
- 3) Handle, store, transport, and dispose lead or lead-contaminated waste in accordance with 40 CFR 260, 40 CFR 261, 40 CFR 262, 40 CFR 263, 40 CFR 264, and 40 CFR 265. Comply with land disposal restriction notification requirements as required by 40 CFR 268.
- 4) All material, whether hazardous or non-hazardous shall be disposed in accordance with laws and provisions and Federal, State, or local regulations. Ensure waste is properly characterized. The result of each waste characterization (TCLP for RCRA materials) will dictate disposal requirements.
5. Disposal Documentation: Submit written evidence that the hazardous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facility (TSD) is approved for lead disposal by the EPA and State or local regulatory agencies. Submit one copy of the completed manifest, signed and dated by the initial transporter in accordance with 40 CFR 262.
6. Payment for Hazardous Waste: Payment for disposal of hazardous waste will not be made until a signed copy of the manifest from the treatment or disposal facility certifying the amount of lead-containing materials delivered is returned and a copy is furnished to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 83 19 13a - LEAD PAINT RELATED ABATEMENT PROCEDURES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lead paint related abatement procedures. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. General Provisions

1. The site of this work will be occupied while work is being done. Perform the abatement work with the least inconvenience to the residents.
2. Take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the the Owner and its residents. Damaged property shall be repaired and restored to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new materials to match existing, at the Contractor's expense.
3. Hazardous waste generated during the abatement process (including lead-base paint) when carted away from the developments shall not be transferred from one vehicle to another except at a licensed transfer station.
4. Develop a work plan to be performed as requested by the the Owner. The detailed plan shall include sequencing of abatement work in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-work areas in the building. The plan should also include emergency procedures in case of fire.
5. The Contractor shall include all supplementary miscellaneous items not specified but implied or required in order to complete the work.
6. Workmanship required in the execution of the work herein specified shall be of good quality and subject to the approval of the the Owner.
7. Make in a timely fashion all applicable and necessary notifications to relevant Federal, State and Local authorities. The Contractor shall indemnify the the Owner and the the Owner's representative from, and pay all claims resulting from failure to adhere to these provisions.
8. the Owner may retain an independent Monitoring Contractor to monitor the abatement contract and conduct all wipe sampling and clearance tests.
9. Contractor performing lead-based paint abatement or renovation activities involving lead-based paint shall be a Certified Lead Abatement Contractor and shall ensure that supervisors and workers are trained and certified by U.S. EPA approved state program or equivalent, to perform lead paint removal operations.
10. Establish and implement a Chemical Hazard Communication Program as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.59.
11. Provide workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.62 before exposure to lead contaminated dust. The medical examination shall be conducted to approve use of appropriate respirators and shall include biological monitoring. NIOSH/MSHA approved respirators shall be utilized.
12. For employees required to wear a negative pressure respirators: conduct a respirator fit test at the time of initial fitting and at least once every six (6) months thereafter as required by OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1926.62.
13. Determine if any worker will be exposed to lead at or above the action level in accordance with OSHA regulation 29 CFR 1926.62 and 29 CFR 1910.1025. Conduct an exposure assessment to identify the level of exposure a worker would be subjected to without respiratory protection. Assess the exposure level by obtaining personal monitoring samples representative of a full shift of at least an 8-hour TWA.
14. Furnish appropriate respirators approved by NIOSH/MSHA for use in atmospheres containing lead aerosols. Instruct workers in all aspects of respiratory protection. Maintain an adequate supply of HEPA filter elements and spare parts on site for all types of respirators in use.



15. For manual demolition, scraping, sanding, use of heat gun or power tool paint removal with HEPA collection systems, workers shall minimally use the half-mask negative pressure respirator with high efficiency filters (for airborne concentrations not in excess of 500µg/m³).
16. Ensure that work area preparation, work practices, and clean-up procedures comply with these specifications and applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
17. Notify all applicable agencies five days prior to the date the abatement will begin and provide evidence of notifications to the the Owner at the pre-start meeting.

#### C. Submissions

1. Within ten (10) consecutive calendar days calculated from the date of the the Owner's Job Order, the Contractor shall tender all required submissions. Six (6) sets of each submission are required. Where physical samples are required two (2) physical samples shall be submitted for each item. In general, items shall include but not be restricted to the following:
  - a. Paint remover - corner cutter/Vac-Pac System by Pentek Inc; Decontamination Products Division 1026 Fourth Avenue, Corapolis, PA. 15108. Telephone No. (412) 262-0725 or approved equal.
  - b. Description of removal method to be used on each substrate condition including manufacturer's operating instructions and recommendation for equipment usage.
  - c. Copies of current training certificates of Staff to be assigned to the contract.
  - d. List of three previous lead abatement jobs performed successfully by Contractor and name, address, and telephone number of contact person for verification.
2. In the event that all or any portion of the submitted material is rejected by the the Owner, the Contractor shall tender new submissions. All submissions returned for corrections shall be resubmitted with the required corrections within ten(10) consecutive calendar days calculated from the date of rejection, until final submissions are obtained that require no further correction. In no event shall the Contractor be permitted to tender submissions hereunder beyond twenty (20) days from the the Owner's Job Order, unless duly extended in writing by the the Owner.
3. No work shall begin, nor shall the materials be ordered or delivered to the site until final approval of all submissions.

#### D. Applicable Regulations

1. 24 CFR Part 35
2. HUD "Guidelines For the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing"
3. Abatement work shall also be in accordance with applicable regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety & Health Agency (OSHA) and any State or Local LBP standards. Where there is a conflict between Federal, State or Local regulations, the more stringent requirement shall prevail.
4. OSHA Standards
  - a. 29 CFR 1926.20 General safety and health provisions;
  - b. 29 CFR 1926.21 Safety training and education;
  - c. 29 CFR 1925.25 Housekeeping;
  - d. 29 CFR 1926-28 Personal protective equipment;
  - e. 29 CFR 1926.51(f) Washing facilities;
  - f. 29 CFR 1926.55 Gases, vapors, fumes, dusts, and mists;
  - g. 29 CFR 1926.57 Ventilation
  - h. 29 CFR 1926.59 Hazardous Communication Standards;
  - i. 29 CFR 1926.103 Respiratory protection, and
  - j. 29 CFR 1926.62 Lead in Construction
5. The Contractor must comply with all applicable requirements of the Resource Conservation & Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 as amended in 1980 and 1984 by the Hazardous & Solid Waste Amendments (HSWA).
6. These Specifications refer to many requirements found in the preceding references but in no way is it intended to cite or reiterate all provisions therein or elsewhere. It is the Contractor's responsibility to obtain a copy, and know, understand and abide by all such regulations, guidelines and common practices.

1.2 PRODUCTS – (not used)

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Abatement

1. Have risk assessment or paint inspection performed by certified risk assessor or a certified inspector technician who is independent of the abatement contractor.
2. Develop a site specific lead hazard control plan, reviewed and signed by an asbestos consultant (LAC) who is licensed in the State in which the work is to be performed, and submit for review and approval to the the Owner.
3. Obtain any necessary building or waste permits, notify local authorities as required by applicable codes and laws.
4. Select specific building component replacement items, enclosure materials, paint removal equipment and/or chemicals, tools, and cleaning supplies. Consider waste management and historical preservation implications of selected treatment.
5. Develop project specific specifications.
6. Schedule other work so that leaded surfaces are not inadvertently disturbed and unprotected workers are not place at risk. Include time for clearance examinations and laboratory dust sample analysis in the scheduling process.
7. Select a certified abatement subcontractor.
8. Conduct a pre-construction conference to ensure that the subcontractor fully understands the work involved.
9. Notify residents of the dwelling and adjacent dwellings of the work and date it will begin. Coordinate this with the the Owner.
10. Correct any existing conditions that could impede the abatement work (i.e. trash removal, structural deficiencies).
11. Post warning signs and restrict entry to work area to authorized personnel. Implement worksite preparation procedures.
  - a. Place proper warning signs required by OSHA regulations at all entrances to the work area. Signage shall be minimum of 12" x 20" and shall state the following:

**WARNING  
LEAD WORK AREA  
POISON  
NO SMOKING OR EATING**

12. Coordinate test, pilot or sample portion approach to the project with the Owner.
13. Shut-down forced air heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems and cover all vents, diffusers, windows etc., with a single layer six-mil polyethylene sheet secured with duct tape. Exceptions shall be for minor disturbances of area less than 2 square feet and where if vents, diffusers, and windows are more than 5 feet away from surface being disturbed, they need not be covered.
14. Collect preabatement soil samples, which may not have to be analyzed until post abatement soil samples have been collected, analyzed, and compared to clearance standards. If postabatement soil levels are below applicable limits, the preabatement samples need not be analyzed.
15. Cover entrances to the work area with a single layer of 6 mil polyethylene sheets taped to the top and weighted at bottom.
16. Rig a containment non-flammable polyethylene sheet underneath the work area. This containment method should catch all stripped paint for proper disposal.
17. Execute abatement work.
18. Avoid spreading dust and debris outside the work area.
19. Store all waste in a secure area and make sure it is properly labeled with an accumulation start date.
20. Conduct daily and final cleanup.
21. Execute waste disposal procedures.



22. Maintain appropriate records.

B. Paint Removal

1. Do not use the following prohibited paint removal methods:
  - a. Dry scraping or sanding (except for limited areas)
  - b. Use of heat gun over 1,100°F
  - c. Open flame burning or torching
  - d. Machine sanding or grinding without HEPA vacuum exhaust tool
  - e. Abrasive blasting or sandblasting without HEPA vacuum exhaust tool
  - f. Uncontained hydro blasting or high-pressure wash
  - g. Use of chemical strippers containing Methylene chloride.
2. Select the appropriate worksite preparation level.
3. For heat gun work, provide fire extinguishers in the work area and ensure that adequate electrical power is available. Use for limited areas only. Train workers to avoid gouging or abrading the substrate.
4. For mechanical removal methods, use tools equipped with HEPA exhaust capability. Be sure workers keep the shroud against the surface being treated. Vacuum blasting and needle guns should not be used on wood, plaster, drywall, or other soft substrates. Observe all manufacturers directions for the amount of vacuum airflow required.
5. For wet scraping, use a spray bottle or wet sponge attached to the scraper to keep the surface wet while scraping. Apply enough water to moisten the surface completely, but not so much that large amounts of water run onto the ground or floor. Do not moisten areas near electrical circuits.
6. For chemical paint removers, determine if the building component can be removed and stripped offsite. Offsite stripping is generally preferred to onsite paint removal. Observe all manufacturers' directions for use of paint removers.
7. For offsite stripping, determine how to remove the component. Score the edges with a knife or razor blade to minimize the damage to adjacent surfaces. Punch or tag the building component, if similar building components are also being stripped offsite (i.e. doors). This will ensure that the individual component is reinstalled in the same location. Inform the offsite paint remover that the lead-based paint component is present for shipping. Wrap the component in plastic and send to the offsite stripping location. Clean all surfaces before reinstallation and remove any lead residue by HEPA vacuuming all surfaces, cleaning with other lead-specific cleaners, or phosphate detergents, and HEPA vacuuming again.
8. For onsite paint removal, first test the product on a small area to determine its effectiveness. Chemical paint removers may not be effective or desirable on exterior, deteriorated wood surfaces, aluminum, and glass. Provide neoprene, nitrile, rubber, or polyvinyl chloride (PVC) gloves (or other type of glove recommended by the manufacture); face shields; respirators with combination filter cartridges for lead dust and organic vapors(if appropriate); and chemically resistant clothing. Be sure to select the right type of organic vapor filter cartridge, gloves, and clothing for the specific chemical being used. Portable eyewash stations capable of providing a 15-minute flow must be on-site. Apply the chemical and wait the required period of time. Securely store chemical s overnight. For caustic chemical paint removers, neutralize the surface before repainting using glacial acetic acid (not vinegar). Repaint.
9. Make sure all debris is caught in the containment sheet for proper disposal.
10. Mark and legally dispose of waste in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations. Most wastes from paint removal projects, such as paint chips and paint remover sludge, will need to be managed as hazardous waste.
11. Conduct clean-up
12. Have a certified risk assessor or inspector technician conduct a clearance examination and provide documentation and a Statement of Lead-Based Paint Compliance.

C. Building Component Replacement

1. Prepare work area by selecting proper worksite preparation level.
2. Prepare the hazardous material building component for removal. Turn off and disconnect any electrical circuits inside or near the building component to be removed.

3. Lightly mist the component to be removed (unless electrical circuits are located nearby).
4. Score all painted seams with a sharp knife.
5. Remove any screw, nails, or other fasteners.
6. Use flat pry instrument and hammer to pry component from the substrate.
7. Remove or bend back all nails.
8. Wrap and seal all bulk components in plastic and take them to a covered truck or secured waste storage area along a pathway covered in plastic. Shovel any debris. Dispose of properly.
9. HEPA vacuum any dust or chips in the area where the component was located.
10. Conduct cleaning and clearance activities.

D. Soil and Exterior Dust Abatement

1. Determine if soil lead hazard exists. For hazard to exist, a total of at least 9 square feet of soil in a single yard or area must be bare and soil concentrations must exceed 2,000µg/gram lead for the yard or building perimeter or 400µg/gram of lead for small, high-contact play areas (pending the development of an EPA soil standard). Bare soil above these levels shall be treated by either interim controls or abatement. Soil abatement is most appropriate when levels of lead are extraordinarily high (greater than 5,000µg/gram lead) and when use patterns indicate contact frequency and exposure will be high.
2. Collect Preabatement soil samples to determine baseline levels. These samples need not be analyzed if post abatement samples are below applicable clearance levels.
3. Determine the method of soil abatement (soil removal and replacement, soil cleaning, or paving). Soil cultivation (rototilling or turning over the soil) is not permitted.
4. If paving, use a high quality concrete or asphalt. Observe normal precautions associate with traffic load weight and thermal expansion and contraction. Obtain necessary permits. Keep soil cultivation to a minimum.
5. If removing and replacing soil.
  - a. Determine if waste soil will be placed in an offsite burial pit. Prepare vehicle operation and soil movement plan. Test new replacement soil (should not contain more than 200 µg/gram lead).
  - b. Contact local utilities to determine location of underground utilities including water, gas, cable TV, electric, telephone, and sewer. Mark all locations to be avoided
  - c. Remove fencing, if necessary to allow equipment access and define set limits with temporary fencing, signs, or yellow caution tape.
  - d. Tie and protect existing trees, shrubs, and bushes.
  - e. Have enough tools to avoid handling clean soil with contaminated tools.
  - f. Remove soil.
  - g. Clean all walkways, driveways, and street areas near abatement area.
  - h. Replace soil at proper grade to allow drainage. Replacement soil should be at least 2 inches above existing grade to allow for settling.
  - i. Install new soil covering (grass or sod) and maintain it through the growing season.
  - j. Determine if soil waste is hazardous and manage it accordingly
  - k. Conduct clean-up and clearance.
  - l. Provide walk-off doormats.
  - m. Maintain proper documentation.

E. Encapsulation

1. Determine if the applicable regulations also encapsulates to be used. Do not encapsulate the following surfaces:
  - a. Friction surfaces, such as window jambs and door jambs.
  - b. Surfaces that fail patch tests.
  - c. Surfaces with substrates or existing coatings that have a high level of deterioration.
  - d. Surfaces in which there is a known incompatibility between two existing paint layers.
  - e. Surfaces that cannot support the additional weight stress of encapsulation due to existing paint thickness.
  - f. Metal surfaces that are prone to rust or corrosion.
2. Conduct field tests of surfaces to be encapsulated for paint film integrity.



3. Consider special use and environmental requirements (i.e. abrasion resistance and ability to span base substrate cracks).
4. Provide to the the Owner encapsulant test data provided by the manufacturer.
5. Conduct at least one test patch on each type of building component where the encapsulant will be used. Report the results to the the Owner.
6. For both nonreinforced and reinforced coatings, use a 6" x 6" test patch area. Prepare the surface in the manner selected to complete the job. Prepared surfaces for patch testing should be at least 2" larger in each direction than the patch area.
7. For fiber-reinforced wall coverings, use 3" x 3" patch. For rigid coatings that cannot be cut with a knife, use soundness test. For all encapsulants, carry out the appropriate adhesion tests.
8. For liquid coating encapsulants, allow coating to cure, then visually examine it for wrinkling, blistering, cracking, bubbling, or other chemical reaction with the underlying paint.
9. Record results of all patch tests and provide to the the Owner.
10. Implement proper work site preparation level.
11. Repair all building components and substrates as needed (i.e. caulk cracks and repair sources of water leaks).
12. Prepare surfaces. Remove all dirt, grease, chalking paint, mildew and other surface contaminants, remnants of cleaning solutions, and loose paint. All surfaces should be deglossed, as needed.
13. Ventilate the contaminated area whenever solvents or chemicals are used.
14. During encapsulant application or installation, monitor temperature and humidity. For liquid coatings monitor coating thickness to ensure that the encapsulant manufacturer's installation/application specifications are followed.
15. Conduct clean up and clearance.
16. Provide the the Owner information on how to care for the encapsulation system properly.
17. Maintain records on the exact detailed locations of encapsulant applications, patch test specifications and results, product name, subcontractor, date of application, a copy of the product label and material Data Safety sheet (MSDS) for the product and provide to the the Owner.

F. Enclosure

1. Stamp, label or stencil all lead-based painted surfaces that will be enclosed with a warning approximately every 2 feet both horizontally and vertically on all components. The Warning shall read "**Danger Lead-Based Paint**". Deteriorated paint should not be removed from the surface to be enclosed.
2. Select the proper worksite preparation level.
3. Attach a durable drawing to the utility room closet showing where lead-based paint has been enclosed in the dwelling.
4. An independent inspector or technician or risk assessor should evaluate the integrity of the enclosure.
5. Repair any unsound substrates and structural members that will support the enclosure, if necessary.
6. Utilize appropriate enclosure material (drywall or fiberboard, wood paneling, laminated products, ridged tile and brick veneers, vinyl, aluminum m, or plywood).
7. Install extension rings for all electrical switches and outlets that will penetrate the enclosure.
8. If enclosing floors, remove all dirt with a HEPA vacuum to avoid small lumps in the new flooring.
9. Seal and back-caulk all seams and joints. Back-caulk means applying caulk to the underside of the enclosure.
10. When installing enclosure directly to painted surfaces, use adhesive and then anchor with mechanical fasteners (screws or nails).
11. Conduct clean up and clearance activities.
12. Maintain proper records and submit a Statement of Lead-Based Paint Compliance.

G. Final Cleaning Procedures

1. Use the following step-by-step procedures

- a. Assign responsibilities to specific workers for cleaning and for maintaining the cleaning equipment.
  - b. Have sufficient cleaning equipment and supplies before beginning work.
  - c. If contamination is extensive, conduct precleaning of the dwelling unit.
  - d. Conduct ongoing cleaning during the job, including regular removal of large and small debris and dust. Decontamination of all tools, equipment and worker protection gear is required before it leaves contaminated areas. Electrical equipment should be wiped and high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) vacuumed, not wetted down, to minimize electrocution hazards.
  - e. Schedule sufficient time (usually 30 minutes to an hour) for complete daily cleaning, starting at the same time near the end of every workday after lead hazard control activity has stopped.
  - f. For final cleaning, wait at least 1 hour after active lead hazard control activity has ceased to let dust particles settle.
  - g. Use a vacuum cleaner equipped with a HEPA exhaust filter. HEPA vacuum all surfaces in the room (ceilings, walls, trim, and floors). Start with the ceiling and work down, moving toward the entry door. Completely clean each room before moving on.
  - h. Wash all surfaces with lead-specific detergent, high-phosphate detergent, or other suitable cleaning agent to dislodge any ground-in contamination, then rinse. Change the cleaning solution after every room is cleaned.
  - i. Repeat step g above. To meet clearance standards consistently, a HEPA vacuum, wet wash, and HEPA vacuum cycle is recommended. For interim control projects involving dust removal only, the final HEPA vacuuming step is usually not needed. Other cleaning methods are acceptable, as long as clearance criteria are met and workers are not over exposed.
  - j. After final cleaning perform visual examination to ensure that all surfaces requiring lead hazard control have been addressed and all visible dust and debris have been removed. Record findings and correct any incomplete work.
  - k. If other construction work will disturb the lead-based paint surfaces, it should be completed at this point. If those surfaces are disturbed, repeat the final cleaning step after construction work has been completed.
  - l. Paint and otherwise seal treated surfaces and interior floors.
  - m. Conduct clearance examination.
  - n. If clearance is not achieved, repeat final cleaning.
  - o. Continue clearance testing and repeated cleanings until dwelling unit achieves compliance with all clearance standards. The cost of repeated cleaning, after failure to achieve clearance is to be borne by the contractor.
  - p. Do not allow residents to enter work area until final cleaning is completed and clearance is established.
  - q. Cleaning equipment list is as follows:
    - 1) HEPA Vacuums
    - 2) Detergent
    - 3) Waterproof gloves
    - 4) Rags
    - 5) Sponges
    - 6) Mops
    - 7) Buckets
    - 8) HEPA vacuum attachments (crevice tools, beater bar for cleaning rugs)
    - 9) 6-mil plastic bags
    - 10) Debris containers
    - 11) Waste water containers
    - 12) Shovels
    - 13) Rakes
    - 14) Water-misting sprayers
    - 15) 6-mil polyethylene sheeting (or equivalent)
2. Order of execution for final cleaning steps should be as follows:



- a. As the first stage in final cleaning, floor plastic shall be misted and swept.
- b. Upper level plastic, such as on cabinets and counters should be removed first, after it has been misted and cleaned. All plastic should be carefully folded from the corners/ends to the middle to trap any remaining dust. Next remove both layers of plastic from the floor.
- c. Plastic sheets used to isolate contaminated rooms from noncontaminated rooms should remain in place until after cleaning and removal of other plastic sheeting, these sheets may then be misted, cleaned and removed last.
- d. Removed plastic should be placed into double 4-mil or single 6-mil plastic bags, or plastic bags with equivalent (or better) performance characteristics, which are sealed and removed from the premises. As with daily cleanings, this plastic removal process usually requires workers to use protective clothing and respirators.
- e. After plastic has been removed from the contaminated area, the entire area should be cleaned using the HEPA/wet wash/HEPA cycle.

#### H. Waste Testing And Disposal

1. General: All materials, whether hazardous or non-hazardous shall be properly disposed of. the Owner may hire an independent Monitoring Consultant to perform TCLP test to determine which of the wastes are hazardous. Contractor shall cooperate in this test. If less than 100kg (200 lbs) or 1/2 of a 55 gallon drum of hazardous waste per month will be generated, it is considered "conditionally exempt" abatement waste, and may be managed as solid non-hazardous waste. The RCRA hazardous waste manifest is not required when shipping this waste to an offsite disposal facility.
2. Separate Abatement Waste into The Following Four Categories:
  - a. Category I. Low lead waste (typically non-hazardous) e.g. Filtered personal and commercial wash water.
  - b. Category II. Architectural components - (painted finish carpentry items) e.g. Doors, windows, window trim and sills, baseboards, railings, moldings. (May do a TCLP to determine if they are hazardous).
  - c. Category III. Concentrated lead waste e.g. sludge from stripping, lead-base paint chip and dust, HEPA vacuum debris and filter, unfiltered wash waste, any waste included in EPA's list of hazardous waste.
  - d. Category IV. Material that cannot be determined to be either hazardous or non-hazardous must be tested by TCLP.

If the hazardous waste generated is greater than 100kg per month, dispose according to the referenced guidelines and RCRA hazardous waste management requirements including those listed below.
3. Disposal Requirements: Contact the regional EPA, state, local and all other pertinent authorities to determine lead-based paint debris disposal requirements. Comply with requirements of the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) and with applicable federal, state, county, or local waste requirements.
4. EPA ID Numbers: Obtain a Generator RCRA Hazardous Material ID number and coordinate this action through the State and secure any additional number as required.
5. Storage Requirements: Keep all hazardous items in a secure area or lockable container that is inaccessible to all persons other than the Contractor's personnel. Label all hazardous waste "Hazardous Waste" with the date that the Contractor began to collect the waste in that container. Keep hazardous and non-hazardous waste in separate containers. Until TCLP testing is completed, considered all items hazardous and store in a secured area or lockable container.
6. Waste Transportation: Transport hazardous waste using a RCRA/DOT/EPA certified Hazardous Waste Transporter. Submit names and qualifications of certified transporter/hauler for the Owner approval. The Contractor shall be responsible for all actions of the waste hauler as pertaining to waste removal and disposal under these procedures and all EPA, DOT and other applicable regulations.
7. Disposal Facility: Supply documents that detail the site(s) to be used for ultimate disposal. Submit documents from these sites proving that they are licensed/permitted to accept such waste and shall accept the waste proposed by the Contractor for treatment or ultimate disposal.

8. Waste Containers: Comply with EPA and DOT regulations for waste containers. Contact the state and local authorities to determine their criteria for containers. In the case of any conflict in regulations, the more stringent shall apply.
  9. Emergencies: Contact local fire, police, hospitals or local emergency response teams and inform them of the type of hazardous waste activity and ask for assistance in the event of any accident. Additionally, the container shall provide the following:
    - a. Keep and properly maintain a suitable fire extinguisher(s) on site.
    - b. Have a immediate means of communication with the regulatory agency in the event of an emergency.
    - c. Keep a list of phone numbers of regulatory agencies on site.
    - d. Appoint an emergency coordinator and ensure the coordinator is on site to supervise emergency procedures to be carried out in the event of an emergency.
    - e. Keep and maintain a "right to know" manual that is in an easily accessible location and in an area that is known to all employees.
  10. Transporting Waste: Provide certifications that the transporter is registered with the U.S. Department of Transportation is required by 49 CFR Part 107(a) transport hazardous waste.
    - a. Provide certifications that each vehicle dedicated to haul hazardous waste has been assigned a "U.S. DOT Hazardous Material Registration Number" as required by 49 CFR Part 107.
    - b. Be responsible for all other applicable permits pertaining to hauling, transport, reduction, and disposal of hazardous waste as they may apply to this project.
    - c. Vehicle: Ensure that all non-hazardous waste is transported in covered vehicles to a landfill, or lined landfill, if required.
    - d. Container Handling: Carefully place the containers into the truck or dumpster used for disposal. At no time shall debris or containers be thrown or dropped.
    - e. Liquid Wastes: Contain and properly dispose of all liquid wastes, including lead-contaminated wash water.
    - f. Containers: HEPA vacuum the exterior of all waste containers prior to removing the waste containers from the work area. Wet wipe the containers to ensure that there is no residual contamination. Then move containers out of the work area into the designated storage area.
- I. Clearance
1. Clearance on all abatement projects must be done by an independent certified risk assessor or inspector technician. Follow all jurisdictional law with regard to licensure requirements for personnel conducting clearance activities.
  2. Clearance step-by-step procedures are as follows:
    - a. Finish the lead hazard control clean-up effort. Seal floors before clearance (if necessary).
    - b. Wait 1 hour to allow any airborne dust to settle. Do not enter work area during that hour.
    - c. Conduct visual examination
      - 1) Determine if all required work has been completed and all lead-based paint hazards have been controlled.
      - 2) Determine if there is visible settled dust, paint chips, or debris in the interior or around the exterior.
    - d. Complete the Visual Clearance Form required by the the Owner; if all work is not completed inform the the Owner and order completion of the work and repeat cleanup, if necessary.
    - e. Conduct clearance dust sampling of the floors, interior window sills, and window troughs using approved protocol.
    - f. Conduct soil sampling if bare soil is present that was not sampled previously, or if exterior paint work was completed as part of the lead hazard control effort. Whenever exterior work has been don, it may be necessary to take samples from the soil that is not bare to determine if contamination has occurred. If results are above 1,000 µg/g (or 400 µg/g in high contact play area), compare the results to baseline soil sampling results to determine what additional measures are needed.
    - g. Complete the Dust and Soil Sampling Clearance Form required by the the Owner.

- h. Submit samples to a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) recognized laboratory participating in the National Lead Laboratory Accreditation program (NLLAP) for analysis.
- i. Interpret results by comparing them to Interim Clearance Standards as listed below:
 

1) Floors	400 µg/ft <sup>2</sup>
2) Window sills	250 µg/ft <sup>2</sup>
3) Window Troughs	800 µg/ft <sup>2</sup>
4) Soils (Play area with children under 6 years of age)	400 µg/gram
- j. If clearance is achieved go to step N.
- k. Order repeated cleanings or soil treatments if results are above applicable standards. Clean all surfaces the sample represents.
- l. Continue sampling and repeated cleanings until the dwelling achieves compliance with all applicable clearance standards.
- m. Complete any related construction work that does not disturb a surface with lead-based paint (all work that does disturb painted surfaces or that could generate lead dust should be completed as part of the lead hazard control effort).
- n. Issue any necessary statements of lead-based paint compliance or releases and maintain appropriate records.

**J. Labels**

1. Use the following labels on drums used for disposal.

<h1 style="margin: 0;">HAZARDOUS WASTE</h1>	
<small>FEDERAL LAW PROHIBITS IMPROPER DISPOSAL. IF FOUND, CONTACT THE NEAREST POLICE OR PUBLIC SAFETY AUTHORITY OR THE U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY.</small>	
<small>GENERATOR INFORMATION:</small>	
<small>NAME</small> _____	
<small>ADDRESS</small> _____ <small>PHONE</small> _____	
<small>CITY</small> _____ <small>STATE</small> _____ <small>ZIP</small> _____	
<small>EPA- / MANIFEST ID NO. / DOCUMENT NO.</small> _____ / _____	
<small>ACCUMULATION START DATE</small> _____ <small>EPA WASTE NO.</small> _____	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 0 auto; width: 80%;"> <p style="margin: 0;"><b>HAZARDOUS WASTE, SOLID, N.O.S.</b></p> <p style="margin: 0;">( _____ )</p> <p style="margin: 0;"><b>NA3077</b></p> <p style="margin: 0; font-size: small;">D.O.T. PROPER SHIPPING NAME AND UN OR NA NO. WITH PREFIX</p> </div>	
<h2 style="margin: 0;">HANDLE WITH CARE!</h2>	
<small>STYLE HMM12</small>	

WORKPLACE ACCUMULATION CONTAINER		
Proper D.O.T. Shipping Name: _____	<b>HAZARDOUS WASTE</b> FEDERAL LAW PROHIBITS IMPROPER DISPOSAL. IF FOUND, CONTACT THE NEAREST POLICE OR PUBLIC SAFETY AUTHORITY OR THE U.S. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY. <b>HANDLE WITH CARE!</b>	Workplace Accumulation Start Date: <input type="text"/>
UN or NA# _____		Waste Accumulation Area: <input type="text"/>
Generator Information Name: _____		
Facility: _____		
Address: _____		
Phone: _____		
City: _____		
State: _____ Zip: _____		
EPA / Manifest ID No. / Document No. _____		
State Manifest Document No. _____		
EPA Waste No. _____		MANEJESE CON CUIDADO CONTIENE DESPERDICIOS TOXICOS

NOT FOR BID

## K. Disposal of lead-based paint waste.

1. Follow the RCRA and HUD recommended practices as defined in the table below:

<b>Waste Management Practices</b>	<b>Category I: Low Lead Waste</b>	<b>Category II: Architectural Components</b>	<b>Category III: Concentrated Lead Waste</b>	<b>Category IV: Other waste</b>
<b>RCRA Requirements</b>	Manage as nonhazardous Waste	Depending upon knowledge or TCLP testing results, manage as solid hazardous or nonhazardous waste	If more than 100 kg/ month, manage as hazardous waste. If less than 100 kg/month manage as solid waste.	Use TCP to determine if waste is hazardous.
<b>HUD Recommended Practices</b>	Applicable	Applicable, if knowledge or TCLP testing indicates that it is nonhazardous.	Applicable if less than 100 kg/month otherwise subject to full RCRA regulations	Only applicable if TCLP testing shows waste is nonhazardous
Wrapped in plastic; seal all seams with tape (if acceptable to the disposal facility).	X	X	X	X
Stored in designated, secure area.	X	X	X	X
Covered During Transport	X	X	X	X
Prohibit cutting/breaking outside work area.	X	X	X	X
Cover ground with 6-mil plastic if handling outside.	X	X	X	X
Prohibit disposal in solid waste incinerators and reuse recycling for mulch	X	X	X	X
Recommended disposal in State licensed/permited	X	X	If appropriate.	X

solid waste landfill.				
-----------------------	--	--	--	--

L. Safety Requirements

1. To protect the health and safety of all persons involved, it is of the utmost importance that deleading is safely and correctly done in a timely manner. The following specific safety requirements are the responsibility of the Deleading Contractor.

K. General Safety:

1. General
  - a. NO ONE is to be allowed in the work area without an approved respirator except for methods that have been documented not requiring a respirator.
  - b. Each work area must be sealed from the remainder of the dwelling by taping plastic sheets (6 mil thick). Work areas must remain sealed off until both work and clean-up are completed.
  - c. Cover all floors, carpets, furniture and appliances with 6 mil plastic within the work area. Use automotive masking tape (2 inches wide) to seal all edges and seams.
  - d. Make certain all electrical connections are properly grounded.
  - e. At least three days prior to the start of any deleading work, post appropriate warning signs at all entrances and exits of work areas and leave in place until all clearance testing indicates that these areas are safe for re-occupancy. The signs must include the following phrase: "CAUTION LEAD HAZARD-KEEP OUT". Post bilingual signs when necessary.
2. Worker Safety: The Deleading Contractor shall take the following minimum precautions to protect the health of all individuals involved in the deleading process.
  - a. Pre-Abatement Medical Exam: Each employee shall undergo a medical examination to determine both respiratory fitness capability and also pre-existing/current blood lead level. Said results shall be provided to the employee and also to the Owner within 3 days of receipt of same, and in all cases, prior to employee's commencement to active abatement. Records of same are required to be kept by the Contractor for 40 years.
  - b. Medical Surveillance is the monitoring of worker blood levels. It is required that the Contractor have blood level monitoring of all active abatement and clean-up workmen and on-site supervisors performed and said results provided to the Owner.
    - 1) Before assignment to active abatement activity for each worker.
    - 2) 30 days after active abatement has begun.
    - 3) At least every two months during the first six months and every six months throughout the deleading job.
    - 4) At least every two months for each employee whose blood lead analysis indicated a blood lead level at or above 25 micrograms per deciliter. (20 micrograms per deciliter for women of child bearing age).
    - 5) At termination of employment.
    - 6) Contractor shall reassign any employee whose blood lead has reached 25 µg/dl (20 µg/dl for women of child bearing age) to a job function deemed safe from lead exposure. Said employee shall remain away from active abatement until such time as 2 consecutive months' blood tests indicate µg/dl below 20 µg/dl.
  - c. Respiratory Protection Programs must be established by the Contractor in accordance with OSHA regulations and qualitative respirator fit testing must be conducted daily by the on-site supervisor. Medical examinations must be performed by a physician prior to fit testing and at anytime when a worker demonstrates any difficulty breathing during the use of or the fit testing of respirators. The following are minimal acceptable respiratory protection program requirements as set up and administered by the Contractor:
    - 1) Written standard operating procedures which oversees the selection and use of respirators.
    - 2) Selection of respirators on the basis of hazards to which the worker is exposed.
    - 3) Worker training on the limitations and use of respirators (includes fit testing).
    - 4) Individual workers assigned respirators for their exclusive use only.





- 5) Daily cleaning and disinfecting of respirators.
- 6) Proper storage of all respirators.
- 7) Proper inspection of all respirators for wear and tear.
- 8) Continual surveillance of work area conditions and level of worker exposure or stress.
- 9) Use of approved respirators only, modified as needed by the weekly exposure monitoring results.
- 10) Supply weekly report covering items 1-9 to the Owner or its Lead Consultant.
- d. Exposure Monitoring is the measured concentration of lead in the workers breathing zones. The Contractor shall perform personnel monitoring during active abatement using the NIOSH 7072 method and shall be responsible for:
  - 1) Monitoring the level of worker protection needed during the abatement process;
  - 2) Evaluating, modifying and improving any engineering and work practice control(s) as needed;
  - 3) Evaluating each employee's personal quality of work and any need for additional worker training or safety instruction;
  - 4) Providing the Owner results of all personnel monitoring tests within 10 days of testing; and
  - 5) Providing half-face APR respirators with HEPA filters unless said monitoring test results dictate differently. OSHA guidelines shall be used to determine respirator PEL protection factors.
- e. Protective Clothing Equipment must be provided to all workers to help assure that lead dust is contained to the work areas. The following must be supplied/enforced by the Deleading Contractor:
  - 1) Full body protective clothing and shoe covers of appropriate sizes on a daily basis or as needed.
  - 2) Clean changing areas separated from the dirty/contaminated clothes storage area.
  - 3) Water and wash facilities for washing of hands and face and shower facilities if deemed necessary by the Owner's Lead Advisor.
  - 4) Instructing worker on proper maintenance of clothing and equipment.
  - 5) Proper disposal of disposable clothing and proper permanent work clothes.
  - 6) Enforcing the removal of protective clothing at the end of each work day and before eating, drinking and smoking.
  - 7) Enforcement of the removal of protective shoe covers before leaving work area.
3. Contractor/Worker Daily Safe-Work Procedures
  - a. Daily Start-Up:
    - 1) Workers to put on protective gear prior to entering work areas.
    - 2) All garment seams to be sealed with duct tape.
    - 3) All non-working garments must be stored in designated changing area.
    - 4) Respirators, as required, must be properly fitted before entering work area. Perform qualitative fit test.
  - b. Temporary depart:
    - 1) All protective clothing to be HEPA vacuumed while still being worn.
    - 2) All shoe covers to be removed and left in the work area (immediate departure upon removing).
    - 3) Remove all protective gear in designated "contaminated" changing area before eating, drinking, and smoking or before leaving work site.
    - 4) Wash hands and face.
    - 5) Clean respirators.
  - c. Daily Shut-Down:
    - 1) Dispose of protective clothing with abatement waste by sealing in a 6 mil poly bag.
    - 2) Laundered clothes must be placed in closed container.
    - 3) Wash hands and face.
    - 4) Shower if facilities allow and circumstances dictate.
    - 5) Clean all protective gear (respirators included).

4. Tenant's Safety: Temporary relocation of the tenants is necessary if the lead paint surface is broken. Temporary relocation of the tenants and their belongings is the responsibility of the Owner. However, the Contractor has the joint responsibility to administer and enforce the following safety practices on behalf of the occupants:
  - a. Adults
    - 1) NO OCCUPANT is allowed to enter the work area during paint removal and initial clean-up. A three day clean-up and settlement period may be imposed depending upon the abatement procedures used, at the discretion of the Owner or their Lead Consultant.
    - 2) the Owner shall notify all occupants in writing when they are allowed to return to their post-abated residence. Contractor shall abide by these notices.
    - 3) Every resident who has received prior notice of abatement is responsible for placing all personal items (clothing, dishes, linens, etc.) in closed, easy to handle containers; and move such items to the center of each room as requested.
    - 4) As long as visible dust remains, occupants may not occupy dwelling, and all surfaces within the dwelling must be re-washed with trisodium phosphate and HEPA vacuumed by deleading contractor.
    - 5) Persons reoccupying dwellings following abatement are required to report any visible dust or debris to the Owner immediately for additional Contractor clean-up.
  - b. Pregnant Women and Children
    - 1) Absolutely no pregnant women nor children under the age of twelve years of age may be allowed in the building while any part of the abatement process is going on.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13a

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

---

**SECTION 02 83 19 13b - XRF TESTING FOR LEAD-BASED PAINT**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for XRF testing for lead-based paint. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

**1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. The Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the latest HUD Guidelines, in accordance with all applicable regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Occupational Safety & Health Agency (OSHA) and any applicable State or Local standards that may be more stringent than the Federal Standards except, as such guidelines are modified by the Owner in writing in this contract or any contract pursuant to this contract.
- B. Workmanship required in the execution of the work herein specified shall be of good quality and subject to the approval of the the Owner.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Notification Before Start of Work
  - 1. The Contractor shall send notices to the Project Superintendent, Residents, and the Department of Planning and Development 48 hours before the scheduled start of work. The Contractor shall make three (3) attempts to gain entry to each apartment, with proper 48 hour notification to the resident each time.
  - 2. The Contractor shall begin work no later than 48 hours after receiving a work proceed order.
- B. Copies of the submissions listed below must be tendered with the bid:
  - 1. Ability to perform XRF testing and paint chip sampling by submitting evidence of the successful completion of lead inspector training by all staff to be assigned to the job including inspector technicians. Training must be provided through a State approved EPA-Model program. All staff assigned to the Contract must also demonstrate training in the use of the XRF testing machines to be dedicated to this contract. The serial number of such XRF machine shall be provided to the the Owner.
    - a. Contractor or Subcontractor performing the work must have at least 3 years of satisfactory experience (documented) in performing XRF testing for a City, State or Federal Agency.
  - 2. Laboratory certification by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
  - 3. If a subcontractor will be used for any of the laboratory work of this contract, evidence of certification stated above must also be provided for the subcontractor.

**C. XRF Testing Report Format**



- a. All XRF report must be made after a formal submittal and approval by the Owner.
- b. A faxed summary report must be provided to the the Owner within 48 hours after completion of testing for a work Authorization. For XRF testing requiring confirmation by laboratory analysis of paint chip samples, the faxed summary report must be provided within 48 hours after the the Owner gives approval for testing of the collected paint chip samples.
- c. A detailed report must be provided to the the Owner within 5 business days after completion of the testing.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The work shall consist of furnishing all labor, material, insurance and all other incidental items required to do the following:
  - 1. XRF Testing
    - a. Random or comprehensive testing of various components in single family housing units, multi-family housing units, common areas and exterior sites, using any of the approved X-ray Fluorescence ("XRF") machines, to determine if the lead-based paint concentration is within permissible limits.  
Note: Testing may be for entire apartments or selected rooms or components within the apartment.
    - b. The permissible limit shall be defined as a final reading showing a lead concentration of less than 1.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>.
    - c. Refer to the Manufacturer's manual, as well as the "XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet" when determining calibration check tolerance, and other instrument specific information. Use the adjusted "XRF Performance Characteristic Sheets" in this contract when determining the inconclusive range.
    - d. In addition to the manufacturer's recommended warm up and quality control procedures, a set of three nominal XRF calibration check readings must be taken before the inspection begins and after the inspection has been completed in a particular unit, or every 4 hours, whichever occurs first. All reference material values and calibration check readings must be included in the report provided to the Owner.
    - e. Do not use the XRF to test highly curved or ornate surfaces, or surfaces inaccessible to the XRF, due to poor reliability of results. For such surfaces, laboratory analysis of paint chips must be done.
    - f. Only one XRF reading is required per testing combination. A unique testing combination is characterized by the room equivalent, the component, the substrate and the visible color of the paint. However, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type.
    - g. All inconclusive results must be treated according to the inspection rules using multi-family inspection or single family inspection rules as appropriate.
    - h. XRF field data sheets shall be filled out as they appear on completed Form 7.1("Single-Family Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet") and 7.5 ("Multifamily Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet") in HUD Guidelines.
    - i. Room equivalents or sections thereof that are not accessible for testing (i.e. locked bedrooms) shall be noted in the final report to the Owner.
  - 2. Laboratory testing of paint chips.
    - a. Collection of paint chips from various painted components for laboratory analysis due to XRF substrate corrected inconclusive and/or positive readings as directed by the the Owner.

- b. Laboratory preparation and testing by Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrometry (FAAS) or Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrometry (GFAAS) to determine if the lead paint concentration is within permissible limits.
- c. The permissible limit shall be defined as a lead concentration less than 0.5% by weight.
- d. Collect paint chips in accordance with ASTM ES28-94.
- e. Prepare paint chips in the laboratory for testing in accordance with ASTM ES37-94.
- f. Repair and repaint areas from which paint chips have been collected, to match adjacent areas, unless notified by the the Owner in writing to utilize a temporary covering for the tested surfaces. The Contractor shall provide water based latex paint for this purpose. Colors shall be limited to white and off-white; and other colors if provided by the tenant.
- g. Only one paint chip is required per testing combination. A unique testing combination is characterized by the room equivalent, the component, the substrate, and the visible color of the paint. However, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type.
- h. Field data sheets and signed chain of custodies must be attached to the final report to the Owner.

B. Occupied Residences

- 1. Some of the work of this contract will be in occupied apartments. The Contractor shall perform all of the work of this contract with the least inconvenience to the tenants.
- 2. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the the Owner, its residents and the public. The contractor must repair any damaged property, whether of the the Owner, its residents, or the public, and restore such property to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new, that in the judgement of the the Owner, match the existing materials and are of equal quality and workmanship. All such repairs shall be at the Contractor's expense.

C. Applicable Regulations

- 1. ASTM Standards
  - a. ASTM E 1583 on evaluating laboratories used to determine lead levels;
  - b. ASTM E 1605 on terminology;
  - c. ASTM E 1613 on determining lead by atomic emission or atomic absorption spectroscopy;
  - d. ASTM E 1645 on laboratory preparation of paint-chip samples;
  - e. ASTM E 1775 on-site extraction and field portable stripping voltammetry analysis for lead;
  - f. ASTM PS 53 on identifying and managing lead in facilities;
  - g. ASTM PS 87 on ultrasonic extraction for later analysis for lead;
  - h. ASTM PS 88 on determining lead by portable electro analysis
- 2. OSHA Standards (without limitation), include:
  - a. 29 CFR 1926.20 - General safety and health provisions;
  - b. 29 CFR 1926.21 - Safety training and education;
  - c. 29 CFR 1925.25 - Housekeeping;
  - d. 29 CFR 1926.28 - Personal protective equipment;
  - e. 29 CFR 1926.51(f) - Washing facilities;
  - f. 29 CFR 1926.55 - Gases, vapors, fumes, dusts, and mists;
  - g. 29 CFR 1926.57 - Ventilations;
  - h. 29 CFR 1926.59 - Hazardous Communication Standards;
  - i. 29 CFR 1926.10 - Respiratory protection; and
  - j. 29 CFR 1926.62 - Lead in Construction
- 3. The Contractor must comply with all applicable requirements of the Resource Conservation & Recovery Act (RCRA) of 1976 as amended in 1980 and 1984 by the Hazardous & Solid Waste Amendments (HSWA).

4. The Contractor must follow the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet (PCS) for all inspection activities. XRF PCSs are available from the National Lead Information Center Clearinghouse or through the HUD website at <http://www.hud.gov/offices/lead/lbp/hudguidelines/allpcs.pdf>.

## 1.5 PRODUCTS

- A. XRF Instruments and Testing Protocols
  1. The Contractor shall use XRF instruments that are approved by the Owner.
  2. XRFs must be used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet. If discrepancies exist between the XRF Performance Characteristic Sheet, the HUD Guidelines and the manufacturer's instructions, the most stringent guidelines should be followed.

## 1.6 EXECUTION

- A. Inspection and Testing
  1. **Single Family Testing Rules**
    - a. If the housing development has less
      - 1) than 10 units built between 1960-1970 or
      - 2) 20 units built before 1960 or
      - 3) the random testing rules in a multi-family development are not being used then single family testing rules must be followed.
    - b. List all testing combinations (see HUD Guidelines Table for an example) in all interior rooms, on all exterior building surfaces, and on surfaces in other exterior areas, such as fences, playground equipment, and garages. The "SingleFamily Housing LBP Testing Data Sheet" (see HUD Guidelines) or a comparable data collection instrument may be used for this purpose.
      - 1) Test all room equivalents inside and outside the dwelling unit. The final report must include a final determination of the presence or absence of lead-based paint on each testing combination in each room equivalent.
      - 2) Inspect each testing combination in each room equivalent, unless similar building component types with identical substrates (such as windows) are all found to contain lead-based paint in the first five interior room equivalents. In that case, testing of that component type in the remaining room equivalents may be discontinued, if and only if the Owner agrees beforehand to such a discontinuation. The inspector should then conclude that similar building component types in the rest of the dwelling unit also contain lead-based paint.
      - 3) Painted furniture that is physically attached to the unit (for example, a desk or dresser that is built-in) should be included in the inspection as a testing combination.
      - 4) Results of an inspection may be summarized by classifying component types across room equivalents if patterns or trends are supported by the data.
      - 5) All substrates across all room equivalents should be grouped into one of the six substrate categories (brick, concrete, drywall, metal, plaster, or wood).
    - c. Number and Location of XRF Readings
      - 1) XRF testing is required for at least one location per layers of paint should be included and the XRF probe testing combination, except for interior and exterior faceplate should be able to lie flat against the surface walls, where four readings should be taken, one on of the test location each wall.
      - 2) For interior and exterior walls: take at least four readings (one of ea. wall). If there are more than four walls test the four largest walls, calculate the average of the

readings, round the result to same number of decimal places as the XRF instrument displays, and classify the remaining walls with the same painting history as the tested walls, based on this rounded average. When the remaining walls in a room equivalent clearly do not have the same painting history as that of the tested walls, test and classify the remaining walls individually.

- 3) Select areas of paint which are most likely to have old paint or coatings, where areas of paint appear thickest. Avoid testing where paint has worn away, chipped; or over pipes, electrical surfaces, nails, and any other possible interferences.
- 4) A numbering system, floor plan, sketch or other system may be used to document which testing combinations were tested and sufficiently detailed enough for another individual to find them.
  - a) Side Identification Identify perimeter wall sides with letters A, B, C, and D (or numbers or Roman numerals). Side A for single-family housing is the street side for the address. Side A in multi-family housing is the apartment entry door side. Side B, C, and D are identified clockwise from Side A as one faces the dwelling; thus Wall B is to the left, Wall C is across from Side A, and Side D is to the right of Side A. Each room equivalent's side identification follows the scheme for the whole housing unit. Because a room can have two or more entries, sides should not be allocated based on the entry point. For example, giving a closet a side allocation based on how the room is entered would make it difficult for another person to make an easy identification, especially if the room had two closets and two entryways.
  - b) Room Equivalent Identification Room equivalents should be identified by both a number and a use pattern (for example, Room 5-Kitchen). Room 1 can always be the first room, at the A-D junction at the entryway, or it can be the exterior. Rooms are consecutively numbered clockwise. If multiple closets exist, they are given the side allocation: for example, Room 3, Side C Closet. The exterior is always assigned a separate room equivalent identifier.
  - c) Sides in a Room Sides in an interior room equivalent follow the overall housing unit side allocation. Therefore, when standing in any four-sided room facing Side C, the room's Side A will always be to the rear, Side B will be to the left, and Side D will be to the right.
  - d) Building Component Identification Individual building components are first identified by their room number and side allocation (for example, the radiator in Room 1, Side B is easily identified). If multiple similar component types are in a room (for example, three windows), they are differentiated from each other by side allocation. If multiple components are on the same wall side, they are differentiated by being numbered left to right when facing the components. For example, three windows on Wall D are identified as windows D1, D2, and D3, left to right. If window D3 has the only old original sash, it is considered a separate testing combination from the other two windows. Codes or abbreviations for building components and/or locations may be used in order to shorten the time needed for data entry. If codes or abbreviations are used, the inspection records and the inspection report must include a table showing their meaning.
- d. XRF Instrument Reading Time
  - 1) The recommended time to open an XRF instrument's shutter to obtain a single XRF result for a testing location depends on the specific XRF instrument model and the mode in which the instrument is operating. Follow manufacturer's instructions per HUD Guidelines.
- e. XRF Calibration Check Readings
  - 1) Follow manufacturer's instructions per HUD Guidelines.



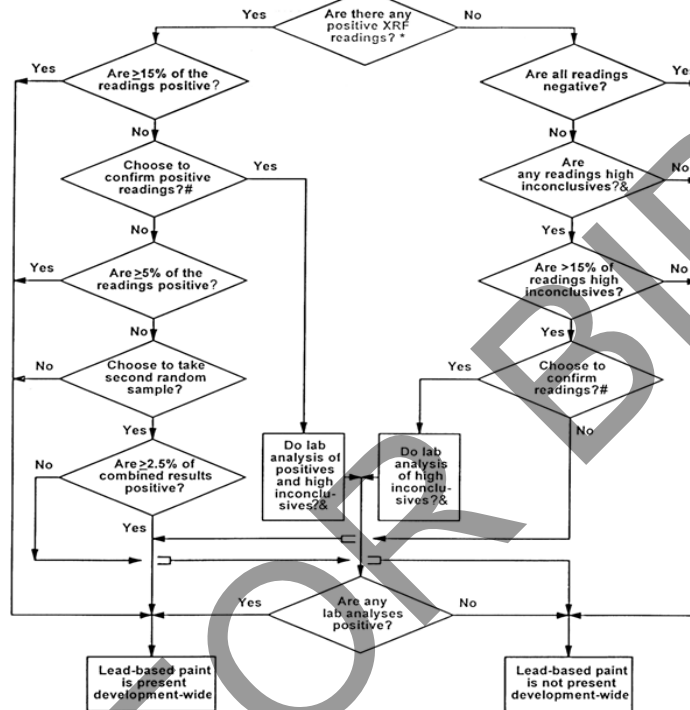


f. Substrate Correction

- 1) The XRF measurements, corrected for substrate contribution, if required by the Performance Characteristic Sheet ("PCS") for the particular type of instrument being used, should be sorted by the inspector by component type into the following categories:
  - a) Positive- A positive XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - b) Negative- A negative XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - c) High Inconclusive- An inconclusive XRF reading equal to or greater than the midpoint of the XRF's inconclusive range, in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.

NOT FOR BID

- g. The following Decision analyses will be used to determine which components are positive, negative or inconclusive:



\* "Positive," "negative," and "inconclusive" XRF readings are determined in accordance with the XRF instrument's Performance Characteristics Sheet as described in the HUD Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead Hazards in Housing, chapter 7.

& A high inconclusive reading is an XRF reading at or above the midpoint of the inconclusive range. For example, if the inconclusive range is 0.41 to 1.39, its midpoint (average) is 0.90; a reading in the range from 0.90 to 1.39 would be a high inconclusive reading.

# Any paint or coating may be assumed to be lead-based paint, even without XRF or laboratory analysis. Similarly, any XRF reading may be confirmed by laboratory analysis.

- 1)
- 2) All inconclusive results must be confirmed with laboratory analysis, or as an alternative must be classified as positive. the Owner may also wish to confirm positive XRF results with laboratory analysis. Therefore the Contractor must make a field determination of which XRF readings falls in the inconclusive or positive ranges and take paint chip samples during the XRF testing for possible laboratory analysis. If the majority of XRF readings are positive in the first few units, the inspector must consult with the Owner on whether to continue taking paint chip samples. Only the Owner may determine whether to submit collected paint chip samples for laboratory analysis or to classify the element as positive.

## 2. Multi-family Housing Testing Rules (Random Sampling)

- a. In order to use the Multi-family housing testing rules, there must multi-family housing is defined as any group of more than four units that are similar in construction from unit to unit
- b. Determine the number of randomly selected units to be tested in accordance with Table 7.3, below. Chapter 7 of the HUD Guidelines also describes how to select the units randomly. If a unit or units which were selected as part of the original random sample cannot be entered for a particular reason, a replacement unit(s) must be randomly selected in accordance with the HUD Guidelines.

**Table 7.3 Number of Units to be Tested in Multi-family Building or Developments\***

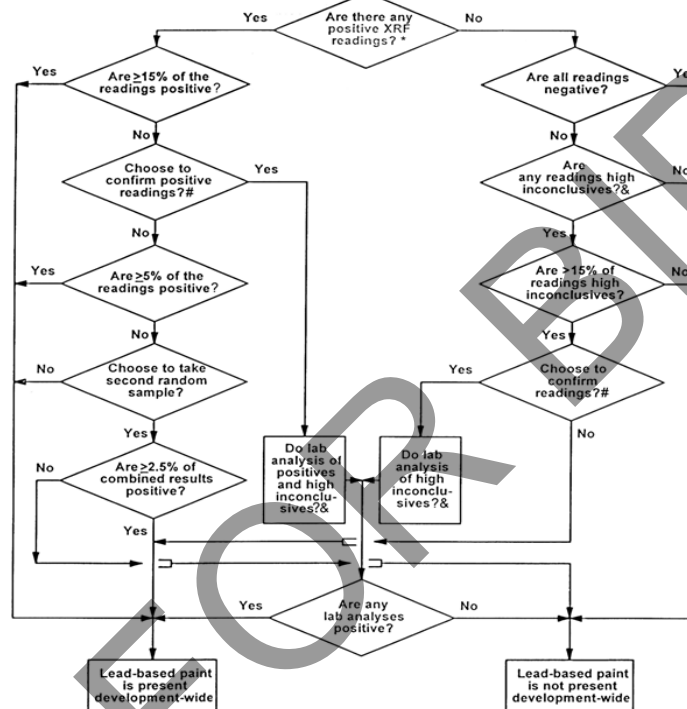
Number of Similar Units, Similar Common Areas, or Similar Exterior Sites	Pre-1960 or Unknown-Age Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *	1960-1977 Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *
1-10	All	All
11-13	All	10
14	All	11
15	All	12
16-17	All	13
18	All	14
19	All	15
20	All	16
21-26	20	16
27	21	17
28	22	18
29	23	18
30	23	19
31	24	19
32	25	19
33-34	26	19
35	27	19
36	28	19
37	29	19
38-39	30	20
40-48	31	21
49-50	31	22
51	32	22
52-53	33	22
54	34	22
55-56	35	22
57-58	36	22
59	37	23
60-69	38	23
70-73	38	24
74-75	39	24
76-77	40	24

Number of Similar Units, Similar Common Areas, or Similar Exterior Sites	Pre-1960 or Unknown-Age Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *	1960-1977 Building or Development: Number of Units to Test *
78-79	41	24
80-88	42	24
89-95	42	25
96-97	43	25
98-99	44	25
100-109	45	25
110-117	45	26
118-119	46	26
120-138	47	26
139-157	48	26
158-159	49	26
160-177	49	27
178-197	50	27
198-218	51	27
219-258	52	27
259-279	53	27
280-299	53	28
300-379	54	28
380-499	55	28
500-776	56	28
777-939	57	28
940-1004	57	29
1005-1022	58	29
1023-1032	59	29
1033-1039	59	30
1500	87	44
2000	116	58
2500	145	73
3000	174	87
3500	203	102
4000	232	116

\* For brevity, "Number of Units" and "Number of Units to Test" are used, but the number to test is the same for similar units, similar common areas, and similar exterior sites.

- c. An assessment on each tested component must note four attributes, also called a testing combination.
  - 1) The room equivalent (where the testing took place i.e. bedroom, bathroom, etc.)
  - 2) The component type (door, wall #1 - upper left, etc.)
  - 3) The substrate (brick, wood, concrete, drywall, plaster or metal).
  - 4) The color of the paint.
- d. These attributes must be included as part of the report.
- e. For each testing combination, the condition of the painted surfaces should be noted as either intact, fair or poor.
- f. One reading with the X-ray fluorescence (XRF) instrument on each testing combination is all that is required.
- g. At least 40 components of a given type must be tested to obtain the desired level of confidence in the results throughout the multi-family development. If less than 40 components of a given type exist in the buildings to be tested i.e. they are unique components, then the measurement should be taken using single family testing rules (described below). If less than 40 components of a given type exist in the units to be tested, additional components of this type can be identified in other units in the complex and tested to bring the total up to 40 so that multi-family testing rules can be used. The decision of which option the Contractor should use will be made by the the Owner.
- h. To increase the number of tested components of a given type, testing combinations with different colors on the same component and substrate may be combined into a single component type. For example, if "wood doors" is the component type, all wood doors tested for lead-based paint could belong to the same component type, regardless of color.
- i. A component type may be differentiated by color as long as there are 40 tested and there is a good reason for differentiation.
- j. The XRF measurements, corrected for substrate contribution, if required by the Performance Characteristic Sheet ("PCS") for the particular type of instrument being used, should be sorted by the inspector by component type into the following categories:
  - 1) Positive- A positive XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - 2) Negative- A negative XRF reading in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.
  - 3) High Inconclusive- An inconclusive XRF reading equal to or greater than the midpoint of the XRF's inconclusive range, in accordance with the XRF's Performance Characteristic Sheet.

- k. The following Decision analyses will be used to determine which components are positive, negative or inconclusive:



\* "Positive," "negative," and "inconclusive" XRF readings are determined in accordance with the XRF instrument's Performance Characteristics Sheet as described in the HUD Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead Hazards in Housing, chapter 7.  
 & A high inconclusive reading is an XRF reading at or above the midpoint of the inconclusive range. For example, if the inconclusive range is 0.41 to 1.39, its midpoint (average) is 0.90; a reading in the range from 0.90 to 1.39 would be a high inconclusive reading.  
 # Any paint or coating may be assumed to be lead-based paint, even without XRF or laboratory analysis. Similarly, any XRF reading may be confirmed by laboratory analysis.

- l. If there are readings on a component type(s) equal to or greater than 1.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup> and paint chip samples are submitted to the laboratory, there are two possible results:
- 1) If all lab samples on a component type are below 0.5% lead by weight, the component type can be classified as negative throughout the development.
  - 2) If one or more lab results are positive, (equal to or greater than 0.5% lead by weight for a component) the the Owner will take one of three options:
    - a) Treat the component type as positive throughout the development, or
    - b) Test the component type throughout the development, or
    - c) If 5% or less of the component type are positive, take a second random sample, just testing that component type.
  - 3) If option 2)c) above is selected by the Owner and the combined results of the first and second random sample are less than 2½% positive, the following additional options are available depending on the results.
    - a) If no positives are found in the second sample, no further testing is necessary. Those positives in the first random sample will be monitored/abated (not by this Agreement), but the rest of the component type can be classified as negative.



- b) If positives are found on a component type in the second sample, the the Owner has the option to classify the component type as positive throughout the development or comprehensively test it.
    - c) If the combined results of the two random samples are equal to or greater than 2½%, the the Owner also has the option to comprehensively test the remaining components of that type or classify them as positive.
  - m. **Paint Chip Sample Size:** The Paint chip samples should be taken from a 4 square inch (25 square centimeter) area that is representative of the paint on the testing combination, as close as possible to any XRF reading locations and, if possible, unobtrusive. This area may be a 2" x 2" (5 x 5 centimeters) square, or a 1" x 4" (2.5 x 10 centimeters) rectangle, or have any other dimensions that equal at least 4 square inches (25 square centimeters). Regardless of shape, the dimensions of the surface area must be accurately measured (to the nearest millimeter or 1/16<sup>th</sup> of an inch) so that the laboratory results can be reported in mg/cm<sup>2</sup>. Results should be reported as percent by weight if the surface area cannot be measured accurately or if all paint within the sampled area cannot be removed. In these cases, lead should be reported in ppm or percent weight, not in mg/cm<sup>2</sup>. Smaller surface area can be used if acceptable to the laboratory. (See ASTM E 1729). In all cases those who take the samples should consult with the NLAAP recognized laboratory selected regarding the requirements for the submission samples for lead-based paint analysis.
  - n. If the the Owner decides to test in search of these hard-to-find components coated with lead based paint, the inspector must use the single family testing rules described in the previous section.
- 3. Common Areas and Exterior Sites Testing Rules**
- a. Similar common areas and similar exterior sites must always be tested, but in some cases they can be sampled in much the same way that dwelling units are. Common areas and building exteriors typically have a similar painting history from one building to the next. In multifamily housing, each common area (such as building lobby, laundry room, or hallway) can be treated as a dwelling unit. If there are multiple similar common areas, they may be grouped for sampling purposes exactly the same way as regular dwelling units. However, dwelling units, common areas and exterior sites cannot be all mixed together in a single group. All testing combinations within each common area or building exteriors selected for testing must be inspected. This includes playground equipment, benches and miscellaneous testing combinations located throughout the development. The specific common areas and building exteriors to test should be randomly selected, in much the same way as specific units are selected using random numbers. The number of common areas to be tested should be taken from table 7.3 (HUD Guidelines). In this instance, common areas and building exteriors can be treated in the same way as housing units (although they are not to be confused with true housing units).
- 4. Unit and Common Area Drawings**
- a. Mark-ups of as built drawings depicting room equivalents that are tested must be provided as part of the report.
  - b. The Contractor should test in a clockwise path starting from the door through the space and room equivalents so that the approximate location of each component tested can be easily established by referencing the room equivalent and sides.
  - c. Each space must have a reference point (side A, B, C, D or wall 1, 2, 3 or 4). The wall with the door should always be referenced as wall 1 or side A. If there is more than one door, wall 1 or side A should be used to refer to the wall with the door through which the room is first entered when moving in a clockwise fashion through the unit.

**B. Evaluation of the Inspection by the the Owner**

1. The Contractor will be required to carry out retesting at no additional cost to the the Owner, after completion of the Inspection at each the Owner's development as described in the HUD Guidelines, for single family housing, multi-family housing and common areas. The the Owner shall randomly select the testing combinations to be retested and the Contractor shall perform the retesting using the same XRF instrument(s) which was/were used to take the original readings. An the Owner's inspector shall be present to observe all retesting. The retesting shall be limited to ten (10) testing combinations, and if necessary to repeat the retest, the testing combinations randomly selected for repeating the retest shall also be limited to ten.
  2. If the retest tolerance limit computed from the information provided in the "XRF Performance Characteristics Sheet" (see HUD Guidelines) is exceeded, the retest will be repeated as described in the HUD Guidelines for single family, multi-family housing and common areas. If the retest tolerance limit is exceeded again, the the Owner may require the Contractor to retest the entire development at no additional cost to the the Owner, or the the Owner may withhold all payments and terminate its agreement with the Contractor.
- C. Option to do Laboratory Testing only
1. The the Owner may, for a specific testing assignment, request in writing that the Contractor, when utilizing the multi-family housing testing rules for random sampling, or the single family housing testing rules, do all testing through laboratory analysis of paint chips rather than through XRF Spectrum Analyzer testing with laboratory confirmation as needed. Please note that under the single family housing testing rules, only one paint chip must be taken and analyzed for each component type.
- D. Waste Disposal
1. All waste generated must be legally disposed in accordance with Federal, State and Local regulations.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13b





---

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 83 19 13c - LEAD DUST WIPE, AIR AND TCLP SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for lead dust wipe, air and TCLP sampling and analysis. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 GENERAL

- A. Definitions: Unless otherwise specified the following definitions shall apply:
1. **"Approved"**: shall mean approved by all public agencies having jurisdiction, and the Owner.
  2. **"The Owner"**: shall mean the Owner and its designated authorized representatives.
  3. **"Contractor"**: shall mean the firm that is awarded this contract and is responsible to ensure compliance with Federal, State and City regulations as well as these Contract documents.
  4. **"Development or Project"**: a group of buildings in one or more designated geographical locations, owned or operated by the Owner and referred to by a common name by the Owner.
  5. **"Dust Cleaning Firm"**: shall mean the contractor under a separate contract or the Owner responsible for cleaning of lead dust, as directed by the Owner, until the clearance levels are achieved, as defined in the "Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing, June 1995" or latest edition published by the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD).
  6. **"Equal or Approved Equal"**: shall mean equal in the opinion of the Owner.
  7. **"HUD"**: the United States Department of Housing and Urban Development.
  8. **"HUD Guidelines"**: shall mean Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint Hazards in Housing issued by HUD'S Office of Lead-Based Paint Abatement and Poisoning Prevention in June 1995 except as such guidelines are later modified by HUD and/or modified by the Owner in writing pursuant to this contract.
  9. **"Inspector"**: an individual who has completed training from an accredited program and been licensed or certified by the appropriate State or local agency to (1) perform inspections to determine and report the presence of lead-based paint on a surface-by-surface basis through on-site testing, (2) report the findings of such an inspection, (3) collect environmental samples for laboratory analysis, (4) perform clearance testing, and (5) document successful compliance with lead-based paint hazard control requirements or standards.
  10. **"Lead-Based Paint"**: any paint, varnish, shellac, or other coating that contains lead equal to or greater than 1.0 mg/cm<sup>2</sup> as measured by XRF or laboratory analysis, or 0.5 percent by weight (5,000 µg/g, 5,000 PPM, or 5,000 mg/kg) as measured by laboratory analysis.
  11. **"Lead-Based Paint Hazard"**: a condition in which exposure to lead from lead-contaminated dust, lead-contaminated soil or deteriorated lead-based paint would have an adverse effect on human health (as established by the EPA Administrator under Title IV of the Toxic Substance Control Act). Lead-based paint hazards include for example, deteriorated lead-based paint, leaded dust levels above applicable standards and bare leaded soil above applicable standards.
  12. **"Lead-Based Paint Hazard Control"**: activities to control or eliminate lead-based paint hazards, including interim controls and complete abatement.
  13. **"Lead-Contaminated Dust"**: surface dust in residences that contain an area or mass concentration of lead in excess of the standard established by the EPA Administrator, pursuant to Title IV of the Toxic Substance Control Act. Until the EPA standards are set, the HUD recommended clearance and risk assessment standards for leaded dust are 40 µg/ft<sup>2</sup> on floors, 250 µg/ft<sup>2</sup> on interior window sills, and 800 µg/ft<sup>2</sup> on window troughs.



14. **"Monitoring"**: shall refer to inspection to ensure compliance with all Federal, State and City Standards or guidelines, and contractual specifications.
15. **"Provide"**: shall mean furnish and install.
16. **"Risk Assessor"**: a certified individual who has completed training with an accredited training program and who has been certified to (1) perform risk assessments, (2) identify acceptable abatement and interim control strategies for reducing identified lead-based paint hazards, (3) perform clearance testing and reevaluations, and (4) document the successful completion of lead-based paint hazard control activities.

B. Applicable Regulations/References

1. The work conducted shall comply with all applicable Federal, State and City regulations. Applicable guidelines and standards listed in the scope of work include, but are not limited to:
 

24 CFR Parts 35,36,37 Guidelines for the Evaluation and Control of Lead-Based Paint in Housing (HUD Guidelines June 1995) & 1997 Revisions 29 CFR 1910 29 CFR 1910.1025 29 CFR 1910.134 29 CFR 1910.1200 29 CFR 1910.245 29 CFR 1926 29 CFR 1926.20 29 CFR 1926.21 29 CFR 1926.25 29 CFR 1926.28 29 CFR 1926.51 29 CFR 1926.55 29 CFR 1926.59 29 CFR 1926.62 29 CFR 1926.103 40 CFR 61 Subpart A 40 CFR 241  40 CFR 257 40 CFR 261/262 American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Z87.1 ANSI Z88.2-80 American Society For Testing Materials (ASTM)	HUD Lead-Based Paint Regulations  General Industry Standard Lead Standard for General Industry Respiratory Protection Hazard Communication Specification for Accident Prevention Construction Industry Standards General Safety & Health Provisions Safety Training & Education Housekeeping Personal Protective Equipment Washing Facilities Gases, Vapors, Fumes, Dusts & Mists Hazard Communication Standard Construction Industry Lead Standard Respiratory Protection General Provisions Guidelines for the Land Disposal of Solid Waste Criteria for the Land Disposal of Solid Waste Waste Disposal Facilities & Practices Eye Protection  Practices for Respiratory Protection All Applicable Standards
---	---
2. The contractor shall ensure that any programs, certifications, licenses or other documentation in accordance with the above and/or any other applicable Federal, State, and Local Regulations/Guidelines are provided.

C. Scope Of Work

1. The work shall consist of furnishing labor, materials, insurance and all other incidental items required to perform the following:
  - a. Dust wipe sampling and analysis
    - 1) Collect dust wipe samples from various horizontal surfaces, such as floors, window sills, window troughs, etc., as directed by the Owner.
    - 2) Dust wipe samples shall be collected in accordance with ASTM ES30-94.

- 3) Analyze dust wipe sample in the laboratory using Flame Atomic Absorption Spectrometry ("FAAS") or Graphite Furnace Atomic Absorption Spectrometry ("GFAAS").
  - 4) Provide result of analysis in micrograms per square foot.
  - 5) A faxed summary of results must be provided to the Owner within 24 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the laboratory analysis of the collected dust wipe sample. Contractor shall also have the ability to provide results in 4 hours for clearance, following lead-based paint abatement work, if requested by the Owner. The sampling result must be provided in a form approved by the Owner and must include for each dust wipe sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, the surface type, dimensions of sample areas, total micrograms, micrograms per square feet, and an indication of pass or fail.
  - 6) Turn-around time for results shall be counted from the time the Contractor performs collection of dust wipe samples to the time the results are actually presented to the Owner. This includes travel time from the site to the laboratory of the Contractor and back to the site.
  - 7) A detailed final report covering the results of all dust wipe samples taken and analyzed must be submitted within 5 days from the time the Owner authorizes the performance of the laboratory analysis. The sampling report must include for each dust wipe sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, the surface type, dimensions of sample areas, total micrograms, micrograms per square feet, and indicate pass or fail in a form approved by the Owner. Also include in the report the method of analysis, i.e. "FAAS" or "GFAAS", and the detection limits. The laboratory test results in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.
  - 8) The sampling data report must contain all required data fields as specified by the Owner. The sampling data report shall be provided to the Owner on 3.5 inch high density diskettes in ASCII file form. The required data fields will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor.
  - 9) The laboratory used for the analysis of the dust wipe samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
- b. Dust Spiked Samples
- 1) Provide dust spiked samples to the Owner. Dust spiked samples shall be prepared in accordance with the HUD Guidelines.  
**NOTE:** These samples are separate from the ones required by the Contractor for its own QA/QC
  - 2) Prepare dust spiked samples in a manner such that they are indistinguishable from the field samples.
  - 3) Prepare dust spiked samples using the same lot as that to be used in the field.
  - 4) Dust spiked samples shall be inserted into the sample stream, randomly, by the Owner Inspector.
  - 5) Blind analysis of dust spiked samples must fall within 80%-120% of the true value. If the laboratory fails to obtain readings within these limits, two more spiked samples shall be sent immediately to the lab for analysis.
  - 6) If the two additional spiked samples fail, the sample batch shall be considered invalid, and the Owner may, at its sole discretion, terminate this contract as well as withhold payment for services already rendered.
- c. Air Sampling and Analysis



- 1) Collect area air samples at various locations and various projects for personal exposure assessment as directed by the Owner.
  - 2) Air samples shall be collected in accordance with ASTM E1553-93.
  - 3) Prepare air samples for analysis in accordance with ASTM E33-94
  - 4) Analyze air samples using FAAS or GFAAS.
  - 5) All equipment required for personal air sampling, including pumps shall be provided by the Contractor at no extra cost to the Owner.
  - 6) Provide results of air samples in micrograms per cubic meter.
  - 7) A faxed summary of result must be provided to the Owner within 24 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the laboratory analysis of the collected air sample. The sampling result must include for each air sample taken the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, and the reading.
  - 8) Turn-around time shall start after collection of the air samples, and includes travel time to and from the laboratory.
  - 9) A detailed final report covering the results of all air samples taken and analyzed must be submitted within 5 days from the time the Owner authorizes the performance of the laboratory analysis. The sampling report must include for each air sample, the Project, the building address, the sample number, the room or room equivalent, and the reading. The laboratory report contained in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.
  - 10) The sampling data report must contain all required data fields as specified by the Owner. The sampling data report shall be provided to the Owner on 3.5 inch high density diskettes in ASCII file form. The required data fields will be provided by the Owner to the Contractor.
  - 11) The laboratory used for the analysis of the dust wipe samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
  - 12) Air sampling technician shall be present during the entire shift of the air sampling.
- d. TCLP Sampling and Analysis
- 1) Take core samples of construction waste as directed by the Owner and analyze by TCLP testing to determine if waste is hazardous.
  - 2) Waste shall be classified as hazardous if the concentration of lead is greater than 5 parts per million by TCLP testing.
  - 3) The laboratory used for the analysis of the TCLP samples must be certified by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP, and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided. Indicate if the laboratory is an independent entity from the Contractor.
  - 4) A faxed summary of result must be provided to the Owner within 48 hours after the Owner authorizes the Contractor to perform the TCLP analysis of the waste. Provide results in parts per million (ppm).
  - 5) Final results provided to the Owner by the Contractor must include written sample preparation procedure and laboratory specific written procedures for performing TCLP, including quality control procedures used for performing the TCLP, and a table listing the sample numbers, description of the construction waste, and the

result of the TCLP. The laboratory report contained in the final report must be signed by the Laboratory Director.

- 6) Final report must also specify detection limits.
- 7) Final report must be provided within 5 days from the time the authorization to perform the TCLP is given by the Owner.

D. General Provisions

1. Some of the work of this contract may be in occupied apartments. The Contractor shall perform all of the work of this contract with the least inconvenience to the tenants.
2. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to protect the property of the Owner, its residents, and the public. The Contractor must repair any damaged property, whether of the Owner, its residents, or the public, and restore such property to its original condition. If the damage is beyond repair, the Contractor shall replace it with new, that in the judgment of the Owner, match the existing materials and/or of equal quality and workmanship. All such repairs shall be at the Contractor's expense.
3. The Contractor shall develop a work plan to be performed as requested by the Department of Planning and Development. The detailed plan shall include coordination of the monitoring and sampling work with the Contractor in a manner that will be least disruptive to the normal use of the non-work areas in the building. The plan should also include emergency procedures in case of fire.
4. The Contractor shall perform work in accordance with the latest HUD Guidelines, except as such Guidelines are modified by the Owner in writing in this Contract, or any Contract pursuant to this Contract, and in accordance with all applicable Federal, State and Local regulations.
5. The Contractor shall include in the bid price all supplementary miscellaneous items not specified but implied or required in order to complete the work.

E. Submissions

1. Six (6) copies of the submissions listed below must be submitted to the Owner by the Contractor or Subcontractor performing the Work:
  - a. Ability to perform lead dust wipe sampling by submitting evidence of the successful completion of lead inspector and/or risk assessor training by all staff to be assigned to the job including inspector technicians. As stated previously, training must be provided through an approved program.
  - b. Laboratory certification by the State Department of Health (or other responsible agency) through its ELAP program and by the USEPA through the EPA's National Lead Laboratory Accreditation Program ("NLLAP"), or as an alternative having accreditation application pending before NLLAP and having acceptable performance on five consecutive rounds of the EPA, Environmental Laboratory Proficiency Analytical Testing (ELPAT) program, including the most recent round; evidence of such accreditation must be provided.
  - c. If a subcontractor will be used for any of the laboratory work of this contract, evidence of certification stated in (2) above must also be provided for the subcontractor.

F. Waste Disposal

1. All waste generated must be legally disposed in accordance with the Federal, State and Local Regulations.

END OF SECTION 02 83 19 13c

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13a	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 83 33 13	02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tcpl Sampling And Analysis

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 84 16 00 - REMOVAL OF FLUORESCENT LIGHT BALLASTS/CAPACITORS AND FLUORESCENT LIGHT TUBES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for removal of fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent light tubes. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Before Start of Work: Submit the following to the Owner's Representative for review. Do not start work until these submittals are returned with Owner's Representative's approval.
  - a. Copy of State or local license for hazardous waste hauler;
  - b. Certification of at least one on-site supervisor which has satisfactorily completed the OSHA 40 Hour Health and Safety Course for Handling Hazardous Materials;
  - c. Certificates of workers which have successfully completed at least the OSHA 40-Hour Health and Safety Course for Hazardous Materials;
  - d. List of employees scheduled to perform this work;
  - e. Schedule of start and finish times and dates for this work;
  - f. Name and address of landfill where these waste materials are to be deposited (include contact person and telephone numbers);
  - g. Material Safety Data Sheets for all materials requiring removal;
  - h. If contractor introduces any chemical into the work environmental, a MSDS for that chemical is required before use;
  - i. Transporter must have notified the EPA and/or the appropriate local government agency in advance of its intentions to transport PCB's, mercury and cadmium, and receive an identification number pursuant to the Toxic Substance Control Act (TSCA); and
  - j. Contingency Plan for handling emergency spills or leaks.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Polyethylene Sheet: A single polyethylene film in the largest sheet size possible to minimize seams, 4.0 and 6.0 mil thick, clear, frosted, or black.
2. Duct Tape: Provide duct tape in 3" widths, witty an adhesive which is formulated to stick aggressively to sheet polyethylene.
3. Spray Cement: Provide spray adhesive in aerosol cans which is specifically formulated to stick tenaciously to sheet polyethylene.
4. Disposal Bays: Provide 6 mil thick leak-tight polyethylene bags.
5. Labels: As required by the EPA and OSHA for handling, transportation, and disposal of hazardous waste.
6. **Drums:** Recovery or salvage drums acceptable for disposal of hazardous waste. Prior approval of drums is required. Drums or containers must meet the required OSHA EPA (40 CFR Parts 264265 and 300), and DOT regulations (49 CFR Parts 171-178). Use of damaged drums will not be allowed.

### 1.3 EXECUTION



## A. General

1. Where necessary, scaffolding shall be erected to fully access all applicable fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors and tubes. At no time will the ballasts/capacitors and tubes be allowed to drop onto the floor. Contractor must take care to protect from dropping the ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent tubes.
2. Prior to removing ballasts/capacitors and fluorescent tubes, contractor shall ensure that all electrical service to lights has been shut off, and locked out. Temporary lighting shall be erected to adequately illuminate work areas.
3. Depending on height of light fixtures, contractor shall utilize at least a 2-person per team system. The fluorescent light tubes shall be removed and passed to the appropriate number of workers required to lower the tubes to the floor without breaking them.
4. The worker on the floor shall lay the tubes in cardboard boxes large enough to hold a small quantity of tubes. Worker shall take care to not damage the tubes while they are lowered into the box. Once the box is full, it shall be wrapped with two layers of 6 mil thick polyethylene sheeting and sealed with duct tape.
5. Contractor may choose to either remove the fluorescent light ballasts/capacitors in-place or lower the lighting fixtures for easy access. The ballasts/capacitors shall be removed from the fixtures. Electrical wiring leading from the ballasts/capacitors shall be cut away. Ballasts/capacitors shall be placed in 55-gallon drums lined with at least two 6 mil thick polyethylene bags. Be careful not to overfill the drums so that they remain manageable. Once the drums have been filled to the acceptable level, seal the lid onto the top of the drum, and affix appropriate labels. Transport drums via hand dollies.

## B. Worker Protection

1. As a minimum, while working with the ballasts/capacitors and light tubes, workers shall utilize impervious gloves adequate for the use with hazardous materials. If light ballasts/capacitors and/or light tubes are damaged, and/or exposure to these materials may reach the OSHA PEL or AGGIH threshold limit value (TLV), the contractor shall be required to provide impervious full body protection and respiratory protection. However, contractor is required to verify the type of protection required prior to working with these materials, and have written approval by Owner's Representative prior to beginning.
2. In addition, workers shall not smoke, drink or eat in these areas during work activities.

## C. Storage Of Fluorescent Light Ballasts/Capacitors And Light Tubes

1. Once the containers holding the ballasts/capacitors and light tubes have been filled and sealed, they shall be stored in designated areas as agreed upon by the Owners Representative and Contractor. They shall not be allowed to be stored on-site in transportation vehicles until the time for them to be transported to the hazardous waste incinerators or landfill facility.

END OF SECTION 02 84 16 00

## SECTION 02 84 16 00a - INTERIOR LIGHTING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interior lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
  - b. Emergency lighting units.
  - c. Exit signs.
  - d. Lighting fixture supports.
  - e. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

#### C. Definitions

1. BF: Ballast factor.
2. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
3. CRI: Color-rendering index.
4. HID: High-intensity discharge.
5. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
6. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
7. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - a. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
  - b. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
  - c. Ballast, including BF.
  - d. Energy-efficiency data.
  - e. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles".
  - f. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles".
  - g. Life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
  - h. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides, of each lighting fixture type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
    - 1) Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by manufacturer.

**OR**

Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
2. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For each lighting fixture indicated in the Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each Sample shall include the following:
  - a. Lamps and ballasts, installed.
  - b. Cords and plugs.
  - c. Pendant support system.
4. Installation instructions.
5. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Lighting fixtures.
  - b. Suspended ceiling components.
  - c. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extends to within **12 inches (305 mm)** of the plane of the luminaires.
  - d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
  - e. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
  - f. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
    - 1) Air outlets and inlets.
    - 2) Speakers.
    - 3) Sprinklers.
    - 4) Smoke and fire detectors.
    - 5) Occupancy sensors.
    - 6) Access panels.
  - g. Perimeter moldings.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
7. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.
8. Field quality-control reports.
9. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - a. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
10. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

**E. Quality Assurance**

1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

**OR**

1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910, complying with the IESNA Lighting Measurements Testing & Calculation Guides.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with NFPA 70.
4. FM Global Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

**F. Coordination**

1. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Final Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
  - b. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Final Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Lighting Fixtures And Components

1. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
2. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
3. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
4. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
5. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
6. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
7. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
8. Diffusers and Globes:
  - a. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
    - 1) Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2) UV stabilized.
  - b. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
9. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - a. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
    - 1) "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - 2) Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12, etc.), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple, etc.), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 3) Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
    - 4) Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start, etc.) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 5) ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
    - 6) CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
10. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.
11. Air-Handling Fluorescent Fixtures: For use with plenum ceiling for air return and heat extraction and for attaching an air-diffuser-boot assembly specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
  - a. Air-Supply Units: Slots in one or both side trims join with air-diffuser-boot assemblies.

- b. Heat-Removal Units: Air path leads through lamp cavity.
- c. Combination Heat-Removal and Air-Supply Unit: Heat is removed through lamp cavity at both ends of the fixture door with air supply same as for air-supply units.
- d. Dampers: Operable from outside fixture for control of return-air volume.
- e. Static Fixture: Air-supply slots are blanked off, and fixture appearance matches active units.

B. Ballasts For Linear Fluorescent Lamps

1. General Requirements for Electronic Ballasts:
  - a. Comply with UL 935 and with ANSI C82.11.
  - b. Designed for type and quantity of lamps served.
  - c. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless another BF, dimmer, or bi-level control is indicated.
  - d. Sound Rating: Class A **OR** Class A except Class B for T8/HO and T12/Slimline lamp ballasts, **as directed**.
  - e. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent.
  - f. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
  - g. Operating Frequency: 42 kHz or higher.
  - h. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
  - i. BF: 0.88 or higher.
  - j. Power Factor: 0.95 **OR** 0.98, **as directed**, or higher.
  - k. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
2. Luminaires controlled by occupancy sensors shall have programmed-start ballasts.
3. Electronic Programmed-Start Ballasts for T5 **OR** T8 **OR** T5HO **OR** T5 and T5HO, **as directed**, Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.11 and the following:
  - a. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit for T5 diameter lamps.
  - b. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
4. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.
  - a. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
5. Single Ballasts for Multiple Lighting Fixtures: Factory wired with ballast arrangements and bundled extension wiring to suit final installation conditions without modification or rewiring in the field.
6. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
  - a. Temperatures **0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C)** and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for **0 deg F (minus 17 deg C)** starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
  - b. Temperatures **Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C)** and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
7. Ballasts for Residential Applications: Fixtures designated as "Residential" may use low-power-factor electronic ballasts having a Class B sound rating and total harmonic distortion of approximately 30 percent.
8. Ballasts for Low Electromagnetic-Interference Environments: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for consumer equipment.
9. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
  - a. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.
  - d. Control: Coordinate wiring from ballast to control device to ensure that the ballast, controller, and connecting wiring are compatible.
10. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.

- a. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
    - 1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 2) Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.
- 11. Ballasts for Tri-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
  - a. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
    - 1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 2) Low-Level Operation: 30 and 50 **OR** 30 and 60, **as directed**, percent of rated lamp lumens.
  - b. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
  - c. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific tri-level control system and lamp type indicated.
- C. Ballasts For Compact Fluorescent Lamps
  - 1. Description: Electronic-programmed rapid-start type, complying with UL 935 and with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
    - a. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
    - b. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
    - c. Sound Rating: Class A.
    - d. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
    - e. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
    - f. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
    - g. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
    - h. BF: 0.95 or higher unless otherwise indicated.
    - i. Power Factor: 0.95 **OR** 0.98, **as directed**, except fixtures designated as "Residential" may use low-power-factor electronic ballasts, **as directed**, or higher.
    - j. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
- D. Emergency Fluorescent Power Unit
  - 1. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.
    - a. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
    - b. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
    - c. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
      - 1) Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      - 2) Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
    - d. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
    - e. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
    - f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.



- g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- 2. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from lighting fixture. Comply with UL 924.
  - a. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
  - b. Nightlight Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp in a remote fixture continuously.
  - c. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  - d. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
  - e. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
  - f. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - g. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - h. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - i. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

#### E. Ballasts For HID Lamps

- 1. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
  - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C)** for single-lamp ballasts.
  - c. Rated Ambient Operating Temperature: **104 deg F (40 deg C)**.
  - d. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
  - e. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
- 2. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 20 deg F (Minus 29 deg C)** for single-lamp ballasts.
  - b. Rated Ambient Operating Temperature: **130 deg F (54 deg C)**.
  - c. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
  - d. Sound Rating: Class A.
  - e. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
  - f. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
  - g. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
  - h. Power Factor: 0.90 or higher.
  - i. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR 18, Ch. 1, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
  - j. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.
  - k. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.
    - 1) High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 2) Low-Level Operation: **35 OR 50, as directed**, percent of rated lamp lumens.
    - 3) Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
  - l. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.

- 1) Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.
  3. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
    - a. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
    - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C).**
- F. Quartz Lamp Lighting Controller
1. General Requirements for Controllers: Factory installed by lighting fixture manufacturer. Comply with UL 1598.
  2. Standby (Quartz Restrike): Automatically switches quartz lamp on when a HID lamp in the fixture is initially energized and during the HID lamp restrike period after brief power outages.
  3. Connections: Designed for a single branch -circuit connection.
  4. Switching Off: Automatically switches quartz lamp off when HID lamp strikes.  
**OR**  
Switching Off: Automatically switches quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.
- G. Exit Signs
1. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Internally Lighted Signs:
    - a. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.  
**OR**  
Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
    - b. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
      - 1) Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
      - 2) Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
      - 3) Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
      - 4) Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
      - 5) LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
      - 6) Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
      - 7) Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
    - c. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
      - 1) Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in LED power supply **OR** ballast **OR** battery, **as directed**, for power connection to remote unit.
      - 2) Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

3. Self-Luminous Signs: Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years.

**OR**

Self-Luminous Signs: Using strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Provide with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

#### H. Emergency Lighting Units

1. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.
  - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
  - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
  - c. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  - f. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
  - g. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage.
  - h. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  - i. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

#### I. Fluorescent Lamps

1. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of **48 inches (1220 mm)**, 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
2. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 17 W maximum, nominal length of **24 inches (610 mm)**, 1300 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
3. T5 rapid-start lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of **45.2 inches (1150 mm)**, 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3000 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
4. T5HO rapid-start, high-output lamps, rated 54 W maximum, nominal length of **45.2 inches (1150 mm)**, 5000 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 4100 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours unless otherwise indicated.
5. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: 4-Pin, CRI 80 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, average rated life of 10,000 hours at three hours operation per start, and suitable for use with dimming ballasts, **as directed**.

#### J. HID Lamps

1. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.

- a. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
  2. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
  3. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
  4. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.
  5. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI 78.41, CRI 0, and color temperature 1800 K.
- K. Lighting Fixture Support Components
1. Comply with Division 26 Section "Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
  2. Single-Stem Hangers: **1/2-inch (13-mm)** steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
  3. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, **1/2-inch (13-mm)** steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
  4. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.
  5. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.
  6. Rod Hangers: **3/16-inch (5-mm)** minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
  7. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.
- L. Retrofit Kits For Fluorescent Lighting Fixtures
1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
  2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation
1. Lighting fixtures:
    - a. Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install lamps in each luminaire.
  2. Temporary Lighting: If it is necessary, and approved by the Owner, to use permanent luminaires for temporary lighting, install and energize the minimum number of luminaires necessary. When construction is sufficiently complete, remove the temporary luminaires, disassemble, clean thoroughly, install new lamps, and reinstall.
  3. Remote Mounting of Ballasts: Distance between the ballast and fixture shall not exceed that recommended by ballast manufacturer. Verify, with ballast manufacturers, maximum distance between ballast and luminaire.
  4. Lay-in Ceiling Lighting Fixtures Supports: Use grid as a support element.
    - a. Install ceiling support system rods or wires, independent of the ceiling suspension devices, **as directed**, for each fixture. Locate not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from lighting fixture corners.
    - b. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
    - c. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two **3/4-inch (20-mm)** metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
    - d. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
  5. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
    - a. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches (1200 mm)**, brace to limit swinging.

- b. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
  - c. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
  - d. Do not use grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- 6. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.
  - 7. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables".

B. Identification

- 1. Install labels with panel and circuit numbers on concealed junction and outlet boxes. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

C. Field Quality Control

- 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- 2. Verify that self-luminous exit signs are installed according to their listing and the requirements in NFPA 101.
- 3. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

D. Startup Service

- 1. Burn-in all lamps that require specific aging period to operate properly, prior to occupancy by the Owner. Burn-in fluorescent and compact fluorescent lamps intended to be dimmed, for at least 100 hours at full voltage.

E. Adjusting

- 1. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Final Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting aimable luminaires to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required after dark.
  - a. Adjust aimable luminaires in the presence of the Owner.

END OF SECTION 02 84 16 00a

## SECTION 02 84 16 00b - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior lighting. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
  - b. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
  - c. Poles and accessories.
  - d. Luminaire lowering devices.

#### C. Definitions

1. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
2. CRI: Color-rendering index.
3. HID: High-intensity discharge.
4. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
5. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
6. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
7. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

#### D. Structural Analysis Criteria For Pole Selection

1. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
2. Live Load: Single load of **500 lbf (2224 N)**, distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
3. Ice Load: Load of **3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa)**, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
4. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
  - a. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding **49.2 feet (15 m)** in height is **100 mph (45 m/s) OR 90 mph (40 m/s)**, as directed.
    - 1) Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - 2) Minimum Design Life: 50 years.
    - 3) Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.
  - b. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles **50 feet (15 m)** high or less is **100 mph (45 m/s) OR 90 mph (40 m/s)**.
    - 1) Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
    - 2) Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
    - 3) Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
  - a. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
  - b. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
  - c. Details of installation and construction.
  - d. Luminaire materials.
  - e. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.



- 1) Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

**OR**

Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

- f. Photoelectric relays.
- g. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
- h. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
- i. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
- j. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
- k. Anchor bolts for poles.
- l. Manufactured pole foundations.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - b. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
  - c. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
  - d. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Samples: For products designated for sample submission in the Exterior Lighting Device Schedule. Each Sample shall include lamps and ballasts.
4. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles **OR** luminaire lowering devices, **as directed**, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
8. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.  
**OR**  
Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.
2. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
4. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
2. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least **12 inches (300 mm)** above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
3. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.

4. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
5. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

H. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.
  - a. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - b. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - c. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - d. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General Requirements For Luminaires

1. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
  - b. LER Tests Fluorescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
  - c. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
2. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
3. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
4. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
5. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
6. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
7. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
8. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
9. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
10. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
  - b. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
  - c. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
11. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
12. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
13. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.



- a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - b. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
    - 1) Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- 14. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - a. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - b. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
  - c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - d. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    - 1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black, **as directed**.
- 15. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - a. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
    - 1) "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - 2) Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 3) Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
    - 4) Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
    - 5) ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
    - 6) CCT and CRI for all luminaires.
- B. Luminaire-Mounted Photoelectric Relays
  - 1. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
  - 2. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at **1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx)** and off at **4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx)** with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff, **as directed**.
    - a. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
    - b. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.
- C. Fluorescent Ballasts And Lamps
  - 1. Ballasts for Low-Temperature Environments:
    - a. Temperatures **0 Deg F (Minus 17 Deg C)** and Higher: Electronic or electromagnetic type rated for **0 deg F (minus 17 deg C)** starting and operating temperature with indicated lamp types.
    - b. Temperatures **Minus 20 Deg F (Minus 29 Deg C)** and Higher: Electromagnetic type designed for use with indicated lamp types.
  - 2. Ballast Characteristics:
    - a. Power Factor: 90 percent, minimum.

- b. Sound Rating: Class A **OR** Class A except Class B for T8/HO ballasts, **as directed**.
    - c. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, percent.
    - d. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1, energy-saving, high power factor, Class P, automatic-reset thermal protection.
    - e. Case Temperature for Compact Lamp Ballasts: 65 deg C, maximum.
    - f. Transient-Voltage Protection: Comply with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Category A or better.
  3. Low-Temperature Lamp Capability: Rated for reliable starting and operation with ballast provided at temperatures **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) OR minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C)**, **as directed**, and higher.
- D. Ballasts For HID Lamps
1. Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029 and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
    - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 22 deg F (Minus 30 deg C)**.
    - c. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: **104 deg F (40 deg C)**.
    - d. Ballast Fuses: One in each ungrounded power supply conductor. Voltage and current ratings as recommended by ballast manufacturer.
  2. Auxiliary, Instant-On, Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when momentary power outages occur. System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent of light output.
  3. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type with solid-state igniter/starter and capable of open-circuit operation without reduction of average lamp life. Igniter/starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
    - a. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
      - 1) Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
      - 2) Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac rms.
    - b. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 40 deg F (Minus 40 deg C)**.
- E. HID Lamps
1. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), CCT color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
    - a. Dual-Arc Tube Lamp: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
  2. Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.43.
  3. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.43, with minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
  4. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
  5. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and CCT color temperature 4000 K.
- F. General Requirements For Poles And Support Components
1. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
    - a. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
    - b. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
  2. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

- a. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
- b. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
- 4. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of **2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm)**, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws. Provide on all, except wood poles.
- 5. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- 6. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
- 7. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

#### G. Steel Poles

- 1. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of **46,000 psig (317 MPa)**; one-piece construction up to **40 feet (12 m)** in height with access handhole in pole wall.
  - a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- 2. Steel Mast Arms: Single-arm **OR** Truss **OR** Davit, **as directed**, type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as pole.
- 3. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
  - a. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, then bolted together with stainless **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, -steel bolts.
  - b. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
  - c. Match pole material and finish.
- 4. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- 5. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads, positioned for **15-inch (381-mm)** vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole; first step at elevation **10 feet (3 m)** above finished grade.
- 6. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weathertight, **3-by-5-inch (76-by-127-mm)** handhole located at midpoint of pole with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.
- 7. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded **1/2-inch (13-mm)** threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- 8. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.
- 9. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel with finish matching that of pole.
- 10. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- 11. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- 12. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - a. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

- b. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
- c. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
  - 1) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

H. Aluminum Poles

- 1. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.
- 2. Poles: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.
  - a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- 3. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- 4. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded **1/2-inch (13-mm)** threaded lug, complying with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- 5. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
  - a. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
  - b. Finish: Same as pole **OR** luminaire, **as directed**.
- 6. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- 7. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - a. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  - b. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
  - c. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - d. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
    - 1) Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

I. Fiberglass Poles

- 1. Poles: Designed specifically for supporting luminaires, with factory-formed cable entrance and handhole. Not less than 65 percent fiberglass, with resin and pigment making up the remainder.
  - a. Resin Color: Dark bronze; provide uniform coloration throughout entire wall thickness.
  - b. Surface Finish: Pigmented polyurethane, with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Polyurethane may be omitted if the surface layer of pole is inherently UV inhibited.

J. Decorative Poles

- 1. Pole Material:
  - a. Cast ductile iron.
  - b. Cast gray iron, according to ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30.
  - c. Cast aluminum.
  - d. Cast concrete.

- e. Spun concrete.
- f. Steel tube, covered with closed-cell polyurethane foam, with a polyethylene exterior.
- 2. Mounting Provisions:
  - a. Bolted to concrete foundation.
  - b. Embedded.
- 3. Fixture Brackets:
  - a. Cast ductile iron.
  - b. Cast gray iron.
  - c. Cast aluminum.
- 4. Pole Finish: **<Insert finish>**.

#### K. Laminated Wood Poles

- 1. Species and Grades for Structural Glulam Timber: Engineer and fabricate structural laminated wood poles, complying with ANSI A190.1. Use southern pine **OR** Douglas fir **OR** Alaska cedar **OR** any species listed in AITC 117, **as directed**, to withstand indicated structural loads without exceeding allowable design working stresses according to AITC 117.
- 2. Features: Include wood bracket **OR** wood crossarm **OR** pole-top adapter, **as directed**, for mounting luminaire(s), metal pole cap, **as directed**, and concealed raceway path connected to access handhole.
- 3. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
- 4. Appearance Grade: Architectural appearance grade complying with AITC 110.
- 5. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat lumber before gluing according to AWWA C28 for waterborne preservatives. After dressing and end-cutting each member to final size and shape, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWWA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- 6. Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.
- 7. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
- 8. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.
- 9. Finish: Natural, unstained wood **OR** Semitransparent stain applied after erection **OR** Semitransparent stain applied at factory, **as directed**, color as selected.

#### L. Wood Poles

- 1. Poles: Douglas fir **OR** Southern yellow pine, **as directed**, machine trimmed by turning, **as directed**, complying with ANSI O5.1 and with AWWA C4 for wood species used; and bored, roofed, and galled before treatment.
  - a. Mounting Provisions: Embedded.
- 2. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat poles with creosote **OR** pentachlorophenol **OR** ammoniacal copper arsenate, **as directed**, according to AWWA C1 and AWWA C4.
- 3. Luminaire Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13.

#### M. Prestressed Concrete Poles

- 1. Poles: Manufactured by centrifugal spin-casting process **OR** of cast concrete, **as directed**.
  - a. Shape: Round, tapered **OR** Round, straight **OR** Square, tapered **OR** Square, straight, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting Provisions: Steel butt flange for bolted mounting to foundation or breakaway support **OR** Embedded, **as directed**.
  - c. Finishing: Capped at top and plugged at bottom. Seat each steel reinforcing strand with epoxy adhesive.
  - d. Grounding: Continuous copper ground wire cast into pole. Terminate at top of pole and attach to **24-inch (610-mm)** lightning rod, **as directed**.
- 2. Cure with wet steam and age for a minimum of 15 days before installation.
- 3. Fabricate poles with a hard, nonporous surface that is resistant to water, frost, and road and soil chemicals and that has a maximum water-absorption rate of 3 percent.



4. Cast aluminum nameplate into pole wall at approximately **5 feet (1.5 m)** above ground line, listing name of manufacturer, Project identifier, overall height, and approximate weight.
5. Pole Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.13.
6. Finish Color: Provided by color material complying with ASTM C 979, uniformly impregnated throughout the pole concrete. Color material shall provide a uniform, stable, permanent color and be as follows:
  - a. Inert, and carbon free.
  - b. Unaffected by environmental conditions and contaminants including, but not limited to, UV solar radiation, salts, and alkalis.
7. Finish Texture: Standard form **OR** Polished exposed aggregate **OR** Etched exposed aggregate, **as directed**.
  - a. Exposed aggregate shall be of **<Insert aggregate type selected from manufacturers' lists>** type.

N. Pole Accessories

1. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
  - a. Surface mounted **OR** Recessed, **as directed**, **12 inches (300 mm)** above finished grade.
  - b. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, weatherproof in use, cover, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, Type 3R **OR** Type 4X, **as directed**, enclosure.
  - c. With cord opening.
  - d. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
2. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
3. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.
4. Transformer Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and accept ballast(s) **OR** indicated accessories, **as directed**.
5. Decorative accessories, supplied by decorative pole manufacturer, include the following:
  - a. Banner Arms: **<Insert material>**.
  - b. Flag Holders: **<Insert material>**.
  - c. Ladder Rests: **<Insert material>**.

O. Lowering System For Luminaires

1. Arrange system to lower luminaire **OR** luminaire assembly, **as directed**, to a servicing position within **36 inches (900 mm)** of finished grade in winds up to **30 mph (49 km/h)** and to provide for manual plug connection to electrical power in the lowered position for testing.
2. Coordinate with luminaire and pole manufacturers for assembly details, wind-load and vibration analysis, and compatibility of materials for electrolysis-free attachment and connection for luminaire mounting assembly, lowering device, lowering cable, and portable winch.
3. Structural and Mechanical Design: Use a minimum safety factor of 5.0 for static and dynamic loads of load-bearing components, including cable.
4. Luminaire Mounting and Disconnect Arrangement: Multiple ring **OR** carriage, **as directed**, -mounted luminaires, arranged for lowering and rising as a group.
  - a. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires manually disconnects inside pole base, using weatherproof multipin connector, and shall be arranged to move within the pole during lowering and rising of luminaire assembly.  
**OR**  
Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires automatically disconnects at a weatherproof multipin connector within the pole-top lowering head at the beginning of the lowering cycle and reconnects when luminaire or luminaire assembly is raised to the operating position.
5. Lowering Device: Weatherproof, cast-aluminum housing and multiple mechanical latches. Moving parts of latching assembly shall be located in the portion of the unit that is lowered to the servicing position. Positive latching in the operating position shall be indicated to the operator at the base of the pole by a clear visual signal, or by other means acceptable to the Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.



6. Lowering Cable: Zinc-electroplated- or stainless-steel aircraft cable.
7. Portable Winch: Manual **OR** 120-V electric, **as directed**, type. One required.
  - a. Winch Power Connection: Cord and plug.
  - b. Winch Raise-Lower Control: Remote-control station with **15 feet (5 m)** of cable.
8. Winch Transformer: Portable, totally enclosed, encapsulated, single-phase, dry type. Primary rated at lighting-circuit voltage; secondary rated at 120 V. Permanent, primary and secondary, twist-locking plug connectors on pigtails shall match pole-base power outlet and winch plug.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Luminaire Installation

1. Install lamps in each luminaire.
2. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
  - a. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
3. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation, **as directed**.

#### B. Pole Installation

1. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
2. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
  - a. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: **60 inches (1520 mm)**.
  - b. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: **10 feet (3 m)**.
  - c. Trees: **15 feet (5 m)** from tree trunk.
3. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
  - a. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
  - b. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
  - c. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Use a short piece of **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
5. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
  - a. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
  - b. Backfill in **6-inch (150-mm)** layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.
6. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
  - a. Make holes **6 inches (150 mm)** in diameter larger than pole diameter.
  - b. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)** at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
  - c. Use a short piece of **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
  - d. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
7. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent

- concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level **1 inch (25 mm)** below top of concrete slab.
8. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).
- C. Bollard Luminaire Installation
1. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
  2. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- D. Installation Of Individual Ground-Mounting Luminaires
1. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- E. Corrosion Prevention
1. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
  2. Steel Conduits: Comply with Division 26 Section "Raceway And Boxes For Electrical Systems". In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-)** thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.
- F. Grounding
1. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
  2. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
    - a. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
    - b. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
    - c. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.
- G. Field Quality Control
1. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
  2. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
    - a. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
  3. Illumination Tests:
    - a. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
      - 1) IESNA LM-5, "Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting Installations."
      - 2) IESNA LM-50, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Lighting Installations."
      - 3) IESNA LM-52, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations."
      - 4) IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas."
      - 5) IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data."
  4. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.
- H. Demonstration
1. Train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices.



END OF SECTION 02 84 16 00b

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 84 33 00 - OVERHEAD ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for overhead electrical distribution. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Conductors, connectors, and splices.
  - b. Poles and crossarms.
  - c. Hardware and accessories.
  - d. Surge arresters.
  - e. Cutouts, switches, and fuses.
  - f. Pole-mounted distribution transformers.
  - g. Primary metering equipment.

#### C. Definitions

1. BIL: Basic impulse level, stated in kilovolts.
2. RUS: Department of Agriculture, Rural Utilities Service.
3. Sag: The distance measured vertically from a conductor to the straight line joining its two points of support, measured at the midpoint of the span, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Final Sag: The sag of a conductor under specified conditions of loading and temperature applied after it has been subjected, for an appreciable period, to the loading prescribed for the loading district in which it is situated, or equivalent loading, and the loading removed. Final sag includes the effect of inelastic deformation (creep).
  - b. Initial Unloaded Sag: The sag of a conductor before the application of an external load.
4. Secondary: Conductors and components for circuits operating at the utilization voltage of 600 V or less.
5. Service: Set of insulated conductors extending from a pole to the metering point or service entrance connection at the location of utilization of electricity.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Qualification Data: For qualified manufacturer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
3. Material Certificates: For the following items, from manufacturers:
  - a. Wood poles.
  - b. Concrete poles.
  - c. Wood crossarms.
4. Listing Documentation: Indicate that products comply with RUS listing requirements specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - a. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Illustrate optimum coordination of protective devices involved in the Work of this Section.
  - b. Source quality-control test reports.
5. Field quality-control reports.
6. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switches **OR** transformers, **as directed**, to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
7. Survey records for locations of pole, anchors, and other features for inclusion in Project Record Documents.



## E. Quality Assurance

1. Concrete Pole Manufacturer Qualifications: Certified by PCI as a qualified manufacturer of concrete utility poles of type and size indicated for this Project.
2. Inspection Agency Qualifications for Pole and Crossarm Inspection: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified to conduct inspections indicated.
3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
4. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA or an NRTL.
5. Treatment Technician Qualifications for Field Treatment of Wood Poles and Crossarms: Certified by authorities having jurisdiction over environmental protection at the location of Project for field application of chemicals required.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
7. Overhead-Line Components, Devices, and Accessories: Currently listed in RUS Informational Publication 202-1 without restriction for the intended application.
8. Comply with IEEE C2 **OR** CPUC General Order 95, **as directed**, except where stricter requirements are indicated or where local requirements that are stricter apply.
9. Strength of Line and Line Components Selected by Contractor: Provide grades of construction and strength required by IEEE C2 for conditions encountered at Project site for heavy **OR** medium **OR** light, **as directed**, line loading unless otherwise indicated.

## F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Wood Pole Storage and Handling: Comply with ATIS O5.1. Do not use pointed handling tools capable of producing indentations greater than **1 inch (25 mm)**.

## G. Project Conditions

1. Interruption of Existing Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - a. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - b. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

## H. Coordination

1. Coordinate with utility supplying electricity to lines specified in this Section, and make final connections **OR** arrangements for final connections by utility, **as directed**.
2. Coordinate with those responsible for voice **OR** data **OR** video, **as directed**, systems that will have cables supported by poles installed according to this Section.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Conductors, Connectors, And Splices

1. Conductor Type AAC: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, all-aluminum, Alloy 1350-H19, complying with ASTM B 230/B 230M and ASTM B 231/B 231M.  
**OR**  
 Conductor Type AAAC: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, all-aluminum-alloy, Alloy 6201-T81, complying with ASTM B 398/B 398M and ASTM B 399/B 399M.  
**OR**  
 Conductor Type ACSR: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, aluminum conductor, steel reinforced, complying with ASTM B 232/B 232M.  
**OR**  
 Conductor Type CU: Bare **OR** Bare and covered, **as directed**, hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8.
2. Conductor Covering: UV resistant, complying with ICEA-S-70-547. HDPE **OR** XLP, **as directed**, **150 mils (3.81 mm)** thick.

3. Self-Supported, Multiconductor, Insulated Medium-Voltage Wiring: Factory-assembled, messenger-supported type, listed under UL 1072 as sunlight-resistant Type MV cable for cable tray use.
  - a. Conductors: Aluminum, Alloy 1350, complying with ASTM B 230/B 230M and ASTM B 231/B 231M **OR** Hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8, **as directed**; stranded for No. 2 AWG and larger.
  - b. Conductor Insulation: XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 **OR** EPR, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658, **as directed**.
  - c. Insulation Level: 100 **OR** 133, **as directed**, percent of rated circuit line-to-line voltage.
  - d. Conductor Shield: Extruded, nonconducting, thermoset material, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658; **18-mil (0.046-mm)** minimum thickness.
  - e. Insulation Shield: Include the following two components:
    - 1) Nonmetallic conducting, material complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1072, extruded over, and free stripping from the insulation.
    - 2) Metallic Tape Shield: Bare copper, **5-mil (0.127-mm)** minimum thickness, helically applied with a 15 percent minimum overlap.
  - f. Conductor Jacket: Extruded, chlorosulfonated-polyethylene-based material, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
  - g. Messenger: Copper **OR** Composite copper and copper, **as directed**, -clad steel.
  - h. Conductor Support Strap: Copper strap, wound around conductors and messenger the full length of the cable.
4. Secondary-Voltage Line Conductors: Aluminum conductor, steel **reinforced**, complying with ASTM B 232/B 232M **OR** Covered aluminum conductor, steel reinforced, complying with ICEA S-70-547, with HDPE or XLP covering, **as directed**, **60 mils (1.52 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
 Secondary-Voltage Line Conductors: Bare hard-drawn copper, complying with ASTM B 1 and ASTM B 8 **OR** Covered hard-drawn copper, complying with ICEA S-70-547, with HDPE or XLP covering, **as directed**, **60 mils (1.52 mm)** thick. Neutral-supported, secondary service-drop cable, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 Racked Secondary Conductors, 600 V and Less: Copper, insulated with XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658, **as directed**.
5. Neutral-Supported, Secondary Service-Drop Cable, 600 V and Less: Insulated conductors with bare neutral, complying with ICEA S-76-474, and using the following combination of materials:
  - a. Conductors and Neutral: Copper with copper-clad-steel neutral **OR** Aluminum with bare Alloy 1350 aluminum neutral **OR** Aluminum with ACSR neutral, **as directed**.
  - b. Insulation: XLP, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 **OR** High-modular-weight, low-density polyethylene **OR** Weather-resistant polyolefin, complying with ICEA S-70-547, **as directed**.
6. Connectors, Splices, and Conductor Securing and Protecting Components: Items include wire clamps, ties, conductor armor, fittings, connectors, and terminals. Listed for the specific applications and conductor types and combinations of materials used. Descriptions as follows for various applications:
  - a. Copper to Copper: Copper alloy, complying with UL 486A-486B.
  - b. Aluminum Composition to Aluminum Composition: Aluminum alloy, complying with UL 486A-486B.
  - c. Copper to Aluminum Composition: Type suitable for this purpose, complying with UL 486A-486B.
  - d. Connectors and Splices for Secondary Conductors: Listed and labeled for the conditions and materials involved in each application.
  - e. Taps for Medium-Voltage Line Conductors: Hot-line clamps, screw type, with concealed threads and bare, hard-drawn copper stirrups. Listed for the combination of materials being connected.
  - f. Splices under Tension: Compression type with strength exceeding the conductors spliced.



- g. Splices and Terminations for Covered Conductors: As recommended by conductor manufacturer for conductor and covering combination and for specific materials and physical arrangement of each splice.
  - h. Splices and Terminations for Insulated Medium-Voltage Conductors: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Cables".
- B. Wood Poles
- 1. Comply with ATIS O5.1 and RUS Bulletin 1728F-700, for wood poles pressure treated with creosote **OR** pentachlorophenol, **as directed**, **OR** ammoniacal copper arsenate, **OR** ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate **OR** chromated copper arsenate, **as directed**.
  - 2. Wood Species: Douglas fir **OR** Lodgepole pine **OR** Western larch **OR** Southern yellow pine, **as directed**.
  - 3. Pole Marking:
    - a. Manufacturer's Mark: Comply with ATIS O5.1; locate 10 feet (3 m) from the pole butt for poles 50 feet (15 m) long or less.
    - b. Pole Number: Machine-embossed aluminum, alphanumeric characters not less than 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) high, with aluminum nails.
  - 4. Factory Operations: Machine trim poles by turning smooth, full length. Roof, gain, and bore poles before pressure treatment.
- C. Concrete Poles
- 1. Description: Spun-cast prestressed concrete, complying with requirements of ASTM C 1089.
    - a. Comply with requirements of RUS Bulletin 1724E-216.
  - 2. Design: Base design on calculation of strength required by IEEE C2 or indicated on Drawings, whichever is greater. Design shall be suitable for installation at a location where annual temperature range is between minus 4 deg F and plus 100 deg F (minus 20 deg C and plus 38 deg C). Include pole design for embedded attachments matching fittings, brackets, and other items installed in the field.
  - 3. Shaft: Hollow, for poles at overhead-to-underground connections. Provide 3-1/2-inch- (89-mm-) minimum cable raceway capacity, with conduit elbow **OR** cable entry port, **as directed**, at base.
  - 4. Water Absorption: Not more than 3 percent.
  - 5. Surface: Smooth, hard, nonporous, and resistant to soil acids **OR** road salts **OR** frost and freezing damage, **as directed**.
  - 6. Pole Marking:
    - a. Manufacturer's Mark: Comply with ATIS O5.1; locate 10 feet (3 m) from the pole butt for poles 50 feet (15 m) long or less.
    - b. Pole Number: Machine-embossed aluminum, alphanumeric characters not less than 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) high.
- D. Crossarms
- 1. Description: Solid-wood distribution type, complying with RUS Bulletin 1728H-701 for specified construction grade **OR** Galvanized, steel angles, **as directed**, and complying with IEEE C2 for required climbing space and wire clearances.
  - 2. Braces: Galvanized, flat, ferrous-metal units; 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 1-1/4 inches (30 mm) wide, minimum, with length to suit crossarm dimensions.
- E. Guys And Anchors
- 1. Guy Strand Assemblies: Cable and attachment assemblies shall have uniform minimum breaking strength of the cable.
  - 2. Cable: Seven strands. Zinc-coated steel, complying with ASTM A 475 **OR** Aluminum-clad steel, complying with ASTM B 416 **OR** Copper-clad steel, complying with ASTM B 228, **as directed**. Breaking strength shall be not less than 10,000 lb (45 kN).
  - 3. Cable Termination:
    - 1) Thimble eye.

**OR**

- Hooks and guy strain plates, complying with IEEE C135.1.
- 2) Preformed galvanized-steel guy grips, matching material, galvanizing, and strength of the guy strand assembly.
  4. Anchor and Anchor-Rod Assemblies: Hot-dip galvanized steel.
    - a. Power-installed screw-type anchors.
      - 1) 15-inch (380-mm) screw; with rod 96 inches (2400 mm) long by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter. Rated at 10,000 lb (45 kN) when installed.
      - 2) Guy anchors shall have strength and holding area as required for anchor load and soil conditions at location of that anchor.
  5. Strain Insulators: Epoxy-bonded fiberglass of length to meet clearance requirements specified in "Guy Installation" Article.
  6. Guy Markers: Round, of vinyl or PVC material, white OR yellow, as directed, color, 96 inches (2440 mm) long. Shatter resistant at temperatures below 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
- F. Hardware And Accessories
1. Description: Ferrous-metal items include, but are not limited to, bolts, nuts, washers, crossarm gains and braces, insulator pins, anchor rods, anchors, eyebolts, staples, and transformer brackets.
    - a. Comply with IEEE C135.1, IEEE C135.2, ANSI C135.4, ANSI C135.22, and RUS Informational Publication 202-1 listings with the exception that base material shall be malleable iron or ductile iron, and finish shall be hot-dip galvanized, as directed.
  2. Insulator Brackets: Hot-dip galvanized steel, style as indicated, designed to hold vertical-post-type or pin-type insulators, with one OR two, as directed, -bolt attachment to pole.
  3. Secondary Insulator Racks: Hot-dip galvanized steel, style as indicated, with smooth, rounded 12-gage struts designed to support two OR three OR four, as directed, spool insulators for attachment of secondary drop conductors. Spool spacing of 4 inches (100 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm) OR 12 inches (300 mm), as directed.
  4. Pole Riser Shields: Galvanized steel with boot OR backplate OR vent, as directed.
  5. Padlocks: ASTM F 883.
    - a. Class: PO1 OR PO2, as directed.
    - b. Grade: 1 OR 2 OR 3 OR 4 OR 5 OR 6, as directed.
    - c. Option: A OR B OR C OR D OR E OR F OR G, as directed.
  6. Insulators: Units rated 6 kV and above shall be free from radio interference.
    - a. Porcelain insulators shall be wet-process type, complying with the following:
      - 1) Pin: ANSI C29.5.
      - 2) Line Post: ANSI C29.7. Include mounting stud of length suitable for each mounting arrangement used.
      - 3) Suspension: ANSI C29.2.
      - 4) Guy Strain: ANSI C29.4.
      - 5) Secondary Spool: ANSI C29.3, Class 53-2.
    - b. Polymer-composite, fiberglass-reinforced insulators shall comply with the following:
      - 1) Line Post: CEA LWIWG-02.
      - 2) Dead End/Suspension: CEA LWIWG-01.
      - 3) Guy Strain: Fiberglass reinforced, epoxy finished. Designed specifically for use in guy assemblies.
  7. Grounding Materials: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems", using materials listed by RUS for the intended purpose without restriction.
    - a. Conductors: No. 4 AWG, minimum; bare, solid, annealed copper, complying with ASTM B 8 unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Ground Conductor Protectors: PVC or half-round wood molding, fir, pressure treated according to AWPAC 25 OR cypress OR cedar, as directed.
- G. Surge Arresters
1. Distribution-Class Surge Arresters: Porcelain OR Polymer, as directed, -enclosed, gapless, metal-oxide type with automatic-indicating type, ground-lead disconnection feature, as directed, complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.



2. Intermediate-Class Surge Arresters: Porcelain **OR** Polymer, **as directed**, -enclosed, gapless, metal-oxide type, complying with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.
  - a. Voltage Rating: 3 **OR** 6 **OR** 9 **OR** 10 **OR** 12 **OR** 15 **OR** 27 **OR** 30 **OR** 36, **as directed**, kV, at the altitude of Project, unless otherwise indicated.

#### H. Cutouts, Switches, And Fuses

1. Description: Medium-voltage disconnect, protective, and bypass, **as directed**, units shall be rated for the line-to-line voltage of the systems in which installed, unless higher ratings are indicated. BIL ratings are 45 **OR** 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, kV.
  - a. Momentary Current Rating of Switching Devices: 20 **OR** 40, **as directed**, kA, asymmetrical at nominal system operating voltage.
  - b. Fuse Characteristics: Time-current characteristics for each set of fuses selected according to written recommendations of manufacturer of component protected by the fuses and coordinated with upstream and downstream protective devices. Prepare time-current coordination curves according to IEEE 242 that illustrate optimum coordination of devices in this Project.
  - c. Interrupting Rating of Fuses: **<Insert value>** symmetrical A at nominal system operating voltage.
2. Fuse Cutouts: Open **OR** enclosed, **as directed**, type, rated 100 **OR** 200, **as directed**, A, continuous, complying with ANSI C37.42.
  - a. Fuses: Enclosed link, Type K **OR** Type T, **as directed**, complying with ANSI C37.42.
  - b. Fuse Current Rating: 150 percent of the transformer full-load current unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Switching Application: Include switch link instead of fuse.
  - d. Switch Current Interrupting Rating: Transformer magnetizing current.
3. Fused Switches: Single-pole, manual units.
  - a. Switch Rating: 400 **OR** 600, **as directed**, -A rms continuous and load-current interrupting.
  - b. Fuses: Dropout-type power fuses.
4. Nonfused Switches: Single-pole, manual units, rated 100 **OR** 200 **OR** 400 **OR** 600, **as directed**, -A rms continuous.
5. Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches: Fused **OR** Nonfused, **as directed**, three-pole, single-throw units, manually operated by handle through insulated mechanical linkage.
  - a. High-pressure contact type, complying with ANSI C37.32.
  - b. Factory assembled to suit specific configuration and mounting conditions for this Project.
  - c. Operating Handle: Padlock equipped.
  - d. Current Interrupting Rating: Equal to continuous current rating of switch.
  - e. Fuses: Nondropout power type.
6. Group-Operated, Air-Break (Nonloadbreak) Switches: Three-pole, single-throw units, manually operated by handle through insulated mechanical linkage.
  - a. Comply with ANSI C37.32.
  - b. Factory assembled to suit specific configuration and mounting conditions for this Project.
  - c. Operating Handle: Padlock equipped.
  - d. Suitable for field conversion to load-interrupter switch by adding interrupter modules.

#### I. Distribution Transformers

1. Description: Single-phase, two-winding, single **OR** two, **as directed**, -bushing, liquid-filled, self-cooled, pole-mounting distribution type, suitable for external fuse and surge suppressor protection; complying with IEEE C 57.12.00, and tested according to IEEE C 57.12.90 and with the following additional requirements, **as directed**:
  - a. Cooling Class: OA.
  - b. Temperature Rise: 65 deg C.
  - c. Insulating Liquid: Mineral oil, ASTM D 3487, Type II.

**OR**

Insulating Liquid: High molecular weight, mineral oil based, and UL listed as less-flammable type.



**OR**

Insulating Liquid: Biodegradable insulating and cooling liquid, UL listed as less flammable type.

- d. Identification: Label the transformer as "non-PCB" and place manufacturer's name and type of fluid on the nameplate.
2. BIL: 95 **OR** 75 **OR** 60, **as directed**, kV.
3. Taps: Two, 2.5 percent above and below **OR** Four, 2.5 percent below, **as directed**, high-voltage and full-load rated. Tap changer shall have an external operating handle, **as directed**.
4. Mounting Brackets: Single **OR** Double, **as directed**, integral; suitable for pole mounting, individually or in cluster, or on crossarm.
5. Minimum Efficiency: Class 1, as defined by NEMA TP 1, based on test results that comply with requirements of NEMA TP 2.
6. Bushings: Creepage distance shall exceed nominal value standard for unit rating by at least 75 percent.
7. Hardware: Stainless steel.
8. Tank and Cover: Stainless steel, complying with ASTM A 167, Type 304 or 304L, with paint coating exterior finish system complying with IEEE C57.12.28, including manufacturer's standard color finish coat.
9. Show transformer kiloampere capacity using 2-1/2-inch (65-mm) numerals placed near the low-voltage bushings.

J. Primary Metering Equipment

1. Metering Transformers: Outdoor current and potential transformers, designed for crossarm mounting, complying with IEEE C57.13, and having the following features:
  - a. BIL: 45 **OR** 60 **OR** 75 **OR** 95 **OR** 150 **OR** 200, **as directed**, kV.
  - b. Secondary connection box arranged for conduit connection.
  - c. Potential-Transformer Voltage Rating: 2.4 **OR** 4.16 **OR** 7.2 **OR** 12.0 **OR** 12.47, **as directed**, kV to 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
  - d. Potential-Transformer Accuracy Class: Minimum 0.3 at 75-VA burden.
  - e. Voltage Rating: 2.4 **OR** 4.16 **OR** 7.2 **OR** 12.0 **OR** 12.47, **as directed**, kV.
  - f. Current Rating: <Insert value> to 5 A.
  - g. Accuracy Class: Minimum 0.2 at 50-VA burden.
2. Watt-Hour Meter: Outdoor solid-state unit, with demand register, **OR** arranged for pulse initiation, **as directed**, complying with ANSI C12.10, and including the following ratings and features:
  - a. Form: 8S **OR** 9S, **as directed**.
  - b. Element: 2 **OR** 2-1/2 **OR** 3, **as directed**.
  - c. Voltage: 120 V.
  - d. Current: 2-1/2 A.
  - e. Frequency: 60 Hz.
  - f. Kilowatt-Hour Register: Five-digit type.
  - g. Demand-Register Multiplier: A quantity in even hundreds, indicated on meter face.
  - h. Demand-Register Interval: 15 **OR** 30, **as directed**, minutes.
  - i. Mounting: On matching socket, complying with ANSI C12.7, and complete with automatic current short-circuiting device.
  - j. Meter Test Block: Matched to meter, and furnished and equipped with open knife switches designed to isolate each metering component for test.
  - k. Meter Cabinet: Galvanized steel; weatherproof enclosure with pole-mounting bracket and the following features:
    - 1) Hinged Door: Arranged for padlocking in closed position.
    - 2) Size: Adequate to house meter and other equipment indicated, but not less than 20 by 30 by 11 inches (510 by 760 by 280 mm) deep.

K. Source Quality Control

1. Factory Tests: Conduct routine tests of transformers **OR** medium-voltage switches **OR** metering equipment, **as directed**, according to referenced standards.



2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect poles and crossarms before and after preservative treatment for compliance of wood poles and crossarms with requirements indicated. RUS quality mark "WQC" on each item is acceptable in place of inspection as evidence of compliance.
3. Poles and crossarms will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Right-Of-Way Clearance And Tree Trimming

1. Clear right of way according to Division 01 Section(s) "Temporary Tree And Plant Protection" AND Division 31 Section(s) "Site Clearing".
2. Clear right of way to maintain minimum clearances required by IEEE C2, unless Drawings indicate greater clearances or greater clearances are required by state or local codes or regulations. If no minimum requirements are mandated, maintain a minimum of **15 feet (4.5 m)** on both sides horizontally and below medium-voltage conductors and **60 inches (1500 mm)** on both sides horizontally and below secondary-voltage conductors. Remove overhanging branches.

#### B. General Installation Requirements

1. Install underground power and metering circuits and those circuits indicated to be in raceways according to Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts And Raceways For Electrical Systems" and Division 26 Section "Medium-voltage Cables", and make splices and terminations for those circuits according to the applicable Sections.
2. Engage the services of a licensed surveyor to verify dimensions by field measurement, to identify locations of poles, anchors, and other features, and to verify all clearances. The survey document shall also identify locations of connections to new and existing supply lines and to primary and secondary services. Notify the Owner of discrepancies and field conditions that are not indicated and that will affect installation.
3. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems".
4. Apply warning signs and equipment labels according to Division 26 Section "Identification For Electrical Systems".

#### C. Conductor Installation, General

1. Handle and string conductors to prevent cuts, gouges, scratches, kinks, flattening, or deformation. Remove damaged sections and splice conductors.
  - a. String new conductors to "initial" sag values recommended by manufacturer for type and size of conductor except as otherwise indicated.
  - b. Conductors Reinstalled or Resagged: String to "final" sag values recommended by manufacturer for type and size of conductor except as otherwise indicated.
2. Connections, Splices, and Terminations: Use kits listed for the specific type of connection and combination of materials in the connection or recommended for the specific use by manufacturer of material on which applied.
  - a. Splice Location: Do not install within **10 feet (3 m)** of a support.
  - b. Line Conductors and Service Drops: Install so strength exceeds ultimate rated strength of conductor.
  - c. Splices and Terminations of Covered Conductors: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - d. Splices and Terminations of Insulated Conductors of Self-Supported, Medium-Voltage Cable: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

#### D. Medium-Voltage Line Conductor Installation

1. Application: Install bare conductors unless otherwise indicated.

2. Armor Rod: Install to protect conductors if line conductors are supported by insulators.
  3. Flat Aluminum Armor Wire: Install to protect conductors if they are supported by, or attached to, galvanized or coated iron or steel clamps or fittings.
  4. Support line conductors and taps as follows:
    - a. Use wire ties for conductor attachment to pin and vertical post insulators unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install wire ties tight against conductor and insulator, and turn ends back and flat against conductor, to eliminate exposed wire ends.
    - c. Use wire clamps on horizontal post, dead end, and suspension insulators unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Pole And Crossarm Installation
1. Pole Orientation: Align curve of curved wood poles with straight-line runs of three or more poles. Align gained surfaces perpendicular to runs.
  2. Elevation of Line above Grade: Install poles with top at same elevation, unless grade changes dictate elevation change in poles, and according to the following:
    - a. On level ground, set poles so tops of consecutive poles vary not more than **60 inches (1500 mm)** in elevation.
    - b. Shorten wood poles by cutting off the top and make cuts to shed water. Apply preservative to cuts.
  3. Set poles according to the following:
    - a. Make pole holes vertical, uniform in diameter, and large enough to permit effective use of tamping bars all around. Bore or excavate holes with an average diameter at grade less than twice the diameter of the pole at the same grade.
    - b. Use minimum depths indicated, except at locations where hole is partly or entirely in rock and if hole is not vertical or has a diameter at grade more than two times the pole diameter at the same level; in these conditions, increase the depth of the hole by the following increments before setting the pole:
      - 1) Poles up to **35 Feet (10.6 m)** Long: **24 inches (600 mm)**.
      - 2) Poles **36 to 60 Feet (11 to 18.3 m)** Long: **30 inches (760 mm)**.
      - 3) Poles **61 to 75 Feet (18.6 to 22.9 m)** Long: **36 inches (900 mm)**.
    - c. For poles on slopes, indicated hole depth is from finished grade at lowest side of hole.
    - d. Set poles in alignment and plumb except at dead ends, angles, and points of extra strain; rake poles against conductor strain **1 inch (25 mm)** minimum, **2 inches (51 mm)** maximum, (after conductors are installed at required tension) for each **10 feet (3 m)** of pole length. Rake poles so they will not lean or bend in direction of strain when loaded.
    - e. Backfill holes in **6-inch (150-mm)** maximum lifts, and thoroughly tamp each layer before starting the next.
    - f. Place surplus earth around pole in a conical shape, and tamp thoroughly to provide drainage away from pole.
    - g. Set poles so alternate crossarm gains face in alternate directions, except at terminals and dead ends; place gains on last two poles on side facing terminal or dead end.
    - h. Poles Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of **6-inch- (150-mm-)** wide, unpaved gap between the pole and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level **1 inch (25 mm)** below top of concrete slab.
  4. Field treat factory-treated poles and crossarms as follows:
    - a. Poles Treated More Than One Year before Installation: Treat portion from **24 inches (600 mm)** above ground line to butt.
    - b. Field-Bored Holes and Field-Cut Gains and Pole Tops: Treat cut portions.
    - c. Unused Holes: Treat and plug with treated-wood-dowel drive pins.
    - d. Engage the services of a technician certified according to "Quality Assurance" Article to apply treatment. Comply with requirements in AWPAs standards that govern original factory treatment for field-applied treatment and application of chemicals.
  5. Crossarm Installation: Set line crossarms at right angle to line for straight runs and for angles 45 degrees and more. Bisect angles less than 45 degrees.
    - a. Buck Arms: Install at corners and junction poles unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Double Crossarms: Install at dead ends, corners, angles, and line crossings.
  - c. Equipment Arms: Locate below lines and set parallel or at right angles to them, whichever provides best climbing space.
  - d. Gains: Install factory-cut or metal-pole gains only. Do not cut gains in field without specific written approval.
6. Locate pole numbers to provide maximum visibility from the road or patrol route.

F. Guy Installation

- 1. Install guys to resist unbalanced loads, including those developed at angles, corners, and dead ends. Install two or more guys if a single guy will not provide adequate strength. Install separate guys if unbalanced loads are separated by **36 inches (900 mm)** or more. Comply with IEEE C2.
  - a. Unless a thimble eye is used, at the pole end, install a minimum of two guy hooks and two guy strain plates.
  - b. At the anchor end, attach guy strand assembly with preformed grips.
- 2. Protect guy strands from damage. Replace damaged guy strands. Install guy insulators where required to comply with IEEE C2 clearance requirements.
- 3. Install guys with a lead-to-height ratio of 1 to 1 unless otherwise indicated. The minimum lead-to-height ratio shall be 1/2 to 1. When less than 1 to 1, increase guy strength by the ratio of the sine of the lead angle indicated to the sine of the lead angle provided.
- 4. Install screw-type guy anchors aligned in soil with guy. Set with anchor rod pointing at guy attachment on pole and rod projecting **6 to 9 inches (150 to 230 mm)** from ground.
- 5. Install strain insulators to provide a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** of clearance between the nearest energized surface and the strain insulator fitting farthest from the pole. When loaded to the tension indicated, fiberglass strain insulators shall be loaded to not more than two-thirds of manufacturer's published rating.
- 6. Guy Markers: Install at anchor end of guys to visually mark the guy wire at all accessible locations. Clamp to guy strand or anchor at top and bottom of marker.

G. Hardware And Accessories Installation

- 1. Install washers against wood and under nuts, including eyenuts and locknuts.
- 2. Install nuts and locknuts wrench-tight on threaded connections.

H. Insulator Installation

- 1. Medium-Voltage Line Application: Install pin **OR** post, **as directed**, type, except install suspension type at corners, angles, dead ends, and other locations where horizontal forces exceed rated values for pin or line-post-type units.
  - a. Install suspension insulators and hardware that have mechanical strength exceeding rated breaking strength of attached conductors.
  - b. Install horizontal line-post insulators for armless construction.
- 2. Post-Insulator Conductor Support: Where installed horizontally and for line angles more than 15 degrees, install clamp-top conductor clamps.
- 3. Install spool-type insulators for secondary lines mounted on clevis attachments or secondary racks.
- 4. Guy Strain Type: Install porcelain **OR** fiberglass-reinforced, **as directed**, units.

I. Surge Arresters

- 1. Install surge arresters to protect distribution **OR** metering equipment **OR** reclosers, **as directed**, group-operated, load-interrupter switches, **as directed**, aerial-to-underground transitions, **as directed**, and other items indicated.
  - a. Units Installed **6000 Feet (1800 m)** or More above Sea Level: Use arresters specifically rated for this service.

J. Cutout, Switch, And Fuse Installation

- 1. Hook-Stick-Operated Switches: Install to maximize safe operating access.

2. Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches and Air-Break Switches: Install operating handle **42 inches (1067 mm)** above finished grade.
  - a. Locking Provisions: Install padlock at hasp.
- K. Metering Component Installation
  1. Current and Voltage Transformers: Install secondary conductors between transformers and cabinet in sleeves made of galvanized rigid steel **OR** intermediate metal **OR** PVC, **as directed**, conduit. Install to prevent collection of moisture in raceway and cabinet system.
  2. Meter Cabinet: Mount on pole, **72 inches (1825 mm)** above finished grade to center of cabinet.
    - a. Make conduit connections with raintight hubs.
    - b. Install metering transformer secondary leads without splices. Train leads at sides and bottom of enclosure, and secure with wire ties.
    - c. Install meter and meter test block within cabinet.
    - d. Install identical phase sequence, and color-code for both potential and current leads.
    - e. Identify leads using designations consistent with marking on transformer terminals.
- L. Field Quality Control
  1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Perform tests and inspections.
  3. Tests and Inspections:
    - a. Furnish instruments and equipment required for tests that comply with NETA Acceptance Testing Specification.
    - b. Guy Anchors: Test one of each type and capacity installed, plus additional units specifically indicated for testing, **as directed**. Apply rated pull-out force in the same pull direction applied by the guy at the test location.
      - 1) Acceptable Test Results: Denoted by movement of less than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** by the holding component of the anchor in the earth or other medium in which it is installed.
      - 2) Replace or reinstall, at the Owner 's option, all anchors of same type and capacity as anchor type that fails this test.
    - c. Ground Resistance: Comply with Division 26 Section "Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems". Measure resistance of each separate grounding electrode, including pole grounds. Also measure resistance of separate grounding electrode systems before bonding together.
      - 1) Perform tests and obtain acceptable results before energizing any portion of overhead electrical distribution system.
      - 2) Results and Follow-up: If ground resistance for a single ground electrode or pole ground, tested individually, exceeds 25 ohms, add a ground electrode not less than **10 feet (3 m)** away and interconnect with No. 2 AWG, minimum, bare conductor buried at least **12 inches (300 mm)** below furnished grade.
    - d. Aerial Conductor Sag and Tension: Observe procedures used by Contractor to verify that initial stringing sags and tensions comply with IEEE C2 and conductor manufacturer's product data and written recommendations.
    - e. Self-Supported, Medium-Voltage Cable: After installation, while cable is isolated, and after terminations are installed and before connecting or energizing, apply dc voltage between each phase conductor and grounding connections of sheath or metallic shield. Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for method, voltage, duration, pass-fail performance, and other test criteria. Perform other field inspections and tests recommended by manufacturer.
    - f. Neutral-Supported, Secondary Service-Drop Cable: Test for insulation resistance while cable is isolated, before connecting or energizing. Minimum acceptable resistance is 100 megohms.
    - g. Existing Surge Arresters: Disconnect and measure resistance between line and ground terminals with a megger test rated 600 V or more. Acceptable resistance values are 300 megohms and more.



- h. New Surge Arresters, Cutouts, and Switches: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring. Verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify that installation complies with requirements and that clearances of units and connecting wiring comply with IEEE C2 requirements.
    - 1) Verify proper grounding of metallic equipment parts.
    - 2) Fuses and Disconnect Links: Verify that ratings and characteristics match submittals and comply with system requirements.
    - 3) Switches:
      - a) Manually operate each cutout and switch at least three times, to verify proper operation.
      - b) Verify correct contact alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and arc interrupter operation.
    - 4) Group-Operated, Load-Interrupter Switches and Air-Break Switches:
      - a) Perform mechanical operator tests according to manufacturer's written instructions.
      - b) Test resistance to ground of parts to be energized. Acceptable value is 200,000 megohms.
      - c) Perform contact-resistance test across all switch blade contacts. Refer to manufacturer's data for acceptable contact resistance.
    - 5) Verify that clearances of energized parts and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2 requirements.
  - i. Distribution Transformers: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
    - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulators, leaks, tightness of connections, and overall mechanical and electrical integrity.
    - 2) Perform preenergizing inspections and tests recommended by manufacturer.
    - 3) Verify proper equipment grounding.
    - 4) Verify that clearances of terminals and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2.
  - j. Metering Transformers: Inspect after installation and connection to wires, and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
    - 1) Verify proper connections, tightness of bolted connections, and integrity of mounting provisions.
    - 2) Verify that required grounding and shorting connections provide good contact.
    - 3) Verify that clearances of terminals and connecting wires comply with IEEE C2.
    - 4) Perform electrical tests according to manufacturer's written instructions, including insulation-resistance tests, polarity tests, and turns-ratio and ratio-verification tests.
  - k. Meters: Inspect after installation and connection to wiring and verify that ratings and characteristics match approved submittals and comply with system requirements. Verify the integrity and good condition of unit.
    - 1) Verify tightness of electrical connections.
    - 2) Verify accuracy at 25, 50, 75, and 100 percent of full-rated load and verify all instrument multipliers according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- M. Adjusting
- 1. Distribution Transformers: Set voltage taps as directed by the Owner.
- N. Cleaning
- 1. After completing equipment installation, inspect equipment. Remove spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish. For distribution transformer, use tank touchup paint provided by manufacturer.
    - a. Clean enclosures internally, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- O. Demonstration
  - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead electrical distribution.

END OF SECTION 02 84 33 00

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 86 00 00	02 41 13 13	Selective Demolition
02 86 00 00	02 61 00 00	Excavation And Handling Of Contaminated Material
02 86 00 00	02 61 13 00	Underground Storage Tank Removal
02 86 00 00	02 61 13 00a	Precision Testing Of Underground Fuel Oil Tanks
02 86 00 00	02 61 13 00b	Hydrostatic Pressure Testing Of Air Receiving Tanks
02 86 00 00	02 61 26 00	Disposal Of Hazardous Materials

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 02 87 13 33 - MOLD REMEDIATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the removal and disposal of mold. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. List of all personnel to be involved in the work with their training and certifications.
2. List of all products and procedures proposed for use in performance of the work.
3. Test reports.
4. Certificates.

#### C. References

1. U.S. EPA "Mold Remediation in Schools and Commercial Buildings"
2. U.S. EPA "A Brief Guide to Mold, Moisture, and Your Home"

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Conform to all Federal, State, and Local regulations which govern the handling and disposal of mold materials.

### 1.2 PRODUCT - (Not Used)

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- #### A. Environmental Assessment:
- The presence of mold, water damage, or musty odors shall be addressed immediately. In all instances, any source(s) of water must be stopped and the extent of water damaged determined. Water damaged materials shall be dried and repaired. Mold damaged materials shall be remediated in accordance with this document.

1. Visual Inspection: A visual inspection is the most important initial step in identifying a possible contamination problem. The extent of any water damage and mold growth shall be visually assessed. This assessment is important in determining remedial strategies. Ventilation systems shall also be visually checked, particularly for damp filters but also for damp conditions elsewhere in the system and overall cleanliness. Ceiling tiles, gypsum wallboard (sheetrock), cardboard, paper, and other cellulosic surfaces shall be given careful attention during a visual inspection. The use of equipment such as a boroscope, to view spaces in ductwork or behind walls, or a moisture meter, to detect moisture in building materials, may be helpful in identifying hidden sources of fungal growth and the extent of water damage.

2. Bulk/Surface Sampling

- a. Bulk or surface sampling is not required to undertake a remediation. Remediation of visually identified fungal contamination shall proceed without further evaluation.
- b. Bulk or surface samples may need to be collected to identify specific fungal contaminants as part of a medical evaluation if occupants are experiencing symptoms which may be related to fungal exposure or to identify the presence or absence of mold if a visual inspection is equivocal (e.g., discoloration, and staining).
- c. An individual trained in appropriate sampling methodology shall perform bulk or surface sampling. Bulk samples shall be collected from visibly moldy surfaces by scraping or cutting materials with a clean tool into a clean plastic bag. Surface samples shall be collected by wiping a measured area with a sterile swab or by stripping the suspect surface

with clear tape. Surface sampling is less destructive than bulk sampling. Other sampling methods may also be available. A laboratory specializing in mycology shall be consulted for specific sampling and delivery instructions.

3. Air Monitoring

- a. Air sampling for fungi shall not be part of a routine assessment. This is because decisions about appropriate remediation strategies can usually be made on the basis of a visual inspection. In addition, air-sampling methods for some fungi are prone to false negative results and therefore cannot be used to definitively rule out contamination.
- b. Air monitoring may be necessary if an individual(s) has been diagnosed with a disease that is or may be associated with a fungal exposure (e.g., pulmonary hemorrhage/hemosiderosis, and aspergillosis).
- c. Air monitoring may be necessary if there is evidence from a visual inspection or bulk sampling that ventilation systems may be contaminated. The purpose of such air monitoring is to assess the extent of contamination throughout a building. It is preferable to conduct sampling while ventilation systems are operating.
- d. Air monitoring may be necessary if the presence of mold is suspected (e.g., musty odors) but cannot be identified by a visual inspection or bulk sampling (e.g., mold growth behind walls). The purpose of such air monitoring is to determine the location and/or extent of contamination.
- e. If air monitoring is performed, for comparative purposes, outdoor air samples shall be collected concurrently at an air intake, if possible, and at a location representative of outdoor air. For additional information on air sampling, refer to the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' document, "Bioaerosols: Assessment and Control."
- f. Personnel conducting the sampling shall be trained in proper air sampling methods for microbial contaminants. A laboratory specializing in mycology shall be consulted for specific sampling and shipping instructions.

4. Analysis of Environmental Samples

- a. Microscopic identification of the spores/colonies requires considerable expertise. These services are not routinely available from commercial laboratories. Documented quality control in the laboratories used for analysis of the bulk/surface and air samples is necessary. The American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA) offers accreditation to microbial laboratories (Environmental Microbiology Laboratory Accreditation Program (EMLAP)). Accredited laboratories must participate in quarterly proficiency testing (Environmental Microbiology Proficiency Analytical Testing Program (EMPAT)).

5. Evaluation of bulk/surface and air sampling data shall be performed by an experienced health professional. The presence of few or trace amounts of fungal spores in bulk/surface sampling shall be considered background. Amounts greater than this or the presence of fungal fragments (e.g., hyphae, and conidiophores) may suggest fungal colonization, growth, and/or accumulation at or near the sampled location. Air samples shall be evaluated by means of comparison (i.e., indoors to outdoors) and by fungal type (e.g., genera, and species). In general, the levels and types of fungi found should be similar indoors (in non-problem buildings) as compared to the outdoor air. Differences in the levels or types of fungi found in air samples may indicate that moisture sources and resultant fungal growth may be problematic.

B. Remediation

1. General

- a. **In all situations, the underlying cause of water accumulation must be rectified or fungal growth will recur.** Any initial water infiltration shall be stopped and cleaned immediately. An immediate response (within 24 to 48 hours) and thorough clean up, drying, and/or removal of water damaged materials will prevent or limit mold growth. If the source of water is elevated humidity, relative humidity shall be maintained at levels below 60% to inhibit mold growth. Emphasis shall be on ensuring proper repairs of the building infrastructure, so that water damage and moisture buildup does not recur.
- b. Five different levels of abatement are described below. The size of the area impacted by fungal contamination primarily determines the type of remediation. The sizing levels below

are based on professional judgment and practicality; currently there is not adequate data to relate the extent of contamination to frequency or severity of health effects. **The goal of remediation is to remove or clean contaminated materials in a way that prevents the emission of fungi and dust contaminated with fungi from leaving a work area and entering an occupied or non-abatement area, while protecting the health of workers performing the abatement.** The listed remediation methods were designed to achieve this goal, however, due to the general nature of these methods it is the responsibility of the people conducting remediation to ensure the methods enacted are adequate. The listed remediation methods are not meant to exclude other similarly effective methods. Any changes to the remediation methods listed in these guidelines, however, shall be carefully considered prior to implementation.

- c. Non-porous (e.g., metals, glass, and hard plastics) and semi-porous (e.g., wood, and concrete) materials that are structurally sound and are visibly moldy can be cleaned and reused. Cleaning shall be done using a detergent solution. Porous materials such as ceiling tiles and insulation, and wallboards with more than a small area of contamination shall be removed and discarded. Porous materials (e.g., wallboard, and fabrics) that can be cleaned, can be reused, but should be discarded if possible. A professional restoration consultant shall be contacted when restoring porous materials with more than a small area of fungal contamination. All materials to be reused shall be dry and visibly free from mold. Routine inspections shall be conducted to confirm the effectiveness of remediation work.
  - d. The use of gaseous, vapor-phase, or aerosolized biocides for remedial purposes is **not** recommended. The use of biocides in this manner can pose health concerns for people in occupied spaces of the building and for people returning to the treated space if used improperly. Furthermore, the effectiveness of these treatments is unproven and does not address the possible health concerns from the presence of the remaining non-viable mold. For additional information on the use of biocides for remedial purposes, refer to the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists' document, "Bioaerosols: Assessment and Control."
2. **Level I: Small Isolated Areas** (10 sq. ft or less) - e.g., ceiling tiles, small areas on walls
- a. Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
  - b. Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
  - c. The work area shall be unoccupied. Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons recovering from recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
  - d. Containment of the work area is not necessary. Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
  - e. Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in a sealed plastic bag. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
  - f. The work area and areas used by remedial workers for egress shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
  - g. All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
3. **Level II: Mid-Sized Isolated Areas** (10 - 30 sq. ft.) - e.g., individual wallboard panels.
- a. Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
  - b. Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.



- c. The work area shall be unoccupied. Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
- d. The work area shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and sealed with tape before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
- e. Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
- f. Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
- g. The work area and areas used by remedial workers for egress shall be HEPA vacuumed (a vacuum equipped with a High-Efficiency Particulate Air filter) and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
- h. All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
- 4. **Level III: Large Isolated Areas** (30 - 100 square feet) - e.g., several wallboard panels.
  - a. A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for the project.
  - b. The following procedures *at a minimum* are recommended:
    - 1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials and equipped with respiratory protection, (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
    - 2) The work area and areas directly adjacent shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and taped before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
    - 3) Seal ventilation ducts/grills in the work area and areas directly adjacent with plastic sheeting.
    - 4) The work area and areas directly adjacent shall be unoccupied. Further vacating of people from spaces near the work area is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
    - 5) Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
    - 6) Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
    - 7) The work area and surrounding areas shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
    - 8) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
  - c. If abatement procedures are expected to generate a lot of dust (e.g., abrasive cleaning of contaminated surfaces, demolition of plaster walls) or the visible concentration of the fungi is heavy (blanket coverage as opposed to patchy), then it is recommended that the remediation procedures for Level IV are followed.
- 5. **Level IV: Extensive Contamination** (greater than 100 contiguous square feet in an area)
  - a. A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for the project. The following procedures are recommended:
    - 1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials equipped with:
      - a) Full-face respirators with high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) cartridges
      - b) Disposable protective clothing covering both head and shoes
      - c) Gloves
    - 2) Containment of the affected area:

- a) Complete isolation of work area from occupied spaces using plastic sheeting sealed with duct tape (including ventilation ducts/grills, fixtures, and any other openings)
    - b) The use of an exhaust fan with a HEPA filter to generate negative pressurization
    - c) Airlocks and decontamination room
  - 3) Vacating people from spaces adjacent to the work area is not necessary but is recommended in the presence of infants (less than 12 months old), persons having undergone recent surgery, immune suppressed people, or people with chronic inflammatory lung diseases (e.g., asthma, hypersensitivity, pneumonitis, and severe allergies).
  - 4) Contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed from the building in sealed plastic bags. The outside of the bags shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and a detergent solution or HEPA vacuumed in the decontamination chamber prior to their transport to uncontaminated areas of the building. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
  - 5) The contained area and decontamination room shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop with a detergent solution and be visibly clean prior to the removal of isolation barriers.
  - 6) Air monitoring shall be conducted prior to occupancy to determine if the area is fit to reoccupy.
6. **Level V: Remediation of HVAC Systems**
- a. A Small Isolated Area of Contamination (<10 square feet) in the HVAC System
    - 1) Remediation can be conducted by regular building maintenance staff. Such persons shall receive training on proper clean up methods, personal protection, and potential health hazards. This training can be performed as part of a program to comply with the requirements of the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).
    - 2) Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended. Gloves and eye protection shall be worn.
    - 3) The HVAC system shall be shut down prior to any remedial activities.
    - 4) The work area shall be covered with a plastic sheet(s) and sealed with tape before remediation, to contain dust/debris.
    - 5) Dust suppression methods, such as misting (not soaking) surfaces prior to remediation, are recommended.
    - 6) Growth supporting materials that are contaminated, such as the paper on the insulation of interior lined ducts and filters, shall be removed. Other contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned shall be removed in sealed plastic bags. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
    - 7) The work area and areas immediately surrounding the work area shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution.
    - 8) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
    - 9) A variety of biocides are recommended by HVAC manufacturers for use with HVAC components, such as, cooling coils and condensation pans. HVAC manufacturers shall be consulted for the products they recommend for use in their systems.
  - b. Areas of Contamination (>10 square feet) in the HVAC System: A health and safety professional with experience performing microbial investigations shall be consulted prior to remediation activities to provide oversight for remediation projects involving more than a small isolated area in an HVAC system. The following procedures are recommended:
    - 1) Personnel trained in the handling of hazardous materials equipped with:
      - a) Respiratory protection (e.g., N95 disposable respirator), in accordance with the OSHA respiratory protection standard (29 CFR 1910.134), is recommended.
      - b) Gloves and eye protection



- c) Full-face respirators with HEPA cartridges and disposable protective clothing covering both head and shoes shall be worn if contamination is greater than 30 square feet.
  - 2) The HVAC system shall be shut down prior to any remedial activities.
  - 3) Containment of the affected area:
    - a) Complete isolation of work area from the other areas of the HVAC system using plastic sheeting sealed with duct tape.
    - b) The use of an exhaust fan with a HEPA filter to generate negative pressurization.
    - c) Airlocks and decontamination room if contamination is greater than 30 square feet.
  - 4) Growth supporting materials that are contaminated, such as the paper on the insulation of interior lined ducts and filters, shall be removed. Other contaminated materials that cannot be cleaned should be removed in sealed plastic bags. When a decontamination chamber is present, the outside of the bags shall be cleaned with a damp cloth and a detergent solution or HEPA vacuumed prior to their transport to uncontaminated areas of the building. There are no special requirements for the disposal of moldy materials.
  - 5) The contained area and decontamination room shall be HEPA vacuumed and cleaned with a damp cloth and/or mop and a detergent solution prior to the removal of isolation barriers.
  - 6) All areas shall be left dry and visibly free from contamination and debris.
  - 7) Air monitoring shall be conducted prior to re-occupancy with the HVAC system in operation to determine if the area(s) served by the system are fit to reoccupy.
  - 8) A variety of biocides are recommended by HVAC manufacturers for use with HVAC components, such as, cooling coils and condensation pans. HVAC manufacturers shall be consulted for the products they recommend for use in their systems.
7. Hazard Communication: When fungal growth requiring large-scale remediation is found, the building owner, management, and/or employer shall notify occupants in the affected area(s) of its presence. Notification shall include a description of the remedial measures to be taken and a timetable for completion. Group meetings held before and after remediation with full disclosure of plans and results can be an effective communication mechanism. Individuals with persistent health problems that appear to be related to bioaerosol exposure should see their physicians for a referral to practitioners who are trained in occupational/environmental medicine or related specialties and are knowledgeable about these types of exposures. Individuals seeking medical attention shall be provided with a copy of all inspection results and interpretation to give to their medical practitioners.

END OF SECTION 02 87 13 33

## SECTION 02 87 16 13 - BIRD AND BIRD WASTE ABATEMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bird and bird waste abatement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary Of Work

1. Work Included - Conventional Enclosure for Removal of Birds and Bird Waste
  - a. Seal off penetrations on perimeter walls into the work area (critical barriers) and establish a decontamination facility for workers.
  - b. Coordinate activities with the demolition and well capping activities.
2. Work Included - Removal and disposal of birds and bird waste.
  - a. Establish work area by installing construction barrier tape around removal area.
  - b. Remove and properly dispose of bulk contamination debris.
  - c. Mist bird waste and contaminated material with Biocide or the equivalent (i.e. Sanogene, Oxine, or Envirocon).
  - d. Remove and properly dispose of contaminated waste material from all building components.
  - e. Utilize low pressure washers or scrub brushes to clean all wall surfaces of bird waste.

#### C. Quality Criteria

1. Qualifications for Performance of Work
  - a. Contractor (or subcontractor engaged to perform the Work of this Section) shall:
    - 1) Be a licensed bird waste abatement contractor in accordance with the Statutes of the State in which the work is to be performed. Submit notarized documentation confirming current licensure.
    - 2) Have a record of not less than five years successful experience in bird waste removal or asbestos removal.
2. Reference Standards
  - a. Acknowledge, by the executing of the Contract, awareness and familiarity with the contents and requirements of the following regulations, codes, and standards, and assume responsibility for the performance of the Work in strict compliance therewith and for every instance of failure to comply therewith.
  - b. Where conflict among requirements or with the Contract Documents exists, the more stringent requirements shall apply.
    - 1) USEPA Regional National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS)
    - 2) U.S. Occupational and Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
    - 3) U.S. EPA Office of Pesticide and Toxic Substances Guidance Document
    - 4) U.S. Department of Transportation, Hazardous Substances: Final Rule (49 CFR 171 and 172), Federal Register November 21, 1986 and corrected February 17, 1987.
    - 5) Statutes of the State in which the Work is to be Performed: Licensure for Asbestos Consultants and Contractors.
    - 6) All state, county, and city codes and ordinances as applicable. Make available for review at the site one copy of EPA, OSHA, and applicable State, County, and City Regulations governing the Work.
3. Patent/Copyright Compliance: Contractor shall determine the applicability of any process patents that may be employed and shall be responsible for the payment of all fees, royalties and licenses that may be required for the use of any patented or licensed process. Contractor shall hold the Owner, Engineer and Testing Laboratory harmless for failure to obtain any licenses and to pay any applicable fees and royalties.



**D. Product Handling**

1. Deliver all materials in the original packages, containers, or bundles bearing the name of the manufacturer and the brand name.
2. Store all materials subject to damage off the ground, away from wet or damp surfaces, and under cover sufficient to prevent damage or contamination.
3. Remove from the premises all damaged or deteriorating materials. Dispose of materials that become contaminated with waste in accordance with applicable regulatory standards.

**E. Worksite Conditions**

1. Worker and Visitor Procedures: The Contractor is hereby advised that the birds and bird wastes have been determined to cause diseases by inhalation and Contractor shall provide workers and qualified visitors with respirators that, as a minimum, shall meet the requirements of current applicable OSHA regulations, and protective clothing during preparation of system of enclosures, prior to commencing, during actual removal, and until final clean-up is completed. Also all personnel assigned to work on this project shall attend a training/awareness class for the purpose of explaining the hazards of improperly handling these materials and proper control measures to take in order to protect themselves.

**F. Personnel Protection**

1. General
  - a. Provide respiratory protection in accordance with OSHA regulations 29 CFR 1910-134 and in accordance with the following paragraphs.
    - 1) Prior to commencement of work, all workers shall be instructed by the Contractor and shall be knowledgeable in the appropriate procedures of personnel protection and waste removal.
    - 2) Where respirators with disposable filters are used, provide sufficient filters for replacement as necessary by the workers, or as required by applicable regulations.
    - 3) Permit no visitors, except for governmental inspectors having jurisdiction, or as authorized by Engineer or the Owner, in the work areas after commencement of waste disturbance or removal. Provide authorized visitors with suitable respirators.
    - 4) Provide workers with sufficient sets of protective disposable clothing, consisting of full-body coveralls, head covers, gloves, and foot covers, of sizes to properly fit individual workers.
    - 5) Provide authorized visitors with a set of suitable protective disposable clothing, headgear, eye protection, and/or footwear of sizes to properly fit visitors whenever they are required to enter the work area, to a maximum of six sets per day.
    - 6) Provide, in addition to respirators and protective clothing provided for authorized visitors, protective clothing and respirators for use by Testing Laboratory's representative. Furnish protective clothing in as many sets as required for full-time monitoring by Testing Laboratory.
    - 7) Provide and post the decontamination and work procedures to be followed by workers.
2. Respiratory Protection Program
  - a. Maintain a respiratory protection program that contains all the elements of the OSHA regulations. Provide a copy to the Engineer for approval.
  - b. Appoint a respiratory protection program administrator, who shall be responsible for the program, maintaining all documentation, instructing workers and providing fit tests. Respiratory protection administrator is to be qualified under OSHA requirements and to have attended and passed, as a minimum, OSHA training institute 2-week course on respiratory protection or NIOSH course "Occupational Respiratory Protection." Respiratory protection program administrator is to be on-site daily during abatement activities. All written programs and directions are to be in English and/or the language of the abatement workers if they are not fluent in English.
  - c. The Contractor is advised that the minimum respiratory requirements as called for in this section and on any drawings/sketches shall be applied unless reported measures indicate

that a lower form of respiratory protection is acceptable according to the appropriate OSHA regulations and the more strict sections of the specification.

3. Respiratory Protection Requirements
  - a. Workers shall be provided with respiratory protection equipment. The respirators are to be sanitized and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's specification. Appropriate respirator selection will be dependent upon the work to be performed and the level of exposure, as given below.
  - b. For the clean-up, as a minimum, the use of full-faced air-purifying respirators is required for all preparation, removal and cleaning work.
  - c. This specification requires that workers shall wear suitable respiratory protection at all times whenever a potential for exposure to bird and bird waste exists.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Polyethylene/Plastic sheeting shall be of the thicknesses specified, not less than 6 mil, in sizes to minimize the frequency of joints. Utilize reinforced plastic sheeting in specified thicknesses on floors.
2. Tape shall be glass fiber or other type capable of sealing joints of adjacent sheets of plastic and for attachment of plastic sheet to finished or unfinished surfaces of dissimilar materials under both dry and wet conditions.
3. Sodium Hypochlorite ("bleach")
4. Impermeable Containers shall be suitable to receive and retain contaminated materials until disposal at an approved site and shall be labeled in accordance with U.S. DOT 49 CFR 171 and 172, and containers shall be both air- and water-tight. Use a minimum of two types of impermeable containers: 1) six millimeter-thick (mil) plastic bags sized to fit within the drum; and 2) metal or fiber drums with tightly fitting lids.
5. Other Materials: Provide all other materials, such as lumber, nails, and hardware, that may be required to construct and dismantle the decontamination area and the barriers that isolate the work area(s).
6. Caulking shall be non-shrinking caulk to be used where insulated pipes continue through areas such as walls and ceilings. Contractor shall determine and submit proof that caulk proposed for use is compatible with the temperature conditions of the surfaces to which it is to be applied.
  - a. Tools And Equipment
    - 1) Water Sprayer - utilize airless or other low pressure sprayer for amended water application.
    - 2) Air Purifying Equipment (for internal recirculation in the work area) shall be HEPA Filtration Systems or Electronic Precipitators. Ensure that no internal air movement system or purification equipment exhausts contaminated air from the work area(s) outside the work area.
    - 3) Diminished Air Pressure Equipment shall comply with ANSI 29.2-7, local exhaust ventilation.
    - 4) Scaffolding shall be as required to accomplish the specified work and shall meet all applicable safety regulations.
    - 5) Transportation - as required for loading, temporary storage, transit, and unloading of contaminated waste without exposure to persons or property.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Procedures

1. All personnel assigned to perform the work shall attend a training/awareness class for the purpose of explaining the hazards of improperly handling the waste and the proper control measures to take in order to protect themselves. These work procedures shall be discussed with

- each individual followed by the individual acknowledging receipt of this training by completing the pertinent information on a Hazardous Awareness Training Form
2. The majority of diseases related to bird waste is related to the inhalation of the airborne dust released by the waste. All personnel performing removal/decontamination waste shall therefore wear Powered Air Purifying Respirators (PAPR) equipped with combination Organic Vapor and High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filters while handling the waste.
  3. Workers shall wear non-porous gloves and boots during all preparatory and removal operations.
  4. When entering the building, the removal/decontamination personnel shall mist all surfaces having visible remnants of waste, using a diluted sodium hypochlorite ("bleach") and water solution. This solution shall be diluted at a ratio of 10 parts water to 1 part bleach for a 10 to 1 ration (10:1). The waste shall be continuously misted during occupancy in order to keep airborne dust emissions from the waste to a minimum.
  5. Remove all birds from the building and seal all openings into the building. The main purpose of this is to eliminate the availability for future bird access into the building. The openings may be temporarily sealed or closed up in many ways, including boarding up windows/doors, polyethylene sheeting, or other convenient and cost effective means. It is not the intention of this task to complete seal the building airtight.
  6. Designate an area of the facility for the purpose of storing the waste prior to loading for transportation to the appropriate landfill. The area designated shall have easy access to the door which will be utilized as the waste load-out.

END OF SECTION 02 87 16 13



Task	Specification	Specification Description
02 89 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13	Removal And Disposal Of Lead-Containing Paint
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13a	Lead Paint Related Abatement Procedures
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13b	XRF Testing For Lead-Based Paint
02 89 00 00	02 83 19 13c	Lead Dust Wipe, Air And Tcpl Sampling And Analysis
02 90 50 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 01 30 71 - CONCRETE REHABILITATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete rehabilitation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Removal of deteriorated concrete and reinforcement and subsequent replacement and patching.
  - b. Floor joint repair.
  - c. Epoxy crack injection.
  - d. Corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
  - e. Polymer overlays.
  - f. Polymer sealers.
  - g. Steel structural reinforcement.
  - h. Composite structural reinforcement.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include material descriptions, chemical composition, physical properties, test data, and mixing, preparation, and application instructions.
2. Formwork and Shoring Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing formwork and temporary shoring and supports. Include schedule and sequence for erection and removal relative to removal of deteriorated concrete and reinforcement and subsequent repair and reinforcement.
3. Samples: Cured Samples of overlay and patching materials.
4. Rehabilitation Program: For each phase of rehabilitation process, including protection of surrounding materials and Project site during operations. Describe in detail materials, methods, equipment, and sequence of operations to be used for each phase of the Work.
  - a. If alternative materials and methods to those indicated are proposed for any phase of rehabilitation work, submit substitution request and provide a written description of proposed materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on other comparable projects, and a testing program to demonstrate their effectiveness for this Project.

#### D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with type and name of products and manufacturers.
2. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature requirements and other conditions for storage.
3. Store cementitious materials off the ground, under cover, and in a dry location.
4. Store aggregates, covered and in a dry location, where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations for Epoxies: Do not apply when air and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by manufacturer. During hot weather, cool epoxy components before mixing, store mixed products in shade, and cool unused mixed products to retard setting. Do not apply to wet substrates unless approved by manufacturer.

- a. Use only Class A epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below **40 deg F (5 deg C)** within 8 hours.
- b. Use only Class A or B epoxies when substrate temperatures are below or are expected to go below **60 deg F (16 deg C)** within 8 hours.
- c. Use only Class C epoxies when substrate temperatures are above and are expected to stay above **60 deg F (16 deg C)** for 8 hours.
2. Cold-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials:
  - a. Do not apply unless air temperature is above **40 deg F (5 deg C)** and will remain so for at least 48 hours after completion of Work.  
**OR**  
Comply with the following procedures:
    - 1) When air temperature is below **40 deg F (5 deg C)**, heat patching material ingredients and existing concrete to produce temperatures between **40 and 90 deg F (5 and 32 deg C)**.
    - 2) When mean daily air temperature is between **25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C)**, cover completed Work with weather-resistant insulating blankets for 48 hours after repair or provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above **32 deg F (0 deg C)** within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
    - 3) When mean daily air temperature is below **25 deg F (minus 4 deg C)**, provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above **32 deg F (0 deg C)** within the enclosure for 48 hours after repair.
3. Hot-Weather Requirements for Cementitious Materials: Protect repair work when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from patching materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks, and use cooled materials as required. Do not apply to substrates with temperatures of **90 deg F (32 deg C)** and above.
4. Environmental Limitations for High-Molecular-Weight Methacrylate Sealers: Do not apply when concrete surface temperature is below **55 deg F (13 deg C)** or above **75 deg F (24 deg C)** **OR 90 deg F (32 deg C), as directed**. Apply only to dry substrates **OR** substrates that have been dry for at least 72 hours.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Bonding Agents

1. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Product that consists of water-insensitive epoxy adhesive, portland cement, and water-based solution of corrosion-inhibiting chemicals that forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
2. Epoxy Bonding Agent: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type II **OR V, as directed**.
  - a. Thin Film Open Time: Not less than two **OR six OR 24, as directed**, hours.
3. Latex Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type I **OR II OR II** at exterior locations and where indicated, Type I at other locations, **as directed**.
4. Mortar Scrub-Coat: 1 part portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III and 1 part fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 144, except 100 percent passing a **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.

### B. Patching Mortar

1. Patching Mortar, General:
  - a. Overhead Patching Mortar: For overhead repairs, use patching mortar recommended by manufacturer for overhead use and as specified in this Article.
  - b. Coarse Aggregate for Adding to Patching Mortar: Washed aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, Size No. 8, Class 5S. Add only as permitted by patching mortar manufacturer.
2. Job-Mixed Patching Mortar: 1 part portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, II, or III and 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 144, except 100 percent passing a **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.

3. Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928.
4. Polymer-Modified, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928, that contains a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.
5. Polymer-Modified, Silica-Fume-Enhanced, Cementitious Patching Mortar: Packaged, dry mix complying with ASTM C 928, that contains silica fume complying with ASTM C 1240 and a non-redispersible latex additive as either a dry powder or a separate liquid that is added during mixing.

C. Concrete

1. Concrete Materials and Admixtures: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
2. Steel and Fiber Reinforcement and Reinforcement Accessories: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Form-Facing Materials: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
4. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
5. Preplaced Aggregate: Washed aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, Class 5S, with 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve, 20 to 45 percent passing a 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve, 0 to 10 percent passing a 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve, and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve **OR** 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve, 40 to 80 percent passing a 3/4-inch (19-mm) sieve, 0 to 15 percent passing a 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve, and 0 to 2 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve, **as directed**.
6. Fine Aggregate for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: Fine aggregate complying with ASTM C 33, but with 100 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve, 95 to 100 percent passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, 55 to 80 percent passing a No. 30 (0.6-mm) sieve, 30 to 55 percent passing a No. 50 (0.3-mm) sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve, 0 to 10 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve, and having a fineness modulus of 1.30 to 2.10.
7. Grout Fluidifier for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 937.
8. Portland Cement for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 150.
9. Pozzolans for Grout Used with Preplaced Aggregate: ASTM C 618.

D. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Epoxy Joint Filler: 2-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 per ASTM D 2240.
2. Polyurea Joint Filler: 2-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, polyurea resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of at least 80 per ASTM D 2240.
3. Epoxy Crack Injection Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type I **OR** IV, **as directed**, Grade 1, except for gel time **OR** solvent free, **as directed**.
4. Capping Adhesive: Product manufactured for use with crack injection adhesive by same manufacturer.
5. Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment Materials: Water-based solution of alkaline corrosion-inhibiting chemicals that penetrates concrete by diffusion and forms a protective film on steel reinforcement.
6. Polymer Overlay: Epoxy adhesive complying with ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type III.
7. Aggregate for Use with Polymer Overlay: Oven-dried, washed silica sand complying with ACI 503.3.
8. Polymer Sealer: Low-viscosity epoxy or high-molecular-weight methacrylate penetrating sealer recommended by manufacturer for application to exterior concrete traffic surfaces.
9. Methylmethacrylate Sealer/Brighteners: Clear low-viscosity sealer recommended by manufacturer for sealing exterior exposed-aggregate concrete, and formulated to bring out color of aggregates and give concrete a wet look.
10. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - a. After fabricating, prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."



- b. For minimum protection to steel after preparation, apply one coat of lead- and chromate-free, modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#76 and one coat of alkyd-gloss enamel complying with MPI#96.
- c. After preparation, apply two-coat high-performance coating system consisting of organic zinc-rich primer, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and topcoat of high-build, urethane or epoxy coating recommended by manufacturer for application over specified zinc-rich primer. Comply with coating manufacturer's written directions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
- 11. Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Carbon steel; **ASTM A 307, Grade A** (**ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6**), for bolts; **ASTM A 563** (**ASTM A 563M**), Grade A, for nuts; and **ASTM F 436** (**ASTM F 436M**) for washers; hot-dip or mechanically zinc coated.
- 12. Postinstalled Anchors: Chemical or expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2** (**ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4**) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- 13. Composite Structural Reinforcement: Manufacturer's system consisting of carbon **OR** glass, **as directed**, fiber reinforcement in the form of preimpregnated sheets or tow sheet with field-applied saturant, and epoxy primers, fillers, adhesives, saturants, and topcoats, designed for use as external structural reinforcement for concrete.

#### E. Mixes

- 1. Mix products, in clean containers, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Add clean silica sand and coarse aggregates to products only as recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Do not add water, thinners, or additives unless recommended by manufacturer.
  - c. When practical, use manufacturer's premeasured packages to ensure that materials are mixed in proper proportions. When premeasured packages are not used, measure ingredients using graduated measuring containers; do not estimate quantities or use shovel or trowel as unit of measure.
  - d. Do not mix more materials than can be used within recommended open time. Discard materials that have begun to set.
- 2. Mortar Scrub-Coat: Mix with enough water to provide consistency of thick cream.
- 3. Dry-Pack Mortar: Mix with just enough liquid to form damp cohesive mixture that can be squeezed by hand into a ball but is not plastic.
- 4. Concrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- 5. Shotcrete: Comply with Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
- 6. Grout for Use with Preplaced Aggregate: Proportion according to ASTM C 938. Add grout fluidifier to mixing water followed by cementitious materials and then fine aggregate.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

- 1. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of dates when areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete and deteriorated reinforcing bars will be located.
- 2. Locate areas of deteriorated or delaminated concrete using hammer or chain drag sounding and mark boundaries. Mark areas for removal by simplifying and squaring off boundaries. At columns and walls make boundaries level and plumb, unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Locate at least three reinforcing bars using a pachometer, and drill test holes to determine depth of cover. Calibrate pachometer, using depth of cover measurements, and verify depth of cover in removal areas using pachometer.

B. Preparation

1. Protect people, motor vehicles, equipment, surrounding construction, Project site, plants, and surrounding buildings from injury resulting from concrete rehabilitation work.
  - a. Erect and maintain temporary protective covers over pedestrian walkways and at points of entrance and exit for people and vehicles, unless such areas are made inaccessible during the course of concrete rehabilitation work. Construct covers of tightly fitted, **3/4-inch (19-mm)** exterior-grade plywood supported at **16 inches (405 mm)** o.c. and covered with asphalt roll roofing.
  - b. Protect adjacent equipment and surfaces by covering them with heavy polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape or a liquid strippable masking agent. If practical, remove items, store, and reinstall after potentially damaging operations are complete.
  - c. Neutralize and collect alkaline and acid wastes according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and dispose of by legal means off the Owner's property.
  - d. Dispose of runoff from wet operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
  - e. Collect runoff from wet operations and dispose of by legal means off the Owner's property.
2. Shoring: Install temporary supports before beginning concrete removal.
3. Concrete Removal:
  - a. Saw-cut perimeter of areas indicated for removal to a depth of at least **1/2 inch (13 mm)**. Make cuts perpendicular to concrete surfaces and no deeper than cover on reinforcement.
  - b. Remove deteriorated and delaminated concrete by breaking up and dislodging from reinforcement.
  - c. Remove additional concrete, if necessary, to provide a depth of removal of at least **1/2 inch (13 mm)** over entire removal area.
  - d. Where half or more of the perimeter of reinforcing bar is exposed, bond between reinforcing bar and surrounding concrete is broken, or reinforcing bar is corroded, remove concrete from entire perimeter of bar and to provide at least a **3/4-inch (19-mm)** clearance around bar.
  - e. Test areas where concrete has been removed by tapping with hammer, and remove additional concrete until unsound and disbonded concrete is completely removed.
  - f. Provide fractured aggregate surfaces with a profile of at least **1/8 inch (3 mm)** that are approximately perpendicular or parallel to original concrete surfaces. At columns and walls, make top and bottom surfaces level, unless otherwise directed.
  - g. Thoroughly clean removal areas of loose concrete, dust, and debris.
4. Reinforcing Bar Preparation: Remove loose and flaking rust from reinforcing bars by high-pressure water cleaning **OR** abrasive blast cleaning **OR** needle scaling **OR** wire brushing, **as directed**, until only tightly bonded light rust remains.
  - a. Where section loss of reinforcing bar is more than 25 percent, or 20 percent in 2 or more adjacent bars, cut bars and remove and replace. Remove additional concrete as necessary to provide at least **3/4-inch (19-mm)** clearance at existing and replacement bars. Splice replacement bars to existing bars according to **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)**, by lapping, welding, or using mechanical couplings.
5. Preparation of Floor Joints for Repair: Saw-cut joints full width to edges and depth of spalls, but not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm)**, **as directed**, deep. Clean out debris and loose concrete; vacuum or blow clear with compressed air.
6. Surface Preparation for Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment: Clean concrete by low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing **OR** sand blasting, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to treatment application. Allow surface to dry before applying corrosion-inhibiting treatment.
7. Surface Preparation for Overlays: Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material. Roughen surface of concrete by sand blasting **OR** shot blasting **OR** scarifying **OR** needle scaling **OR** high-pressure water jetting **OR** scabbling **OR** flame blasting **OR** milling, **as directed**, to produce a surface profile matching CSP 3 **OR** 4 **OR** 5 **OR** 6 **OR** 7 **OR** 8 **OR** 9, **as directed**, per ICRI 03732. Sweep and vacuum roughened surface to remove debris followed by low-pressure water cleaning.

8. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Clean concrete by shot blasting **OR** low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to sealer application.
9. Surface Preparation for Sealers: Acid etch surface of concrete to produce a surface profile matching CSP 1 per ICRI 03732. Prepare surface for acid etching by detergent scrubbing to remove oils and films that may prevent acid penetration.
  - a. Remove excess acid solution, reaction products, and debris by squeegeeing or vacuuming.
  - b. Scrub surface with an alkaline detergent, rinse, and squeegee or vacuum.
  - c. Check acidity of surface with pH test paper and continue rinsing until pH is acceptable.
  - d. When pH is acceptable and surface is clean, vacuum dry.
10. Surface Preparation for Composite Structural Reinforcement: Remove delaminated material and deteriorated concrete surface material. Clean concrete where reinforcement and epoxy patching mortar is to be applied by low-pressure water cleaning **OR** detergent scrubbing, **as directed**, to remove dirt, oils, films, and other materials detrimental to epoxy application. Roughen surface of concrete by sand blasting.

C. Application

1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for application of products, including surface preparation.
2. Epoxy-Modified, Cementitious Bonding and Anticorrosion Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by stiff brush or hopper spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply to reinforcing bars in two coats, allowing first coat to dry two to three hours before applying second coat. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
3. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Apply to reinforcing bars and concrete by brush, roller, or spray according to manufacturer's written instructions, leaving no pinholes or other uncoated areas. Apply to reinforcing bars in at least two coats, allowing first coat to dry before applying second coat. Apply patching mortar or concrete while epoxy is still tacky. If epoxy dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
4. Latex Bonding Agent, Type II: Mix with portland cement and scrub into concrete surface according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply patching mortar or concrete while bonding agent is still wet. If bonding agent dries, recoat before placing patching mortar or concrete.
5. Latex Bonding Agent, Type I: Apply to concrete by brush roller or spray. Allow to dry before placing patching mortar or concrete.
6. Mortar Scrub-Coat: Dampen repair area and surrounding concrete **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond repair area. Remove standing water and apply scrub-coat with a brush, scrubbing it into surface and thoroughly coating repair area. If scrub-coat dries, recoat before applying patching mortar or concrete.
7. Patching Mortar: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
  - a. Wet substrate thoroughly and then remove standing water. Scrub a slurry of neat patching mortar mixed with latex bonding agent into substrate, filling pores and voids.
  - b. Place patching mortar by troweling toward edges of patch to force intimate contact with edge surfaces. For large patches, fill edges first and then work toward center, always troweling toward edges of patch. At fully exposed reinforcing bars, force patching mortar to fill space behind bars by compacting with trowel from sides of bars.
  - c. For vertical patching, place material in lifts of not more than **1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm) OR 3 inches (75 mm)**, **as directed**, nor less than **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6 mm)**, **as directed**. Do not feather edge.
  - d. For overhead patching, place material in lifts of not more than **1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm)**, **as directed**, nor less than **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6 mm)**, **as directed**. Do not feather edge.
  - e. After each lift is placed, consolidate material and screed surface.
  - f. Where multiple lifts are used, score surface of lifts to provide a rough surface for application of subsequent lifts. Allow each lift to reach final set before placing subsequent lifts.

- g. Allow surfaces of lifts that are to remain exposed to become firm and then finish to a smooth **OR** rough, **as directed**, surface with a wood or sponge float **OR** broom or burlap drag, **as directed**.
- h. Wet-cure cementitious patching materials, including polymer-modified, cementitious patching materials, for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
8. Dry-Pack Mortar: Use for deep cavities and where indicated. Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
  - a. Provide forms where necessary to confine patch to required shape.
  - b. Wet substrate and forms thoroughly and then remove standing water.
  - c. Place dry-pack mortar into cavity by hand, and compact into place with a hardwood drive stick and mallet or hammer. Do not place more material at a time than can be properly compacted. Continue placing and compacting until patch is approximately level with surrounding surface.
  - d. After cavity is filled and patch is compacted, trowel surface to match profile and finish of surrounding concrete. A thin coat of patching mortar may be troweled into the surface of patch to help obtain required finish.
  - e. Wet-cure patch for not less than seven days by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
9. Concrete: Place according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" and as follows:
  - a. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  - b. Apply latex bonding agent **OR** Type I, latex bonding agent **OR** mortar scrub-coat, **as directed**, to concrete substrate.
  - c. Use vibrators to consolidate concrete as it is placed.
  - d. At unformed surfaces, screed concrete to produce a surface that when finished with patching mortar will match required profile and surrounding concrete.
  - e. Where indicated place concrete by form and pump method.
    - 1) Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet concrete. Seal joints and seams in forms and junctions of forms with existing concrete.
    - 2) Pump concrete into place, releasing air from forms as concrete is introduced. When formed space is full, close air vents and pressurize to **14 psi (96 kPa)**.
  - f. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
  - g. Fill placement cavities with dry-pack mortar and repair voids with patching mortar. Finish to match surrounding concrete.
10. Shotcrete: Place according to Division 03 Section "Shotcrete" and as follows:
  - a. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  - b. Apply latex bonding agent **OR** Type I, latex bonding agent **OR** mortar scrub-coat, **as directed**, to concrete substrate.
  - c. Screed and finish shotcrete to produce a surface matching required profile and surrounding concrete.
11. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate Concrete: Use for column and wall repairs **OR** where indicated, **as directed**. Place as follows:
  - a. Design and construct forms to resist pumping pressure in addition to weight of wet grout. Seal joints and seams in forms and junctions of forms with existing concrete.
  - b. Apply epoxy-modified, cementitious bonding and anticorrosion agent **OR** epoxy bonding agent, **as directed**, to reinforcement and concrete substrate.
  - c. Place aggregate in forms, consolidating aggregate as it is placed. Pack aggregate into upper areas of forms to achieve intimate contact with concrete surfaces.
  - d. Fill forms with water to thoroughly dampen aggregate and substrates. Drain water from forms before placing grout.



- e. Pump grout into place at bottom of preplaced aggregate, forcing grout upward. Release air from forms at top as grout is introduced. When formed space is full and grout flows from air vents, close vents and pressurize to **14 psi (96 kPa)**.
- f. Wet-cure concrete for not less than seven days by leaving forms in place or keeping surfaces continuously wet by water-fog spray or water-saturated absorptive cover.
- g. Repair voids with patching mortar and finish to match surrounding concrete.
12. Joint Filler: Install in nonmoving floor joints where indicated.
  - a. Install filler to a depth of at least **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm)**, **as directed**. Use fine silica sand no more than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** deep to close base of joint. Do not use sealant backer rods or compressible fillers below joint filler.
  - b. Install filler so that when cured, it is flush at top surface of adjacent concrete. If necessary, overfill joint and remove excess when filler has cured.
13. Epoxy Crack Injection: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the following:
  - a. Clean areas to receive capping adhesive of oil, dirt, and other substances that would interfere with bond, and clean cracks with oil-free compressed air or low-pressure water to remove loose particles.
  - b. Place injection ports as recommended by epoxy manufacturer, spacing no farther apart than thickness of member being injected. Seal injection ports in place with capping adhesive.
  - c. Seal cracks at exposed surfaces with a ribbon of capping adhesive at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick by **1 inch (25 mm)** wider than crack.
  - d. Inject cracks wider than **0.003 inch (0.075 mm)** to a depth of **8 inches (200 mm)** or to a width of less than **0.003 inch (0.075 mm)**, whichever is less.
  - e. Inject epoxy adhesive, beginning at widest part of crack and working toward narrower parts. Inject adhesive into ports to refusal, capping adjacent ports when they extrude epoxy. Cap injected ports and inject through adjacent ports until crack is filled.
  - f. After epoxy adhesive has set, remove injection ports and grind surfaces smooth.
14. Corrosion-Inhibiting Treatment: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray in two coats at manufacturer's recommended application rate. Remove film of excess treatment by high-pressure washing before patching treated concrete or applying a sealer or overlay.
15. Polymer Overlay: Apply according to ACI 503.3.
  - a. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
16. Polymer Sealer: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
  - a. Apply to traffic-bearing surfaces, including parking areas and walks.
17. Methylmethacrylate Sealer/Brighteners: Apply by brush, roller, or airless spray at manufacturer's recommended application rate.
  - a. Apply to exterior concrete surfaces that are exposed to view, excluding traffic-bearing surfaces.
18. Composite Structural Reinforcement Using Preimpregnated Fiber Sheet: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
  - a. Patch surface defects with epoxy mortar and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
  - b. Apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.
  - c. Clean preimpregnated fiber sheet with acetone or other suitable solvent, and apply epoxy adhesive to a thickness of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
  - d. Apply adhesive-coated fiber sheet to adhesive-coated concrete within open time of epoxy adhesive, and roll with a hard rubber roller until fiber sheet is fully embedded in adhesive, air pockets are removed, and adhesive is forced out from beneath fiber sheet at edges.
  - e. Apply additional layers as indicated using same procedure.
19. Composite Structural Reinforcement Using Fiber Tow Sheet and Saturant: Unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, apply as follows:
  - a. Apply epoxy primer using brush or short nap roller to prepared concrete surfaces in areas where composite structural reinforcement will be applied.

- b. After primer has set, patch surface defects with epoxy filler and allow to set before beginning reinforcement application.
- c. Apply epoxy saturant to fiber tow sheet or primed and patched surface with **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** nap roller. Apply fiber tow sheet to primed and patched surface while saturant is still wet, using pressure roller to remove air pockets. Remove paper backing from fiber tow sheet and apply additional epoxy as needed to fully saturate tow sheet.
- d. Apply additional layers as indicated, fully saturating each with epoxy.
- e. After saturant has cured, apply protective topcoat by brush, roller or spray.

D. Field Quality Control

- 1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to sample materials and perform tests as follows:
  - a. Patching Mortar, Packaged Mixes: **<Insert number>** randomly selected samples tested according to ASTM C 928.
  - b. Patching Mortar, Field Mixed: **<Insert number>** randomly selected samples tested for compressive strength according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - c. Concrete: As specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - d. Shotcrete: As specified in Division 03 Section "Shotcrete".
  - e. Grouted Preplaced Aggregate: Tested for compressive strength of grout according to ASTM C 942.
    - 1) Testing Frequency: One sample for each **25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m)** of grout or fraction thereof, but not less than one sample for each day's work.
  - f. Joint Filler: Core drilled samples to verify proper installation.
    - 1) Testing Frequency: One sample for each **100 feet (30 m)** of joint filled.
    - 2) Where samples are taken, fill holes with joint filler.
  - g. Epoxy Crack Injection: Core drilled samples to verify proper installation.
    - 1) Testing Frequency: 3 samples from mockup and 1 sample for each **100 feet (30 m)** of crack injected.
    - 2) Where samples are taken, fill holes with epoxy mortar.

END OF SECTION 03 01 30 71

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 01 30 71a - SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for self-adhering sheet waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing.
  - b. Modified bituminous sheet waterproofing, fabric reinforced.
  - c. Modified bituminous deck paving sheet waterproofing.
  - d. Modified bituminous composite panel waterproofing.
  - e. Adhesive-coated HDPE sheet waterproofing.
  - f. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - g. Insulation.
  - h. Plaza deck pavers and paver pedestals.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for waterproofing.
4. Special warranties.
5. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Certificates for Credit MR 5: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include statement indicating distance to Project, cost for each regional material, and fraction by weight that is considered regional.
  - b. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing and details of substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
    - 1) Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
  - c. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:
    - 1) 8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm) square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.
    - 2) 8-by-8-inch (200-by-200-mm) square of insulation.
    - 3) 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) square of drainage panel.
    - 4) Plaza-deck paver, 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) square **OR** full sized, **as directed**, in each color and texture required.
    - 5) Paver pedestal assembly.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.



- a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

G. Warranty

1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Three **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing

1. Modified Bituminous Sheet: Not less than **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of **56 mils (1.4 mm)** of rubberized asphalt laminated to a **4-mil- (0.10-mm-)** thick, polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side and formulated for application with primer or surface conditioner that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Physical Properties:
    - 1) Tensile Strength: **250 psi (1.7 MPa)** minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
    - 2) Ultimate Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
    - 3) Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at **minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
    - 4) Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of **1/8-inch (3-mm)** movement; ASTM C 836.
    - 5) Puncture Resistance: **40 lbf (180 N)** minimum; ASTM E 154.
    - 6) Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: **150 feet (45 m)** minimum; ASTM D 5385.
    - 7) Water Absorption: 0.15 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at **70 deg F (21 deg C)**; ASTM D 570.
    - 8) Vapor Permeance: **0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**; ASTM E 96, Water Method.
2. Modified Bituminous Sheet, Fabric Reinforced: **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of rubberized-asphalt membrane embedded in spun-bonded polyester or fiberglass nonwoven fabric reinforcement laminated to a **0.50-mil- (0.01-mm-)** thick polyester film with release liner on adhesive side.
  - a. Physical Properties:
    - 1) Pliability: No cracks when bent 180 degrees over a **1-inch (25-mm)** mandrel at **minus 25 deg F (minus 32 deg C)**; ASTM D 146.
    - 2) Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: **150 feet (45 m)** minimum.
    - 3) Vapor Permeance: **0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**; ASTM E 96, Water Method.

- B. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet Waterproofing
1. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet: Provide one of the products described below, **as directed**:
    - a. **65-mil- (1.6-mm-)** thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of **53 to 56 mils (1.3 to 1.4 mm)** of rubberized asphalt laminated to a heat-resisting, **9- to 12-mil- (0.2- to 0.3-mm-)** thick, woven polypropylene geotextile reinforcement with release liner on adhesive side.
    - b. **70-mil- (1.8-mm-)** thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of rubberized asphalt embedded in inert fabric reinforcement laminated to a reflective geotextile protective topping with release liner on adhesive side.
    - c. **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick, self-adhering sheets consisting of rubberized asphalt embedded in nonwoven **OR** woven, **as directed**, fiberglass fabric reinforcement laminated to a **0.50-mil- (0.01-mm-)** thick polyester mat with release liner on adhesive side.
    - d. Physical Properties:
      - 1) Tensile Strength, Membrane: **50 lbf/in (8.75 kN/m)** minimum; ASTM D 882.
      - 2) Pliability: Unaffected when bent 180 degrees over a **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** mandrel at **minus 15 deg F (minus 26 deg C)**; ASTM D 146.
      - 3) Puncture Resistance, Mesh: **200 lbf (890 N)** minimum; ASTM E 154.
- C. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel Waterproofing
1. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel: **90-mil- (2.2-mm-)** thick, multilaminated panel consisting of a protection course bonded to an asphalt saturated carrier sheet bonded to a rubberized asphalt waterproofing self-adhering membrane with release liner.
- D. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet Waterproofing
1. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet for Vertical Applications: **32-mil- (0.8-mm-)** thick, uniform, flexible sheets consisting of **16-mil- (0.4-mm-)** thick, HDPE sheet coated with a pressure-sensitive rubber adhesive, a protective adhesive coating, and a release liner with the following physical properties:
    - a. Tensile Strength, Film: **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** minimum; ASTM D 412.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at **minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
    - c. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: **5 lbf/in. (875 N/m)**; ASTM D 903, modified.
    - d. Lap Adhesion: **2.5 lbf/in. (440 N/m)**; ASTM D 1876, modified.
    - e. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: **231 feet (70 m)**; ASTM D 5385, modified.
    - f. Vapor Permeance: **0.01 perms (0.6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**; ASTM E 96, Water Method.
    - g. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent; ASTM D 570.
  2. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet for Horizontal Applications: **46-mil- (1.2-mm-)** thick, uniform, flexible sheets consisting of **30-mil- (0.76-mm-)** thick, HDPE sheet coated with a pressure-sensitive rubber adhesive, a protective adhesive coating, a detackifying surface treatment, an uncoated self-adhering side lap strip, and a release liner with the following physical properties:
    - a. Tensile Strength, Film: **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** minimum; ASTM D 412.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at **minus 10 deg F (minus 23 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
    - c. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: **5 lbf/in. (875 N/m)**; ASTM D 903, modified.
    - d. Lap Adhesion: **2.5 lbf/in. (440 N/m)**; ASTM D 1876, modified.
    - e. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: **231 feet (70 m)**; ASTM D 5385, modified.
    - f. Vapor Permeance: **0.01 perms (0.6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**; ASTM E 96, Water Method.
    - g. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent; ASTM D 570.
- E. Auxiliary Materials
1. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
    - a. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Primer: Liquid waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.
  3. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by manufacturer of sheet waterproofing material.

4. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, trowel grade or low viscosity.
  5. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, asphalt-modified coating.
  6. Sheet Strips: Self-adhering, rubberized-asphalt sheet strips of same material and thickness as sheet waterproofing.
  7. Mastic, Adhesives, and Tape: Liquid mastic and adhesives, and adhesive tapes recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
    - a. Detail Tape: Two-sided, pressure-sensitive, self-adhering reinforced tape, **4-1/2 inches (114 mm)** wide, with a tack-free protective adhesive coating on one side and release film on self-adhering side.
    - b. Detail Strips: **62.5-mil- (1.58-mm-)** thick, felt-reinforced self-adhesive strip, **9 inches (229 mm)** wide, with release film on adhesive side.
  8. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately **1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm)** thick, predrilled at **9-inch (229-mm)** centers.
  9. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
    - a. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, nominal, for vertical applications; **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, nominal, elsewhere.
    - b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
  10. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, with compressive strength of not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  11. Protection Course: Unfaced, fan-folded, extruded-polystyrene board insulation, nominal thickness **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with compressive strength of not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621.
  12. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  13. Protection Course: Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, **0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m)** minimum density, **1-inch (25-mm)** minimum thickness.
- F. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
  2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 70 (0.21-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of **9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m)**.
  3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 40 (0.425-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than **2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m)**.
- G. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
    - a. Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
    - b. Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
    - c. Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
    - d. Type V, **100-psi (690-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** or Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive

- strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels.
3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** or Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
  4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** OR Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with 1 side having ribbed drainage channels.
  5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
- H. Plaza Deck Pavers
1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-Block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-Based Stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
  3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength **7500 psi (52 mpa)** or **6500 psi (45 mpa)**, **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
    - a. Thickness: **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** OR **1-3/4 inches (45 mm)** OR **2 inches (51 mm)** OR **2-3/8 inches (60 mm)**, **as directed**.
    - b. Face Size: **8-7/8 inches (225 mm)** square OR **9 inches (229 mm)** square OR **9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm)** OR **12 inches (305 mm)** square OR **12 by 24 inches (305 by 610 mm)** OR **18 inches (457 mm)** square OR **24 inches (610 mm)** square OR As indicated, **as directed**.
    - c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations OR Match sample OR As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, HDPE, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** OR **3/16 inch (5 mm)** OR **1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm)**, **as directed**.
    - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of **5000 psi (34 MPa)** at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Surface Preparation
1. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
  2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
  3. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
  4. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
  5. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.



- a. Install sheet strips and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** or **1/8 inch (3 mm)** for modified bituminous deck paving waterproofing.
  6. Bridge and cover isolation joints, expansion joints, and discontinuous deck-to-wall and deck-to-deck joints with overlapping sheet strips.
    - a. Invert and loosely lay first sheet strip over center of joint. Firmly adhere second sheet strip to first and overlap to substrate.
  7. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.
    - a. Install membrane strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install **3/4-inch (19-mm)** fillets of liquid membrane on horizontal inside corners and as follows:
      - 1) At footing-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane each direction from corner or install membrane strip centered over corner.
      - 2) At plaza deck-to-wall intersections, extend liquid membrane or sheet strips onto deck waterproofing and to finished height of sheet flashing.
  8. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions according to ASTM D 6135.
- B. Modified Bituminous Sheet Waterproofing Application
  1. Install modified bituminous sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and according to recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
  2. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
  3. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform **2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-)** minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
    - a. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between **25 and 40 deg F (minus 4 and plus 5 deg C)**, install self-adhering, modified bituminous sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than **60 deg F (16 deg C)**.
  4. Two-Ply Application: Install sheets to form a membrane with lap widths not less than 50 percent of sheet widths to provide a minimum of 2 thicknesses of sheet membrane over areas to receive waterproofing.
  5. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
  6. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
  7. Seal exposed edges of sheets at terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with mastic.
  8. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
  9. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond repaired areas in all directions.
  10. Install protection course with butted joints over waterproofing membrane immediately.
    - a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer and installed immediately.
  11. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- C. Modified Bituminous Deck Paving Sheet Waterproofing Application
  1. Install modified bituminous deck paving sheets according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by sheet waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.

3. Apply and firmly adhere sheets over areas to receive waterproofing. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform **2-1/2-inch- (64-mm-)** minimum lap widths and **6-inch (150-mm)** end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure watertight installation.
  4. Apply sheet waterproofing from low point to high point of decks to ensure that side laps shed water.
  5. Apply continuous sheets over sheet strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
  6. Seal edges of sheet waterproofing terminations with mastic.
  7. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to tie into adjacent waterproofing.
  8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond repaired areas in all directions.
  9. Correct deficiencies in or remove sheet waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- D. Modified Bituminous Composite Panel Waterproofing Application
1. Install modified bituminous composite panels according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Apply primer to substrate at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by waterproofing in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
  3. Install and firmly adhere composite panels over area to receive waterproofing. Accurately align and butt vertical and horizontal joints.
  4. Seal vertical and horizontal butt joints and exposed top, side, and bottom edges at composite panel waterproofing terminations with detail strips.
  5. Correct deficiencies in or remove composite panel waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair detail strips.
- E. Adhesive-Coated HDPE Sheet Waterproofing Application
1. Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels over substrate. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity.
  3. Vertical Applications: Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheet with HDPE face against substrate. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform **3-inch- (75-mm-)** minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger and tape end laps to ensure watertight installation. Mechanically fasten to substrate.
    - a. Securely fasten top termination of membrane with continuous metal termination bar anchored into substrate and cover with detailing tape.
  4. Horizontal Applications: Install adhesive-coated HDPE sheet with HDPE face against substrate. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform **3-inch- (75-mm-)** minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams. Overlap, stagger, and seal end laps with detail tape to ensure watertight installation.
  5. Corners: Seal lapped terminations and cut edges of sheet waterproofing at inside and outside corners with detail tape.
  6. Seal penetrations through sheet waterproofing to provide watertight seal with detail tape patches or wraps and a liquid-membrane troweling.
  7. Install sheet waterproofing and auxiliary materials to produce a continuous watertight tie into adjacent waterproofing.
  8. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Tape perimeter of damaged or nonconforming area extending **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond repaired areas in all directions. Apply a patch of sheet waterproofing and firmly secure with detail tape.
  9. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.
- F. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical

fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

- a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.

G. Insulation Installation

1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within **3/4 inch (19 mm)** of projections and penetrations.
2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

H. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**, height paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
  - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
  - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within **1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48)** of surface plane in any direction.

I. Field Quality Control

1. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
  - a. Flood to an average depth of **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** with a minimum depth of **1 inch (25 mm)** and not exceeding a depth of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Maintain **2 inches (51 mm)** of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
  - b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
  - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
2. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.

J. Protection And Cleaning

1. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.



END OF SECTION 03 01 30 71a

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 01 30 71	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 05 13 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-in-place concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
  - a. Footings.
  - b. Foundation walls.
  - c. Slabs-on-grade.
  - d. Suspended slabs.
  - e. Concrete toppings.
  - f. Building frame members.
  - g. Building walls.

#### C. Definitions

1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture.
4. Shop Drawings: For steel reinforcement and formwork. Material test reports **OR** certificates, **as directed**.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
3. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - a. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 **OR** Sections 1 through 5 and Section 7, "Lightweight Concrete", **as directed**.
  - b. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
4. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement, **as directed**.
2. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form-Facing Materials

1. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
2. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
6. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, **3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm)**, minimum.
7. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
8. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  - a. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
9. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  - a. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than **1 inch (25 mm)** to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  - b. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than **1 inch (25 mm)** in diameter in concrete surface.
  - c. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

B. Steel Reinforcement

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I **OR** II, **as directed**, zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
5. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M **OR** ASTM A 934/A 934M, **as directed**, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each **12-inch (300-mm)** bar length.
6. Stainless-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 955/A 955M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, Type 304 **OR** 316L, **as directed**, deformed.

7. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420) OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
  8. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
  9. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
  10. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, Type 1 coated, as-drawn, plain-steel-wire **OR** deformed-steel wire, **as directed**, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each **12-inch (300-mm)** wire length.
  11. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
  12. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
  13. Galvanized-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from galvanized steel wire into flat sheets.
  14. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, steel.
- C. Reinforcement Accessories
1. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
  2. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated.
  3. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M.
  4. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.
  5. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
    - a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
    - b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
    - c. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- D. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
    - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** II **OR** I/II **OR** III **OR** V, **as directed**, gray **OR** white, **as directed**. Supplement with the following:
      - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** F, **as directed**.
      - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
    - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** I (PM), pozzolan-modified portland **OR** I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
  2. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, graded, **1-1/2-inch (38-mm) OR 1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm)**, **as directed**, nominal maximum coarse-aggregate size.
    - a. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
  4. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm) OR 1/2-inch (13-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
  5. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable, **as directed**.
- E. Admixtures
1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
    - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
  3. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
  4. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
  5. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- F. Fiber Reinforcement
1. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM A 820, deformed, minimum of **1.5 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm) OR 2.4 inches (60 mm)**, **as directed**, long, and aspect ratio of 35 to 40 **OR** 45 to 50 **OR** 60 to 65, **as directed**.
    - a. Fiber: Type 1, cold-drawn wire **OR** 2, cut sheet, **as directed**.
  2. Synthetic Micro-Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene micro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/ C 1116M , Type III, **1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm) OR 1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm)** long.
  3. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Polyolefin macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, **1 to 2-1/4 inches (25 to 57 mm)** long.
- G. Waterstops
1. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
    - a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Dimensions: **4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) OR 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) OR 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick)**, **as directed**; nontapered.
  2. Chemically Resistant Flexible Waterstops: Thermoplastic elastomer rubber waterstops with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints; resistant to oils, solvents, and chemicals. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
    - a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Dimensions: **4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) OR 6 inches by 3/16 inch thick (150 mm by 4.75 mm thick) OR 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) OR 9 inches by 3/16 inch thick (225 mm by 4.75 mm thick) OR 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick)**, **as directed**; nontapered.
  3. Flexible PVC Waterstops: CE CRD-C 572, with factory-installed metal eyelets, **as directed**, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.

- a. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb **OR** Flat, dumbbell without center bulb **OR** Ribbed with center bulb **OR** Ribbed without center bulb **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Dimensions: 4 inches by 3/16 inch thick (100 mm by 4.75 mm thick) **OR** 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick) **OR** 9 inches by 3/8 inch thick (225 mm by 10 mm thick), **as directed**; nontapered.
  4. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch (19 by 25 mm).
  5. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch (10 by 19 mm).
- H. Vapor Retarders
1. Plastic Vapor Retarder:
    - a. ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
    - b. ASTM E 1745, Class B. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
    - c. ASTM E 1745, Class C, or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick, **as directed**. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive joint tape.
  2. Bituminous Vapor Retarder: 110-mil- (2.8-mm-) thick, semiflexible, 7-ply sheet membrane consisting of reinforced core and carrier sheet with fortified asphalt layers, protective weathercoating, and removable plastic release liner. Furnish manufacturer's accessories including bonding asphalt, pointing mastics, and self-adhering joint tape.
    - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: 0.00 grains/h x sq. ft. x inches Hg (0.00 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); ASTM E 154.
    - b. Tensile Strength: 140 lbf/in. (24.5 kN/m); ASTM E 154.
    - c. Puncture Resistance: 90 lbf (400N); ASTM E 154.
  3. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.
  4. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 (0.15-mm) sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.
- I. Floor And Slab Treatments
1. Slip-Resistive Emery Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials with 100 percent passing 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) **OR** No. 4 (4.75-mm) **OR** No. 8 (2.36-mm), **as directed**, sieve.
  2. Slip-Resistive Aluminum Granule Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of not less than 95 percent fused aluminum-oxide granules.
  3. Emery Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Pigmented **OR** Unpigmented, **as directed**, factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded emery aggregate, and plasticizing admixture; with emery aggregate consisting of no less than 60 percent of total aggregate content.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  4. Metallic Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Pigmented **OR** Unpigmented, **as directed**, factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded metallic aggregate, rust inhibitors, and plasticizing admixture; with metallic aggregate consisting of no less than 65 percent of total aggregate content.



- a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  5. Unpigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Factory-packaged dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, and plasticizing admixture.
  6. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Floor Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  7. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
- J. Liquid Floor Treatments
1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  2. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and is suitable for polished concrete surfaces.
- K. Curing Materials
1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** when dry.
  3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  4. Water: Potable.
  5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
  6. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering, **as directed**.
  7. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering, **as directed**.
  8. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
  9. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- L. Related Materials
1. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber **OR** ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork, **as directed**.
  2. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 **OR** aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95, **as directed**, per ASTM D 2240.
  3. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
  4. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
    - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
  5. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than **0.0217-inch- (0.55-mm-)** thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

6. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than **0.0336 inch (0.85 mm)** thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

M. Repair Materials

1. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - b. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm)** or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - d. Compressive Strength: Not less than **4100 psi (29 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
2. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
  - b. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  - c. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3.2 to 6 mm)** or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
  - d. Compressive Strength: Not less than **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

N. Concrete Mixtures, General

1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
2. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent **OR** Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows, **as directed**
  - a. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
  - b. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - c. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - d. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
  - e. Silica Fume: 10 percent.
  - f. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
  - g. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
3. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 **OR** 0.15 **OR** 0.30 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
4. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Use water-reducing **OR** high-range water-reducing **OR** plasticizing, **as directed**, admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

- c. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
- d. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
- 5. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

**O. Concrete Mixtures For Building Elements**

1. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR 0.45 OR 0.40, as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm)** for concrete with verified slump of **2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm)** before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm), as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
2. Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR 0.45 OR 0.40, as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm)** for concrete with verified slump of **2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm)** before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm), as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
3. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: **470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) OR 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) OR 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm), as directed**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - d. Air Content
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm), as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of **50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m)**.
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than **1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) OR 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), as directed**.
4. Suspended Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed**, at 28 days.

- b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) OR 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) OR 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), as directed.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm), as directed, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm), as directed, nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) OR 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), as directed.
5. Suspended Slabs: Proportion structural lightweight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed, at 28 days.
  - b. Calculated Equilibrium Unit Weight: 115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m) OR 110 lb/cu. ft. (1762 kg/cu. m) OR 105 lb/cu. ft. (1682 kg/cu. m), as directed, plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. (48.1 kg/cu. m) as determined by ASTM C 567.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm), as directed, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 6 percent, plus or minus 2 percent at point of delivery for nominal maximum aggregate size greater than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
    - 2) 7 percent, plus or minus 2 percent at point of delivery for nominal maximum aggregate size 3/8 inch (10 mm) or less.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) OR 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), as directed.
6. Concrete Toppings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed, at 28 days.
  - b. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 470 lb/cu. yd. (279 kg/cu. m) OR 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m) OR 540 lb/cu. yd. (320 kg/cu. m), as directed.
  - c. Slump Limit: 4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm), as directed, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm), as directed, nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 3) Do not allow air content of troweled finished toppings to exceed 3 percent.
  - e. Steel-Fiber Reinforcement: Add to concrete mixture, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of 50 lb/cu. yd. (29.7 kg/cu. m).
  - f. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) OR 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), as directed.
7. Building Frame Members: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
- a. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 OR 0.45 OR 0.40, as directed.



- c. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm)** for concrete with verified slump of **2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm)** before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
- d. Air Content:
  - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm)**, **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
- 8. Building Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
  - a. Minimum Compressive Strength: **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa)**, **as directed**, at 28 days.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 **OR 0.45 OR 0.40**, **as directed**.
  - c. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm)** for concrete with verified slump of **2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm)** before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm)**, **as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
- P. Fabricating Reinforcement
  - 1. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
- Q. Concrete Mixing
  - 1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
    - a. When air temperature is between **85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C)**, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above **90 deg F (32 deg C)**, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
  - 2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
    - a. For mixer capacity of **1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m)** or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
    - b. For mixer capacity larger than **1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m)**, increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional **1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m)**.
    - c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Formwork
  - 1. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
  - 2. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
  - 3. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
    - a. Class A, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** for smooth-formed finished surfaces.

- b. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) OR Class C, 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR Class D, 1 inch (25 mm), as **directed**, for rough-formed finished surfaces.
4. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  5. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
    - a. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
    - b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
  6. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
  7. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
  8. Chamfer **OR** Do not chamfer, **as directed**, exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
  9. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
  10. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
  11. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
  12. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
- B. Embedded Items
1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    - a. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
    - b. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
    - c. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.
- C. Removing And Reusing Forms
1. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
    - a. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of, **as directed**, its 28-day design compressive strength.
    - b. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
  2. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
  3. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by the Owner.
- D. Shores And Reshores

1. Comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
  - a. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
2. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
3. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

E. Vapor Retarders

1. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Lap joints **6 inches (150 mm)** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
2. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Granular Course: Cover vapor retarder with granular fill **OR** fine-graded granular material, **as directed**, moisten, and compact with mechanical equipment to elevation tolerances of plus **0 inch (0 mm)** or minus **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
  - a. Place and compact a **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick layer of fine-graded granular material over granular fill.

F. Steel Reinforcement

1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
  - a. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
3. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
  - a. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
4. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
5. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.
6. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
7. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780. Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

G. Joints

1. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
2. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
  - a. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  - b. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete.
  - c. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - d. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.

- e. Space vertical joints in walls, **as directed**. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - f. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - g. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  3. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
    - a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
    - b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-)** wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
  4. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
    - a. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** or more than **1 inch (25 mm)** below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", are indicated.
    - c. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
  5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- H. Waterstops
1. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.
- I. Concrete Placement
1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  2. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by the Owner.
  3. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
    - a. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
  4. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
    - a. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
    - b. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
    - c. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least **6**



inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

5. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
  - a. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  - b. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  - c. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  - d. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  - e. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
6. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
  - a. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
  - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
  - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
7. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
  - a. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - b. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

J. Finishing Formed Surfaces

1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - a. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  - a. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, **OR** to receive a rubbed finish, **OR** to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, **as directed**.
3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
  - a. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
  - b. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

- c. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
  4. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Finishing Floors And Slabs
  1. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
  2. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbled. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in 1 direction.
    - a. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to receive concrete floor toppings **OR** to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes, **as directed**.
  3. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
    - a. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated **OR** to receive trowel finish **OR** to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo, **as directed**.
  4. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
    - a. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated **OR** exposed to view **OR** to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system, **as directed**.
    - b. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to **ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M)**, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
      - 1) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.
      - 2) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
      - 3) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.
      - 4) Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 45; and of levelness, F(L) 35; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 24.
    - c. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, **10-foot- (3.05-m-)** long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), as directed**.
  5. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated **OR** where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method, **as directed**. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
    - a. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
  6. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
    - a. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with the Owner before application.

7. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granule, **as directed**, finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Uniformly spread **25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m)** of dampened slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granules, **as directed**, over surface in 1 or 2 applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
  - b. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
  - c. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate **OR** aluminum granules, **as directed**.
8. Dry-Shake Floor Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake floor hardener to surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Uniformly apply dry-shake floor hardener at a rate of **100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m)**, **as directed**, unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake floor hardener over surface by hand or with mechanical spreader, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second dry-shake floor hardener application, uniformly distributing remainder of material, and embed by power floating.
  - c. After final floating, apply a trowel finish. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake floor hardener manufacturer and apply immediately after final finishing.

L. Miscellaneous Concrete Items

1. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
2. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
3. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
4. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

M. Concrete Protecting And Curing

1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h)** before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
3. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
4. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
5. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
  - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
    - 1) Water.
    - 2) Continuous water-fog spray.

- 3) Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with **12-inch (300-mm)** lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
  - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - 1) Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
    - 2) Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
    - 3) Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  - c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - 1) After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
  - d. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- N. Liquid Floor Treatments
- 1. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
    - b. Do not apply to concrete that is less than three **OR** seven **OR** 14 **OR** 28, **as directed**, days' old.
    - c. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
  - 2. Polished Concrete Floor Treatment: Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match.
    - a. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes level and smooth and to depth required to reveal aggregate to match.
    - b. Apply penetrating liquid floor treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
    - c. Continue polishing with progressively finer grit diamond polishing pads to gloss level to match approved mockup.
    - d. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
    - e. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.
  - 3. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Joint Filling
- 1. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one **OR** six, **as directed**, month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

2. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
3. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least **2 inches (50 mm)** deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

P. Concrete Surface Repairs

1. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by the Owner. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to the Owner's approval.
2. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
3. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - a. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - b. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - c. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by the Owner.
4. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  - a. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of **0.01 inch (0.25 mm)** wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  - b. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  - c. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  - d. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - e. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  - f. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes **1 inch (25 mm)** or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a **3/4-inch (19-mm)** clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - g. Repair random cracks and single holes **1 inch (25 mm)** or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt,



and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

5. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to the Owner's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
6. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to the Owner's approval.

Q. Field Quality Control

1. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
2. Inspections:
  - a. Steel reinforcement placement.
  - b. Steel reinforcement welding.
  - c. Headed bolts and studs.
  - d. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  - e. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  - f. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  - g. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
3. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
    - 1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete, **as directed**; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
  - e. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  - f. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
    - 1) Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    - 2) Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  - g. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - 1) Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    - 2) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  - h. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  - i. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength

and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than **500 psi (3.4 MPa)**.

- j. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
  - k. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  - l. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by the Owner.
  - m. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  - n. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
4. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to **ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M)** within 24 **OR** 48, **as directed**, hours of finishing.
- R. Protection Of Liquid Floor Treatments
- 1. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.

END OF SECTION 03 05 13 00



Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 11 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 11 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 11 16 13 - RUSTICATED CONCRETE FINISHES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of rusticated concrete finishes. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Sample: A sample of finish expected shall be erected on site. Completed work shall approximate the sample. Work determined by the contracting officer not to be similar shall be removed and replaced without further expense to the Owner.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Overlaid Plywood: DOC PS 1, B-B High Density Overlaid Concrete Form, Class I.
- B. Plywood: DOC PS 1, B-B (Concrete Form) Plywood, Class I, Exterior Grade or better, mill-oiled and edge-sealed, with each piece bearing legible inspection mark.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Clear white pine with surface against concrete to be planed, metal, PVC, or rubber.
- D. Form Liners: Provide commercially available molds and form-facing materials of metal, plastic, mood, or another material that is nonreactive with concrete and dimensionally stable to produce repetitive concrete surfaces.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Form Construction: Forms shall be constructed to provide required sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions and to provide continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces. Forms shall be fabricated for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. The number of joints shall be minimized. Joints shall be made watertight to prevent leakage of cement paste. Provisions shall be made for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, inserts, and other features required in the work.
- B. Form Coatings: Forms shall be oiled with form-coating compounds that will not bond with, stain, nor adversely effect concrete surfaces, and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- C. Finish: Fins and other projections shall be completely removed and smoothed. A smooth rubbed finish shall be provided not less than one day after form removal.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16 13

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 11 16 13a - CAST-IN-PLACE ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cast-in-place architectural concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section specifies cast-in-place architectural concrete including form facings, reinforcement accessories, concrete materials, concrete mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

#### C. Definitions

1. Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete: Formed concrete that is exposed to view on surfaces of completed structure or building and that requires special concrete materials, formwork, placement, or finishes to obtain specified architectural appearance.
2. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.
3. Design Reference Sample: Sample designated by the Owner in the Contract Documents that reflects acceptable surface quality and appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
4. Reveal: Projection of coarse aggregate from matrix or mortar after completion of exposure operations.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
  - a. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
4. Formwork Shop Drawings: Show formwork construction including form-facing joints, rustications, construction and contraction joints, form joint-sealant details, form tie locations and patterns, inserts and embedments, cutouts, cleanout panels, and other items that visually affect cast-in-place architectural concrete.
5. Placement Schedule: Submit concrete placement schedule before start of placement operations. Include locations of all joints including construction joints.
6. Samples: For each of the following materials:
  - a. Form-facing panel.
  - b. Form ties.
  - c. Form liners.
  - d. Coarse- and fine-aggregate gradations.
  - e. Chamfers and rustications.
7. Material test reports **OR** certificates, **as directed**.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
  - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
  - b. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
3. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
  - a. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5 **OR** Sections 1 through 5 and Section 6, "Architectural Concrete", **as directed**.
  - b. ACI 303.1, "Specification for Cast-in-Place Architectural Concrete."
4. Field Sample Panels: After approval of verification sample and before casting architectural concrete, produce field sample panels to demonstrate the approved range of selections made under sample submittals. Produce a minimum of 3 sets of full-scale panels, cast vertically, approximately **48 by 48 by 6 inches (1200 by 1200 by 150 mm)** minimum, to demonstrate the expected range of finish, color, and texture variations.
5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Form-Facing Materials

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for formwork and other form-facing material requirements.
2. Form-Facing Panels for As-Cast **OR** Exposed-Aggregate, **as directed**, Finishes: Steel, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, or other approved nonabsorptive panel materials that will provide continuous, true, and smooth architectural concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
3. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will provide surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
4. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
5. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface treatments of concrete.
6. Rustication Strips: Metal, rigid plastic, or dressed wood with sides beveled and back kerfed; nonstaining; in longest practicable lengths.
7. Chamfer Strips: Metal, rigid plastic, elastomeric rubber, or dressed wood, **3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm)**, minimum; nonstaining; in longest practicable lengths.
8. Form Joint Tape: Compressible foam tape; pressure sensitive; AAMA 800, "Specification 810.1, Expanded Cellular Glazing Tape"; minimum **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick.
9. Form Joint Sealant: Elastomeric sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type M or S, Grade NS, that adheres to form joint substrates.
10. Sealer: Penetrating, clear, polyurethane wood form sealer formulated to reduce absorption of bleed water and prevent migration of set-retarding chemicals from wood.

11. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated colorless form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect architectural concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of those surfaces.
    - a. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
  12. Surface Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder, for application on form-facing materials, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete surface to depth of reveal specified.
  13. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic **OR** internally disconnecting **OR** removable, **as directed**, ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
    - a. Furnish ties with tapered tie cone spreaders, **as directed**, that, when removed, will leave holes **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, **as directed**, in diameter on concrete surface.
    - b. Furnish internally disconnecting ties that will leave no metal closer than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, after exposing aggregate, **as directed**, from the architectural concrete surface.
    - c. Furnish glass-fiber-reinforced plastic ties, not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** in diameter, of color to match the Owner's sample **OR** selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - d. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.
- B. Steel Reinforcement And Accessories
1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for steel reinforcement and other requirements for reinforcement accessories.
  2. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than **25 OR 60, as directed**, percent.
  3. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire fabric in place; manufacture according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
    - a. Where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use gray, all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1, gray, plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2, stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
- C. Concrete Materials
1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
    - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** II **OR** I/II **OR** III, **as directed**, gray **OR** white, **as directed**. Supplement with the following: **as directed**
      - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C **OR** F, **as directed**.
      - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
      - 3) Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
    - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** IP, portland-pozzolan **OR** (PM), pozzolan-modified Portland **OR** I (SM), slag-modified Portland, **as directed**, cement.
  2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 5S **OR** 5M **OR** 1N, **as directed**, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
    - a. Maximum Coarse Aggregate Size: **1 inch (25 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm)**, **as directed**.
    - b. Gradation: Uniformly **OR** Gap, **as directed**, graded.
  3. Normal-Weight Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33 **OR** ASTM C 144, **as directed**, manufactured or natural sand, from same source for entire Project.
  4. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M except free of wash water from mixer washout operations.

## D. Admixtures

1. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
2. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
  - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
3. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

## E. Curing Materials

1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** when dry.
2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
3. Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
  - a. For integrally colored concrete, curing compound shall be pigmented type, **as directed**, approved by color pigment manufacturer.
  - b. For concrete indicated to be sealed, curing compound shall be compatible with sealer.

## F. Repair Materials

1. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
2. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements.
  - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

## G. Concrete Mixtures, General

1. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of cast-in-place architectural concrete proportioned on basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
  - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed design mixtures based on laboratory trial mixtures.
2. Proportion concrete mixtures as follows:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.46.
  - c. Slump Limit: **3 inches (75 mm) OR 4 inches (100 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm)** for concrete with verified slump of **2 to 4 inches (50 to 100 mm)** before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, **as directed**, plus or minus **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - d. Air Content:
    - 1) 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
    - 2) 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for **1-inch (25-mm) OR 3/4-inch (19-mm), as directed**, nominal maximum aggregate size.
3. Cementitious Materials: For cast-in-place architectural concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica

- fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent, **as directed**.
4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 **OR** 0.15 **OR** 0.30 **OR** 1.00, **as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
  5. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  6. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

H. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed or Site-Mixed Architectural Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and furnish batch ticket information.
  - a. Clean equipment used to mix and deliver cast-in-place architectural concrete to prevent contamination from other concrete.
  - b. When air temperature is between **85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C)**, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above **90 deg F (32 deg C)**, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Formwork

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for formwork, embedded items, and shoring and reshoring.
2. Limit deflection of form-facing panels to not exceed ACI 303.1 requirements.
3. In addition to ACI 303.1 limits on form-facing panel deflection, limit cast-in-place architectural concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
  - a. Class A, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) OR C, 1/2 inch (13 mm)**, **as directed**.
4. Fabricate forms to result in cast-in-place architectural concrete that complies with ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
  - a. In addition to ACI 117, comply with the following tolerances: **<Insert tolerances.>**
5. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-in-place surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical. Kerf wood rustications, keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
  - a. Seal form joints and penetrations at form ties with form joint tape or form joint sealant to prevent cement paste leakage.
  - b. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
6. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
7. Chamfer **OR** Do not chamfer, **as directed**, exterior corners and edges of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
8. Coat contact surfaces of wood rustications and chamfer strips with sealer before placing reinforcement, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
9. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
10. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
11. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
12. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
13. Coat contact surfaces of forms with surface retarder, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
14. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and attach securely to prevent deflection and maintain stability of liners during concreting.



Prevent form liners from sagging and stretching in hot weather. Seal joints of form liners and form liner accessories to prevent mortar leaks. Coat form liner with form-release agent.

**B. Reinforcement And Inserts**

1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for fabricating and installing steel reinforcement. Securely fasten steel reinforcement and wire ties against shifting during concrete placement.
2. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

**C. Removing And Reusing Forms**

1. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
  - a. Schedule form removal to maintain surface appearance that matches approved field sample panels.
  - b. Cut off and grind glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties flush with surface of concrete.
2. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved 28-day design compressive strength **OR** at least 70 percent of 28-day design compressive strength, **as directed**. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
3. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Do not use split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material. Apply new form-release agent.
4. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for cast-in-place architectural concrete surfaces.

**D. Joints**

1. Construction Joints: Install construction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of cast-in-place architectural concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
  - a. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete, **as directed**. Align construction joint within rustications attached to form-facing material.
  - c. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - d. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - e. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  - f. Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy-bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
2. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of cast-in-place architectural concrete so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.

**E. Concrete Placement**

1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, form-release agent, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
2. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by the Owner.
3. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.

- a. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
  4. Deposit concrete continuously between construction joints. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
    - a. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
    - b. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 303.1.
    - c. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least **6 inches (150 mm)** into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. Do not permit vibrators to contact forms.
  5. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
    - a. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
    - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
    - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents.
    - d. Do not use chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
  6. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
    - a. Maintain concrete temperature below **90 deg F (32 deg C)** at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
    - b. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- F. Finishes, General
  1. Architectural Concrete Finish: Match the Owner's design reference sample, identified and described as indicated, to satisfaction of the Owner.
  2. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces.
    - a. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Maintain uniformity of special finishes over construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. As-Cast Formed Finishes
  1. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
  2. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Remove fins and other projections exceeding specified limits on formed-surface irregularities. Repair **OR** Do not repair, **as directed**, and patch tie holes and defects.
  3. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-form-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
    - a. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
    - b. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland

cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match surrounding concrete. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

- c. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match surrounding concrete. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
4. Form-Liner Finish: Produce a textured surface free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, and of uniform appearance, color, and texture.

#### H. Exposed-Aggregate Finishes

1. Scrubbed Finish: After concrete has achieved a compressive strength of from **1000 to 1500 psi (6.9 to 10.3 MPa)**, apply scrubbed finish. Wet concrete surfaces thoroughly and scrub with stiff fiber or wire brushes, using water freely, until top mortar surface is removed and aggregate is uniformly exposed. Rinse scrubbed surfaces with clean water. Maintain continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Remove only enough concrete mortar from surfaces to match design reference sample.
2. High-Pressure Water-Jet Finish: Perform high-pressure water jetting on concrete that has achieved a minimum compressive strength of **4500 psi (31 MPa)**. Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be high-pressure water-jet finished are treated at same age for uniform results.
  - a. Surface Continuity: Perform high-pressure water-jet finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances in reveal projection to match design reference sample.
3. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Perform abrasive blasting after compressive strength of concrete exceeds **2000 psi (13.8 MPa)**. Coordinate with formwork removal to ensure that surfaces to be abrasive blasted are treated at same age for uniform results.
  - a. Surface Continuity: Perform abrasive-blast finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances in depths of blast to match design reference sample.
  - b. Abrasive Blasting: Abrasive blast corners and edges of patterns carefully, using backup boards, to maintain uniform corner or edge line. Determine type of nozzle, nozzle pressure, and blasting techniques required to match design reference sample.
  - c. Depth of Cut: Use an abrasive grit of proper type and gradation to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces to match design reference sample, as follows:
    - 1) Brush: Remove cement matrix to dull surface sheen and expose face of fine aggregate; with no significant reveal.
    - 2) Light: Expose fine aggregate with occasional exposure of coarse aggregate and uniform color; with maximum reveal of **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.
    - 3) Medium: Generally expose coarse aggregate; with slight reveal, a maximum of **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
    - 4) Heavy: Expose and reveal coarse aggregate to a maximum projection of one-third its diameter; with reveal range of **1/4 to 1/2 inch (6 to 13 mm)**.
4. Bushhammer Finish: Allow concrete to cure at least 14 days before starting bushhammer surface finish operations.
  - a. Surface Continuity: Perform bushhammer finishing in as continuous an operation as possible, maintaining continuity of finish on each surface or area of Work. Maintain required patterns or variances of cut as shown on Drawings or to match design reference sample or mockup.
  - b. Surface Cut: Maintain required depth of cut and general aggregate exposure. Use power tool with hammer attachments for large, flat surfaces, and use hand hammers for small areas, at corners and edges, and for restricted locations where power tools cannot reach.
  - c. Remove impressions of formwork and form facings with exception of tie holes.

- I. Concrete Protecting And Curing
  - 1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
  - 2. Begin curing cast-in-place architectural concrete immediately after removing forms from **OR** applying as-cast formed finishes to, **as directed**, concrete. Cure according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods that will not mottle, discolor, or stain concrete:
    - a. Moisture Curing: Keep exposed surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      - 1) Water.
      - 2) Continuous water-fog spray.
      - 3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with **12-inch (300-mm)** lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
    - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period; use cover material and waterproof tape.
    - c. Curing Compound: Mist concrete surfaces with water. Apply curing compound uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- J. Field Quality Control
  - 1. General: Comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for field quality-control requirements.
- K. Repairs, Protection, And Cleaning
  - 1. Repair and cure damaged finished surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete when approved by the Owner. Match repairs to color, texture, and uniformity of surrounding surfaces and to repairs on approved mockups.
    - a. Remove and replace cast-in-place architectural concrete that cannot be repaired and cured to the Owner's approval.
  - 2. Protect corners, edges, and surfaces of cast-in-place architectural concrete from damage; use guards and barricades.
  - 3. Protect cast-in-place architectural concrete from staining, laitance, and contamination during remainder of construction period.
  - 4. Clean cast-in-place architectural concrete surfaces after finish treatment to remove stains, markings, dust, and debris.
  - 5. Wash and rinse surfaces according to concrete finish applicator's written recommendations. Protect other Work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
    - a. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete finishes.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16 13a

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 11 16 13	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 11 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 11 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 13 13	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 13 16	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 15 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
03 21 11 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 21 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 11 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 22 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 30 53 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 31 13 00 - CEMENT CONCRETE PAVEMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cement concrete pavement. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Driveways.
  - b. Roadways.
  - c. Parking lots.
  - d. Curbs and gutters.
  - e. Walks.

#### C. Definitions

1. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements. For each design mixture submitted, include an equivalent concrete mixture that does not contain portland cement replacements, to determine amount of portland cement replaced.
3. Shop Drawings: Indicate pavement markings, lane separations, and defined parking spaces. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
4. Samples: For each type of product or exposed finish, prepared as Samples of size indicated below:
  - a. Exposed Aggregate: 10-lb (4.5-kg) Sample of each mix.
  - b. Wheel Stops: 6 inches (150 mm) long showing cross section; with fasteners.
  - c. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices: 6 inches (150 mm) long showing cross section; with fasteners.
5. Other Action Submittals:
  - a. Design Mixtures: For each concrete paving mixture. Include alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer of detectable warnings, ready-mix concrete manufacturer and testing agency.
7. Material Certificates: For the following, from manufacturer:
  - a. Cementitious materials.
  - b. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  - c. Fiber reinforcement.
  - d. Admixtures.
  - e. Curing compounds.
  - f. Applied finish materials.



- g. Bonding agent or epoxy adhesive.
- h. Joint fillers.
- 8. Material Test Reports: For each of the following:
  - a. Aggregates. Include service-record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- 9. Field quality-control reports.

E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Detectable Warning Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer of stamped concrete paving systems.
- 2. Ready-Mix-Concrete Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
  - a. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities" (Quality Control Manual - Section 3, "Plant Certification Checklist").
- 3. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
  - a. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- 4. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- 5. ACI Publications: Comply with **ACI 301** (**ACI 301M**) unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Project Conditions

- 1. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
- 2. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** for oil-based materials **OR 55 deg F (12.8 deg C)** for water-based materials, **as directed**, and not exceeding **95 deg F (35 deg C)**.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Forms

- 1. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, and smooth exposed surfaces.
  - a. Use flexible or uniformly curved forms for curves with a radius of **100 feet (30.5 m)** or less. Do not use notched and bent forms.
- 2. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and that will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

B. Steel Reinforcement

- 1. Recycled Content: Provide steel reinforcement with an average recycled content of steel so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- 2. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, fabricated from as-drawn steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire into flat sheets.
- 3. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
- 4. Epoxy-Coated Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A, plain steel.
- 5. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**; deformed.
- 6. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** deformed bars.

7. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** deformed bars.
8. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed bars; assembled with clips.
9. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
10. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496/A 496M.
11. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**.
12. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** plain-steel bars; zinc coated (galvanized) after fabrication according to ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I coating, **as directed**. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
13. Epoxy-Coated, Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 775/A 775M; with ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, plain-steel bars.
14. Tie Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed.  
**OR**  
Hook Bolts: **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**, internally and externally threaded. Design hook-bolt joint assembly to hold coupling against paving form and in position during concreting operations, and to permit removal without damage to concrete or hook bolt.
15. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars, welded wire reinforcement, and dowels in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete specified, and as follows:
  - a. Equip wire bar supports with sand plates or horizontal runners where base material will not support chair legs.
  - b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
16. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating, compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement.
17. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780.

C. Concrete Materials

1. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of same type, brand, and source throughout Project:
  - a. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, gray **OR** white, **as directed**, portland cement Type I **OR** Type II **OR** Type I/II **OR** Type III **OR** Type V, **as directed**. Supplement with the following, **as directed**:
    - 1) Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or Class F.
    - 2) Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  - b. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag **OR** Type IP, portland-pozzolan, **as directed**, cement.
2. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S **OR** Class 4M **OR** Class 1N, **as directed**, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service-record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar paving applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials, **as directed**.
  - a. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
3. Exposed Aggregate: Selected, hard, and durable; washed; free of materials with deleterious reactivity to cement or that cause staining; from a single source, with gap-graded coarse aggregate as follows:
  - a. Aggregate Sizes: **3/4 to 1 inch (19 to 25 mm) OR 1/2 to 3/4 inch (13 to 19 mm) OR 3/8 to 5/8 inch (10 to 16 mm)**, **as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Aggregate Source, Shape, and Color: **As required to meet Project requirements**.
4. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
5. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

6. Chemical Admixtures: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
  - a. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
  - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
  - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
  - d. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
  - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
  - f. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
7. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, **as directed**, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

D. Fiber Reinforcement

1. Synthetic Fiber: Monofilament or fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete paving, complying with ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, Type III, **1/2 to 1-1/2 inches (13 to 38 mm)** long.

E. Curing Materials

1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 3, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** dry or cotton mats.
2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
3. Water: Potable.
4. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular, film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
6. White, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 2, Class B, dissipating.

F. Related Materials

1. Joint Fillers: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork in preformed strips.
2. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of fused aluminum-oxide granules or crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials.
3. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
4. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, two-component epoxy resin capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces; of class suitable for application temperature, of grade complying with requirements, and of the following types:
  - a. Types I and II, non-load bearing **OR** Types IV and V, load bearing, **as directed**, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
5. Chemical Surface Retarder: Water-soluble, liquid, set retarder with color dye, for horizontal concrete surface application, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of concrete to a depth of **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm)**.
6. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener: Factory-packaged, dry combination of portland cement, graded quartz aggregate, color pigments, and plasticizing admixture. Use color pigments that are finely ground, nonfading mineral oxides interground with cement.
7. Rock Salt: Sodium chloride crystals, kiln dried, coarse gradation with 100 percent passing **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** sieve and 85 percent retained on a **No. 8 (2.36-mm)** sieve.

G. Detectable Warning Materials

1. Detectable Warning Stamp: Semirigid polyurethane mats with formed underside capable of imprinting detectable warning pattern on plastic concrete; perforated with a vent hole at each dome.
    - a. Size of Stamp: One piece matching detectable warning area shown on Drawings **OR 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) OR 24 by 36 inches (610 by 914 mm) OR 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1220 mm) OR 26 by 26 inches (660 by 660 mm) OR 26 by 36 inches (660 by 914 mm), as directed.**
  2. Liquid Release Agent: Manufacturer's standard, clear, evaporating formulation designed to facilitate release of stamp mats.
- H. Pavement Markings
1. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N **OR** Type F **OR** Type S, **as directed**; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  2. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32 Alkyd Traffic Marking Paint.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Pavement-Marking Paint: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, Type II, with drying time of less than three **OR** 45, **as directed**, minutes.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  4. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #97 Latex Traffic Marking Paint.
    - a. Color: White **OR** Yellow **OR** Blue **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1 **OR** FS TT-B-1325, Type 1A, **as directed**.
- I. Wheel Stops
1. Wheel Stops: Precast, air-entrained concrete, **2500-psi (17.2-MPa)** minimum compressive strength, **4-1/2 inches (115 mm)** high by **9 inches (225 mm)** wide by **72 inches (1820 mm)** long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
    - a. Dowels: Galvanized steel, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** in diameter, **10-inch (254-mm)** minimum length.
  2. Wheel Stops: Solid, integrally colored, 96 percent recycled HDPE, or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber or plastic; UV stabilized; **4 inches (100 mm)** high by **6 inches (150 mm)** wide by **72 inches (1820 mm)** long. Provide chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside and holes for anchoring to substrate.
    - a. Color: Black **OR** Yellow **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Blue, **as directed**.
    - b. Dowels: Galvanized steel, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** in diameter, **10-inch (254-mm)** minimum length.
    - c. Adhesive: As recommended by wheel stop manufacturer for application to concrete pavement.
- J. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices
1. Speed Bumps **OR** Humps **OR** Cushions, **as directed**: Solid, integrally colored, 100 percent postconsumer or commingled postconsumer and postindustrial recycled rubber or plastic; UV stabilized. Provide holes for anchoring to substrate.
    - a. Bump Size: Modular **2 inches (50 mm)** high by **10 inches (254 mm)** wide by **72 inches (1800 mm)** long, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
    - b. Hump **OR** Cushion, **as directed**, Size: Modular assemblies **3 inches (75 mm)** high by **12 feet (3.7 m)** in overall width **OR** **4 inches (100 mm)** high by **14 feet (4.3 m)** in overall width, **as directed**, with overall length as dimensioned on Drawings.
    - c. Color: Black **OR** Yellow, **as directed**.
    - d. Mounting Hardware: Galvanized-steel lag screw, shield, and washers; **1/2-inch (13-mm)** diameter, **8-inch (200-mm)** minimum length **OR** hardware as standard with device manufacturer for use with concrete paving, **as directed**.
    - e. Adhesive: As recommended by device manufacturer.

#### K. Concrete Mixtures

1. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)**, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete, and as determined by either laboratory trial mixtures or field experience.
  - a. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete design mixtures for the trial batch method.
  - b. When automatic machine placement is used, determine design mixtures and obtain laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements.
2. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) OR 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: **0.45 OR 0.50, as directed.**
  - c. Slump Limit: **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm), as directed, plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).**
3. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
  - a. Air Content: **5-1/2 OR 4-1/2 OR 2-1/2, as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - b. Air Content: **6 OR 4-1/2 OR 3, as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for **1-inch (25-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - c. Air Content: **6 OR 5 OR 3-1/2, as directed**, percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for **3/4-inch (19-mm)** nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to **0.15 OR 0.30, as directed**, percent by weight of cement.
5. Chemical Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Use water-reducing admixture **OR** high-range, water-reducing admixture **OR** high-range, water-reducing and retarding admixture **OR** plasticizing and retarding admixture, **as directed**, in concrete as required for placement and workability.
  - b. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
6. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage by weight of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** requirements for concrete exposed to deicing chemicals **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
  - a. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - c. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
7. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than **1.0 lb/cu. yd. (0.60 kg/cu. m) OR 1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m), as directed.**
8. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

#### L. Concrete Mixing

1. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116/C 1116M, **as directed**. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - a. When air temperature is between **85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C)**, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above **90 deg F (32 deg C)**, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
2. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
  - a. For concrete batches of **1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m)** or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.



- b. For concrete batches larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
- c. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixing time, quantity, and amount of water added.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
2. Proof-roll prepared subbase surface below concrete paving to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding.
  - a. Completely proof-roll subbase in one direction and repeat in perpendicular direction, **as directed**. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - b. Proof-roll with a pneumatic-tired and loaded, 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than 15 tons (13.6 tonnes).
  - c. Correct subbase with soft spots and areas of pumping or rutting exceeding depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

#### C. Edge Forms And Screed Construction

1. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
2. Clean forms after each use and coat with form-release agent to ensure separation from concrete without damage.

#### D. Steel Reinforcement

1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.
3. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during concrete placement. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
4. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
5. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Use galvanized-steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material.
6. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated reinforcement. Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
7. Install fabricated bar mats in lengths as long as practicable. Handle units to keep them flat and free of distortions. Straighten bends, kinks, and other irregularities, or replace units as required before placement. Set mats for a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) overlap of adjacent mats.

#### E. Joints

1. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edges true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. When joining existing paving, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints unless otherwise indicated.

2. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of paving and at locations where paving operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless paving terminates at isolation joints.
  - a. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of paving strips unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Provide tie bars at sides of paving strips where indicated.
  - c. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent **OR** epoxy bonding adhesive, **as directed**, at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - d. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into concrete.
  - e. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
3. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  - a. Locate expansion joints at intervals of **50 feet (15.25 m)** unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  - c. Terminate joint filler not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** or more than **1 inch (25 mm)** below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  - d. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  - e. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  - f. During concrete placement, protect top edge of joint filler with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
4. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows, to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete paving:
  - a. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint with grooving tool to a **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, radius. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate grooving-tool marks on concrete surfaces, **as directed**.
    - 1) Tolerance: Ensure that grooved joints are within **3 inches (75 mm)** either way from centers of dowels.
  - b. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
    - 1) Tolerance: Ensure that sawed joints are within **3 inches (75 mm)** either way from centers of dowels.
  - c. Doweled Contraction Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or coat with asphalt one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
  - d. Edging: After initial floating, tool edges of paving, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete with an edging tool to a **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate edging-tool marks on concrete surfaces, **as directed**.

F. Concrete Placement

1. Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast-in.
2. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and steel reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.

3. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
4. Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
5. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
6. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
7. Consolidate concrete according to **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  - a. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
8. Screed paving surface with a straightedge and strike off.
9. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open-textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.
10. Curbs and Gutters: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce curbs and gutters to required cross section, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
11. Slip-Form Paving: Use design mixture for automatic machine placement. Produce paving to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing.
  - a. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of slip-form paving machine during operations.
12. Cold-Weather Placement: Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 and the following:
  - a. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)**, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** and not more than **80 deg F (27 deg C)** at point of placement.
  - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - c. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in design mixtures.
13. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with **ACI 301 (ACI 301M)** and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
  - a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below **90 deg F (32 deg C)** at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated in total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  - b. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  - c. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

G. Float Finishing

1. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.
2. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - a. Burlap Finish: Drag a seamless strip of damp burlap across float-finished concrete, perpendicular to line of traffic, to provide a uniform, gritty texture.



- b. Medium-to-Fine-Textured Broom Finish: Draw a soft-bristle broom across float-finished concrete surface perpendicular to line of traffic to provide a uniform, fine-line texture.
- c. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface **1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm)** deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.

#### H. Special Finishes

1. Monolithic Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in paving surface as follows:
  - a. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - b. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
  - c. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
  - d. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
2. Seeded Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Immediately after initial floating, spread a single layer of aggregate uniformly on paving surface. Tamp aggregate into plastic concrete and float finish to entirely embed aggregate with mortar cover of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
  - a. Spray-apply chemical surface retarder to paving according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - b. Cover paving surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove sheeting when ready to continue finishing operations.
  - c. Without dislodging aggregate, remove mortar concealing the aggregate by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom. Do not expose more than one-third of the average diameter of the aggregate and not more than one-half of the diameter of the smallest aggregate.
  - d. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat cycle of water flushing and brushing until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.
3. Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish: Before final floating, spread slip-resistive aggregate finish on paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Uniformly spread **25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) OR 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (19.5 kg/10 sq. m) OR 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (29 kg/10 sq. m)**, **as directed**, of dampened, slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface in two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force below surface.
  - b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of slip-resistive aggregate over paving surface with mechanical spreader, allow to absorb moisture, and embed by power floating. Follow power floating with a second slip-resistive aggregate application, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform coverage, and embed by power floating.
  - c. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by slip-resistive aggregate manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
  - d. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or abrasive stone and water to expose nonslip aggregate.
4. Rock-Salt Finish: After initial floating **OR** troweling **OR** brooming, **as directed**, uniformly spread rock salt over paving surface at the rate of **5 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.2 kg/10 sq. m)**.
  - a. Embed rock salt into plastic concrete with roller or magnesium float.
  - b. Cover paving surface with **1-mil- (0.025-mm-)** thick polyethylene sheet and remove sheet when concrete has hardened and seven-day curing period has elapsed.
  - c. After seven-day curing period, saturate concrete with water and broom-sweep surface to dissolve remaining rock salt, thereby leaving pits and holes.
5. Pigmented Mineral Dry-Shake Hardener Finish: After initial floating, apply dry-shake materials to paving surface according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

- a. Uniformly spread dry-shake hardener at a rate of **100 lb/100 sq. ft. (49 kg/10 sq. m)**, unless greater amount is recommended by manufacturer to match paving color required.
  - b. Uniformly distribute approximately two-thirds of dry-shake hardener over the concrete surface with mechanical spreader; allow hardener to absorb moisture and embed it by power floating. Follow power floating with a second application of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, uniformly distributing remainder of material at right angles to first application to ensure uniform color, and embed hardener by final power floating.
  - c. After final power floating, apply a hand-trowel finish followed by a broom finish.
  - d. Cure concrete with curing compound recommended by dry-shake hardener manufacturer. Apply curing compound immediately after final finishing.
- I. Detectable Warnings
- 1. Blockouts: Form blockouts in concrete for installation of detectable paving units specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
    - a. Tolerance for Opening Size: Plus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, no minus.
  - 2. Stamped Detectable Warnings: Install stamped detectable warnings as part of a continuous concrete paving placement and according to stamp-mat manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Before using stamp mats, verify that the vent holes are unobstructed.
    - b. Apply liquid release agent to the concrete surface and the stamp mat.
    - c. Stamping: While initially finished concrete is plastic **OR** After application and final floating of pigmented mineral dry-shake hardener, **as directed**, accurately align and place stamp mats in sequence. Uniformly load, gently vibrate, and press mats into concrete to produce imprint pattern on concrete surface. Load and tamp mats directly perpendicular to the stamp-mat surface to prevent distortion in shape of domes. Press and tamp until mortar begins to come through all of the vent holes. Gently remove stamp mats.
    - d. Trimming: After 24 hours, cut off the tips of mortar formed by the vent holes.
    - e. Remove residual release agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, but no fewer than three days after stamping concrete. High-pressure-wash surface and joint patterns, taking care not to damage stamped concrete. Control, collect, and legally dispose of runoff.
- J. Concrete Protection And Curing
- 1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  - 2. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection.
  - 3. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching **0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h)** before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
  - 4. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
  - 5. Curing Methods: Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound, or a combination of these as follows:
    - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      - 1) Water.
      - 2) Continuous water-fog spray.
      - 3) Absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with **12-inch (300-mm)** lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
    - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)** and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears occurring during installation or curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas that have been subjected to

heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

K. Paving Tolerances

1. Comply with tolerances in ACI 117 and as follows:
  - a. Elevation: **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
  - b. Thickness: Plus **3/8 inch (10 mm)**, minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - c. Surface: Gap below **10-foot- (3-m-)** long, unleveled straightedge not to exceed **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
  - d. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: **1/2 inch per 12 inches (13 mm per 300 mm)** of tie bar.
  - e. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Dowels: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - f. Vertical Alignment of Dowels: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - g. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Paving Edge: **1/4 inch per 12 inches (6 mm per 300 mm)** of dowel.
  - h. Joint Spacing: **3 inches (75 mm)**.
  - i. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, no minus.
  - j. Joint Width: Plus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, no minus.

L. Pavement Marking

1. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with the Owner.
2. Allow concrete paving to cure for a minimum of 28 days and be dry before starting pavement marking.
3. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
4. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce markings of dimensions indicated with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of **15 mils (0.4 mm)**.
  - a. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.
  - b. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of **6 lb/gal. (0.72 kg/L)**.

M. Wheel Stops

1. Install wheel stops in bed of adhesive applied as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Securely attach wheel stops to paving with not less than two steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, dowels located at one-quarter to one-third points. Install dowels in drilled holes in the paving and bond dowels to wheel stop. Recess head of dowel beneath top of wheel stop.

N. Preformed Traffic-Calming Devices

1. Install preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, in bed of adhesive applied as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic.
2. Securely attach preformed speed bumps **OR** humps **OR** cushions, **as directed**, to paving with hardware spaced as recommended by manufacturer for heavy traffic. Recess head of hardware beneath top surface.

O. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
2. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - a. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each **100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) OR 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m)**, **as directed**, or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.

- 1) When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
- b. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
- c. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
- d. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when it is 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
- e. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
- f. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one specimen at seven days and two specimens at 28 days.
  - 1) A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
3. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
4. Test results shall be reported in writing to the Owner, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
5. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by the Owner but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
6. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by the Owner.
7. Concrete paving will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
8. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
9. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- P. Repairs And Protection
  1. Remove and replace concrete paving that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section. Remove work in complete sections from joint to joint unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  2. Drill test cores, where directed by the Owner, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory paving areas with portland cement concrete bonded to paving with epoxy adhesive.
  3. Protect concrete paving from damage. Exclude traffic from paving for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain paving as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
  4. Maintain concrete paving free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep paving not more than two days before date scheduled for Final Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 31 13 00a - ROLLER COMPACTED CONCRETE PAVEMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of roller compacted concrete pavement. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I. Low alkali is to be used with aggregates when directed. In lieu of low-alkali cement, the Contractor may use a combination of Portland cement that does not meet the low-alkali requirement with a suitable pozzolan or ground granulated blast-furnace slag (GGBFS) provided the following requirement is met. The expansion of the proposed combination shall be equal to or less than the expansion of a low-alkali cement meeting the requirements of ASTM C 150 when tested in conformance with ASTM C 441. These two tests shall be performed concurrently at an independent certified laboratory at the Contractor's expense. the Owner reserves the right to confirm the test results and to adjust the percentage of pozzolan or GGBFS in the combination to suit other requirements at no additional cost to the Owner. Portland cement shall be furnished in bulk.
2. Pozzolan shall conform to ASTM C 618, and, in addition, limits in Table 2A, Uniformity Requirements (for air content) shall apply to all fly ash. Table 1A, Supplementary Optional Chemical Requirement for Maximum Alkalies, shall apply when it is to be used with aggregates listed to require low-alkali cement. Pozzolan shall be furnished in bulk.
3. The temperature of the cementitious materials as delivered to the site shall not exceed 150 degrees F.

#### B. Admixtures: All chemical admixtures furnished as liquids shall be in a solution of suitable viscosity and dilution for field use as determined by the Owner.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture (WRA) shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 494, Type D.
2. Air-entraining admixture shall conform to ASTM C 260.

#### C. Water for washing aggregates and for mixing and curing concrete shall be free from injurious amounts of oil, acid, salt, alkali, organic matter, or other deleterious substances and shall comply with COE CRD-C 400.

#### D. Aggregates

1. Composition: Fine aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sands. Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, air-cooled blast-furnace slag, or a combination thereof.

#### OR

All concrete mixtures will be proportioned by the Owner except that proportions for the slipformed facing concrete mixture will be selected by the Contractor. RCC shall be composed of cementitious materials, water, fine and coarse aggregates, and possibly admixtures. The cementitious material shall be portland cement, or portland cement in combination with pozzolan. An admixture when approved or directed will be a water-reducing/retarding admixture. Air-entraining admixture will be used in the bedding concrete and other conventional concrete.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. **Concrete Mixing Plant:** A continuous mixing plant(s) shall be capable of producing RCC of the same quality and uniformity as would be produced in a conventional redi-mix batch plant and shall be capable of producing a uniform continuous product (at both maximum and minimum production rates) that is mixed so that complete intermingling of all ingredients occurs without balling, segregation, and wet or dry portions.
- B. **Trucks:** Truck mixers or agitators used for transporting central-mixed conventional concrete shall conform to the applicable requirements of ASTM C 94. Truck mixers shall not be used to transport concrete with larger than 37.5 mm (1-1/2-inch) nominal maximum size aggregate (NMSA) or 2 inch slump, or less. Nonagitator trucks may be used for transporting conventional central-mixed concrete over a smooth road when the hauling time is less than 15 minutes and the slump is less than 3 inches. Bodies of nonagitator trucks shall be smooth, water-tight, metal containers specifically designed to transport concrete, shaped with rounded corners to minimize segregation.
- C. **Belt Conveyors:** Belt conveyors shall be designed and operated to assure a uniform flow of concrete from mixer or delivery truck to final place of deposit without segregation of ingredients or loss of mortar and shall be provided with positive means for preventing segregation of the concrete or loss of mortar at transfer points and the point of placing. The NMSA required in mixture proportions furnished by the Owner will not be changed to accommodate the belt width.
- D. **Spreading and Remixing Equipment:** The primary spreading procedure shall be accomplished by dozer. Graders or other equipment not specified may be used to facilitate the RCC spreading process only when approved. For open, unrestricted areas, the dozer shall be a minimum size and weight equivalent to a Caterpillar D-6. For restricted placement areas, such as placement of RCC near the dam crest or next to abutments, the dozer shall have as a minimum a size and weight equivalent to a Caterpillar D-4. There shall be a minimum of one operating dozer for each 200 cubic yards of RCC placed each hour. The dozers shall be equipped with well-maintained grousers. A front-end loader with operator shall be available to assist with deposition and spreading of RCC as needed in confined areas. The equipment shall be maintained in good operating condition. The equipment shall not leak or drip oil, grease, or other visible contaminants onto the RCC surface. All equipment used for spreading and remixing that leaves the surface of the structure for maintenance or repairs or, for any other reason, must be cleaned of all contaminants by an approved method before returning to the structure surface. Under no conditions shall a dozer or other tracked vehicle be operated on other than fresh uncompacted RCC except to facilitate startup operations for each lift and by approved procedures.
- E. **Compaction Equipment:**
1. Self-propelled vibratory rollers shall be used for primary rolling and shall be double-drum. They shall transmit a dynamic impact to the surface through a smooth steel drum by means of revolving weights, eccentric shafts, or other equivalent methods. The compactor shall have a minimum gross mass of 20,000 pounds and shall produce a minimum dynamic force of 350 pounds per linear inch of drum width. The operating frequency shall be variable in the approximate range of 1,700 to 3,000 cycles per minute. The amplitude shall be adjustable between 0.015 and 0.04 inches. The roller shall be capable of full compaction in both forward and reverse directions. The roller shall be operated at speeds not exceeding 2.2 ft/s. Within the range of the operating capability of the equipment, the Owner may direct or approve variations to the frequency, amplitude, and speed of operation which result in the specified density at the fastest production rate.
  2. Small vibratory rollers shall be used to compact the RCC where the larger vibratory rollers specified above cannot maneuver. The rollers shall compact the RCC to the required density and shall be so demonstrated during construction of the test section. Small vibratory rollers cannot compact the RCC to the same density and thickness as the primary rollers. When small rollers are used, total lift thickness of the RCC layer or lift shall be reduced to not over 6 inches



- uncompacted thickness to permit adequate compaction. Rollers shall have independent speed and vibration controls and shall be capable of a wide range of speed adjustments.
3. The tampers shall compact the RCC to the required density and shall be so demonstrated during construction of the test section. Tampers cannot compact the RCC to the same density and thickness as the primary rollers. When tampers are used, thickness of each RCC layer that is to be compacted shall be reduced to not more than 6 inches uncompacted thickness to assure adequate compaction.
- F. Placing During Rain: RCC shall not be placed during rainfall of 0.1 inch/hr or more. During periods of lesser rainfall, placement of RCC may continue if, in the opinion of the Owner, no damage to the RCC is occurring. Work shall commence only after excess free surface water and contaminated paste or RCC have been removed. The surface shall have gained sufficient strength (no less than 4 hours after the RCC placement was suspended) to prevent rutting, pumping, intermixing of rainwater with the RCC, or other damage to the RCC. When the RCC surface has been contaminated or damaged in any manner, the RCC surface shall be washed to break up and remove laitance and/or mud-like coatings from the surface. Any undercut coarse aggregate shall be removed. All waste shall be removed and disposed of in an approved manner.
- G. Hot-Weather Placement: In hot-weather placement the temperature of the RCC shall be controlled so that it does not exceed 75.0 degrees F when placed. Placement shall be suspended as soon as the RCC temperature exceeds 75 degrees F. Measures that can be taken to prevent temperatures exceeding 75 degrees F include, but are not limited to; 1.) chilling mixing water, 2.) sprinkling aggregate stockpiles, 3.) use of a canopy to shade the RCC placement areas, 4.) placing during nighttime and early morning hours, or 5.) restricting placements to cloudy days. Use of any of these systems shall not be reason for extension of completion dates specified in these specifications. In addition, to prevent potential damage to the RCC due to hot-weather related placement conditions, all RCC operation shall be suspended between June 15 and October 31, unless directed otherwise.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00a



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 31 13 00b - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

- B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

- C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

- E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

- F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:

1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

- G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:

1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.

2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Dowels shall be plain steel bars complying with ASTM A 499.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.
- B. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.
- C. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.
- D. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.
- E. Finishing:
  1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
  2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
  3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
  4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
  5. Burlap Drag Finishing: When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, drag the surface of the pavement in the direction of the concrete placement with a multiple-ply burlap drag.
  6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.
- F. Concrete Curing and Protection:
  1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.
  2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00b

## SECTION 03 31 13 00c - STEEL REINFORCED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of steel reinforced Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

- B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

- C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

- E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

- F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:

1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

- G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:

1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.
2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Steel Reinforcement: All reinforcement shall be free from loose flaky rust, loose scale, oil, grease, mud, or other coatings that might reduce bond. Bar mats shall comply with ASTM A 184. Welded steel wire fabric shall comply with ASTM A 1064. Tie bars shall be deformed bars in compliance with ASTM A 615, A 616, or A 617. Dowels shall be plain steel bars complying with ASTM A 499.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.
- B. Reinforcement Steel shall be installed by the strike-off method wherein the concrete is deposited on the subgrade and struck to the indicated elevation of the steel. The reinforcement shall be laid upon the prestruck surface.
- C. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.
- D. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.
- E. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.
- F. Finishing:
1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
  2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
  3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
  4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
  5. Burlap Drag Finishing: When most of the water glaze or sheen has disappeared and before the concrete becomes nonplastic, drag the surface of the pavement in the direction of the concrete placement with a multiple-ply burlap drag.
  6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.
- G. Concrete Curing and Protection:
1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.
  2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.



END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00c

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 31 13 00d - FIBER REINFORCED PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE OVERLAYS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of fiber reinforced Portland cement concrete overlays. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Coarse Aggregate:

1. Composition: Coarse aggregate shall consist of gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, a combination thereof, or crushed blast-furnace slag.
2. Particle Shape: Particles of the coarse aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. The quantity of flat and elongated particles in any size group shall not exceed 20 percent by weight as determined by ASTM D 3398.
3. Gradation: The maximum size of coarse aggregate shall be the lesser of 1/4 of the pavement thickness or 2 inches nominal size. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.
4. Deleterious Substances: The amount of deleterious substances in the coarse aggregate shall not exceed the limits, defined in ASTM C 117 and C 123.

- B. Fine Aggregate shall consist of natural sand, manufactured sand, or a combination of natural and manufactured sand and shall be composed of clean, hard, durable particles. Particles of the fine aggregate shall be generally spherical or cubical in shape. Gradation limits are specified in ASTM C 136.

- C. Portland Cement shall be Type I in compliance with ASTM C 150.

- D. Air-Entraining Admixture shall be in compliance with ASTM C 260. Concrete mixtures shall have air content by volume of concrete of 4 to 7 percent based on measurements made immediately after discharge from the mixer.

- E. Concrete Mixture shall have a nominal slump of 2 inches with a maximum of 3 inches and a 28-day flexural strength of not less than 650 psi.

- F. Joint and Crack Sealing Materials: Joint filler, joint sealant, and crack sealant shall comply with the following:

1. Expansion Joint Fillers shall comply with ASTM D 1751 or D 1752 or shall be resin impregnated fiberboard in compliance with the physical requirements of ASTM D 1752.
2. Type I Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-200, except that sealant may be furnished as a ready-mixed liquid.
3. Type II Sealant shall comply with Fed. Spec. SS-S-1401.
4. Type V Sealant shall comply with COE CRD-C-527 and may be either a single- or multiple-component material.

- G. Epoxy-Resin Materials: Materials used in epoxy-resin grout, mortar, and concrete shall comply with the following:



1. Epoxy-Resin Grout shall be a two-compound material formulated to comply with ASTM C 881.
2. Epoxy-Resin Concrete shall be composed of epoxy-resin binder and uniformly graded aggregate in compliance with ASTM C 144. The maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8 or 1/2 inch.

H. Steel Fibers: The fibers shall be made from low carbon steel. The following sizes of steel are acceptable:

1. 0.010-inch x 0.022-inch flat steel fiber,
2. 0.010-inch x 0.50-inch round steel fiber,
3. 0.016-inch x 1.0-inch round steel fiber,
4. 0.016-inch x 0.75-inch round steel fiber with 0.010-inch x 0.020-inch flat section along the length of the fiber
5. 2.5-inch x 0.025-inch round steel fibers.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation of Existing Surface: The Contractor shall raise and reset all structures such as manhole frames, valve boxes, drainage structures, etc. to meet the required grade. Bonding course shall be applied to the area prepared to receive overlay and shall be of epoxy-resin grout and Portland cement mortar.
- B. Reinforcement Steel shall be installed by the strike-off method wherein the concrete is deposited on the subgrade and struck to the indicated elevation of the steel. The reinforcement shall be laid upon the prestruck surface.
- C. Concrete Placement: Concrete shall be placed within 45 minutes from the time all ingredients are charged into the mixing drum.
- D. Vibration: In the final phases of placing, surface vibrating equipment shall be used, and the duration of vibration shall not exceed 20 seconds.
- E. Joints shall be saw cut and in alignment with underlying existing joints.
- F. Finishing:
1. Transverse Finishing: Immediately after placement, concrete shall be accurately struck off and screeded to such elevation that when consolidated and finished, the surface of the pavement will be free from porous places and will be at the required grade. The finishing machine shall make at least two trips over each area of pavement to compact the concrete and produce a surface of uniform texture, true to grade.
  2. Longitudinal Floating: After completion of the transverse finishing, the longitudinal mechanical float shall be operated to smooth and finish the pavement to grade.
  3. Hand Finishing shall be with an approved strike and tamping template and a longitudinal float.
  4. Straightedge Finishing: After the longitudinal floating is completed but while the concrete is still plastic, minor irregularities and score marks in the pavement surface shall be eliminated by means of long-handled wood floats and straightedges. The final finish shall be made with the straightedges, which shall be used to float the entire pavement surface.
  5. Broom Finishing: Burlap drag finishing will not be allowed as this brings the steel fibers to the surface. Finishing shall be accomplished using a stiff broom.
  6. Edging: After other finishing has been completed, the edges of slabs along the forms and at the joints shall be carefully finished with an edging tool to form a smooth rounded surface of the required radius.
- G. Concrete Curing and Protection:
1. Concrete Curing Methods shall consist of mat method, impervious sheeting method, or liquid membrane curing method.

2. Concrete Protection: Protect repaired areas against damage prior to final acceptance. Traffic shall be excluded from repaired areas.

END OF SECTION 03 31 13 00d

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 31 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 13 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 19 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 35 23 00 - EXPOSED AGGREGATE SURFACE CONCRETE WALLS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of exposed aggregate surface concrete walls. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Submit product data and manufacturer's application instruction.
2. Shop drawings shall be submitted for approval.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Concrete Materials and Mixing

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1 or 1A.
  - a. Shrinkage-Compensating Cement: Portland cement containing a stable expansive chemical compound such as calcium sulfoaluminate.
  - b. Aggregate: ASTM C 33; aggregate for exposed aggregate concrete shall match existing, if appropriate.
  - c. Admixtures: Submit manufacturer's literature for all admixtures proposed for the work.
  - d. Curing Compounds: ASTM C 309, Type 1.
  - e. Epoxy Bonding Agent: Sika or approved equal.

#### B. Concrete Formwork, Reinforcement, and Accessories

1. Formwork: Plywood form and liners shall be minimum grade B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay, Class I, complying with ANSI A199.1.
2. Reinforcement:
  - a. Reinforcement Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 40 or Grade 60.
  - b. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064. Where welded wire fabric is needed, use No. 6 gauge wire at 6-inch spacing in each direction.
  - c. Accessories for proper installation of reinforcement shall comply with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice for Reinforced Concrete Construction."
  - d. Reinforcement fabrication shall comply with ACI 318 and ACI 315.

#### C. Curing and Climatic Conditions

1. Comply with ACI 306 and ACI 305 for protecting and curing concrete in cold and hot weather.
2. Immediately after finishing, begin curing flatwork by covering with constantly saturated moisture retaining fabrics, impervious sheeting, or membrane curing compounds.
3. Apply membrane curing compounds as required.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation when attaching to existing surfaces:

1. Remove all defective material by chipping and cutting to sound concrete in order to secure a solid foundation.
2. Square cut or undercut the edges to a minimum depth of one inch to form key.
3. Cut concrete out from behind exposed reinforcing bars and rods.
4. All exposed reinforcing shall be cleaned of rust and primed.

B. Installation

1. Formwork requirements:
  - a. Formwork shall comply with ACI 347. Joints in forms shall be horizontal or vertical.
  - b. Use plywood, fiberglass, or metal forms.
2. Reinforcement shall be repaired when rusted through. Rods at least 12 inches long shall be wired to the failed rods. In closing gaps, rods shall lap existing rods by at least 12 inches or 30 diameters, whichever is greater.
3. Mixing and transporting concrete: Ready-mixed concrete shall be mixed and delivered to the project in compliance with ASTM C 94. Job-mixed concrete shall comply with the requirements of ACI 318.
4. Mixing epoxy-resin patching mortar: Mix thoroughly with a power mixer at low speeds (150 - 400 rpm) until material attains uniform color and consistency (minimum time of two to three minutes at 70 F).

END OF SECTION 03 35 23 00



Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 35 23 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 26 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 29 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 33 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 63 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 66 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 35 83 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 37 13 00 - SHOTCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for shotcrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes shotcrete applied by dry-mix or wet-mix process.

#### C. Definitions

1. Shotcrete: Mortar or concrete pneumatically projected onto a surface at high velocity.
2. Dry-Mix Shotcrete: Shotcrete with most of the water added at nozzle.
3. Wet-Mix Shotcrete: Shotcrete with ingredients, including mixing water, mixed before introduction into delivery hose.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For manufactured materials and products including reinforcement and forming accessories, shotcrete materials, admixtures, and curing compounds.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: For details of fabricating, bending, and placing reinforcement. Include support and anchor details, number and location of splices, and special reinforcement required for openings through shotcrete structures.
4. Samples: Approximately **24 by 24 by 2 inches (600 by 600 by 50 mm)**, to illustrate quality of finishes, colors, and textures of exposed surfaces of shotcrete.
5. Design Mixes: For each shotcrete mix.
6. Material Test Reports: For shotcrete materials.
7. Material Certificates: For each material item, signed by manufacturers.
8. Field quality-control test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer employing nozzle operators for the Project, each of whom attains mean core grades not exceeding 2.5, according to ACI 506.2, on preconstruction tests **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Dry-Mix Process for Vertical Position **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Dry-Mix Process for Vertical and Overhead Positions **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Wet-Mix Process for Vertical Position **OR** is ACI Shotcrete Nozzleman certified in Wet-Mix Process for Vertical and Overhead Positions as appropriate to the required shotcrete work, **as directed**.
2. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, **as directed**.
3. Comply with provisions of the following, unless more stringent requirements are indicated:
  - a. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
  - b. ACI 506.2, "Specification for Shotcrete."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
5. Shotcrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design shotcrete mixtures.

## F. Project Conditions

1. Cold-Weather Shotcreting: Protect shotcrete work from physical damage or reduced strength caused by frost, freezing, or low temperatures according to ACI 306.1 and as follows:
  - a. Discontinue shotcreting when ambient temperature is **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** and falling. Uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a shotcrete shooting temperature of not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** and not more than **90 deg F (32 deg C)**.
  - b. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  - c. Do not place shotcrete on frozen surfaces or surfaces containing frozen materials.
  - d. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents.
2. Hot-Weather Shotcreting: Mix, place, and protect shotcrete according to ACI 305R when hot-weather conditions and high temperatures would seriously impair quality and strength of shotcrete, and as follows:
  - a. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain shotcrete temperature at time of placement below **100 deg F (38 deg C)** for dry mix or **90 deg F (32 deg C)** for wet mix.
  - b. Reduce temperature of reinforcing steel and receiving surfaces below **100 deg F (38 deg C)** before shotcreting.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

## A. Form Materials

1. Forms: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, straight, smooth, concrete surfaces. Furnish panels in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

## B. Reinforcing Materials

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed** percent.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed.
3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II, zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and bending, as follows:
  - a. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420) OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed.
5. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**.
6. Plain-Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, steel wire into flat sheets.
7. Deformed-Steel-Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.
8. Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, ties, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing steel in place according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" and as follows:
  - a. For uncoated reinforcement, use all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1, plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2, stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
  - b. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
  - c. Retain paragraph and subparagraph below if devices are required to anchor, support, or space steel reinforcement.
9. Reinforcing Anchors: ASTM A 36/A 36M, unheaded rods or **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**, hex-head bolts; carbon steel; and carbon-steel nuts.
  - a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C, **as directed**.

## C. Shotcrete Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I **OR** III, **as directed**. Use only one brand and type of cement for Project.

- a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS **OR** IP **OR** I(PM) **OR** I(SM), **as directed**.
  3. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
  4. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, from a single source, and as follows:
    - a. Aggregate Gradation: ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1 with 100 percent passing **3/8-inch (10-mm)** **OR** 2 with 100 percent passing **1/2-inch (13-mm)**, **as directed**, sieve.
    - b. Coarse-Aggregate Class: 3S **OR** 3M **OR** 1N, **as directed**.
  5. Lightweight Aggregates: ASTM C 330.
    - a. Aggregate Gradation: ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1 with 100 percent passing **3/8-inch (10-mm)** **OR** 2 with 100 percent passing **1/2-inch (13-mm)**, **as directed** sieve.
  6. Coloring Agent: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored, water-reducing admixtures, free of carbon black; color stable, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designation **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  7. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M, free from deleterious materials that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of shotcrete.
  8. Carbon-Steel Fiber: ASTM C 1116, Type 1, carbon-steel fiber and ASTM A 820, Type 1, cold-drawn wire **OR** cut sheet, **as directed**, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** long.
  9. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in shotcrete, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** long.
  10. Ground Wire: High-strength steel wire, 0.8 to 1 mm in diameter.
  11. Joint Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- D. Chemical Admixtures
1. General: ASTM C 1141, Class A or B, but limited to the following admixture materials. Provide admixtures for shotcrete that contains not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions. Certify compatibility of admixtures with each other and with other cementitious materials.
    - a. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
    - b. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - f. Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
- E. Curing Materials
1. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** dry.
  2. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
  3. Water: Potable.
  4. Clear, Waterborne **OR** Solvent-Borne, **as directed**, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- F. Shotcrete Mixtures, General
1. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of shotcrete.
    - a. Limit use of fly ash **OR** ground granulated blast-furnace slag **OR** silica fume, **as directed**, to not exceed, in combination, 25 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement or cementitious materials permitted by ACI 301.
  3. Admixtures: When included in shotcrete design mixes, use admixtures and retarding admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Carbon-Steel Fiber: Uniformly disperse in shotcrete mix, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of **50 lb/cu. yd. (30 kg/cu. m)** **OR** **100 lb/cu. yd. (60 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**.
  5. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in shotcrete mix, according to manufacturer's written instructions, at a rate of **1.5 lb/cu. yd. (0.90 kg/cu. m)** **OR** **5 lb/cu. yd. (3 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**.

6. Design-Mix Adjustments: Subject to compliance with requirements, shotcrete design-mix adjustments may be proposed when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.

G. Shotcrete Mixtures

1. Proportion dry mixtures by field test data methods and wet mixtures according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301, using materials to be used on Project, to provide shotcrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **5000 psi (34.5 MPa) OR 4500 psi (31 MPa) OR 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) OR 3500 psi (24.1 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight, wet-mix shotcrete having an air content before pumping of **7 OR 8, as directed**, percent with a tolerance of plus or minus 1-1/2 percent.

H. Shotcrete Equipment

1. Mixing Equipment: Capable of thoroughly mixing shotcrete materials in sufficient quantities to maintain continuous placement.
2. Dry-Mix Delivery Equipment: Capable of discharging aggregate-cement mixture into delivery hose under close control and maintaining continuous stream of uniformly mixed materials at required velocity to discharge nozzle. Equip discharge nozzle with manually operated water-injection system for directing even distribution of water to aggregate-cement mixture.
  - a. Provide uniform, steady supply of clean, compressed air to maintain constant nozzle velocity while simultaneously operating blow pipe for cleaning away rebound.
  - b. Provide water supply with uniform pressure at discharge nozzle to ensure uniform mixing with aggregate-cement mix. Provide water pump to system if line water pressure is inadequate.
3. Wet-Mix Delivery Equipment: Capable of discharging aggregate-cement-water mixture accurately, uniformly, and continuously.

I. Batching And Mixing

1. Dry-Mix Process: Measure mix proportions by weight batching according to ASTM C 94/C 94M or by volume batching complying with ASTM C 685/C 685M requirements.
  - a. In volume batching, adjust fine-aggregate volume for bulking. Test fine-aggregate moisture content at least once daily to determine extent of bulking.
  - b. Prepackaged shotcrete materials may be used at Contractor's option. Predampen prepackaged shotcrete materials and mix before use.
2. Wet-Mix Process: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver shotcrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, **as directed**, and furnish batch ticket information.
  - a. Comply with ASTM C 685/C 685M when shotcrete ingredients are delivered dry and proportioned and mixed on-site.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Concrete or Masonry: Before applying shotcrete, remove unsound or loose materials and contaminants that may inhibit shotcrete bonding. Chip or scarify areas to be repaired to extent necessary to provide sound substrate. Cut edges square and **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep at perimeter of work, tapering remaining shoulder at 1:1 slope into cavity to eliminate square shoulders. Dampen surfaces before shotcreting.
  - a. Abrasive blast or hydroblast existing surfaces that do not require chipping to remove paint, oil, grease, or other contaminants and to provide roughened surface for proper shotcrete bonding.
2. Earth: Compact and trim to line and grade before placing shotcrete. Do not place shotcrete on frozen surfaces. Dampen surfaces before shotcreting.

3. Rock: Clean rock surfaces of loose materials, mud, and other foreign matter that might weaken shotcrete bonding.
  4. Steel: Clean steel surfaces by abrasive blasting according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- B. Forms
1. General: Design, erect, support, brace, and maintain forms, according to ACI 301, to support shotcrete and construction loads and to facilitate shotcreting. Construct forms so shotcrete members and structures are secured to prevent excessive vibration or deflection during shotcreting.
    - a. Fabricate forms to be readily removable without impact, shock, or damage to shotcrete surfaces and adjacent materials.
    - b. Construct forms to required sizes, shapes, lines, and dimensions using ground wires and depth gages to obtain accurate alignment, location, and grades in finished structures. Construct forms to prevent mortar leakage but permit escape of air and rebound during shotcreting. Provide for openings, offsets, blocking, screeds, anchorages, inserts, and other features required in the Work.
  2. Form openings, chases, recesses, bulkheads, keyways, and screeds in formwork. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items. Accurately place and securely support items built into forms.
- C. Steel Reinforcement
1. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  2. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other materials that weaken shotcrete bonding.
  3. Securely embed reinforcing anchors into existing substrates, located as required.
  4. Accurately position, support, and rigidly secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or shotcreting. Locate and support reinforcement by metal chairs, runners, bolsters, spacers, and hangers, as required.
  5. Place reinforcement to obtain minimum coverage for shotcrete protection. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position during shotcreting. Set wire ties with ends directed into shotcrete, not toward exposed shotcrete surfaces.
  6. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
- D. Joints
1. Construction Joints: Locate and install construction joints tapered to a 1:1 slope where joint is not subject to compression loads and square where joint is perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement through construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Contraction Joints: Construct contraction joints in shotcrete using saw cuts **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide-by-1/3 slab depth or joint-filler strips **1/4-inch- (6-mm-)** wide-by-1/3 shotcrete depth, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. After shotcrete has cured, remove strip inserts and clean groove of loose debris.
    - b. Space joints at **15 feet (4.5 m)** o.c. **OR** centers indicated, **as directed**, horizontally and vertically.
    - c. Tool edges round on each side of strip inserts if floated or troweled finishes are required.
- E. Alignment Control
1. Ground Wires: Install ground wires to establish thickness and planes of shotcrete surfaces. Install ground wires at corners and offsets not established by forms. Pull ground wires taut and position adjustment devices to permit additional tightening.
- F. Embedded Items



1. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by shotcrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

#### G. Application

1. Apply temporary protective coverings and protect adjacent surfaces against deposit of rebound and overspray or impact from nozzle stream.
2. Moisten wood forms immediately before placing shotcrete where form coatings are not used.
3. Apply shotcrete according to ACI 506.2.
4. Apply dry-mix shotcrete materials within 45 minutes after predampening and wet-mix shotcrete materials within 90 minutes after batching.
5. Deposit shotcrete continuously in multiple passes, to required thickness, without cold joints and laminations developing. Place shotcrete with nozzle held perpendicular to receiving surface. Begin shotcreting in corners and recesses.
6. Remove and dispose of rebound and overspray materials during shotcreting to maintain clean surfaces and to prevent rebound entrapment.
7. Maintain reinforcement in position during shotcreting. Place shotcrete to completely encase reinforcement and other embedded items. Maintain steel reinforcement free of overspray and prevent buildup against front face during shotcreting.
8. Do not place subsequent lifts until previous lift of shotcrete is capable of supporting new shotcrete.
9. Do not permit shotcrete to sag, slough, or dislodge.
10. Remove hardened overspray, rebound, and laitance from shotcrete surfaces to receive additional layers of shotcrete; dampen surfaces before shotcreting.
11. Do not disturb shotcrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations.
12. Remove ground wires or other alignment control devices after shotcrete placement.
13. Shotcrete Core Grade: Apply shotcrete to achieve mean core grades not exceeding 2.5 according to ACI 506.2, with no single core grade exceeding 3.0.
14. Installation Tolerances: Place shotcrete without exceeding installation tolerances permitted by ACI 117R, increased by a factor of 2.

#### H. Surface Finishes

1. General: Finish shotcrete according to descriptions in ACI 506R for the following finishes:
2. Natural Finish:
  - a. Gun Finish: Natural undisturbed finish.
  - b. Rod Finish: Rough-textured finish obtained by cutting or screeding exposed face of shotcrete to plane by rod or straightedge after initial set, and wood-float finished **OR** and steel-trowel finished **as directed**.
  - c. Broom Finish: Rough-textured finish obtained by screeding exposed face of shotcrete to required plane by rod, cutting screed, or trowel, and brooming after initial set.
3. Flash-Coat Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply up to **1/4-inch (6-mm)** coat of shotcrete using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve to provide a finely textured finish.
4. Flash-Coat and Final Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply up to **1/4-inch (6-mm)** coat of shotcrete using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and apply wood-float **OR** rubber-float **OR** brush-float **OR** steel-trowel, **as directed**, finish.
5. Finish-Coat Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply shotcrete finish coat, **1/4 to 1 inch (6 to 25 mm)** thick, using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with maximum aggregate size not exceeding **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve to provide a finish of uniform texture and appearance.
6. Finish-Coat and Final Finish: After screeding and rodding surface, apply shotcrete finish coat, **1/4 to 1 inch (6 to 25 mm)** thick, using ACI 506R, Gradation No. 1, fine-screened sand modified with

maximum aggregate size not exceeding **No. 4 (4.75-mm)** sieve and apply wood-float **OR** rubber-float **OR** brush-float **OR** steel-trowel, **as directed**, finish.

I. Curing

1. Protect freshly placed shotcrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Start initial curing as soon as free water has disappeared from shotcrete surface after placing and finishing.
3. Curing Exposed Surfaces: Cure shotcrete by one of the following methods:
  - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for at least seven days with water, continuous water-fog spray, water-saturated absorptive covers, or moisture-retaining covers. Lap and seal sides and ends of covers.
  - b. Curing Compound: Apply curing compound uniformly in continuous operation by power spray according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    - 1) Apply curing compound to natural- or gun-finished shotcrete at rate of **1 gal./100 sq. ft. (1 L/2.5 sq. m)**.
4. Curing Formed Surfaces: Cure formed shotcrete surfaces by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period or until forms are removed. If forms are removed, continue curing by methods specified above, as applicable.

J. Form Removal

1. Forms not supporting weight of shotcrete may be removed after curing at not less than **50 deg F (10 deg C)** for 24 consecutive hours after gunning, provided shotcrete is hard enough not to be damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protecting operations are maintained.
  - a. Leave forms supporting weight of shotcrete in place until shotcrete has attained design compressive strength. Determine compressive strength of in-place shotcrete by testing representative field-cured specimens of shotcrete.
  - b. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
2. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing materials are unacceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-coating compound as specified for new formwork.

K. Field Quality Control

1. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample materials, visually grade cores, perform tests, and submit reports during shotcreting.
2. Air Content: ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method or ASTM C 231, pressure method; 1 test for each compressive-strength test for each mix of air-entrained, wet-mix shotcrete measured before pumping.
3. Shotcrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; 1 test hourly when air temperature is **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** and below and when **80 deg F (27 deg C)** and above, and 1 test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
4. Test Panels: Make a test panel, reinforced as in structure, for each shotcrete mix and for each workday or for every **50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m)** of shotcrete placed; whichever is less. Produce test panels with dimensions of **24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm)** minimum and of average thickness of shotcrete, but not less than **4-1/2 inches (115 mm)**. From each test panel, testing agency will obtain six test specimens: one set of three specimens unreinforced and one set of three specimens reinforced.
  - a. Test each set of unreinforced specimens for compressive strength according to ASTM C 1140 and construction testing requirements in ACI 506.2.
  - b. Visually inspect each set of reinforced shotcrete cores taken from test panels and determine mean core grades according to ACI 506.2.



5. In-Place Shotcrete: Take a set of 3 unreinforced cores for each mix and for each workday or for every 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) of shotcrete placed; whichever is less. Test cores for compressive strength according to ACI 506.2 and ASTM C 42. Do not cut steel reinforcement.
6. Strength of shotcrete will be considered satisfactory when mean compressive strength of each set of 3 unreinforced cores equals or exceeds 85 percent of specified compressive strength, with no individual core less than 75 percent of specified compressive strength.
  - a. Mean compressive strength of each set of 3 unreinforced cubes shall equal or exceed design compressive strength with no individual cube less than 88 percent of specified compressive strength.

L. Repairs

1. Remove and replace shotcrete that is delaminated or exhibits laminations, voids, or sand/rock pockets exceeding limits for specified core grade of shotcrete.
  - a. Remove unsound or loose materials and contaminants that may inhibit bond of shotcrete repairs. Chip or scarify areas to be repaired to extent necessary to provide sound substrate. Cut edges square and 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep at perimeter of work, tapering remaining shoulder at 1:1 slope into cavity to eliminate square shoulders. Dampen surfaces and apply new shotcrete.
2. Repair core holes from in-place testing according to repair provisions in ACI 301 and match adjacent finish, texture, and color.

M. Cleaning

1. Remove and dispose of rebound and overspray materials from final shotcrete surfaces and areas not intended for shotcrete placement.

END OF SECTION 03 37 13 00

## SECTION 03 37 13 00a - GLASS FIBER REINFORCED CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for glass-fiber-reinforced precast concrete panels. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes glass-fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) panels consisting of GFRC panel frames, anchors, and connection hardware.
  - a. GFRC panels include wall units, window wall units, mullions, column covers, fascia units, cornices, and soffits.

#### C. Definitions

1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved GFRC color, finish, and texture; preapproved by the Owner.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide GFRC panels, including panel frames, anchors, and connections, capable of withstanding the following design loads as well as the effects of thermal- and moisture-induced volume changes, according to load factors and combinations established in PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels."
  - a. Design Loads: As required to meet Project requirements.
  - b. Deflection Limits: Design panel frames to withstand design loads without lateral deflections greater than 1/240 of wall span.
  - c. Thermal Movements: Provide for thermal movements resulting from annual ambient temperature changes of 100 deg F (56 deg C).
  - d. Design panel frames and connections to accommodate deflections and other building movements.
  - e. Design panel frames to transfer window loads to building structure.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include GFRC design mixes.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for GFRC panels including the following:
  - a. Structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - b. Panel elevations, sections, and dimensions.
  - c. Thickness of facing mix, GFRC backing, and bonding pads for typical panels.
  - d. Finishes.
  - e. Joint and connection details.
  - f. Erection details.
  - g. Panel frame details for typical panels including sizes, spacings, thickness, and yield strength of various members.
  - h. Location and details of connection hardware attached to structure.
  - i. Size, location, and details of flex, gravity, and seismic anchors for typical panels.
  - j. Other items sprayed into panels.
  - k. Erection sequence for special conditions.
  - l. Relationship to adjacent materials.
  - m. Description of loose, cast-in, and field hardware.

3. Samples: Representative of finished exposed face of GFRC showing the full range of colors and textures specified, **12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm)** and of actual thickness.
4. Qualification Data: For qualified GFRC manufacturer, including proof of current Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) or Architectural Precast Association (APA) Plant Certification.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Steel Sheet Certification: For steel sheet used in cold-formed steel panel framing.
7. Mill Certificates: For structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections used in panel framing.
8. Source Quality-Control Program: For GFRC manufacturer.
9. Source Quality-Control Test Reports: For GFRC, inserts, and anchors.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that participates in PCI's Plant Certification Program and is designated a PCI-Certified Plant for Group G - Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete or that participates in APA's Plant Certification Program and is certified for GFRC production.
  - a. Manufacturer's responsibility includes fabricating and installing GFRC panels and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility for GFRC panels.
  - b. Engineering responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis, based on GFRC production test values, by a qualified professional engineer experienced in GFRC design.
2. Steel Sheet Certifications: Obtain mill certificates signed by manufacturers of steel sheet, or test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating that steel sheet used in cold-formed metal panel framing complies with requirements including uncoated steel thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and galvanized-coating thickness.
3. Mill Certificates: Obtain certified mill test reports from manufacturer of structural-steel shapes and hollow structural sections used in panel framing indicating compliance of these products with requirements.
4. Source Limitations: Obtain GFRC panels from single source from single manufacturer.
5. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
6. PCI Manuals: Comply with requirements and recommendations in the following PCI manuals unless more stringent requirements are indicated:
  - a. PCI MNL 128, "Recommended Practice for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels."
  - b. PCI MNL 130, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Products."
7. AISC Specifications: Comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design" **OR** "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" **OR** "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections," **as directed**, if using structural-steel shapes or hollow structural sections for panel frames.
8. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Handle and transport GFRC panels to avoid damage.
  - a. Place nonstaining resilient spacers between panels.
  - b. Support panels on nonstaining material during shipment.
  - c. Protect panels from dirt and damage during handling and transport.
2. Store GFRC panels to protect from contact with soil, staining, and physical damage.
  - a. Store panels with nonstaining resilient supports in same positions as when transported.
  - b. Store panels on firm, level, and smooth surfaces.
  - c. Place stored panels so identification marks are clearly visible.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Mold Materials

1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, nonabsorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true GFRC surfaces; nonreactive with GFRC and capable of producing required finish surfaces.
  - a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of GFRC.
2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match GFRC design reference sample, **as directed**. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure that form liners remain in place during GFRC application. Use with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect GFRC surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of GFRC.
3. Surface Retarder: Chemical liquid set retarder capable of temporarily delaying hardening of newly placed GFRC face mix to depth of reveal specified.

### B. GFRC Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150; Type I, II, or III.
  - a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, use gray **OR** white, **as directed**, of same type, brand, and source throughout GFRC production.
  - b. Metakaolin: ASTM C 618, Class N.
2. Glass Fibers: Alkali resistant, with a minimum zirconia content of 16 percent, **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)** long, specifically produced for use in GFRC, and complying with PCI MNL 130.
3. Sand: Washed and dried silica, complying with composition requirements in ASTM C 144; passing **No. 20 (0.85-mm)** sieve with a maximum of 2 percent passing **No. 100 (0.15-mm)** sieve.
4. Facing Aggregate: ASTM C 33, except for gradation, and PCI MNL 130, **1/4-inch (6-mm)** maximum size.
  - a. Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match sample.
5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, nonfading, and alkali resistant.
6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of GFRC and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 130.
7. Polymer-Curing Admixture: Acrylic thermoplastic copolymer dispersion complying with PCI MNL 130.
8. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.
9. Chemical Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, containing not more than 0.1 percent chloride ions.

### C. Anchors, Connectors, And Miscellaneous Materials

1. Stainless-Steel Plates: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
2. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M. Finish steel shapes and plates less than **3/16 inch (4.76 mm)** thick as follows:
  - a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Finish: Shop primed with MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
3. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
4. Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 108, AISI Grade 1018. Finish steel bars less than **3/16 inch (4.76 mm)** thick as follows:
  - a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, or ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.

- b. Finish: Shop primed with MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
- 5. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/ A 47M, **Grade 32510 (Grade 22010)**.
- 6. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, **Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205)**.
- 7. Bolts: **ASTM A 307 or ASTM A 325 (ASTM F 568M or ASTM A 325M)**.
  - a. Finish: Zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, after fabrication, and ASTM A 153/A 153M, as applicable **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, **as directed**.
- 8. Reglets: PVC extrusions **OR** Stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick, **as directed**.

#### D. Panel Frame Materials

- 1. Cold-Formed Steel Framing: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, complying with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members," minimum uncoated steel thickness of **0.053 inch (1.34 mm)** of web depth indicated, with stiffened flanges, U-shaped steel track, and of the following steel sheet:
  - a. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural-steel sheet, **G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275)**, **as directed**, zinc coating, of grade required by structural performance of framing.
  - b. Painted, Nonmetallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot rolled; or ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold rolled; nonmetallic coated according to ASTM A 1003/A 1003M; of grade required by structural performance of framing.
- 2. Hollow Structural Sections: Steel tubing, ASTM A 500, Grade B, or ASTM A 513. Finish hollow structural sections with wall thickness less than **3/16 inch (4.76 mm)** as follows:
  - a. Organic Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-Paint 20 on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Primer: MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.
- 3. Steel Channels and Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M, finished as follows:
  - a. Organic Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-Paint 20 on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Primer: MPI#79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, on surfaces prepared to comply with SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or better.

#### E. GFRC Mixes

- 1. Backing Mix: Proportion backing mix of portland cement, glass fibers, sand, and admixtures to comply with design requirements. Provide nominal glass-fiber content of not less than 5 percent by weight of total mix.
- 2. Face Mix: Proportion face mix of portland cement, sand, facing aggregates, and admixtures to comply with design requirements.
- 3. Mist Coat: Portland cement, sand slurry, and admixtures; of same proportions as backing mix without glass fibers.
- 4. Polymer-Curing Admixture: 6 to 7 percent by weight of polymer-curing admixture solids to dry portland cement.
- 5. Air Content: 8 to 10 percent; ASTM C 185.
- 6. Coloring Admixture: Not to exceed 10 percent of cement weight.

#### F. Panel Frame Fabrication

- 1. Fabricate panel frames and accessories plumb, square, true to line, and with components securely fastened, according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.
  - a. Fabricate panel frames using jigs or templates.
  - b. Cut cold-formed metal framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - c. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.



- d. Fasten framing members of hollow structural sections, steel channels, or steel angles by welding. Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
      - e. Weld flex, gravity, and seismic anchors to panel frames.
    2. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies, if necessary, to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies in a manner that prevents damage or significant distortion.
    3. Galvanizing Repair: Touch up accessible damaged galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.
    4. Painting Repair: Touch up accessible damaged painted surfaces using same primer.
  - G. Mold Fabrication
    1. Construct molds that will result in finished GFRC complying with profiles, dimensions, and tolerances indicated, without damaging GFRC during stripping. Construct molds to prevent water leakage and loss of cement paste.
      - a. Coat contact surfaces of molds with form-release agent.
      - b. Coat contact surfaces of molds with surface retarder.
    2. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during GFRC application. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
    3. Locate, place, and secure flashing reglets accurately.
  - H. GFRC Fabrication
    1. Proportioning and Mixing: For backing mix, meter sand/cement slurry and glass fibers to spray head at rates to achieve design mix proportions and glass-fiber content according to PCI MNL 130 procedures.
    2. Spray Application: Comply with general procedures as follows:
      - a. Spray mist coat over molds to a nominal thickness of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** on planar surfaces.
      - b. Spray or place face mix in thickness indicated on Shop Drawings.
      - c. Proceed with spraying backing mix before face mix **OR** mist coat, **as directed**, has set, using procedures that produce a uniform thickness and even distribution of glass fibers and matrix.
      - d. Consolidate backing mix by rolling or other technique to achieve complete encapsulation of glass fibers and compaction.
      - e. Measure thickness with a pin gage or other acceptable method at least once for each **5 sq. ft. (0.5 sq. m)** of panel surface. Take not less than six measurements per panel.
    3. Hand form and consolidate intricate details, incorporate formers or infill materials, and over spray before material reaches initial set to ensure complete bonding.
    4. Attach panel frame to GFRC before initial set of GFRC backing, maintaining a minimum clearance of **1/2 inch (13 mm)** from GFRC backing, and without anchors protruding into GFRC backing.
    5. Build up homogeneous GFRC bonding pads over anchor feet, maintaining a minimum thickness of **1/2 inch (13 mm)** over tops of anchor feet, before initial set of GFRC backing.
    6. Inserts and Embedments: Build up homogeneous GFRC bosses or bonding pads over inserts and embedments to provide sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements.
    7. Curing: Employ initial curing method that will ensure sufficient strength for removing units from mold. Comply with PCI MNL 130 procedures.
    8. Panel Identification: Mark each GFRC panel to correspond with identification mark on Shop Drawings. Mark each panel with its casting date.
  - I. Fabrication Tolerances
    1. Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC panels so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 130 for dimension, position, and tolerances.  
**OR**

Manufacturing Tolerances: Manufacture GFRC panels so each finished unit complies with the following dimensional tolerances. For dimensional tolerances not listed below, comply with PCI MNL 130.

- a. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Adjacent to Mold: As follows:
  - 1) 10 feet (3 m) or less, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - 2) More than 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/8 inch per 10 feet (3 mm per 3 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum.
- b. Edge Return Thickness: Plus 1/2 inch (13 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
- c. Architectural Facing Thickness: Plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
- d. Backing Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 0 inch (0 mm).
- e. Panel Depth from Face of Skin to Back of Panel Frame or Integral Rib: Plus 3/8 inch (10 mm), minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- f. Angular Variation of Plane of Side Mold: Plus or minus 1/32 inch per 3 inches (0.8 mm per 75 mm) of depth or plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) total, whichever is greater.
- g. Variation from Square or Designated Skew (Difference in Length of Two Diagonal Measurements): Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 72 inches (3 mm per 1800 mm) or plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) total, whichever is greater.
- h. Local Smoothness: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
- i. Bowing: Not to exceed L/240 unless unit meets erection tolerances using connection adjustments.
- j. Length and Width of Block Outs and Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- k. Location of Window Opening within Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- l. Maximum Permissible Warpage of One Corner out of the Plane of the Other Three: 1/16 inch per 12 inches (1.5 mm per 305 mm) of distance from nearest adjacent corner.
2. Position Tolerances: Measured from datum line locations, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - a. Panel Frame and Track: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - b. Flashing Reglets at Edge of Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - c. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - d. Special Handling Devices: Plus or minus 3 inches (75 mm).
  - e. Location of Bearing Devices: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - f. Blockouts: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. Panel Frame Tolerances: As follows:
  - a. Vertical and Horizontal Alignment: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
  - b. Spacing of Framing Member: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - c. Squareness of Frame: Difference in length of diagonals of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - d. Overall Size of Frame: Plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).

#### J. Finishes

1. Finish exposed-face surfaces of GFRC as follows to match approved design reference sample. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, or other obvious defects.
  - a. Design Reference Sample: <Insert description and identify manufacturer and code number of sample>.
  - b. As-Cast-Surface Finish: Provide free of sand streaks, honeycombs, and excessive air voids, with uniform color and texture.
  - c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners to provide surfaces free of sand streaks, honeycombs, and excessive air voids, with uniform color and texture.
  - d. Retarded Finish: Use chemical-retarding agents applied to concrete forms and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  - e. Sand- or Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  - f. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.

K. Source Quality Control

1. Quality-Control Testing: Establish and maintain a quality-control program for manufacturing GFRC panels according to PCI MNL 130.
  - a. Test materials and inspect production techniques.
  - b. Quality-control program shall monitor glass-fiber content, spray rate, unit weight, product physical properties, anchor pull-off and shear strength, and curing period and conditions.
  - c. Prepare test specimens and test according to ASTM C 1228, PCI MNL 130, and PCI MNL 128 procedures.
  - d. Test GFRC inserts and anchors according to ASTM C 1230 to validate design values.
  - e. Produce test boards at a rate not less than one per work shift per operator for each spray machine and for each mix design.
    - 1) For each test board, determine glass-fiber content according to ASTM C 1229, and flexural yield and ultimate strength according to ASTM C 947.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine structure and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, true and level bearing surfaces, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Erection

1. Install clips, hangers, and other accessories required for connecting GFRC panels to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Lift GFRC panels and install without damage.
3. Install GFRC panels level, plumb, square, and in alignment. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of panels until permanent connections are completed.
  - a. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width.
  - b. Remove projecting hoisting devices.
4. Connect GFRC panels in position by bolting or welding, or both, as indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as possible after connecting is completed.
5. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.3 requirements for welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - a. Protect GFRC panels from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
6. At bolted connections, use lock washers or other acceptable means to prevent loosening of nuts.

C. Erection Tolerances

1. Erect GFRC panels to comply with the following noncumulative tolerances:
  - a. Plan Location from Building Grid Datum: Plus or minus **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
  - b. Top Elevation from Nominal Top Elevation: As follows:
    - 1) Exposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
    - 2) Nonexposed Individual Panel: Plus or minus **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
    - 3) Exposed Panel Relative to Adjacent Panel: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
    - 4) Nonexposed Panel Relative to Adjacent Panel: **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
  - c. Support Elevation from Nominal Elevation: As follows:
    - 1) Maximum Low: **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
    - 2) Maximum High: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - d. Maximum Plumb Variation over the Lesser of Height of Structure or **100 Feet (30 m)**: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - e. Plumb in Any **10 Feet (3 m)** of Element Height: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - f. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Edges: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - g. Maximum Jog in Alignment of Matching Faces: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.



- h. Face Width of Joint: As follows (governs over joint taper):
  - 1) Panel Dimension **20 Feet (6 m)** or Less: Plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - 2) Panel Dimension More Than **20 Feet (6 m)**: Plus or minus **5/16 inch (8 mm)**.
- i. Maximum Joint Taper: **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
- j. Joint Taper in **10 Feet (3 m)**: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
- k. Differential Bowing, as Erected, between Adjacent Members of Same Design: **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.

D. Repairs

- 1. Repairs will be permitted provided structural adequacy of GFRF panel and appearance are not impaired, as approved by the Owner.
- 2. Mix patching materials and repair GFRF so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces.
- 3. Prepare and repair accessible damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
- 4. Wire brush, clean, and paint accessible weld areas on prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
- 5. Remove and replace damaged GFRF panels when repairs do not comply with requirements.

E. Cleaning And Protection

- 1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to GFRF manufacturer's written instructions. Clean soiled GFRF surfaces with detergent and water, using soft fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Prevent damage to GFRF surfaces and staining of adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 37 13 00a



Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 37 16 00	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 37 16 00	03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 39 13 00	03 11 16 13a	Cast-In-Place Architectural Concrete
03 39 23 23	03 05 13 00	Cast-In-Place Concrete

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 41 16 00 - PRECAST LIGHTWEIGHT ROOF SLABS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of precast lightweight roof deck concrete channels, concrete planks, and gypsum planks. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Channel Slabs: Slabs shall be composed of Portland cement and lightweight aggregate with minimum compressive strength 3,750 psi. Legs shall be reinforced with deformed bars; web shall have welded wire fabric reinforcement. Channels shall support a 30 psf live load plus a 20 psf superimposed dead load.
- B. Concrete Planks: Planks shall be composed of Portland cement and lightweight aggregate with a minimum compressive strength of 3,750 psi. Planks shall be reinforced with welded wire fabric. Planks shall support a 30 psf live load plus a 20 psf superimposed dead load.
- C. Gypsum Planks shall conform to ASTM C 956, factory-laminated to 2-inch thickness, 2-foot wide panels. Planks shall be continuously supported along sides.
- D. Subpurlins shall be bulb-ties, ASTM A 440.
- E. Grout shall be lightweight concrete or gypsum concrete.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Concrete Channels and Planks shall be securely attached to support steel or concrete by metal clips or other approved attachments; minimum support bearing shall be 4 inches. Open joints between channels or planks shall be filled with lightweight concrete grout. Planks with tongue and groove edges may not require grouting.
- B. Gypsum Planks shall be snugly fit between bulb-tee subpurlins. Subpurlins shall be tack-welded or screw-attached to supporting steel or weld bar cast in supporting concrete. Joints at bulb-tees shall be grouted with gypsum grout.

END OF SECTION 03 41 16 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 41 23 00 - PLANT-PRECAST STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plant-precast structural concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Precast structural concrete.
  - b. Precast structural concrete with thin-brick or stone facings.
  - c. Precast structural concrete with commercial architectural finish.

#### C. Definition

1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved precast structural concrete color, finish, and texture, preapproved by the Owner.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design precast structural concrete, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Precast structural concrete units and connections shall withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Select material and minimum thicknesses to provide indicated fire rating.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for portland cement or other portland cement replacements and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
3. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture. Include compressive strength and water-absorption tests.
4. Shop Drawings: Include member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes and sections, openings, support conditions, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Detail fabrication and installation of precast structural concrete units.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For precast structural concrete indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For Installer **OR** fabricator **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Material Certificates.
9. Material Test Reports.
10. Source quality-control reports.
11. Field quality-control and special inspection, **as directed**, reports.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering precast structural concrete units to comply with performance requirements. Responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  - a. Participates in PCI's Plant Certification program and is designated a PCI-certified plant as follows:
    - 1) Group C, Category C1 - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement) **OR** Category C2 - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products **OR** Category C3 - Prestressed Straight Strand Structural Members **OR** Category C4 - Prestressed Deflected Strand Structural Members, **as directed**.
    - 2) Group CA, Category C1A - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement) **OR** Category C2A - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products **OR** Category C3A - Prestressed Straight-Strand Structural Members **OR** Category C4A - Prestressed Deflected-Strand Structural Members, **as directed**.
2. Design Standards: Comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** and design recommendations in PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of precast structural concrete units indicated.
3. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 116, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products."
4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D.1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
5. Fire-Resistance Calculations: Where indicated, provide precast structural concrete units whose fire resistance meets the prescriptive requirements of authorities having jurisdiction or has been calculated according to ACI 216.1/TMS 0216.1, "Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies," **OR** PCI MNL 124, "Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete," **as directed**, and is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material in same position as during storage.
2. Store units with adequate bracing and protect units to prevent contact with soil, to prevent staining, and to prevent cracking, distortion, warping or other physical damage.
  - a. Store units with dunnage across full width of each bearing point unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Place adequate dunnage of even thickness between each unit.
  - c. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.
3. Handle and transport units in a position consistent with their shape and design in order to avoid excessive stresses that would cause cracking or damage.
4. Lift and support units only at designated points shown on Shop Drawings.

H. Coordination

1. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction before starting that Work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Mold Materials

1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, non-absorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.
    - a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
  2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match those used for precast concrete design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
  3. Surface Retarder: Chemical set retarder, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete mixture to depth of reveal specified.
- B. Reinforcing Materials
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
  2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed.
  3. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
  4. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized, and chromate wash treated after fabrication and bending, **as directed**.
  5. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M **OR** ASTM A 934/A 934M, **as directed**, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each **12-inch (300-mm)** bar length.
  6. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)** **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
  7. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn steel **OR** galvanized-steel, **as directed**, wire into flat sheets.
  8. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
  9. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, flat sheet, Type 1 bendable **OR** Type 2 nonbendable, **as directed**, coating.
  10. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 116.
- C. Prestressing Tendons
1. Pretensioning Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, **Grade 250 (Grade 1720)** or **Grade 270 (Grade 1860)**, uncoated, 7-wire **OR** ASTM A 886/A 886M, **Grade 270 (Grade 1860)**, indented, 7-wire, **as directed**, low-relaxation strand.
  2. Unbonded Post-Tensioning Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, **Grade 270 (Grade 1860)**, uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation strand.
    - a. Coat unbonded post-tensioning strand with post-tensioning coating complying with ACI 423.6 and sheath with polypropylene tendon sheathing complying with ACI 423.6. Include anchorage devices and coupler assemblies.
  3. Post-Tensioning Bars: ASTM A 722, uncoated high-strength steel bar.
- D. Concrete Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, mix gray with white cement, of same type, brand, and mill source.
  2. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
    - b. Metakaolin Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class N.



- c. Silica Fume Admixture: ASTM C 1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
    - d. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S **OR** Class 5M **OR** Class 4S **OR** Class 4M, **as directed**. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.
    - a. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
      - 1) Gradation: Uniformly graded **OR** Gap graded **OR** To match design reference sample, **as directed**.
    - b. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of same material as coarse aggregate unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  4. Lightweight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 330, with absorption less than 11 percent.
  5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, and nonfading.
  6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 116.
  7. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  8. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
    - d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
    - e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
    - f. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
    - g. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M.
  9. Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- E. Steel Connection Materials
1. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  2. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 108, AISI 1018 through AISI 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.
  3. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M.
  4. Malleable-Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/A 47M.
  5. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, **Grade 60-30 (Grade 415-205)**.
  6. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A 572/A 572M.
  7. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
  8. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 675/A 675M, **Grade 65 (Grade 450)**.
  9. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496 or ASTM A 706/A 706M.
  10. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F 844.
  11. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: **ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M)** or **ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M)**, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and hardened carbon-steel washers, **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**.
    - a. Do not zinc coat **ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M)** bolts.
  12. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, **as directed**, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M

or ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, Types 1 and 2, **as directed**.

- a. For steel shapes, plates, and tubing to be galvanized, limit silicon content of steel to less than 0.03 percent or to between 0.15 and 0.25 percent or limit sum of silicon and 2.5 times phosphorous content to 0.09 percent.
  - b. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.
13. Shop-Primed Finish: Prepare surfaces of nongalvanized-steel items, except those surfaces to be embedded in concrete, according to requirements in SSPC-SP 3, and shop apply lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer, complying with performance requirements in MPI 79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, according to SSPC-PA 1.
  14. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
  15. Precast Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install precast structural concrete units.
- F. Stainless-Steel Connection Materials
1. Stainless-Steel Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304, of grade suitable for application.
  2. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM F 593, Alloy 304 or 316, hex-head bolts and studs; stainless-steel nuts; and flat, stainless-steel washers. Lubricate threaded parts of stainless-steel bolts with an antiseize thread lubricant during assembly.
  3. Stainless-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 276, with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.
- G. Bearing Pads
1. Provide one of the following bearing pads for precast structural concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application, **as directed**:
    - a. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M 251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, 50 to 70 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; minimum tensile strength **2250 psi (15.5 MPa)**, ASTM D 412.
    - b. Random-Oriented, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. 70 to 90 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; capable of supporting a compressive stress of **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** with no cracking, splitting, or delaminating in the internal portions of pad. Test 1 specimen for every 200 pads used in Project.
    - c. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric bonded to an elastomer; 80 to 100 Shore, Type A durometer hardness, ASTM D 2240; complying with AASHTO's "AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Specifications," Division II, Section 18.10.2; or with MIL-C-882E.
    - d. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene, glass-fiber reinforced, bonded to stainless- or mild-steel plate, of type required for in-service stress.
    - e. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.
- H. Grout Materials
1. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144 or ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
  2. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time.
  3. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C 881/C 881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.
- I. Thin-Brick Units And Accessories

1. Thin-Brick Units: ASTM C 216, Type FBX or ASTM C 1088, Grade Exterior, Type TBX, not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, as directed, thick with a tolerance of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, and as follows:
  - a. Face Color and Texture: Match the Owner's samples **OR** Medium brown, wire cut **OR** Full-range red, sand molded **OR** Gray, velour, as directed.
  - b. Face Size:
    - 1) **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** high by **8 inches (203 mm)** long.
    - 2) **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** high by **7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm)** long.
    - 3) **2-3/4 to 2-13/16 inches (70 to 71 mm)** high by **7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm)** long.
    - 4) **3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm)** high by **7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm)** long.
    - 5) **3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm)** high by **11-1/2 to 11-5/8 inches (292 to 295 mm)** long.
  - c. Where indicated to "match existing," provide thin brick matching color, texture, and face size of existing adjacent brick work.
  - d. Face Size:
    - 1) 57 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - 2) 70 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - 3) 90 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - 4) 90 mm high by 290 mm long.
  - e. Special Shapes: Include corners, edge corners, and end edge corners.
  - f. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than **30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm)** per minute; ASTM C 67.
  - g. Efflorescence: Tested according to ASTM C 67 and rated "not effloresced."
  - h. Surface Coating: Thin brick with colors or textures applied as coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing; ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in applied finish when viewed from **10 feet (3 m)**.
  - i. Back Surface Texture: Scored, combed, wire roughened, ribbed, keybacked, or dovetailed.
2. Sand-Cement Mortar: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 4 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement.
3. Latex-Portland Cement Pointing Grout: ANSI A118.6 and as follows:
  - a. Dry-grout mixture, factory prepared, of portland cement, graded aggregate, and dry, redispersible, ethylene-vinyl-acetate additive for mixing with water; uniformly colored.
  - b. Commercial portland cement grout, factory prepared, with liquid styrene-butadiene rubber or acrylic-resin latex additive; uniformly colored.
  - c. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match the Owner's samples **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, as directed.

J. Stone Materials And Accessories

1. Stone facing for precast structural concrete is specified in Division 04 Section "Exterior Stone Cladding".
2. Anchors: Stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304, of temper and diameter required to support loads without exceeding allowable design stresses.
  - a. Fit each anchor leg with neoprene grommet collar of width at least twice the diameter and of length at least five times the diameter of anchor.
3. Sealant Filler: ASTM C 920, low-modulus, multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that is nonstaining to stone substrate.
4. Epoxy Filler: ASTM C 881/C 881M, 100 percent solids, sand-filled nonshrinking, nonstaining of type, class, and grade to suit application.
  - a. Elastomeric Anchor Sleeve: **1/2 inch (13 mm)** long; 60 Shore, Type A durometer hardness; ASTM D 2240.

5. Bond Breaker: Preformed, compressible, resilient, nonstaining, nonwaxing, closed-cell polyethylene foam pad, nonabsorbent to liquid and gas, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick **OR** Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, **6 to 10 mils (0.15 to 0.25 mm)** thick, **as directed**.
- K. Insulated Flat Wall Panel Accessories
1. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, **0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type VIII, **1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type II, **1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
  2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, **1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type X, **1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type VI, **1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
  3. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type I, **1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type IV, **2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type II, **2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, unfaced, with R-value and thickness as directed by the Owner.
  4. Wythe Connectors: Glass-fiber connectors **OR** Vinyl-ester polymer connectors **OR** Polypropylene pin connectors **OR** Stainless-steel pin connectors **OR** Bent galvanized reinforcing bars **OR** Galvanized welded wire trusses **OR** Galvanized bent wire connectors **OR** Cylindrical metal sleeve anchors, **as directed**, manufactured to connect wythes of precast concrete panels.
- L. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.
    - a. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
    - b. Limit use of fly ash to 25 percent replacement of portland cement by weight and granulated blast-furnace slag to 40 percent of portland cement by weight; metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at precast structural concrete fabricator's option.
  3. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** or PCI MNL 116 when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.
  4. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion face mixtures **OR** face and backup mixtures **OR** full-depth mixture, **as directed**, by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
    - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)**.
    - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
  5. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to PCI MNL 116.
  6. Lightweight Concrete Backup Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.2, with materials to be used on Project, to provide lightweight concrete with the following properties:
    - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)**.
    - b. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of **115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m)**, plus or minus **3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)**, according to ASTM C 567.
  7. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 116.
  8. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  9. Concrete Mix Adjustments: Concrete mix design adjustments may be proposed if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.
- M. Mold Fabrication
1. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and



detensioning operations. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.

- a. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during concrete placement. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
2. Maintain molds to provide completed precast structural concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
  - a. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.
  - b. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered **OR** radiused, **as directed**.

#### N. Thin-Brick Facings

1. Place form-liner templates accurately to provide grid for thin-brick facings. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners while placing thin bricks and during concrete placement.
2. Securely place thin-brick units face down into form-liner pockets and place concrete backing mixture.
3. Completely fill joint cavities between thin-brick units with sand-cement mortar, and place precast concrete backing mixture while sand-cement mortar is still fluid enough to ensure bond.
4. Mix and install pointing grout according to ANSI A108.10. Completely fill joint cavities between thin-brick units with pointing grout, and compress into place without spreading pointing grout onto faces of thin-brick units. Remove excess pointing grout immediately to prevent staining of brick.
  - a. Tool joints to a slightly concave shape **OR** grapevine shape **OR** V-shape, **as directed**, when pointing grout is thumbprint hard.
5. Clean faces and joints of brick facing.

#### O. Stone Facings

1. Clean stone surfaces before placing in molds to remove soil, stains, and foreign materials. Use cleaning methods and materials recommended by stone supplier.
2. Accurately position stone facings to comply with requirements and in locations indicated on Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone in place. Keep concrete reinforcement a minimum of **3/4 inch (19 mm)** from the back surface of stone. Use continuous spacers to obtain uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
  - a. Stone to Precast Anchorages: Provide anchors in numbers, types and locations required to satisfy specified performance criteria, but not less than 2 anchors per stone unit of less than **2 sq. ft. (0.19 sq. m)** in area and 4 anchors per unit of less than **12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m)** in area; for units larger than **12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m)** in area, provide anchors spaced not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c. horizontally and vertically. Locate anchors a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** from stone edge.
3. Fill anchor holes with sealant filler and install anchors **OR** epoxy filler and install anchors with elastomeric anchor sleeve at back surface of stone, **as directed**.
  - a. Install polyethylene sheet to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface.
  - b. Install **1/8-inch (3-mm)** polyethylene-foam bond breaker to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface. Maintain minimum projection requirements of stone anchors into concrete substrate.

#### P. Fabrication

1. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.

- a. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."
2. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing precast structural concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.
3. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in precast structural concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
4. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without the Owner's approval.
5. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 116 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - a. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcement exceeds limits specified, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
  - b. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
  - c. Place reinforcement to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum coverage. Increase cover requirements according to ACI 318 (ACI 318M) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - d. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - e. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
6. Reinforce precast structural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses.
7. Prestress tendons for precast structural concrete units by either pretensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 116.
  - a. Delay detensioning or post-tensioning of precast, prestressed structural concrete units until concrete has reached its indicated minimum design release compressive strength as established by test cylinders cured under same conditions as concrete.
  - b. Detension pretensioned tendons either by gradually releasing tensioning jacks or by heat cutting tendons, using a sequence and pattern to prevent shock or unbalanced loading.
  - c. If concrete has been heat cured, detension while concrete is still warm and moist to avoid dimensional changes that may cause cracking or undesirable stresses.
  - d. Protect strand ends and anchorages with bituminous, zinc-rich, or epoxy paint to avoid corrosion and possible rust spots.
  - e. Protect strand ends and anchorages with a minimum of 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, nonmetallic, nonshrink, grout mortar and sack rub surface. Coat or spray the inside surfaces of pocket with bonding agent before installing grout.
8. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 116 and in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
9. Place face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
10. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
  - a. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.

11. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 116.
  - a. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."
12. Comply with ACI 306.1 procedures for cold-weather concrete placement.
13. Comply with PCI MNL 116 procedures for hot-weather concrete placement.
14. Identify pickup points of precast structural concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each precast structural concrete unit on a surface that will not show in finished structure.
15. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 116, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.
16. Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 116 and meet the Owner's approval.

Q. Casting Insulated Wall Panels

1. Cast and screed wythe supported by mold.
2. Place insulation boards abutting edges and ends of adjacent boards. Insert wythe connectors through insulation, and consolidate concrete around connectors according to connector manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cast and screed top wythe to meet required finish.

R. Fabrication Tolerances

1. Fabricate precast structural concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 116 product dimension tolerances.
2. Brick-Faced Precast Structural Concrete Units: Restrict the following misalignments to 2 percent of number of bricks in a unit:
  - a. Alignment of Mortar Joints:
    - 1) Jog in Alignment: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
    - 2) Alignment with Panel Centerline: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - b. Variation in Width of Exposed Mortar Joints: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - c. Tipping of Individual Bricks from the Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**; minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** less than or equal to depth of form-liner joint.
  - d. Exposed Brick Surface Parallel to Primary Control Surface of Panel: Plus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**; minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - e. Individual Brick Step in Face from Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**; minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** less than or equal to depth of form-liner joint.
3. Stone Veneer-Faced Precast Structural Concrete Units:
  - a. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated: Plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - b. Variation in Joint Width: **1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm)** or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
  - c. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** difference between planes of adjacent units.

S. Commercial Finishes

1. Commercial Grade: Remove fins and large protrusions and fill large holes. Rub or grind ragged edges. Faces must have true, well-defined surfaces. Air holes, water marks, and color variations are permitted. Limit form joint offsets to **3/16 inch (5 mm)**.

2. Standard Grade: Normal plant-run finish produced in molds that impart a smooth finish to concrete. Surface holes smaller than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** caused by air bubbles, normal color variations, form joint marks, and minor chips and spalls are permitted. Fill air holes greater than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in width that occur more than once per **2 sq. in (1300 sq. mm)**. Major or unsightly imperfections, honeycombs, or structural defects are not permitted. Limit joint offsets to **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
3. Grade B Finish: Fill air pockets and holes larger than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** in diameter with sand-cement paste matching color of adjacent surfaces. Fill air holes greater than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** in width that occur more than once per **2 sq. in. (1300 sq. mm)**. Grind smooth form offsets or fins larger than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**. Repair surface blemishes due to holes or dents in molds. Discoloration at form joints is permitted.
4. Grade A Finish: Fill surface blemishes with the exception of air holes **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in width or smaller, and form marks where the surface deviation is less than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**. Float apply a neat cement-paste coating to exposed surfaces. Rub dried paste coat with burlap to remove loose particles. Discoloration at form joints is permitted. Grind smooth all form joints.
5. Screed or float finish unformed surfaces. Strike off and consolidate concrete with vibrating screeds to a uniform finish. Hand screed at projections. Normal color variations, minor indentations, minor chips, and spalls are permitted. Major imperfections, honeycombing, or defects are not permitted.
6. Smooth, steel trowel finish unformed surfaces. Consolidate concrete, bring to proper level with straightedge, float, and trowel to a smooth, uniform finish.
7. Apply roughened surface finish according to **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** to precast concrete units that will receive concrete topping after installation.

T. Commercial Architectural Finishes

1. Manufacture member faces free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects with corners, including false joints, uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of precast concrete units to match approved design reference sample **OR** sample panels, **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete - Color and Texture Selection Guide," of plate numbers indicated.
  - b. Smooth-Surface Finish: Provide surfaces free of excessive air voids, sand streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  - c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners or inserts to provide surfaces free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  - d. Bushhammer Finish: Use power or hand tools to remove matrix and fracture coarse aggregates.
  - e. Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Use chemical-retarding agents applied to concrete molds and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  - f. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  - g. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces. Protect hardware, connections, and insulation from acid attack.
  - h. Honed Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - i. Polished Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - j. Sand-Embedment Finish: Use selected stones placed in a sand bed in bottom of mold, with sand removed after curing.

U. Source Quality Control

1. Testing: Test and inspect precast structural concrete according to PCI MNL 116 requirements.
  - a. Test and inspect self-consolidating concrete according to PCI TR-6.



2. Strength of precast structural concrete units will be considered deficient if units fail to comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** requirements for concrete strength.
3. If there is evidence that strength of precast concrete units may be deficient or may not comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** requirements, employ a qualified testing agency to obtain, prepare, and test cores drilled from hardened concrete to determine compressive strength according to ASTM C 42/C 42M.
  - a. A minimum of three representative cores will be taken from units of suspect strength, from locations directed by the Owner.
  - b. Cores will be tested in an air-dry condition or, if units will be wet under service conditions, test cores after immersion in water in a wet condition.
  - c. Strength of concrete for each series of 3 cores will be considered satisfactory if average compressive strength is equal to at least 85 percent of 28-day design compressive strength and no single core is less than 75 percent of 28-day design compressive strength.
  - d. Test results will be made in writing on same day that tests are performed, with copies to the Owner, Contractor, and precast concrete fabricator. Test reports will include the following:
    - 1) Project identification name and number.
    - 2) Date when tests were performed.
    - 3) Name of precast concrete fabricator.
    - 4) Name of concrete testing agency.
    - 5) Identification letter, name, and type of precast concrete unit(s) represented by core tests; design compressive strength; type of break; compressive strength at breaks, corrected for length-diameter ratio; and direction of applied load to core in relation to horizontal plane of concrete as placed.
4. Patching: If core test results are satisfactory and precast structural concrete units comply with requirements, clean and dampen core holes and solidly fill with same precast concrete mixture that has no coarse aggregate, and finish to match adjacent precast concrete surfaces.
5. Defective Units: Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including strength, manufacturing tolerances, and color and texture range. Chipped, spalled, or cracked units may be repaired, subject to the Owner's approval. the Owner reserves the right to reject precast units that do not match approved samples and sample panels.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting precast structural concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Erect precast structural concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary structural framing, supports, and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connection.
  - a. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims or bearing pads as precast structural concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
  - b. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
  - c. Remove projecting lifting devices and grout fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.
  - d. For hollow-core slab voids used as electrical raceways or mechanical ducts, align voids between units and tape butt joint at end of slabs.
3. Connect precast structural concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.
  - a. Do not permit connections to disrupt continuity of roof flashing.
4. Field cutting of precast units is not permitted without approval of the the Owner.

5. Fasteners: Do not use drilled or powder-actuated fasteners for attaching accessory items to precast, prestressed concrete units.
  6. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4 for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - a. Protect precast structural concrete units and bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
    - b. Clean weld-affected steel surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and apply a minimum ~~4.0-mil-~~ (0.1-mm-) thick coat of galvanized repair paint to galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.
    - c. Clean weld-affected steel surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and reprime damaged painted surfaces.
    - d. Remove, reweld, or repair incomplete and defective welds.
  7. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.
    - a. Where slotted connections are used, verify bolt position and tightness. For sliding connections, properly secure bolt but allow bolt to move within connection slot. For friction connections, apply specified bolt torque and check 25 percent of bolts at random by calibrated torque wrench.
  8. Grouting: Grout connections and joints and open spaces at keyways, connections, and joints where required or indicated on Shop Drawings. Retain grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled.
    - a. Place grout to finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces.
    - b. Fill joints completely without seepage to other surfaces.
    - c. Trowel top of grout joints on roofs smooth and uniform. Finish transitions between different surface levels not steeper than 1 to 12.
    - d. Place grout end cap or dam in voids at ends of hollow-core slabs.
    - e. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens.
    - f. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set.
- B. Erection Tolerances
1. Erect precast structural concrete units level, plumb, square, true, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 135.
  2. Minimize variations between adjacent slab members by jacking, loading, or other method recommended by fabricator and approved by the Owner.
- C. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    - a. Erection of precast structural concrete members.
  2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  3. Field welds will be visually inspected and nondestructive tested according to ASTM E 165 or ASTM E 709. High-strength bolted connections will be subject to inspections.
  4. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
  5. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  6. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  7. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- D. Repairs
1. Repair precast structural concrete units if permitted by the Owner.
    - a. Repairs may be permitted if structural adequacy, serviceability, durability, and appearance of units has not been impaired.

2. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet (6 m).
3. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
4. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
5. Remove and replace damaged precast structural concrete units that cannot be repaired or when repairs do not comply with requirements as determined by the Owner.

E. Cleaning

1. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
2. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.
  - a. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's written recommendations. Clean soiled precast concrete surfaces with detergent and water, using stiff fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
  - b. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 41 23 00

## SECTION 03 41 26 00 - UNBONDED POST-TENSIONED CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for unbonded post-tensioned concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Furnishing post-tensioning reinforcement and accessories including non-encapsulated and encapsulated prestressing tendons, pocket formers, support bars, bar chairs, and slab bolsters.
  - b. Installing post-tensioning tendons.
  - c. Performing post-tensioning operations including stressing and finishing tendons.
  - d. Recording tendon elongations and gage pressures.
  - e. Finishing tendon ends and patching stressing pockets.

#### C. Definitions

1. Strand Tail: Excess strand length extending past the anchorage device.
2. Stressing Blockout: Opening created in the slab to allow access to stressing-end anchorages.
3. Stressing Pocket: Void formed by pocket former at stressing-end anchorage to provide required cover over wedges and strand tail.
4. Wedge Cavity: Cone-shaped hole in anchorage device designed to hold the wedges that anchor the strand.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Design cast-in-place, post-tensioned concrete reinforcement as indicated in this Section. Show final effective forces, tendon profiles, and nonprestressed reinforcement on design Shop Drawings.
2. Employ professional Engineer, registered in <Insert State>, and acceptable to the Owner, to perform design. Sign and seal design Shop Drawings and design calculations submitted to the Owner for review. Prepare and seal drawings and calculations for submittal to authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with design intent, criteria, and requirements of the Contract Documents.
3. Design structure to withstand loads according to governing codes, within limits and under conditions indicated.
4. Average Precompression:
  - a. Minimum Average Slab Precompression: **125 psi (0.86 MPa) OR 200 psi (1.4 MPa), as directed.**
  - b. Maximum Average Slab Precompression: **300 psi (2.1 MPa) OR 500 psi (3.4 MPa), as directed.**
  - c. Minimum Average Precompression in T-, L-, and Rectangular-Beam Cross Sections: **200 psi (1.4 MPa).**
  - d. Minimum Precompression in Slab Section Not Included in T- or L-Beam Section: **100 psi (0.7 MPa).**
  - e. Maximum Precompression in Transfer Girders: **1000 psi (6.9 MPa).** Specify stage-stressing sequence to avoid overstress.
5. Comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** limits on stresses at transfer of prestress and under service load.
6. Comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** requirements for minimum bonded reinforcement.
7. Comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** requirements for concrete cover over reinforcement.

8. Design members such that thickness and concrete cover over reinforcement comply with fire-resistance requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Design members such that thickness and concrete cover over reinforcement comply with the following fire-resistance requirements:
  - a. Slabs: Two hours.
  - b. Beam: Two hours.
10. Deflection Limits Including Creep and Shrinkage Effects:
  - a. Total Dead Load:  $L/600$ .
  - b. Total Dead Plus Live Load:  $L/360$ .
11. Slab Design:
  - a. Minimum Slab Thickness: 5-1/2 inches (140 mm).
    - 1) Minimum Thickness if Conduit Is Embedded: 6 inches (150 mm).
    - 2) Maximum Span/Depth Ratio: 45.
  - b. Locate closure strips at midspan and adjust tendon forces and profiles accordingly. Calculate moments in spans with closure strips assuming a continuous slab. Provide only nonprestressed reinforcement within closure strips. Design reinforcement in closure strip to carry ultimate moment at midspan.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Installation drawings including plans, elevations, sections, details, and notes prepared by or under the supervision of a registered professional engineer detailing tendon layout and installation procedures.
4. Product Certificates:
5. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer, and testing agency.
6. Mill Test Reports: For prestressing strand.
7. Field quality-control test reports.
8. Calibration Certificates: For jacks and gages.
9. Stressing Records: Filled out by testing agency during stressing operation with the following information recorded:
  - a. Name of Project.
  - b. Date of approved installation drawings used for installation and stressing.
  - c. Floor number and concrete placement area.
  - d. Date of stressing operation.
  - e. Weather conditions including temperature and rainfall.
  - f. Name and signature of inspector.
  - g. Name of individual in charge of stressing operation.
  - h. Serial or identification numbers of jack and gage.
  - i. Date of jack-and-gage calibration certificates.
  - j. Gage pressure to achieve required stressing force per supplied calibration chart.
  - k. Tendon identification mark.
  - l. Calculated tendon elongation.
  - m. Actual tendon elongation.
  - n. Actual gage pressure.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer whose full-time Project superintendent has successfully completed PTI's Level 1 - Field Fundamentals course or has equivalent verifiable experience and knowledge acceptable to the Owner.

- a. Superintendent must have received training from post-tensioning supplier in the operation of stressing equipment to be used on Project.
  2. Manufacturer Qualifications: Fabricating plant certified by PTI.
  3. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
    - a. Testing Agency Inspector: Personnel performing field inspections and measuring elongations shall have successfully completed PTI's Level 1 - Field Fundamentals course or shall have equivalent qualifications acceptable to the Owner.
  4. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 423.6, "Specification for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons," unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.
  5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver, store, and handle post-tensioning materials according to PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons."
- H. Coordination
1. Attachments and Penetrations:
    - a. Attach permanent fixtures such as curtain-wall systems, handrails, fire-protection equipment, lights, and security devices to the slab using embedded anchors. Drilled anchors are not allowed unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
    - b. Power-driven fasteners are not allowed unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
    - c. Core drilling for sleeves or other penetrations is not allowed unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
    - d. Protect penetrations within **18 inches (460 mm)** of an anchorage with ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40 steel pipe.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Prestressing Tendons
1. Prestressing Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, **Grade 270 (Grade 1860)**, uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation, **0.5-inch- (12.7-mm-) OR 0.6-inch- (15.2-mm-), as directed**, diameter strand.
  2. Post-Tensioning Coating: Compound with friction-reducing, moisture-displacing, and corrosion-inhibiting properties specified in ACI 423.6; chemically stable and nonreactive with prestressing steel, nonprestressed reinforcement, sheathing material, and concrete.
    - a. Minimum Coating Weight: **2.5 lb (1.14 kg) for 0.5-inch- (12.7-mm-) diameter strand OR 3 lb (1.36 kg) for 0.6-inch- (15.2-mm-) diameter strand, as directed**, per **100 feet (30 m)** of strand.
    - b. Completely fill annular space between strand and sheathing over entire tendon length with post-tensioning coating.
  3. Tendon Sheathing: Comply with ACI 423.6.
    - a. Minimum Thickness: **0.050 inch (1.25 mm)** for polyethylene or polypropylene with a minimum density of **0.034 lb/cu. in. (0.9 g/cu. cm)**.
    - b. Continuous over the entire length of tendon to provide watertight encapsulation of strand and between anchorages to prevent intrusion of cement paste or loss of coating for a non-encapsulated system.
  4. Anchorage Device and Coupler Assembly: Assembly of strand, wedges, and anchorage device or coupler complying with static and fatigue testing requirements in ACI 423.6 and capable of developing 95 percent of actual breaking strength of strand.
    - a. Anchorage Bearing Stresses: Comply with ACI 423.6 for stresses at transfer load and service load.
    - b. Fixed-End Anchorage Device Assemblies: Plant fabricated with wedges seated at a load of not less than 80 percent and not more than 85 percent of breaking strength of strand.
  5. Encapsulation System: Watertight encapsulation of prestressing strand consisting of the following:



- a. Wedge-Cavity Caps: Attached to anchorages with a positive mechanical connection and completely filled with post-tensioning coating.
    - 1) Caps for Fixed and Stressing-End Anchorages Devices: Designed to provide watertight encapsulation of wedge cavity. Sized to allow required extension of strand past the wedges.
      - a) Attach cap for fixed-end anchorage device in fabricating plant.
    - 2) Caps at Intermediate Anchorages: Open to allow passage of strand.
  - b. Sleeves: Attached to anchorage device with positive mechanical connection; overlapped a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** with sheathing and completely filled with post-tensioning coating.
- B. Nonprestressed Steel Bars
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than **25 OR 60, as directed**, percent.
  2. Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed. Minimum support bar size is **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
  3. Low-Alloy-Steel Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.
  4. Galvanized Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420) OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class I **OR** II, **as directed**, zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
    - a. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780, zinc-based solder, paint containing zinc dust, or sprayed zinc.
  5. Epoxy-Coated Support Bars, Reinforcing Bars, Hairpins: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420) OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M epoxy coated with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each **12-inch (300-mm)** bar length.
    - a. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on bars and complying with ASTM A 775/A 775M. Repair damaged areas according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M.
  6. Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening tendons and tendon support bars in place. Manufacture bar supports, according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
    - a. For uncoated bars, use all-plastic **OR** CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected **OR** CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar supports.
    - b. For epoxy-coated bars, use CRSI Class 1A epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
    - c. For zinc-coated bars, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire **OR** all-plastic, **as directed**, bar supports.
- C. Accessories
1. Pocket Formers: Capable of completely sealing wedge cavity; sized to provide the required cover over the anchorage and allow access for cutting strand tail.
  2. Anchorage Fasteners: Stainless-steel **OR** Galvanized steel **OR** Uncoated steel, **as directed**, nails, wires, and screws used to attach anchorage devices to formwork.
  3. Sheathing Repair Tape: Elastic, self-adhesive, moistureproof tape with minimum width of **2 inches (50 mm)**, in contrasting color to tendon sheathing; nonreactive with sheathing, coating, or prestressing steel.
- D. Patching Material
1. Patching Material: One component, polymer-modified, premixed patching material containing selected silica aggregates and portland cement, suitable for vertical and overhead application. Do not use material containing chlorides or other chemicals known to be deleterious to prestressing steel or material that is reactive with prestressing steel, anchorage device material, or concrete.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Formwork

1. Provide formwork for post-tensioned elements as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Design formwork to support load redistribution that may occur during stressing operation. Ensure that formwork does not restrain elastic shortening, camber, or deflection resulting from application of prestressing force.
2. Do not remove forms supporting post-tensioned elements until tendons have been fully stressed and elongations have been approved by the Owner, unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
3. Do not place concrete in supported floors until tendons on supporting floors have been stressed and elongations have been approved by the Owner, unless authorized in writing by the Owner.

#### B. Nonprestressed Steel Reinforcement Placement

1. Placement of nonprestressed steel reinforcement is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Coordinate placement of nonprestressed steel reinforcement with installation of post-tensioning tendons.

#### C. Tendon Installation

1. Install tendons according to approved installation drawings and procedures stated in PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons."
2. Tendon Supports: Provide continuous slab bolsters or bars supported on individual high chairs spaced at a maximum of **42 inches (1070 mm)** o.c. to ensure tendons remain in their designated positions during construction operations and concrete placement.
  - a. Support tendons as required to provide profiles shown on installation drawings. Position supports at high and low points and at intervals not exceeding **48 inches (1220 mm)**. Ensure that tendon profiles between high and low points are smooth parabolic curves.
  - b. Attach tendons to supporting chairs and reinforcement without damaging tendon sheathing.
  - c. Support slab tendons independent of beam reinforcement.
3. Maintain tendon profile within maximum allowable deviations from design profile as follows:
  - a. **1/4 inch (6.3 mm)** for member depth less than or equal to **8 inches (200 mm)**.
  - b. **3/8 inch (10 mm)** for member depth greater than **8 inches (200 mm)** and less than or equal to **24 inches (610 mm)**.
  - c. **1/2 inch (13 mm)** for member depth greater than **24 inches (610 mm)**.
4. Maintain minimum radius of curvature of 480-strand diameters for lateral deviations to avoid openings, ducts, and embedded items. Maintain a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** of separation between tendons at locations of curvature.
5. Limit tendon bundles to five tendons. Do not twist or entwine tendons within a bundle. Maintain a minimum distance of **12 inches (300 mm)** between center of adjacent bundles.
6. If tendon locations conflict with nonprestressed reinforcement or embedded items, tendon placement governs unless changes are authorized in writing by the Owner. Obtain the Owner's approval before relocating tendons or tendon anchorages that interfere with one another.
7. Deviations in horizontal spacing and location of slab tendons are permitted when required to avoid openings and inserts.
8. Installation of Anchorage Devices:
  - a. Place anchorage devices at locations shown on approved installation drawings.
  - b. Do not switch fixed and stressing-end anchorage locations unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
  - c. Attach pocket formers, intermediate anchorage devices, and stressing-end anchorage devices securely to bulkhead forms. Install stressing-end and intermediate anchorage devices perpendicular to tendon axis.
  - d. Install tendons straight, without vertical or horizontal curvature, for a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)** behind stressing-end and intermediate anchorages.
  - e. Embed intermediate anchorage devices at construction joints in first concrete placed at joint.



- f. Minimum splice length in reinforcing bars at anchorages is **24 inches (600 mm)**. Stagger splices a minimum of **60 inches (1500 mm)**.
  - g. Place fixed-end anchorage devices in formwork at locations shown on installation drawings. Support anchorages firmly to avoid movement during concrete placement.
  - h. Remove loose caps on fixed-end anchorages, refill with post-tensioning coating, and re-attach caps to achieve a watertight enclosure.
9. Maintain minimum concrete cover as follows:
- a. From Exterior Edge of Concrete to Wedge Cavity: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm), as directed.**
  - b. From Exterior Edge of Concrete to Strand Tail: **3/4 inch (19 mm).**
  - c. From Exterior Edge of Concrete to Wedge-Cavity Cap: **1 inch (25 mm).**
  - d. Top, Bottom, and Edge Cover for Anchorage Devices: **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), as directed.**
10. Maintain minimum clearance of **6 inches (150 mm)** between tendons and openings.
11. Prior to concrete placement, mark tendon locations on formwork with spray paint.
12. Do not install sleeves within **36 inches (914 mm)** of anchorages after tendon layout has been inspected unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
13. Do not install conduit, pipe, or embeds requiring movement of tendons after tendon layout has been inspected unless authorized in writing by the Owner.
14. Do not use couplers unless location has been approved by the Owner.
- D. Sheathing Inspection And Repair
1. Inspect sheathing for damage after installing tendons. Repair damaged areas by restoring post-tensioning coating and repairing or replacing tendon sheathing.
    - a. Ensure that sheathing is watertight and there are no air voids.
    - b. Follow tape repair procedures in PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons."
  2. Maximum length of exposed strand behind anchorages is as follows:
    - a. Fixed End: **12 inches (300 mm).**
    - b. Intermediate and Stressing End: **0 inches (0 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm), as directed.**
      - 1) Cover exposed strand with sheathing repair tape to prevent contact with concrete.
  3. Immediately remove and replace tendons that have damaged strand.
- E. Concrete Placement
1. Do not place concrete until placement of tendons and nonprestressed steel reinforcement has been inspected by special inspector **OR** testing agency, **as directed.**
  2. Provide the Owner and special inspector **OR** testing agency, **as directed**, a minimum of 48 hours' notice before concrete placement.
  3. Place concrete as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete". Ensure compaction of concrete around anchorages.
  4. Ensure that position of tendon and nonprestressed steel reinforcement does not change during concrete placement. Reposition tendons and nonprestressed steel reinforcement moved during concrete placement.
  5. Ensure that method of concrete placement does not damage tendon sheathing. Do not support pump lines, chutes, or other concrete placing equipment on tendons.
- F. Tendon Stressing
1. Calibrate stressing jacks and gages at start of job and at least every six months thereafter. Keep copies of calibration certificates for each jack-and-gage pair on Project site and available for inspection. Exercise care in handling stressing equipment to ensure that proper calibration is maintained.
  2. Stress tendons only under supervision of qualified post-tensioning superintendent.
  3. Do not begin stressing operations until concrete strength has reached **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** as indicated by compression tests of field-cured cylinders.
  4. Complete stressing within 96 hours of concrete placement.

5. If concrete has not reached required strength, obtain the Owner's approval to partially stress tendons and delay final stressing until concrete has reached required strength.
6. Stage stress transfer girders **OR** foundation mats, **as directed**, according to schedule shown on the Contract Drawings.
7. If detensioning and restressing of tendon is required, discard wedges used in original stressing and provide new wedges.
8. Mark and measure elongations according to PTI's "Field Procedures Manual for Unbonded Single Strand Tendons." Measure elongations to closest **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
9. Submit stressing records within one day of completion of stressing. If discrepancies between measured and calculated elongations exceed plus or minus 7 percent, resolve these discrepancies to satisfaction of the Owner.
10. Prestressing will be considered acceptable if gage pressures shown on stressing record correspond to required stressing force and calculated and measured elongations agree within 7 percent.
11. If measured elongations deviate from calculated elongations by more than 7 percent, additional testing, restressing, strengthening, or replacement of affected elements may be required.

G. Tendon Finishing

1. Do not cut strand tails or cover anchorages until stressing records have been reviewed and approved by the Owner.
2. Cut strand tails as soon as possible after approval of elongations.
3. Cut strand tail between **1/2 and 3/4 inch (13 and 19 mm)** from wedges. Do not damage tendon or concrete during removal of strand tail. Acceptable methods of cutting strand tail include the following:
  - a. Oxyacetylene flame.
  - b. Abrasive wheel.
  - c. Hydraulic shears.
  - d. Plasma cutting.
4. Install caps and sleeves on intermediate anchorages within one day of stressing.
5. Cut strand tails and install caps on stressing-end anchorages within one day of the Owner's acceptance of elongations.
6. Patch stressing pockets within one day of cutting strand tail. Clean inside surface of pocket to remove laitance or post-tensioning coating before installing patch material. Finish patch material flush with adjacent concrete.

H. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. Cooperate with testing agency to facilitate the execution of its duties.
  - a. Before concrete placement, special inspector **OR** testing agency, **as directed**, will inspect the following for compliance with post-tensioning installation drawings and the Contract Documents:
    - 1) Location and number of tendons.
    - 2) Tendon profiles and cover.
    - 3) Installation of backup bars, hairpins, and other nonprestressed reinforcement shown on post-tensioning installation drawings.
    - 4) Installation of pocket formers and anchorage devices.
    - 5) Repair of damaged sheathing.
    - 6) Connections between sheathing and anchorage devices.
  - b. Special inspector **OR** Testing agency, **as directed**, will record tendon elongations during stressing.
  - c. Special inspector **OR** Testing agency, **as directed**, will immediately report deviations from the Contract Documents to the Owner.

I. Protection



1. Do not expose tendons to electric ground currents, welding sparks, or temperatures that would degrade component.
2. Protect exposed components within one workday of their exposure during installation.
3. Prevent water from entering tendons during installation and stressing.
4. Provide weather protection to stressing-end anchorages if strand tails are not cut within 10 days of stressing the tendons.

J. Repairs

1. Submit repair procedure to the Owner for evaluation and approval.
2. Do not proceed with repairs requiring removal of concrete unless authorized in writing by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 03 41 26 00

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 48 29 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 48 46 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 48 49 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 51 13 00 - CEMENTITIOUS WOOD-FIBER DECK

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cementitious wood-fiber deck. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Monolithic cementitious wood-fiber units.
  - b. Composite cementitious wood-fiber units.
  - c. Insulated composite cementitious wood-fiber units.
  - d. Subpurlin tees.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cementitious wood-fiber deck. Include details at supports, reinforcement at openings, and attachment to other work.
3. Samples: Show texture, finish, and edge and end configurations of monolithic **OR** composite **OR** insulated composite, **as directed**, cementitious wood-fiber units, **12 inches (305 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm)**, **as directed**, long by width of unit.
  - a. Include unit with galvanized steel edge channel.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide cementitious wood-fiber units that comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Fire-response testing performed by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that performs testing and follow-up services.
  - b. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84.
  - c. Fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," ITS's "Directory of Listed Products," or the listings of another testing and inspecting agency are identical in materials and construction to those tested per ASTM E 119.
  - d. Products are identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Protect cementitious wood-fiber units from moisture.
2. Store units on elevated platforms at the Project site in a dry, well-ventilated, covered space and stack according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
3. Handle units to prevent chipping, breaking, cracking, staining, soiling, warping, or other physical damage. Discard damaged units at time of installation.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units, General: Manufacturer's standard factory-cast structural units complying with the following requirements:

- a. Composition: Chemically processed long wood fibers mixed with Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type III or magnesium oxysulfate hydraulic cement, pressure bonded to produce units of thicknesses and sizes indicated:
  - b. Properties: As follows, determined according to test method indicated:
    - 1) Noise Reduction Coefficient: NRC 0.55 **OR** 0.60 **OR** 0.65 **OR** 0.70 **OR** 0.75 **OR** 0.80, **as directed**; ASTM C 423.
    - 2) Light Reflectance: 60 percent; ASTM E 1349.
  - c. Finish: Manufacturer's standard natural or prime-painted finish.
2. Oriented-Strand-Board Sheathing: APA-rated sheathing, Exposure 1 complying with DOC PS 2.
  3. Polyisocyanurate-Foam Insulation: 2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m) nominal density, 35 lbf/sq. in. (240 kPa) compressive strength per ASTM D 1621.
  4. Extruded-Polystyrene Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV.
  5. Expanded-Polystyrene Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I.
- B. Monolithic Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units
1. Tile: Manufacturer's standard rabbet-edged, cementitious wood-fiber units.
  2. Plank: Manufacturer's standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber units.
  3. Channel-Reinforced Plank: Manufacturer's standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber planks with factory-installed, cold-formed, 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, galvanized steel channel set in grooved edge.
  4. Concealed-Tee Plank: Manufacturer's standard cementitious wood-fiber units, with edges kerfed, back rabbeted, and beveled.
- C. Composite Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units
1. Composite Tile: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a rabbet-edged, cementitious wood-fiber tile base and top layer of oriented-strand-board sheathing, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
  2. Composite Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base and top layer of oriented-strand-board sheathing, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
  3. Composite Channel-Reinforced Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base with factory-installed, cold-formed, 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, galvanized steel channel set in grooved edge, and top layer of oriented-strand-board sheathing, 7/16 inch (11 mm) thick.
- D. Insulated Composite Cementitious Wood-Fiber Units
1. Insulated Composite Tile: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a rabbet-edged, cementitious wood-fiber tile base, insulation, and top layer; and as follows:
    - a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded polystyrene **OR** Expanded polystyrene, **as directed**.
    - b. Top Layer: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-free, glass-fiber-reinforced, black felt facing **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, oriented-strand board, **as directed**.
  2. Insulated Composite Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base, insulation, and top layer; and as follows:
    - a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded polystyrene **OR** Expanded polystyrene, **as directed**.
    - b. Top Layer: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-free, glass-fiber-reinforced, black felt facing **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, oriented-strand-board, **as directed**.
  3. Insulated Composite Channel-Reinforced Plank: Manufacturer's standard factory-laminated composite deck units consisting of a standard tongue-and-groove-edged, cementitious wood-fiber plank base with factory-installed, cold-formed, 0.0598-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, galvanized steel channel set in grooved edge, insulation, and top layer; and as follows:

- a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate **OR** Extruded polystyrene **OR** Expanded polystyrene, **as directed**.
  - b. Top Layer: Manufacturer's standard asphalt-free, glass-fiber-reinforced, black felt facing **OR** 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, oriented-strand board, **as directed**.
- E. Subpurlins
- 1. Bulb-Tee Subpurlins: Hot-rolled steel bulb tees complying with ASTM A 499 of length required to span three support spacings; shop painted with metal primer.
- F. Accessories
- 1. Gypsum Concrete Grout: Factory-packaged, gypsum concrete grout formulation recommended by cementitious wood-fiber unit manufacturer with a minimum compressive strength of 500 psi (3.45 MPa).
  - 2. Anchor Clips: Manufacturer's standard formed anchor clips of 0.0478-inch- (1.21-mm-) thick minimum, galvanized steel sheet, of type and configuration required for deck system indicated.
  - 3. Screws: Manufacturer's recommended corrosion-resistant screw fasteners and washers, self-drilling, self-tapping, of length required for deck and structural framing indicated.
  - 4. Nails: Manufacturer's recommended corrosion-resistant nails of size and length required for deck and structural framing indicated.
  - 5. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended construction adhesive complying with APA AFG-01.
  - 6. Filler Strips: Insulation strips, same as used in manufacture of insulated composite cementitious wood-fiber units.
  - 7. Polyethylene Film: 0.004 inch (0.10 mm) thick, complying with ASTM D 4397.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation
- 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing cementitious wood-fiber deck.
    - a. Install fastenings according to manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
  - 2. Deck Interruptions: Provide barrier seals or blocking at overhangs to form wind seals and at partitions and walls to form sound seals, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Form-Deck Installation
- 1. Tile and Subpurlin Form Deck: Space subpurlin members as indicated. Attach subpurlins to each support with 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) long minimum, fillet welds on both sides of flanges at ends of members and on alternate sides at intermediate structural supports.
    - a. Lay tile with rabbeted edges supported on subpurlins, and shim or block in place to prevent dislocation during placing of fill.
    - b. Lay tile with square-cut ends concealed and supported on cross subpurlins **OR** over supporting purlins or beams, **as directed**.
    - c. Lay tile with tongue-and-groove ends exposed in pattern indicated.
    - d. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of tile and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.
    - e. Provide shoring of sufficient strength to withstand weight of cast-in-place fill and construction traffic. Design, install, and remove shoring according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  - 2. Plank Form Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove edges and tightly butt end joints.
    - a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
    - b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.



- c. Provide shoring of sufficient strength to withstand weight of cast-in-place fill and construction traffic. Design, install, and remove shoring according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
- d. Cover exposed edges and ends of form planks with polyethylene film before pouring cast-in-place fill to prevent paste or mixing water from penetrating deck and seeping through to bottom face. Remove exposed film after cast-in-place fill has set.
- 3. Concealed-Tee Plank Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Install flange of bulb tee into kerfed edge and tightly butt adjoining plank to engage other flange. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove **OR** butt square, **as directed**, end joints.
  - a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
  - b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.
  - c. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of plank and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.
  - d. Provide shoring of sufficient strength to withstand weight of cast-in-place fill and construction traffic. Design, install, and remove shoring according to Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

#### C. Roof Deck Installation

- 1. Tile and Subpurlin Roof Deck: Space subpurlin members as indicated. Attach subpurlins to each support with **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** long minimum, fillet welds on both sides of flanges at ends of members and on alternate sides at intermediate structural supports.
  - a. Lay tile with rabbeted edges supported on subpurlins.
  - b. Lay tile with square-cut ends concealed and supported on cross subpurlins **OR** over supporting purlins or beams, **as directed**.
  - c. Lay tile with tongue-and-groove ends exposed in pattern indicated.
  - d. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of tile and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.
  - e. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top surface of cementitious wood-fiber base. Fill remainder of joint with filler strips of insulation.
- 2. Plank Roof Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove edges and tightly butt end joints.
  - a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
  - b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.
  - c. Mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members.
  - d. Adhesively and mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members. Apply adhesive to tongue-and-groove edges.
- 3. Concealed-Tee Plank Roof Deck: Install planks progressively with long dimension perpendicular to supports and with end joints in alternate rows, staggered and centered over supports, unless otherwise indicated. Install flange of bulb tee into kerfed edge and tightly butt adjoining plank to engage other flange. Tightly nest tongue-and-groove **OR** butt square, **as directed**, end joints.
  - a. Cut panels to provide starter units.
  - b. Continuously support plank edges and ends at perimeter of building and at openings in deck.
  - c. Mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members.
  - d. Adhesively and mechanically fasten planks to supports and perimeter members. Apply adhesive to tongue-and-groove edges.
  - e. Fill void with gypsum concrete grout where edge joints meet subpurlins. Strike grout flush with top of plank and feather uneven top surfaces to a plane.

#### D. Cleaning And Protection

1. Protect top surfaces of deck from damage caused by construction operations.
2. Protect exposed bottom surfaces of deck from soiling and damage during handling and construction.
3. Clean exposed bottom surfaces of completed deck and touch up minor damage to surfaces as approved.
4. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensures that cementitious wood-fiber deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.
5. Remove and replace deteriorated and damaged deck units.

END OF SECTION 03 51 13 00

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 51 16 00 - GYPSUM PLANK DECKING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gypsum plank decking for interstitial decks **OR** fire rated interstitial decks, **as directed**, and roof decks. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Fire Tests: Fire tests, data and certifications substantiating that Gypsum Plank Decking complies with fire rating requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show typical plank layouts, perimeter and framed opening supports and details of construction, installation, fastenings and grouting.
3. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Each item specified.
4. Load tables for sub-purlins.

#### C. Quality Control

1. Work performed by experienced, qualified installers approved by manufacturer of gypsum plank.
2. Gypsum materials products of one manufacturer.

#### D. Delivery And Storage

1. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles bearing brand name and name of manufacturer.
2. Store materials in a manner that prevents damage before use. When stored under tarpaulins, provide ventilation to prevent moisture accumulation under tarpaulin.
3. Store gypsum planks flat and off ground. Handle and stack in a manner to prevent damage to face, ends, and edges and keep dry until used.
4. Store gypsum concrete off ground and keep dry until used.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. Structural Steel Tee Sub-purlins:
  - a. Open web truss-tees, hot-rolled bulb-tees or folded sheet metal tees as required by design loads, spans and fire ratings.
  - b. Flanges: Provide **5/8-inch (16 mm)** minimum bearing for gypsum planks.
  - c. Galvanize or factory coat sub-purlins with manufacturer's standard primer.
  - d. Open web truss-tees: Fabricate from cold-formed steel wire conforming to ASTM A82.
  - e. Hot-rolled bulb-tees: Rail-shaped, fabricated from hot-rolled steel conforming to ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A499.
  - f. Folded sheet metal tees: Fabricate from sheet steel conforming to ASTM A653 and ASTM A568/A568M.
2. Cross-Tees:
  - a. Cold-Formed, Fabrication from sheet steel conforming to ASTM A653/A653M or ASTM A568/A568M.
  - b. Size: **1-1/4-inches (30 mm)** by **1/2-inch (13 mm)** by **0.023-inch (0.6 mm)** thick by **24-inches (600 mm)** long.
  - c. Tees shall be galvanized or factory coated with manufacturer's standard primer.
3. Gypsum Deck Plank:
  - a. Fabricated of gypsum board: ASTM C442.

- b. Nominal Size: **2-inches (50 mm) OR 2-5/8-inches (65 mm)**, as directed, thick by **24-inches (600 mm)** wide by main purlin span. Where possible, length should span two main purlin spans.
  - c. Factory laminate from two **1-inch (25 mm)** thick gypsum panels with top panel edge set back along sub-purlin edge not more than **1/2-inch (13 mm)**.
  - d. Offset edges encased in water-resistant paper.
  - 4. Gypsum Deck Panels: ASTM C36, Type "X", **5/8-inch (16 mm)** thick by **24-inches (600 mm)** wide by main purlin span.
  - 5. Grout: Gypsum Concrete: ASTM C317, Class A, **500 psi (3.5 MPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - 6. Miscellaneous Materials: Adhesives, mastics, cements, tapes and primers shall be as recommended by the gypsum plank manufacturer and shall be compatible with the material to which they are to be bonded.
- B. Deck System
- 1. Interstitial deck: Provide two-hour fire rating as tested by gypsum plank manufacturer under ASTM E119.
  - 2. Roof Deck: Provide one hour **OR 1-1/2 hour**, as directed, fire rating per tested assembly by Underwriters' Laboratory Inc. or other testing.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

- 1. Weld per AWS D1.1.
- 2. Sub-purlins:
  - a. Space at approximately **24-5/8-inches (650 mm)** on center to provide minimum **5/8 inch (16 mm)** continuous bearing for gypsum plank or deck.
  - b. Install framing of openings.
  - c. Touch up welds with same type of rust-inhibitive paint used for primer.
  - d. Interstitial Decks: Use **3/4-inch (19 mm)** fillet welds on both sides of sub-purlins at math purlin.
  - e. Roof Decks: Use minimum **1/2-inch (13 mm)** fillet welds on alternate sides of sub-purlins, both sides at end joints to main purlins.
  - f. For fire rated roof decks weld per fire test assembly.
- 3. For Two Hour fire rated interstitial decks **OR** fire-rated roof decks, as directed.
  - a. Place gypsum deck panels on bottom flanges of sub-purlins with **5/8-inch (16 mm)** minimum continuous bearing.
  - b. Place gypsum deck plank over gypsum deck panels, with off-set edges "up" to form a "T" receptacle for gypsum grout.
  - c. Cut to fit around openings shown.
  - d. Install plank to conform to fire test assembly.
- 4. Gypsum Deck Plank for Roof Decks:
  - a. Place plank on lower flanges of sub-purlins or other framing with ends and edges supported.
  - b. Stagger joints in adjacent courses.
  - c. Support end joints with cross-tees not supported by framing.
  - d. Cut plank to fit at ends and framed openings.
- 5. Provide continuous **5/8-inch (16 mm)** minimum bearing for plank support at deck perimeter, plank ends and openings exceeding **8-inches (200 mm)**.
- 6. Grout:
  - a. Mix gypsum concrete thoroughly using a minimum amount of water to form a thick, pourable consistency.
  - b. Fill edge joints to slight excess with single pour at sub-purlins.
    - 1) Grout end joints on single span system against steel framing.

- 2) After initial set, strike of excess to form smooth, flush joint.
    - 3) Form cant strips and curbs where shown.
  - c. Fill joints at roof ridges, hips and valleys.
7. Patching:
  - a. Fill with grout and smooth any surface damage to gypsum plank.
  - b. Remove and replace cracked, broken, and plank damaged beyond repair.
8. Cleaning and Protection:
  - a. Upon completion of gypsum plank decking, remove, debris and sweep surface clean. Leave ready for subsequent work.
  - b. Protect finished deck from weather and subsequent construction operations.
  - c. Provide hardboard or plywood temporary protection over decking subject to repetitive impact or wheeled loads.

END OF SECTION 03 51 16 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 51 16 00a - GYPSUM CONCRETE DECKS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of gypsum concrete decks. Products shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Gypsum Concrete: ASTM C 317, Class A.

#### B. Formboards:

1. Gypsum Board: ASTM C 318.
2. Mineral Fiber Board: ASTM C612.
3. Glass Fiber Board: Lightweight, rigid, composed of pressed glass fibers.

#### C. Bulb Tees: ASTM A 499, Grade 50.

#### D. Reinforcing Mesh:

1. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064, galvanized, 12 x 48-W0.5 x W0.5.
2. Woven Wire Fabric: ASTM A 82, galvanized, 19 gauge wire, 2-inch hexagonal mesh.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Support System: Sub-purlins shall be spaced to support formboards and rigidly attached to main supports. Formboards shall fit snugly at sub-purlins and at wall, curbs, and openings.
- B. Reinforcement: Lay wire fabric continuously over sub-purlins. Do not lap side of reinforcement.
- C. Gypsum Concrete: Gypsum concrete shall be placed continuously without interruption until entire panel or section is complete. Immediately after placement, screed, level, and trowel smooth.

END OF SECTION 03 51 16 00a



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 51 16 00	03 41 16 00	Precast Lightweight Roof Slabs

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 53 14 00 - CONCRETE FLOOR TOPPING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for concrete floor topping. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Emery-aggregate concrete floor topping.
  - b. Iron-aggregate concrete floor topping.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product Test Reports.
3. Field quality-control test reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage, mixing with other components, and application.
2. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting concrete floor topping performance.
  - a. Place concrete floor topping only when ambient temperature and temperature of base slabs are between 50 and 86 deg F (10 and 30 deg C).
2. Close areas to traffic during topping application and, after application, for time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Concrete Floor Toppings

1. Emery-Aggregate Concrete Floor Topping: Factory-prepared and dry-packaged mixture of graded, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide, not less than 24 percent ferric oxide, and not more than 8 percent silica; portland cement or blended hydraulic cement; plasticizers; and other admixtures to which only water needs to be added at Project site.
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 10,000 psi (69 MPa); ASTM C 109/C 109M.
2. Iron-Aggregate Concrete Floor Topping: Factory-prepared and dry-packaged mixture of graded iron aggregate, portland cement, plasticizers, and other admixtures to which only water needs to be added at Project site.

a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **12,000 psi (83 MPa)**; ASTM C 109/C 109M.

**B. Curing Materials**

1. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
2. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately **9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m)** when dry.
3. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
4. Water: Potable.
5. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 25 percent solids content, minimum.

**C. Related Materials**

1. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 80 **OR** aromatic polyurea with a Type A Shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95, **as directed**, per ASTM D 2240.
2. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
4. Sand: ASTM C 404, fine aggregate passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
5. Water: Potable.
6. Acrylic-Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
7. Epoxy Adhesive: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type V, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements.

**D. Mixing**

1. Bonding Slurry: Mix portland cement with water to a thick paint consistency.  
**OR**  
Bonding Slurry: Mix 1 part portland cement and 1-1/2 **OR** 2 **OR** 2-1/2, **as directed**, parts sand with water and an acrylic-bonding agent according to manufacturer's written instructions, **as directed**, to a thick paint consistency.
2. Floor Topping: Mix concrete floor topping materials and water in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer or truck mixer according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

**A. Examination**

1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance of concrete floor topping.
2. Verify that base concrete slabs comply with scratch finish requirements specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
3. Verify that base slabs are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by the plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
4. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**B. Preparation**

1. Existing Concrete: Remove existing surface treatments and deteriorated and unsound concrete. Mechanically abrade base slabs to produce a heavily scarified surface profile with an amplitude of **1/4 inch (6 mm.)**
  - a. Prepare and clean existing base slabs according to concrete floor topping manufacturer's written instructions. Fill voids, cracks, and cavities in base slabs.
  - b. Mechanically remove contaminants from existing concrete that might impair bond of floor topping.

- c. Saw cut contraction and construction joints in existing concrete to a depth of **1/2 inch (13 mm)** and fill with semirigid joint filler.
    - d. To both sides of joint edges and at perimeter of existing base slab mechanically remove a **4-inch- (100-mm-)** wide and **0- to 1-inch (0- to 25-mm-)** deep, tapered wedge of concrete and retexture surface **OR** install concrete nails in manufacturer's recommended staggered pattern, **as directed**.
  2. Install joint-filler strips where topping abuts vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
    - a. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with topping surface, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Terminate full-width, joint-filler strips **1/2 inch (13 mm)** below topping surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", are indicated.
    - c. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- C. Floor Topping Application
  1. Start floor topping application in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
  2. Monolithic Floor Topping: After textured-float finish is applied to fresh concrete of base slabs specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete", place concrete floor topping while concrete is still plastic.
  3. Deferred Floor Topping: Within 72 hours of placing base slabs, mix and scrub bonding slurry into dampened concrete to a thickness of **1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm)**, without puddling. Place floor topping while slurry is still tacky.
  4. Existing Concrete: Apply epoxy-bonding adhesive, mixed according to manufacturer's written instructions, and scrub into dry base slabs to a thickness of **1/16 to 1/8 inch (1.6 to 3 mm)**, without puddling. Place floor topping while adhesive is still tacky.
  5. Place concrete floor topping continuously in a single layer, tamping and consolidating to achieve tight contact with bonding surface. Do not permit cold joints or seams to develop within pour strip.
    - a. Screed surface with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
    - b. Slope surfaces uniformly where indicated.
    - c. Begin initial floating using bull floats to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane free of humps or hollows.
  6. Finishing: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats as soon as concrete floor topping can support equipment and operator. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until concrete floor topping surface has a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
    - 1) Hard Trowel Finish: After floating surface, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete floor topping by power-driven trowel without allowing blisters to develop. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is smooth and uniform in texture.
    - 2) Finish surfaces to specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and levelness, F(L) 15, and measure **OR** notify independent testing agency to permit measurement, **as directed**, within 24 hours according to **ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M)** for a randomly trafficked floor surface.
    - 3) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between surface and an unleveled freestanding **10-foot- (3-m-)** long straightedge, resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface, does not exceed **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  7. Construction Joints: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete floor topping, at locations indicated or as approved by the Owner.
    - a. Coat face of construction joint with epoxy adhesive at locations where concrete floor topping is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete floor topping.
  8. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide joints into concrete

floor topping when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before random contraction cracks develop.

- a. Form joints in concrete floor topping over contraction joints in base slabs, unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Construct contraction joints for a combined depth equal to topping thickness and not less than one-fourth of base-slab thickness.
- c. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to one-half of concrete floor topping thickness, but not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep.

**D. Protecting And Curing**

1. General: Protect freshly placed concrete floor topping from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
2. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete floor topping surfaces in hot, dry, or windy conditions before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying floor topping, but before float finishing.
3. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete floor topping. Cure by one or a combination of the following methods, according to concrete floor topping manufacturer's written instructions:
  - a. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than 7 days with water **OR** continuous water-fog spray **OR** absorptive cover, water saturated and kept continuously wet. Cover topping surfaces and edges with **12-inch (300-mm)** lap over adjacent absorptive covers, **as directed**.
  - b. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches (300 mm)**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
  - c. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in two coats in continuous operations by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

**E. Joint Filling**

1. Prepare and clean contraction joints and install semirigid joint filler, according to manufacturer's written instructions, once topping has fully cured.
2. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
3. Install semirigid joint filler full depth of contraction joints. Overfill joint and trim semirigid joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

**F. Repairs**

1. Defective Topping: Repair and patch defective concrete floor topping areas, including areas that have not bonded to concrete substrate.

**G. Field Quality Control**

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of completed applications of concrete floor toppings shall take place in successive stages, in areas of extent and using methods as follows:
  - a. Sample Sets: At point of placement, a set of 3 molded-cube samples shall be taken from the topping mix for the first **1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m)**, plus 1 set of samples for each subsequent **5000 sq. ft. (464 sq. m)** of topping, or fraction thereof, but not less than 6 samples for each day's placement. Samples shall be tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compliance with compressive-strength requirements.

- b. Concrete floor topping shall be tested for delamination by dragging a steel chain over the surface.
  - c. Concrete floor topping shall be tested for compliance with surface flatness and levelness tolerances.
3. Remove and replace applications of concrete floor topping where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 03 53 14 00

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 53 19 00	03 53 14 00	Concrete Floor Topping

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 03 54 16 00 - CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENT

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hydraulic cement-based underlayment. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling underlayment for application below interior floor coverings.

#### C. Action Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For priming and sealing coatings, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans indicating substrates, locations, and average depths of underlayment based on survey of substrate conditions.

#### D. Informational Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
2. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certifying that products are compatible.
3. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
2. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
3. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
4. Sound Transmission Characteristics: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for STC and IIC ratings per ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 492 by a qualified testing agency.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

#### G. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
  - a. Place hydraulic-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between 50 and 80 deg F (10 and 27 deg C).

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Hydraulic-Cement-Based Underlayments

1. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thicknesses of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - a. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement, or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
  - b. Compressive Strength: Not less than **4100 psi (28 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - c. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer formulated for use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
2. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm)**; or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - a. Provide aggregate when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
3. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than **70 deg F (21 deg C)**.
4. Reinforcement: For underlayment applied to wood substrates, provide galvanized metal lath or other corrosion-resistant reinforcement recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
5. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.
6. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for metal substrates.

### B. Accessories

1. Sound Mat
2. Sound Reduction Board

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
  - a. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### B. Preparation

1. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
  - b. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
2. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
  - a. Moisture Testing: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates do not exceed a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of **3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/100 sq. m)** in 24 hours.
3. Wood Substrates: Mechanically fasten loose boards and panels to eliminate substrate movement and squeaks. Sand to remove coatings that might impair underlayment bond and remove sanding dust.
  - a. Install underlayment reinforcement recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Metal Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, rust, foreign matter, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond. Apply corrosion-resistant coating compatible with underlayment if recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.

5. Nonporous Substrates: For ceramic tile, quarry tile, and terrazzo substrates, remove waxes, sealants, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond, and prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Sound Control Mat and Board: Install sound control materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Do not install mechanical fasteners that penetrate through the sound control materials.

C. Application

1. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - b. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
  - c. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
2. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
3. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
  - a. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
  - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
4. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
5. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
6. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.

D. Protection

1. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION 03 54 16 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
03 61 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
03 62 13 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 62 16 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 64 23 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
03 64 26 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 04 01 20 91 - CLAY MASONRY RESTORATION AND CLEANING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for clay masonry restoration and cleaning. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes maintenance of unit masonry consisting of brick and terra cotta clay masonry restoration and cleaning as follows:
  - a. Unused anchor removal.
  - b. Repairing unit masonry, including replacing units.
  - c. Painting steel uncovered during the work.
  - d. Reanchoring veneers.
  - e. Repointing joints.
  - f. Preliminary cleaning, including removing plant growth.
  - g. Cleaning exposed unit masonry surfaces.
2. Owner-Furnished Material: Salvaged brick (if salvaged brick is available from the Owner for reuse).

#### C. Definitions

1. Very Low-Pressure Spray: Under 100 psi (690 kPa).
2. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi (690 to 2750 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).
3. Medium-Pressure Spray: 400 to 800 psi (2750 to 5510 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).
4. High-Pressure Spray: 800 to 1200 psi (5510 to 8250 kPa); 4 to 6 gpm (0.25 to 0.4 L/s).
5. Saturation Coefficient: Ratio of the weight of water absorbed during immersion in cold water to weight absorbed during immersion in boiling water; used as an indication of resistance of masonry units to freezing and thawing.

#### D. Preconstruction Testing

1. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on masonry units as follows.
  - a. Existing Brick and Terra Cotta: Test each type of existing masonry unit indicated for replacement, according to testing methods in ASTM C 67 for compressive strength, 24-hour cold-water absorption, 5-hour boil absorption, saturation coefficient, and initial rate of absorption (suction). Carefully remove five existing units from locations designated by the Owner. Take testing samples from these units.
  - b. Existing Mortar: Test according to ASTM C 295, modified as agreed by testing service and the Owner for Project requirements, to determine proportional composition of original ingredients, sizes and colors of aggregates, and approximate strength. Use X-ray diffraction, infrared spectroscopy, and differential thermal analysis as necessary to supplement microscopical methods. Carefully remove existing mortar from within joints at five locations designated by the Owner or testing service.
  - c. Temporary Patch: as directed by the Owner, provide temporary materials at locations from which existing samples were taken.
  - d. Replacement Brick and Terra Cotta: Test each proposed type of replacement masonry unit, according to sampling and testing methods in ASTM C 67 for compressive strength, 24-hour cold-water absorption, 5-hour boil absorption, saturation coefficient, and initial rate of absorption (suction).

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - a. Full-size patterns with complete dimensions for new terra cotta units, specially molded brick shapes, and brick arches and their jointing, showing relation of existing to new units.
  - b. Setting number of each new terra cotta unit and its location on the structure in annotated plans and elevations.
  - c. Provisions for expansion joints or other sealant joints.
  - d. Provisions for flashing, lighting fixtures, conduits, and weep holes as required.
  - e. Replacement and repair anchors. Include details of anchors within individual masonry units, with locations of anchors and dimensions of holes and recesses in units required for anchors.
3. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
4. Preconstruction Test Reports.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Restoration Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced, preapproved masonry restoration and cleaning firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience installing standard unit masonry is not sufficient experience for masonry restoration work.
  - a. At Contractor's option, work may be divided between two specialist firms: one for cleaning work and one for repair work.
  - b. Field Supervision: Restoration specialist firms shall maintain experienced full-time supervisors on Project site during times that clay masonry restoration and cleaning work is in progress. Supervisors shall not be changed during Project except for causes beyond the control of restoration specialist firm.
  - c. Restoration Worker Qualifications: Persons who are experienced and specialize in restoration work of types they will be performing. When masonry units are being patched, assign at least one worker among those performing patching work who is trained and certified by manufacturer of patching compound to apply its products.
2. Terra Cotta Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm regularly engaged in manufacturing custom architectural terra cotta units for building restoration purposes, of same type and of similar size, complexity, and tolerances as those required for the Work.
3. Mockups: Prepare mockups of restoration and cleaning to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution and for fabrication and installation.
  - a. Masonry Repair: Prepare sample areas for each type of masonry material indicated to have repair work performed. If not otherwise indicated, size each mockup not smaller than 2 adjacent whole units or approximately **48 inches (1200 mm)** in least dimension. Erect sample areas in existing walls unless otherwise indicated, to demonstrate quality of materials, workmanship, and blending with existing work. Include the following as a minimum:
    - 1) Replacement:
      - a) Four brick units replaced.
      - b) Four terra cotta units replaced.
    - 2) Reanchoring Veneers: Install three masonry repair anchors in mockup wall assembly of each anchor type required.
    - 3) Patching: Three small holes at least **1 inch (25 mm)** in diameter **OR** as directed, **as directed**, for each type of masonry material indicated to be patched, so as to leave no evidence of repair.
    - 4) Widening Joints: Widen a joint in 2 separate locations, each approximately **12 inches (300 mm)** long **OR** as directed, **as directed**.
  - b. Repointing: Rake out joints in 2 separate areas, each approximately **36 inches (900 mm)** high by **48 inches (1200 mm)** wide **OR** as indicated, **as directed**, for each type of repointing required and repoint one of the areas.

- c. Cleaning: Clean an area approximately **25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m)** OR as indicated, **as directed**, for each type of masonry and surface condition.
  4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
  1. Deliver masonry units to Project site strapped together in suitable packs or pallets or in heavy-duty cartons.
  2. Deliver each piece of terra cotta with code mark or setting number on unexposed face, corresponding to Shop Drawings, using nonstaining paint.
  3. Deliver other materials to Project site in manufacturer's original and unopened containers, labeled with manufacturer's name and type of products.
  4. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
  5. Store hydrated lime in manufacturer's original and unopened containers. Discard lime if containers have been damaged or have been opened for more than two days.
  6. Store lime putty covered with water in sealed containers.
  7. Store sand where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- H. Project Conditions
  1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit masonry restoration and cleaning work to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
  2. Repair masonry units and repoint mortar joints only when air temperature is between **40 and 90 deg F (4 and 32 deg C)** and is predicted to remain so for at least 7 days after completion of the Work unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Cold-Weather Requirements: Comply with the following procedures for masonry repair and mortar-joint pointing unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. When air temperature is below **40 deg F (4 deg C)**, heat mortar ingredients, masonry repair materials, and existing masonry walls to produce temperatures between **40 and 120 deg F (4 and 49 deg C)**.
    - b. When mean daily air temperature is below **40 deg F (4 deg C)**, provide enclosure and heat to maintain temperatures above **32 deg F (0 deg C)** within the enclosure for 7 days after repair and pointing.
    - c. Hot-Weather Requirements: Protect masonry repair and mortar-joint pointing when temperature and humidity conditions produce excessive evaporation of water from mortar and repair materials. Provide artificial shade and wind breaks and use cooled materials as required to minimize evaporation. Do not apply mortar to substrates with temperatures of **90 deg F (32 deg C)** and above unless otherwise indicated.
  4. For manufactured repair materials, perform work within the environmental limits set by each manufacturer.
  5. Clean masonry surfaces only when air temperature is **40 deg F (4 deg C)** and above and is predicted to remain so for at least 7 days after completion of cleaning.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Masonry Materials
  1. Face Brick: Provide face brick, including specially molded, ground, cut, or sawed shapes where required to complete masonry restoration work.
    - a. Provide units with physical properties, colors, color variation within units, surface texture, size, and shape to match existing brickwork.
      - 1) Physical Properties per ASTM C 67:
      - 2) For existing brickwork that exhibits a range of colors or color variation within units, provide brick that proportionally matches that range and variation rather than brick that matches an individual color within that range.

- b. Special Shapes:
      - 1) Provide specially molded, 100 percent solid shapes for applications where core holes or "frogs" could be exposed to view or weather when in final position and where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
      - 2) Provide specially ground units, shaped to match patterns, for arches and where indicated.
      - 3) Mechanical chopping or breaking brick, or bonding pieces of brick together by adhesive, are not acceptable procedures for fabricating special shapes.
    - c. Tolerances as Fabricated: Comply with tolerance requirements in ASTM C 216, Type FBX **OR** Comply with tolerance requirements in ASTM C 216, Type FBS, **as directed**.
  2. Building Brick: Provide building brick complying with ASTM C 62, of same vertical dimension as face brick, for masonry work concealed from view.
    - a. Grade SW where in contact with earth.
    - b. Grade SW, MW, or NW for concealed backup.
  3. Salvaged Brick: Obtain salvaged brick from the Owner from location shown on Drawings. Clean off residual mortar.
  4. Glazed Terra Cotta: Provide new terra cotta units to match existing terra cotta units in body composition, physical properties, color, gloss, surface texture, thickness, profile, dimensions, and composition of surface glaze.
    - a. Physical Properties: Provide units with tested physical properties within 10 percent of those determined from preconstruction testing of selected existing units.
      - 1) Physical Properties per ASTM C 67:
    - b. Tolerances as Fabricated: Comply with tolerance requirements in ASTM C 212, Type FTX.
  5. Brownstone Terra Cotta: Provide new, unglazed, brownstone terra cotta units to match existing terra cotta units in body composition, physical properties, colors, color variation within units, surface texture, unit profile, and dimensions.
    - a. Physical Properties: Provide units with tested physical properties within 10 percent of those determined from preconstruction testing of selected existing units.
    - b. Physical Properties per ASTM C 67:
    - c. Tolerances as Fabricated: Comply with tolerance requirements in ASTM C 212, Type FTX.
    - d. For existing terra cotta that exhibits a range of colors or color variation within units, provide terra cotta that proportionally matches that range and variation rather than terra cotta that matches an individual color within that range.
- B. Mortar Materials
  1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, white or gray or both where required for color matching of exposed mortar.
    - a. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
  2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
  3. Factory-Prepared Lime Putty: ASTM C 1489.
  4. Quicklime: ASTM C 5, pulverized lime.
  5. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144 unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Color: Provide natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
    - b. For pointing mortar, provide sand with rounded edges.
    - c. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
  6. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides, compounded for mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.
  7. Water: Potable.

C. Manufactured Repair Materials

1. Masonry Patching Compound: Factory-mixed cementitious product that is custom manufactured for patching masonry.
  - a. Use formulation that is vapor- and water permeable (equal to or more than the masonry unit), exhibits low shrinkage, has lower modulus of elasticity than the masonry units being repaired, and develops high bond strength to all types of masonry.
  - b. Use formulation having working qualities and retardation control to permit forming and sculpturing where necessary.
  - c. Formulate patching compound used for patching brick and terra cotta in colors and textures to match each masonry unit being patched.
2. Terra Cotta Glaze Replacement: A high-solids, nonyellowing, fade-resistant, waterborne polyurethane or epoxy coating intended for exterior use as terra cotta glaze replacement. Product shall be custom mixed by manufacturer to match color and gloss of existing terra cotta glaze.

D. Paint Removers

1. Alkaline Paste Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard alkaline paste formulation for removing paint coatings from masonry.
2. Covered or Skin-Forming Alkaline Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard covered or skin-forming alkaline formulation for removing paint coatings from masonry.
3. Solvent-Type Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard water-rinsable, solvent-type gel formulation for removing paint coatings from masonry.
4. Low-Odor, Solvent-Type Paint Remover: Manufacturer's standard low-odor, water-rinsable solvent-type gel formulation, containing no methanol or methylene chloride, for removing paint coatings from masonry.

E. Cleaning Materials

1. Water: Potable.
2. Hot Water: Water heated to a temperature of 140 to 160 deg F (60 to 71 deg C).
3. Job-Mixed Detergent Solution: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups (0.5 L) of tetrasodium polyphosphate, 1/2 cup (125 mL) of laundry detergent, and 20 quarts (20 L) of hot water for every 5 gal. (20 L) of solution required.
4. Job-Mixed Mold, Mildew, and Algae Remover: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups (0.5 L) of tetrasodium polyphosphate, 5 quarts (5 L) of 5 percent sodium hypochlorite (bleach), and 15 quarts (15 L) of hot water for every 5 gal. (20 L) of solution required.
5. Nonacidic Gel Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard gel formulation, with pH between 6 and 9, that contains detergents with chelating agents and is specifically formulated for cleaning masonry surfaces.
6. Nonacidic Liquid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mildly alkaline liquid cleaner formulated for removing mold, mildew, and other organic soiling from ordinary building materials, including polished stone, brick, aluminum, plastics, and wood.
7. Mild Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mildly acidic cleaner containing no muriatic (hydrochloric), hydrofluoric, or sulfuric acid; or ammonium bifluoride or chlorine bleaches.
8. Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard acidic masonry cleaner composed of hydrofluoric acid or ammonium bifluoride blended with other acids, detergents, wetting agents, and inhibitors.
9. Two-Part Chemical Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of potassium or sodium hydroxide based, alkaline prewash cleaner and acidic afterwash cleaner that does not contain hydrofluoric acid.

F. Accessory Materials

1. Liquid Strippable Masking Agent: Manufacturer's standard liquid, film-forming, strippable masking material for protecting glass, metal, and polished stone surfaces from damaging effects of acidic and alkaline masonry cleaners.
2. Terra Cotta Anchors: Type and size indicated or, if not indicated, to match existing anchors in size and type. Fabricate anchors from Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless steel.



3. Masonry Repair Anchors, Expansion Type: Mechanical fasteners designed for masonry veneer stabilization consisting of **1/4-inch- (6-mm-)** diameter, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel rod with brass expanding shells at each end and water-shedding washer in the middle. Expanding shells shall be designed to provide positive mechanical anchorage to veneer on one end and backup masonry on the other.
4. Masonry Repair Anchors, Spiral Type: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel spiral rods designed to anchor to backing and veneer. Anchors are flexible in plane of veneer but rigid perpendicular to it.
  - a. Provide adhesive-installed anchors complete with manufacturer's standard epoxy adhesive and injection tubes, or other devices required for installation.
  - b. Provide driven-in anchors designed to be installed in drilled holes and relying on screw effect rather than adhesive to secure them to backup and veneer.
5. Masonry Repair Anchors, Rod/Screen Tube Type: Stainless-steel screen tube with or without Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel rod, adhesive installed by injection with manufacturer's standard epoxy adhesive, complete with other devices required for installation.
6. Sealant Materials:
  - a. Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealant(s) of base polymer and characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
    - 1) Single-component, nonsag urethane sealant.
  - b. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of masonry adjoining installed sealant unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Ground-Mortar Aggregate: Custom crushed and ground pointing mortar sand or existing mortar retrieved from joints. Grind to a particle size that matches the adjacent mortar aggregate and color. Remove all fines passing the 100 sieve.
7. Joint-Sealant Backing:
  - a. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
  - b. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where acceptable.
8. Setting Buttons: Resilient plastic buttons, nonstaining to masonry, sized to suit joint thicknesses and bed depths of masonry units without intruding into required depths of pointing materials.
9. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material, compatible with pointing mortar, joint primers, sealants, and surfaces adjacent to joints; that will easily come off entirely, including adhesive.
10. Antirust Coating: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, self-curing, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI #79, Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer or SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 zinc-rich coating.
  - a. Use coating requiring no better than SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning", **as directed**, surface preparation according to manufacturer's literature or certified statement.
  - b. Use coating with a VOC content of **420 g/L (3.5 lb/gal.)** or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
11. Miscellaneous Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
  - a. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
  - b. Little possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
  - c. Consistency of each application.
  - d. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
  - e. Do not use products or tools that could do the following:
    - 1) Remove, alter, or in any way harm the present condition or future preservation of existing surfaces, including surrounding surfaces not in contract.

- 2) Leave a residue on surfaces.

G. Mortar Mixes

1. Preparing Lime Putty: Slake quicklime and prepare lime putty according to appendix to ASTM C 5 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
  - a. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
3. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without the Owner's approval.
  - a. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not exceed a pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10 by weight.
4. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
5. Mortar Proportions: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
  - a. Pointing Mortar for Brick: 1 part portland cement, 2 parts lime, and 6 parts sand **OR** 1 part portland cement, 6 parts lime, and 12 parts sand, **as directed**.
    - 1) Add mortar pigments to produce mortar colors required.
  - b. Pointing Mortar for Terra Cotta: 1 part white portland cement, 1 part lime, and 6 parts sand.
    - 1) Add mortar pigments to produce mortar colors required.
  - c. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Same as pointing mortar except mortar pigments are not required, **as directed**.
  - d. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: 1 part portland cement, 2 parts lime, and 6 parts sand **OR** 1 part portland cement, 6 parts lime, and 12 parts sand, **as directed**.
  - e. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime.

H. Chemical Cleaning Solutions

1. Dilute chemical cleaners with water to produce solutions not exceeding concentration recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
2. Acidic Cleaner Solution for Brick and Brownstone Terra Cotta: Dilute with water to produce hydrofluoric acid content of 3 percent or less, but not greater than that recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
3. Acidic Cleaner Solution for Glazed Terra Cotta: Dilute with water to concentration demonstrated by testing that does not etch or otherwise damage terra cotta surface, but not greater than that recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Protection

1. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building being restored, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from masonry restoration work.
  - a. Erect temporary protective covers over walkways and at points of pedestrian and vehicular entrance and exit that must remain in service during course of restoration and cleaning work.
2. Comply with chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions for protecting building and other surfaces against damage from exposure to its products. Prevent chemical-cleaning solutions from coming into contact with people, motor vehicles, landscaping, buildings, and other surfaces that could be harmed by such contact.



- a. Cover adjacent surfaces with materials that are proven to resist chemical cleaners used unless chemical cleaners being used will not damage adjacent surfaces. Use materials that contain only waterproof, UV-resistant adhesives. Apply masking agents to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid masking agent to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking to prevent adhesive staining.
  - b. Keep wall wet below area being cleaned to prevent streaking from runoff.
  - c. Do not clean masonry during winds of sufficient force to spread cleaning solutions to unprotected surfaces.
  - d. Neutralize and collect alkaline and acid wastes for disposal off the Owner's property.
  - e. Dispose of runoff from cleaning operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
3. Prevent mortar from staining face of surrounding masonry and other surfaces.
    - a. Cover sills, ledges, and projections to protect from mortar droppings.
    - b. Keep wall area wet below rebuilding and pointing work to discourage mortar from adhering.
    - c. Immediately remove mortar in contact with exposed masonry and other surfaces.
    - d. Clean mortar splatters from scaffolding at end of each day.
  4. Remove gutters and downspouts adjacent to masonry and store where indicated during masonry restoration and cleaning. Reinstall when masonry restoration and cleaning are complete.
    - a. Provide temporary rain drainage during work as indicated to direct water away from building.
- B. Unused Anchor Removal
1. Remove masonry anchors, brackets, wood nailers, and other extraneous items no longer in use unless identified as historically significant or indicated to remain.
    - a. Remove items carefully to avoid spalling or cracking masonry.
    - b. Where directed, if an item cannot be removed without damaging surrounding masonry, do the following:
      - 1) Cut or grind off item approximately **3/4 inch (20 mm)** beneath surface and core drill a recess of same depth in surrounding masonry as close around item as practical.
      - 2) Immediately paint exposed end of item with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended dry film thickness per coat. Keep paint off sides of recess.
    - c. Patch the hole where each item was removed unless directed to remove and replace the masonry unit.
- C. Brick Removal And Replacement
1. At locations indicated, remove bricks that are damaged, spalled, or deteriorated or are to be reused. Carefully demolish or remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
    - a. When removing single bricks, remove material from center of brick and work toward outside edges.
  2. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition.
  3. Notify the Owner of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids, cracks, bulges, and loose units in existing masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
  4. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.
    - a. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
    - b. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
    - c. Store brick for reuse. Store off ground, on skids, and protected from weather.
    - d. Deliver cleaned brick not required for reuse to the Owner unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Clean bricks surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for replacement.

6. Replace removed damaged brick with other removed brick and salvaged brick in good quality, where possible, or with new brick matching existing brick, including size. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.
  7. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
    - a. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing joints.
    - b. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
  8. Lay replacement brick with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than **30 g/30 sq. in. per min. (30 g/194 sq. cm per min.)**. Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.
    - a. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.
    - b. Rake out mortar used for laying brick before mortar sets and point new mortar joints in repaired area to comply with requirements for repointing existing masonry, and at same time as repointing of surrounding area.
    - c. When mortar is sufficiently hard to support units, remove shims and other devices interfering with pointing of joints.
- D. Terra Cotta Removal And Replacement
1. At locations indicated, remove terra cotta units that are damaged, spalled, or deteriorated. Carefully demolish or remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
  2. Support and protect remaining masonry that was supported by removed units. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition.
  3. Notify the Owner of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids, cracks, bulges, and loose units in existing masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
  4. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for replacement.
  5. Install replacement units into bonding and coursing pattern of existing units.
    - a. Do not cut or grind glazed terra cotta.
    - b. If minor cutting of replacement brownstone terra cotta is required, use a motor-driven grinder or saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Do not cut or grind more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** along any edge.
    - c. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
  6. Set replacement units in a full bed of mortar. Replace existing anchors with new anchors of size and type indicated.
    - a. Embed anchors in mortar and fill voids behind units with mortar.
    - b. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing terra cotta.
    - c. Rake out mortar used for laying terra cotta before mortar sets and point new mortar joints in repaired area to comply with requirements for repointing existing masonry, and at same time as repointing of surrounding area.
    - d. When mortar is sufficiently hard to support units, remove shims and other devices interfering with pointing of joints.
- E. Reanchoring Veneers
1. Install masonry repair anchors in horizontal mortar joints and according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install at not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. vertically and **32 inches (800 mm)** o.c. horizontally unless otherwise indicated. Install at locations to avoid penetrating flashing.
  2. Recess anchors at least **5/8 inch (16 mm)** from surface of mortar joint and fill recess with pointing mortar.
- F. Painting Steel Uncovered During The Work

1. Inspect steel exposed during masonry removal. Where the Owner determines that it is structural, or for other reasons cannot be totally removed, prepare and paint it as follows:
  - a. Remove paint, rust, and other contaminants according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning", **as directed**, as applicable to meet paint manufacturer's recommended preparation.
  - b. Immediately paint exposed steel with two coats of antirust coating, following coating manufacturer's written instructions and without exceeding manufacturer's recommended rate of application (dry film thickness per coat).
2. If on inspection and rust removal, the cross section of a steel member is found to be reduced from rust by more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, notify the Owner before proceeding.

G. Masonry Unit Patching

1. Patch the following masonry units unless another type of replacement or repair is indicated:
  - a. Units indicated to be patched.
  - b. Units with holes.
  - c. Units with chipped edges or corners.
  - d. Units with small areas of deep deterioration.
2. Remove and replace existing patches unless otherwise indicated or approved by the Owner.
3. Patching Bricks:
  - a. Remove loose material from masonry surface. Carefully remove additional material so patch will not have feathered edges but will have square or slightly undercut edges on area to be patched and will be at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, but not less than recommended by patching compound manufacturer.
  - b. Mask adjacent mortar joint or rake out for repointing if patch will extend to edge of masonry unit.
  - c. Mix patching compound in individual batches to match each unit being patched. Combine one or more colors of patching compound, as needed, to produce exact match.
  - d. Rinse surface to be patched and leave damp, but without standing water.
  - e. Brush-coat surfaces with slurry coat of patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - f. Place patching compound in layers as recommended by patching compound manufacturer, but not less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more than **2 inches (50 mm)** thick. Roughen surface of each layer to provide a key for next layer.
  - g. Trowel, scrape, or carve surface of patch to match texture and surrounding surface plane or contour of the masonry unit. Shape and finish surface before or after curing, as determined by testing, to best match existing masonry unit.
  - h. Keep each layer damp for 72 hours or until patching compound has set.
4. Patching Terra Cotta:
  - a. Remove deteriorated material as determined by sounding gently with a small hammer. Carefully remove additional material so patch will not have feathered edges but will have square or slightly undercut edges on area to be patched and will be at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, but not less than recommended by patching compound manufacturer.
  - b. Where mortar joints adjacent to patch are open, fill back of joints with pointing mortar and allow to cure before patching terra cotta. Leave space for pointing joints according to "Repointing Masonry" Article.
  - c. Mask adjacent mortar joint or rake out for repointing if patch will extend to edge of unit.
  - d. Rinse surface to be patched and leave damp, but without standing water.
  - e. Brush-coat surfaces with slurry coat of patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - f. Place patching compound in layers as recommended by patching compound manufacturer, but not less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more than **2 inches (50 mm)** thick. Roughen surface of each layer to provide a key for next layer.
  - g. Do not apply patching compound over mortar joints. If patching compound bridges mortar joints, cut out joints after patching compound hardens.

- h. Trowel, scrape, or carve surface of patch to match texture, details, and surrounding surface plane or contour of terra cotta. Shape and finish surface before or after curing, as determined by testing to best match existing terra cotta.
  - i. Keep each layer damp for 72 hours or until patching compound has set.
  - j. After final layer of patching compound has cured, apply glaze replacement according to manufacturer's written instructions. Apply two or more coats, as needed, to match glaze of adjacent terra cotta units.
- H. Widening Joints
  - 1. Do not widen a joint, except where indicated or approved by the Owner.
  - 2. Location Guideline: Where an existing masonry unit abuts another or the joint is less than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, widen the joint for length indicated and to depth required for repointing after obtaining the Owner's approval.
  - 3. Carefully perform widening by cutting, grinding, routing, or filing procedures demonstrated in an approved mockup.
  - 4. Widen joint to width equal to or less than predominant width of other joints on building. Make sides of widened joint uniform and parallel. Ensure that edges of units along widened joint are in alignment with joint edges at unaltered joints.
- I. Cleaning Masonry, General
  - 1. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from bottom to top **OR** top to bottom, **as directed**, of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other. Ensure that dirty residues and rinse water will not wash over cleaned, dry surfaces.
  - 2. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.
    - a. Do not use wire brushes or brushes that are not resistant to chemical cleaner being used. Do not use plastic-bristle brushes if natural-fiber brushes will resist chemical cleaner being used.
    - b. Use spray equipment that provides controlled application at volume and pressure indicated, measured at spray tip. Adjust pressure and volume to ensure that cleaning methods do not damage masonry.
      - 1) Equip units with pressure gages.
    - c. For chemical-cleaner spray application, use low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with cone-shaped spray tip.
    - d. For water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray tip that disperses water at an angle of 25 to 50 degrees.
    - e. For high-pressure water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray tip that disperses water at an angle of at least 40 degrees.
    - f. For heated water-spray application, use equipment capable of maintaining temperature between **140 and 160 deg F (60 and 71 deg C)** at flow rates indicated.
    - g. For steam application, use steam generator capable of delivering live steam at nozzle.
  - 3. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner that results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, and interstices, and that produces an even effect without streaking or damaging masonry surfaces.
  - 4. Water Application Methods:
    - a. Water-Soak Application: Soak masonry surfaces by applying water continuously and uniformly to limited area for time indicated. Apply water at low pressures and low volumes in multiple fine sprays using perforated hoses or multiple spray nozzles. Erect a protective enclosure constructed of polyethylene sheeting to cover area being sprayed.
    - b. Water-Spray Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, hold spray nozzle at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from surface of masonry and apply water in horizontal back and forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
  - 5. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam to masonry surfaces at the very low pressures indicated for each type of masonry material. Hold nozzle at least **6 inches (150 mm)** from surface of masonry and apply steam in horizontal back and forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.

6. Chemical-Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces to comply with chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions; use brush or spray application. Do not spray apply at pressures exceeding **50 psi (345 kPa)**. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended by manufacturer.
  7. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upward from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting. Periodically during each rinse, test pH of rinse water running off of cleaned area to determine that chemical cleaner is completely removed.
    - a. Apply neutralizing agent and repeat rinse if necessary to produce tested pH of between 6.7 and 7.5.
  8. After cleaning is complete, remove protection no longer required. Remove tape and adhesive marks.
- J. Preliminary Cleaning
1. Removing Plant Growth: Completely remove visible plant, moss, and shrub growth from masonry surfaces. Carefully remove plants, creepers, and vegetation by cutting at roots and allowing to dry as long as possible before removal. Remove loose soil and debris from open masonry joints to whatever depth they occur.
  2. Preliminary Cleaning: Before beginning general cleaning, remove extraneous substances that are resistant to cleaning methods being used. Extraneous substances include paint, calking, asphalt, and tar.
    - a. Carefully remove heavy accumulations of material from surface of masonry with a sharp chisel. Do not scratch or chip masonry surface.
    - b. Remove paint and calking with alkaline paint remover.
      - 1) Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
      - 2) Repeat application up to two times if needed.
    - c. Remove asphalt and tar with solvent-type paint remover.
      - 1) Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
      - 2) Apply paint remover only to asphalt and tar by brush without prewetting.
      - 3) Allow paint remover to remain on surface for 10 to 30 minutes.
      - 4) Repeat application if needed.
- K. Paint Removal
1. Paint Removal with Alkaline Paste Paint Remover:
    - a. Remove loose and peeling paint using low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
    - b. Apply paint remover to dry, painted masonry with brushes.
    - c. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended by manufacturer.
    - d. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.
    - e. Repeat process if necessary to remove all paint.
    - f. Apply acidic cleaner or manufacturer's recommended afterwash to masonry, while surface is still wet, using low-pressure spray equipment or soft-fiber brush. Let cleaner or afterwash remain on surface as a neutralizing agent for period recommended by chemical cleaner or afterwash manufacturer.
    - g. Rinse with cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  2. Paint Removal with Covered or Skin-Forming Alkaline Paint Remover:
    - a. Remove loose and peeling paint using low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
    - b. Apply paint remover to dry, painted masonry with trowel, spatula, or as recommended by manufacturer.
    - c. Apply cover, if required by manufacturer, per manufacturer's written instructions.
    - d. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended by manufacturer or as determined in test panels.
    - e. Scrape off paint and remover and collect for disposal.



- f. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.
- g. Use alkaline paste paint remover, according to "Paint Removal with Alkaline Paste Paint Remover" Paragraph, if necessary to remove remaining paint.
- h. Apply acidic cleaner or manufacturer's recommended afterwash to masonry, while surface is still wet, using low-pressure spray equipment or soft-fiber brush. Let cleaner or afterwash remain on surface as a neutralizing agent for period recommended by chemical-cleaner or afterwash manufacturer.
- i. Rinse with cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
3. Paint Removal with Solvent-Type Paint Remover:
  - a. Remove loose and peeling paint using low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray, scrapers, stiff brushes, or a combination of these. Let surface dry thoroughly.
  - b. Apply thick coating of paint remover to painted masonry with natural-fiber cleaning brush, deep-nap roller, or large paint brush.
  - c. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for period recommended by manufacturer. Agitate periodically with stiff-fiber brush.
  - d. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and paint residue.
- L. Cleaning Brickwork
  1. Cold-Water Soak:
    - a. Apply cold water by intermittent spraying to keep surface moist.
    - b. Use perforated hoses or other means that will apply a fine water mist to entire surface being cleaned.
    - c. Apply water in cycles with at least 30 minutes between cycles.
    - d. Continue spraying until surface encrustation has softened sufficiently to permit its removal by water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
    - e. Continue spraying for 72 hours.
    - f. Remove soil and softened surface encrustation from masonry with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
  2. Cold-Water Wash: Use cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray.
  3. Hot-Water Wash: Use hot water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray.
  4. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam at very low pressures not exceeding **30 psi (207 kPa) OR 80 psi (550 kPa)**, **as directed**. Remove dirt softened by steam with wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, or cold-water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
  5. Detergent Cleaning:
    - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
    - b. Scrub masonry with detergent solution using medium-soft brushes until soil is thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes to remove soil from mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in solution often to ensure that adequate fresh detergent is used and that masonry surface remains wet.
    - c. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove detergent solution and soil.
    - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
  6. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Removal:
    - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
    - b. Apply mold, mildew, and algae remover by brush or low-pressure spray.
    - c. Scrub masonry with medium-soft brushes until mold, mildew, and algae are thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes for mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in mold, mildew, and algae remover often to ensure that adequate fresh cleaner is used and that masonry surface remains wet.

- d. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove mold, mildew, and algae remover and soil.
- e. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
7. Nonacidic Gel Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply nonacidic gel cleaner in **1/8-inch (3-mm)** thickness by brush, working into joints and crevices. Apply quickly and do not brush out excessively so area will be uniformly covered with fresh cleaner and dwell time will be uniform throughout area being cleaned.
  - c. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
  - d. Remove bulk of nonacidic gel cleaner by squeegeeing into containers for disposal.
  - e. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - f. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
8. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply cleaner to masonry in two applications, **as directed**, by brush or low-pressure spray. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
    - 3) Two to three minutes.
  - c. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
9. Mild Acidic **OR** Acidic, **as directed**, Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply cleaner to masonry in two applications, **as directed**, by brush or low-pressure spray. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
    - 3) Two to three minutes.
  - c. Rinse with cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use a steam cleaning.
- M. Cleaning Brownstone Terra Cotta
  1. Cold-Water Soak:
    - a. Apply cold water by intermittent spraying to keep surface moist.
    - b. Use perforated hoses or other means that will apply a fine water mist to entire surface being cleaned.
    - c. Apply water in cycles with at least 30 minutes between cycles.
    - d. Continue spraying until surface encrustation has softened sufficiently to permit its removal by water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
    - e. Continue spraying for 72 hours.
    - f. Remove soil and softened surface encrustation from masonry with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.

2. Cold-Water Wash: Use cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray.
3. Hot-Water Wash: Use hot water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray.
4. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam at very low pressures not exceeding **30 psi (207 kPa) OR 80 psi (550 kPa)**, **as directed**. Remove dirt softened by steam with wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, or cold-water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
5. Detergent Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Scrub masonry with detergent solution using medium-soft brushes until soil is thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes to remove soil from mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in solution often to ensure that adequate fresh detergent is used and that masonry surface remains wet.
  - c. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove detergent solution and soil.
  - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
6. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Removal:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply mold, mildew, and algae remover by brush or low-pressure spray.
  - c. Scrub masonry with medium-soft brushes until mold, mildew, and algae are thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes for mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in mold, mildew, and algae remover often to ensure that adequate fresh cleaner is used and that masonry surface remains wet.
  - d. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove mold, mildew, and algae remover and soil.
  - e. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.
7. Nonacidic Gel Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply nonacidic gel cleaner in **1/8-inch (3-mm)** thickness by brush, working into joints and crevices. Apply quickly and do not brush out excessively so area will be uniformly covered with fresh cleaner and dwell time will be uniform throughout area being cleaned.
  - c. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
  - d. Remove bulk of nonacidic gel cleaner by squeegeeing into containers for disposal.
  - e. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - f. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
8. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply cleaner to masonry in two applications, **as directed**, by brush or low-pressure spray. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
    - 3) Two to three minutes.
  - c. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
9. Mild Acidic **OR** Acidic, **as directed**, Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet masonry with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.



- b. Apply cleaner to masonry in two applications, **as directed**, by brush or low-pressure spray. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
  - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
  - 2) As established by mockup.
  - 3) Two to three minutes.
- c. Rinse with cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
- d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use a steam cleaning.

N. Cleaning Glazed Terra Cotta

1. Hot-Water Wash: Use hot water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray.
2. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam at very low pressures not exceeding **30 psi (207 kPa) OR 80 psi (550 kPa)**, **as directed**. Remove dirt softened by steam with wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, or cold-water wash, as indicated by cleaning tests.
3. Nonacidic Gel Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet terra cotta with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply nonacidic gel cleaner in **1/8-inch (3-mm)** thickness by brush, working into joints and crevices. Apply quickly and do not brush out excessively so area will be uniformly covered with fresh cleaner and dwell time will be uniform throughout area being cleaned.
  - c. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
  - d. Remove bulk of nonacidic gel cleaner by squeegeeing into containers for disposal.
  - e. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - f. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
4. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet terra cotta with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply cleaner to terra cotta in two applications, **as directed**. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
    - 3) Two to three minutes.
  - c. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
5. Mild Acidic Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet terra cotta with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply cleaner to terra cotta in two applications, **as directed**. Let cleaner remain on surface for period indicated below:
    - 1) As recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
    - 2) As established by mockup.
    - 3) Two to three minutes.
  - c. Rinse with cold water applied by low **OR** medium **OR** high, **as directed**, -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - d. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

6. Two-Part Chemical Cleaning:
  - a. Wet terra cotta with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - b. Apply alkaline prewash cleaner to terra cotta by brush or roller. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended by chemical-cleaner manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Rinse with cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - d. Apply acidic afterwash cleaner to terra cotta in two applications, **as directed**, while surface is still wet, using low-pressure spray equipment, deep-nap roller or soft-fiber brush. Let neutralizer remain on surface for period recommended by manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  - e. Rinse with cold water applied by medium-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - f. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.
- O. Repointing Masonry
  1. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
    - a. All joints in areas indicated.
    - b. Joints where mortar is missing or where they contain holes.
    - c. Cracked joints where cracks can be penetrated at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** by a knife blade **0.027 inch (0.7 mm)** thick.
    - d. Cracked joints where cracks are **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** **OR** **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, **as directed**, or more in width and of any depth.
    - e. Joints where they sound hollow when tapped by metal object.
    - f. Joints where they are worn back **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more from surface.
    - g. Joints where they are deteriorated to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
    - h. Joints where they have been filled with substances other than mortar.
    - i. Joints indicated as sealant-filled joints.
  2. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
  3. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
    - a. Remove mortar from joints to depth of joint width plus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** **OR** 2 times joint width **OR** 2-1/2 times joint width, **as directed**, but not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** or not less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar.
    - b. Remove mortar from masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
    - c. Do not spall edges of masonry units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged masonry units as directed by the Owner.
      - 1) Cut out mortar by hand with chisel and resilient mallet. Do not use power-operated grinders without the Owner's written approval based on approved quality-control program.
      - 2) Cut out center of mortar bed joints using angle grinders with diamond-impregnated metal blades. Remove remaining mortar by hand with chisel and resilient mallet. Strictly adhere to approved quality-control program.
  4. Notify the Owner of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose masonry units, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
  5. Pointing with Mortar:
    - a. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
    - b. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (9 mm)** until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

- c. After low areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point all joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (9 mm)**. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing masonry units have worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of masonry to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed masonry surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
  - d. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
  - e. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours including weekends and holidays.
    - 1) Acceptable curing methods include covering with wet burlap and plastic sheeting, periodic hand misting, and periodic mist spraying using system of pipes, mist heads, and timers.
    - 2) Adjust curing methods to ensure that pointing mortar is damp throughout its depth without eroding surface mortar.
  - f. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.
6. Pointing with Sealant:
- a. After raking out, keep joints dry and free of mortar and debris.
  - b. Clean and prepare joint surfaces according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants". Prime joint surfaces unless sealant manufacturer recommends against priming. Do not allow primer to spill or migrate onto adjoining surfaces.
  - c. Fill sealant joints with specified joint sealant according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and the following:
    - 1) Install cylindrical sealant backing beneath the sealant, except where space is insufficient. There, install bond-breaker tape.
    - 2) Install sealant using only proven installation techniques that will ensure that sealant will be deposited in a uniform, continuous ribbon, without gaps or air pockets, and with complete wetting of the joint bond surfaces equally on both sides. Fill joint flush with surrounding masonry and matching the contour of adjoining mortar joints.
    - 3) Install sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer but within the following general limitations, measured at the center (thin) section of the bead:
      - a) Fill joints to a depth equal to joint width, but not more than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** deep or less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** deep.
    - 4) Immediately after first tooling, apply ground-mortar aggregate to sealant, gently pushing aggregate into the surface of sealant. Retool sealant to form smooth, uniform beads, slightly concave. Remove excess sealant and aggregate from surfaces adjacent to joint.
    - 5) Do not allow sealant to overflow or spill onto adjoining surfaces, or to migrate into the voids of adjoining surfaces, particularly rough textures. Remove excess and spillage of sealant promptly as the work progresses. Clean adjoining surfaces by the means necessary to eliminate evidence of spillage, without damage to adjoining surfaces or finishes, as demonstrated in an approved mockup.
  - d. Cure sealant according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
7. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.
- P. Final Cleaning
1. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, spray applied at low pressure.
    - a. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
    - b. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.
  2. Wash adjacent woodwork and other nonmasonry surfaces. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.

3. Clean mortar and debris from roof; remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
4. Sweep and rake adjacent pavement and grounds to remove mortar and debris. Where necessary, pressure wash pavement surfaces to remove mortar, dust, dirt, and stains.

Q. Field Quality Control

1. Inspectors: Engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare test reports. Allow inspectors use of lift devices and scaffolding, as needed, to perform inspections.
2. the Owner's Project Representatives: the Owner will assign Project representatives to help carry out the Owner's responsibilities at the site, including observing progress and quality of portion of the Work completed. Allow the Owner's Project representatives use of lift devices and scaffolding, as needed, to observe progress and quality of portion of the Work completed.
3. Notify inspectors and the Owner's Project representatives in advance of times when lift devices and scaffolding will be relocated. Do not relocate lift devices and scaffolding until inspectors and the Owner's Project representatives have had reasonable opportunity to make inspections and observations of work areas at lift device or scaffold location.

END OF SECTION 04 01 20 91

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
04 01 20 91	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
04 01 20 91	03 01 30 71	Concrete Rehabilitation
04 01 20 91	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 01 50 52	04 01 20 91	Clay Masonry Restoration And Cleaning
04 05 13 26	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 05 16 26	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 05 19 13	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 05 19 16	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 05 23 13	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 04 05 23 16 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sheet metal flashing and trim. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

##### 1. Section Includes:

###### a. Manufactured Products:

- 1) Manufactured through-wall flashing and counterflashing.
- 2) Manufactured reglets and counterflashing.

###### b. Formed Products:

- 1) Formed roof drainage sheet metal fabrications.
- 2) Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 3) Formed steep-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 4) Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
- 5) Formed equipment support flashing.
- 6) Formed overhead-piping safety pans.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
2. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting the following forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49:
  - a. Wind Zone 1: For velocity pressures of 10 to 20 lbf/sq. ft. (0.48 to 0.96 kPa): 40-lbf/sq. ft. (1.92-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 60-lbf/sq. ft. (2.87-kPa) corner uplift force, and 20-lbf/sq. ft. (0.96-kPa) outward force.
  - b. Wind Zone 1: For velocity pressures of 21 to 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1.00 to 1.44 kPa): 60-lbf/sq. ft. (2.87-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 90-lbf/sq. ft. (4.31-kPa) corner uplift force, and 30-lbf/sq. ft. (1.44-kPa) outward force.
  - c. Wind Zone 2: For velocity pressures of 31 to 45 lbf/sq. ft. (1.48 to 2.15 kPa): 90-lbf/sq. ft. (4.31-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 120-lbf/sq. ft. (5.74-kPa) corner uplift force, and 45-lbf/sq. ft. (2.15-kPa) outward force.
  - d. Wind Zone 3: For velocity pressures of 46 to 104 lbf/sq. ft. (2.20 to 4.98 kPa): 208-lbf/sq. ft. (9.96-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 312-lbf/sq. ft. (14.94-kPa) corner uplift force, and 104-lbf/sq. ft. (4.98-kPa) outward force.
3. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - a. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.



- a. Include details for forming, joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including pattern of seams, termination points, fixed points, expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, edge conditions, special conditions, and connections to adjoining work.
3. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified.
4. Maintenance data.
5. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
2. Copper Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - a. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including built-in gutter, fascia, fascia trim, and apron flashing, approximately **10 feet (3.0 m)** long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within **20 OR 10, as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Metals

1. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
2. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
  - a. Non-Patinated Exposed Finish: Mill.
  - b. Non-Patinated, Exposed, Lacquered Finish: Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
    - 1) Brushed Satin (Lacquered): M32-06x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; with clear organic coating); coating of "Incralac," waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, methyl methacrylate copolymer lacquer with UV inhibitor, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
    - 2) Mirror Polished (Lacquered): M22-06x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, specular; with clear organic coating); coating of "Incralac," waterborne **OR** solvent-borne, **as directed**, air-drying, methyl methacrylate copolymer lacquer with UV inhibitor, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
  - c. Pre-Patinated Copper-Sheet Finish: Dark brown **OR** Verdigris, **as directed**, pre-patinated according to ASTM B 882.

3. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.
  - a. As-Milled Finish: Mill **OR** One-side bright mill **OR** Standard one-side bright **OR** Standard two-side bright, **as directed**, finish.
  - b. Alclad Finish: Metallurgically bonded surfacing to both sides, forming a composite aluminum sheet with reflective luster.
  - c. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
  - d. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, pretreat with white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; minimum dry film thickness of **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)**.
  - e. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
  - f. Color Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
    - 1) Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black, **as directed**.
    - 2) Color Range: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
  - g. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes:
    - 1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    - 2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
    - 3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats.
    - 4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    - 5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
    - 6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat.
    - 7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **0.8 mil (0.02 mm)** for topcoat.
    - 8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **3.8 mils (0.97 mm)** for topcoat.
  - h. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - i. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil (0.013 mm)**.
4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed.
  - a. Finish: 2D (dull, cold rolled) **OR** 2B (bright, cold rolled) **OR** 3 (coarse, polished directional satin) **OR** 4 (polished directional satin), **as directed**.
  - b. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**.
5. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, dead-soft, fully annealed stainless-steel sheet of minimum uncoated thickness indicated; coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin), with factory-applied gray preweathering.
6. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper, of minimum uncoated weight (thickness) indicated; coated on both sides with a zinc-tin alloy (50 percent zinc, 50 percent tin).
7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.

- a. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating designation; structural quality.
  - b. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, **Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275)**; structural quality.
  - c. Surface: Smooth, flat **OR** Embossed, **as directed**, and mill phosphatized for field painting **OR** and with manufacturer's standard clear acrylic coating on both sides, **as directed**.
  - d. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - 1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    - 2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
    - 3) Four-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats.
    - 4) Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.
    - 5) Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
    - 6) FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether resin in color coat.
    - 7) Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **0.8 mil (0.02 mm)** for topcoat.
    - 8) Plastisol: Epoxy primer and vinyl plastisol topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **3.8 mils (0.97 mm)** for topcoat.
  - e. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - f. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil (0.013 mm)**.
8. Zinc Sheet: Zinc, 99 percent pure, alloyed with a maximum of 1 percent copper and titanium; with manufacturer's standard factory-applied, flexible, protective back coating.
- a. Finish: Bright rolled **OR** Preweathered gray **OR** Preweathered black, **as directed**.
- B. Underlayment Materials
1. Polyethylene Sheet: **6-mil- (0.15-mm-)** thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
  2. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
  3. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum **30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm)** thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
    - a. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at **240 deg F (116 deg C)**.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus **20 deg F (29 deg C)**.
  4. Slip Sheet: Building paper, **3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kq/sq. m)** minimum, rosin sized.
- C. Miscellaneous Materials
1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
    - a. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.

- 1) Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
- 2) Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
- 3) Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
- b. Fasteners for Copper **OR** Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper, **as directed**, Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze or Series 300 stainless steel.
- c. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- d. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- e. Fasteners for Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- f. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) **OR** Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated, **as directed**, Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 or Series 300 stainless steel.
- g. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 or Series 300 stainless steel.
3. Solder:
  - a. For Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
  - b. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with an acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
  - c. For Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel **OR** Copper, **as directed**: ASTM B 32, 100 percent tin.
  - d. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead or Grade Sn60, 60 percent tin and 40 percent lead.
  - e. For Zinc: ASTM B 32, 40 percent tin and 60 percent lead with low antimony, as recommended by manufacturer.
4. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide and **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick.
5. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed**, polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
6. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
7. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
8. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
9. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- D. Manufactured Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim
  1. Through-Wall Ribbed Sheet Metal Flashing: Manufacture through-wall sheet metal flashing for embedment in masonry with ribs at **3-inch (75-mm)** intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond. Manufacture through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face to receive counterflashing **OR** interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet, **as directed**.
    - a. Copper: **10 oz. (0.34 mm thick)** minimum for fully concealed flashing; **16 oz. (0.55 mm thick)** elsewhere.
    - b. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
  2. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile indicated, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions **OR** with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet, **as directed**.
    - a. Material: Stainless steel, **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)** thick **OR** Copper, **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)** **OR** Aluminum, **0.024 inch (0.61 mm)** thick **OR** Galvanized steel, **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick, **as directed**.

- b. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
- c. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
- d. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
- e. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
- f. Accessories:
  - 1) Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
  - 2) Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
- g. Finish: Mill **OR** With manufacturer's standard color coating, **as directed**.

E. Fabrication, General

1. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item indicated. Fabricate items at the shop to greatest extent possible.
  - a. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - b. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - c. Form sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - d. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces exposed to view.
2. Fabrication Tolerances:
  - a. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines as indicated and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.  
**OR**  
Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
3. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.
4. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and by FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49, **as directed**, for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
7. Seams:
  - a. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.  
**OR**  
Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
8. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.



9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

F. Roof Drainage Sheet Metal Fabrications

1. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter spacers and gutter brackets fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by SMACNA but not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, gutter bead reinforcing bars, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters.
  - a. Gutter Style: SMACNA designation A **OR B OR C OR D OR E OR F OR G OR H OR I OR J OR K OR L, as directed.**
  - b. Expansion Joints: Lap type **OR** Butt type **OR** Butt type with cover plate **OR** Built in, **as directed.**
  - c. Accessories: Continuous removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen **OR** Wire ball downspout strainer **OR** Valley baffles, **as directed.**
  - d. Gutters with Girth up to **15 Inches (380 mm)**: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).**
    - 2) Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.**
    - 3) Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.**
    - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.**
    - 5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).**
    - 6) Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.**
    - 7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.**
    - 8) Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.**
  - e. Gutters with Girth **16 to 20 Inches (410 to 510 mm)**: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).**
    - 2) Aluminum: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.**
    - 3) Stainless Steel: **0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.**
    - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.**
    - 5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).**
    - 6) Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.**
    - 7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.**
    - 8) Zinc: **0.039 inch (1.00 mm) OR 0.048 inch (1.25 mm), as directed, thick.**
  - f. Gutters with Girth **21 to 25 Inches (530 to 640 mm)**: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).**
    - 2) Aluminum: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.**
    - 3) Stainless Steel: **0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.**
    - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.**
    - 5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).**
    - 6) Galvanized Steel: **0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.**
    - 7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.**
    - 8) Zinc: **0.048 inch (1.25 mm) OR 0.059 inch (1.50 mm), as directed, thick.**
  - g. Gutters with Girth **26 to 30 Inches (660 to 760 mm)**: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).**
    - 2) Aluminum: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick.**
    - 3) Stainless Steel: **0.031 inch (0.79 mm) thick.**
    - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).**
    - 5) Galvanized Steel: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.**
    - 6) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.**
  - h. Gutters with Girth **31 to 35 Inches (790 to 890 mm)**: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).**
    - 2) Stainless Steel: **0.038 inch (0.95 mm) thick.**
    - 3) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **25 oz./sq. ft. (0.87 mm thick).**
    - 4) Galvanized Steel: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm) thick.**
    - 5) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm) thick.**

2. Built-in Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, with riveted and soldered joints, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long sections. Fabricate expansion joints and accessories from same metal as gutters unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Fabricate gutters with built-in expansion joints and gutter-end expansion joints at walls.
  - b. Accessories: Continuous removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen **OR** Bronze wire ball downspout strainer **OR** Wire ball downspout strainer, **as directed**.
  - c. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
    - 2) Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
    - 3) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
    - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
    - 5) Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.
3. Downspouts: Fabricate round **OR** rectangular **OR** open-face, **as directed**, downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
  - a. Fabricated Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation 1-35A **OR** 1-35B **OR** 1-35C **OR** 1-35D **OR** 1-35E **OR** 1-35F **OR** 1-35G **OR** 1-35H **OR** 1-35I **OR** 1-35J, **as directed**.
  - b. Manufactured Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation 1-34A **OR** 1-34B **OR** 1-34C **OR** 1-34D **OR** 1-34E, **as directed**.
  - c. Hanger Style: **<Insert description>**.
  - d. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - 1) Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
    - 2) Aluminum: **0.024 inch (0.61 mm)** thick.
    - 3) Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
    - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
    - 5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
    - 6) Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
    - 7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
    - 8) Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.
4. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers of dimensions required with closure flange trim to exterior, **4-inch- (100-mm-)** wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.018 inch (0.46 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.
5. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflows. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.
6. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:

- a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
  - b. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
  - f. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.
- G. Low-Slope Roof Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Roof-Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Furnish with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, joint cover plates.
    - a. Joint Style: Lap, 4 inches (100 mm) wide OR Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate OR Butt, with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates OR Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates, as directed.
    - b. Fabricate with scuppers spaced 10 feet (3 m) apart, of dimensions required with 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide flanges and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper.
    - c. Fabricate from the following materials:
      - 1) Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).
      - 2) Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
      - 3) Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
      - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
      - 5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick).
      - 6) Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
      - 7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
      - 8) Zinc: 0.048 inch (1.25 mm) OR 0.059 inch (1.50 mm), as directed, thick.
  2. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, seal, and solder or weld watertight.
    - a. Coping Profile: SMACNA figure designation 3-4A OR 3-4B OR 3-4C OR 3-4D OR 3-4E OR 3-4F OR 3-4G, as directed.
    - b. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate OR Butt, with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates OR Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate and 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, exposed cover plates, as directed.
    - c. Fabricate from the following materials:
      - 1) Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      - 2) Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
      - 3) Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
      - 4) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
      - 5) Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick).
      - 6) Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
      - 7) Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
      - 8) Zinc: 0.048 inch (1.25 mm) OR 0.059 inch (1.50 mm), as directed, thick.
  3. Roof and Roof to Wall Transition OR Roof to Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) Transition OR Roof to Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap Transition, as directed, Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - b. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
    - c. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
    - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)>.
    - f. Galvanized Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
    - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.034 inch (0.86 mm) thick.
    - h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.



4. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick)>.
    - b. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
    - c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
    - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 20 oz./sq. ft. (0.68 mm thick)>.
    - f. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
    - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
    - h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.
  5. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
    - c. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
    - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)>.
    - f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
    - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
    - h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.
  6. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
    - c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
    - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
    - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
    - h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.
  7. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - b. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
    - c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - e. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
    - f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick.
    - g. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.
  8. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick).
    - b. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
    - c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
- H. Steep-Slope Roof Sheet Metal Fabrications
1. Apron, Step, Cricket, and Backer Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - b. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
    - c. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick.
    - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - f. Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
    - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick.
    - h. Zinc: 0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed, thick.
  2. Valley Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).
    - b. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
    - c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: 0.018 inch (0.46 mm) thick.
    - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick).

- e. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
- f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
- g. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
3. Drip Edges: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
4. Eave, Rake, Ridge, and Hip Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
5. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.018 inch (0.46 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
6. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
7. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Stainless Steel: **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)** thick.
  - c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.018 inch (0.46 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)>**.
  - e. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - g. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
- I. Wall Sheet Metal Fabrications
  1. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum **96-inch- (2400-mm-)** long, but not exceeding **12-foot- (3.6-m-)** long, sections, under copings, at shelf angles, and where indicated. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond each side of wall openings. Form with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** high, end dams where flashing is discontinuous. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
    - b. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.

- c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
- d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
- e. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.
2. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.032 inch (0.81 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch (0.40 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.015 inch (0.38 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.022 inch (0.56 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.
3. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Aluminum: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)** thick.
  - c. Stainless Steel: **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.018 inch (0.46 mm)** thick.
  - e. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - f. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - g. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - h. Zinc: **0.032 inch (0.80 mm) OR 0.039 inch (1.00 mm), as directed**, thick.

#### J. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Fabrications

1. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - b. Stainless Steel: **0.019 inch (0.48 mm)** thick.
  - c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.018 inch (0.46 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick)**.
  - e. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
  - f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch (0.71 mm)** thick.
2. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Copper: **24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick)**.
  - b. Stainless Steel: **0.025 inch (0.64 mm)** thick.
  - c. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Stainless Steel: **0.024 inch (0.61 mm)** thick.
  - d. Zinc-Tin Alloy-Coated Copper: **24 oz./sq. ft. (0.82 mm thick)**.
  - e. Galvanized Steel: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)** thick.
  - f. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)** thick.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Underlayment Installation

1. General: Install underlayment as indicated on Drawings.
2. Polyethylene Sheet: Install polyethylene sheet with adhesive for anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than **2 inches (50 mm)**.
3. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than **2 inches (50 mm)**.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not

less than **6 inches (150 mm)** staggered **24 inches (600 mm)** between courses. Overlap side edges not less than **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)**. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

B. Installation, General

1. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - a. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - b. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  - c. Space cleats not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  - d. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
  - e. Install sealant tape where indicated.
  - f. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  - g. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
2. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
  - a. Coat back side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - b. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene sheet.
3. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 feet (3 m)** with no joints allowed within **24 inches (600 mm)** of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
4. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood sheathing not less than **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** for nails and not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** for wood screws **OR** metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance, **as directed**.
5. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction.
  - a. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than **1 inch (25 mm)** into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between **40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C)**, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below **40 deg F (4 deg C)**.
  - b. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
6. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
  - a. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
  - b. Pre-tinning is not required for zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel and zinc-tin alloy-coated copper.
  - c. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.



- d. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets using solder recommended for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
- e. Copper Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper.
- 7. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum **OR** zinc, **as directed**, where indicated and where necessary for strength.

C. Roof Drainage System Installation

1. General: Install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
2. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or with lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchored gutter brackets **OR** straps **OR** twisted straps, **as directed**, spaced not more than **36 inches (900 mm)** apart. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
  - a. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
  - b. Loosely lock straps to front gutter bead and anchor to roof deck.
  - c. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat **OR** eave or apron flashing, **as directed**.
  - d. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** apart.
  - e. Anchor gutter with spikes and ferrules spaced not more than **24 inches (600 mm) OR 30 inches (750 mm)**, **as directed**, apart.
  - f. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, **50 feet (15.24 m)** apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
  - g. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable **OR** hinged to swing open, **as directed**, for cleaning gutters.
3. Built-in Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Slope to downspouts. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
  - a. Install felt underlayment layer in built-in gutter trough and extend to drip edge at eaves and under felt underlayment on roof sheathing. Lap sides a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Fasten with roofing nails. Install slip sheet over felt underlayment.
  - b. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat **OR** eave or apron flashing, **as directed**.
  - c. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** apart.
  - d. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, **50 feet (15.24 m)** apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
4. Downspouts: Join sections with **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** telescoping joints.
  - a. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately **60 inches (1500 mm)** o.c. in between.
  - b. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
  - c. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
5. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in asphalt roofing cement **OR** elastomeric sealant, **as directed**, compatible with roofing membrane.
6. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - a. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and solder or seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
  - b. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.

- c. Solder or seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
  7. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor head rim **1 inch (25 mm)** below scupper **OR** gutter, **as directed**, discharge.
  8. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated. Lap joints a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** in direction of water flow.
- D. Roof Flashing Installation
1. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  2. Roof Edge Flashing:
    - a. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered **3-inch (75-mm)** centers.  
**OR**  
Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at **24-inch (600-mm) OR 16-inch (400-mm)**, **as directed**, centers.
  3. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated.
    - a. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at **24-inch (600-mm) OR 16-inch (400-mm)**, **as directed**, centers.
    - b. Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at **24-inch (600-mm)** centers.
  4. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated.
    - a. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at **24-inch (600-mm) OR 16-inch (400-mm)**, **as directed**, centers.
    - b. Anchor interior leg of coping with screw fasteners and washers at **24-inch (600-mm) OR 20-inch (500-mm)**, **as directed**, centers.
  5. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
  6. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing **4 inches (100 mm)** over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** and bed with sealant. Secure in a waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant **OR** interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant **OR** anchor and washer at **36-inch (900-mm)** centers, **as directed**.
  7. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric **OR** butyl, **as directed**, sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.
- E. Wall Flashing Installation
1. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
  2. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Division 04 Section(s) "Unit Masonry" **OR** "Stone Masonry", **as directed**.
  3. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Division 03 Section(s) "Cast-in-place Concrete" **OR** Division 04 Section(s) "Unit Masonry", **as directed**.

4. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond wall openings.

F. Miscellaneous Flashing Installation

1. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans independent from structure above as indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.
2. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

G. Erection Tolerances

1. Installation Tolerances:

- a. Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines as indicated and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

**OR**

Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

H. Cleaning And Protection

1. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
2. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
3. Clean off excess sealants.
4. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
5. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 04 05 23 16



Task	Specification	Specification Description
04 05 23 16	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
04 21 13 00	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 21 26 00	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 22 23 13	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 22 23 23	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 22 23 26	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 22 23 29	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies
04 22 23 31	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 04 23 13 00 - GLASS UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for glass unit masonry assemblies. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes
  - a. Glass block set in mortar.
  - b. Glass block set in silicone sealant.
  - c. Glass block set in glass-block grid systems.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide glass-block grid systems capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.

#### D. Action Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for glass unit masonry, including vertical and horizontal coursing, anchors, reinforcement, and expansion strips and glass-block grid systems.
4. Provide Samples for each form, pattern, and color of glass block and color of joint material and glass-block grid material indicated or selected by the Owner.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, documentation including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### E. Informational Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Rated Glass Unit Masonry Assemblies: Assemblies listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 **OR** IBC Standard 715, **as directed**.
  - a. Test Pressure: Test at atmospheric pressure **OR** After 10 minutes into the test, neutral pressure level in furnace shall be located so that at least two-thirds of test specimen is above the neutral pressure plane, **as directed**.

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store glass block in unopened cartons on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied.

2. Store glass-block grid materials in unopened cartons in an enclosed, dry location.
3. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
4. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
5. Store accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### H. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations for Sealants: Do not install sealants when ambient and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (5 deg C) or when joint substrates are wet.
2. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation of glass unit masonry assemblies only when ambient and material temperatures are 40 deg F (5 deg C) or higher.
  - a. Maintain temperature in installation areas at 40 deg F (5 deg C) or above for 48 hours after installing.

#### I. Sequencing And Scheduling

1. Sequence and coordinate completion of glass unit masonry assemblies so sealants can be installed immediately after mortar has attained final set.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Glass Block

1. Hollow Glass Block: Hollow units made from transparent glass, with manufacturer's standard edge coating.
  - a. Glass Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - b. Pattern:
    - 1) Smooth, undistorted inner and outer faces.
    - 2) Wavy, light-diffusive design on inner faces, and smooth outer faces.
    - 3) Fluted, light-diffusive design, horizontal on one inner face, vertical on other; and smooth outer faces.
    - 4) Linear prismatic design, horizontal on one inner face, vertical on other; and smooth outer faces.
    - 5) Prismatic pyramid, light-diffusive design on inner faces, and smooth outer faces.
    - 6) As indicated by manufacturer's designation.
    - 7) Manufacturer's standard decorative pattern to match sample.
    - 8) As selected from manufacturer's full range.
    - 9) Custom decorative pattern to match design.
  - c. Edge-Coating Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - d. Sizes: Manufacturer's standard sizes corresponding to nominal sizes indicated on Drawings.
  - e. Thick-Faced Units: Units with faces at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick.
2. Solid Glass Block: Colorless, transparent, solid glass blocks with smooth OR stippled, as directed, faces and manufacturer's standard edge coating.
  - a. Square-Block Size: 5-3/4 inches (146 mm) OR 7-3/4 inches (197 mm) OR 11-3/4 inches (299 mm) as directed, square by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) thick, actual size, as directed.
  - b. Rectangular-Block Size: 3 by 7-3/4 inches (76 by 197 mm) OR 5-3/4 by 7-3/4 inches (146 by 197 mm), as directed by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) thick, actual size, as directed.
3. Glass Paver Block: Transparent, colorless, pressed glass units, with a smooth top surface and a decorative, light-diffusing, patterned bottom surface; 6 inches (152 mm) square by 1 inch (25 mm) OR 4-3/4 inches (120 mm) square by 1-9/16 inches (40 mm) OR 6-5/16 inches (160 mm) square by 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) OR 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) square by 1-15/16

**inches (50 mm) OR 7-1/2 inches (190 mm) square by 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) OR 7-7/8 inches (200 mm) square by 7/8 inch (22 mm) OR 7-7/8 inches (200 mm) square by 1-15/16 inches (50 mm) OR 4-5/8 inches (117 mm) in diameter by 2-3/8 inches (60 mm) thick, actual size, as directed.**

a.

**B. Glass-Block Grid Systems**

1. General: Aluminum extrusions complying with **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T6 or Alloy 6463-T6, forming a grid system and frame designed for application indicated.
2. Window and Wall System: Aluminum T-bar grid with tubular frame and vinyl glass-block boots.
  - a. Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - b. Glass-Block Size: **7-3/4 inches (197 mm) square by 3-1/8 inches (79 mm) thick.**
  - c. Provide self-flashing, **as directed**, aluminum exterior frame covers with vinyl thermal break.
  - d. Provide extruded-aluminum frame receivers (corner starters) at heads, jambs, and sills.
  - e. Provide extruded-aluminum mullions where indicated.
  - f. Provide aluminum trim and closures as indicated.
3. Skylight System: Aluminum T-bar grid with tubular frame; vinyl thermal break; extruded-aluminum, curb-mounting frame and counterflashing; and vinyl glass-block boots.
  - a. Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  - b. Glass-Block Size: **7-3/4 inches (197 mm) square by 3-1/8 inches (79 mm) thick.**
4. Floor System: Aluminum tubular grid and frame with glass-block boots made from UV- and oil-resistant EPDM.
  - a. Finish: Class II, clear-anodized finish; complying with AAMA 611.
  - b. Glass-Paver-Block Size: **6 inches (152 mm) square by 1 inch (25 mm) thick.**
5. Sealant: Product recommended by glass-block grid system manufacturer.
  - a. Provide sealants for use inside the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

**C. Mortar Materials**

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - a. Where joints are indicated to be raked out and pointed, gray cement may be used for setting mortar.
2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
3. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
4. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
5. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
6. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime **OR** masonry cement, **as directed**, and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
  - a. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  - b. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement **OR** 5 percent of masonry cement, **as directed**, by weight.
7. Aggregate: ASTM C 144, with 100 percent passing **No. 8 (2.36-mm)** sieve.
  - a. For pointing mortar and joints narrower than **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
  - b. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - c. Colored Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
8. Water-Repellent Admixture: Manufacturer's standard dry mixture of stearates, water-reducing agents, and fine aggregates intended to reduce capillarity in mortar.

9. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid polymeric water-repellent mortar admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength of mortar.
10. Water: Potable.

D. Glass Unit Masonry Accessories

1. Panel Reinforcement: Ladder-type units, butt welded, not lapped and welded; complying with ASTM A 951 in straight lengths of not less than **10 feet (3 m)**, and as follows:
  - a. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel wire.
  - b. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon-steel **OR** Stainless-steel, **as directed**, wire.
  - c. Wire Size: W1.7 or **0.148-inch (3.8-mm)** diameter.
  - d. Width: **2 inches (50 mm) OR 1-5/8 inches (40 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - e. Spacing of Cross Rods: Not more than **16 inches (407 mm)** apart.
2. Panel Anchors: Glass-block manufacturer's standard perforated steel strips, **0.0359 inch (0.9 mm)** by **1-3/4 inches (44 mm)** wide by **24 inches (600 mm)** long, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
3. Mortarless Installation System: System of aluminum or plastic perimeter framing, anchors, and spacers designed for installing glass block with sealant-filled joints.
4. Fasteners, General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 or Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners at exterior walls and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, at interior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
5. Carbon-Steel Bolts: **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)** with hex nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**, if applicable.
6. Stainless-Steel Bolts: **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, Alloy Group **1 or 2 (A1 or A4)** with hex nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**, if applicable.
7. Postinstalled Anchors: Provide powder-actuated fasteners **OR** metal expansion sleeve anchors **OR** metal impact expansion anchors, **as directed**, of type and size necessary for installation indicated, as recommended by manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Asphalt Emulsion: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187 or ASTM D 1227.
9. Mineral-Fiber Expansion Strips: Mineral-fiber strips, complying with requirements of fire-rated assembly listing and glass-block manufacturer.
  - a. Use for fire-rated assemblies.
10. Plastic-Foam Expansion Strips: Polyethylene foam complying with requirements of glass-block manufacturer; **3/8 inch (9 mm)** thick by **4 inches (100 mm) OR 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (63 mm)** wide, **as directed**.
  - a. Use plastic-foam expansion strips for non-fire-rated assemblies **OR** fire-rated and non-fire-rated assemblies, **as directed**.
11. Sealants: Manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
  - a. Single-component, neutral-curing **OR** acid-curing, **as directed**, silicone sealant.
  - b. Single-component, nonsag urethane sealant.
  - c. Multicomponent, nonsag polysulfide sealant.
  - d. Provide sealants for use inside the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - e. Sealant Accessories: Provide sealant accessories, including primers, bond-breaker tape, and cylindrical sealant backing, that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

E. Mortar Mixes

1. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, or antifreeze compounds, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar.
  - b. For mortar in exterior panels, use water-repellent admixture according to admixture manufacturer's written instructions.

- c. For pointing mortar in exterior panels, use water-repellent admixture according to admixture manufacturer's written instructions.
  - d. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement and lime.
2. Mortar for Glass Unit Masonry Assemblies: Provide mortar, mixed according to glass-block manufacturer's listing with testing and inspecting agency, for fire-resistance rating indicated.  
**OR**  
Mortar for Glass Unit Masonry Assemblies: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification for Type S mortar.
  - a. Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious materials, water, and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer, unless otherwise indicated. Mix mortar to produce a stiff but workable consistency that is drier than mortar for brick or concrete masonry. Discard mortar when it has reached initial set.
3. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product **OR** Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products, **as directed**.
  - a. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - b. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.
  - c. Mix to match sample.
4. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
  - a. Mix to match sample.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine sills, jambs, and heads surrounding glass unit masonry assemblies for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  - a. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Installing Glass Block With Mortar

1. Apply a heavy coat of asphalt emulsion to sill and adhere expansion strips to jambs and heads with asphalt emulsion. Allow asphalt emulsion to dry before placing mortar. Trim expansion strips to width required to fit glass block and to full lengths of heads and jambs.
2. Set glass block with completely filled bed and head joints, with no furrowing, accurately spaced and coordinated with other construction. Maintain **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm), as directed**, exposed joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install panel reinforcement in horizontal joints at spacing indicated and continuously from end to end of panels; comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Vertical Spacing of Panel Reinforcement for Exterior Panels: Every other course but not more than **16 inches (407 mm)** o.c., starting with first course above sill **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - b. Vertical Spacing of Panel Reinforcement for Interior Panels: Not more than **16 inches (407 mm)** o.c. **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - c. Do not bridge expansion joints with panel reinforcement.
  - d. Place panel reinforcement in joints immediately above and below all openings within glass unit masonry assemblies.
  - e. Lap panel reinforcement not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** if more than 1 length is necessary.
  - f. Embed panel reinforcement in mortar bed by placing lower half of mortar bed first, pressing panel reinforcement into place and covering with upper half of mortar bed.
4. Install panel anchors at locations indicated and in same horizontal joints where panel reinforcement occurs. Extend panel anchors at least **12 inches (300 mm)** into joints, and bend within expansion joints at edges of panels and across the head. Attach panel anchors as follows:
  - a. For in-place unit masonry assemblies and concrete, attach panel anchors with **1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter bolt-size, postinstalled anchors, 2 per panel anchor**.



- b. For new unit masonry assemblies, embed other ends of panel anchors, after bending portions crossing expansion joint, in horizontal mortar joints closest in elevation to joints in glass unit masonry assemblies containing panel anchors.
    - c. For steel members, attach panel anchors with **1/4-inch- (6-mm-)** diameter through bolts and nuts or bolts in tapped holes in steel members.
  5. Use rubber mallet to tap units into position. Do not use steel tools, and do not allow units to come into contact with metal accessories and frames.
  6. Use plastic spacers **OR** temporary wedges, **as directed**, in mortar joints to produce uniform joint widths and to prevent mortar from being squeezed out of joints.
    - a. If temporary wedges are used, remove them after mortar has set and fill voids with mortar.
  7. Keep expansion joints free of mortar.
  8. Rake out joints indicated to be pointed to a uniform depth sufficient to accommodate pointing material, but not less than joint width.
    - a. If temporary wedges are used, remove them before raking out and pointing joints.
    - b. Point joints at exterior face **OR** both faces, **as directed**, of exterior panels with mortar.
    - c. Point joints at exterior face **OR** both faces, **as directed**, of exterior panels with sealant.
    - d. Point joints at both faces of exterior and interior panels with sealant.
  9. Point joints with mortar by filling raked joints and voids. Place and compact pointing mortar in layers not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** thick. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
    - a. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint width.
  10. Point joints by filling with sealant to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
  11. Clean glass unit masonry assemblies as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears immediately, using a clean, wet sponge or a scrub brush with stiff fiber bristles. Do not use harsh cleaners, acids, abrasives, steel wool, or wire brushes when removing mortar or cleaning glass unit masonry assemblies.
  12. Install sealant at jambs, heads, mullions and other locations indicated. Prepare joints, including installation of primer and bond-breaker tape or cylindrical sealant backing, and apply elastomeric sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
  13. Construction Tolerances: Set glass block to comply with the following tolerances:
    - a. Variation from Plumb: For lines and surfaces of vertical elements and arris, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (12 mm in 12 m)** or more.
    - b. Variation from Level: For bed joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (12 mm in 12 m)** or more.
    - c. Variation of Location in Plan: For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
    - d. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.
    - e. For faces of adjacent exposed units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.
- C. Installing Glass Block With Sealant
  1. General: Install mortarless glass-block systems according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Fasten frames and anchors or clips securely to surrounding construction.
    - b. Shim starting track as needed to make it level.
    - c. Adhere glass block to starting track and spacers with silicone sealant.
  2. After glass blocks are installed, apply sealant to completely fill channel around each glass block, and tool flush with exterior surface. Remove excess sealant and smears.
- D. Glass-Block Grid System Installation
  1. General: Install glass-block grid systems according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Window and Wall System Installation: Assemble grid system, apply continuous sealant bead to back of window Z-bar, place in position, adjust as needed to make grid level and plumb, and fasten to substrate.
    - a. Insert glass blocks into vinyl glass-block boots and carefully insert into grid from exterior side. Install blocks firmly against T-bars without deforming boots.
    - b. Apply sealant to completely fill channel around each glass block, and tool flush with exterior surface. Remove excess sealant and smears.
  3. Skylight System Installation: Assemble grid system, apply continuous sealant bead to top of supporting curb, place in position, adjust as needed to bring grid true to line, and fasten to substrate.
    - a. Insert glass blocks into vinyl glass-block boots and carefully insert into grid from exterior side. Install blocks firmly against T-bars without deforming boots.
    - b. Apply sealant to completely fill channel around each glass block, and tool flush with exterior surface. Remove excess sealant and smears.
  4. Floor System Installation: Assemble grid system in position, adjusting supports as needed to level grid as system is assembled, and fasten to substrate.
    - a. Insert glass blocks into glass-block boots and install in grid. Install blocks flush with adjoining floor surfaces and aluminum grid.
    - b. Apply sealant to completely fill channel around each glass block and joints of aluminum grid. Tool sealant flush with exterior surface and remove excess sealant and smears.
- E. Cleaning
1. On surfaces adjacent to glass unit masonry assemblies, remove mortar, sealants, and other residue resulting from glass-block installation, in a manner approved by manufacturers of materials involved.
  2. Remove excess sealants with commercial solvents of type recommended by sealant manufacturer. Exercise care not to damage sealant in joints.
  3. Perform final cleaning of glass unit masonry assemblies when surface is not exposed to direct sunlight. Start at top of panel using generous amounts of clean water. Remove water with clean, dry, soft cloths; change cloths frequently to eliminate dried mortar particles and aggregate.

END OF SECTION 04 23 13 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
04 23 13 00	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 04 41 00 00 - DIMENSION STONE CLADDING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for dimension stone cladding. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following types of dimension stone:
  - a. Panels set with individual anchors.
  - b. Panels mechanically anchored on prefabricated steel trusses.
  - c. Panels mechanically anchored on prefabricated steel strongback frames.
  - d. Panels mechanically anchored on prefabricated steel stud frames.
  - e. Panels mechanically anchored (field installed) on a metal-grid system.
  - f. Panels set in architectural precast concrete.
  - g. Panels glazed into aluminum curtain-wall framing system.
  - h. Trim units, including bands, copings, sills, jambs and soffits.
  - i. Units with carving or inscriptions.

#### C. Definitions

1. Definitions contained in ASTM C 119 apply to this Section.
2. Dimension Stone Cladding System: An exterior wall covering system consisting of dimension stone panels and trim together with anchors, backup structure, secondary weather barrier (sheathing), mortar, adhesives, fasteners, and sealants used to secure the stone to building structure and to produce a weather-resistant covering.
  - a. Backup structure includes prefabricated steel trusses **OR** prefabricated steel strongback frames **OR** prefabricated steel stud frames **OR** metal-grid system **OR** miscellaneous steel framing required to secure stone to building structure, **as directed**.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General: Design stone anchors and anchoring systems according to ASTM C 1242.
2. Structural Performance: Provide dimension stone cladding system capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - a. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
    - 1) Uniform pressure of **20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) OR 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa)**, **as directed**, acting inward or outward.
  - b. Equipment Loads: Allow for loads due to window cleaning and maintenance equipment.
3. Seismic Performance: Provide dimension stone cladding system capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7.
4. Safety Factors for Stone: Design dimension stone cladding system to withstand loads indicated without exceeding allowable working stress of stone determined by dividing stone's average ultimate strength, as established by testing, by the following safety factors:
  - a. Safety Factor for Granite: 3, **as directed**.
  - b. Safety Factor for Oolitic Limestone: 8, **as directed**.
  - c. Safety Factor for Dolomitic Limestone: 6, **as directed**.
  - d. Safety Factor for Marble: 5, **as directed**.
  - e. Safety Factor for Quartz-Based Stone: 6, **as directed**.
  - f. Safety Factor for Serpentine: 6, **as directed**.
  - g. Safety Factor for Slate: 5, **as directed**.
  - h. Safety Factor for Travertine: 8, **as directed**.

- i. Safety Factor for Concentrated Stresses: 4 for granite and 10 for stone varieties other than granite.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and other manufactured products indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for dimension stone cladding system, including dimensions and profiles of stone units.
  - a. Show locations and details of joints both within dimension stone cladding system and between dimension stone cladding system and other construction.
  - b. Show locations and details of anchors and backup structure.
  - c. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Stone Samples: Sets for each color, grade, finish, and variety of stone required; not less than **12 inches (300 mm)** square.
4. Colored Pointing Mortar Samples: For each color required.
5. Sealant Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required.
6. Material Test Reports: From a qualified independent testing agency, as follows:
  - a. Stone Test Reports: For each stone variety proposed for use on Project, provide test data indicating compliance with required physical properties, other than abrasion resistance, according to referenced ASTM standards. Base reports on testing done within previous five **OR** three, **as directed**, years.
7. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
2. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from a single quarry.
3. Preconstruction Stone Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below.
  - a. Furnish test specimens that are representative of materials proposed for incorporation into the Work.
  - b. Physical Property Tests: For each stone variety proposed for use on Project, tested for compliance with physical property requirements, other than abrasion resistance, according to referenced ASTM standards.
  - c. Flexural Strength Tests: For each combination of stone variety, thickness, orientation of cut, and finish, proposed for use on Project, tested according to ASTM C 880, in both wet and dry conditions.
  - d. Anchorage Tests: For each combination of stone variety, orientation of cut, finish, and anchor type proposed for use on Project, tested according to ASTM C 1354.
4. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - a. Build mockups of typical exterior wall with dimension stone cladding, approximately **72 inches (1800 mm)** long by **48 inches (1200 mm)** high **OR 15 feet (4.5 m)** long by **10 feet (3 m)** high, **as directed**.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store and handle stone and related materials to prevent deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, corrosion, breaking, chipping, and other causes.
  - a. Lift stone with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move stone, if required, using dollies with cushioned wood supports.

- b. Store stone on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to stone. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
  2. Mark stone units, on surface that will be concealed after installation, with designations used on Shop Drawings to identify individual stone units. Orient markings on vertical panels so that they are right side up when units are installed.
  3. Deliver sealants to Project site in original unopened containers labeled with manufacturer's name, product name and designation, color, expiration period, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
  4. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
  5. Store aggregates in locations where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and where contamination can be avoided.
- H. Project Conditions
  1. Environmental Limitations for Mortar: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Remove and replace dimension stone cladding damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold- and hot-weather construction and protection requirements for masonry contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  2. Environmental Limitations for Sealants: Do not install sealants when ambient and substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (5 deg C) or when joint substrates are wet.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Granite
  1. Granite: Comply with ASTM C 615.
  2. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** Thermal **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  3. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
- B. Limestone
  1. Limestone: Comply with ASTM C 568.
    - a. Classification: I Low-Density **OR** II Medium-Density **OR** II Medium-Density, except change requirements per ASTM C 568 for absorption by weight, density, compressive strength, and modulus of rupture to, respectively, 5 percent maximum, 150 lb/cu. ft. (2400 kg/cu. m) minimum, 8000 psi (55 MPa), and 800 psi (5.5 MPa) minimum **OR** III High-Density, **as directed**.
    - b. Description: Dolomitic **OR** Oolitic **OR** Shell, **as directed**, limestone.
  2. Indiana Oolitic Limestone Grade and Color: Select, buff **OR** Select, gray **OR** Standard, buff **OR** Standard, gray **OR** Rustic, buff **OR** Rustic, gray **OR** Variegated, **as directed**, according to grade and color classification established by ILI.
  3. Finish: Smooth **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Machine tooled, 4 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 6 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 8 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  4. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
- C. Marble
  1. Marble: Comply with ASTM C 503, Classification I Calcite **OR** II Dolomite, **as directed**.
  2. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  3. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
- D. Quartz-Based Stone
  1. Quartz-Based Stone: Comply with ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed**.

2. Finish: Sand rubbed **OR** Natural cleft **OR** Thermal **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  3. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
- E. Serpentine
1. Serpentine: Comply with ASTM C 1526, Classification I Exterior **OR** II Interior, **as directed**.
  2. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  3. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
- F. Slate
1. Slate: Comply with ASTM C 629, Classification I Exterior **OR** II Interior, **as directed**, with a fine, even grain and unfading color, **as directed**, from clear, sound stock.
  2. Finish: Honed **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Natural cleft **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  3. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
- G. Travertine
1. Travertine: Comply with ASTM C 1527, Classification I Exterior **OR** II Interior, **as directed**.
  2. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
  3. Match samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.
  4. Mortar Materials
  5. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
    - a. Low-Alkali Cement: Portland cement for use with limestone shall contain not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
  6. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207.
  7. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207.
  8. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III; hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207; and mortar pigments. Use a mix of formulation required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard formulations. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  9. Aggregate: ASTM C 144; except for joints narrower than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** and pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
    - a. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
    - b. Colored Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other durable stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
  10. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in mortar and containing no carbon black.
  11. Water: Potable.
- H. Anchors And Fasteners
1. Fabricate anchors, including shelf angles, **as directed**, from stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**. Fabricate dowels and pins from stainless steel, ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
  2. Fabricate shelf angles for limestone from hot-dip galvanized steel, ASTM A 36/A 36M for materials and ASTM A 123/A 123M for galvanizing.
  3. Cast-in-Place Concrete Inserts: Steel, cast iron, or malleable iron adjustable inserts, with bolts, nuts, washers, and shims; all hot-dip galvanized or mechanically zinc coated, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  4. Postinstalled Anchor Bolts for Concrete and Masonry: Chemical anchors **OR** torque-controlled expansion anchors **OR** undercut anchors, **as directed**, made from stainless-steel components complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and**

- ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
5. Threaded Fasteners: Heavy hexagon structural bolts, heavy hexagon nuts, and hardened washers.
    - a. For stainless steel, use stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers; ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4).
    - b. For galvanized steel shelf angles and backup structure, use carbon steel bolts, nuts, and washers; ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), for bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M), Grade A, for nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) for washers; all hot-dip or mechanically zinc coated.
  6. Weld Plates for Installation in Concrete: Comply with Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications".
- I. Framing For Backup Structure
1. Steel Trusses OR Strongback Frames OR Miscellaneous Steel Framing, as directed: For framing members in contact with stone fabricate from same material and finish specified for anchors. For framing members not in contact with stone, comply with requirements indicated below:
    - a. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M, minimum thickness of 3/16 inch (5 mm).
    - b. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed), or ASTM A 513, Type 5 (mandrel drawn), minimum thickness of 3/16 inch (5 mm).
    - c. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal channels with continuous slot complying with MFMA-3, made from galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), with G90 (Z275) coating, and not less than 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal thickness OR steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), not less than 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal thickness, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M, as directed.
  2. Prefabricated Steel Stud Frames: Galvanized steel wall framing complying with Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing".
    - a. Secondary Weather Barrier (Sheathing): Galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial steel, coating designation G90 (Z275).
  3. Metal-Grid Systems: Provide manufacturer's standard integrated system that combines metal struts, fittings, fasteners, and stone anchors and that is engineered expressly for mechanically installing dimension stone cladding and that complies with the following requirements:
    - a. Struts: Cold-formed metal channels with continuous slot complying with MFMA-3, of size and shape required for application indicated, made from galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90 (Z275) coating, and not less than 0.108-inch (2.74-mm) nominal thickness OR steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, not less than 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal thickness, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M, as directed.
    - b. Fittings and Fasteners: System manufacturer's standard components of design, size, and material required to securely attach struts to building structure, by method indicated or selected, and stone anchors to struts, as well as to prevent galvanic corrosion. Fabricate components in contact with stone from same material specified for anchors.
    - c. Stone Anchors: Shapes and sizes standard with system manufacturer, complying with "Anchors and Fasteners" Article.
- J. Stone Accessories
1. Setting Shims: Strips of resilient plastic or vulcanized neoprene, Type A Shore durometer hardness of 50 to 70, nonstaining to stone, of thickness needed to prevent point loading of stone on anchors and of depths to suit anchors without intruding into required depths of pointing materials.



2. Setting Buttons: Resilient plastic buttons, nonstaining to stone, sized to suit joint thicknesses and bed depths of stone units without intruding into required depths of pointing materials.
3. Concealed Sheet Metal Flashing: Fabricate from zinc-tin alloy-coated, **as directed**, stainless steel in thicknesses indicated, but not less than **0.0156 inch (0.4 mm)** thick. Comply with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
4. Cementitious Dampproofing for Limestone: Provide cementitious formulations that are recommended by ILI and that are nonstaining to stone, compatible with joint sealants, and noncorrosive to anchors and attachments.
5. Weep and Vent Tubes: Medium-density polyethylene tubing, **1/4-inch (6-mm) OD OR** Rectangular, cellular, polypropylene or clear butyrate extrusion, **3/8 by 1-1/2 inches (9 by 38 mm)**, **as directed**, and of length required to extend from exterior face of stone to cavity behind.
6. Plastic Weep Hole/Vents: One-piece, flexible extrusion manufactured from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, designed to weep moisture in masonry cavity to exterior, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
7. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton or UV-resistant synthetic fiber, **1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm)** in diameter, in length required to produce **2-inch (50-mm)** exposure on exterior and **18 inches (450 mm)** in cavity between wythes.
8. Sealants for Joints in Dimension Stone Cladding: Manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and do not stain stone.
  - a. Multicomponent **OR** Single-component, **as directed**, nonsag, polysulfide sealant.
  - b. Multicomponent **OR** Single-component, **as directed**, nonsag, urethane sealant.
  - c. Single-component, neutral-curing silicone sealant.
  - d. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to comply with the following requirement:
    - 1) Match color of sample **OR** Match color of stone **OR** Provide color as indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Provide color as selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
9. Sealant for Filling Kerfs: Same sealant used for joints in dimension stone **OR** Manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that do not stain stone, **as directed**.
  - a. Single-component, nonsag, urethane sealant; Class 25, Use T (traffic), and Use M (masonry).
  - b. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing, medium to high modulus, silicone sealant; Class 25, Use NT (nontraffic), and Use M (masonry).

#### K. Stone Fabrication

1. General: Fabricate stone units in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated, including details on Drawings and Shop Drawings.
  - a. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
  - b. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
  - c. For marble, comply with recommendations in MIA's "Dimensional Stone--Design Manual IV."
2. Control depth of stone and back check to maintain minimum clearance of **1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, **as directed**, between backs of stone units and surfaces or projections of structural members, fireproofing (if any), backup walls, and other work behind stone.
3. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face, unless otherwise indicated. Shape beds to fit supports.
4. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors, fasteners, supports, and lifting devices as indicated or needed to set stone securely in place.
5. Finish exposed faces and edges of stone, except sawed reveals, to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.
6. Cut stone to produce uniform joints **3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm)**, **as directed**, wide and in locations indicated.

7. Contiguous Work: Provide chases, reveals, reglets, openings, and similar features as required to accommodate contiguous work.
  8. Fabricate molded work, including washes and drips, to produce stone shapes with a uniform profile throughout entire unit length, with precisely formed arris slightly eased to prevent snipping, and with matching profile at joints between units.
- L. Fabrication Of Backup Structure
1. Fabrication of Steel Trusses **OR** Strongback Frames **OR** Miscellaneous Steel Framing, **as directed**: Fabricate in shop to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design," to accommodate construction tolerances specified, and as indicated on Shop Drawings.
    - a. Weld shop connections to comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
    - b. Fabricate joints to exclude water or to permit its escape to building exterior, at locations where water could accumulate because of condensation or other causes.
    - c. Hot-dip galvanize backup structure after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  2. Fabrication of Prefabricated Steel Stud Frames: Fabricate and assemble by welding to comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing".
    - a. Weld secondary weather barrier (sheathing) to outside face of steel stud frames. Use continuous welds at all four edges of sheets to provide continuous weather seal.
    - b. For assemblies made from galvanized steel, clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- M. Shop-Painted Steel Finishes
1. General: Paint uncoated steel backup structure before delivering to Project site to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel."
  2. Surface Preparation: After completing fabrication of steel items, prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  3. Apply two-coat high-performance coating system consisting of organic zinc-rich primer, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and topcoat of high-build urethane or epoxy coating recommended by manufacturer for application over specified zinc-rich primer.
- N. Mortar Mixes
1. General: Comply with referenced standards and with manufacturers' written instructions for mix proportions, mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce mortar of uniform quality and with optimum performance characteristics.
    - a. Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use calcium chloride.
    - b. Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious materials, water, and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer, unless otherwise indicated. Discard mortar when it has reached initial set.
  2. Portland Cement-Lime Setting Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar indicated below:
    - a. Set granite with Type S mortar.
    - b. Set limestone with Type N mortar.
    - c. Set marble with Type S mortar.
    - d. Set quartz-based stone with Type S **OR** N, **as directed**, mortar.
    - e. Set serpentine with Type S mortar.
    - f. Set slate with Type S mortar.
    - g. Set travertine with Type N mortar.
    - h. Backparge travertine with Type O mortar.
  3. Pointing Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar indicated. Provide pointing mortar mixed to match sample and complying with the following:

- a. Pigmented Pointing Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10, by weight.
- b. Packaged Portland Cement-Lime Mix Mortar: Use portland cement-lime mix of selected color.
- c. Colored-Aggregate Pointing Mortar: Produce color required by combining colored aggregates with portland cement of selected color.
- d. Point granite with Type S **OR** N, **as directed**, mortar.
- e. Point limestone with Type N **OR** O, **as directed**, mortar.
- f. Point marble with Type N **OR** O, **as directed**, mortar.
- g. Point quartz-based stone with Type N **OR** O, **as directed**, mortar.
- h. Point serpentine with Type N **OR** O, **as directed**, mortar.
- i. Point slate with Type N mortar.
- j. Point travertine with Type N **OR** O, **as directed**, mortar.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installing Backup Structure

1. Installing Steel Trusses **OR** Strongback Frames **OR** Miscellaneous Steel Framing, **as directed**: Comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings - Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design," and install to accommodate construction tolerances specified and as indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - a. Maintain erection tolerances of backup structure within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
  - b. For prefabricated units to which stone has been installed before erection, maintain tolerances of stone faces and edges as specified in "Installation Tolerances" Article.
2. Installing Prefabricated Steel Stud Frames: Install by welding to steel weld-plates anchored in concrete **OR** by welding to structural-steel frame **OR** by bolting to structural-steel frame, **as directed**, to comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing".
  - a. Install prefabricated steel stud frames level, plumb, and true to line with no variation in plane or alignment exceeding **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** and no variation in position exceeding **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - b. For prefabricated frames to which stone has been installed before erection, maintain tolerances of stone faces and edges as specified in "Installation Tolerances" Article.
3. Installing Metal-Grid Systems: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions to provide integrated system that combines metal struts, fittings, fasteners, and stone anchors.
  - a. Fasten struts by bolting to inserts in concrete or steel angle clips bolted to steel framing.
  - b. Fasten stone supports and anchors by bolting to struts.
  - c. Shim and adjust struts and stone supports and anchors to provide grid that is level, plumb, and true to line with no variation in plane or alignment exceeding **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** and no variation in position exceeding **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.

#### B. Setting Dimension Stone Cladding, General

1. Before setting stone clean surfaces that are dirty or stained by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.
2. Coat limestone with dampproofing to extent indicated below:
  - a. Stone at Grade: Beds, joints, and back surfaces to at least **12 inches (300 mm)** above finish-grade elevations.
  - b. Stone Extending below Grade: Beds, joints, back surfaces, and face surfaces below grade.
  - c. Allow cementitious dampproofing formulations to cure before setting dampproofed stone. Do not damage or remove dampproofing while handling and setting stone.
3. Parge back side of travertine panels with mortar not less than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** thick.

4. Execute dimension stone cladding installation by skilled mechanics and employ skilled stone fitters at Project site to do necessary field cutting as stone is set.
    - a. Use power saws with diamond blades to cut stone. Produce lines cut straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snapping.
  5. Contiguous Work: Provide reveals, reglets, and openings as required to accommodate contiguous work.
  6. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure dimension stone cladding in place. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set stone accurately in locations indicated with uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
  7. Provide expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints of widths and at locations indicated.
    - a. Sealing expansion and other joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
    - b. Keep expansion joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  8. Install concealed flashing at continuous shelf angles, lintels, ledges, and similar obstructions to downward flow of water to divert water to building exterior.
  9. Keep cavities open where unfilled space is indicated between back of stone units and backup wall; do not fill cavities with mortar or grout.
    - a. Place weep holes in joints where moisture may accumulate, including base of cavity walls, above shelf angles, and flashing. Locate weep holes at intervals not exceeding **24 inches (600 mm)**. Use weep and vent tubes **OR** plastic weep hole/vents **OR** wicking material, **as directed**.
    - b. Place vents in cavity walls at tops of cavities, below shelf angles and flashing, and at intervals not exceeding **20 feet (6 m)** vertically. Locate vents in joints at intervals not exceeding **60 inches (1500 mm)** horizontally. Use weep and vent tubes **OR** plastic weep hole/vents, **as directed**.
- C. Setting Mechanically Anchored Dimension Stone Cladding
1. Attach anchors securely to stone and to backup surfaces. Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1242.
  2. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with sealant indicated for filling kerfs.
  3. Set stone supported on clips or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths and to prevent point loading of stone on anchors. Hold shims back from face of stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
- D. Setting Dimension Stone Cladding With Mortar
1. Set stone in full bed of mortar with head joints filled, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Use setting buttons of adequate size, in sufficient quantity, and of thickness required to maintain uniform joint width and to prevent mortar from extruding. Hold buttons back from face of stone a distance at least equal to width of joint, but not less than depth of pointing materials.
    - b. Do not set heavy units or projecting courses until mortar in courses below has hardened enough to resist being squeezed out of joint.
    - c. Support and brace projecting stones until wall above is in place and mortar has set.
    - d. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with mortar.
  2. Embed ends of sills in mortar; leave remainder of joint open until final pointing.
  3. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than **1/2 inch (12 mm)**. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.
  4. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply first layer of pointing mortar in layers not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** until a uniform depth is formed.

5. Point stone joints by placing pointing mortar in layers not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
6. Tool joints with a round jointer having a diameter **1/8 inch (3 mm)** larger than width of joint, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard.
7. Rake out mortar from sealant-pointed joints to depths of not less than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** nor less than that required for sealant and sealant backing. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.
8. Set the following dimension stone cladding with unfilled head joints for installing joint sealants:
  - a. Cornices.
  - b. Copings.
  - c. Belt and other projecting courses.

E. Joint-Sealant Installation

1. Prepare joints and apply sealants of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".

F. Installation Tolerances

1. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces of walls, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m)**, **3/8 inch in 20 feet (10 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (12 mm in 12 m)** or more. For external corners, corners and jambs within **20 feet (6 m)** of an entrance, expansion joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **3/8 inch in 40 feet (10 mm in 12 m)** or more.
2. Variation from Level: For lintels, sills, water tables, parapets, horizontal bands, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **3/8 inch (10 mm)** maximum.
3. Variation of Linear Building Line: For positions shown in plan and related portions of walls and partitions, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** or **1/2 inch in 40 feet (12 mm in 12 m)** or more.
4. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated, do not exceed plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
5. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary from average joint width more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less. For joints within **60 inches (1500 mm)** of each other, do not vary more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less from one to the other.
6. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): Do not exceed **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** difference between planes of adjacent units.

G. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Remove and replace broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone, defective joints, and dimension stone cladding that does not match approved samples and mockups. Damaged stone may be repaired if the Owner approves methods and results.
2. Replace in a manner that results in dimension stone cladding's matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
3. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean dimension stone cladding as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints. Remove excess sealant and smears as sealant is installed.
4. Final Cleaning: Clean dimension stone cladding no fewer than six days after completion of pointing and sealing, using clean water and stiff-bristle fiber brushes. Do not use wire brushes, acid-type cleaning agents, cleaning agents containing caustic compounds or abrasives, or other materials or methods that could damage stone.

END OF SECTION 04 41 00 00

## SECTION 04 41 00 00a - INTERIOR STONE FACING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interior stone facing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following interior applications of dimension stone:
  - a. Wall paneling.
  - b. Wainscot paneling.
  - c. Column facing.
  - d. Window stools.
  - e. Base.
  - f. Trim.
  - g. Benches.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. General: Design stone anchors and anchoring systems according to ASTM C 1242.
2. Seismic Performance: Provide interior stone facing system capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each variety of stone, installation materials, and other manufactured products.
2. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Samples:
  - a. For Each Stone Type: Include two **OR** three **OR** four **OR** five, **as directed**, or more Samples in each set and show the full range of variations in appearance characteristics expected in completed Work.
  - b. For each color of grout and pointing mortar required.
4. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
5. Sealant Compatibility Test Report: From sealant manufacturer, complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and indicating that sealants will not stain or damage stone.
6. Maintenance data.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: An installer who employs experienced stone setters who are skilled in installing interior stone facing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.
  - a. Installer's responsibilities include fabricating and installing interior stone facing, including anchoring system, and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
  - b. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.



2. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from a single quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Lift stone with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move stone, if required, using dollies with cushioned wood supports.
2. Store stone on wood A-frames or pallets with nonstaining separators and nonstaining, waterproof covers. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
3. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Granite

1. Granite: Comply with ASTM C 615.
2. Description: Uniform, fine-grained **OR** medium-grained, **as directed**, white **OR** pink **OR** gray **OR** black, **as directed**, stone with **OR** without, **as directed**, veining.
3. Cut: Vein **OR** Fleuri, **as directed**, cut.
  - a. Orientation of Veining: Horizontal **OR** Vertical **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Cut stone from one block or contiguous, matched blocks in which natural markings occur.
5. Finish: polished **OR** Honed **OR** Thermal **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.

B. Limestone

1. Limestone: Comply with ASTM C 568.
  - a. Classification: I Low-Density **OR** II Medium-Density **OR** III High-Density, **as directed**.
  - b. Description: Dolomitic **OR** Oolitic **OR** Shell, **as directed**, limestone.
2. Cut: Vein **OR** Fleuri, **as directed**, cut.
  - a. Orientation of Veining: Horizontal **OR** Vertical **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
3. Cut stone from one block or contiguous, matched blocks in which natural markings occur.
4. Finish: Smooth **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Machine tooled, 4 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 6 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** Machine tooled, 8 bats per 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.

C. Marble

1. Marble: Comply with ASTM C 503.
2. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained, white stone with only slight veining.
3. Cut: Vein **OR** Fleuri, **as directed**, cut.
  - a. Orientation of Veining: Horizontal **OR** Vertical **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Cut stone from one block or contiguous, matched blocks in which natural markings occur.
5. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.

D. Quartz-Based Stone

1. Quartz-Based Stone: Comply with ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed**.
2. Finish: Sand rubbed **OR** Natural cleft **OR** Thermal **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.

E. Serpentine

1. Serpentine: Comply with ASTM C 1526, Classification I Exterior **OR** II Interior, **as directed**.
2. Cut stone from one block or contiguous, matched blocks in which natural markings occur.
3. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.

F. Slate

1. Slate: Comply with ASTM C 629, Classification I Exterior **OR** II Interior, **as directed**, with a fine, even grain and unfading color, from clear, sound stock.
    - a. Color: Black **OR** Blue-black **OR** Gray **OR** Blue-gray **OR** Green **OR** Purple **OR** Mottled purple and green **OR** Red, **as directed**.
  2. Finish: Honed **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Natural cleft **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
- G. Travertine
1. Travertine: Comply with ASTM C 1527, Classification I Exterior **OR** II Interior, **as directed**.
  2. Cut: Vein **OR** Fleuri, **as directed**, cut.
    - a. Orientation of Veining: Horizontal **OR** Vertical **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Cut stone from one block or contiguous, matched blocks in which natural markings occur.
  4. Filling: Fill pores on faces of stone with cementitious filler of color selected **OR** matching sample, **as directed**.
  5. Finish: Polished **OR** Honed **OR** As indicated **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
- H. Setting Materials
1. Molding Plaster: ASTM C 59/C 59M.
  2. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
    - a. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
  3. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
  4. Aggregate: ASTM C 144.
  5. Water: Potable.
  6. Adhesives, General: Use only adhesives formulated for stone and ceramic tile and recommended by their manufacturer for the application indicated.
  7. Organic Adhesive: ANSI A136.1, Type I, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  8. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Adhesive: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  9. Stone Adhesive: 2-part, epoxy-resin or polyester-resin stone adhesive with an initial set time of not more than 2 hours at 70 deg F (21 deg C), and with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - a. Color: Clear **OR** Match stone, **as directed**.
- I. Grout
1. Grout Colors: Match stone **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  2. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, composed of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce required color.
  3. Standard Sanded Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
  4. Standard Unsanded Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
  5. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
    - a. Polymer Type: Ethylene vinyl acetate, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
    - b. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
    - c. Polymer Type: Either ethylene vinyl acetate, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients, or acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
    - d. Grout Type: Sanded **OR** Unsanded, **as directed**.
  6. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, chemical-resistant, water-cleanable, tile-setting and -grouting epoxy.
- J. Pointing Mortar Materials



1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - a. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
3. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
4. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III; hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S; and mortar pigments. Use a mix of formulation required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard formulations. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
5. Aggregate: ASTM C 144, except with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
  - a. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
  - b. Colored Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other durable stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
6. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in mortar and containing no carbon black.
7. Water: Potable.

#### K. Sealants

1. Joint Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealants of characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and will not stain the stone they are applied to.
  - a. Single-component, mildew-resistant, neutral-curing **OR** acid-curing, **as directed**, silicone sealant.
  - b. Single-component, nonsag urethane sealant.
  - c. Latex Sealant.
  - d. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - e. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in stone adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Sealant for Filling Kerfs: Same sealant used for joints in dimension stone **OR** Manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated below that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that do not stain stone, **as directed**.
  - a. Single-component, nonsag, urethane sealant; Class 25, Use T (traffic), and Use M (masonry).
  - b. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing, medium to high modulus, silicone sealant; Class 25, Use NT (nontraffic), and Use M (masonry).
  - c. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

#### L. Stone Anchors And Attachments

1. Fabricate anchors from stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304.
  - a. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Anchors: Annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers; **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)** for bolts and **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)** for nuts, Alloy Group **1 (A1)**.
2. Fabricate dowels from stainless steel, ASTM A 276, Type 304.
3. Fabricate anchors from extruded aluminum, **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, alloy and temper as required to support loads imposed without exceeding allowable design stresses, but not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 6063-T6.
  - a. Fasteners for Extruded-Aluminum Anchors: Annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers; **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)** for bolts and **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)** for nuts, Alloy Group **1 (A1)**.

4. Anchor Support Grids: Roll-formed steel channels, of size and shape required for application indicated, formed from galvanized steel sheet not less than **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)** thick and complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)**.
  - a. Fittings and Fasteners: System manufacturer's standard components of design, size, and material required to securely attach grids to building structure and stone anchors to grids. Fabricate components in contact with stone from same material specified for anchors.
5. Wire Tiebacks: No. 9 AWG copper or copper-alloy or **0.120-inch- (3.0-mm-)** diameter, stainless-steel wire.
6. Dovetail Slots: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips of slot size required to receive anchors provided, fabricated from **0.0336-inch- (0.85-mm-)** thick, galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)**.
7. Direct-Mount Anchoring Systems: Stainless-steel or aluminum stone anchors designed to be applied directly to wall surfaces or to metal grids. System is secured to wall framing, furring, or sheet-metal reinforcing strips built into wall with stainless-steel self-drilling screws. Anchors fit into kerfs or holes in edges of interior stone facing panels and do not need setting spots.

M. Stone Accessories

1. Temporary Setting Shims: Rigid plastic shims, nonstaining to stone, sized to suit joint thickness.
2. Setting Shims for Direct-Mount Anchoring Systems: Strips of resilient plastic or neoprene, nonstaining to stone, of thickness needed to prevent point loading of stone on anchors and of depths to suit anchors without intruding into required depths of pointing materials.
3. Cleaner: Stone cleaner specifically formulated for stone types, finishes, and applications indicated, as recommended by stone producer. Do not use cleaning compounds containing acids, caustics, harsh fillers, or abrasives.
4. Stone Sealer: Colorless, stain-resistant sealer that does not affect color or physical properties of stone surfaces, as recommended by stone producer for application indicated.

N. Stone Fabrication, General

1. Select stone for intended use to prevent fabricated units from containing cracks, seams, and starts that could impair structural integrity or function.
  - a. Repairs that are characteristic of the varieties specified are acceptable provided they do not impair structural integrity or function and are not aesthetically unpleasing, as judged by the Owner.
2. Fabricate interior stone facing in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated, including details on Drawings and Shop Drawings.
  - a. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
  - b. For marble, comply with recommendations in MIA's "Dimension Stone--Design Manual."
  - c. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
3. Cut stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated and to comply with fabrication and construction tolerances recommended by applicable stone association.
  - a. Where items are installed with adhesive or where edges of stone is visible in the finished work, make items uniform in thickness and of identical thickness for each type of item; gage back of stone if necessary.
  - b. Clean sawed backs of stones to remove rust stains and iron particles.
  - c. Dress joints straight and at right angle to face, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors, supports, and lifting devices as indicated or needed to set stone securely in place; shape beds to fit supports.
  - e. Provide openings, reveals, and similar features as needed to accommodate adjacent work.
4. Fabricate molded work to produce stone shapes with a uniform profile throughout entire unit length and with precisely formed arris slightly eased to prevent snipping, and matched at joints between units.
  - a. Produce moldings with machines having abrasive shaping wheels made to reverse contour of molding shape; do not sculpt moldings.
  - b. Miter moldings at corners, unless otherwise indicated, with edges of miters slightly eased at outside corners.

5. Finish exposed faces and edges of stone to comply with requirements indicated for finish of each type of stone required and to match approved Samples.
6. Carefully inspect finished stone units at fabrication plant for compliance with requirements for appearance, material, and fabrication. Replace defective units.
  - a. Grade and mark stone for overall uniform appearance when assembled in place. Natural variations in appearance are acceptable if installed stone units match range of colors and other appearance characteristics represented in approved Samples.

O. Stone Paneling And Column Facing

1. Arrange panels in shop or other suitable space in proposed orientation and sequence for examination by the Owner. Mark units with temporary sequence numbers to indicate position in proposed layout.
  - a. Lay out one elevation at a time if approved by the Owner.
  - b. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of date and time when layout will be available for viewing.
  - c. Provide lighting of similar type and level as that of final installation for viewing layout, unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  - d. Rearrange panels as directed by the Owner until layout is approved.
  - e. Do not trim nonmodular-size units to less than modular size until after the Owner's approval of layout, unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  - f. Mark backs of units and Shop Drawings with sequence numbers based on approved layout. Mark backs of units to indicate orientation of units in completed Work.
2. Nominal Thickness: **3/4 inch (20 mm) OR 7/8 inch (21 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm), as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Maintain minimum clearances of **3/4 inch (20 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm), as directed**, between backs of panels and structural members, fireproofing if any, backup walls, and other work behind stone. Do not back check stone less than **1 inch (25 mm)** thick.
4. Joints: **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-) wide grouted OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide grouted OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) wide, sealant-filled OR 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) wide, mortar-pointed OR 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) wide, sealant-filled OR 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) wide, mortar-pointed OR 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) wide, sealant-filled, as directed**, joints.
5. Quirk-miter corners, unless otherwise indicated. Install anchorage in top and bottom bed joints of corner units.
6. Carve and cut inscriptions and decorative surfaces according to Shop Drawings. Use skilled stone carvers experienced in the successful performance of work similar to that indicated.
7. Abrasively etch inscriptions and decorative surfaces according to Shop Drawings.
8. Laser etch inscriptions and decorative surfaces according to Shop Drawings.
9. Pattern Arrangement: Fabricate and arrange panels with veining and other natural markings to comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Arrange panels with veining horizontal.
  - b. Arrange panels with veining vertical.
  - c. Arrange panels with veining as indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Arrange panels in blend pattern.
  - e. Book match units, single-course height.
  - f. Book match units, both vertically and horizontally.
  - g. Book match units in each course. No matching is required between successive courses.
  - h. Slip match units, single-course height.
  - i. Slip match units, both vertically and horizontally.
  - j. Slip match units in each course. No matching is required between successive courses.

P. Stone Window Stools, Base, And Trim

1. Window Stools:
  - a. Nominal Thickness: **3/4 inch (20 mm) OR 7/8 inch (22 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Edge Detail: Straight, slightly eased at corners **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevel at top edge, bottom corner slightly eased **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** radius at top edge, bottom corner slightly eased **OR 3/4-inch (20-mm)** bullnose **OR 1-1/2-inch (40-mm)** laminated bullnose **OR As indicated, as directed.**
  - c. Ends: Extend stools beyond opening same distance as stool overhang and finish ends to match exposed edge.
  - d. Joints: **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide, sealant-filled joints **OR Bonded joints, 1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** or less in width, **as directed.**
  - e. Assemble window stools by bonding joints with stone adhesive. Mask areas adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Clamp units to temporary bracing to ensure that window stools are properly aligned and joints are minimum width.
2. Base:
- a. Nominal Thickness: **3/4 inch (20 mm)** **OR 7/8 inch (22 mm)** **OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Top-Edge Detail: Straight, slightly eased at corner **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevel **OR 3/4-inch (20-mm)** radius **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** radius **OR As indicated, as directed.**
  - c. Ends: Butt ends into casings **OR Butt ends into opening frames** **OR Return ends to depth of adjacent finish with edge detail same as top edge, as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Joints: **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide, sealant-filled joints **OR Bonded joints, 1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** or less in width, **as directed.**
    - 1) Locate joints at midpoints between adjacent paneling joints, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flat Trim:
- a. Nominal Thickness: **3/4 inch (20 mm)** **OR 7/8 inch (22 mm)** **OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** **OR 1-1/2 inches (40 mm)**, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Edge Detail: Straight, slightly eased at corners **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevels **OR 3/4-inch (20-mm)** radii **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** radii **OR As indicated, as directed.**
  - c. Joints: **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide, sealant-filled joints **OR Bonded joints, 1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** or less in width, **as directed.**
4. Molded Trim:
- a. Profile: Match profiles indicated on Drawings **OR existing, as directed.**
  - b. Joints: **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide grouted joints **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide, sealant-filled joints **OR Bonded joints, 1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** or less in width, **as directed.**
- Q. Stone Benches
1. Tops:
- a. Nominal Thickness: **3/4 inch (20 mm)** **OR 7/8 inch (22 mm)** **OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** **OR 1-1/2 inches (40 mm)** **OR 2 inches (50 mm)**, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Edge Detail: Straight, slightly eased at corners **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevel at top edge, bottom corner slightly eased **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** radius at top edge, bottom corner slightly eased **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevel at top and bottom edges **OR full bullnose** **OR As indicated, as directed.**
  - c. Corner Detail: Match top edge **OR Square, slightly eased** **OR As indicated, as directed.**
  - d. Bottom Surface Finish: Smooth.
2. Pedestals:
- a. Nominal Thickness: **4 inches (100 mm)**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Edge Detail: Straight, slightly eased at corners **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** bevel at corners **OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)** radius at corners **OR full bullnose** **OR As indicated, as directed.**
3. Base: Stone facing applied to concrete **OR masonry, as directed.**
- a. Nominal Stone Thickness: **3/4 inch (20 mm)** **OR 7/8 inch (22 mm)** **OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm)**, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Joints: **1/16-inch- (1.5-mm-)** wide grouted **OR 1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** wide grouted **OR 1/4-inch- (6-mm-)** wide, mortar-pointed **OR 3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** wide, mortar-pointed, **as directed**, joints.

R. Mixes

1. Spotting Plaster: Stiff mix of molding plaster and water.
2. Mortar: Comply with referenced standards and with manufacturers' written instructions for mix proportions, mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce mortar of uniform quality and with optimum performance characteristics.
  - a. Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use calcium chloride.
  - b. Combine and thoroughly mix cementitious materials, water, and aggregates in a mechanical batch mixer, unless otherwise indicated. Discard mortar when it has reached initial set.
3. Setting Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
  - a. Type: **N OR O, as directed.**
  - b. Mix Proportions: 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts lime with aggregate ratio of 2-1/4 to 3 times volume of cement and lime.
4. Pointing Mortar: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, for types of mortar indicated. Provide pointing mortar mixed to match the Owner's sample and complying with the following:
  - a. Pigmented Pointing Mortar: Select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not exceed pigment-to-cement ratio of 1:10, by weight.
  - b. Packaged Portland Cement-Lime Mix Mortar: Use portland cement-lime mix of selected color.
  - c. Colored-Aggregate Pointing Mortar: Produce color required by combining colored aggregates with portland cement of selected color.
  - d. Type: **N OR O, as directed.**
  - e. Mix Proportions: 1 part portland cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts lime with aggregate ratio of 2-1/4 to 3 times volume of cement and lime.
5. Grout: Comply with mixing requirements of referenced ANSI standards and with manufacturer's written instructions.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

B. Setting Of Stone, General

1. Do necessary field cutting as stone is set. Use power saws with diamond blades to cut stone. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.
2. Contiguous Work: Provide reveals and openings as required to accommodate contiguous work.
3. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone in place. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set stone accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
4. Erect stone units level, plumb, and true with uniform joint widths. Use temporary shims to maintain joint width.



5. Provide expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints of widths and at locations indicated.
  - a. Sealing of expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
  - b. Keep expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints free of plaster, mortar, grout, and other rigid materials.
- C. Construction Tolerances
  1. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** maximum.
  2. Variation from Level: For lintels, sills, chair rails, horizontal bands, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, **3/8 inch (10 mm)** maximum.
  3. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan and related portion of walls and partitions, do not exceed **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, **3/8 inch (10 mm)** maximum.
  4. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated, do not exceed plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  5. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** or 1/4 of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
  6. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): Do not exceed **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** difference between planes of adjacent units.
- D. Installation Of Stone Paneling And Column Facing
  1. Set units firmly against setting spots. Locate setting spots at anchors and spaced not more than **18 inches (450 mm)** apart across back of unit, but provide no fewer than 1 setting spot per **2 sq. ft. (0.18 sq. m)**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Moisture Exposure: Use portland cement mortar for setting spots where stone is applied to inside face of exterior walls and at other locations where stone or cavity will be exposed to moisture.
  2. Set units on direct-mount anchoring system with anchors securely attached to stone and to backup surfaces. Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1242.
    - a. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with sealant indicated for filling kerfs.
    - b. Set stone supported on clips or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths and to prevent point loading of stone on anchors. Hold shims back from face of stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
  3. Minimum Anchors: Provide anchors at a maximum of **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c. around perimeter of interior stone facing panels with a minimum of 4 anchors per panel.
  4. Minimum Anchors: Provide a minimum of 4 anchors per panel up to **12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m)** in face area, plus a minimum of 2 additional anchors for each additional **8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m)**.
  5. Grout **OR** Point, **as directed**, joints after setting.
- E. Installation Of Stone Window Stools, Base, And Trim
  1. Stone Window Stools: Set stone window stools on masonry in a full bed of mortar.  
**OR**  
Stone Window Stools: Set stone window stools on wood or metal framing or wood blocking in a full bed of organic **OR** water-cleanable epoxy, **as directed**, adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting **OR** pointing with sealant, **as directed**.
  2. Where window stools are too long to be installed in one piece, assemble by bonding joints with stone adhesive as units are set. Mask areas adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Clamp units in place to ensure that window stools are properly aligned and joints are minimum width.
  3. Where joints are indicated in window stools maintain alignment across joints. Use temporary shims as necessary to maintain joint width.

4. Stone Base and Trim at Walls with Stone Paneling: Set units by adhering to interior stone facing with water-cleanable epoxy adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting.

**OR**

Stone Base and Trim at Walls with Stone Paneling: Set units firmly against setting spots. Located setting spots at anchors and spaced not more than **18 inches (450 mm)** apart, unless otherwise indicated. Provide no fewer than 2 anchors per piece for stone trim up to **48 inches (1200 mm)** in length, plus 1 additional anchor for each additional **24 inches (600 mm)** of length.

5. Stone Base and Trim at Walls without Stone Paneling: Adhere units to plywood backing with full spread of water-cleanable epoxy adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting.

**OR**

Stone Base and Trim at Walls without Stone Paneling: Adhere units to gypsum board with full spread of organic **OR** water-cleanable epoxy, **as directed**, adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting.

6. Assemble stone base and trim by bonding joints with stone adhesive as units are set. Mask areas adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Clamp units in place to ensure that surfaces are properly aligned and joints are minimum width.
7. Grout **OR** Point, **as directed**, joints after setting.

#### F. Installation Of Stone Benches

1. Stone Pedestals: Set pedestals on concrete subfloor **OR** stone flooring, **as directed**, in a full bed of mortar. Anchor pedestals with no fewer than two **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, dowels, extending not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** into pedestals and **2 inches (50 mm) OR 4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, into floor construction. Solidly fill space around dowels with mortar.

**OR**

Stone Pedestals: Set pedestals on stone flooring in a full bed of water-cleanable epoxy adhesive. Anchor pedestals with no fewer than two **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, dowels, extending not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** into pedestals and **2 inches (50 mm)** into floor construction. Solidly fill space around dowels with adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges to allow for grouting.

2. Stone Bench Tops: Set tops on pedestals **OR** concrete or masonry bases, **as directed**, in a full bed of mortar. Anchor tops with no fewer than two **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, dowels, extending not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** into pedestals **OR** bases, **as directed**, and half of thickness into the tops. Solidly fill space around dowels with mortar.

**OR**

Stone Bench Tops: Set stone bench tops on pedestals **OR** concrete or masonry bases, **as directed**, in a full bed of water-cleanable epoxy adhesive. Anchor tops with no fewer than two **1/4-inch (6-mm) OR 3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, dowels, extending not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** into pedestals **OR** bases, **as directed**, and half of thickness into the tops. Solidly fill space around dowels with adhesive. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting.

3. Stone Base: Apply stone facing to concrete or masonry bases by setting in a full spread of mortar **OR** water-cleanable epoxy adhesive, **as directed**.
  - a. Provide no fewer than 2 anchors per piece for stone base up to **48 inches (1200 mm)** in length, plus 1 additional anchor for each additional **24 inches (600 mm)** of length.
  - b. Hold adhesive back from exposed edges of joints to allow for grouting.

#### G. Grouting Joints

1. Grout stone to comply with ANSI A108.10.
  - a. Use sanded grout mixture for joints wider than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - b. Use unsanded grout mixture for joints **1/8 inch (3 mm)** and narrower.
2. Remove temporary shims before grouting.
3. Tool joints uniformly and smoothly with plastic tool.

- H. Pointing Joints With Mortar
1. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing temporary shims, dust, and mortar particles. Where setting spots occur at joints, rake out excess setting mortar or plaster to a depth of not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
  2. Point stone joints by placing pointing mortar in layers not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Apply mortar first to areas where depths are greater than surrounding areas until a uniform depth is formed.
  3. Tool joints when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard. Use a round jointer having a diameter **1/8 inch (3 mm)** larger than width of joint.
- I. Joint-Sealant Installation
1. Prepare joints and apply sealants of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants". Remove temporary shims before applying sealants.
- J. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean interior stone facing as work progresses. Remove adhesive, grout, mortar, and sealant smears immediately.
  2. Remove and replace interior stone facing of the following description:
    - a. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by the Owner.
    - b. Defective stone facing.
    - c. Defective joints, including misaligned joints.
    - d. Interior stone facing and joints not matching approved Samples.
    - e. Interior stone facing not complying with other requirements indicated.
  3. Replace in a manner that results in interior stone facing's matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
  4. Clean interior stone facing no fewer than six days after completion of grouting and pointing, using clean water and soft rags or stiff-bristle fiber brushes. Do not use wire brushes, acid-type cleaning agents, cleaning compounds with caustic or harsh fillers, or other materials or methods that could damage stone.
  5. Sealer Application: Apply stone sealer to comply with stone producer's and sealer manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
- K. Protection
1. Protect stone surfaces, edges, and corners from construction damage. Use securely fastened untreated wood, plywood, or heavy cardboard to prevent damage.
  2. Before inspection for Final Completion, remove protective coverings and clean surfaces.

END OF SECTION 04 41 00 00a



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 04 42 43 00 - STONE MASONRY

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for stone masonry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes the following applications of stone masonry:
  - a. Anchored or Adhered to concrete backup.
  - b. Anchored or Adhered to unit masonry backup.
  - c. Anchored or Adhered to wood framing and sheathing.
  - d. Anchored or Adhered to cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. For stone varieties proposed for use on Project, include test data indicating compliance with physical properties specified or required by referenced ASTM standards.
2. Samples:
  - a. For each stone type indicated.
  - b. For each color of mortar required.

#### D. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
2. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
3. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
4. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - a. Extend cover a minimum of **24 inches (600 mm)** down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
2. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining the face of stone masonry.
  - a. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
  - b. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - c. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - d. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.
3. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace stone masonry damaged by

frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

- a. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is **40 deg F (4 deg C)** and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
4. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Granite

1. Granite: Comply with ASTM C 615.

### B. Limestone

1. Limestone: Comply with ASTM C 568.

### C. Quartz-Based Stone

1. Quartz-Based Stone: Comply with ASTM C 616, Classification I Sandstone **OR** II Quartzitic Sandstone **OR** III Quartzite, **as directed**.

### D. Mortar Materials

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - a. Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
2. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
3. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207.
4. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
5. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
6. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in stone masonry mortar.
7. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime **OR** masonry cement **OR** mortar cement, **as directed**, and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
  - a. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
8. Aggregate: ASTM C 144 and as follows:
  - a. For pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve.
  - b. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
  - c. Colored Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
9. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard **OR** acrylic-resin **OR** styrene-butadiene-rubber, **as directed**, water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement mortar bed, and not containing a retarder.
10. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
11. Water: Potable.

### E. Veneer Anchors

1. Materials:
  - a. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.
  - b. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - c. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
2. Size: Sufficient to extend at least halfway, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, through stone masonry and with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face.
3. Wire Veneer Anchors: Wire ties formed from W1.7 or **0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized **OR** stainless, **as directed**, -steel wire.
4. Corrugated-Metal Veneer Anchors: Not less than **0.030-inch- (0.76-mm-)** thick by **7/8-inch- (22-mm-)** wide hot-dip galvanized **OR** stainless, **as directed**, -steel sheet with corrugations having a wavelength of **0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 13 mm)** and an amplitude of **0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm)**.
5. Adjustable, Screw-Attached Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
  - a. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a **100-lbf (445-N)** load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of **0.05 inch (1.3 mm)**.
  - b. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)** wide by **3 inches (75 mm)** high; with projecting tabs having slotted holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit veneer anchor section.
  - c. Anchor Section: Sheet metal plate, **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm) OR 9 inches (225 mm)**, **as directed**, long, with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** wide by **3-5/8 inches (92 mm) OR 5-1/2 inches (140 mm)**, **as directed**, long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
  - d. Anchor Section: Gasketed sheet metal plate, **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm)** long, with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm)** long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
  - e. Anchor Section: Zinc-alloy barrel section with flanged head with eye and corrosion-resistant, self-drilling screw. Eye designed to receive wire tie and to serve as head for drilling fastener into framing. Barrel length to suit sheathing thickness, allowing screw to seat directly against framing with flanged head covering hole in sheathing.
  - f. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from **0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**.
  - g. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) OR 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-)**, **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized **OR** stainless, **as directed**, -steel wire.
6. Seismic Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a metal anchor section and a connector section designed to engage a continuous wire embedded in stone masonry mortar joint.
  - a. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a **100-lbf (445-N)** load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of **0.05 inch (1.3 mm)**.
  - b. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)** wide by **3 inches (75 mm)** high; with projecting tabs having slotted holes for inserting vertical leg of connector section.

- c. Connector Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal bent plate with down-turned leg designed to fit in anchor section slot and with integral tabs designed to engage continuous wire. Size connector to extend at least halfway through stone masonry but with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face.
- d. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)** wide by **3 inches (75 mm)** high; with projecting tabs having slotted holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section. Size wire tie to extend at least **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into stone masonry but with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face.
- e. Connector Section: Sheet metal clip welded to wire tie with integral tabs designed to engage continuous wire.
- f. Anchor Section: Gasketed sheet metal plate, **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm)** long, with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs to bridge insulation or sheathing and contact studs; and raised rib-stiffened strap, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm)** long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
- g. Connector Section: Triangular wire tie and rigid PVC extrusion with snap-in grooves for inserting continuous wire.
- h. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from **0.067-inch- (1.7-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR 0.097-inch- (2.5-mm-)** thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication **OR 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet **OR 0.109-inch- (2.8-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel sheet, **as directed**.
- i. Fabricate wire connector sections from **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-)** **OR 0.25-inch- (6.4-mm-)**, **as directed**, diameter, hot-dip galvanized, carbon **OR** stainless, **as directed**, steel wire.
- j. Continuous Wire: **0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized **OR** stainless, **as directed**, steel wire.
- 7. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, **No. 10 (4.8-mm diameter)** by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than 3 exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
- 8. Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: Proprietary fastener consisting of carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank, complying with ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, **No. 10 (4.8-mm diameter)** by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads.
- 9. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Wood Studs: Self-drilling, bugle-head or wafer-head wood screws recommended by veneer anchor manufacturer for fastening to wood studs; not less than **No. 10 (4.8-mm diameter)**, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** long, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 500 hours per ASTM B 117.
- 10. Polymer-Coated, Steel Tapping Screws for Concrete Masonry: Self-tapping screws with specially designed threads for tapping and wedging into masonry, with hex washer head and neoprene washer, **3/16-inch (4.8-mm)** diameter by **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** length, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.

F. Stone Trim Anchors

- 1. Stone Trim Anchors: Units fabricated with tabs or dowels designed to engage kerfs or holes in stone trim units and holes for fasteners or postinstalled anchor bolts for fastening to substrates or framing as indicated.
- 2. Materials: Fabricate anchors from stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304. Fabricate dowels from stainless steel, ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- 3. Fasteners for Stone Trim Anchors: Annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers; **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)** for bolts and **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)** for nuts, **Alloy Group 1 (A1)**.

4. Postinstalled Anchor Bolts for Fastening Stone Trim Anchors: Chemical anchors **OR** torque-controlled expansion anchors **OR** undercut anchors, **as directed**, made from stainless-steel components complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group A1 or A4)** for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors.

G. Embedded Flashing Materials

1. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing, where flashing is exposed or partly exposed and where indicated, complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual **OR** Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim", **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, **0.016 inch (0.4 mm)** thick.
  - b. Copper: ASTM B 370, Temper H00 or H01, cold-rolled copper sheet, **10-oz./sq. ft. (3-kg/sq. m)** weight or **0.0135 inch (0.34 mm)** thick for fully concealed flashing; **16-oz./sq. ft. (5-kg/sq. m)** weight or **0.0216 inch (0.55 mm)** thick elsewhere.
  - c. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections **96 inches (2400 mm)** long minimum, but not exceeding **12 feet (3.6 m)**. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  - d. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, with ribs at **3-inch (75-mm)** intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
  - e. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
  - f. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge where **OR** unless otherwise, **as directed**, indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing **1/2 inch (13 mm)** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed, **as directed**.
  - g. Fabricate through-wall flashing with sealant stop where **OR** unless otherwise, **as directed**, indicated. Fabricate by bending metal back on itself **3/4 inch (19 mm)** at exterior face of wall and down into joint **3/8 inch (10 mm)** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
  - h. Fabricate metal drip edges and sealant stops for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least **3 inches (75 mm)** into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam will shed water.
  - i. Metal Drip Edges: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches (75 mm)** into wall and **1/2 inch (13 mm)** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed, **as directed**.
  - j. Metal Flashing Terminations: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches (75 mm)** into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for **3/4 inch (19 mm)** and down into joint **3/8 inch (10 mm)** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
  - k. Metal Expansion-Joint Strips: Fabricate from stainless steel **OR** copper, **as directed**, to shapes indicated.
2. Flexible Flashing: For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Copper-Laminated Flashing: **5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) OR 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m)**, **as directed**, copper sheet bonded with asphalt between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - b. Asphalt-Coated Copper Flashing: **5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) OR 7-oz./sq. ft. (2-kg/sq. m)**, **as directed**, copper sheet coated with flexible asphalt. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - c. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than **0.030 inch (0.8 mm) OR 0.040 inch (1.0 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - d. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymers alloy as follows:
    - 1) Monolithic Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, **0.040 inch (1.0 mm)** thick.



- 2) Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) thick, with a 0.015-inch- (0.4-mm-) thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive.
- 3) Self-Adhesive Sheet with Drip Edge: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) thick, with a 0.015-inch- (0.4-mm-) thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive. Where flashing extends to face of masonry, rubberized-asphalt coating is held back approximately 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) from edge.
  - a) Color: Gray **OR** White **OR** Tan/buff **OR** Black, **as directed**.
- 4) Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
- e. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
3. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings
  - a. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
  - b. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
  - c. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing urethane **OR** polysulfide **OR** silicone, **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
4. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flexible Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

#### H. Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories

1. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene **OR** urethane **OR** PVC, **as directed**.
2. Cementitious Dampproofing: Cementitious formulations that are recommended by ILI and that are nonstaining to stone, compatible with joint sealants, and noncorrosive to veneer anchors and attachments.
3. Asphalt Dampproofing: Cut-back asphalt complying with ASTM D 4479, Type I **OR** asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1227, Type III or IV, **as directed**.
4. Weep Hole/Vent Products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton **OR** UV-resistant synthetic fiber, **as directed**, 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) in diameter, in length required to produce 2-inch (50-mm) exposure on exterior and 18 inches (450 mm) in cavity behind stone masonry. Use only for weep holes.
  - b. Round Plastic Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (10-mm) OD by thickness of stone masonry.
  - c. Rectangular Plastic Tubing: Clear butyrate, 3/8 by 1-1/2 inches (10 by 38 mm) by thickness of stone masonry.
  - d. Mesh Weep Holes/Vents: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full width of head joint and 2 inches (50 mm) high by thickness of stone masonry; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
  - e. Aluminum Weep Holes/Vents: One-piece, L-shaped units made from sheet aluminum, designed to fit into head joint and consisting of vertical channel with louvers stamped in web and with top flap to keep mortar out of head joint; painted to comply with Division 07, before installation, in color approved to match that of mortar.
  - f. Vinyl Weep Holes/Vents: One-piece, offset, T-shaped units made from flexible, injection-molded PVC, designed to fit into head joint and consisting of louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of stone units, and top flap to keep mortar out of head joint; in color approved to match that of mortar.
5. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - a. Provide one of the following configurations:

- 1) Strips, full-depth of cavity and **10 inches (250 mm)** wide, with dovetail shaped notches **7 inches (175 mm)** deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
- 2) Strips, not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, **as directed**, thick and **10 inches (250 mm)** wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
- 3) Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
- 4) Sheets or strips not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick and installed to full height of cavity with additional strips **4 inches (100 mm)** high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
6. Expanded Metal Lath: **3.4 lb/sq. yd. (1.8 kg/sq. m)**, self-furring, diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C 847. Fabricate from structural-quality, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G60 (Z180)**.
7. Woven-Wire Lath: ASTM C 1032, fabricated into **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** hexagonal-shaped mesh with minimum **0.0510-inch- (1.3-mm-)** diameter, galvanized-steel wire.
8. Welded-Wire Lath: ASTM C 933, fabricated into **2-by-2-inch (50-by-50-mm)** mesh with minimum **0.0625-inch- (1.6-mm-)** diameter, galvanized-steel wire.
9. Lath Attachment Devices: Material and type required by ASTM C 1063 for installations indicated.
- I. Cavity-Wall Insulation
  1. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV **OR** Type X, **as directed**, closed-cell product extruded with an integral skin.
  2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation with Increased R-Value: ASTM C 578, Type IV, but with an aged thermal resistance (R-value) for **1-inch (25-mm)** thickness of **5.6 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.0 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C)** at 5 years; closed-cell product with a carbon-black filler and extruded with an integral skin.
  3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I.
  4. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I (aluminum-foil faced), Class 2 (glass-fiber reinforced).
  5. Adhesive: Type recommended by insulation board manufacturer for application indicated.
- J. Masonry Cleaners
  1. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar and grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from stone masonry surfaces without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces; expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and stone producer.
- K. Mortar Mixes
  1. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Do not use calcium chloride.
    - b. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement **OR** mortar cement, **as directed**, and lime.
    - c. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
    - d. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for one to two hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within 30 minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
  2. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in the form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.



3. Mortar for Stone Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion **OR** Property, **as directed**, Specification.
  - a. Mortar for Setting Stone: Type S **OR** Type N, **as directed**.
  - b. Mortar for Pointing Stone: Type N **OR** Type O, **as directed**.
4. Latex-Modified Portland Cement Setting Mortar: Proportion and mix portland cement, aggregate, and latex additive to comply with latex-additive manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Cement-Paste Bond Coat: Mix either neat cement and water or cement, sand, and water to a consistency similar to that of thick cream.
  - a. For latex-modified portland cement setting-bed mortar, substitute latex admixture for part or all of water, according to latex-additive manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Mortar for Scratch Coat over Metal Lath: 1 part portland cement, 1/2 part lime, 5 parts loose damp sand, and enough water to produce a workable consistency.
7. Mortar for Scratch Coat over Unit Masonry: 1 part portland cement, 1 part lime, 7 parts loose damp sand, and enough water to produce a workable consistency.
8. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  - a. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  - b. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement **OR** mortar cement, **as directed**, by weight.
  - c. Mix to match sample.
9. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
  - a. Mix to match sample.

#### L. Fabrication

1. Fabricate stone to comply with sizes, shapes, and tolerances recommended by applicable stone association or, if none, by stone source, for faces, edges, beds, and backs.
  - a. For granite, comply with recommendations in NBGQA's "Specifications for Architectural Granite."
  - b. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
2. Cut **OR** Select, **as directed**, stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors and supports.
4. Carefully inspect stone at quarry or fabrication plant for compliance with requirements for appearance, material, and fabrication. Replace defective units before shipment.
  - a. Clean sawed backs of stone to remove rust stains and iron particles.
5. Gage backs of stones for adhered veneer if more than **81 sq. in. (522 sq. cm)** in area.
6. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
  - a. Thickness for anchored veneer: **4 inches (100 mm)** plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (13 mm)**, **as directed**. Thickness does not include projection of pitched faces.
  - b. Thickness for adhered veneer: **1 inch (25 mm)** plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** **OR** **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, **as directed**.
7. Shape stone for type of masonry (pattern) as follows:
  - a. Sawed-bed, range ashlar with uniform course heights and uniform lengths as indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Sawed-bed, range ashlar with uniform course heights as indicated on Drawings and with random lengths.
  - c. Sawed-bed, broken-range ashlar with uniform course heights as indicated on Drawings and with random lengths.
  - d. Sawed **OR** Split, **as directed**, -bed, random-range ashlar with random course heights and random lengths (interrupted coursed).
  - e. Coursed rubble.
  - f. Uncoursed rubble (fieldstone).
  - g. Polygonal or mosaic.

8. Finish exposed faces and edges of stone to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.
  - a. Finish: Split face **OR** Rock face (pitched face) **OR** Natural cleft **OR** Mixed split face and seam face **OR** Mixed split face, seam face, and rock face (pitched face) **OR** Smooth **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Finish for Sills: Smooth **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Split face with sand-rubbed washes **OR** Rock face (pitched face) with sand-rubbed washes **OR** Rock face (pitched face) with tooled (boasted) washes, **as directed**
  - c. Finish for Lintels: Smooth **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Split face **OR** Rock face (pitched face), **as directed**.
  - d. Finish for Copings: Smooth **OR** Sand rubbed **OR** Split faces **OR** Rock face (pitched face), front and back; sand-rubbed top **OR** Rock face (pitched face), front and back; tooled (boasted) top, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish exposed ends of copings same as front and back faces.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Accurately mark stud centerlines on face of weather-resistant sheathing paper before beginning stone installation.
2. Coat concrete and unit masonry backup with asphalt dampproofing.
3. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

#### B. Setting Of Stone Masonry, General

1. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
  - a. Use power saws to cut stone that is fabricated with saw-cut surfaces. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snapping.
  - b. Use hammer and chisel to split stone that is fabricated with split surfaces. Make edges straight and true, matching similar surfaces that were shop or quarry fabricated.
  - c. Pitch face at field-split edges as needed to match stones that are not field split.
2. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.
3. Arrange stones in range ashlar pattern with course heights as indicated, uniform **OR** random, **as directed** lengths, and uniform joint widths, with offset between vertical joints as indicated.
4. Arrange stones in broken-range ashlar pattern with uniform course heights, random lengths, and uniform joint widths.
5. Arrange stones in three-course, random-range ashlar pattern with random course heights, random lengths (interrupted coursed), and uniform joint widths.
6. Arrange stones in coursed **OR** uncoursed, **as directed**, rubble pattern with joint widths within tolerances indicated. Insert small stones into spaces between larger stones as needed to produce joints as uniform in width as practical, **as directed**.
7. Arrange stones in polygonal (mosaic) pattern with uniform joint widths.
8. Arrange stones with color and size variations uniformly dispersed for an evenly blended appearance.
9. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings. Install supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone masonry in place. Set stone accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
10. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm)**, **as directed**, at narrowest points or more than **3/8 inch (10**

- mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), as directed, at widest points.
11. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated.
    - a. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
    - b. Sealing joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
  12. Install metal expansion strips in sealant joints at locations indicated. Build flanges of expansion strips into masonry by embedding in mortar between stone masonry and backup wythe. Lap each joint 4 inches (100 mm) in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
  13. Install embedded flashing and weep holes, as directed, at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
    - a. At stud-framed walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, up the face of sheathing at least 8 inches (200 mm) OR 12 inches (300 mm) OR 16 inches (400 mm), as directed, and behind weather-resistant sheathing paper.
    - b. At multiwythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm) OR 12 inches (300 mm) OR 16 inches (400 mm), as directed, and extend into or through inner wythe to comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry".
    - c. At concrete backing, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) OR 6 inches (150 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm) OR 12 inches (300 mm), as directed, and insert in reglet. Reglets are specified Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
    - d. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing full length of angles but not less than 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry at each end.
    - e. At sills, extend flashing not less than 4 inches (100 mm) at ends.
    - f. At ends of head and sill flashing turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.
    - g. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
    - h. Install metal drip edges and sealant stops with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
    - i. Extend sheet metal flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) beyond face of masonry at exterior and turn flashing down to form a drip.
    - j. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
    - k. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
    - l. Cut flexible flashing flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
  14. Coat limestone with cementitious dampproofing as follows:
    - a. Stone at Grade: Beds, joints, and back surfaces to at least 12 inches (300 mm) above finish-grade elevations.
    - b. Stone Extending below Grade: Beds, joints, back surfaces, and face surfaces below grade.
    - c. Allow cementitious dampproofing formulations to cure before setting dampproofed stone. Do not damage or remove dampproofing in the course of handling and setting stone.
  15. Place weep holes and vents in joints where moisture may accumulate, including at base of cavity walls, above shelf angles, and at flashing.
    - a. Use wicking material OR round plastic tubing OR rectangular plastic tubing OR mesh weep holes/vents OR aluminum weep holes/vents OR vinyl weep holes/vents OR open head joints, as directed, to form weep holes.

- b. Use wicking material to form weep holes above flashing in stone sills. Turn wicking down at lip of sill to be as inconspicuous as possible.
  - c. Space weep holes **16 inches (400 mm) OR 24 inches (600 mm), as directed, o.c.**
  - d. Space weep holes formed from plastic tubing **OR** wicking material, **as directed, 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.**
  - e. Trim wicking material used in weep holes flush with outside face of wall after mortar has set.
  - f. Place pea gravel in cavities as soon as practical to a height of not less than **2 inches (50 mm)** above top of flashing, to maintain drainage.
  - g. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
16. Install vents in vertical head joints at the top of each continuous cavity at spacing indicated. Use round plastic tubing **OR** rectangular plastic tubing **OR** mesh weep holes/vents **OR** aluminum weep holes/vents **OR** vinyl weep holes/vents **OR** open head joints, **as directed**, to form vents.
- a. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.
- C. Construction Tolerances
1. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (10 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) or 1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more.
  2. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) or 1/2 inch in 40 feet (13 mm in 12 m)** or more.
  3. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed **1/2 inch in 20 feet (13 mm in 6 m) or 3/4 inch in 40 feet (19 mm in 12 m)** or more.
  4. For rough stone, measure variation from level, plumb, and position shown in plan as variation of the average plane of the face of each stone from level, plumb, or dimensioned plane.
  5. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint size range indicated.
  6. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stones for Rough Stone: Do not exceed one-half of tolerance specified for thickness of stone.
- D. Installation Of Anchored Stone Masonry
1. Anchor stone masonry to concrete with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Secure anchors by inserting dovetailed ends into dovetail slots in concrete.
  2. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with corrugated-metal **OR** individual wire, **as directed**, veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchors in unit masonry mortar joints or grouted cells for distance at least one-half of unit masonry thickness.
  3. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement by inserting pintles into eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
  4. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement with vertical rods inserted through anchors and through eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
  5. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with adjustable, screw-attached **OR** seismic, **as directed**, veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors to unit masonry with two screws.
  6. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with adjustable, screw-attached **OR** seismic, **as directed**, veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to framing with two screws.
  7. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Anchor stone masonry to wood stud framing with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to studs with corrosion-resistant roofing nails.

9. Anchor stone masonry to wood stud framing with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to wood studs with corrosion-resistant roofing nails.
10. Anchor stone masonry to metal stud framing with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Tie anchors to studs.
11. Embed veneer anchors in mortar joints of stone masonry at least halfway, but not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, through stone masonry and with at least **5/8-inch (16-mm)** cover on outside face.
  - a. Install continuous wire reinforcement in horizontal joints and attach to seismic veneer anchors as stone is set.
12. Space anchors to provide not less than 1 anchor per **2 sq. ft. (0.2 sq. m)** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (300 mm)** of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)**.
13. Space anchors not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. vertically and **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c. horizontally. Install additional anchors within **12 inches (300 mm)** of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding **12 inches (300 mm)**.
14. Anchor stone trim with stone trim anchors where indicated. Install anchors by fastening to substrate and inserting tabs and dowels into kerfs and holes in stone units. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with mortar.
15. Set stone in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated. Build anchors into mortar joints as stone is set.
16. Fill collar joint **OR** space between back of stone masonry and weather-resistant sheathing paper, **as directed**, with mortar as stone is set.
17. Provide **1-inch (25-mm) OR 2-inch (50-mm)**, **as directed**, cavity between stone masonry and backup construction unless otherwise indicated. Keep cavity free of mortar droppings and debris.
  - a. Place mortar spots in cavity at veneer anchors to maintain spacing.
  - b. Slope beds toward cavity to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.
  - c. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
18. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depth of not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.

#### E. Installation Of Adhered Stone Masonry Veneer

1. Install flashing over sheathing and behind weather-resistant sheathing paper by fastening through sheathing into framing.
2. Install lath over weather-resistant sheathing paper by fastening through sheathing into framing to comply with ASTM C 1063.
3. Install lath over unit masonry and concrete to comply with ASTM C 1063.
4. Install scratch coat over metal lath **3/8 inch (10 mm)** thick to comply with ASTM C 926.
5. Coat backs of stone units and face of scratch coat **OR** masonry backup, **as directed**, with cement-paste bond coat, then butter both surfaces with setting mortar. Use sufficient setting mortar so a slight excess will be forced out the edges of stone units as they are set. Tap units into place, completely filling space between units and scratch coat **OR** masonry backup, **as directed**.
6. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depth of not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.

#### F. Pointing

1. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply pointing mortar in layers not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** deep until a uniform depth is formed.
2. Point stone joints by placing and compacting pointing mortar in layers not more than **3/8 inch (10 mm)** deep. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.



3. Tool joints, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard, with a smooth jointing tool to produce the following joint profile:
  - a. Joint Profile: Concave **OR** Smooth, flat face slightly below edges of stone **OR** Smooth, flat face recessed **1/4 inch (6 mm)** below edges of stone (raked joint) **OR** Flush, with a **3/8-inch (10-mm)** half-round raised bead in middle of joint **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

G. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Remove and replace stone masonry of the following description:
  - a. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved.
  - b. Defective joints.
  - c. Stone masonry not matching approved samples and mockups.
  - d. Stone masonry not complying with other requirements indicated.
2. Replace in a manner that results in stone masonry matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
3. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
4. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
  - a. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - b. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
  - c. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
  - d. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
  - e. Clean stone masonry by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20 Revised II, using job-mixed detergent solution.
  - f. Clean stone masonry with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - g. Clean limestone masonry to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

H. Excess Materials And Waste

1. Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including mortar and excess or soil-contaminated sand, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - a. Crush masonry waste to less than **4 inches (100 mm)** in greatest dimension.
  - b. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".
  - c. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within **18 inches (450 mm)** of finished grade.
2. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other waste, and legally dispose of off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 42 43 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
04 42 43 00	04 41 00 00	Dimension Stone Cladding
04 42 43 00	04 41 00 00a	Interior Stone Facing
04 43 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
04 43 16 00	04 41 00 00	Dimension Stone Cladding
04 43 16 00	04 42 43 00	Stone Masonry
04 43 16 00	04 41 00 00a	Interior Stone Facing
04 51 00 00	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 04 72 00 00 - ARCHITECTURAL PRECAST CONCRETE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for architectural precast concrete. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Architectural precast concrete cladding and load-bearing units.
  - b. Insulated, architectural precast concrete units.
  - c. Brick-faced, architectural precast concrete units.
  - d. Stone-faced, architectural precast concrete units.

#### C. Definition

1. Design Reference Sample: Sample of approved architectural precast concrete color, finish and texture, preapproved by the Owner.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide architectural precast concrete units and connections capable of withstanding the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - a. Loads: As indicated.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture. Include compressive strength and water-absorption tests.
3. Shop Drawings: Detail fabrication and installation of architectural precast concrete units. Indicate locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes, and cross sections of each unit. Indicate joints, reveals, and extent and location of each surface finish. Indicate details at building corners.

NOTE: The following paragraph is not required if Architect or Engineer assumes or is required by law to assume design responsibility.

  - a. Comprehensive engineering analysis signed and sealed **OR** certified, **as directed**, by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation. Show governing panel types, connections, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement. Indicate location, type, magnitude, and direction of loads imposed on the building structural frame from architectural precast concrete.
4. Samples: For each type of finish indicated on exposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units, in sets of 3, illustrating full range of finish, color, and texture variations expected; approximately **12 by 12 by 2 inches (300 by 300 by 50 mm)**.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Material Test Reports: For aggregates.
7. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers:
8. Field quality-control test and special inspection reports.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering architectural precast concrete units to comply with performance requirements. This responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

- a. Participates in PCI's plant certification program and is designated a PCI-certified plant for Group A, Category A1 - Architectural Cladding and Load Bearing Units or participates in APA's "Plant Certification Program for Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products" and is designated an APA-certified plant.
2. Design Standards: Comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** and design recommendations of PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of architectural precast concrete units indicated.
3. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures and testing requirements, quality-control recommendations, and dimensional tolerances for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 117, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Architectural Precast Concrete Products."
4. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D.1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel"; and AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
5. Calculated Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide architectural precast concrete units whose fire resistance has been calculated according to ACI 216.1/TMS 0216.1, "Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies," **OR** PCI MNL 124, "Design for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete," **as directed**, and is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Sample Panels: After sample approval and before fabricating architectural precast concrete units, produce a minimum of 2 sample panels approximately **16 sq. ft. (1.5 sq. m)** in area for review by the Owner. Incorporate full-scale details of architectural features, finishes, textures, and transitions in sample panels.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver architectural precast concrete units in such quantities and at such times to limit unloading units temporarily on the ground.
2. Support units during shipment on nonstaining shock-absorbing material.
3. Store units with adequate dunnage and bracing and protect units to prevent contact with soil, to prevent staining, and to prevent cracking, distortion, warping or other physical damage.
4. Place stored units so identification marks are clearly visible, and units can be inspected.
5. Handle and transport units in a position consistent with their shape and design in order to avoid excessive stresses which would cause cracking or damage.
6. Lift and support units only at designated points shown on Shop Drawings.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Mold Materials

1. Molds: Rigid, dimensionally stable, non-absorptive material, warp and buckle free, that will provide continuous and true precast concrete surfaces within fabrication tolerances indicated; nonreactive with concrete and suitable for producing required finishes.
  - a. Mold-Release Agent: Commercially produced liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
2. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated **OR** to match those used for precast concrete design reference sample, **as directed**. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended liquid-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.
3. Surface Retarder: Chemical set retarder, capable of temporarily delaying final hardening of newly placed concrete mixture to depth of reveal specified.

B. Reinforcing Materials

1. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60 (Grade 420)**, deformed.
2. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.

3. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60** (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 767/A 767M, Class II zinc coated, hot-dip galvanized, and chromate wash treated after fabrication and bending, **as directed**.
  4. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60** (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, ASTM A 775/A 775M or ASTM A 934/A 934M epoxy coated.
  5. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60** (Grade 420) **OR** ASTM A 706/A 706M, **as directed**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
  6. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, fabricated from as-drawn **OR** galvanized, **as directed**, steel wire into flat sheets.
  7. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497/A 497M, flat sheet.
  8. Epoxy-Coated-Steel Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain **OR** deformed, **as directed**, flat sheet, Type 1 bendable **OR** 2 nonbendable, **as directed**, coating.
  9. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 117.
- C. Prestressing Tendons
1. Prestressing Strand: ASTM A 416/A 416M, **Grade 270** (Grade 1860), uncoated, 7-wire, low-relaxation strand.
    - a. Coat unbonded post-tensioning strand with corrosion inhibitor passing ASTM D 1743 and sheath with polypropylene tendon sheathing. Include anchorage devices and coupler assemblies.
- D. Concrete Materials
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. For surfaces exposed to view in finished structure, mix gray with white cement, of same type, brand, and mill source.
  2. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:
    - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
    - b. Metakaolin Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class N.
    - c. Silica Fume Admixture: ASTM C 1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
    - d. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C 33, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.
    - a. Face-Mixture-Coarse Aggregates: Selected, hard, and durable; free of material that reacts with cement or causes staining; to match selected finish sample.
      - 1) Gradation: Uniformly graded **OR** Gap graded **OR** To match design reference sample, **as directed**.
    - b. Face-Mixture-Fine Aggregates: Selected, natural or manufactured sand of same material as coarse aggregate, unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  4. Lightweight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 117, ASTM C 330, with absorption less than 11 percent.
  5. Coloring Admixture: ASTM C 979, synthetic or natural mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures, temperature stable, and nonfading.
  6. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 117.
  7. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.
  8. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.
    - a. Water-Reducing Admixtures: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
    - b. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
    - c. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.

- d. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type E.
- e. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
- f. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
- g. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017 M.

E. Steel Connection Materials

1. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 108, AISI 1018 through AISI 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.
3. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M.
4. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A 47/A 47M.
5. Carbon-Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, **Grade 60-30** (**Grade 415-205**).
6. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A 572/A 572M.
7. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
8. Wrought Carbon-Steel Bars: ASTM A 675/A 675M, **Grade 65** (**Grade 450**).
9. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496 or ASTM A 706/A 706M.
10. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: **ASTM A 307, Grade A** (**ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6**); carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, **ASTM A 563** (**ASTM A 563M**); and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F 844.
11. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: **ASTM A 325** (**ASTM A 325M**), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, **ASTM A 563** (**ASTM A 563M**); and hardened carbon-steel washers, **ASTM F 436** (**ASTM F 436M**).
12. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** electrodeposition according to ASTM B 633, SC 3, Types 1 and 2, **as directed**.
  - a. For steel shapes, plates, and tubing to be galvanized, limit silicon content of steel to less than 0.03 percent or to between 0.15 and 0.25 percent or limit sum of silicon and 2.5 times phosphorous content to 0.09 percent.
  - b. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035A or SSPC-Paint 20.
13. Shop-Primed Finish: Prepare surfaces of nongalvanized steel items, except those surfaces to be embedded in concrete, according to requirements in SSPC-SP 3 and shop-apply lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer, complying with performance requirements in MPI 79 **OR** SSPC-Paint 25, **as directed**, according to SSPC-PA 1.
14. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

F. Stainless-Steel Connection Materials

1. Stainless-Steel Plate: ASTM A 666, Type 304, of grade suitable for application.
2. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM F 593, Alloy 304 or 316, hex-head bolts and studs; stainless-steel nuts; and flat, stainless-steel washers.
  - a. Lubricate threaded parts of stainless-steel bolts with an antiseize thread lubricant during assembly.
3. Stainless-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 276, with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 117, Table 3.2.3.

G. Bearing Pads

1. Provide one of the following bearing pads for architectural precast concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application:
  - a. Elastomeric Pads: AASHTO M 251, plain, vulcanized, 100 percent polychloroprene (neoprene) elastomer, molded to size or cut from a molded sheet, Type A durometer hardness of 50 to 70, ASTM D 2240, minimum tensile strength **2250 psi** (**15.5 MPa**), ASTM D 412.

- b. Random-Oriented, Fiber-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, randomly oriented synthetic fibers set in elastomer. Type A durometer hardness of 70 to 90, ASTM D 2240; capable of supporting a compressive stress of **3000 psi (20.7 MPa)** with no cracking, splitting, or delaminating in the internal portions of pad. Test one specimen for every 200 pads used in Project.
  - c. Cotton-Duck-Fabric-Reinforced Elastomeric Pads: Preformed, horizontally layered cotton-duck fabric bonded to an elastomer; Type A durometer hardness of 80 to 100, ASTM D 2240; complying with AASHTO's "AASHTO Load and Resistance Factor Design (LRFD) Bridge Design Specifications, Division II, Section 18.10.2, or with MIL-C-882E.
  - d. Frictionless Pads: Tetrafluoroethylene (Teflon), glass-fiber reinforced, bonded to stainless or mild-steel plate, of type required for in-service stress.
  - e. High-Density Plastic: Multimonomer, nonleaching, plastic strip.
- H. Accessories
1. Reglets: Specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".  
**OR**  
Reglets: PVC extrusions, **OR** Stainless steel, Type 302 or 304, **OR** Copper, **as directed**, felt or fiber filled, or with face opening of slots covered.
  2. Precast Accessories: Provide clips, hangers, plastic or steel shims, and other accessories required to install architectural precast concrete units.
- I. Grout Materials
1. Sand-Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144 or ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
  2. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time.
  3. Epoxy-Resin Grout: Two-component, mineral-filled epoxy resin; ASTM C 881/C 881M, of type, grade, and class to suit requirements.
- J. Thin Brick Units And Accessories
1. Thin Brick Units: ASTM C 216, Type FBX or ASTM C 1088, Grade Exterior, Type TBX, not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick with a tolerance of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, and as follows:
    - a. Face Size: **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** high by **8 inches (203 mm)** long.
    - b. Face Size: **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** high by **7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm)** long.
    - c. Face Size: **2-3/4 to 2-13/16 inches (70 to 71 mm)** high by **7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm)** long.
    - d. Face Size: **3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm)** high by **7-1/2 to 7-5/8 inches (190 to 194 mm)** long.
    - e. Face Size: **3-1/2 to 3-5/8 inches (89 to 92 mm)** high by **11-1/2 to 11-5/8 inches (292 to 295 mm)** long.
    - f. Where indicated to "match existing," provide thin brick matching color, texture, and face size of existing adjacent brick work.
    - g. Face Size: 57 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - h. Face Size: 70 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - i. Face Size: 90 mm high by 190 mm long.
    - j. Face Size: 90 mm high by 290 mm long.
    - k. Special Shapes: Include corners, edge corners, and end edge corners.
    - l. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than **30 g/30 sq. in. (30 g/194 sq. cm)** per minute; ASTM C 67.
    - m. Efflorescence: Tested according to ASTM C 67 and rated "not effloresced."



- n. Surface Coating: Thin brick with colors or textures applied as coatings shall withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing; ASTM C 67 with no observable difference in applied finish when viewed from **10 feet (3 m)**.
  - o. Face Color and Texture: Match approved samples **OR** Medium brown, wire cut **OR** Full-range red, sand molded **OR** Gray, velour, **as directed**.
  - p. Back Surface Texture: Scored, combed, wire roughened, ribbed, keybacked, or dovetailed.
2. Sand-Cement Mortar: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I, and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 144. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 4 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement.
  3. Latex-Portland Cement Pointing Grout: ANSI A118.6 and as follows:
    - a. Dry-grout mixture, factory prepared, of portland cement, graded aggregate, and dry, redispersible, ethylene-vinyl-acetate additive for mixing with water; uniformly colored.
    - b. Commercial portland cement grout, factory prepared, with liquid styrene-butadiene rubber or acrylic-resin latex additive; uniformly colored.
    - c. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
- K. Stone Materials And Accessories
1. Stone facing for architectural precast concrete is specified in Division 04 Section "Exterior Stone Cladding".
  2. Anchors: Stainless steel, ASTM A 666, Type 304, of temper and diameter required to support loads without exceeding allowable design stresses.
    - a. Fit each anchor leg with neoprene grommet collar of width at least twice the diameter and of length at least five times the diameter of anchor.
  3. Sealant Filler: ASTM C 920, low-modulus, multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and that is nonstaining to stone substrate.
  4. Epoxy Filler: ASTM C 881/C 881M, 100 percent solids, sand-filled nonshrinking, nonstaining of type, class, and grade to suit application.
    - a. Elastomeric Anchor Sleeve: **1/2 inch (13 mm)** long, Type A durometer hardness of 60, ASTM D 2240.
  5. Bond Breaker: Preformed, compressible, resilient, nonstaining, nonwaxing, closed-cell polyethylene foam pad, nonabsorbent to liquid and gas, **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick **OR** Polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, **6 to 10 mils (0.15 to 0.25 mm)** thick, **as directed**.
- L. Insulated Panel Accessories
1. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type I, **0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m)** **OR** VIII, **1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m)** **OR** II, **1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as required to meet Project requirements.
  2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, **1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m)** **OR** X, **1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m)** **OR** VI, **1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**; square **OR** ship-lap, **as directed**, edges; with R-value and thickness as required to meet Project requirements.
  3. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type I, **1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m)** **OR** IV, **2 lb/cu. ft. (32 kg/cu. m)** **OR** II, **2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, unfaced, with R-value and thickness as required to meet Project requirements.
  4. Wythe Connectors: Glass-fiber and vinyl-ester polymer connectors **OR** Polypropylene pin connectors **OR** Stainless-steel pin connectors **OR** Bent galvanized reinforcing bars or galvanized welded wire trusses **OR** Cylindrical metal sleeve anchors, **as directed**, manufactured to connect wythes of precast concrete panels.
- M. Concrete Mixtures
1. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.
    - a. Limit use of fly ash and silica fume to 20 percent of portland cement by weight; limit metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

2. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at architectural precast concrete fabricator's option.
3. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** or PCI MNL 117 when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.
4. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)** minimum.
  - b. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
5. Water Absorption: 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to PCI MNL 117.
6. Lightweight Concrete Backup Mixtures: Proportion mixtures by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.2, with materials to be used on Project, to provide lightweight concrete with the following properties:
  - a. Compressive Strength (28 Days): **5000 psi (34.5 MPa)**.
  - b. Unit Weight: Calculated equilibrium unit weight of **115 lb/cu. ft. (1842 kg/cu. m)**, plus or minus **3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m)**, according to ASTM C 567.
7. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 117.
8. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

N. Mold Fabrication

1. Molds: Accurately construct molds, mortar tight, of sufficient strength to withstand pressures due to concrete-placement operations and temperature changes and for prestressing and detensioning operations. Coat contact surfaces of molds with release agent before reinforcement is placed. Avoid contamination of reinforcement and prestressing tendons by release agent.
  - a. Place form liners accurately to provide finished surface texture indicated. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners during concrete placement. Coat form liner with form-release agent.
2. Maintain molds to provide completed architectural precast concrete units of shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated, within fabrication tolerances specified.
  - a. Form joints are not permitted on faces exposed to view in the finished work.
  - b. Edge and Corner Treatment: Uniformly chamfered **OR** radiused, **as directed**.

O. Thin Brick Facings

NOTE: The following 2 paragraphs are not applicable if bonding back of thin brick directly to concrete instead of using mortar.

1. Place form liner templates accurately to provide grid for thin brick facings. Provide solid backing and supports to maintain stability of liners while placing thin bricks and during concrete placement.
2. Securely place thin brick units face down into form liner pockets and place concrete backing mixture.
3. Completely fill joint cavities between thin brick units with sand-cement mortar, and place precast concrete backing mixture while sand-cement mortar is still fluid enough to ensure bond.
4. Mix and install grout according to ANSI A108.10. Completely fill joint cavities between thin brick units with grout, and compress into place without spreading grout onto faces of thin brick units. Remove excess grout immediately to prevent staining of brick.
  - a. Tool joints to a slightly concave **OR** grapevine **OR** V-, **as directed**, shape when pointing grout is thumbprint hard.
5. Clean faces and joints of brick facing.

P. Stone Facings

1. Accurately position stone facings to comply with requirements and in locations indicated on Shop Drawings. Install anchors, supports, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure



stone in place. Keep concrete reinforcement a minimum of **3/4 inch (19 mm)** from the back surface of stone. Use continuous spacers to obtain uniform joints of widths indicated and with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.

- a. Stone to Precast Anchorages: Provide anchors in numbers, types and locations required to satisfy specified performance criteria, but not less than 2 anchors per stone unit of less than **2 sq. ft. (0.19 sq. m)** in area and 4 anchors per unit of less than **12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m)** in area; for units larger than **12 sq. ft. (1.1 sq. m)** in area, provide anchors spaced not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c. horizontally and vertically. Locate anchors a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** from stone edge.
2. Fill anchor holes with sealant filler and install anchors **OR** epoxy filler and install anchors with elastomeric anchor sleeve at back surface of stone, **as directed**.
  - a. Install polyethylene sheet to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface.

**OR**

Install **1/8-inch (3-mm)** polyethylene-foam bond breaker to prevent bond between back of stone facing and concrete substrate and to ensure no passage of precast matrix to stone surface. Maintain minimum projection requirements of stone anchors into concrete substrate.

Q. Fabrication

1. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.
  - a. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."
2. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing architectural precast concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.
3. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in architectural precast concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
4. Cast-in openings larger than **10 inches (250 mm)** in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without the Owner's approval.
5. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 117 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
  - a. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy the bond with concrete. When damage to epoxy-coated reinforcing exceeds limits specified in ASTM A 775/A 775M, repair with patching material compatible with coating material and epoxy coat bar ends after cutting.
  - b. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concrete-placement and consolidation operations. Completely conceal support devices to prevent exposure on finished surfaces.
  - c. Place reinforcement to maintain at least **3/4-inch (19-mm)** minimum coverage. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - d. Place reinforcing steel and prestressing strand to maintain at least **3/4-inch (19-mm)** minimum concrete cover. Increase cover requirements for reinforcing steel to **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** when units are exposed to corrosive environment or severe exposure conditions. Arrange, space, and securely tie bars and bar supports to hold reinforcement in position while placing concrete. Direct wire tie ends away from finished, exposed concrete surfaces.
  - e. Install welded wire fabric in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh spacing and wire tie laps, where required by design. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

6. Reinforce architectural precast concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses.
7. Prestress tendons for architectural precast concrete units by either pretensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 117.
  - a. Delay detensioning or post-tensioning of precast, prestressed architectural concrete units until concrete has reached its indicated minimum design release compressive strength as established by test cylinders cured under same conditions as concrete.
  - b. Detension pretensioned tendons either by gradually releasing tensioning jacks or by heat-cutting tendons, using a sequence and pattern to prevent shock or unbalanced loading.
  - c. If concrete has been heat cured, detension while concrete is still warm and moist to avoid dimensional changes that may cause cracking or undesirable stresses.
  - d. Protect strand ends and anchorages with bituminous, zinc-rich, or epoxy paint to avoid corrosion and possible rust spots.
8. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 117 and requirements in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.
9. Place face mixture to a minimum thickness after consolidation of the greater of 1 inch (25 mm) or 1.5 times the maximum aggregate size, but not less than the minimum reinforcing cover specified.
10. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent seams or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.
  - a. Place backup concrete mixture to ensure bond with face-mixture concrete.
11. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by internal and external vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 117.
  - a. Place self-consolidating concrete without vibration according to PCI TR-6, "Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."
12. Comply with PCI MNL 117 for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.
13. Identify pickup points of architectural precast concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each architectural precast concrete unit on a surface that will not show in finished structure.
14. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 117, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using low-pressure live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.
15. Discard and replace architectural precast concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 117 and the Owner's approval.

R. Insulated Panel Casting

1. Cast and screed supported wythe over mold.
2. Place insulation boards abutting edges and ends of adjacent boards. Insert wythe connectors through insulation, and consolidate concrete around connectors according to connector manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cast and screed top wythe to meet required finish.

S. Fabrication Tolerances

1. Fabricate architectural precast concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished panel complies with PCI MNL 117 product tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.

**OR**

Fabricate architectural precast concrete units straight and true to size and shape with exposed edges and corners precise and true so each finished panel complies with the following product tolerances:

- a. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Exposed to View: As follows:
  - 1) 10 feet (3 m) or under, plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - 2) 10 to 20 feet (3 to 6 m), plus 1/8 inch (3 mm), minus 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  - 3) 20 to 40 feet (6 to 12 m), plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 4) Each additional 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- b. Overall Height and Width of Units, Measured at the Face Not Exposed to View: As follows:
  - 1) 10 feet (3 m) or under, plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2) 10 to 20 feet (3 to 6 m), plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 3) 20 to 40 feet (6 to 12 m), plus or minus 3/8 inch (10 mm).
  - 4) Each additional 10 feet (3 m), plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- c. Total Thickness or Flange Thickness: Plus 1/4 inch (6 mm), minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- d. Rib Thickness: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- e. Rib to Edge of Flange: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- f. Distance between Ribs: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- g. Variation from Square or Designated Skew (Difference in Length of the Two Diagonal Measurements): Plus or minus 1/8 inch per 72 inches (3 mm per 1830 mm) or 1/2 inch (13 mm) total, whichever is greater.
- h. Length and Width of Block-outs and Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- i. Location and Dimension of Block-outs Hidden from View and Used for HVAC and Utility Penetrations: Plus or minus 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- j. Dimensions of Haunches: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- k. Haunch Bearing Surface Deviation from Specified Plane: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- l. Difference in Relative Position of Adjacent Haunch Bearing Surfaces from Specified Relative Position: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- m. Bowing: Plus or minus L/360, maximum 1 inch (25 mm).
- n. Local Smoothness: 1/4 inch per 10 feet (6 mm per 3 m).
- o. Warping: 1/16 inch per 12 inches (1.5 mm per 300 mm) of distance from nearest adjacent corner.
- p. Tipping and Flushness of Plates: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
- q. Dimensions of Architectural Features and Rustications: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
2. Position Tolerances: For cast-in items measured from datum line location, as indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - a. Weld Plates: Plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. Inserts: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - c. Handling Devices: Plus or minus 3 inches (75 mm).
  - d. Reinforcing Steel and Welded Wire Fabric: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) where position has structural implications or affects concrete cover; otherwise, plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - e. Reinforcing Steel Extending out of Member: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm) of plan dimensions.
  - f. Tendons: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm), vertical; plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm), horizontal.
  - g. Location of Rustication Joints: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - h. Location of Opening within Panel: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - i. Location of Flashing Reglets: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - j. Location of Flashing Reglets at Edge of Panel: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - k. Reglets for Glazing Gaskets: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - l. Electrical Outlets, Hose Bibs: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - m. Location of Bearing Surface from End of Member: Plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - n. Allowable Rotation of Plate, Channel Inserts, and Electrical Boxes: 2-degree rotation or 1/4 inch (6 mm) maximum over the full dimension of unit.
  - o. Position of Sleeve: Plus or minus 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - p. Location of Window Washer Track or Buttons: Plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3. Brick-Faced Architectural Precast Concrete Units: Restrict the following misalignments to 2 percent of number of bricks in a unit.
  - a. Alignment of Mortar Joints:
    - 1) Jog in Alignment: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
    - 2) Alignment with Panel Centerline: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - b. Variation in Width of Exposed Mortar Joints: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - c. Tipping of Individual Bricks from the Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**; minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** less than or equal to depth of form liner joint.
  - d. Exposed Brick Surface Parallel to Primary Control Surface of Panel: Plus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**; minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  - e. Individual Brick Step in Face from Panel Plane of Exposed Brick Surface: Plus **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**; minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)** less than or equal to depth of form liner joint.
4. Stone Veneer-Faced Architectural Precast Concrete Units (for smooth-finished stone):
  - a. Variation in Cross-Sectional Dimensions: For thickness of walls from dimensions indicated: Plus or minus **1/4 inch (6 mm)**.
  - b. Variation in Joint Width: **1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm)** or a quarter of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
  - c. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stone Units (Lipping): **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** difference between planes of adjacent units.

T. Finishes

1. Panel faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects. Corners, including false joints shall be uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match approved design reference sample **OR** sample panels, **as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. PCI's "Architectural Precast Concrete - Color and Texture Selection Guide," of plate numbers indicated.
  - b. As-Cast Surface Finish: Provide surfaces free of pockets, sand streaks, and honeycombs.
  - c. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners or inserts to provide surfaces free of pockets, streaks, and honeycombs, with uniform color and texture.
  - d. Bushhammer Finish: Use power or hand tools to remove matrix and fracture coarse aggregates.
  - e. Exposed-Aggregate Finish: Use chemical retarding agents applied to concrete forms and washing and brushing procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces after form removal.
  - f. Abrasive-Blast Finish: Use abrasive grit, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces.
  - g. Acid-Etched Finish: Use acid and hot-water solution, equipment, application techniques, and cleaning procedures to expose aggregate and surrounding matrix surfaces. Protect hardware, connections, and insulation from acid attack.
  - h. Honed Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - i. Polished Finish: Use continuous mechanical abrasion with fine grit, followed by filling and rubbing procedures.
  - j. Sand-Embedment Finish: Use selected stones placed in a sand bed in bottom of mold, with sand removed after curing.
2. Finish exposed top **OR** bottom, **as directed**, and back, **as directed**, surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match face-surface finish.  
**OR**  
Finish exposed top **OR** bottom, **as directed**, and back, **as directed**, surfaces of architectural precast concrete units by smooth, steel-trowel finish.
3. Finish unexposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units by float finish.

U. Source Quality Control

1. Quality-Control Testing: Test and inspect precast concrete according to PCI MNL 117 requirements. If using self-consolidating concrete, also test and inspect according to PCI TR-6,

"Interim Guidelines for the Use of Self-Consolidating Concrete in Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute Member Plants."

2. Strength of precast concrete units will be considered deficient if units fail to comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** requirements for concrete strength.
3. Testing: If there is evidence that strength of precast concrete units may be deficient or may not comply with **ACI 318 (ACI 318M)** requirements, precaster will employ an independent testing agency to obtain, prepare, and test cores drilled from hardened concrete to determine compressive strength according to ASTM C 42/C 42M.
  - a. A minimum of three representative cores will be taken from units of suspect strength, from locations directed by the Owner.
  - b. Cores will be tested in an air-dry condition.
  - c. Strength of concrete for each series of 3 cores will be considered satisfactory if average compressive strength is equal to at least 85 percent of 28-day design compressive strength and no single core is less than 75 percent of 28-day design compressive strength.
  - d. Test results will be made in writing on same day that tests are performed, with copies to the Owner, Contractor, and precast concrete fabricator. Test reports will include the following:
    - 1) Project identification name and number.
    - 2) Date when tests were performed.
    - 3) Name of precast concrete fabricator.
    - 4) Name of concrete testing agency.
    - 5) Identification letter, name, and type of precast concrete unit(s) represented by core tests; design compressive strength; type of break; compressive strength at breaks, corrected for length-diameter ratio; and direction of applied load to core in relation to horizontal plane of concrete as placed.
4. Patching: If core test results are satisfactory and precast concrete units comply with requirements, clean and dampen core holes and solidly fill with precast concrete mixture that has no coarse aggregate, and finish to match adjacent precast concrete surfaces.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting architectural precast concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.
2. Erect architectural precast concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment as units are being permanently connected.
  - a. Install temporary steel or plastic spacing shims or bearing pads as precast concrete units are being erected. Tack weld steel shims to each other to prevent shims from separating.
  - b. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
  - c. Remove projecting lifting devices and grout fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.
  - d. Unless otherwise indicated, maintain uniform joint widths of **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
3. Connect architectural precast concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.
  - a. Do not permit connections to disrupt continuity of roof flashing.
4. Welding: Comply with applicable AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4 for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - a. Protect architectural precast concrete units and bearing pads from damage by field welding or cutting operations, and provide noncombustible shields as required.
  - b. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds, using no less than the minimum fillet as specified by AWS.



- c. Clean weld-affected metal surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and apply a minimum **4.0-mil- (0.1-mm-)** thick coat of galvanized repair paint to galvanized surfaces according to ASTM A 780.  
**OR**  
Clean weld-affected metal surfaces with chipping hammer followed by brushing, and reprime damaged painted surfaces.
    - d. Remove, reweld, or repair incomplete and defective welds.
  - 5. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.
    - a. Where slotted connections are used, verify bolt position and tightness. For sliding connections, properly secure bolt but allow bolt to move within connection slot. For friction connections, apply specified bolt torque and check 25 percent of bolts at random by calibrated torque wrench.
  - 6. Grouting Connections: Grout connections where required or indicated. Retain grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Pack spaces with stiff grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled. Place grout to finish smooth, level, and plumb with adjacent concrete surfaces. Keep grouted joints damp for not less than 24 hours after initial set. Promptly remove grout material from exposed surfaces before it affects finishes or hardens.
- B. Erection Tolerances
  - 1. Erect architectural precast concrete units level, plumb, square, true, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 117, Appendix I.
- C. Field Quality Control
  - 1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Erection of precast concrete members.
  - 2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 3. Field welds will be subject to visual inspections and nondestructive testing according to ASTM E 165 or ASTM E 709. High-strength bolted connections will be subject to inspections.
  - 4. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
  - 5. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  - 6. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Repairs
  - 1. Repair architectural precast concrete units if permitted by the Owner. the Owner reserves the right to reject repaired units that do not comply with requirements.
  - 2. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of **20 feet (6 m)**.
  - 3. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780.
  - 4. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.
  - 5. Remove and replace damaged architectural precast concrete units when repairs do not comply with requirements.
- E. Cleaning
  - 1. Clean surfaces of precast concrete units exposed to view.
  - 2. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.
  - 3. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.



- a. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's recommendations. Clean soiled precast concrete surfaces with detergent and water, using stiff fiber brushes and sponges, and rinse with clean water. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
- b. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 04 72 00 00

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
04 72 00 00	03 41 23 00	Plant-Precast Structural Concrete
04 72 00 00	01 54 23 00a	Unit Masonry Assemblies

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 05 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 05 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 05 21 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural steel. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Structural steel.
  - b. Prefabricated building columns.
  - c. Grout.

#### C. Definitions

1. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
2. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
3. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
  - a. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
  - b. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
  - c. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
5. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Connections: Provide details of connections **OR** simple shear connections, **as directed**, required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering design by a qualified professional engineer, **as directed**, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
  - b. Use LRFD; data are given at factored-load level **OR** ASD; data are given at service-load level, **as directed**.
2. Moment Connections: Type PR, partially **OR** FR, fully, **as directed**, restrained.
3. Construction: Moment frame **OR** Braced frame **OR** Shear wall system **OR** Combined system of moment frame and braced frame **OR** Combined system of moment frame and shear walls **OR** Combined system of braced frame and shear walls **OR** Combined system of moment frame, braced frame, and shear walls, **as directed**.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - a. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - b. Include embedment drawings.
  - c. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  - d. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
  - e. Identify members and connections of the seismic-load-resisting system.
  - f. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
  - g. Identify demand critical welds.
  - h. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, **as directed**.
4. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified **OR** qualified by testing, **as directed**, including the following:
  - a. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
  - b. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer **OR** fabricator **OR** professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
6. Welding certificates.
7. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
8. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
9. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - a. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  - b. Direct-tension indicators.
  - c. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
  - d. Shear stud connectors.
  - e. Shop primers.
  - f. Nonshrink grout.
10. Source quality-control reports.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE **OR** CSE, **as directed**.
3. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1 **OR** P2 **OR** P3, **as directed**, or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - a. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.
5. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  - a. AISC 303.
  - b. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
  - c. AISC 360.
  - d. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - a. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
2. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
  - a. Fasteners may be repackaged provided the Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
  - b. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
  - c. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

H. Coordination

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Structural-Steel Materials

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 50, **as directed**, percent.  
**OR**  
Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
  - a. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
  - b. Channels, Angles, M **OR** S, **as directed**, -Shapes: 60 percent.
  - c. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
  - d. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
  - e. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
  - f. All Other Steel Materials: 25 percent.
2. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 913/A 913M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
3. Channels, Angles, M **OR** S, **as directed**, -Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 913/A 913M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
4. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 50 (345) **OR** ASTM A 529/A 529M, Grade 50 (345), **as directed**.
5. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50 (345).
6. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B **OR** C, **as directed**, structural tubing.
7. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847/A 847M, structural tubing.
8. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - a. Weight Class: Standard **OR** Extra strong **OR** Double-extra strong, **as directed**.
  - b. Finish: Black **OR** Galvanized **OR** Black except where indicated to be galvanized, **as directed**.



9. Steel Castings: ASTM A 216/A 216M, Grade WCB with supplementary requirement S11.
10. Steel Forgings: ASTM A 668/A 668M.
11. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

B. Bolts, Connectors, And Anchors

1. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: **ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M)**, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S)** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.
  - a. Direct-Tension Indicators: **ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8)**, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
2. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: **ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M)**, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends, **as directed**; **ASTM A 563, Grade DH, (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S)** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
  - a. Direct-Tension Indicators: **ASTM F 959, Type 490 (ASTM F 959M, Type 10.9)**, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
3. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: **ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M)**, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A 563, Grade DH (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S)** heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, **as directed**.
  - b. Direct-Tension Indicators: **ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8)**, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating **OR** mechanically deposited zinc coating, baked epoxy-coated, **as directed**, finish.
4. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex **OR** round, **as directed**, head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Plain **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, **as directed**.
5. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
6. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **OR** ASTM A 354 **OR** ASTM A 449 **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade **50 (345)** **OR** ASTM A 36/A 36M, **as directed**.
  - a. Configuration: Straight **OR** Hooked, **as directed**.
  - b. Nuts: **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - c. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - d. Washers: **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - e. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
7. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **OR** ASTM A 354 **OR** ASTM A 449, **as directed**, straight.
  - a. Nuts: **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - b. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
  - c. Washers: **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
  - d. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
8. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M **OR** ASTM A 193/A 193M, Grade B7 **OR** ASTM A 354, Grade BD **OR** ASTM A 449 **OR** ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade **50 (345)**, **as directed**.
  - a. Nuts: **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex **OR** heavy-hex, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - b. Washers: **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)**, Type 1, hardened **OR** ASTM A 36/A 36M, **as directed**, carbon steel.
  - c. Finish: Plain **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
9. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.
10. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.

11. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.
  12. Structural Slide Bearings: Low-friction assemblies, of configuration indicated, that provide vertical transfer of loads and allow horizontal movement perpendicular to plane of expansion joint while resisting movement within plane of expansion joint.
    - a. Mating Surfaces: PTFE and PTFE **OR** PTFE and mirror-finished stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - b. Coefficient of Friction: Not more than 0.03 **OR** 0.04 **OR** 0.05 **OR** 0.06 **OR** 0.10 **OR** 0.12, **as directed**.
    - c. Design Load: Not less than 2,000 psi (13.7 MPa) **OR** 5,000 psi (34 MPa) **OR** 6,000 psi (41 MPa), **as directed**.
    - d. Total Movement Capability: 2 inches (50 mm).
- C. Primer
1. Primer: Comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.  
**OR**  
 Primer: SSPC-Paint 25 BCS, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, zinc oxide, alkyd, linseed oil primer.  
**OR**  
 Primer: SSPC-Paint 23, latex primer.  
**OR**  
 Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat, **as directed**.
  2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.
- D. Grout
1. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
  2. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- E. Fabrication
1. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
    - a. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
    - b. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
    - c. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
    - d. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
    - e. If shop priming is required, complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
  2. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
    - a. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  3. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, **as directed**, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
  4. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
  5. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning", **as directed**.
  6. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.



7. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
  8. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than **10 inches (250 mm)** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  9. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
    - a. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning, **unless directed otherwise**.
    - b. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
    - c. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.
- F. Shop Connections
1. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
    - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened **OR** Pretensioned **OR** Slip critical, **as directed**.
  2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M, **as directed**, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - a. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.
- G. Prefabricated Building Columns
1. Prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell.
  2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building column listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
    - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: 4 hours **OR** 3 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- H. Shop Priming
1. If shop priming is required, shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
    - a. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of **2 inches (50 mm)**.
    - b. Surfaces to be field welded.
    - c. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
    - d. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
    - e. Galvanized surfaces.
  2. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
    - a. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
    - b. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
    - c. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
    - d. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
    - e. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
    - f. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - g. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
    - h. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
    - i. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  3. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5**

- mils (0.038 mm).** Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
- a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  - b. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
4. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than **1.5 mils (0.038 mm)**.
- I. Galvanizing
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
    - a. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
    - b. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles, and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.
- J. Source Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
    - a. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
  2. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
  3. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected **OR** tested and inspected, **as directed**, according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
  4. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
  5. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
    - a. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
    - b. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- 1.3 EXECUTION
- A. Examination
1. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
    - a. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
  2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Preparation
1. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in

intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

C. Erection

1. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
2. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - a. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - b. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - c. Snug-tighten **OR** Pretension, **as directed**, anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - d. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts, **as directed**.
3. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
4. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - a. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  - b. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
5. Splice members only where indicated.
6. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by the Owner. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
7. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
8. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Field Connections

1. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened **OR** Pretensioned **OR** Slip critical, **as directed**.
2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M, **as directed**, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  - a. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  - b. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  - c. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

E. Prefabricated Building Columns

1. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC 360, manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

F. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
2. Bolted Connections: Bolted connections will be inspected **OR** tested and inspected, **as directed**, according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
3. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - a. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
    - 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
    - 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
    - 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
    - 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
4. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - b. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
5. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

G. Repairs And Protection

1. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
2. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 07.

END OF SECTION 05 05 21 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 05 23 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 05 23 00	05 05 21 00	Structural Steel
05 05 23 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 12 23 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cold-formed metal framing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
  - b. Interior load-bearing wall framing.
  - c. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  - d. Floor joist framing.
  - e. Roof trusses.
  - f. Roof rafter framing.
  - g. Ceiling joist framing.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. Design Loads: **As directed.**
  - b. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - 1) Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360 **OR** 1/600 **OR** 1/720, **as directed**, of the wall height.
    - 2) Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
    - 3) Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360 **OR** 1/600 **OR** 1/720, **as directed**, of the wall height.
    - 4) Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/480 for live loads and 1/360 for total loads of the span.
    - 5) Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the span.
    - 6) Scissor Roof Trusses: Horizontal deflection of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) <Insert dimension> at reactions.
    - 7) Roof Rafter Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the horizontally projected span.
    - 8) Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of the span.
  - c. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
  - d. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - 1) Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** 3/4 inch (19 mm) **OR** 1 inch (25 mm) **OR** 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), **as directed**.
2. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - a. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."





- b. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- c. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."

D. Submittals

- 1. Product Data: For each type of product and accessory indicated.
- 2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
- 3. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  - a. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 4. Welding certificates.
- 5. Qualification data.
- 6. Product test reports.
- 7. Research/evaluation reports.

E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- 2. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- 3. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- 4. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment, **as directed**, indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.
- 5. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- 6. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 7. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - a. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
  - b. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- 8. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings" as applicable.
- 9. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- 2. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - a. Grade: **ST33H (ST230H) OR ST50H (ST340H) OR** As required by structural performance, **as directed**.
  - b. Coating: **G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZ150), or GF30 (ZGF90) OR G90 (Z275)** or equivalent, **as directed**.
3. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection **OR** Drift, **as directed**, Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - a. Grade: **50 (340)**, Class 1 or 2 **OR** As required by structural performance, **as directed**.
  - b. Coating: **G90 (Z275)**.

### B. Load-Bearing Wall Framing

1. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges.
3. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
4. Steel Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated.

### C. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Framing

1. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
2. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
3. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass **OR** head, **as directed**, clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
4. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
5. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
  - a. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
  - b. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated, and as follows:
6. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

### D. Floor Joist Framing

1. Steel Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel joists, of web depths indicated, unpunched, **OR** punched, **OR** punched, with enlarged service holes, **as directed**, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
2. Steel Joist Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel joist track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:

### E. Roof Trusses

1. Roof Truss Members:

- a. Manufacturer's standard-shape steel sections.  
**OR**  
Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.
- F. Roof-Rafter Framing
  - 1. Steel Rafters: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.
  - 2. Built-up Members: Built-up members of manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel section, with stiffened flanges, nested into a U-shaped steel section joist track, with unstiffened flanges; unpunched; of web depths indicated.
- G. Ceiling Joist Framing
  - 1. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, **OR** punched with enlarged service holes, **as directed**, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
- H. Framing Accessories
  - 1. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
  - 2. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    - a. Supplementary framing.
    - b. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
    - c. Web stiffeners.
    - d. Anchor clips.
    - e. End clips.
    - f. Foundation clips.
    - g. Gusset plates.
    - h. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
    - i. Joist hangers and end closures.
    - j. Hole reinforcing plates.
    - k. Backer plates.
- I. Anchors, Clips, And Fasteners
  - 1. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  - 2. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 **OR** 55, **as directed**, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts **OR** headless, hooked bolts **OR** headless bolts, with encased end threaded, **as directed**, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** mechanically deposition according to ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
  - 3. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 4. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 5. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
    - a. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
  - 6. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- J. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.
2. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
3. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
4. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
5. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

K. Fabrication

1. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  - a. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
  - b. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - c. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - 1) Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - 2) Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
  - d. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
2. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
3. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960)** and as follows:
  - a. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
  - b. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
2. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
3. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
4. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

B. Installation, General

1. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

2. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  - a. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
4. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  - a. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - b. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - 1) Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - 2) Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
5. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
6. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
7. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
8. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation", in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
9. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
10. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960)** and as follows:
  - a. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

#### C. Load-Bearing Wall Installation

1. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
  - a. Anchor Spacing: **24 inches (610 mm) OR 32 inches (813 mm) OR To match stud spacing OR As shown on Shop Drawings, as directed.**
2. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
  - a. Stud Spacing:
    - 1) **12 inches (305 mm) OR 16 inches (406 mm) OR 19.2 inches (488 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm) OR As indicated, as directed.**
    - 2) **300 mm OR 400 mm OR 600 mm OR As indicated, as directed.**
3. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
4. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
5. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
6. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.

7. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
    - a. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
    - b. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
  8. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
    - a. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
  9. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced **48 inches (1220 mm)** **OR** as indicated **OR** as indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    - a. Bridging:
      - 1) Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to **6 inches (150 mm)** deep.  
**OR**  
Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.  
**OR**  
Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  10. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
  11. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- D. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Installation
1. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
  2. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom **OR** top and bottom, **as directed**, track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
    - a. Stud Spacing:
      - 1) **12 inches (305 mm)** **OR 16 inches (406 mm)** **OR 19.2 inches (488 mm)** **OR 24 inches (610 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
      - 2) 300 mm **OR** 400 mm **OR** 480 mm **OR** 600 mm **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
  4. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
    - a. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
    - b. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
    - c. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing **OR** infill, **as directed**, studs and anchor to building structure.
    - d. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
  5. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than **48 inches (1220 mm)** apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    - a. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within **12 inches (305 mm)** **OR 18 inches (450 mm)**, **as directed**, of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or



stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

- 1) Install solid blocking at **96-inch (2440-mm)** centers **OR** centers indicated **OR** centers indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
- b. Bridging:
  - 1) Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.  
**OR**  
Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.  
**OR**  
Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

#### E. Joist Installation

1. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to supporting structure at corners, ends, and spacings indicated on Shop Drawings.
2. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position, brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
  - a. Install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**.
  - b. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers, steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as indicated on Shop Drawings.
3. Space joists not more than **2 inches (51 mm)** from abutting walls, and as follows:
  - a. Joist Spacing:
    - 1) **12 inches (305 mm) OR 16 inches (406 mm) OR 19.2 inches (488 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm) OR As indicated, as directed.**
    - 2) **300 mm OR 400 mm OR 480 mm OR 600 mm OR As indicated, as directed.**
4. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, nesting joists, or another combination of connected joists if indicated.
5. Install joist reinforcement at interior supports with single, short length of joist section located directly over interior support, with lapped joists of equal length to joist reinforcement, or as indicated **OR** as indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
  - a. Install web stiffeners to transfer axial loads of walls above.
6. Install bridging at intervals indicated **OR** indicated on Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Fasten bridging at each joist intersection as follows:
  - a. Bridging:
    - 1) Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist webs.  
**OR**  
Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated. Fasten flat straps to bottom flange of joists and secure solid blocking to joist webs.
7. Secure joists to load-bearing interior walls to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
8. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable joist-framing assembly.

#### F. Truss Installation

1. Install, bridge, and brace trusses according to Shop Drawings and requirements in this Section.
2. Truss Spacing:
  - a. **16 inches (406 mm) OR 19.2 inches (488 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm) OR 32 inches (813 mm) OR 48 inches (1220 mm) OR As indicated, as directed.**
  - b. **400 mm OR 480 mm OR 600 mm OR 800 mm OR 1200 mm, as directed.**

3. Do not alter, cut, or remove framing members or connections of trusses.
4. Erect trusses with plane of truss webs plumb and parallel to each other, align, and accurately position at spacings indicated.
5. Erect trusses without damaging framing members or connections.
6. Align webs of bottom chords and load-bearing studs or continuously reinforce track to transfer loads to structure. Anchor trusses securely at all bearing points.
7. Install continuous bridging and permanently brace trusses as indicated on Shop Drawings and designed according to LGSEA's Technical Note 551e, "Design Guide for Permanent Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses," **as directed**.

G. Field Quality Control

1. Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
3. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
4. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
5. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

H. Repairs And Protection

1. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 12 23 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 12 23 00	05 05 21 00	Structural Steel
05 12 23 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 13 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 14 13 00 - STRUCTURAL ALUMINUM

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural aluminum. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Performance Requirements

1. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-aluminum fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
  - a. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and in accordance with minimum mechanical properties and applicable buckling formula constants published by The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-aluminum components.
3. Welding certificates.
4. Mill test reports.
5. Source quality-control test reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who has provided successful structural aluminum fabrication for a minimum of 5 years.
2. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
3. Comply with applicable provisions of The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Structural-Aluminum Materials

1. W-Shapes, Channels, Angles, Plate and Bar, Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections, and Pipe: Structural shapes indicating minimum mechanical properties and applicable buckling formula constants are listed in Table 3.3.1, Section 3, of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures," Construction Manual Series Section 1, as published by The Aluminum Association. Applicable ASTM Designations include B209, B210, B211, B221, B241, B247, B308, and B429
2. Allowable Stresses:
  - a. Building Type Structures: Basic allowable tensile stresses for buildings, structural supports for highway signs, luminaires, traffic signals and similar structures shall be the lesser of the minimum yield strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.65, or the minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.95. Other allowable stresses for buildings and similar structures shall be based upon the factors of safety shown in Table 3.3.3 of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."
  - b. Bridge Type Structures: Basic allowable tensile stresses for bridge type structures shall be the lesser of the minimum yield strength divided by a factor of safety of 1.85, or the minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by a factor of safety of 2.2. Other allowable

stresses for bridge and similar structures shall be based upon the factors of safety shown in Table 3.3.3 of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."

3. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

B. Bolts and Connectors

1. Rivets and Bolts:

- a. Aluminum alloys used for rivets and bolts shall be those listed in Tables 5.1.1b and 5.1.1c of "Specifications for Aluminum Structures."
- b. Nuts:
  - 1) For bolts 1/4" and smaller: Alloy 2024-T4. For improved corrosion resistance, apply 0.0002" minimum thickness anodic coating.
  - 2) For bolts larger than 1/4": 6061-T6 or 6262-T9.
  - 3) Flat Washers: Alclad 2024-T4.
  - 4) Spring Lock Washers: Alloy 7075-T6.
- c. Steel Bolts: Hot-dip galvanized, electro-galvanized, cadmium plated or aluminized steel bolts and Series 300 stainless steel bolts may be used instead of aluminum bolts. Plating thickness on steel shall be adequate to provide corrosion protection for the anticipated environ and service life.

C. Grout

1. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404, Size No. 2. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
2. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
3. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

D. Fabrication

1. Structural Aluminum: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."

E. Source Quality Control

1. Engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports. Comply with testing and inspection requirements of Part 1.3, Article "Field Quality Control."
2. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Erection

1. Examination: Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with erector present, for compliance with requirements.
  - a. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
2. Set structural aluminum accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
3. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
  - a. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.

- b. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
    - c. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
    - d. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
  4. Maintain erection tolerances of structural aluminum within The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
- B. Field Connections
  1. Bolts: Shop install bolts according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  2. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.2 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
    - a. Comply with The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, and alignment.
- C. Field Quality Control
  1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
  2. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections shall be tested and inspected according to The Aluminum Association's "Aluminum Construction Manual."
  3. Welded Connections: Field welds shall be visually inspected according to AWS D1.2.
    - a. In addition to visual inspection, field welds shall be tested according to AWS D1.2.
  4. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate are not in compliance with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 05 14 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 14 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 15 16 00 - ORNAMENTAL METAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental metal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Decorative window security bars.
  - b. Decorative mechanical grilles and frames.
  - c. Decorative-metal-clad, hollow-metal doors and frames.
  - d. Custom door pulls.
  - e. Combination hall push-button stations.
  - f. Metal reveals at wood paneling.
  - g. Cast-metal rosettes at marble joints.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including finishing materials.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative metal.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
  - b. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
4. Patterns, Models, or Plaster Castings: Made from proposed patterns for each design of custom casting required.
5. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - a. Sections of linear shapes.
  - b. Full-size Samples of castings and forgings.
    - 1) For custom castings, submit finished Samples showing ability to reproduce detail, cast-metal color, and quality of finish. Samples may be of similar previous work.
  - c. Samples of welded and brazed joints showing quality of workmanship and color matching of materials.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator **OR** organic-coating applicator **OR** anodic finisher **OR** powder-coating applicator, **as directed**.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
2. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

3. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings, of type indicated, to aluminum extrusions and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
4. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
5. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated and employing competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store decorative metal in a well-ventilated area, away from uncured concrete and masonry, and protected from weather, moisture, soiling, abrasion, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
2. Deliver and store cast-metal products in wooden crates surrounded by sufficient packing material to ensure that products will not be cracked or otherwise damaged.

F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with decorative metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with strength and durability properties for each aluminum form required not less than that of alloy and temper designated below.
  - a. Extruded Bars and Shapes: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
  - b. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: **ASTM B 429/B 429M**, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - c. Drawn Seamless Tubing: **ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M)** or **ASTM B 483/B 483M**, Alloy 6063-T832.
  - d. Plate and Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 3003-H14 **OR** Alloy 5005-H32 **OR** Alloy 6061-T6, **as directed**.
  - e. Die and Hand Forgings: **ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M)**, Alloy 6061-T6.
  - f. Castings: **ASTM B 26/B 26M**, Alloy A356.0-T6.

C. Copper Alloys

1. Copper and Copper Alloys, General: Provide alloys indicated and temper to suit application and forming methods but with strength and stiffness not less than H01 (quarter-hard) for plate, sheet, strip, and bars and H55 (light-drawn) for tube and pipe.
  2. Extruded Shapes, Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
  3. Extruded Shapes, Brass: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C36000 (free-cutting brass).
  4. Extruded Shapes, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C79600.
  5. Seamless Pipe, Bronze: ASTM B 43, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
  6. Seamless Tube, Bronze: **ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M)**, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
  7. Seamless Tube, Brass: **ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M)**, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
  8. Seamless Tube, Copper: **ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M)**, Alloy UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high residual phosphorous copper).
  9. Castings, Bronze: ASTM B 62, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (85-5-5-5 or No. 1 composition commercial red brass) or ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).
  10. Castings, Brass: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C85200 (high-copper yellow brass).
  11. Castings, Copper: ASTM B 824, with a minimum of 99.9 percent copper.
  12. Castings, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97300 (12 percent lead nickel silver).
  13. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Bronze: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
  14. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Brass: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
  15. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Copper: ASTM B 152/B 152M, Alloy UNS No. C11000 (electrolytic tough pitch copper) or UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high-residual phosphorous copper).
- D. Stainless Steel
1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
  2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
  3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
  4. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
  5. Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
  6. Wire Rope and Fittings:
    - a. Wire Rope: 1-by-19 **OR** 7-by-7 **OR** 7-by-19, **as directed**, wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
    - b. Wire-Rope Fittings: Connectors of types indicated, fabricated from stainless steel, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.
- E. Steel And Iron
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
  2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513, Type 5 (mandrel drawn).
  3. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
  4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Steel Sheet, Cold Rolled: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel or structural steel, exposed.
- F. Titanium
1. Titanium Strip, Sheet, and Plate: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.
  2. Titanium Bars: ASTM B 348, Grade 1.

### G. Fasteners

1. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  - a. Aluminum Items: Aluminum **OR** Type 304 stainless-steel **OR** Type 316 stainless-steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
  - b. Copper-Alloy (Bronze) Items: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed, muntz metal (Alloy 280) fasteners where exposed.
  - c. Copper-Alloy (Brass) Items: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed, brass (Alloy 260 or 360) fasteners where exposed.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Items: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - e. Titanium Items: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - f. Uncoated-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed, Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners where exposed.
  - g. Galvanized-Steel Items: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
  - h. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Unless otherwise indicated, select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring indicated items to other types of construction indicated.
3. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting components and for attaching decorative metal items to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable, **as directed**.
  - a. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
5. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion type or chemical type.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5 unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1)** **OR** Group **2 (A4)**, **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.

### H. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - a. For aluminum, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
2. Brazing Rods: For copper alloys, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be brazed and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
3. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
4. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
5. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
6. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
7. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
8. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

9. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
10. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats for Steel: Provide products that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
11. Epoxy Intermediate Coat for Steel: Complying with MPI#77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
12. Polyurethane Topcoat for Steel: Complying with MPI#72 and compatible with undercoat.
13. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

I. Fabrication, General

1. Assemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
2. Make up wire-rope assemblies in the shop to field-measured dimensions with fittings machine swaged. Minimize amount of turnbuckle take-up used for dimensional adjustment so maximum amount is available for tensioning wire ropes. Tag wire-rope assemblies and fittings to identify installation locations and orientations for coordinated installation.
3. Form decorative metal to required shapes and sizes, true to line and level with true curves and accurate angles and surfaces. Finish exposed surfaces to smooth, sharp, well-defined lines and arris.
4. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing the Work.
5. Form simple and compound curves in bars, pipe, tubing, and extruded shapes by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces.
6. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
7. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Cope or miter corner joints. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
8. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
9. Provide necessary rebates, lugs, and brackets to assemble units and to attach to other work. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
10. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in shop welding and brazing. Weld and braze behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed joints of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  - a. Where welding and brazing cannot be concealed behind finished surfaces, finish joints to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 Welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 Welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 Welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 Welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
11. Provide castings that are sound and free of warp, cracks, blowholes, or other defects that impair strength or appearance. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks.

J. Decorative Window Security Bars

1. General: Fabricate decorative window grilles to designs indicated from steel bars and shapes of sizes and profiles indicated. Form steel bars by bending, forging, coping, mitering, and welding.
2. Welding: Interconnect grille members with full-length, full-penetration welds unless otherwise indicated. Use welding method that is appropriate for metal and finish indicated and that



develops full strength of members joined. Finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth, flush, and blended to match adjoining surfaces.

3. Brackets, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, fittings, and anchors to connect decorative window grilles to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices to connect decorative window grilles to concrete and masonry work. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
  - b. Fabricate anchorage devices that are capable of withstanding loads indicated.

K. Decorative Mechanical Grilles

1. Fabricate decorative grilles from perforated aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, sheet or plate of thickness, size, and pattern indicated. Form perforations by punching, cutting, or drilling to produce openings of sizes and shapes indicated. Roll, press, and grind perforated metal to flatten and to remove burrs and deformations.
  - a. Form perforations to match existing grilles.  
**OR**  
Drawings indicate perforated metal patterns required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Perforated metal patterns produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
2. Drill and countersink grilles for mounting screws at **2 inches (50 mm)** from corners and at **10 inches (250 mm)** or less o.c. Provide units with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping machine, **as directed**, screws.
3. Fabricate grille frames from extruded aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze, **as directed**, of profiles, and to sizes and shapes indicated. Miter frame members at corners and connect with concealed splice plates welded **OR** brazed, **as directed**, to back of frames.
  - a. Secure grilles in frames with **0.5-inch- (12-mm-)** long welds **OR** brazing, **as directed**, along perimeter of grilles at **4 inches (100 mm)** o.c.
  - b. Provide frame profiles to match existing frames.  
**OR**  
Drawings indicate frame profiles required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Similar frame profiles produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
4. Drill and countersink frames for mounting screws at **4 inches (100 mm)** from corners and at **16 inches (400 mm)** or less o.c. Provide units with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping machine, **as directed**, screws.

L. Decorative-Metal-Clad Doors And Frames

1. Laminate **0.0403-inch- (1.0-mm-)** thick, muntz-metal **OR** **0.0403-inch- (1.0-mm-)** thick, brass **OR** **0.0375-inch- (0.95-mm-)** thick, stainless-steel **OR** **0.024-inch- (0.6-mm-)** thick, titanium, **as directed**, sheets to outside face of hollow-metal doors and frames at locations and to comply with details indicated. Use adhesive recommended by metal fabricator that will fully bond metal to metal and that will prevent telegraphing and oil canning.
  - a. Hollow-metal doors and frames are specified in Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames."

M. Custom Door Pulls

1. Fabricate custom door pulls from brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, bar stock of profile indicated, fabricated to shapes indicated. Form curves by bending to produce uniform curvature of radii indicated; maintain profile of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces. Where radii of bends are too small to avoid buckling, grind bars after bending to restore original profile. Drill and tap door pulls to receive through bolts for attachment to doors.
2. Fabricate backing plates for custom door pulls from **1/8-inch (3.2-mm)** brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sheet. Cut to shape indicated and bevel edges at a 45-degree angle for one-half thickness of metal. Drill and countersink holes where indicated for screws and bolts.

3. Provide units with oval-head through bolts for mounting pulls and with oval-head wood screws for mounting backing plates.
- N. Combination Hall Push-Button Stations
1. Fabricate units of brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, to comply with details indicated. Coordinate with requirements in Division 14 Section "Electric Traction Elevators" to provide integrated, closely fitted assemblies.
    - a. Fabricate faceplates from **1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-)** thick sheet with edges beveled at a 45-degree angle for one-half thickness of metal.
    - b. Provide units with rectangular, split-bowl trash receptacle, designed for recess mounting in nominal **4-inch (100-mm)** wall depth. Fabricate recessed cabinets, top rings, and split bowls of same metal as face of units; fabricate removable receptacles of drawn aluminum. Nominal dimensions of units are **10 by 10 by 3-1/2 inches (250 by 250 by 90 mm)** in depth.
    - c. Provide units with emergency pictorial signs and text, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in fire emergency, elevators should not be used and that stairways should be used instead. Engrave pictorial sign and text into front surface of faceplates to a depth of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** with engraving painted red. Make signs **5 inches (125 mm)** wide by **8 inches (200 mm)** high.
    - d. Provide cutouts in faceplates of units for push buttons of elevator hall push-button station, card reader, **as directed**, and elevator key switches. Coordinate locations and sizes of cutouts so additional faceplate is not required and so faces of push buttons are flush with fronts of faceplates and key switches project beyond faceplate only by depth of bezel.
- O. Metal Reveals
1. Fabricate metal reveals for wood paneling from **3/4-by-3/4-by-1/16-inch (19-by-19-by-3-mm)** extruded-bronze **OR** **3/4-by-3/4-by-0.025-inch (19-by-19-by-0.6-mm)** brake-formed, stainless-steel **OR** **3/4-by-3/4-by-0.015-inch (19-by-19-by-0.4-mm)** brake-formed titanium, **as directed**, channels. Drill for mounting screws **6 inches (150 mm)** from ends of channels and not more than **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c. Locate mounting screws at same heights for all channels. Provide black-finished, **as directed**, hex-socket, wafer-head screws for mounting reveals.
- P. Cast-Metal Rosettes
1. Fabricate cast-metal rosettes to design indicated from aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** nickel silver, **as directed**. Drill and tap castings for threaded mounting studs.
    - a. Provide custom castings to match design indicated.
    - b. Manufacturer's stock castings may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
    - c. Drawings indicate cast-metal rosette designs required and are based on products of one manufacturer. Castings produced by other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations are minor and do not change design concept as judged solely by the Owner.
- Q. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- R. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.



- a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **0.8 mil (0.02 mm)** for topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**S. Copper-Alloy Finishes**

1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below):

- a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
  10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
  11. Patina Conversion Coating: M36-C12-C52 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, uniform; Chemical Finish: nonetched cleaned, degreased; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, ammonium sulfate), with color matching the Owner's sample.
  12. Statuary Conversion Coating, Bright Relieved and Lacquered: M12-C55-M2x-O6x (Mechanical Finish: matte finish, as cast; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Mechanical Finish: buffed, as specified; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below), with color matching the Owner's sample:
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
  13. Blackened, Bright Relieved, and Lacquered: M33-O60-M2x-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, coarse satin; Coating: black, air drying; Mechanical Finish: buffed, as specified; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below), with blackening and buffing matching the Owner's sample:
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
- T. Stainless-Steel Finishes
  1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
  4. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
  5. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
  6. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
  7. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.
  8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  9. Sputter-Coated Finish: Titanium nitride coating deposited by magnetic sputter-coating process over indicated mechanical finish.
  10. Colored, Oxide-Film Finish: Clear, oxide interference film produced by degreasing and then immersing in a mixture of chromic and sulfuric acids.
    - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide INCO colored stainless-steel finish as developed and licensed by International Nickel Co., Ltd.
    - b. Color: Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected from finisher's full range, **as directed**.
- U. Steel And Iron Finishes
  1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize products made from rolled, pressed, and forged steel shapes, castings, plates, bars, and strips indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
    - a. Hot-dip galvanize steel and iron hardware indicated to be galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
    - b. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
    - c. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  2. Preparing Galvanized Items for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean decorative metal of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.



3. Preparing Nongalvanized Items for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
4. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
  - a. Shop prime uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
  - b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
5. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" **OR** "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat nongalvanized ferrous metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Treat prepared metal with iron-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
  - c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**.
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat galvanized metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Prepare galvanized metal by thoroughly removing grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter.
  - b. Treat prepared metal with zinc-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
  - c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**.
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### V. Titanium Finishes

1. General: Fabricate items from finished titanium stock, taking care not to damage finish during fabrication. Protect finish as needed during fabrication by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering.
2. Dull Matte Finish: Pickled and annealed.
3. Bright Matte Finish: Vacuum annealed.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative metal.

2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Installation, General
1. Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed to secure decorative metal to in-place construction.
  2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative metal. Set products accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
  3. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form tight, hairline joints or, where indicated, uniform reveals and spaces for sealants and joint fillers. Where cutting, welding, and grinding are required for proper shop fitting and jointing of decorative metal, restore finishes to eliminate evidence of such corrective work.
  4. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
  5. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, and flashings as work progresses.
  6. Restore protective coverings that have been damaged during shipment or installation. Remove protective coverings only when there is no possibility of damage from other work yet to be performed at same location.
    - a. Retain protective coverings intact; remove coverings simultaneously from similarly finished items to preclude nonuniform oxidation and discoloration.
  7. Field Welding: Comply with applicable AWS specification for procedures of manual shielded metal arc welding and requirements for welding and for finishing welded connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
  8. Field Brazing: Comply with requirements for brazing and for finishing brazed connections in "Fabrication, General" Article. Braze connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop brazed because of shipping size limitations.
  9. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Installing Decorative Window Security Bars
1. Fasten security bar frames to concrete and masonry walls with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors. Peen exposed threads of anchors to prevent removal of security bars.
- D. Installing Decorative Mechanical Grilles
1. Mount decorative grilles at heights and in positions indicated, adjusting ductwork to be centered on grilles if any.
    - a. Secure to framing and blocking with specified fasteners.
    - b. On marble, brick, and other solid surfaces, secure with wood screws in lead plugs.
- E. Installing Decorative-Metal-Clad, Hollow-Metal Doors And Frames
1. Install doors and frames to comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors And Frames".
- F. Installing Custom Door Pulls
1. Install door pulls at heights and locations shown. Install with backing plates on both sides of doors. Fasten backing plates to doors with oval-head wood **OR** self-tapping metal, **as directed**, screws and secure pulls through doors and backing plates with oval-head machine screws.
- G. Installing Combination Hall Push-Button Stations
1. Coordinate installation of combination hall push-button stations with installation of related elevator signal equipment components specified in Division 14 Section "Electric Traction Elevators". Secure units in place with faceplate overlapping surrounding wall finish and drawn into contact with surrounding wall finish at entire perimeter of faceplate.

H. Installing Metal Reveals At Wood Paneling

1. Install metal reveals between wood panels as paneling is installed. Secure to wood grounds with specified screws.

I. Installing Cast-Metal Rosettes At Marble Joints

1. Install cast-metal rosettes at intersections of marble joints where indicated. Install only after marble work is complete and joints are grouted. Secure to wall by drilling a **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** round hole at intersection of marble joints and by filling hole with molding plaster into which threaded stud is embedded. Angle drill and rotate so bottom of hole is larger than at surface.
  - a. Secure rosettes in place with masking tape until plaster sets. After plaster has set, remove masking tape and adhesive residue.

J. Cleaning And Protection

1. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.
2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
3. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
5. Protect finishes of decorative metal from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by decorative metal fabricator. Remove protective covering at time of Final Completion.
6. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 15 16 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 15 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 15 19 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 21 19 00 - STEEL JOISTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steel joists. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. K-series steel joists.
  - b. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
  - c. K-series steel joist substitutes.
  - d. Long-span steel joists.
  - e. Joist girders.
  - f. Joist accessories.

#### C. Definitions

1. SJI "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
2. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support nonuniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live load deflections no greater than the following:
  - a. Floor Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.
  - b. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 **OR** 1/240, **as directed**, of the span.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
4. Welding certificates.
5. Manufacturer Certificates
6. Mill Certificates: For bolts.
7. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For joists.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables of SJI "Specifications."



- a. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
2. SJI Specifications: Comply with standard specifications in SJI's "Specifications" that are applicable to types of joists indicated.
3. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
2. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

H. Sequencing

1. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into cast-in-place concrete and masonry construction.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.
  - a. Recycled Content: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 **OR** 50 **OR** 60, **as directed**, percent.
2. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
4. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: **ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M)**, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M)** hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - a. Finish: Plain, uncoated **OR** Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C **OR** Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50, **as directed**.
5. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
6. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20 **OR** ASTM A 780, **as directed**.

B. Primers

1. Primer:
  - a. SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.  
**OR**  
Provide shop primer that complies with Division 07.

C. K-Series Steel Joists

1. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
  - a. Joist Type: K-series steel joists **OR** KCS-type K-series steel joists, **as directed**.
2. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
3. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
4. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.

5. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
  6. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
  7. Do not camber joists.
  8. Camber joists according to SJI's "Specifications," **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
  9. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)**.
- D. Long-Span Steel Joists
1. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements as follows **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Joist Type: LH-series steel joists **OR** DLH-series steel joists, **as directed**.
    - b. End Arrangement: Underslung **OR** Square, **as directed**.
    - c. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel **OR** Pitched **1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96)**, 1 way **OR** Pitched **1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96)**, 2 ways, **as directed**.
  2. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  3. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
  4. Camber long-span steel joists according to SJI's "Specifications" **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)**.
- E. Joist Girders
1. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements as follows **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. End Arrangement: Underslung **OR** Underslung with bottom-chord extensions **OR** Square, **as directed**.
    - b. Top-Chord Arrangement: Parallel **OR** Pitched **1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96)**, 1 way **OR** Pitched **1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96)**, 2 ways, **as directed**.
  2. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  3. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.
  4. Camber joist girders according to SJI's "Specifications" **OR** as indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)**.
- F. Joist Accessories
1. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal **OR** diagonal, **as directed**, bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
  2. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
  3. Bridging: Fabricate as indicated and according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
  4. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint **OR** Hot-dip zinc coat according to ASTM A 123/A 123M, **as directed**.
  5. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within **1/2 inch (13 mm)** of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

**G. Cleaning And Shop Painting**

1. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 **OR** power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3, **as directed**.
2. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials, **as directed**.
3. Apply 1 coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than **1 mil (0.025 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Shop priming of joists and joist accessories is specified in Division 07.

**1.3 EXECUTION****A. Installation**

1. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
2. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
  - a. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  - b. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  - c. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
  - d. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads have been applied.
3. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
4. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.  
**OR**  
Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
5. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

**B. Field Quality Control**

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.
2. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
3. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following procedures, as applicable:
  - a. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94.
  - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
  - c. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
  - d. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
4. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
5. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
6. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
7. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

**C. Repairs And Protection**

1. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Touchup Painting:
  - a. After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
    - 1) Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
    - 2) Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 21 19 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 31 13 00 - STEEL DECK

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for steel deck. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Roof deck.
  - b. Acoustical roof deck.
  - c. Cellular roof deck.
  - d. Acoustical cellular roof deck.
  - e. Composite floor deck.
  - f. Electrified cellular floor deck.
  - g. Noncomposite form deck.
  - h. Noncomposite vented form deck.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
4. Product Certificates.
5. Welding certificates.
6. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
7. Research/Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - b. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
3. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
4. Electrical Raceway Units: Provide UL-labeled cellular floor-deck units complying with UL 209 and listed in UL's "Electrical Construction Equipment Directory" for use with standard header ducts and outlets for electrical distribution systems.
5. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.



6. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
2. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
  - a. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Roof Deck

- a. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
- b. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, as directed, minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR Gray OR White OR Gray** top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
- c. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, as directed, **G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275)**, as directed, zinc coating.
- d. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, as directed, **G60 (Z180)** zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR Gray OR White OR Gray** top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
- e. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230)** minimum, **AZ50 (AZ150)** aluminum-zinc alloy coating.
- f. Deck Profile: As indicated **OR Type NR, narrow rib OR Type IR, intermediate rib OR Type WR, wide rib OR Type 3DR, deep rib OR Long span**, as directed.
- g. Cellular Deck Profile: As indicated **OR Type WR, wide rib OR Type 3DR, deep rib OR Long span**, as directed, with bottom plate.
- h. Profile Depth: As indicated **OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) OR 6 inches (152 mm) OR 7-1/2 inches (190 mm)**, as directed.
- i. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated **OR 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) OR 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) OR 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) OR 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) OR 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm)**, as directed.
- j. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated **OR 0.0358/0.0358 inch (0.91/0.91 mm) OR 0.0358/0.0474 inch (0.91/1.20 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0474 inch (1.20/1.20 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0598 inch (1.20/1.52 mm) OR 0.0598/0.0474 inch (1.52/1.20 mm) OR 0.0598/0.0598 inch (1.52/1.52 mm)**, as directed.
- k. Span Condition: As indicated **OR Simple span OR Double span OR Triple span or more**, as directed.
- l. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR Interlocking seam**, as directed.

B. Acoustical Roof Deck

1. Acoustical Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:



- a. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, **as directed**, minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR Gray OR White OR Gray** top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
- b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, **as directed**, **G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275)**, **as directed**, zinc coating.
- c. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, **as directed**, **G60 (Z180)** zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR Gray OR White OR Gray** top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
- d. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230)** minimum, **AZ50 (AZ150)** aluminum-zinc alloy coating.
- e. Deck Profile: As indicated **OR Type WR, wide rib OR Type 3DR, deep rib OR Long span**, **as directed**.
- f. Cellular Deck Profile: As indicated **OR Type WR, wide rib OR Type 3DR, deep rib OR Long span**, **as directed**, with bottom plate.
- g. Profile Depth: As indicated **OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) OR 6 inches (152 mm) OR 7-1/2 inches (190 mm)**, **as directed**.
- h. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated **OR 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) OR 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) OR 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) OR 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm)**, **as directed**.
- i. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated **OR 0.0358/0.0358 inch (0.91/0.91 mm) OR 0.0358/0.0474 inch (0.91/1.20 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0358 inch (1.20/0.91 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0474 inch (1.20/1.20 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0598 inch (1.20/1.52 mm) OR 0.0598/0.0474 inch (1.52/1.20 mm) OR 0.0598/0.0598 inch (1.52/1.52 mm)**, **as directed**.
- j. Span Condition: As indicated **OR Simple span OR Double span OR Triple span or more**, **as directed**.
- k. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR Interlocking seam**, **as directed**.
- l. Acoustical Perforations: Deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated vertical webs **OR Cellular deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated flat-bottom plate welded to ribbed deck**, **as directed**.
- m. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard premolded roll or strip of glass or mineral fiber.
  - 1) Factory install sound-absorbing insulation into cells of cellular deck.
  - 2) Installation of sound-absorbing insulation is specified in Division 07.
- n. Acoustical Performance: NRC 0.65 **OR 0.75 OR 0.80 OR 0.85 OR 0.90**, **as directed**, tested according to ASTM C 423.

C. Composite Floor Deck

1. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
  - a. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550)**, **as directed**, minimum, with top surface phosphatized and unpainted and underside surface shop primed with manufacturers' standard gray **OR white**, **as directed**, baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230)**, **G30 (Z90) OR G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275)**, **as directed**, zinc coating.
  - c. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230)**, **G30 (Z90) OR G60 (Z180)**, **as directed**, zinc coating; with unpainted top surface and cleaned and pretreated bottom surface primed with manufacturer's standard gray **OR white**, **as directed**, baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.





- d. Profile Depth: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- e. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: **0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) OR 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) OR 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) OR 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), as directed**.
- f. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.

D. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck

1. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Fabricate steel sheet cellular floor-deck panels, consisting of a ribbed top section welded to a lower flat-bottom sheet with interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck" in SDI Publication No. 30. Fabricate deck to the minimum section properties, width of panel, number and area of cells per panel indicated, and the following:
  - a. Cellular Deck Type: Composite **OR** Noncomposite, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230), G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275), as directed**, zinc coating.
  - c. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230), G60 (Z180)** zinc coating; with underside surface cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard gray **OR** white, **as directed**, baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  - d. Profile Depth: **1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - e. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: **0.0358/0.0358 inch (0.91/0.91 mm) OR 0.0358/0.0474 inch (0.91/1.20 mm) OR 0.0358/0.0598 inch (0.91/1.52 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0358 inch (1.20/0.91 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0474 inch (1.20/1.20 mm) OR 0.0474/0.0598 inch (1.20/1.52 mm) OR 0.0598/0.0474 inch (1.52/1.20 mm) OR 0.0598/0.0598 inch (1.52/1.52 mm), as directed**.
  - f. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed**.
  - g. Factory punch holes, of size and arrangement indicated, into each deck cell at preset inserts and header duct locations.

E. Noncomposite Form Deck

1. Noncomposite Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
  - a. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550), as directed**, minimum.
  - b. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550), as directed**, minimum, with underside **OR** top and underside, **as directed**, surface shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
    - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
  - c. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550), as directed, G30 (Z90) OR G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275), as directed**, zinc coating.
  - d. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 80 (550), as directed, G60 (Z180)** zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
    - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed**.
  - e. Profile Depth: **9/16 inch (14 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-5/16 inches (33 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), as directed**.

- f. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: **0.0149 inch (0.38 mm) OR 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) OR 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm) OR 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) OR 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) OR 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) OR 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), as directed.**
  - g. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed.**
  - h. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR** Interlocking seam, **as directed.**
- F. Noncomposite Vented Form Deck
1. Noncomposite Vented Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed- and vented-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
    - a. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 40 (275) OR 80 (550), as directed, G30 (Z90) OR G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z275), as directed,** zinc coating.
    - b. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade **33 (230) OR 80 (550), as directed, G30 (Z90) OR G60 (Z180), as directed,** zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
      - 1) Color: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Gray **OR** White **OR** Gray top surface with white underside, **as directed.**
    - c. Profile Depth: **9/16 inch (14 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-5/16 inches (33 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), as directed.**
    - d. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: **0.0149 inch (0.38 mm) OR 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) OR 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm) OR 0.0295 inch (0.75 mm) OR 0.0358 inch (0.91 mm) OR 0.0474 inch (1.20 mm) OR 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm), as directed.**
    - e. Span Condition: As indicated **OR** Simple span **OR** Double span **OR** Triple span or more, **as directed.**
    - f. Side Laps: Overlapped **OR** Interlocking seam, **as directed.**
    - g. Vent Slot Area: Manufacturer's standard vent slots providing 1-1/2 percent open area.
- G. Accessories
1. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
  2. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
  3. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, **No. 10 (4.8-mm)** minimum diameter.
  4. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
  5. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of **33,000 psi (230 MPa)**, not less than **0.0359-inch (0.91-mm)** design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
  6. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of **33,000 psi (230 MPa)**, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile indicated **OR** recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth, **as directed.**
  7. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.
  9. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, **0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) OR 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm), as directed,** thick, with factory-punched hole of **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** minimum diameter.
  10. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, **0.0747 inch (1.90 mm)** thick, of same material and finish as deck, with **3-inch- (76-mm-)** wide flanges and level **OR** sloped, **as directed,** recessed pans of **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
  11. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, **0.0747 inch (1.90 mm)** thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

12. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780 **OR** SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight, **as directed**.
13. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
2. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
3. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
4. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
  - a. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.
5. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
6. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
7. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
8. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
9. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

#### B. Roof-Deck Installation

1. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** long, and as follows:
  - a. Weld Diameter: **5/8 inch (16 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm), as directed**, nominal.
  - b. Weld Spacing: Weld edge and interior ribs of deck units with a minimum of two welds per deck unit at each support. Space welds **18 inches (450 mm)** apart, maximum **OR 12 inches (305 mm)** apart in the field of roof and **6 inches (150 mm)** apart in roof corners and perimeter, based on roof-area definitions in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-28 **OR as indicated, as directed**.
  - c. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
2. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or **18 inches (450 mm) OR 36 inches (910 mm), as directed**, and as follows:
  - a. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, **No. 10 (4.8-mm-)** diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
  - b. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
  - c. Fasten with a minimum of **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** long welds.
3. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, with end joints as follows:
  - a. End Joints: Lapped **2 inches (51 mm)** minimum **OR Butted OR Lapped 2 inches (51 mm)** minimum or butted at Contractor's option, **as directed**.
4. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld **OR** mechanically fasten, **as directed**, flanges to top of deck. Space welds **OR** mechanical fasteners, **as directed**, not more than **12 inches (305 mm)** apart with at least one weld **OR** fastener, **as directed**, at each corner.
  - a. Install reinforcing channels or zeos in ribs to span between supports and weld **OR** mechanically fasten, **as directed**.

5. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld **OR** Mechanically fasten, **as directed**, to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
    - a. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.
  7. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Installation into topside ribs of deck as specified in Division 07.
- C. Floor-Deck Installation
1. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
    - a. Weld Diameter: **5/8 inch (16 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm), as directed**, nominal.
    - b. Weld Spacing: Weld edge ribs of panels at each support. Space additional welds an average of **12 inches (305 mm)** apart, but not more than **18 inches (457 mm)** apart.  
**OR**  
Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated.
    - c. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
  2. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or **36 inches (910 mm)**, and as follows:
    - a. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, **No. 10 (4.8-mm-)** diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
    - b. Mechanically clinch or button punch.
    - c. Fasten with a minimum of **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** long welds.
  3. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, with end joints as follows:
    - a. End Joints: Lapped **OR Butted, as directed**.
  4. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.
  6. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Install cellular floor system with deck assembled from all-cellular units **OR** alternating cellular units with noncellular composite units **OR** units indicated, **as directed**.
  7. Install piercing hanger tabs at **14 inches (355 mm)** apart in both directions, within **9 inches (228 mm)** of walls at ends, and not more than **12 inches (305 mm)** from walls at sides, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  2. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
  3. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and the Owner.
  4. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
  5. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.
- E. Repairs And Protection
1. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces **OR** top surface, **as directed**, of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
    - a. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.



3. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 31 13 00

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 31 33 00	05 31 13 00	Steel Deck
05 36 00 00	05 31 13 00	Steel Deck
05 41 00 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 42 13 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 43 00 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 43 00 00	05 12 23 00	Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 43 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 50 00 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal fabrications. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

##### 1. Section Includes:

- a. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
- b. Steel framing and supports for operable partitions.
- c. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
- d. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
- e. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
- f. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
- g. Steel framing and supports (outriggers) for window-washing equipment including mounting brackets and anchorages.

##### **OR**

- h. Mounting brackets and anchorages for window-washing equipment.
- i. Elevator machine beams, hoist beams, and divider beams.
- j. Steel shapes for supporting elevator door sills.
- k. Steel girders for supporting wood frame construction.
- l. Steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction.
- m. Prefabricated building columns.
- n. Shelf angles.
- o. Metal ladders.
- p. Ladder safety cages.
- q. Alternating tread devices.
- r. Metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers.
- s. Metal floor plate and supports.
- t. Structural-steel door frames.
- u. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel angle corner guards, steel edgings, and loading-dock edge angles.
- v. Metal bollards.
- w. Pipe **OR** Downspout, **as directed**, guards.
- x. Abrasive metal nosings, treads, and thresholds.
- y. Cast-iron wheel guards.
- z. Metal downspout boots.
- z. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

##### 2. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:

- a. Loose steel lintels.
- b. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- c. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

#### C. Performance Requirements



1. Delegated Design: Design ladders and alternating tread devices, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Aluminum Ladders: Aluminum ladders, including landings, shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.
3. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ICC's International Building Code.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - b. Prefabricated building columns.
  - c. Metal nosings and treads.
  - d. Paint products.
  - e. Grout.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
4. Samples: For each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

### B. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
4. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
6. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
7. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallically bonded to steel.
8. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
9. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
10. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
  - a. Size of Channels: **1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches (41 by 41 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial steel, Type B **OR** structural steel, **Grade 33 (Grade 230)**, **as directed**, with **G90 (Z275)** coating; **0.108-inch (2.8-mm)** (12 gage) **OR** **0.079-inch (2-mm)** (14 gage) **OR** **0.064-inch (1.6-mm)** (16 gage), **as directed**, nominal thickness.  
**OR**  
Material: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B **OR** structural steel, **Grade 33 (Grade 230)**, **as directed**; **0.0966-inch (2.5-mm)** (12 gage) **OR** **0.0677-inch (1.7-mm)** (14 gage) **OR** **0.0528-inch (1.35-mm)** (16 gage), **as directed**, minimum thickness; unfinished **OR** coated with rust-inhibitive, baked-on, acrylic enamel **OR** hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, **as directed**.
11. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Nonferrous Metals

1. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 6061-T6.
2. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T6.
3. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
4. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
5. Bronze Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
6. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
7. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).

8. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B 151/B 151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500.
9. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

D. Fasteners

1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - a. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  - b. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
  - c. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening nickel silver.
  - d. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
2. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with hex nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
3. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A 325, Type 3 (ASTM A 325M, Type 3)**; with hex nuts, **ASTM A 563, Grade C3 (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S3)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
4. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**; with hex nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group **1 (A1) OR Group 2 (A4), as directed**.
5. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - a. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
6. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
7. Machine Screws: **ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M)**.
8. Lag Screws: **ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M)**.
9. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
10. Plain Washers: Round, **ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M)**.
11. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, **ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M)**.
12. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
13. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
14. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1) OR Group 2 (A4), as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.
15. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, **1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm)** by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than **3 inches (75 mm)** long at not more than **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

E. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
7. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
8. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
9. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)**.

F. Fabrication, General

1. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
4. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
5. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
6. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
7. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
8. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
9. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
  - a. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, **1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm)**, with a minimum **6-inch (150-mm)** embedment and **2-inch (50-mm)** hook, not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** from ends and corners of units and **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

G. Miscellaneous Framing And Supports

1. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

2. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - a. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - b. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
3. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated **OR** recommended by partition manufacturer, **as directed**, with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated **OR** recommended by partition manufacturer, **as directed**. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
4. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
  - a. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
  - b. Drill or punch girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
  - c. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c.
5. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
  - b. Unless otherwise indicated, provide **1/2-inch (12.7-mm)** baseplates with four **5/8-inch (16-mm)** anchor bolts and **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** top plates.
6. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.  
**OR**  
Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**, where indicated.

#### H. Prefabricated Building Columns

1. General: Provide prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell. Fabricate connections to comply with details shown or as needed to suit type of structure indicated.
2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building columns listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
  - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: 4 hours **OR** 3 hours **OR** 2 hours **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

#### I. Shelf Angles

1. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive **3/4-inch (19-mm)** bolts, spaced not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** from ends and **24 inches (600 mm)** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - b. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately **2 inches (50 mm)** larger than expansion or control joint.
2. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
3. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.  
**OR**  
Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

#### J. Metal Ladders



1. General:
  - a. Comply with ANSI A14.3 unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.
2. Steel Ladders:
  - a. Space siderails **16 inches (406 mm) OR 18 inches (457 mm), as directed**, apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Space siderails of elevator pit ladders **12 inches (300 mm)** apart.
  - c. Siderails: Continuous, **3/8-by-2-1/2-inch (9.5-by-64-mm) OR 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch (12.7-by-64-mm), as directed**, steel flat bars, with eased edges.
  - d. Rungs: **3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter OR 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) square OR 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter OR 1-inch- (25-mm-) square, as directed**, steel bars.
  - e. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
  - f. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
  - g. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to rung.
  - h. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than **1/2 inch (12 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm), as directed**, in least dimension.
  - i. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than **60 inches (1500 mm)** o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
  - j. Galvanize ladders **OR** exterior ladders, **as directed**, including brackets and fasteners.  
**OR**  
Prime ladders **OR** exterior ladders, **as directed**, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
3. Aluminum Ladders:
  - a. Space siderails **16 inches (406 mm) OR 18 inches (457 mm), as directed**, apart unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Siderails: Continuous extruded-aluminum channels or tubes, not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** deep, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** wide, and **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick.
  - c. Rungs: Extruded-aluminum tubes, not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** deep and not less than **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick, with ribbed tread surfaces.
  - d. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; fasten by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners or brackets and aluminum rivets.
  - e. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from pressure-locked aluminum bar grating or extruded-aluminum plank grating, supported by extruded-aluminum framing. Limit openings in gratings to no more than **1/2 inch (12 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm), as directed**, in least dimension.
  - f. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than **60 inches (1500 mm)** o.c. with welded or bolted aluminum brackets.
  - g. Provide minimum **72-inch- (1830-mm-) high**, hinged security door with padlock hasp at foot of ladder to prevent unauthorized ladder use.
- K. Ladder Safety Cages
  1. General:
    - a. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3 **OR** OSHA regulations, **as directed**. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
    - b. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than **20 feet (6 m)** o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than **48 inches (1200 mm)** o.c. between primary hoops.
    - c. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:
    - a. Primary Hoops: **1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm)** flat bar hoops.

- b. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: **1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm)** flat bar hoops.
- c. Vertical Bars: **3/16-by-1-1/2-inch (4.8-by-38-mm)** flat bars secured to each hoop.
- d. Galvanize ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.

**OR**

Prime ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

3. Aluminum Ladder Safety Cages:

- a. Primary Hoops: **1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm)** flat bar hoops.
- b. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: **1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm)** flat bar hoops.
- c. Vertical Bars: **1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm)** flat bars secured to each hoop.

L. Alternating Tread Devices

- 1. Alternating Tread Devices: Fabricate alternating tread devices to comply with ICC's International Building Code. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
  - a. Fabricate from steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, and assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
  - b. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 05 Section "Pipe And Tube Railings".
- 2. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

**OR**

Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

M. Metal Ships' Ladders And Pipe Crossovers

- 1. Provide metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
  - a. Fabricate ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including railings from steel **OR** stainless steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
  - b. Fabricate treads **OR** treads and platforms, **as directed**, from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked stainless-steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked aluminum bar grating **OR** extruded-aluminum plank grating, **as directed**. Limit openings in gratings to no more than **1/2 inch (12 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, in least dimension.
  - c. Fabricate treads **OR** treads and platforms, **as directed**, from rolled-steel floor plate **OR** rolled-stainless-steel floor plate **OR** rolled-aluminum-alloy tread plate **OR** abrasive-surface floor plate, **as directed**.
  - d. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 5 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- 2. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

**OR**

Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

N. Metal Floor Plate

- 1. Fabricate from rolled-steel floor **OR** rolled-stainless-steel floor **OR** rolled-aluminum-alloy tread **OR** abrasive-surface floor, **as directed**, plate of thickness indicated below:
  - a. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 5/16 inch (8 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- 2. Provide grating sections where indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked stainless steel bar grating **OR** pressure-locked aluminum bar grating

- OR** extruded-aluminum plank grating, **as directed**. Limit openings in gratings to no more than **1/2 inch (12 mm)** **OR** **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR** **1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, in least dimension.
3. Provide steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, angle supports as indicated.
  4. Include steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, angle stiffeners, and fixed and removable sections as indicated.
  5. Provide flush steel **OR** stainless-steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, bar drop handles for lifting removable sections, one at each end of each section.
- O. Structural-Steel Door Frames
1. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes, plates, and bars of size and to dimensions indicated, fully welded together, with **5/8-by-1-1/2-inch (16-by-38-mm)** steel channel stops, unless otherwise indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints. Secure removable stops to frame with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced at not more than **10 inches (250 mm)** o.c. Reinforce frames and drill and tap as necessary to accept finish hardware.
    - a. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.
  2. Extend bottom of frames to floor elevation indicated with steel angle clips welded to frames for anchoring frame to floor with expansion shields and bolts.
  3. Galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, frames.  
**OR**  
Prime steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, frames with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- P. Miscellaneous Steel Trim
1. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
  2. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
    - a. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
  3. Galvanize miscellaneous steel **OR** exterior miscellaneous steel, **as directed**, trim.  
**OR**  
Prime miscellaneous steel **OR** exterior miscellaneous steel, **as directed**, trim with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- Q. Metal Bollards
1. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe **OR** Schedule 80 steel pipe **OR** **1/4-inch (6.4 mm)** wall-thickness rectangular steel tubing **OR** steel shapes, as indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Cap bollards with **1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-)** thick steel plate (not required if bollards are concrete filled).
    - b. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide necessary cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
    - c. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide necessary cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
  2. Fabricate bollards with **3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-)** thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab (for mounting bollards on structural slab or on existing pavement). Drill baseplates at all four corners for **3/4-inch (19-mm)** anchor bolts.
    - a. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
  3. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe or tubing with **1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-)** thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** deep and **3/4 inch (19 mm)** larger than OD of bollard.



4. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD approximately **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for **3/4 inch (19 mm)** steel machine bolt.
5. Prime bollards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

R. Pipe Or Downspout Guards

1. Fabricate pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards from **3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-)** thick by **12-inch- (300-mm-)** wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with **2-inch (50-mm)** clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two **3/4-inch (19-mm)** anchor bolts.
2. Galvanize pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards.  
**OR**  
Prime pipe **OR** downspout, **as directed**, guards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.

S. Abrasive Metal Nosings, Treads And Thresholds

1. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze (leaded red or semired brass) **OR** nickel silver (leaded nickel bronze), **as directed**, with an integral-abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - a. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, **4 inches (100 mm)** wide with **1/4-inch (6-mm)** **OR** **1-inch (25-mm)**, **as directed**, lip, for casting into concrete steps.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Cross-hatched units, **1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm)**, for casting into concrete curbs.
  - b. Treads: Cross-hatched units, full depth of tread with **3/4-by-3/4-inch (19-by-19-mm)** nosing, for application over bent plate treads or existing stairs.
  - c. Thresholds: Fluted-saddle-type units, **5 inches (125 mm)** wide by **1/2 inch (12 mm)** high, with tapered edges.  
**OR**  
Thresholds: Fluted-interlocking- (hook-strip-) type units, **5 inches (125 mm)** wide by **5/8 inch (16 mm)** high, with tapered edge.  
**OR**  
Thresholds: Plain-stepped- (stop-) type units, **5 inches (125 mm)** wide by **1/2 inch (12 mm)** high, with **1/2-inch (12-mm)** step.
2. Extruded Units: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - a. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** above aluminum extrusion.  
**OR**  
Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
  - b. Nosings: Square-back units, **1-7/8 inches (48 mm)** **OR** **3 inches (75 mm)** **OR** **4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, wide, for casting into concrete steps.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Beveled-back units, **3 inches (75 mm)** **OR** **4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, wide with **1-3/8-inch (35-mm)** lip, for surface mounting on existing stairs.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Two-piece units, **3 inches (75 mm)** wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete steps.
  - c. Treads: Square **OR** Beveled, **as directed**, -back units, full depth of tread with **1-3/8-inch (35-mm)** lip, for application over existing stairs.
3. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.

4. Drill for mechanical anchors and countersink. Locate holes not more than **4 inches (100 mm)** from ends and not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c., evenly spaced between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Provide closer spacing if recommended by manufacturer.
    - a. Provide two rows of holes for units more than **5 inches (125 mm)** wide, with two holes aligned at ends and intermediate holes staggered.
  5. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.
  6. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units.
- T. Cast-Iron Wheel Guards
1. Provide wheel guards made from cast iron, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick, hollow-core construction, of size and shape indicated. Provide holes for countersunk anchor bolts and grouting.
  2. Prime cast iron wheel guards with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- U. Metal Downspout Boots
1. Provide downspout boots made from cast iron **OR** cast aluminum, **as directed**, in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts. Provide units with flanges and holes for countersunk anchor bolts.
    - a. Outlet: Vertical, to discharge into pipe **OR** Horizontal, to discharge into pipe **OR** At 35 degrees from horizontal, to discharge onto splash block or pavement, **as directed**.
  2. Prime cast iron downspout boots with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- V. Loose Bearing And Leveling Plates
1. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
  2. Galvanize plates.  
**OR**  
Prime plates with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- W. Loose Steel Lintels
1. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
  2. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
  4. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer **OR** primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
- X. Steel Weld Plates And Angles
1. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.
- Y. Finishes, General
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
  3. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.
- Z. Steel And Iron Finishes

1. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized, **as directed**, unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Shop prime with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
3. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - c. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - d. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
4. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

#### AA. Aluminum Finishes

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).
3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
2. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
3. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
4. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
5. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

6. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - a. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - b. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.
- B. Installing Miscellaneous Framing And Supports
  1. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
  2. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
  3. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
    - a. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
  4. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
    - a. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.
- C. Installing Prefabricated Building Columns
  1. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.
- D. Installing Metal Bollards
  1. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
    - a. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
  2. Anchor bollards to existing construction with expansion anchors **OR** anchor bolts **OR** through bolts, **as directed**. Provide four **3/4-inch (19-mm)** bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Embed anchor bolts at least **4 inches (100 mm)** in concrete.
  3. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete **OR** in formed or core-drilled holes not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** deep and **3/4 inch (19 mm)** larger than OD of bollard, **as directed**. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately **1/8 inch (3 mm)** toward bollard.
  4. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes **3 inches (75 mm)** above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
  5. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in concrete by inserting into pipe sleeves preset into concrete **OR** formed or core-drilled holes not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** deep and **3/4 inch (19 mm)** larger than OD of sleeve, **as directed**. Fill annular space around internal sleeves solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately **1/8 inch (3 mm)** toward internal sleeve.
  6. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align sleeves in holes **3 inches (75 mm)** above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace sleeves in position until concrete has cured.
  7. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with **3/4-inch (19-mm)** machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. the Owner will furnish padlocks.
  8. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
    - a. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
- E. Installing Pipe Guards

1. Provide pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in parking garage where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to wall or column with expansion anchors. Provide four **3/4-inch (19-mm)** bolts at each pipe guard. Mount pipe guards with top edge **26 inches (660 mm)** above driving surface.

F. Installing Nosings, Treads, And Thresholds

1. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
2. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.
3. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

G. Installing Cast-Iron Wheel Guards

1. Anchor wheel guards to concrete or masonry construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Fill cores solidly with concrete.

H. Installing Bearing And Leveling Plates

1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
2. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
  - a. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

I. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07.
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00 00

## SECTION 05 51 13 00 - METAL STAIRS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal stairs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled, precast concrete, epoxy-resin-filled, and abrasive-coating-finished formed-metal treads.
  - b. Industrial-type stairs with steel floor plate and grating treads.
  - c. Ornamental steel-framed stairs.
  - d. Railings and Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
  - e. Handrails and Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.
  - f. Railing gates at the level of exit discharge.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design metal stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. The following are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC):
    - 1) Uniform Load: **100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).**
    - 2) Concentrated Load: **300 lbf (1.33 kN)** applied on an area of **4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).**
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above, **as applicable.**
  - c. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/240 **OR** L/360, **as directed**, or **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**, whichever is less. Preassembled steel stair manufacturers usually design stairs to L/240; retaining L/360 will decrease bounce and may be required to prevent cracking of plaster or gypsum board soffits. If brittle materials such as marble, granite, or ceramic tiles are used on treads and platforms, deflection limit should be reduced to L/720.
3. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated. The following loads are based on the 2006 IBC.
  - a. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - 1) Uniform load of **50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m)** applied in any direction.
    - 2) Concentrated load of **200 lbf (0.89 kN)** applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Infill of Guards:
    - 1) Concentrated load of **50 lbf (0.22 kN)** applied horizontally on an area of **1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).**
    - 2) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Seismic Performance: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Component Importance Factor is 1.5.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:

- a. Prefilled metal-pan stair treads.
    - b. Precast concrete treads.
    - c. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
    - d. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate finishes.
    - e. Abrasive nosings.
    - f. Metal floor plate treads.
    - g. Paint products.
    - h. Grout.
  2. LEED Submittals:
    - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  4. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
    - a. Precast concrete treads.
    - b. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
    - c. Stair treads with nonslip-aggregate surface finish.
    - d. Metal floor plate treads.
    - e. Grating treads.
    - f. Abrasive nosings.
  5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
  7. Welding certificates.
  8. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
  9. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for stairs and railings.
    - a. Test railings according ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.
- E. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
  2. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
    - a. Preassembled Stairs:
      - 1) Commercial class - typical enclosed stair (welds are required to be smooth).
      - 2) Service class - economy enclosed stair.
    - b. Industrial-Type Stairs: Industrial class - typical for exposed locations in industrial facilities or for exterior stairs.
    - c. Ornamental Stairs: Architectural class - ornamental stairs in exposed locations (joints are required to be concealed to maximum extent possible).
  3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
    - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
    - b. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
- F. Coordination
1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
  2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items



with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

3. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

### B. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) **OR** ASTM A 513, **as directed**.
4. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
5. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to steel.
6. Steel Bars for Grating Treads: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
7. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: **ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M)**.
8. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, **Grade 25 (Grade 170)**, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
10. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, **Grade 30 (Grade 205)**, unless another grade is required by design loads.
11. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, **Grade 33 (Grade 230)**, unless another grade is required by design loads.
12. Expanded-Metal, Carbon Steel: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
13. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)** thick, with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** holes **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with **1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm)** round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
14. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating, commercial steel Type B, **0.064 inch (1.63 mm)** thick, with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** holes **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** o.c. in staggered rows.
15. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, **2-inch (50-mm)** woven-wire mesh, made from **0.135-inch (3.5-mm)** nominal diameter wire complying with **ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M)**.

### C. Nonferrous Metals

1. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T6.
2. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
3. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
4. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).



5. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

D. Abrasive Nosings

1. Cast-Metal Units: Cast iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** nickel silver, **as directed**, with an integral abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - a. Configuration: Cross-hatched units, **3 inches (75 mm) OR 4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, wide without lip.  
**OR**  
Configuration: Cross-hatched angle-shaped units, same depth as bar-grating treads and **1 to 1-1/2 inches (25 to 38 mm)** wide.
2. Extruded Units: Aluminum **OR** Bronze, **as directed**, units with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - a. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)** above aluminum extrusion.  
**OR**  
Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
  - b. Nosings: Square-back units, **1-7/8 inches (48 mm) OR 3 inches (75 mm) OR 4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, wide, without lip.  
**OR**  
Nosings: Two-piece units, **3 inches (75 mm)** wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete.
3. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
4. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.
5. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units set into concrete.

E. Fasteners

1. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 12 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
2. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with hex nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
3. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - a. Provide mechanically deposited or hot-dip, zinc-coated anchor bolts for exterior stairs **OR** stairs indicated to be galvanized **OR** stairs indicated to be shop primed with zinc-rich primer, **as directed**.
4. Machine Screws: **ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M)**.
5. Lag Screws: **ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M)**.
6. Plain Washers: Round, **ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M)**.
7. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, **ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M)**.
8. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1) OR Group 2 (A4)**, **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.

F. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
    - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
  4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
  5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
  6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
  7. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
  8. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)** unless otherwise indicated.
  9. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
  10. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, **6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm)**, W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Precast Concrete Treads
1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete" for normal-weight, ready-mixed concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of **5000 psi (35 MPa)** and a total air content of not less than 4 percent or more than 6 percent.
  2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded wire fabric, **2 by 2 inches (50 by 50 mm)** by **0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-)** diameter wire; comply with ASTM A 1064/A 1064M and ASTM A 82/A 82M, except for minimum wire size.
- H. Fabrication, General
1. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, **as directed**, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
    - a. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
    - c. Fabricate treads and platforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.
  2. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
  3. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
  4. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
  5. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
  6. Weld connections to comply with the following:
    - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
    - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
    - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
    - d. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.

- e. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
  7. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
  8. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- I. Steel-Framed Stairs
1. Stair Framing:
    - a. Fabricate stringers of steel plates **OR** channels **OR** tubes, **as directed**.
      - 1) Provide closures for exposed ends of channel **OR** tube, **as directed**, stringers.
    - b. Construct platforms of steel plate **OR** channel **OR** tube, **as directed**, headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
    - c. Weld or bolt, **as directed**, stringers to headers; weld or bolt, **as directed**, framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.
    - d. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board **OR** gypsum board shaft-wall, **as directed**, assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below. Locate hanger rods and struts where they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
    - e. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
  2. Metal-Pan Stairs: Form risers, subreads pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than **0.067 inch (1.7 mm)** **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold **OR** hot, **as directed**, rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet, where indicated.
    - b. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subreads where they will be concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.  
**OR**  
Attach risers and subreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
    - c. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
    - d. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
    - e. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal-pan subreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.
    - f. Provide epoxy-resin-filled treads, reinforced with glass fibers, with slip-resistant, abrasive surface.
    - g. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.
      - 1) Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct subplatforms with flat metal under surfaces to produce smooth soffits.
  3. Abrasive-Coating-Finished, Formed-Metal Stairs: Form risers, treads, and platforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 0.097 inch (2.5 mm) **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Steel Sheet: Uncoated hot-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Directly weld risers and treads to stringers; locate welds on underside of stairs.

- c. Provide platforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as treads. Weld platforms to platform framing.
    - d. Finish tread and platform surfaces with manufacturer's standard epoxy-bonded abrasive finish.
  4. Metal Floor Plate Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from rolled-steel **OR** abrasive-surface, **as directed**, floor plate of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** **OR** needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **3/16 inch (4.8 mm)** **OR** needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** **OR** indicated, **as directed**.
    - a. Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers of same material as treads.  
**OR**  
Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener. Form risers from steel sheet not less than **0.097 inch (2.5 mm)** thick, welded to tread nosings and stiffeners and to platforms.  
**OR**  
Form treads with integral nosing and back edge stiffener, and with open risers.
    - b. Weld steel supporting brackets to stringers and weld treads to brackets.
    - c. Fabricate platforms with integral nosings matching treads and weld to platform framing.
  5. Metal Bar-Grating Stairs: Form treads and platforms to configurations shown from metal bar grating; fabricate to comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual."
    - a. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with **1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-5-mm)** bearing bars at **15/16 inch (24 mm)** o.c. **OR** **1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-5-mm)** bearing bars at **11/16 inch (17 mm)** o.c. **OR** **1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3-mm)** bearing bars at **7/16 inch (11 mm)** o.c., **as directed**, and crossbars at **4 inches (100 mm)** o.c.  
**OR**  
Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel grating with openings in gratings no more than **5/16 inch (8 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (12 mm)** **OR** **3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, in least dimension.
    - b. Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated, **as directed**.
    - c. Finish: Shop primed **OR** Painted **OR** Galvanized, **as directed**.
    - d. Fabricate grating treads with rolled-steel floor plate **OR** cast abrasive, **as directed**, nosing and with steel angle or steel plate carrier at each end for stringer connections. Secure treads to stringers with bolts.
    - e. Fabricate grating platforms with nosing matching that on grating treads. Provide toeplates at open-sided edges of grating platforms. Weld grating to platform framing.
- J. Stair Railings
1. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 05 Section(s) "Pipe And Tube Railings" **OR** "Decorative Metal Railings", **as directed**.
    - a. Fabricate newels of square steel tubing and provide newel caps of pressed steel **OR** gray-iron castings, **as directed**, as shown.
    - b. Rails may be bent at corners, rail returns, and wall returns, instead of using prefabricated fittings.
    - c. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Steel Tube Railings: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of tube, post spacings, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.
    - a. Rails and Posts: **1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-)** diameter **OR** **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** square, **as directed**, top and bottom rails and **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** square posts.
    - b. Picket Infill: **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** square pickets spaced less than **4 inches (100 mm)** clear.
    - c. Expanded-Metal Infill: Expanded-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from steel sheet not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm)** thick. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** vertical, **as directed**.

- d. Perforated-Metal Infill: Perforated-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm)** thick. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - e. Mesh Infill: Woven wire mesh crimped into **1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm)** steel channel frames. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.
  - f. Intermediate Rails Infill: **1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-)** diameter **OR** **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** square, **as directed**, intermediate rails spaced less than **12 inches (305 mm)** **OR** **21 inches (533 mm)**, **as directed**, clear.
  - g. Gates: Form gates from steel tube of same size and shape as top rails, with infill to match guards. Provide with cam-type, self-closing **OR** spring, **as directed**, hinges for fastening to wall and overlapping stop with rubber bumper to prevent gate from opening in direction opposite egress.
3. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
    - a. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint **OR** Type 2 welds: completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay **OR** Type 3 welds: partially dressed weld with spatter removed **OR** Type 4 welds: good quality, uniform undressed weld with minimal splatter, **as directed**.
  4. Form changes in direction of railings as follows:
    - a. As detailed.  
**OR**  
By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.  
**OR**  
By inserting prefabricated elbow fittings **OR** flush-elbow fittings **OR** elbow fittings of radius indicated, **as directed**.
  5. Form simple and compound curves by bending members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
  6. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
  7. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or less.
  8. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
    - a. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. For galvanized railings, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous-metal components.
    - c. For nongalvanized railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.
  9. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.

## K. Finishes



1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
3. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - b. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
4. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed products, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" for stairs that are to receive zinc-rich primer or primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings".

**OR**

Interior Stairs: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
5. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - a. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
2. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
3. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
5. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
6. Field Welding: Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
7. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete"
  - a. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.
8. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

#### B. Installing Metal Stairs With Grouted Baseplates

1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of baseplates.
2. Set steel stair baseplates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After stairs have been positioned and aligned, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.

- a. Use nonmetallic, nonshrink grout unless otherwise indicated.
- b. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

C. Installing Railings

1. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
  - a. Anchor posts to steel by welding directly to steel supporting members.
  - b. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with postinstalled anchors and bolts.
2. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**. Provide bracket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements **OR** as follows, **as directed**:
  - a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
  - d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

**OR**  
For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

**OR**  
For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

D. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**OR**  
Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13 00

## SECTION 05 51 13 00a - FABRICATED SPIRAL STAIRS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for fabricated spiral stairs. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes fabricated spiral stairs with steel central-supporting columns and radiating treads.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design fabricated spiral stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance of Stairs: Fabricated spiral stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7:
  - a. Uniform Load: **40 lbf/sq. ft. (1.92 kN/sq. m) OR 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m), as directed.**
  - b. Concentrated Load: **300 lbf (1.33 kN)** applied on an area of **4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).**
  - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - d. Railing Loads: Stairs shall withstand stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
3. Structural Performance of Railings: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7:
  - a. Handrails:
    - 1) Uniform load of **20 lbf/ft. (0.29 kN/m) OR 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m), as directed**, applied in any direction.
    - 2) Concentrated load of **200 lbf (0.89 kN)** applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Top Rails of Guards:
    - 1) Uniform load of **20 lbf/ft. (0.29 kN/m)** applied in any direction **OR 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m)** applied in any direction **OR 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m)** applied horizontally and concurrently, with **100 lbf/ft. (1.46 kN/m)** applied vertically downward, **as directed.**
    - 2) Concentrated load of **200 lbf (0.89 kN)** applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - c. Infill of Guards:
    - 1) Concentrated load of **50 lbf (0.22 kN) OR 200 lbf (0.89 kN), as directed**, applied horizontally on an area of **1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).**
    - 2) Uniform load of **25 lbf/sq. ft. (1.2 kN/sq. m)** applied horizontally.
    - 3) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Seismic Performance: Fabricated spiral stairs shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
  - a. Component Importance Factor is **1.5 OR 1.0, as directed.**
5. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.



2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings.
4. Samples: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
  - a. Treads.
  - b. Metal with painted finish.
  - c. Railing members.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For fabricated spiral stairs indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Welding certificates.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported item unless otherwise indicated.
3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
4. Steel Bars for Grating Treads and Platforms: ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
5. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: **ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M)**.
6. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or Grade D.
7. Steel Pipe Columns: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40. Provide Schedule 80 for columns larger than **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and where required to support loads.
8. Steel Pipe Railings: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40.
9. Steel Tubing: Either cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500 or mandrel-drawn mechanical tubing complying with ASTM A 513, Type 5.
10. Iron Castings: Either gray iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M or malleable iron complying with ASTM A 47/A 47M unless otherwise indicated or required by structural loads.
11. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 6061-T6.
12. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
13. Aluminum Pipe and Structural Round Tubing: ASTM B 429, Alloy 6063-T6.
14. Extruded-Aluminum Tubing: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
15. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 319.0-F.
16. Extruded-Bronze Handrails: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
17. Seamless Bronze Tubing: **ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M)**, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
18. Seamless Brass Tubing: **ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M)**, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
19. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.

B. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Fasteners: For connecting stair components and for anchoring stairs to other construction, select fasteners of the type, grade, and class required to produce connections capable of withstanding design loadings.
  - a. For aluminum, provide fasteners fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel.
  - b. For steel and cast iron, use plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
2. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, air-drying, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
3. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "Interior Painting" **as directed**.
4. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
5. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
6. Shop Primer for Aluminum: Primer formulated for use over aluminum and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
7. Wood for Stair Treads, Handrails, and Platforms: Unless directed otherwise, laminated red oak, sanded to 120-grit smoothness. Apply uniform coat of manufacturer's standard clear sealer.
8. Rubber Wearing Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard, ~~1/4-inch-~~ (6-mm-) thick, molded-rubber covering in pattern and color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's standard colors and patterns.

C. Fabrication

1. Assemble spiral stairs in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
2. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately ~~1/32 inch~~ (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
4. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
5. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as needed to receive hardware, screws, and similar items.
6. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove flux immediately.
  - d. Provide Type 1 **OR** Type 2 **OR** Type 3, **as directed**, welds according to NOMMA Guideline 1, "Joint Finishes."
  - e. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and, except for fillet welds, welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
7. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
8. Fabricate center column from steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, pipe welded to baseplate for anchorage to floor structure. Brace column at upper floors by means of landings attached to column and floor structure unless otherwise indicated. Provide cap for column if top is exposed.
9. Provide cast-aluminum **OR** cast-iron, **as directed**, treads and platforms, **as directed**, with integral frames, legs, and hubs.
  - a. Provide treads and platforms, **as directed**, with abrasive surfaces.
10. Provide steel-bar grating treads and platforms, **as directed**, with welded hubs and as follows:
  - a. Radial grating treads.

- OR  
Abrasive OR Rolled-steel, floor-plate, **as directed**, nosings.  
OR  
Straight flanges and welded-on legs.  
OR  
Tapered flanges without legs.
11. Provide formed steel OR aluminum, **as directed**, -plate treads and platforms, **as directed**, welded to hubs or center column and as follows:
- a. Straight flanges and welded-on legs.  
OR  
Tapered flanges without legs.  
OR  
Pan treads without legs.  
OR  
One-piece treads and risers, without legs.  
OR  
Rolled-steel, floor-plate wearing surfaces.  
OR  
Aluminum-alloy, rolled tread-plate wearing surfaces.  
OR  
Smooth steel-plate wearing surfaces.  
OR  
Rubber wearing surfaces.  
OR  
Plywood subread for covering with finish flooring specified in another Section.
12. Provide steel-framed treads and platforms, **as directed**, welded to hubs or center column and without legs; wearing surface as follows:
- a. Cast iron with integral abrasive.  
OR  
Smooth steel plate with integral abrasive.  
OR  
Wood.  
OR  
Plywood insert for covering with finish flooring specified in another Section.
13. Railings: Provide railing system indicated, uniformly bent to spiral shape, and continuing at top to form guardrail around floor opening.
- a. Space balusters less than 4 inches (102 mm), clear.  
OR  
Space balusters to provide one baluster per tread, but spaced less than 21 inches (533 mm), clear.
  - b. Space intermediate rails less than 4 inches (101 mm) OR 21 inches (533 mm), **as directed**, clear.
  - c. Locate bottom rail so that a 6-inch- (152-mm-) diameter sphere cannot pass between the stair and rail.
  - d. Fabricate top rail from 1-1/4- to 2-inch- (32- to 51-mm-) OD steel pipe or round tubing.  
OR  
Fabricate top rail from steel of shape and size indicated.  
OR  
Fabricate top rail from 1-1/4- to 2-inch- (32- to 51-mm-) OD round aluminum OR bronze OR brass OR stainless-steel, **as directed**, tubing.  
OR  
Fabricate top rail from extruded bronze of shape and size indicated.  
OR  
Fabricate top rail from wood of shape and size indicated.

- e. Fabricate balusters from **7/8-inch- (22-mm-)** OD **OR** **1-inch- (25-mm-)** OD **OR** **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** OD steel pipe or round tubing.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate balusters from **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** OD **OR** **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** OD round steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate balusters from **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** **OR** **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** **OR** **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)**, **as directed**, square steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate balusters from **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** OD **OR** **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** OD, **as directed**, round aluminum tubing.
  - f. Fabricate intermediate rails from **7/8-inch- (22-mm-)** OD **OR** **1-inch- (25-mm-)** OD **OR** **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** OD, **as directed**, steel pipe or round tubing.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate intermediate rails from steel pipe or round tubing same size as top rail.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate intermediate rails from **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** OD **OR** **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** OD, **as directed**, round steel bars **OR** tubing, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate intermediate rails from **5/8-inch- (16-mm-)** OD **OR** **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** OD **OR** **1-inch- (25-mm-)** OD **OR** **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** OD, **as directed**, round aluminum tubing.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate intermediate rails from round aluminum tubing same size as top rail.
- D. Steel And Iron Finishes
1. Galvanized Finish: Hot-dip galvanize stairs after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
  2. Preparation for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
  3. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC's surface-preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed stairs:
    - a. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - b. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
  4. Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of handrails and railing components unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
- E. Aluminum Finishes
1. Conversion-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: shop primer).
    - a. Apply shop primer with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**.
  2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish indicated, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
    - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
    - c. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
    - d. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.

e. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.

G. Copper-Alloy Finishes

1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
4. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
5. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide).
  - a. Color: Match the Owner's sample.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where needed for securing fabricated spiral stairs to in-place construction; include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors as required.
2. Assemble fabricated spiral stair components to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, with each component aligned and in correct relation to each other, securely anchored to the supporting column and adjacent structure.
3. Do not cut, alter, or drill stair components in the field that do not fit properly. Return components that do not fit to manufacturer for adjustment.
4. Install fabricated spiral stairs accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; level and plumb; and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Install fabricated spiral stairs by welding to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
6. Field Welding:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.

B. Cleaning And Protection

1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint and paint exposed areas with same material.
2. For galvanized surfaces, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.
  - a. Paint repaired areas with same material used for shop painting.
3. Protect finished tread surfaces during construction by covering with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** thick plywood secured with plastic strapping or another nonmarring fastening method.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13 00a



Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 51 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 19 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 19 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 51 19 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 51 33 13	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 13	05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings
05 51 33 16	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 23	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 51 33 23	05 52 13 00	Pipe And Tube Railings

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



## SECTION 05 52 13 00 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for pipe and tube railings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Steel pipe and tube railings.
  - b. Aluminum pipe and tube railings.
  - c. Stainless-steel pipe and tube railings.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
  - a. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
  - b. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
  - c. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
3. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated. Following loads are examples only and are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC).
  - a. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
    - 1) Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
    - 2) Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    - 3) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - b. Infill of Guards:
    - 1) Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
    - 2) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
  - b. Railing brackets.
  - c. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.



4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - a. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
  - b. Fittings and brackets.
  - c. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
    - 1) Show method of finishing **OR** connecting, **as directed**, members at intersections.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, .
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
10. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination And Scheduling

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
3. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel And Iron

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
3. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
  - a. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
7. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
8. Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with 1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm) round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).

C. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
2. Extruded Bars and Tubing: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - a. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M), Alloy 6063-T832.
5. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
6. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
7. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.
8. Perforated Metal: Aluminum sheet, ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.162-inch (4.1-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M), Alloy 6061-T94.

D. Stainless Steel

1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
4. Plate and Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 3 (corrosion-resistant steel), made from stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
6. Perforated Metal: Stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**, 0.062 inch (1.59 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.
7. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

## E. Fasteners

1. General: Provide the following:
  - a. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
  - b. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
  - c. Aluminum Railings: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Railings: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads, **as directed**.
3. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
  - a. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
  - b. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1)** **OR** Group **2 (A4)**, **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.

## F. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - a. For aluminum and stainless-steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
2. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
3. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
4. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
6. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
7. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
8. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
9. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
10. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.

11. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
12. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
13. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - a. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

G. Fabrication

1. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
2. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
3. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
4. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
5. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
6. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
7. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded **OR** nonwelded, **as directed**, connections unless otherwise indicated.
8. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
9. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
10. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
  - a. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
11. Form changes in direction as follows:
  - a. As detailed.  
**OR**  
By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.
12. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
13. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.

14. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or less.
15. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
16. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
17. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sleeves not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** long with inside dimensions not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
18. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
  - a. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
19. Expanded-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from expanded metal made from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
  - a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as expanded metal and not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm)** thick.
  - b. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**.
20. Perforated-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from perforated metal made from steel **OR** galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** same metal as railings in which they are installed, **as directed**.
  - a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm)** thick.
  - b. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
21. Woven-Wire Mesh Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from woven-wire mesh crimped into **1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm)** metal channel frames. Make wire mesh and frames from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
  - a. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.
22. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

#### H. Finishes, General

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
4. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

#### I. Steel And Iron Finishes

1. Galvanized Railings:



- a. Hot-dip galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.  
**OR**  
Hot-dip galvanize indicated steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
  - b. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
  - c. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
  - d. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - e. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  2. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
  3. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
  4. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
  5. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
    - a. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - b. Railings Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - c. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
    - d. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  6. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
    - a. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
    - b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
  7. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" **OR** "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  8. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
    - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- J. Aluminum Finishes
1. Mechanical Finish: AA-M12 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated).
  2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
    - a. Color: Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

- a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

  - b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

K. Stainless-Steel Finishes

1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
3. 180-Grit Polished Finish: Oil-ground, uniform, directionally textured finish.
4. 320-Grit Polished Finish: Oil-ground, uniform, fine, directionally textured finish.
5. Polished and Buffed Finish: Oil-ground, 180-grit finish followed by buffing.
6. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
7. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

B. Installation, General

1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - a. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - b. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of **1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m)**.
  - c. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed **1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m)**.
3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
4. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
5. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

C. Railing Connections

1. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
  2. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
  3. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending **2 inches (50 mm)** beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within **6 inches (150 mm)** of post.
- D. Anchoring Posts
1. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Form or core-drill holes not less than **5 inches (125 mm)** deep and **3/4 inch (20 mm)** larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material **OR** attached to post with set screws, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Leave anchorage joint exposed with **1/8-inch (3-mm)** buildup, sloped away from post **OR** anchoring material flush with adjacent surface, **as directed**.
  4. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
    - a. For aluminum pipe railings, attach posts using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
    - b. For stainless-steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to supporting surfaces.
    - c. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
  5. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.
- E. Attaching Railings
1. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
  2. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
  3. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
    - a. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**.
    - b. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
  4. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
    - a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
    - b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
    - c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
    - d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.**OR**



For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

**OR**

For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

F. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Clean aluminum and stainless steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.
2. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.
3. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
4. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

G. Protection

1. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 52 13 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 52 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 53 13 00 - GRATINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for gratings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Metal bar gratings.
  - b. Expanded-metal gratings.
  - c. Formed-metal plank gratings.
  - d. Extruded-aluminum plank gratings.
  - e. Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic gratings.
  - f. Metal frames and supports for gratings.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design gratings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Gratings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - a. Loads in subparagraphs below are examples based on the 2006 International Building Code and ASCE/SEI 7. Adjust to local Project requirements.
    - 1) Floors (light manufacturing): Uniform load of **125 lbf/sq. ft. (6.00 kN/sq. m)** or concentrated load of **2000 lbf (8.90 kN)**, whichever produces the greater stress.
    - 2) Floors (heavy manufacturing): Uniform load of **250 lbf/sq. ft. (11.97 kN/sq. m)** or concentrated load of **3000 lbf (13.40 kN)**, whichever produces the greater stress.
    - 3) Walkways and Elevated Platforms Other Than Exits: Uniform load of **60 lbf/sq. ft. (2.87 kN/sq. m)**.
    - 4) Walkways and Elevated Platforms Used as Exits: Uniform load of **100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m)**.
    - 5) Sidewalks and Vehicular Driveways, Subject to Trucking: Uniform load of **250 lbf/sq. ft. (11.97 kN/sq. m)** or concentrated load of **8000 lbf (35.60 kN)**, whichever produces the greater stress.
    - 6) Limit deflection to L/240 **OR** L/360, **as directed**, or **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**, whichever is less.
  3. Seismic Performance: Provide gratings capable of withstanding the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Formed-metal plank gratings.
  - b. Extruded-aluminum plank gratings.
  - c. Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic gratings.
  - d. Clips and anchorage devices for gratings.
  - e. Paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: Indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

4. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
6. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel sheet certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
7. Welding certificates.
8. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

E. Quality Assurance

1. Metal Bar Grating Standards: Comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual" and NAAMM MBG 532, "Heavy-Duty Metal Bar Grating Manual."
2. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

F. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with gratings by field measurements before fabrication.

G. Coordination

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for gratings, grating frames, and supports. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Ferrous Metals

1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
2. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
3. Steel Bars for Bar Gratings: ASTM A 36/A 36M or steel strip, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M or ASTM A 1018/A 1018M.
4. Wire Rod for Bar Grating Crossbars: **ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M)**.
5. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, structural steel, **Grade 30 (Grade 205)**.
6. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural quality, **Grade 33 (Grade 230)**, with **G90 (Z275)** coating.
7. Expanded-Metal Carbon Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 1.
8. Expanded-Metal Galvanized Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 2, Grade A.
9. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
10. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
11. Expanded-Metal Stainless Steel: ASTM F 1267, Class 3, made from stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.

B. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer for type of use indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
  2. Extruded Bars and Shapes: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, alloys as follows:
    - a. 6061-T6 or 6063-T6, for bearing bars of gratings and shapes.
    - b. 6061-T1, for grating crossbars.
  3. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 5052-H32.
- C. Fasteners
1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
    - a. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
    - b. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
  2. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with hex nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  3. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and, where indicated, flat washers; **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)** for bolts and **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)** for nuts, Alloy Group **1 (A1) OR Group 2 (A4), as directed**.
  4. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
    - a. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
  5. Plain Washers: Round, **ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M)**.
  6. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, **ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M)**.
  7. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
    - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1) OR Group 2 (A4), as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.
- D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy that is welded.
  2. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  3. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
    - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
  4. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
  5. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
  6. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Fabrication
1. Shop Assembly: Fabricate grating sections in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling

limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

2. Cut, drill, and punch material cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
3. Form from materials of size, thickness, and shapes indicated, but not less than that needed to support indicated loads.
4. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
5. Welding: Comply with AWS recommendations and the following:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
6. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space the anchoring devices to secure gratings, frames, and supports rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
  - a. Fabricate toeplates to fit grating units and weld to units in shop unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
Fabricate toeplates for attaching in the field.
  - b. Toeplate Height: **4 inches (100 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.

F. Metal Bar Gratings

1. Welded Steel Grating:
  - a. Bearing Bar Spacing: **7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) OR 11/16 inch (17 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) OR 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) OR 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) OR 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), as directed, o.c.**
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm) OR 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) OR 5 inches (127 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, as directed.**
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, as directed.**
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: **2 inches (51 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm), as directed, o.c.**
  - e. Grating Mark W-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STEEL: **1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.**
  - f. Grating Mark W-15-4 (1 x 1/8) STEEL: **1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.**
  - g. Grating Mark W-19-4 (1-1/4 x 3/16) STEEL: **1-1/4-by-3/16-inch (32-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.**
  - h. Grating Mark W-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: **1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.**
  - i. Grating Mark W-19-4 (2 x 1/4) STEEL: **2-by-1/4-inch (51-by-6.4-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.**
  - j. Grating Mark W-30-4 (5 x 3/8) STEEL: **5-by-3/8-inch (127-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars at 1-7/8 inches (60 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.**
  - k. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - l. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed.**
  - m. Steel Finish: Shop primed **OR** Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than **1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m)** of coated surface, **as directed.**
2. Pressure-Locked Steel Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars.



- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) OR 11/16 inch (17 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-3/16 inches (30 mm), as directed, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, as directed.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, as directed.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: 2 inches (51 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm), as directed, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 11/16 inch (18 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark P-15-4 (1-1/4 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-1/4-by-1/8-inch (32-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars at 15/16 inch (24 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars at 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) o.c., and crossbars at 4 inches (102 mm) o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - i. Traffic Surface: Plain OR Serrated OR Knurled OR Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive OR As indicated, as directed.
  - j. Steel Finish: Shop primed OR Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, as directed.
3. Riveted Steel Grating:
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1-1/8 inches (29 mm) OR 2-5/16 inches (59 mm), as directed, clear.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: 3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm) OR 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) OR 5 inches (127 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, as directed.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, as directed.
  - d. Rivet Spacing: 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) OR 5 inches (127 mm) OR 7 inches (178 mm), as directed, o.c. along bearing bar.
  - e. Grating Mark R-12-3-1/2 (1 x 1/8) STEEL: 1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm) bearing bars with 3/4-inch (19-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - f. Grating Mark R-18-7 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STEEL: 1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm) bearing bars with 1-1/8-inch (29-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 7 inches (178 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - g. Grating Mark R-37-5 (4 x 1/4) STEEL: 4-by-1/4-inch (102-by-6.4-mm) bearing bars with 2-5/16-inch (59-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - h. Grating Mark R-37-5 (5 x 3/8) STEEL: 5-by-3/8-inch (127-by-9.5-mm) bearing bars with 2-5/16-inch (59-mm) clear space between bearing bars, and rivets at 5 inches (127 mm) o.c. along bearing bar.
  - i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - j. Traffic Surface: Plain OR Serrated OR Knurled OR Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive OR As indicated, as directed.
  - k. Steel Finish: Shop primed OR Hot-dip galvanized with a coating weight of not less than 1.8 oz./sq. ft. (550 g/sq. m) of coated surface, as directed.
4. Pressure-Locked, Stainless-Steel Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars, as directed.
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: 7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) OR 11/16 inch (17 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-3/16 inches (30 mm) OR 1-3/8 inches (35 mm) OR 1-7/8 inches (48 mm) OR 2-3/8 inches (60 mm), as directed, o.c.



- b. Bearing Bar Depth: **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm) OR 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) OR 5 inches (127 mm)** OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: **2 inches (51 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) STAINLESS STEEL: **1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm)** bearing bars at **11/16 inch (18 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark P-15-2 (1 x 1/8) STAINLESS STEEL: **1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm)** bearing bars at **15/16 inch (24 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **2 inches (51 mm)** o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) STAINLESS STEEL: **1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm)** bearing bars at **1-3/16 inches (30 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark P-30-4 (3 x 3/8) STAINLESS STEEL: **3-by-3/8-inch (76-by-9.5-mm)** bearing bars at **1-7/8 inches (48 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Serrated **OR** Knurled **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - k. Finish: Mill finish **OR** Abrasive blasted **OR** Electropolished, **as directed**.
5. Pressure-Locked, Rectangular Bar Aluminum Grating: Fabricated by pressing rectangular flush-top crossbars into slotted bearing bars or swaging crossbars between bearing bars.
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: **7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) OR 11/16 inch (17.5 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-3/16 inches (30 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: **1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Thickness: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: **2 inches (51 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-7-4 (1 x 1/8) ALUMINUM: **1-by-1/8-inch (25-by-3.2-mm)** bearing bars at **7/16 inch (11 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - f. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: **1-by-3/16-inch (25-by-4.8-mm)** bearing bars at **11/16 inch (18 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - g. Grating Mark P-15-4 (1-1/2 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: **1-1/2-by-3/16-inch (38-by-4.8-mm)** bearing bars at **15/16 inch (24 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - h. Grating Mark P-19-4 (2 x 3/16) ALUMINUM: **2-by-3/16-inch (51-by-4.8-mm)** bearing bars at **1-3/16 inches (30 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
  - i. Grating Mark: As indicated.
  - j. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - k. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Class I, clear, anodized finish, **as directed**.
6. Pressure-Locked, Aluminum I-Bar Grating: Fabricated by swaging crossbars between bearing bars.
- a. Bearing Bar Spacing: **7/16 or 1/2 inch (11 or 13 mm) OR 11/16 inch (17 mm) OR 15/16 inch (24 mm) OR 1-3/16 inches (30 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.
  - b. Bearing Bar Depth: **1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Bearing Bar Flange Width: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**.
  - d. Crossbar Spacing: **2 inches (51 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.
  - e. Grating Mark P-11-4 (1 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: **1-inch (25-mm) I-bar** bearing bars at **11/16 inch (18 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.

- f. Grating Mark P-15-2 (1 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: **1-inch (25-mm)** I-bar bearing bars at **15/16 inch (24 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **2 inches (51 mm)** o.c.
- g. Grating Mark P-19-4 (1-1/2 I-Bar) ALUMINUM: **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** I-bar bearing bars at **1-3/16 inches (30 mm)** o.c., and crossbars at **4 inches (102 mm)** o.c.
- h. Grating Mark: As indicated.
- i. Traffic Surface: Plain **OR** Grooved **OR** Applied abrasive finish consisting of aluminum-oxide aggregate in an epoxy-resin adhesive **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- j. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish **OR** Class I, clear, anodized finish, **as directed**.
7. Removable Grating Sections: Fabricate with banding bars attached by welding to entire perimeter of each section. Include anchors and fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for attaching to supports.
  - a. Provide no fewer than four weld lugs for each heavy-duty grating section, with each lug shop welded to two bearing bars.
  - b. Provide no fewer than four saddle clips for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars **3/16 inch (4.8 mm)** or less in thickness and spaced **15/16 inch (24 mm)** or more o.c., with each clip designed and fabricated to fit over two bearing bars.
  - c. Provide no fewer than four weld lugs for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars **3/16 inch (4.8 mm)** or less in thickness and spaced less than **15/16 inch (24 mm)** o.c., with each lug shop welded to three or more bearing bars. Interrupt intermediate bearing bars as necessary for fasteners securing grating to supports.
  - d. Provide no fewer than four flange blocks for each section of aluminum I-bar grating, with block designed to fit over lower flange of I-shaped bearing bars.
  - e. Furnish threaded bolts with nuts and washers for securing grating to supports.
  - f. Furnish self-drilling fasteners with washers for securing grating to supports.
  - g. Furnish galvanized malleable-iron flange clamp with galvanized bolt for securing grating to supports. Furnish as a system designed to be installed from above grating by one person.
8. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.
  - a. Edge-band openings in grating that interrupt four or more bearing bars with bars of same size and material as bearing bars.
9. Do not notch bearing bars at supports to maintain elevation.
- G. Expanded-Metal Gratings
  1. Provide expanded-metal gratings in material, finish, style, size, thickness, weight, and type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for indicated applications and as needed to support indicated loads.
    - a. Material: Steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Steel Finish: Unfinished, oiled **OR** Shop primed **OR** Galvanized, **as directed**.
    - c. Stainless-Steel Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
    - d. Aluminum Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
    - e. Style Designation (for steel): 4.27 lb **OR** 3/4 number 9, **as directed**.
    - f. Style Designation (for stainless steel): 1-1/2 number 9 **OR** 3/4 number 9, **as directed**.
    - g. Size (for aluminum): 2 lb **OR** 3/4 0.188 **OR** 1-1/2 0.125, **as directed**.
    - h. Type: I, expanded **OR** II, expanded and flattened, **as directed**.
  2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations of sizes and at locations indicated. Cut openings neatly and accurately to size. Edge-band openings with bars having a thickness not less than overall grating thickness at contact points.
  3. Where gratings are pierced by pipes, ducts, and structural members, cut openings neatly and accurately to size and weld a strap collar not less than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick to the cut ends. Divide panels into sections only to extent required for installation where grating platforms and runways are to be placed around previously installed pipe, ducts, and structural members.
- H. Formed-Metal Plank Gratings
  1. C-shaped channels rolled from heavy sheet metal of thickness indicated, and punched in serrated diamond shape to produce raised slip-resistant surface and drainage holes.

- a. Channel Width: 4-3/4 inches (121 mm) OR 7 inches (178 mm) OR 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) OR 11-3/4 inches (298 mm) OR 18-3/4 inches (476 mm) OR 24 inches (610 mm) OR As indicated OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - b. Channel Depth: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm) OR As indicated OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - c. Material: 0.074-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet, shop primed OR 0.104-inch- (2.65-mm-) thick steel sheet, shop primed OR 0.079-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet OR 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet OR 0.074-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication OR 0.104-inch- (2.65-mm-) thick steel sheet, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication OR 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet OR 0.078-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet OR 0.080-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick aluminum sheet OR 0.100-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations of sizes and at locations indicated. Cut openings neatly and accurately to size. Edge-band openings with metal sheet or bars having a thickness not less than grating material.
  3. Where gratings are pierced by pipes, ducts, and structural members, cut openings neatly and accurately to size and weld a strap collar not less than 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick to the cut ends. Divide panels into sections only to extent required for installation where grating platforms and runways are to be placed around previously installed pipe, ducts, and structural members.
- I. Extruded-Aluminum Plank Gratings
1. Provide extruded-aluminum plank gratings in type, size, and finish indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for indicated applications and as needed to support indicated loads.
    - a. Type: Extruded-aluminum planks approximately 6 inches (152 mm) wide with multiple flanges approximately 1.2 inches (30 mm) o.c., acting as bearing bars connected by a web that serves as a walking surface. Top surface has raised ribs to increase slip resistance.
    - b. Depth: 1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - c. Perforations: None OR Rectangular, 19/32 by 3 inches (15 by 76 mm), with adjacent rows staggered OR 19/32 inch (15 mm) square, with adjacent rows aligned, **as directed**.
    - d. Finish: Mill finish, as fabricated.
  2. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.
- J. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings
1. Molded Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gratings: Bar gratings made by placing glass-fiber strands that have been saturated with thermosetting plastic resin in molds in alternating directions to form interlocking bars without voids and with a high resin content.
    - a. Configuration: 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1 inch (25 mm) thick OR 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) thick OR 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick OR 2-inch- (51-mm-) square mesh, 2 inches (51 mm) thick OR 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square mesh, thickness as required to comply with structural performance requirements OR As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - b. Weight: 2.5 lb/sq. ft. (12.2 kg/sq. m) OR 2.7 lb/sq. ft. (13.2 kg/sq. m) OR 3.2 lb/sq. ft. (15.6 kg/sq. m) OR 3.5 lb/sq. ft. (17.1 kg/sq. m) OR 3.7 lb/sq. ft. (18.1 kg/sq. m) OR 4.1 lb/sq. ft. (20.0 kg/sq. m) OR 5.0 lb/sq. ft. (24.4 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
    - c. Resin: Polyester OR Vinylester, **as directed**.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
      - 2) U.S.D.A. Acceptance: Accepted for food-processing applications.
    - d. Color: Beige OR Gray OR Green OR Orange OR Yellow OR Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - e. Traffic Surface: Plain, meniscus OR Applied abrasive finish OR As indicated, **as directed**.

2. Pultruded Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Gratings: Bar gratings assembled from components made by simultaneously pulling glass fibers and extruding thermosetting plastic resin through a heated die under pressure to produce a product without voids and with a high glass-fiber content.
    - a. Configuration: I4010; 1-inch (25-mm) I-bars spaced 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. (40 percent open) **OR** I6010; 1-inch (25-mm) I-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (60 percent open) **OR** I4015; 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bars spaced 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. (40 percent open) **OR** I6015; 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) I-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (60 percent open) **OR** T3320; 2-inch (51-mm) T-bars spaced 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) o.c. (33 percent open) **OR** T5020; 2-inch (51-mm) T-bars spaced 2 inches (51 mm) o.c. (50 percent open) **OR** As required to comply with structural performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - b. Weight: 2.35 lb/sq. ft. (11.5 kg/sq. m) **OR** 2.83 lb/sq. ft. (13.8 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.10 lb/sq. ft. (15.1 kg/sq. m) **OR** 3.41 lb/sq. ft. (16.6 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.10 lb/sq. ft. (20.0 kg/sq. m) **OR** 4.13 lb/sq. ft. (20.2 kg/sq. m), **as directed**.
    - c. Resin Type: Polyester **OR** Vinylester, **as directed**.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84.
      - 2) U.S.D.A. Acceptance: Accepted for food processing applications.
    - d. Color: Beige **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Orange **OR** Yellow **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - e. Traffic Surface: Plain, grooved **OR** Applied abrasive finish **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.
- K. Grating Frames And Supports
1. Frames and Supports for Metal Gratings: Fabricate from metal shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive gratings. Miter and weld connections for perimeter angle frames. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
    - a. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from same basic metal as gratings.
    - b. Equip units indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry with integrally welded anchors. Unless otherwise indicated, space anchors 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. and provide minimum anchor units in the form of steel straps 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick by 8 inches (200 mm) long.
  2. Frames and Supports for Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings: Fabricate from glass-fiber-reinforced plastic shapes of sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive gratings. Miter connections for perimeter angle frames. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware and similar items.
    - a. Unless otherwise indicated, use shapes made from same resin as gratings.
    - b. Equip units indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry with integral anchors.
  3. Galvanize steel frames and supports in the following locations:
    - a. Exterior.
    - b. Interior, where indicated.
- L. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  2. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- M. Steel Finishes
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Finish gratings, frames, and supports after assembly.
  3. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.

- a. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
4. Shop prime gratings, frames and supports not indicated to be galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Shop prime with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
5. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - c. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - d. Other Items: SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
6. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing gratings to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
2. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing gratings. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
3. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete or masonry.
4. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
  - a. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade the surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
5. Attach toeplates to gratings by welding at locations indicated.
6. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove welding flux immediately.
7. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

#### B. Installing Metal Bar Gratings

1. General: Install gratings to comply with recommendations of referenced metal bar grating standards that apply to grating types and bar sizes indicated, including installation clearances and standard anchoring details.
2. Attach removable units to supporting members with type and size of clips and fasteners indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by grating manufacturer for type of installation conditions shown.
3. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding where both materials are same; otherwise, fasten by bolting as indicated above.



- C. Installing Expanded-Metal Gratings
1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings.
  2. Place units with straight edge of bond up and with long direction of diamond-shaped openings parallel to direction of span.
  3. Attach removable units to supporting members by bolting at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
  4. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding unless otherwise indicated. Space welds at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
  5. Attach aluminum units to steel supporting members by bolting at 6-inch (150-mm) intervals.
  6. Butt edges parallel to long direction of diamond-shaped openings and weld at every second bond point. Place individual grating sections so diamonds of one piece are aligned with those of adjacent sections.
- D. Installing Metal Plank Gratings
1. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings. Use manufacturer's standard anchor clips and hold-down devices for bolted connections.
  2. Attach removable units to supporting members by bolting at every point of contact.
  3. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding unless otherwise indicated. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for size and spacing of welds.
  4. Attach aluminum units to steel supporting members by bolting at side channels at every point of contact and by bolting intermediate planks at each end on alternate sides. Bolt adjacent planks together at midspan.
- E. Installing Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Gratings
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing gratings. Use manufacturer's standard stainless-steel anchor clips and hold-down devices for bolted connections.
- F. Adjusting And Cleaning
1. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

**OR**

Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07.
  2. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 53 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 53 13 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
05 53 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 54 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 13 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 13 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 55 13 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 55 16 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications
05 55 16 00	05 51 13 00	Metal Stairs
05 55 16 00	05 51 13 00a	Fabricated Spiral Stairs
05 56 00 00	05 50 00 00	Metal Fabrications

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 58 16 00 - ORNAMENTAL FORMED METAL

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental formed metal. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Beam wraps.
  - b. Closures and trim.
  - c. Column covers.
  - d. Decorative-metal-clad, hollow-metal doors and frames.
  - e. Elevator cab and entrance finishes.
  - f. Escalator enclosures.
  - g. Filler panels at demountable partitions and/or between dissimilar construction.
  - h. Heating-cooling unit enclosures.
  - i. Lighting coves.
  - j. Metal base.
  - k. Mullion cladding.
  - l. Pipe system covers.
  - m. Pockets for window treatment.
  - n. Window stools.
  - o. Exterior fins.
  - p. Exterior formed-metal-shaped panels.
  - q. Exterior sunshades.
  - r. Exterior trellises.
  - s. Exterior window covers.
  - t. Metal shapes as part of roof construction.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design exterior decorative formed metal items, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses without exceeding the allowable design working stress of materials involved and without exhibiting permanent deformation in any components:
  - a. Wind Loads on Exterior Items: As indicated on Drawings **OR 20 lbf/sq. ft. (957 Pa) OR 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa) OR** As required to meet local Project requirements.
  - b. Live Loads on Heating-Cooling Unit Enclosures: **100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.8 kN/sq. m)** or a concentrated load of **300 lbf (1.3 kN)** on an area of **4 sq. in. (26 sq. cm)**, whichever produces the greater stress.
3. Seismic Performance: Exterior decorative formed metal items, including anchors and connections, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Component Importance Factor is 1.0.
4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.



- a. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C)**, ambient; **180 deg F (100 deg C)**, material surfaces.
5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include finishing materials.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for decorative formed metal.
  - a. Include plans, elevations, component details, and attachments to other work.
  - b. Indicate materials and profiles of each decorative formed metal member, fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on **6-inch- (150-mm-)** square Samples of metal of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Coordination Drawings: For decorative formed metal elements that house items specified in other Sections. Show dimensions of housed items, including locations of housing penetrations and attachments, and necessary clearances.
7. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, fabricator, organic-coating applicator, anodic finisher, powder-coating applicator and professional engineer.
8. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
9. Welding certificates.
10. Maintenance Data: For mirrorlike stainless-steel finish and statuary conversion coating copper-alloy finish to include in maintenance manuals.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing decorative formed metal similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
2. Organic-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying organic coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Anodic Finisher Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying anodic finishes of type indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
4. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
5. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
6. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - d. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

7. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver decorative formed metal products wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons. Remove protective coverings before they stain or bond to finished surfaces.
2. Store products on elevated platforms in a dry location.

G. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, columns, beams, and other construction contiguous with decorative formed metal by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

H. Coordination

1. Coordinate installation of anchorages for decorative formed metal items. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
2. Coordinate installation of decorative formed metal with adjacent construction to ensure that wall assemblies, flashings, trim, and joint sealants, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, and other causes.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Sheet Metal

1. General: Provide sheet metal without pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections where exposed to view on finished units.
2. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
3. Aluminum Sheet: Flat sheet complying with **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.
4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G90 (Z275)** coating, either commercial steel or forming steel.
5. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold-rolled, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed or electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed.
6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
7. Bronze Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper) or Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
8. Brass Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
9. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 temper.
10. Titanium Sheet: ASTM B 265, Grade 1.

B. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Gaskets: As required to seal joints in decorative formed metal and remain airtight **OR** weathertight, **as directed**; as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
  - a. ASTM D 1056, Type 1, Class A, grade as recommended by gasket manufacturer to obtain seal for application indicated.
  - b. Closed-cell polyurethane foam, adhesive on two sides, release paper protected.
2. Sealants, Exterior: ASTM C 920; elastomeric silicone **OR** polyurethane **OR** polysulfide, **as directed**, sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in

- decorative formed metal and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
3. Sealants, Interior: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834; of type and grade required to seal joints in decorative formed metal; and as recommended in writing by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
    - a. Use sealant that has a VOC content of not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  4. Filler Metal and Electrodes: Provide type and alloy of filler metal and electrodes as recommended by producer of metal to be welded or brazed and as necessary for strength, corrosion resistance, and compatibility in fabricated items.
    - a. Use filler metals that will match the color of metal being joined and will not cause discoloration.
  5. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
    - a. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting decorative formed metal items and for attaching them to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method, **as directed**.
    - b. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Structural Anchors: For applications indicated to comply with certain design loads, provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  7. Nonstructural Anchors: For applications not indicated to comply with design loads, provide powder-actuated fasteners **OR** metal expansion sleeve anchors **OR** metal-impact expansion anchors, **as directed**, of type, size, and material necessary for type of load and installation indicated, as recommended by manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Anchor Materials:
    - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1)** **OR** Group **2 (A4)**, **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.
  9. Sound-Deadening Materials:
    - a. Insulation: Unfaced, mineral-fiber blanket insulation complying with ASTM C 665, Type I, and passing ASTM E 136 test.
    - b. Mastic: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
  10. Backing Materials: Provided or recommended by decorative formed metal manufacturer.
  11. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive recommended by metal fabricator that will fully bond metal to metal and that will prevent telegraphing and oil canning and is compatible with substrate and noncombustible after curing.
    - a. Contact Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 80 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - b. Metal-to-Metal Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 30 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: VOC content of not more than 70 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
    - d. Special-Purpose Contact Adhesive: (Contact adhesive used to bond melamine-covered board, metal, unsupported vinyl, ultrahigh molecular weight polyethylene, and rubber or wood veneer, 1/16 inch thick or less, to any surface): 250 g/L.
  12. Isolation Coating: Manufacturer's standard alkali-resistant coating **OR** bituminous paint **OR** epoxy coating, **as directed**.

C. Paints And Coatings

1. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
2. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
3. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear, acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
4. Shop Primers: Comply with Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
6. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
7. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
8. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

D. Fabrication, General

1. Shop Assembly: Preassemble decorative formed metal items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of decorative formed metal items with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends. Fold back exposed edges of unsupported sheet metal to form a **1/2-inch- (12-mm-)** wide hem on the concealed side, or ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** and support with concealed stiffeners.
4. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide surface flatness equivalent to stretcher-leveled standard of flatness and sufficient strength for indicated use.
  - a. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
5. Build in straps, plates, and brackets as needed to support and anchor fabricated items to adjoining construction. Reinforce decorative formed metal items as needed to attach and support other construction.
6. Provide support framing, mounting and attachment clips, splice sleeves, fasteners, and accessories needed to install decorative formed metal items.
7. Where welding or brazing is indicated, weld or braze joints and seams continuously. Grind, fill, and dress to produce smooth, flush, exposed surfaces in which joints are not visible after finishing is completed.
  - a. Use welding and brazing procedures that will blend with and not cause discoloration of metal being joined.

E. Beam Wraps

1. Form beam wraps from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.





- c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - 1) Finish: No. 2B OR No. 4 OR No. 6 OR No. 7 OR No. 8, **as directed**.
- 2. Fabricate with calk stop angle to retain backer rod and sealant.

#### F. Closures And Trim

- 1. Form closures and trim from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction, with weathertight joints at exterior installations.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat OR Siliconized polyester OR High-performance organic coating OR Mill OR Clear anodic OR Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed OR Baked enamel OR Siliconized polyester OR High-performance organic coating OR Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Steel Sheet: **0.048 inch (1.21 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed OR Baked enamel OR Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - d. Closures and trim may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view and not exposed to weather.
- 2. Conceal fasteners where possible; otherwise, locate where they are as inconspicuous as possible. Size fasteners to support closures and trim, with fasteners spaced to prevent buckling or waviness in finished surfaces.
- 3. Drill and tap holes needed for securing closures and trim to other surfaces.
- 4. Incorporate gaskets where indicated or needed for concealed, continuous seal at abutting surfaces.
- 5. Miter or cope trim members at corners and reinforce with bent metal splice plates to form tight joints.

#### G. Column Covers

- 1. Spackled-Seam Type: Form column covers from **0.125-inch (3.2-mm)** aluminum, rolled to radii indicated. Taper edges of adjoining pieces of column covers, for taping and spackling, to **0.094-inch (2.4-mm)** thickness in approximately **1 inch (25 mm)** of width. Punch tapered edges for gypsum board screws at **1/2 inch (12 mm)** o.c., and mill grooves in tapered edge to improve bond with joint compound.
  - a. Support Framing: At vertical joints, provide **1-1/2-by-3-5/8-inch (38-by-89-mm)** steel channel support posts formed from **0.040-inch (1.0-mm)** galvanized steel.
  - b. Joint Treatment Materials: Provide joint treatment compounds and reinforcing tape complying with requirements in Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board."
- 2. Snap-Together Type: Form column covers to shapes indicated from metal of type and minimum thickness indicated below. Return vertical edges and bend to form hook that will engage continuous mounting clips.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat OR Siliconized polyester OR High-performance organic coating OR Mill OR Clear anodic OR Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed OR Baked enamel OR Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)** OR Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.

- 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
  - d. Bronze Sheet: **0.051 inch (1.29 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.
  - e. Brass Sheet: **0.051 inch (1.29 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: Buffed **OR** Hand-rubbed, **as directed**, finish, lacquered.
  - f. Column covers may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
  - g. Form returns at vertical joints to provide hairline V-joints.  
**OR**  
 Form returns at vertical joints to provide **1/2-inch- (12-mm-)** **OR** **3/4-inch- (18-mm-)**, **as directed**, wide reveal at joints. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals that leave reveals **1/2 inch (12 mm)** deep **OR** flush, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
 Form returns at vertical joints to accommodate backer rod and sealant.
  - h. Fabricate column covers with hairline horizontal V-joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate column covers without horizontal joints.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate column covers with horizontal butt joints, tightly fitted and backed with a sleeve for field splicing with adhesive.  
**OR**  
 Fabricate column covers with **1/2-inch- (12-mm-)** wide, **as directed**, reveals at horizontal joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals matching reveals at vertical joints. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.
  - i. Fabricate base **OR** ceiling, **as directed**, ring to match **OR** contrast with, **as directed**, column covers.
  - j. Fabricate with calk stop/stiffener ring.
  - k. Apply manufacturer's recommended sound-deadening insulation **OR** mastic, **as directed**, to backs of column covers.
- H. Decorative-Metal-Clad Doors And Frames
1. Laminate metal sheets, of type and thickness indicated below, to faces of hollow-metal doors and frames and elevator entrances where indicated:
    - a. Bronze Sheet: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, lacquered, **as directed**.
    - b. Brass Sheet: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Buffed **OR** Hand-rubbed, **as directed**, finish lacquered.
    - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.038 inch (0.95 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
    - d. Titanium Sheet: **0.025 inch (0.64 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Dull **OR** Bright, **as directed**, matte.
- I. Escalator Enclosures
1. Form escalator enclosures from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of enclosures, location of cutouts, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
    - a. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.062 inch (1.59 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
      - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
    - b. Bronze Sheet: **0.081 inch (2.05 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.



- 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.

**J. Filler Panels**

1. Form filler panels for closing ends of partition systems and for other applications indicated. Form from two sheets of metal of type and thickness indicated below, separated by channels formed from the same material, producing a panel of same thickness as partitions **OR** mullions, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated. Incorporate reveals, trim, and concealed anchorages for attaching to adjacent surfaces.
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.064 inch (1.63 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Filler panels may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
2. Fill interior of panel with sound-deadening insulation permanently attached to inside panel faces.
3. Adhesively attach gaskets to filler panel edges where they abut mullions or glazing. Use **1-inch-(25-mm-)** square material, unless otherwise indicated, set approximately **1/4 inch (6 mm)** into channeled edge of filler panel.  
**OR**  
Attach gaskets to all edges of panels that abut adjacent surfaces to form a continuous seal. Use compressible gaskets or mastic sealing tape, applied to center of panel edges to be concealed from view, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Do not mechanically fasten filler panels to mullions.

**K. Heating-Cooling Unit Enclosures**

1. Fabricate heating-cooling unit enclosures from metal of type and thickness indicated below:
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet:
    - 1) Framing: **0.108 inch (2.74 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements.
    - 2) Sills and Stools: **0.079 inch (2.01 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 3) Front Panels and Bases: **0.064 inch (1.63 mm)**.
    - 4) Concealed Panels and Trim: **0.040 inch (1.02 mm)**.
    - 5) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet:
    - 1) Framing: **0.105 inch (2.66 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Sills and Stools: **0.075 inch (1.90 mm)** **OR** Thickness required to comply with performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 3) Front Panels and Bases: **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)**.
    - 4) Concealed Panels and Trim: **0.036 inch (0.91 mm)**.
    - 5) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
2. Weld seams and connections unless otherwise indicated or unless other methods are necessary for access to heating and cooling equipment.
3. Incorporate stiffeners or laminated backing using noncombustible materials as needed for strength and rigidity.
  - a. Fill space between stiffeners with sound-deadening insulation attached to face sheet with insulation adhesive unless otherwise indicated.  
**OR**  
Coat concealed faces of metal panels more than **6 inches (150 mm)** wide with a heavy coating of sound-deadening mastic applied at the minimum rate of **20 sq. ft./gal. (0.5 sq. m/L)**.

4. Provide louvers and grilles of size, type, and materials indicated.
    - a. For removable grilles, use modular units with recessed openings formed into surfaces of enclosures and without blank filler panels between grilles, so face panels and stools are continuous. Fabricate removable grilles and openings to precise tolerances to produce well-fitted assemblies free of warp or rattle, with grilles supported continuously along parallel edges and with tops flush with top of enclosure.
  5. Incorporate removable tops and fronts where indicated or needed for access to heating-cooling units and to piping, ductwork, controls, and electrical service, with panels and openings as follows:
    - a. Fabricate with a fitting tolerance of not less than **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** and not more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** at each edge, with face of panels flush with adjoining fixed surfaces of enclosure.
    - b. Form panels for easy removal without interfering with adjoining construction or furniture. Hold panels in place with concealed clips and hardware that prevent warp and rattle.
  6. Incorporate hinged access panels in enclosures for access to heating-cooling unit controls, as either separate elements or integrated with grille openings, as indicated or needed.
  7. Coordinate construction, configuration, and dimensions of enclosures with those of heating-cooling units. Provide support for heating-cooling units and controls where indicated. Provide blind knockouts and supports for piping, ductwork, control lines, electrical conduit, and wiring where indicated or needed.
  8. Locate fixed surfaces of enclosure to coincide precisely with window mullions and partition system terminations. Provide closures at ends of units, at recessed openings in base of units, and at other locations where needed to conceal unfinished wall or floor surfaces, piping, conduit, ductwork, or heating-cooling units.
    - a. Provide built-in partitions (bulkheads) within enclosures between heating-cooling units, located to coincide with mullions and partition system terminations. Seal partitions to faces of enclosures with compressible gaskets or mastic sealing tape, and cover both sides of partitions with sound-deadening insulation attached to partitions with insulation adhesive.
- L. Lighting Coves
1. Form lighting coves from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of coves, location of cutouts for electrical wiring, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
    - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
    - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
    - c. Steel Sheet: **0.048 inch (1.21 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
    - d. Fabricate light coves with hairline butt joints **OR** tapered edges for taping and spackling, **as directed**.
    - e. Provide mitered corners, factory welded with backplates **OR** factory endcaps, **as directed**.
    - f. Lighting coves may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
- M. Metal Base
1. Form metal base from metal of type and thickness indicated below:
    - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
    - b. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)**.
      - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

N. Mullion Cladding

1. Form mullion cladding from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Fabricate to fit tightly to adjoining construction.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.

O. Pipe System Covers

1. Form pipe system covers from metal of type and thickness indicated below. Coordinate size of covers, location of cutouts for piping, and method of attachment to adjoining construction.
  - a. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - b. Steel Sheet: **0.048 inch (1.21 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.

P. Pockets For Window Treatment

1. Form pockets from metal of type and thickness indicated below, with end closures. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods with window treatment equipment, window frames, ceiling suspension system, and other related construction to produce a coordinated, closely fitting assembly.
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Steel Sheet: **0.048 inch (1.21 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - d. Pockets for window treatment may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
2. Reinforce pockets for attaching window treatment equipment and hardware, or increase metal thickness.
3. Divide continuous pockets with built-in partitions located to separate adjoining drapery and blind units, to coincide with window mullions, and to receive filler panels at ends of partitions.

Q. Window Stools

1. Form window stools from metal of type and thickness indicated below, with end closures:
  - a. Aluminum Sheet: **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Mill **OR** Clear anodic **OR** Color anodic, **as directed**.
  - b. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: **0.052 inch (1.32 mm)**.
    - 1) Finish: Factory primed **OR** Baked enamel **OR** Siliconized polyester **OR** High-performance organic coating **OR** Powder coat, **as directed**.
  - c. Stainless-Steel Sheet: **0.050 inch (1.27 mm) OR 1.3 mm, as directed**.
    - 1) Finish: No. 2B **OR** No. 4 **OR** No. 6 **OR** No. 7 **OR** No. 8, **as directed**.
  - d. Bronze Sheet: **0.051 inch (1.29 mm)**.

- 1) Finish: Buffed finish, lacquered **OR** Hand-rubbed finish, lacquered **OR** Statuary conversion coating over satin finish, **as directed**.
  2. Weld seams at end closures.  
**OR**  
Braze seams at end closures.
  3. Apply sound-deadening insulation **OR** mastic, **as directed**, to underside of window stools.
- R. General Finish Requirements
1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  2. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.
  3. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  4. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Finish items indicated on Drawings after assembly.
  6. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- S. Aluminum Finishes
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
  2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  3. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
    - a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  5. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **0.8 mil (0.02 mm)** for topcoat.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  6. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

    - b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

T. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finishes

1. Preparing Galvanized Items for Factory Priming: Thoroughly clean galvanized decorative formed metal of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
2. Preparing Galvanized Items for Factory Finishing: Clean surfaces with nonpetroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.
3. Repairing Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
4. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
5. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" OR "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)** for topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of **2 mils (0.05 mm)**.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. Siliconized-Polyester Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **0.8 mil (0.02 mm)** for topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
9. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

U. Steel Sheet Finishes

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Pretreatment: Immediately after cleaning, apply a conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.



3. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  4. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of **2 mils (0.05 mm)**.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  5. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- V. Stainless-Steel Finishes
1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
  2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
    - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.
  4. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
  5. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
  6. Satin, Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
  7. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8 finish.
  8. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
- W. Copper-Alloy Finishes
1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system established for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
  2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
  3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
  4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
  5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
  6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
  7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
  8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
    - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
  9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).

- a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
11. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish, Lacquered: M31-C55-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide; Coating: clear, organic, air drying, as specified below) , with color matching the Owner's sample:
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.

X. Titanium Finishes

1. General: Fabricate items from finished titanium sheet, taking care not to damage finish during fabrication. Protect finish as needed during fabrication by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering.
2. Dull Matte Finish: Pickled and annealed.
3. Bright Matte Finish: Vacuum annealed.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of decorative formed metal.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Installation

1. Locate and place decorative formed metal items level and plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install decorative formed metal.
  - a. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
2. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where needed to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
3. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.
4. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, insulation, sealants, and flashings, as the Work progresses, to make exterior decorative formed metal items weatherproof.
5. Install concealed gaskets, joint fillers, sealants, and insulation, as the Work progresses, to make interior decorative formed metal items soundproof or lightproof as applicable to type of fabrication indicated.
6. Corrosion Protection: Apply bituminous paint or other permanent separation materials on concealed surfaces where metals would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials that are incompatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either material or finish.
7. Install decorative-formed-metal-clad doors and frames to comply with requirements specified in Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors And Frames".
8. Apply joint treatment at joints of spackled-seam-type metal column covers. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board".

C. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Unless otherwise indicated, clean metals by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and drying with soft cloths.

2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.
3. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
4. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
5. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

D. Protection

1. Protect finishes of decorative formed metal items from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Final Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 58 16 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 58 16 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 59 65 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 73 23 00 - MISCELLANEOUS ORNAMENTAL METALS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of Trap Pit Doors; Access to Pipe Trenches; Subway Type Gratings; Manhole, Catch and Retention Basins, Hoods; Iron Fences and Railways, Wicket Guard and Fence; Pipe Railings; Chimney Caps; Cast Iron Sills; Expansion Joints; Chimney Cleanout Doors; Ladders; Ladder Rungs; Retractable Ladders and Balconies, Staircases and Counter-Balanced Stairs; Vent Back Frames in Exhaust Opening of Toilet Rooms; Grilles in Exhaust Openings in Toilet Rooms; Access Doors, Dressing Compartment Seat Frames; Stainless Steel; Lumber Rack; Ganging Rods; Auditorium Loudspeaker Grilles; Bronze Saddles (Exterior), Bronze Expansion Saddles (Interior); Bronze Pipe and Tubes; Aluminum Hat and Coat Racks and Hook Strips; Aluminum Angles for Showers; Aluminum Railings; Miscellaneous Ornamental Metal Work; Hardware.

#### B. Submittals/Shop Drawings

1. Show all locations, markings, quantities, materials, sizes and shapes.
2. Indicate all methods of connecting, anchoring, fastening, bracing and attaching work of other trades.
3. Do not fabricate until approval of Shop Drawing.
4. Product Design Data: For each type of product indicated in 1.2.

#### C. Quality Assurance

1. Retractable Ladders, Balconies, and Staircases: For use as a supplemental escape device up to 30 feet (9144 mm), comply with requirements of:
  - a. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for use as a supplementary means of egress; provide UL listing data.
  - b. ICC International Building Code.
  - c. ICC International Fire Code.
2. For use as a mechanical equipment ladder, comply with requirements of ICC International Mechanical Code.
3. Provide Evaluation Reports showing compliance.

#### D. Product Handling

1. Before shipment to the job, all finished shall be adequately protected for transporting and erecting periods.
2. Replace damaged items with the approval of the Owner and at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Frame and Covers

1. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, 6063-T6.
2. Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy C 38500.
3. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167, Type 304.

#### B. Gratings

1. Aluminum Grating, Banding, and Kick Plate: Rectangular, pressure-locked bearing bars, ASTM B 221, 6063-T6, mill finish.
2. Steel Grating:
3. Grating: Rectangular, welded, ASTM A 569.
4. Bands and Kick Plate: ASTM A 36.
5. Finish: Galvanized, ASTM A 386, or painted with fabricator's standard shop primer.

- C. Castings (Frames, Covers, Steps, and Sills)
1. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 30. Malleable Iron, ASTM A 47.
  2. Steel: ASTM A 36; Galvanized, ASTM A 386.
  3. Aluminum: ASTM B 26, 356-T6.
  4. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 743, Grade CF8 or CF20
  5. Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy C38500 and ASTM B 135, Alloy C2800.
  6. Corner Protection: Steel angles with anchors, ASTM A 36; Galvanized, ASTM A 386.
  7. Ventilation Boxes: Extruded Aluminum, ASTM B 221, 6063-T6.
- D. Pipe and Tube Railings and Ladders
1. Post and rails: Steel pipe, ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B, Schedule 40.
  2. Bars and Rungs: ASTM A 36.
  3. Finish: Galvanized, ASTM A 386 or shop primer, Fed. Spec. TT-P-86, Type I or II; TT-P-615, Type I, II, or V; TT-P-645.
  4. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, 6063-T6, T-52.
  5. Steel: ASTM A 36, A 500, A 501.
  6. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 544, Grade MT304; ASTM A 312, Grade TP304; ASTM A 167, Type 304.
- E. Retractable Ladders and Balconies
1. Ladders
    - a. Maintenance-free, aluminum and stainless steel construction.
    - b. Rungs: Extruded aluminum, 6005-T5 and 6005-T6 alloy.
    - c. Stiles: Extruded aluminum, 6063-T6 alloy.
    - d. Support 1,000 pounds (454 kg) per rung individually and 200 pounds per 6 feet (90 kg per 1.83 m) of length simultaneously.
    - e. Ground support of gravity loads; building wall support for lateral stability.
    - f. Provide deployment handle at each access level.
    - g. Provide removable deployment handle at lower access point; provide locking hub and padlock.
    - h. Provide dual safety rails at ladders with access from both sides.
    - i. Provide reinforcement channel where ladders extend beyond wall support, such as at parapets and roof tops, or where ladder spans open areas in excess of 5 feet (1524 mm) between attachment points.
    - j. Height: As directed.
  2. Balconies
    - a. Aluminum, 6063-T6 alloy.
    - b. Provide aluminum access balconies at locations as directed.
    - c. Size: As directed.
    - d. Railing: 42-inch (1,067 mm) rail 2 sides, restraining chain 1 side.
    - e. Platform Capacity: 100 pounds per square foot (488 kg/square m), unless directed otherwise.
    - f. Railing Capacity: Uniform load of not less than 50 pounds per lineal foot (74.5 kg per lineal m), unless directed otherwise.
    - g. Balustrade: Not less than 36 inches (914 mm) high.
    - h. Pickets and Rails: Configured not to pass a sphere 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter. Exception; triangular openings formed by riser, tread, and rail, configured not to pass a sphere 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
  3. Factory Finish: Clear anodized **OR** Manufacturer's standard shop-applied enamel **OR** As selected from manufacturer's standard colors **OR** Match paint sample supplied by the Owner, **as directed**.
- F. Staircases and Counter-Balanced Stairs
1. Provide aluminum staircases, platforms, and counter-balanced stairs at locations indicated on the drawings.
  2. Platform Capacity: 100 pounds per square foot (488 kg/square m), unless directed otherwise.

3. Railing Capacity: Uniform load of not less than 50 pounds per lineal foot (74.5 kg per lineal m), unless directed otherwise.
4. Required Width: Minimum 36 inches (914 mm).
5. Stair Rise: 4 inches (102 mm) minimum, 10 inches (254 mm) maximum.
6. Treads: 10 inches (254 mm) in depth.
7. Balustrade: Not less than 36 inches (914 mm) high.
8. Pickets and Rails: Configured not to pass a sphere 4 inches (101.6 mm) in diameter.
  - a. Exception: Triangular openings formed by riser, tread, and rail configured not to pass a sphere 6 inches (152.4 mm) in diameter.
  - b. Rail Projection: 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) maximum from each side of stairway into required width.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Trap Pit Doors

1. Furnish and set trap pit doors and frames flush with the finish floors, pavement, grade or as otherwise required. Doors for interior pits shall be of 1/4 inch checkered steel plate set in angle frames having mitered and welded corners and angle seat for covers, provided with bronze lifting handles. Doors and frames for exterior pits shall be of cast iron and hinged with 3-1/2 x 5 inch extra heavy bronze hinges. All doors shall be provided with locking devices.

#### B. Access to Pipe Trenches

1. Checkered or flat steel plate access doors to pipe trenches below cellar floors shall be made in accordance with detail. Include angle iron frame, anchors, hardware, etc., complete. The steel plate access doors shall be flush with the adjoining floors. Hinges shall be approved bronze flush type. Provide bronze lift handle and approved locking device for each access door.
2. Doors shall be covered with resilient tile where required. Where cement floors occur, top of steel cover shall be flush, but depressed for other finishes as required by the thickness of floor finish.  
**See other Sections of Specifications for Finish.**
3. All doors under this section unless otherwise specified, shall be secured in place with bronze square shank locking device and brass deck plate with slot and socket holes. Furnish six (6) wrenches for brass deck plates for each different size of locking device.

#### C. Manhole, Catch and Retention Basins, Hoods

1. Furnish cast iron manhole covers, catch basin covers and cast iron hoods for masonry, manholes, catch basins and retention basins furnished and installed under Division 22 OR Division 28.
2. Manhole covers and frames for catch basins shall be of cast iron, with locking device and key, equal to Flockhart Company No. 35-139.
3. Covers and frames for catch basins shall be of cast iron, with locking device and key, equal to Flockhart Company No. 35-328.
4. Covers and frames for catch basins shall be of cast iron, with locking device and key, equal to Flockhart Company No. 18-919.
5. Cast iron hoods for catch basins and manhole shall be equal to Flockhart Company pattern number indicated.

#### D. Iron Fences and Railings

1. Furnish and erect iron railings, fences, and gates. Materials of fences and railings shall be medium steel, shapes as required.
2. Posts and braces shall be leaded into cast-iron shoes, which shall be embedded in the concrete pavements or blocks. Center picket of each panel of 6 foot fence shall be leaded 2 inches into curb or pavement. Fences and railings on stone copings, platforms, steps or check blocks shall be leaded into sockets cut in same. Gates shall be hung with hinges. Provide all hasps required for locking gates in both open and closed positions. Double and quadruple gates shall also be furnished with sliding lever bolts and galvanized, malleable iron catches having pipe anchor and



drain embedded in concrete. Gates shall be locked open or closed with Type C Padlocks. Rivet the padlocks to the gates as required. Single gates require 1 padlock; double gates, 2 padlocks; quadruple gates, 4 padlocks.

3. Furnish cast-iron shoes for fence posts and set them at the proper time so that they may be cast into the concrete footing and pavements with top flush with finished surfaces.
4. Folding swing gates shall have fast pin to hold in closed position.
5. Unless otherwise required center rails and side rails on outside steps shall be made of 1-1/4 inch solid posts with 2-1/2 inch by 1/2 inch horizontal flats spaced as required, with top rail of two bronze, aluminum or steel channels and steel stiffener. Post at upper level of center railings shall be of malleable cast iron of height required, tapering from 1-3/4 inches at bottom to 1-1/4 inches at top, with finial. All posts shall be leaded-in 4 inches in cheeks and steps.

E. Wicket Guard and Fence

1. Furnish and install wicket guard fence 12 inches high constructed of 1/2 inch round bent steel rods welded together, to form a continuous wicket fence around the concrete curbing at seeded and planted areas. This guard fence shall be set in concrete footing specified under Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".

F. Pipe Railings

1. Furnish and erect wrought iron or steel pipe railings and hand rails together with all fittings, flanges, collars, brackets, bolts, etc. of sizes required, all put together and secured in place in a thorough manner. All pipe railings shall be welded assembly, with continuous "V" joints, full thickness of pipe wall, welds filled solid and ground smooth. All radii, curves, sweeps, bends, etc., as indicated on details for pipe fitting assembly shall be maintained in the welded assembly. For pipe handrails in connection with stairs, see Division 05 Section "Pipe And Tube Railings".
2. Center pipe rails and free standing end pipe railings on outside concrete steps shall be made of 1-1/2 inch nominal diameter pipe and have pipe uprights with cast-iron collar and cap fittings secured in place with tap screws. The uprights shall be leaded-in pipe sleeves. Upright at upper level of center radii shall be of 2 inch nominal diameter pipe with approved cap.
3. Handrails at side of outside steps against walls shall be 1 inch nominal diameter pipes, with returns against wall at ends, and supported on galvanized cast-iron brackets and wall plates same as specified for egress stair.
4. Handrails at side of outside steps against iron fences shall be 1 inch nominal diameter, with returns at ends and supported on wrought iron brackets and plates. Handrails at area walls shall be 1-1/4 inch nominal diameter.
5. All outside pipe railings and handrails including fittings, etc., shall be galvanized after fabrication.
6. Furnish the combined pipe sleeve and base plate and turn over same for setting in concrete work.
7. Exterior barrier rails (at areaways, etc.) shall be of 1-1/2 inch nominal diameter pipe; interior barrier rails (at pits, changes in floor levels, etc.) shall be 1-1/4 inch nominal diameter.

G. Chimney Caps

1. Chimneys shall be provided with cast-iron caps.

H. Cast-Iron Sills

1. Furnish cast-iron sills for exterior doors of bulkheads, etc. The sills shall be set in a bed of cement and be substantially secured with bolts or expansion bolts.

I. Expansion Joints

1. Furnish and install all rolled steel members with required anchors at structural expansion joints through slabs. Items cast in concrete shall be furnished when required for setting. Provide bronze plates as required; top surfaces of plates shall be "BRONZOGRIT" or approved equal.

J. Chimney Cleanout Doors

1. Furnish to the mason proper cleanout doors of sizes indicated for chimneys, of 10 gauge steel plate and steel flats. The doors shall have angle-iron frames with strap anchors. Hang door with two 4 x 4 inch steel hinges and secure door with a latch.
- K. Ladders
1. Furnish and set ladders 18 inches wide, constructed with steel plate stringers, 3/4 inch diameter single rung treads let in and welded to stringers, angle and flat braces, and when required shall have pipe hand rails all riveted together. Secure ladders with angle clip and expansion bolts at top, bottom and elsewhere as required.
- L. Ladder Rungs
1. When ladder rungs are indicated built into mason work, furnish to the mason 5/8 inch galvanized wrought-iron ladder rungs.
  2. Ladder rungs in concrete shall be 15 inches wide and shall be built into concrete every 14 inches in height projecting into walls 4 inches on each side.
  3. Ladder rungs in brickwork of chimney shall be 18 inches wide, and shall be built into brickwork every 5 courses in height, project 8 inches beyond face of wall and continue 8 inches into wall with a 2 inch return. First rung shall start 10 feet above roof level at chimney.
- M. Retractable Ladders, Staircases and Counter-Balanced Stairs
1. Fabrication: Shop fabricate and assemble to maximum extent practicable for installation on-site with minimal labor.
  2. Accessories
    - a. Provide brackets, spacers, etc, necessary for a complete installation.
      - 1) Brackets: 6063-T6 aluminum alloy.
      - 2) Pivot Pins, Springs, Masonry Bolts, Fasteners, and Base Plates: Stainless steel.
    - b. Provide removable deployment handle at lower access point of retractable ladders.  
**OR**  
Provide removable deployment handle at lower access point of retractable ladders and locking hub and padlock.
    - c. Fasteners for securement to wood construction: Stainless steel lag bolts; 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) diameter, 4-inches (100 mm) minimum embedment.
    - d. Fasteners for securement to steel construction: Stainless steel bolts, nuts, and washers; 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) diameter.
  3. Footing: Install concrete footing in accordance with manufacturer's requirements, and in compliance with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete".
  4. Install components in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions.
  5. Adjust And Clean
    - a. Adjust operating parts for smooth deployment and storage.
    - b. Remove scraps and debris; leave project site in clean and orderly condition.
    - c. Instruct Owner's representative in proper operation.
- N. Vent Back Frames in Exhaust Opening of Toilet Rooms
1. Furnish and install 12 gauge bent steel frames in exhaust openings in partitions of toilet rooms. Frames shall be set plumb in partitions to receive the vent grilles. Baffle plates are not required.
- O. Grilles in Exhaust Openings
1. Furnish and set in frames at exhaust openings in toilet partitions, approved pressed steel bar type grilles with baked on primer, as manufactured by Tuttle and Bailey, Catalog No. T-80, or approved equal. Grilles shall be secured with tap screws to the frame. The bars of grilles shall be fixed and of rigid construction and shall be set at the angle required. Submit sample of grille for approval.
  2. Furnish and install individually adjustable shutters attached to grille frames, in certain toilets where required. Grilles shall be bar type, equal to Register and Grille Mfg. Co. No. 3311 or Tuttle and Bailey No. A-77.





3. In general, vent openings are provided in partitions of all toilet rooms back of water closets; however, certain smaller toilets, are mechanically vented by means of vent openings in ceiling or in partitions close to ceilings.

P. Access Doors

1. Access doors and frames that are to be furnished and installed as part of the work of this Contract shall be furnished and installed under Division 08 Section "Access Doors And Frames".
2. Access doors and frames that are to be furnished and installed in metal lath and plaster walls and ceilings as part of the work of this Contract shall be constructed of high grade sheet steel with 16 gauge frames and 14 gauge doors. Doors shall be equipped with concealed hinges and cylinder locks all keyed alike (furnish six (6) keys); doors in ceilings may have screwdriver operated type of lock. Doors shall have one piece plain trim set flush with finish surface. Stock doors manufactured by Columbia Metal Product Co., Karp Metal Products Co., or approved equal complying with the specifications, may be accepted. Submit sample for approval if not already approved.

Q. Dressing Compartment Seat Frames

1. Where seats are indicated in dressing compartments, furnish and set 1/4 x 1-1/2 inch flat galvanized bent steel brackets.

R. Stainless Steel

1. Stainless Steel and Cabinet Top Supports: Furnish and install adjustable, stainless steel tubing forming legs to support the tops of sinks and cabinets together with the stainless steel screens, collars, plates, etc., of sizes required. The screens shall be wrapped around and tap screwed to the legs of sink tubing.
2. Stainless Steel Jambs at Dressing Compartments: Furnish and install 14 gauge stainless steel tube jambs at doors to dressing compartments adjoining shower stalls. These jambs shall be anchored to the structural facing tile partition with 14 gauge stainless steel straps.
3. Package Slide: Furnish and install stainless steel half round strips and anchors (type 304 (18-8)) for package slide to Receiving Room. Strips shall be plug welded to anchors.
4. Angle and Channel Guards: Furnish and install angle and channel guards in the kitchen and auxiliary areas. Guards shall be 12 gauge stainless steel satin finish of length and dimensions required, secured in place with oval head stainless steel bolts in expansion shields.
5. Stainless Steel Shelf: Furnish and install stainless steel shelves complete with brackets, of gauges required, generally in helps' locker room, over sinks in locker rooms, in eraser cleaning closets, art room and medical office.  
Note: All stainless steel shall be chrome nickel cold rolled alloy designated by trade name Stainless Steel 18-8, No. 4 Finish; it shall contain a minimum of 18% chromium, 8% nickel, and not more than 0.12% carbon, non-magnetic (straight chrome iron not accepted).

S. Lumber Rack

1. Furnish a lumber rack for the woodworking room and general crafts shop, constructed with angles and provided with chains and hoods as required.

T. Hanging Rods

1. Furnish and erect hanging rods of diameters required of wrought-iron or steel pipe supported on approved hangers, brackets or flanges cabinets, closets and elsewhere throughout the building where required.

U. Auditorium Loudspeaker Grilles

1. Furnish and install complete, two (2) loudspeaker grilles in Auditorium. Grilles shall be equal to Blumcraft Deluxe-Line. Grille facets shall have a bronze anodized finish on faces and brushed finish on backs. Supporting bars #258 to have dull black anodized finish.
2. Frame of grilles shall be equal to Blumcraft's trim section WF-4, anodized black, and be secured to masonry with stainless steel screws (slack painted heads) in expansion shields.

3. Sub-frame shall be formed from 1/4" thick aluminum bar with corners mitered, continuously welded and ground smooth and firmly secured in place. Provide continuous piano hinge with 3/16" stop angle.
  4. The inside surface of grille shall be entirely covered with black grille cloth equal to "Acoustcloth", as manufactured by Merlang or "Lumite", as manufactured by Chicopee. Grille cloth shall be fastened in place. Submit samples for approval.
  5. Include continuous angles and all other angles, plates, bars and reinforcing channels, all as required.
  6. Contractor is to verify all dimensions at job before fabricating any of the work.
  7. Loudspeaker enclosure and sound absorbing blanket will be furnished and installed as part of the work of Division 27 Section "Public Address And Mass Notification Systems".
- V. Bronze Saddles (Exterior)
1. All exterior door saddles shall be of bronze unless otherwise indicated. White bronze shall be provided for aluminum doors. Finish shall be "Bronzogrit" or an approved equal.
- W. Bronze Expansion Saddles (Interior)
1. Furnish and install bronze expansion saddles generally in the following areas: doors opening off auditorium platform or stage; gymnasium; dance room. None required in store room. Saddles shall consist of bronze flats, plates, and angle clips. Installation shall allow for 3/4 inch expansion. Exposed surfaces of plates and flats shall be "Bronzogrit" or approved equal.
- X. Bronze Pipe and Tubes
1. Furnish 1 inch square bronze tubes in toilet rooms and pipe spaces. Tubes shall be turned over to mason for installation. Tubes shall be of proper length (not less than full thickness of wall) and provided with bronze wire bars at one end.
- Y. Aluminum Hat and Coat Racks and Hook Strips
1. Furnish and install hat and coat racks and hook strips in locations required. Racks and hook strips shall be constructed of aluminum channels, flats and tubing of sizes required, toggle or expansion bolted to walls to suit conditions. Aluminum shall have aluminite finish.
  2. Submit shop drawings for approval.
- Z. Aluminum Angles for Showers
1. Furnish and install aluminum angle bracing as required. Angles shall have aluminite finish. Submit shop drawings for approval prior to fabrication.
- AA. Aluminum Railings
1. Center and side rails and wall handrails shall be of aluminum when required. Posts and horizontal members shall be solid. Posts shall be 1-1/2 inches square, extend through intermediate rails, secured to top rail with 3/8 inch stud bolts; posts at upper level shall be of height indicated, tapering from 1-3/4 inches at bottom to 1-1/4 inches at top, with finial. Posts shall be solidly set with molten sulphur or other approved non-electrolytic material into a combination 1/4 inch pipe sleeve and base plate welded to same, sleeve shall be welded to stair stringer or tread to suit condition, or set in concrete sub-stair.
  2. Exterior Aluminum Railings shall be constructed required. Aluminum posts shall be solid 1-1/2 inches square, extend through bottom rail, let into top rail and continuously welded. Center railing shall have tapered aluminum post of size and taper as required for "center rail". Rails shall be formed to shape indicated from, 3" x 1" solid aluminum flats with rounded edges.
  3. Roof railing shall be as required.
  4. Grab bars in toilets where indicated.
  5. All aluminum railings shall have finish equal to 204-C2 Aluminum Co. of America.
- BB. Miscellaneous Ornamental Metal Work
1. Include all other ornamental metal work. Submit shop drawings for approval.



CC. Hardware

1. All hardware specified under Ornamental Metal Work shall match the approved samples in the office of the Owner. One sample of each item shall be submitted for approval of the Owner.
2. The key to all locks furnished under Ornamental Metal Work shall be provided with brass tags attached to the key with a strong metal ring or link and be similar to the tags specified under Hardware. The tags shall have stamped upon them the letters the Owner and the name or number of the room, closets, etc., for which the keys are intended.
3. All type C padlocks mentioned in this Section will be furnished as specified under Hardware. The Contractor for Ornamental Metal Work shall rivet padlock chains referred to in this Section in place.

DD. Painting

1. All Ornamental Metal Work and cast-iron work excepting cast-iron work to be set in concrete and galvanized items shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted one shop coat specified in Division 07.
2. After installation, all damaged surfaces of shop coat and all rough surfaces shall be scraped or sanded smooth and then touched up.

END OF SECTION 05 73 23 00

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 05 73 23 00a - ORNAMENTAL RAILINGS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for ornamental railings. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Aluminum decorative railings with stainless-steel, wire-rope guard infill, **as directed**.
  - b. Copper-alloy decorative railings.
  - c. Stainless-steel decorative railings with stainless-steel, wire-rope guard infill, **as directed**.
  - d. Steel and iron decorative railings with stainless-steel, wire-rope guard infill, **as directed**.
  - e. Glass- and plastic-supported railings.
  - f. Post-supported railings with glass infill.
  - g. Illuminated decorative railings.

#### C. Definitions

1. Railings: Guards, handrails, and similar devices used for protection of occupants at open-sided floor areas, pedestrian guidance and support, visual separation, or wall protection.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
  - a. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
  - b. Copper Alloys: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
  - c. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
  - d. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
  - e. Glass: 25 percent of mean modulus of rupture (50 percent probability of breakage), as listed in "Mechanical Properties" in AAMA's Aluminum Curtain Wall Series No. 12, "Structural Properties of Glass."
    - 1) Requirement above is based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC) for safety factor of 4.
3. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - a. Loads below are based on the 2006 International Building Code (IBC).
    - 1) Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
      - a) Uniform load of **50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m)** applied in any direction.
      - b) Concentrated load of **200 lbf (0.89 kN)** applied in any direction.
      - c) Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
    - 2) Infill of Guards:
      - a) Concentrated load of **50 lbf (0.22 kN)** applied horizontally on an area of **1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m)**.
      - b) Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
    - 3) Glass-Supported Railings: Support each section of top rail by a minimum of three glass panels or by other means so top rail will remain in place if any one panel fails.



4. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  - a. Temperature Change: **120 deg F (67 deg C)**, ambient; **180 deg F (100 deg C)**, material surfaces.
5. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's product lines of railings assembled from standard components.
  - b. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
3. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. For illuminated railings, include wiring diagrams and roughing-in details.
4. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - a. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
  - b. Each type of glass required.
  - c. Fittings and brackets.
  - d. Welded connections.
  - e. Brazed connections.
  - f. Assembled Samples of railing systems, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Show method of finishing members at intersections. Samples need not be full height.
5. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
6. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer **OR** testing agency, **as directed**.
7. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
8. Welding certificates.
9. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including structural analysis, preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - a. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by the Owner, except with the Owner's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to the Owner for review.
3. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - b. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - c. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

4. Safety Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark glass with certification label of the SGCC **OR** the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction **OR** manufacturer, **as directed**. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
5. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
6. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Project Conditions

1. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

H. Coordination And Scheduling

1. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
2. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
3. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not suit structural performance requirements.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Metals, General

1. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
2. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Same metal and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Provide cast-metal brackets with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
  - b. Provide either formed- or cast-metal brackets with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
  - c. Provide formed-steel brackets with predrilled hole for bolted anchorage and with snap-on cover that matches rail finish and conceals bracket base and bolt head.
  - d. Provide extruded-aluminum brackets with interlocking pieces that conceal anchorage. Locate set screws on bottom of bracket.

B. Aluminum

1. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with strength and durability properties for each aluminum form required not less than that of alloy and temper designated below.
2. Extruded Bars and Shapes, Including Extruded Tubing: **ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M)**, Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - a. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe unless otherwise indicated.
4. Drawn Seamless Tubing: **ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M)**, Alloy 6063-T832.
5. Plate and Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 5005-H32 **OR** Alloy 6061-T6, **as directed**.
6. Die and Hand Forgings: **ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M)**, Alloy 6061-T6.
7. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.
8. Perforated Metal: Aluminum sheet, **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, Alloy 6061-T6, **0.063 inch (1.60 mm)** thick, with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** holes **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** o.c. in staggered rows.

9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, **2-inch (50-mm)** woven-wire mesh, made from **0.162-inch (4.1-mm)** nominal diameter wire complying with **ASTM B 211 (ASTM B 211M)**, Alloy 6061-T94.

C. Copper Alloys

1. Copper and Copper Alloys, General: Provide alloys indicated and with temper to suit application and forming methods, but with strength and stiffness not less than Temper H01 (quarter hard) for plate, sheet, strip, and bars and Temper H55 (light drawn) for tube and pipe.
2. Extruded Shapes, Bronze: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
3. Extruded Shapes, Brass: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C36000 (free-cutting brass).
4. Extruded Shapes, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 249/B 249M, Alloy UNS No. C79600.
5. Seamless Pipe, Bronze: ASTM B 43, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
6. Seamless Tube, Bronze: **ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M)**, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
7. Seamless Tube, Brass: **ASTM B 135 (ASTM B 135M)**, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
8. Seamless Tube, Copper: **ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M)**, Alloy UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high residual phosphorous copper).
9. Castings, Bronze: Composition bronze castings complying with ASTM B 62, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (85-5-5-5 or No. 1 composition commercial red brass) or sand castings complying with ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).
10. Castings, Brass: Sand castings complying with ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C85200 (high-copper yellow brass).
11. Castings, Copper: ASTM B 824, with a minimum of 99.9 percent copper.
12. Castings, Nickel Silver: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97300 (12 percent leaded nickel silver).
13. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Bronze: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
14. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Brass: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000 (cartridge brass, 70 percent copper).
15. Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars; Copper: ASTM B 152/B 152M, Alloy UNS No. C11000 (electrolytic tough pitch copper) or Alloy UNS No. C12200 (phosphorous deoxidized, high-residual phosphorous copper).

D. Stainless Steel

1. Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304 **OR** Grade MT 316 **OR** Grade MT 316L, **as directed**.
2. Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304 **OR** Grade TP 316 **OR** Grade TP 316L, **as directed**.
3. Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20 **OR** Grade CF 8M or CF 3M, **as directed**.
4. Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
5. Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**.
6. Wire Rope and Fittings:
  - a. Wire Rope: 1-by-19 **OR** 7-by-7 **OR** 7-by-19, **as directed**, wire rope made from wire complying with ASTM A 492, Type 316.
  - b. Wire-Rope Fittings: Connectors of types indicated, fabricated from stainless steel, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to minimum breaking strength of wire rope with which they are used.
7. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 3 (corrosion-resisting steel), made from stainless-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
8. Perforated Metal: Stainless-steel sheet, ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316L, **as directed**, **0.062 inch (1.59 mm)** thick, with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** holes **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** o.c. in staggered rows.



9. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
- E. Steel And Iron
1. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
  2. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
  3. Bars: Hot-rolled, carbon steel complying with ASTM A 29/A 29M, Grade 1010.
  4. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  5. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type I (expanded) **OR** Type II (expanded and flattened), **as directed**, Class 1 (uncoated).
    - a. Style Designation: 3/4 number 13 **OR** 1-1/2 number 10, **as directed**.
  7. Perforated Metal: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, commercial steel Type B, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows.  
**OR**  
Perforated Metal: Galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating, commercial steel Type B, 0.064 inch (1.63 mm) thick, with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) holes 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) o.c. in staggered rows **OR** with 1/8-by-1-inch (3.2-by-25.4-mm) round end slotted holes in staggered rows, **as directed**.
  8. Woven-Wire Mesh: Intermediate-crimp, diamond **OR** square, **as directed**, pattern, 2-inch (50-mm) woven-wire mesh, made from 0.135-inch (3.5-mm) nominal diameter wire complying with ASTM A 510 (ASTM A 510M).
- F. Glass And Glazing Materials
1. Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated), Type 1 (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3. Provide products that have been tested for surface and edge compression according to ASTM C 1048 and for impact strength according to 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
    - a. Glass Color: Clear **OR** Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    - b. Thickness for Structural Glass Balusters: As required by structural loads, but not less than 12.0 **OR** 19.0, **as directed**, mm.
    - c. Thickness for Glass Infill Panels: As required by structural loads, but not less than 6.0 **OR** 10.0, **as directed**, mm.  
**OR**  
Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, Condition A (uncoated), Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3 with two plies of glass and polyvinyl butyral interlayer not less than 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
    - a. Kind: LA (laminated annealed) **OR** LHS (laminated heat strengthened) **OR** LT (laminated tempered) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
    - b. Glass Color: Clear **OR** Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
    - c. Interlayer Color: Clear **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze light **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
    - d. Glass Plies for Structural Glass Balusters: Thickness required by structural loads, but not less than 6.0 **OR** 8.0, **as directed**, mm thick, each.
    - e. Glass Plies for Glass Infill Panels: Thickness required by structural loads, but not less than 3.0 **OR** 4.0 **OR** 5.0, **as directed**, mm, each.
  3. Ceramic-Coated Glass: Heat-treated float glass, Condition C; with ceramic enamel applied by silk-screened process; complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in GANA's "Engineering Standards Manual" and with other requirements specified.





- a. Glass Color: Clear **OR** Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
4. Plastic Structural Glazing: Uncoated, transparent, monolithic acrylic sheet complying with ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 or A-2 (cell cast or continuous cast), Finish 1 (smooth or polished), and as follows:
  - a. Color: Colorless (clear) **OR** Blue **OR** Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Gray **OR** Green **OR** Match glass, **as directed**.
  - b. Thickness: 12.0 mm **OR** Match glass thickness, **as directed**.
5. Glazing Cement and Accessories for Structural Glazing: Glazing cement, setting blocks, shims, and related accessories as recommended or supplied by railing manufacturer for installing structural glazing in metal subrails.
  - a. Glazing Cement: Nonshrinking organic cement designed for curing by passing an electric current through metal subrail holding glass panel, as standard with manufacturer.
6. Glazing Gaskets for Glass Infill Panels: Glazing gaskets and related accessories recommended or supplied by railing manufacturer for installing glass infill panels in post-supported railings.

#### G. Fasteners

1. Fastener Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
  - a. Aluminum Components: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - b. Copper-Alloy (Bronze) Components: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed; muntz metal (Alloy 280) fasteners where exposed.
  - c. Copper-Alloy (Brass) Components: Silicon bronze (Alloy 651 or Alloy 655) fasteners where concealed; brass (Alloy 260 or Alloy 360) fasteners where exposed.
  - d. Stainless-Steel Components: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
  - e. Uncoated Steel Components: Plated-steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating where concealed; Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners where exposed.
  - f. Galvanized-Steel Components: Plated-steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for electrodeposited zinc coating.
  - g. Dissimilar Metals: Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**, stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Fasteners for Anchoring to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads, **as directed**.
3. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching railings to other work unless otherwise indicated **OR** exposed fasteners are unavoidable **OR** exposed fasteners are the standard fastening method for railings indicated, **as directed**.
  - a. Provide Phillips **OR** tamper-resistant **OR** square or hex socket, **as directed**, flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
4. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
5. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - a. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or **ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group **1 (A1)** **OR** Group **2 (A4)**, **as directed**, stainless-steel bolts, **ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M)**.

#### H. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Wood Rails: Clear, straight-grained hardwood rails secured to recessed **OR** exposed, **as directed**, metal subrail.
  - a. Species: Ash **OR** Cherry **OR** Red oak **OR** Walnut **OR** White oak, **as directed**.

- b. Finish: Manufacturer's standard **OR** Transparent polyurethane **OR** Penetrating oil **OR** Acrylic impregnated, **as directed**.
- c. Staining: None **OR** Match the Owner's sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- d. Profile: Square, 1-3/4 by 1-3/4 inches (45 by 45 mm) with edges eased to 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** Rectangular, 1-3/4 by 5 inches (45 by 127 mm) with edges eased to 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** Round, 2-inch (50-mm) diameter **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

**OR**

Wood Rails: Hardwood rails complying with Division 06 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork"

2. Electrical Components: Provide internal, fluorescent light fixtures and electrical components, required as part of illuminated railings, that comply with NFPA 70 and that are listed and labeled by UL.
3. Plastic Handrail Caps: Thermoplastic rail covering, color as indicated or, if not indicated, as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's standard colors.
4. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - a. For aluminum railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
5. Brazing Rods: For copper-alloy railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be brazed and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
6. Lacquer for Copper Alloys: Clear acrylic lacquer specially developed for coating copper-alloy products.
7. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
8. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
9. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
10. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - a. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
11. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
12. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Cementitious galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#26 **OR** Vinyl wash primer complying with MPI#80 **OR** Water-based galvanized metal primer complying with MPI#134, **as directed**.
13. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Division 07 **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 **AND** Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
14. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI#77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
15. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI#72 and compatible with undercoat.
16. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
17. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
18. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - a. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

I. Fabrication

1. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.

2. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
3. Make up wire-rope assemblies in the shop to field-measured dimensions with fittings machine swaged. Minimize amount of turnbuckle take-up used for dimensional adjustment so maximum amount is available for tensioning wire ropes. Tag wire-rope assemblies and fittings to identify installation locations and orientations for coordinated installation.
4. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch (1 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
5. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
6. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
7. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
8. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded or nonwelded connections unless otherwise indicated.
9. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - a. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - b. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - c. Remove flux immediately.
  - d. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds: no evidence of a welded joint.
10. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
11. Brazed Connections: Connect copper-alloy railings by brazing. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Braze corners and seams continuously.
  - a. Use materials and methods that match color of base metal, minimize distortion, and develop maximum strength and corrosion resistance.
  - b. Remove flux immediately.
  - c. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and brazed surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
12. Mechanical Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
  - a. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
13. Form changes in direction as follows:
  - a. As detailed.  
**OR**  
By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.  
**OR**  
By radius bends of radius indicated or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings of radius indicated.  
**OR**  
By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.
14. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
15. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated end fittings.

16. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns, unless clearance between end of rail and wall is **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or less.
17. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
18. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
19. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, sleeves not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** long with inside dimensions not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
20. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
  - a. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
21. Expanded-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from stainless-steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, expanded metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from same metal as infill; not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm)** thick.
  - b. Orient expanded metal with long dimension of diamonds parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical, **as directed**.
22. Perforated-Metal Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from perforated metal made from steel **OR** galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** same metal as railings in which they are installed, **as directed**.
  - a. Edge panels with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal and not less than **0.043 inch (1.1 mm)** thick.
  - b. Orient perforated metal with pattern parallel to top rail **OR** perpendicular to top rail **OR** horizontal **OR** vertical **OR** as indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
23. Woven-Wire Mesh Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from woven-wire mesh crimped into **1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch (25-by-13-by-3-mm)** metal channel frames.
  - a. Make wire mesh and frames from aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** steel, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Orient wire mesh with diamonds vertical **OR** wires perpendicular and parallel to top rail **OR** wires horizontal and vertical, **as directed**.
24. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

J. Glazing Panel Fabrication

1. General: Fabricate to sizes and shapes required; provide for proper edge clearance and bite on glazing panels.
  - a. Clean-cut or flat-grind edges at butt-glazed sealant joints to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces
  - b. Grind smooth exposed edges, including those at open joints, to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
2. Structural Glass Balusters: Factory-bond glass to aluminum base and top-rail channels in railing manufacturer's plant using glazing cement to comply with manufacturer's written specifications, unless field glazing is standard with manufacturer.
3. Structural Balusters: Provide tempered **OR** laminated, heat-strengthened **OR** laminated, tempered, **as directed**, glass panels for both straight and curved sections, **as directed**.  
**OR**

Structural Balusters: Provide thermoformed, curved, plastic glazing panels for curved sections and tempered **OR** laminated, heat-strengthened **OR** laminated, tempered, **as directed**, glass panels for straight sections.

**OR**

Infill Panels: Provide tempered **OR** laminated, annealed **OR** laminated, heat-strengthened **OR** laminated, tempered, **as directed**, glass panels for both straight and curved sections, **as directed**.

**K. Illuminated Railings**

1. General: Comply with requirements in this Section for aluminum railings with welded connections.
2. Illuminated Units: Provide internal illumination using concealed, internally wired, fluorescent-strip fixture system to illuminate walking surfaces adjacent to railings without light leaks. Make provisions for servicing and for concealed connection to electric service. Coordinate electrical characteristics with those of the power supply provided.
  - a. Fluorescent Tubes: Provide number of tubes indicated or required by railing length.
  - b. Diffusers: UV-stabilized acrylic diffusers matching profile of railings.
  - c. Ballasts: Energy-saving, high power factor, Class P, electromagnetic type; designed for use with high-output lamps, and with automatic-reset thermal protection. Ballasts comply with ANSI C82.1, bear Certified Ballast Manufacturer Certification labels, and are rated for **0 deg F (minus 17 deg C) OR minus 20 deg F (minus 29 deg C), as directed**, starting temperature.

**L. General Finish Requirements**

1. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipment.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
4. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

**M. Aluminum Finishes**

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Mechanical Finish: AA-M3x (Mechanical Finish: as specified); sand top rails, handrails, and intermediate rails in one direction only, parallel to length of railing, with 120- and 320-grit abrasive. After installation, polish railings with No. 0 steel wool immersed in paste wax, then rub to a luster with a soft dry cloth.
3. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
4. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm **OR** AA-M12C22A32/A34, Class II, 0.010 mm, **as directed**, or thicker.
  - a. Color: Champagne **OR** Light bronze **OR** Medium bronze **OR** Dark bronze **OR** Black **OR** As selected from full range of industry colors and color densities, **as directed**.
5. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.



6. Siliconized Polyester Finish: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than **0.2 mil (0.005 mm)** for primer and **0.8 mil (0.02 mm)** for topcoat.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 **OR** AAMA 2605, **as directed**, and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

**OR**

High-Performance Organic Finish: Three **OR** Four, **as directed**, -coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

  - b. Color and Gloss: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

N. Copper-Alloy Finishes

1. Finish designations for copper alloys comply with the system for designating copper-alloy finish systems defined in NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products."
2. Buffed Finish: M21 (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular).
3. Hand-Rubbed Finish: M31-M34 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed).
4. Medium-Satin Finish: M32 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin).
5. Fine-Matte Finish: M42 (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte).
6. Buffed Finish, Lacquered: M21-O6x (Mechanical Finish: buffed, smooth specular; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
7. Hand-Rubbed Finish, Lacquered: M31-M34-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, hand rubbed; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
8. Medium-Satin Finish, Lacquered: M32-O6x (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, medium satin; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
9. Fine-Matte Finish, Lacquered: M42-O6x (Mechanical Finish: nondirectional finish, fine matte; Coating: clear organic, air drying, as specified below).
  - a. Clear, Organic Coating: Lacquer specified for copper alloys, applied by air spray in two coats per manufacturer's written instructions, with interim drying, to a total thickness of **1 mil (0.025 mm)**.
10. Statuary Conversion Coating over Satin Finish: M31-C55 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, fine satin; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, sulfide), with color matching the Owner's sample.
11. Patina Conversion Coating: M36-C12-C52 (Mechanical Finish: directionally textured, uniform; Chemical Finish: nonetched cleaned, degreased; Chemical Finish: conversion coating, ammonium sulfate), with color matching the Owner's sample.

O. Stainless-Steel Finishes



1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
3. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
4. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
5. Satin, Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
6. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.
7. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
8. Sputter-Coated Finish: Titanium nitride coating deposited by magnetic sputter-coating process over indicated mechanical finish.

P. Steel And Iron Finishes

1. Galvanized Railings:
  - a. Hot-dip galvanize steel **OR** exterior steel, **as directed**, and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
  - b. Hot-dip galvanize indicated steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
  - c. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
  - d. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
  - e. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - f. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
2. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
3. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
4. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
5. Preparing Nongalvanized Items for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning" **OR** SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning" **OR** requirements indicated below, **as directed**:
  - a. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Railings Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - c. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - d. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
6. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
  - a. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer **OR** primers specified in Division 07, **as directed**, unless zinc-rich primer is **OR** primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-performance Coatings" are, **as directed**, indicated.
  - b. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
7. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section(s) "Exterior Painting" **OR** "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
  - a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
8. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.

- a. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
9. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat nongalvanized ferrous metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - b. Treat prepared metal with iron-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
  - c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**.
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
10. Powder-Coat Finish: Prepare, treat, and coat galvanized metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - a. Prepare galvanized metal by thoroughly removing grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter.
  - b. Treat prepared metal with zinc-phosphate pretreatment, rinse, and seal surfaces.
  - c. Apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than **1.5 mils (0.04 mm)**.
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

#### B. Installation, General

1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - a. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - b. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of **1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m)**.
  - c. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed **1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m)**.
3. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum and copper alloys that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
4. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
5. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

#### C. Railing Connections

1. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Use wood blocks and padding to prevent damage to railing members and fittings. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
2. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.



3. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending **2 inches (50 mm)** beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within **6 inches (150 mm)** of post.

#### D. Anchoring Posts

1. Use steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Form or core-drill holes not less than **5 inches (125 mm)** deep and **3/4 inch (20 mm)** larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material **OR** attached to post with set screws, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Leave anchorage joint exposed with **1/8-inch (3-mm)** buildup, sloped away from post **OR** anchoring material flush with adjacent surface, **as directed**.
4. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - a. For aluminum railings, attach posts as indicated using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  - b. For copper-alloy railings, attach posts as indicated using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  - c. For stainless-steel railings, weld flanges to posts and bolt to metal-supporting surfaces.
  - d. For steel railings, weld flanges to posts and bolt to metal-supporting surfaces.
5. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

#### E. Attaching Railings

1. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with sleeves concealed within **OR** flanges connected to **OR** brackets on underside of rails connected to, **as directed**, railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.
2. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
3. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
  - a. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt **OR** predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage, **as directed**.
  - b. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
4. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - a. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - b. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - c. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
  - d. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

**OR**

For steel-framed partitions, fasten brackets directly to steel framing or concealed steel reinforcements using self-tapping screws of size and type required to support structural loads.

**OR**

For steel-framed partitions, fasten brackets with toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

**F. Installing Glass Panels**

1. Glass-Supported Railings: Install assembly to comply with railing manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Attach base channel to building structure, then insert and connect factory-fabricated and -assembled glass panels if glass was bonded to base and top rail channels in factory.
  - b. Attach base channel to building structure, then insert glass into base channel and bond with glazing cement unless glass was bonded to base and top rail channels in factory.
    - 1) Support glass panels in base channel at quarter points with channel-shaped setting blocks that also act as shims to maintain uniform space for glazing cement. Fill remaining space in base channel with glazing cement for uniform support of glass.
  - c. Adjust spacing of glass panels so gaps between panels are equal before securing in position.
  - d. Erect glass railings under direct supervision of manufacturer's authorized technical personnel.
2. Post-Supported Glass Railings: Install assembly to comply with railing manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in other Part 1.3 articles. Erect posts and other metal railing components, then set factory-cut glass panels. Do not cut, drill, or alter glass panels in field. Protect edges from damage.

**G. Installing Plastic Handrail Caps**

1. Apply plastic handrail caps to top rails and handrails, where indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions for cutting, mounting, forming, welding, cleaning, applying end caps, and finishing.
2. Minimize number of joints in plastic caps by installing in lengths as long as possible. Allow for shortening of plastic cap caused by welding and splicing process; butt ends together to produce hairline joint.
  - a. Continuously weld, splice, miter, and end-cap joints using cap manufacturer's electric welding iron designed for this purpose. Remove welding flash while material is still soft.
  - b. Weld only prongs on underside of plastic cap at splice, miter, and end-cap joints. After cutting plastic cap, dress ends with file to produce a hairline fit between abutting sections. After mounting cap, polish top surface with cap manufacturer's solvent designed for this purpose until joint becomes almost invisible.

**H. Field Quality Control**

1. Testing Agency: Perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
2. Extent and Testing Methodology: Randomly select completed railing assemblies for testing that are representative of different railing designs and conditions in the completed Work. Railings will be tested according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935 for compliance with performance requirements.
3. Remove and replace railings where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements unless they can be repaired in a manner satisfactory to the Owner and will comply with specified requirements.
4. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

**I. Cleaning**

1. Clean aluminum and stainless steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap, rinsing with clean water, and wiping dry.
2. Clean copper alloys according to metal finisher's written instructions in a manner that leaves an undamaged and uniform finish matching approved Sample.

3. Clean and polish glass and plastic glazing as recommended in writing by manufacturer. Wash both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Final Completion.
4. Clean wood rails and plastic handrail caps by wiping with a damp cloth and then wiping dry.
5. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.**OR**  
Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 07 OR Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings" **OR** Division 07 AND Division 09 Section(s) "High-performance Coatings", **as directed**.
6. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

J. Protection

1. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Final Completion.
2. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 73 23 00a



Task	Specification	Specification Description
05 73 23 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 75 00 00	05 15 16 00	Ornamental Metal
05 75 00 00	05 73 23 00	Miscellaneous Ornamental Metals
05 75 00 00	05 58 16 00	Ornamental Formed Metal

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 01 20 91 - WOOD RESTORATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood restoration. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Work Included

1. Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section including, but not limited to the following:
  - a. Removal of exterior finish systems at areas of wood restoration or repair
  - b. Preservation and sealing of seams and joints
  - c. Removal of decayed and contaminated wood
  - d. Installation of borate wood preservatives
  - e. Installation of wood repair compound materials
2. Extent of wood restoration work is as required to meet Project requirements.

#### C. Submittals:

1. Product data, installation instructions, and general recommendations from manufacturer for types of repair required including technical data sheets defining performance properties.
2. Restoration Schedule: Submit schedule for each window, door, cornice, or area of wood trim to be restored, outlining in detail proposed restoration work to be performed on each component. Obtain written approval prior to commencement of repair work.
3. Certification that materials comply with local VOC limitations.
4. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include a list of completed projects with project name, address, names of Architects and Owners, and information specified.
  - a. Five (5) business days after bid opening, submit a written qualification and experience of all lead personnel for work on the Project. List project manager or foreman's name and experience relative to this Project.
  - b. All work shall be performed by persons whose qualifications have been submitted and approved.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Restorations Specialist: Work must be performed by a firm having not less than (5) years successful experience in comparable wood restoration work including work on at least three (3) buildings listed in the National Register of Historic Places under the direction of federal and state preservation agencies in the last five (5) years and employing personnel skilled in the restoration process and operations indicated.
  - a. Restoration Specialist firm must be acceptable to, or certified by, manufacturer of primary restoration materials.
  - b. Work associated with work of this section, including (but limited to) paint removal and substrate preparation, is to be performed by Installer of the work.
  - c. Only skilled workers who are thoroughly trained and experienced in wood repairs and restoration work at areas as noted, have the skills required for the work of this section, and are completely familiar with the materials and methods specified shall be used for wood restoration work.
  - d. At least one skilled worker shall be present at all times during the execution of the work and shall personally direct the wood repairs and restoration work.
  - e. In acceptance or rejection of the wood restoration work, no allowance will be made for lack of skill on the part of the workers.



2. Manufacturer: Obtain primary repair materials from a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials as recommended by the manufacturer of the primary materials.

E. Delivery Storage And Handling

1. Deliver all materials in original unopened containers labeled with the manufacturer's name, brand name, item name and installation instructions.
2. Store materials in compliance with the manufacturer's requirements for temperature, maximum and minimum, and other conditions. Keep all materials under cover and dry. Protect against exposure to the weather.
3. Discard and remove from the job site any materials damaged in handling or storage and any materials that have been subjected to conditions contrary to the manufacturer's recommendations or whose maximum shelf life has expired.

F. Project Conditions

1. Lead: Existing paint may contain lead. Take all necessary precautions to ensure the safety of all persons engaged in removing lead-based paint and dispose of all residues generated from lead-based paint stripping in a legal manner in accordance with all local, state and federal codes.
2. Coordination: Coordinate wood repair with paint stripping so that the effected surfaces are exposed for a minimal time to avoid further damage to bare wood. Coordinate with painting so that all restored surfaces are primed as soon as possible after repair.
3. Weather: Proceed with the work of this section only when existing and foreseen weather conditions permit the work to be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for temperature and humidity range, minimum and maximum.
4. Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with product applications until substrates have been inspected and are determined to be in satisfactory conditions. Substrate moisture content shall not be in excess of 18% during preparation and application.
  - a. Remove all decayed wood to a clean, sound, unaffected substrate.
  - b. Remove all built up paints, and other debris to a clean sound substrate.
  - c. Remove all wood sawdust to a clean sound substrate.
5. Protection:
  - a. Use all necessary means to protect interior of building from all damage caused by precipitation and other environmental conditions during the work of the Section.
  - b. Protect all adjacent building surfaces from damage, staining or deterioration resulting from wood restoration work.
  - c. Protect the restoration work in progress to prevent further deterioration exposed wood surfaces. Protect the completed work until the time of final inspection and acceptance by the Owner.
6. Safety: Contractor shall use all means necessary to ensure that no person (whether involved in the work of the Section or not) is harmed or injured due to the work of this Section. Comply with all applicable laws codes and regulations.
7. Security: Coordinate work with the Owner's project manager to ensure that the building is secured at the end of each work period. Review security procedures with the Owner prior to proceeding with the work in this Section.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. General

1. Compatibility: provide products recommended by the manufacturers to be fully compatible with indicated substrate.

B. Epoxy Repair Products

1. Epoxy repair materials shall consist of 2 separate systems, a 2 part low viscosity epoxy primer/coupling agent and a 2 part thixotropic paste meeting the manufacturer's criteria.
2. Manufacturer of Repair Products and Equipment

- a. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide product of the following or approved equal.
  - 1) Advanced Repair Technology  
Cherry Valley, NY
  - 2) Window Care Systems  
Pembroke, MA
  - 3) or approved equal
- C. Repair Products
  1. Low viscosity epoxy coupling/bonding agent
  2. Epoxy repair compound
  3. Injectable Borate gel
  4. Borate rods
- D. Paint Strippers
  1. Chemical Stripping Agent. Methylene chloride based, Thixotropic stripper
  2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following, or approved equal
    - a. 509 Stripper
    - b. ProSoCo
    - c. or approved equal
  3. Low Temperature heat gun or heat plate, no open flame.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Inspection
  1. Inspect all wood surfaces determine the extent of restoration and methods to be used.
    - a. The decision regarding the extent of required repair, and extent of profile replication work shall be final.
    - b. In wood surfaces where decay is present, determine the methods and treatment of repair.
    - c. Areas that do not attach existing profiles, determine the level of restoration and replication to be achieved.
  2. Joints, Joinery and edges: Check wood members at joints, seams and edges for:
    - a. Any open seams or failed conditions.
    - b. Wood moisture content.
    - c. The presence of wood decay, by probing surfaces.
  3. Sills and Trim
    - a. Inspect wood surfaces for natural defects (knots) cracks and checks.
    - b. Determine wood moisture content.
    - c. Probe for the presence for wood decay.
- B. Removal
  1. Removal of Finishes:
    - a. Remove all peeling and loose paint by scraping, taking care not to damage sound wood and profiles.
    - b. Strip all painted wood surface to bare wood, taking care not to damage sound wood and profiles by the application of stripping paste or by the use of a heat gun or plate
      - 1) Remove stripper and finishes as directed by manufacturer.
      - 2) Dispose of debris in accordance with approved methods.
    - c. Wash all surfaces with recommended neutralizing agents to remove any foreign particle, dust and chemical residue, allow surface to thoroughly dry.
- C. Preventative Systems
  1. Preservation and Sealing of seams and joints. Repair of wood "checking" due to weathering.
    - a. Open or failed seams and checks shall be dilated to a width of 3/16" and depth of 1/2".
    - b. Remove all decayed, soft and weathered wood.



- c. Check the moisture content and hardness of wood at and around the repair, maximum allowable moisture content 18%.
- d. Sand bare wood to remove all loose fibers, paint, compounds. Remove all sawdust and dirt.
- e. Pre-treat bare and sanded wood thoroughly with low viscosity epoxy coupling/bonding agent
- f. Allow coupling agent to penetrate wood surface for a minimum of 10 minutes and maximum of 30 minutes, or as recommended by the manufacturer. Avoid applying in direct sunlight
- g. Remove any excess bonding agent with absorbing paper
- h. Apply epoxy repair compound over epoxy bonding agent while still tacky.
- i. Epoxy compound shall have optimal contact with wood
- j. Avoid inclusion of air pockets during application
- k. Fill joints fill, even and smooth in one application
- l. Allow full cure time as specified by manufacturer before application of paint or varnish.
- m. After curing, sand surface even and smooth. Transitions and irregularities between wood and epoxy shall not be visible after sanding
- n. If required, smooth any remaining irregularities with an additional application of epoxy repair compound. Always sand between coats.

#### D. Curative Systems

##### 1. Preservation and Repair of Damaged/Decayed Wood:

- a. Remove all paint and other coatings from area to be repaired.
- b. Remove all decayed soft and discolored wood, to sound bright unaffected material
- c. Check area of removal to determine complete elimination of decayed material.
  - 1) Remaining wood should be even color without red-brown and/or gray spots.
  - 2) No soft wood, existing brittle compound, or other previous repair materials should remain.
- d. Check moisture content and hardness of the wood in and around the repair area
  - 1) Moisture content of wood to be 18% or less
- e. Sand bare wood to remove all loose fibers, paint, compounds. Remove all sawdust and dirt.
- f. Drill holes in effected area to receive borate gel and rods. Follow manufacturer's dose recommendations for dimensional lumber.
- g. Inject recommended dose of borate gel. Gel should not come in contact with exposed wood surface.
- h. Install borate rod in same hole as gel. Gel should not come in contact with exposed wood surface.
- i. Pre-treat bare and sanded wood thoroughly with low viscosity epoxy coupling/bonding agent.
  - 1) Allow coupling/bonding agent to penetrate wood surface for a minimum of 10 minutes and maximum of 30 minutes, or as recommended by the manufacturer. Avoid applying in direct sunlight
  - 2) Remove any excess bonding agent with absorbing paper.
- j. Apply epoxy repair compound over the uncured epoxy coupling agent.
  - 1) Epoxy fill shall have optimal contact with wood
  - 2) Avoid inclusion of air pockets during application
  - 3) Fill joints fill, even and smooth in one application
  - 4) Allow full cure time as specified by manufacturer before preparing for finishes.
- k. After curing, sand surface even and smooth. Transitions and irregularities between wood and epoxy shall not be visible after sanding.
- l. If required, smooth any remaining irregularities with an additional application of epoxy repair compound. Always sand between coats.

#### E. Adjustments: Repair or replace all defective work at no additional cost to the Owner.



END OF SECTION 06 01 20 91

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 01 40 91 - DOOR HARDWARE

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of material for door hardware. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the products manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
    - 1) Swinging doors.
    - 2) Sliding doors.
    - 3) Folding doors.
  - b. Cylinders for doors specified in other Sections.
  - c. Electrified door hardware.
2. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the products listed below. Coordinating, purchasing, delivering, and scheduling remain requirements of this Section.
  - a. Pivots, thresholds, weather stripping, and cylinders for locks specified in other Sections.
  - b. Permanent cores to be installed by the Owner.

#### C. Action Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified door hardware, indicating the following:
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including the following:
    - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
    - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
    - 3) Point-to-point wiring.
    - 4) Risers.
    - 5) Elevations doors controlled by electrified door hardware.
  - b. Operation Narrative: Describe the operation of doors controlled by electrified door hardware.
3. Samples for Initial Selection: For plastic protective trim units in each finish, color, and texture required for each type of trim unit indicated.
4. Samples for Verification: For exposed door hardware of each type required, in each finish specified, prepared on Samples of size indicated below. Tag Samples with full description for coordination with the door hardware schedule. Submit Samples before, or concurrent with, submission of door hardware schedule.
  - a. Sample Size: Full-size units or minimum 2-by-4-inch (51-by-102-mm) Samples for sheet and 4-inch (102-mm) long Samples for other products.
    - 1) Full-size Samples will be returned to Contractor. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process may, after final check of operation, be incorporated into the Work, within limitations of keying requirements.
5. Other Action Submittals:
  - a. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as installation procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.



- 1) Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule after or concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings, **as directed**. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate the fabrication of other work that is critical in Project construction schedule.
- 2) Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule." Double space entries, and number and date each page.
- 3) Format: Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers as in the Contract Documents.
- 4) Content: Include the following information:
  - a) Identification number, location, hand, fire rating, size, and material of each door and frame.
  - b) Locations of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings on floor plans and to door and frame schedule.
  - c) Complete designations, including name and manufacturer, type, style, function, size, quantity, function, and finish of each door hardware product.
  - d) Description of electrified door hardware sequences of operation and interfaces with other building control systems.
  - e) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - f) Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
  - g) Mounting locations for door hardware.
  - h) List of related door devices specified in other Sections for each door and frame.
- b. Keying Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Installer, detailing the Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.

#### D. Informational Submittals

1. Qualification Data: For Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Product Certificates: For electrified door hardware, from the manufacturer.
  - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
3. Product Test Reports: For compliance with accessibility requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for door hardware on doors located in accessible routes.
4. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### E. Closeout Submittals

1. Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Include final hardware and keying schedule.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by lock manufacturer.
  - a. Installer's responsibilities include supplying and installing door hardware and providing a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and the Owner about door hardware and keying
2. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is currently certified by DHI as an Architectural Hardware Consultant **OR** one who meets the requirements necessary for certification, **as directed**, and who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of door hardware from a single manufacturer.
  - a. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that

are listed by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

4. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Where fire-rated door assemblies are indicated, provide door hardware rated for use in assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing, for fire protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 **OR** UL 10C, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meet requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  - a. Air Leakage Rate: Maximum air leakage of **0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m)** at the tested pressure differential of **0.3-inch wg (75 Pa)** of water.
6. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
7. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than **15 lbf (67 N)** to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
8. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines **OR** ICC/ANSI A117.1 **OR** HUD's "Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines", **as directed**.
  - a. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than **5 lbf (22.2 N)**.
  - b. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
    - 1) Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: **5 lbf (22.2 N)** applied perpendicular to door.
    - 2) Sliding or Folding Doors: **5 lbf (22.2 N)** applied parallel to door at latch.
    - 3) Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - c. Bevel raised thresholds with a slope of not more than 1:2. Provide thresholds not more than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** high and **3/4 inch (19 mm)** high for exterior sliding doors.
  - d. Adjust door closer sweep periods so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point **3 inches (75 mm)** from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.
9. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management And Coordination". In addition to the Owner, Contractor, and Architect, conference participants shall also include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant and Owner's security consultant. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
  - b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
  - c. Requirements for key control system.
  - d. Requirements for access control.
  - e. Address for delivery of keys.
10. Preinstallation Conference: conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing in for electrified door hardware.
  - d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
  - e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
2. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with the final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.
3. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to the Owner.
4. Deliver keys and permanent cores to the Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.



#### H. Coordination

1. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
2. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
3. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
4. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.
5. Existing Openings: Where hardware components are scheduled for application to existing construction or where modifications to existing door hardware are required, field verify existing conditions and coordinate installation of door hardware to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

#### I. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
    - 2) Faulty operation of doors and door hardware.
    - 3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
  - b. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Final Completion, except as follows:
    - 1) Electromagnetic or Delayed-Egress Locks: Five years from date of Final Completion.
    - 2) Exit Devices: Two years from date of Final Completion.
    - 3) Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Final Completion.
    - 4) Concealed Floor Closers: Five **OR** 10 **OR** 25 years from date of Final Completion, **as directed**.

#### J. Maintenance Service

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
2. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Final Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door and door hardware operation. Provide parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original products.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Scheduled Door Hardware

1. General: Provide door hardware for each door indicated in Part 1.3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article to comply with requirements in this Section.
  - a. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated.
  - b. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
2. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 1.3 "Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by descriptive titles corresponding to requirements specified in Part 1.2.

B. Hinges

1. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.
2. Antifriction-Bearing Hinges:
  - a. Mounting: Full-Mortise (Butt) **OR** Half mortise **OR** Full surface **OR** Half surface, **as directed**.
  - b. Bearing Material: Manufacturer's standard antifriction bearing **OR** Ball bearing, **as directed**.
  - c. Grade: Grade 1 (heavy weight) **OR** Grade 2 (standard weight), **as directed**.
  - d. Base and Pin Metal:
    - 1) Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin **OR** Brass with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads, **as directed**.
    - 2) Interior Hinges: Brass with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads **OR** Steel with steel pin **OR** Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin, **as directed**.
    - 3) Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Steel with steel pin **OR** Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin, **as directed**.
  - e. Pins: Non-rising loose unless otherwise indicated **OR** Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 1) Outswinging Exterior Doors: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 2) Outswinging Corridor Doors with Locks: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
  - f. Tips: Flat button **OR** Hospital **OR** Oval **OR** Ball **OR** Steeple **OR** Urn **OR** Acorn, **as directed**.
  - g. Corners: Square **OR** 5/32-inch (4-mm) radius **OR** 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** 5/8-inch (16-mm) radius, **as directed**.
  - h. Options: Raised barrel **OR** Reverse safety stud **OR** Safety stud, **as directed**.
3. Electrified Antifriction-Bearing Hinges: Full-mortise mounting.
  - a. Bearing Material: Manufacturer's standard antifriction bearing **OR** Ball bearing, **as directed**.
  - b. Grade: Grade 1 (heavy weight) **OR** Grade 2 (standard weight), **as directed**.
  - c. Base and Pin Metal:
    - 1) Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin **OR** Brass with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads, **as directed**.
    - 2) Interior Hinges: Brass with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads **OR** Steel with steel pin **OR** Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin, **as directed**.
    - 3) Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Steel with steel pin **OR** Stainless steel with stainless-steel pin, **as directed**.
  - d. Pins: Non-rising loose unless otherwise indicated **OR** Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 1) Outswinging Exterior Doors: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 2) Outswinging Corridor Doors with Locks: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
  - e. Tips: Flat button **OR** Hospital **OR** Oval **OR** Ball **OR** Steeple **OR** Urn **OR** Acorn, **as directed**.
  - f. Corners: Square **OR** 5/32-inch (4-mm) radius **OR** 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** 5/8-inch (16-mm) radius, **as directed**.
  - g. Options: Raised barrel **OR** Reverse safety stud **OR** Safety stud, **as directed**.
  - h. Electric Option: Concealed electric through wires **OR** Concealed electric through wires with monitor **OR** Concealed electric monitor **OR** Concealed air transfer **OR** Concealed switch **OR** Exposed electric switch **OR** Exposed electric contacts, **as directed**.
4. Plain-Bearing Hinges: Grade 3 (standard weight).
  - a. Mounting: Full mortise (butts) **OR** Half mortise **OR** Full surface **OR** Half surface, **as directed**.
  - b. Base and Pin Metal: Brass with stainless-steel pin body and brass protruding heads **OR** Steel with steel pin, **as directed**.



- c. Pins: Non-rising loose unless otherwise indicated **OR** Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
  - 1) Outswinging Corridor Doors with Locks: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
- d. Tips: Flat button **OR** Hospital **OR** Oval **OR** Ball **OR** Steeple **OR** Urn **OR** Acorn, **as directed**.
- e. Corners: Square **OR** 5/32-inch (4-mm) radius **OR** 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** 5/8-inch (16-mm) radius, **as directed**.
- f. Options: Raised barrel, **as directed**.
- 5. Electrified Plain-Bearing Hinges: Grade 3 (standard weight); full-mortise mounting.
  - a. Mounting: Full mortise (butts) **OR** Half mortise **OR** Full surface **OR** Half surface, **as directed**.
  - b. Pins: Non-rising loose unless otherwise indicated **OR** Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 1) Outswinging Corridor Doors with Locks: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
  - c. Tips: Flat button **OR** Hospital **OR** Oval **OR** Ball **OR** Steeple **OR** Urn **OR** Acorn, **as directed**.
  - d. Corners: Square **OR** 5/32-inch (4-mm) radius **OR** 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** 5/8-inch (16-mm) radius, **as directed**.
  - e. Options: Raised barrel, **as directed**.
  - f. Electric Option: Concealed electric through wires **OR** Concealed electric through wires with monitor **OR** Concealed electric monitor **OR** Concealed air transfer **OR** Concealed switch **OR** Exposed electric switch **OR** Exposed electric contacts, **as directed**.
- 6. Swing-Clear Hinges: Reversible.
  - a. Mounting: Full mortise (butts) **OR** Half mortise **OR** Full surface **OR** Half surface, **as directed**.
  - b. Bearing, and Grade: Antifriction bearing, Grade 1 (heavy weight) **OR** Antifriction bearing, Grade 2 (standard weight) **OR** Plain bearing, Grade 3 (standard weight), **as directed**.
  - c. Base Metal: Wrought brass or bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Wrought, forged, or cast steel, or malleable iron, **as directed**.
  - d. Pins: Non-rising loose unless otherwise indicated **OR** Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 1) Outswinging Exterior Doors: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
    - 2) Outswinging Corridor Doors with Locks: Maximum security **OR** Nonremovable, **as directed**.
  - e. Tips: Flat button **OR** Hospital, **as directed**.
  - f. Corners: Square **OR** 5/32-inch (4-mm) radius **OR** 1/4-inch (6-mm) radius **OR** 5/8-inch (16-mm) radius, **as directed**.
  - g. Options: Raised barrel **OR** Reverse safety stud **OR** Safety stud, **as directed**.
- 7. Slip-in-Type Hinges: Full-mortise mounting.
  - a. Bearing and Grade: Antifriction, Grade 1 (heavy weight) **OR** Antifriction, Grade 2 (standard weight) **OR** Plain, Grade 3 (standard weight), **as directed**.
  - b. Base Metal: Wrought brass or bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Wrought, forged, or cast steel, or malleable iron, **as directed**.
  - c. Swaging: 5/16-inch (7.9-mm) swaging **OR** 3/16-inch (4.8-mm) swaging, handed, **as directed**.
- 8. Anchor Hinge Set: Grade 1 (heavy weight); consisting of one anchor hinge plus two full-mortise hinges; antifriction bearing; handed; nonremovable pins; flat-button tips.
  - a. Base Metal: Wrought brass or bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Wrought, forged, or cast steel, or malleable iron, **as directed**.
  - b. Electric Option for Center Hinge: Concealed electric through wires **OR** Concealed electric switch, **as directed**.

9. Pocket Hinges: Antifriction bearing; Grade 1 (heavy weight); jamb leaf visible when door is closed and both leaves concealed when door is in pocket; type required for application indicated; cast steel.
  10. Double-Acting Pivot-Hinge Set: Grade 2; wrought, forged, or cast steel or malleable iron base metal; consisting of a top pivot and a bottom pivot, each with jamb brackets, and bottom pivot with thrust steel bearing.
- C. Self-Closing Hinges And Pivots
1. Self-Closing Hinges and Pivots: BHMA A156.17.
  2. Spring Hinges: Grade 1 **OR** Grade 2, **as directed**; wrought steel, with torsion spring.
    - a. Type: Single **OR** Double, **as directed** acting.
    - b. Mounting: Full mortise (butts) **OR** Half mortise **OR** Full surface **OR** Half surface, **as directed**.
  3. Horizontal-Spring Pivot Sets: Grade 3; double acting; non-handed; consisting of wrought steel bottom pivot hinge with antifriction bearing and nylon top pivot and socket.
    - a. Type: Hold-open **OR** Non-hold open, **as directed**.
    - b. Tension: Adjustable **OR** Fixed, **as directed**.
    - c. Bottom Pivot Trim: Steel **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
    - d. Bottom Plate: For bottom hinge attachment to floor **OR** jamb, **as directed**.
  4. Gate-Spring Pivot Sets: Grade 1; double acting; non-handed; consisting of bottom pivot with door and jamb bracket and top pivot assembly with jamb bracket.
    - a. Mounting: Mortise **OR** Surface, **as directed**.
    - b. Tension: Adjustable **OR** Fixed, **as directed**.
    - c. Base Metal: Cast, forged, or extruded brass or bronze **OR** Malleable iron, **as directed**.
  5. Gravity Pivot Sets: Grade 3; double acting; surface mounting; non-handed; consisting of bottom pivot with door and jamb bracket and top pivot assembly with jamb bracket.
    - a. Tension: Adjustable **OR** Fixed, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Wrought brass or bronze **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
- D. Center-Hung And Offset Pivots
1. Center-Hung and Offset Pivots: BHMA A156.4.
  2. Center-Hung Pivot Sets: Grade 1.
    - a. Top Pivots: Walking-beam type with retractable pin and oil-impregnated bronze bearing; mortised into door and frame.
    - b. Bottom Pivots: Surface floor mounted, **OR** Recessed in floor in cement case, **OR** Mortised into jamb, **as directed** and mortised into door; with thrust ball **OR** needle bearings, **as directed**.
    - c. Base Metal: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
  3. Offset Pivot Sets: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**.
    - a. Offset: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR** **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)**, **as directed**.
    - b. Top Pivot: Full-mortise **OR** Half-surface **OR** Full-surface mounting, **as directed**; walking-beam type with retractable pin and oil-impregnated bronze bearing.
      - 1) Knuckle: Standard **OR** Asylum type, **as directed**.
      - 2) Option: With screw holes designed to straddle lead in the center of lead-lined door.
    - c. Bottom Pivot: Surface floor mounted, **OR** Recessed in floor in cement case, **OR** Mortised into jamb, **as directed** and mortised into door; with thrust ball **OR** needle, **as directed** bearing.
    - d. Base Metal: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
  4. Offset Intermediate Pivots: Grade 1; for use with offset pivot sets; with oil-impregnated bronze bearings.
    - a. Mounting: Full mortise, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** offset **OR** Full mortise, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** offset **OR** Half mortise **OR** Half surface **OR** Full surface, **as directed**.
    - b. Knuckle: Standard **OR** Asylum type, **as directed**.
    - c. Option: With screw holes designed to straddle lead in the center of lead-lined door.
    - d. Electric Option: Concealed monitoring **OR** Concealed power transfer **OR** Concealed power transfer for use with electrical panic devices and locks, **as directed**.



- e. Base Metal: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
- 5. Pocket Pivots: Grade 1; full-mortise mounting; non-handed; allows door to nest in pocket with door surface flush with corridor wall when open; maximum 90-degree swing.
  - a. Base Metal: Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
  - b. Electric Option: Concealed power transfer in one hinge per door.
- E. Continuous Hinges
  - 1. Continuous Hinges: BHMA A156.26; minimum **0.120-inch- (3.0-mm-)** thick, hinge leaves with minimum overall width of **4 inches (102 mm)**; fabricated to full height of door and frame and to template screw locations; with components finished after milling and drilling are complete.
  - 2. Pin-and-Barrel-Type Hinges:
    - a. Grade: Grade 1-150 **OR** 1-300 **OR** 1-600 **OR** 2-150 **OR** 2-300 **OR** 2-600 **OR** 3-150 **OR** 3-300, **as directed**.
    - b. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel.
    - c. Interior Hinges: Stainless steel **OR** Steel **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**.
    - d. Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: Stainless steel with steel fire pins to hold fire-rated doors in place if required by tested listing **OR** Steel, **as directed**.
    - e. Type: Concealed leaf **OR** Swing clear **OR** Full surface with removable continuous caps over fasteners **OR** Half mortise, concealed door leaf and with removable continuous cap over fasteners on jamb leaf **OR** Half surface, concealed jamb leaf and with removable continuous cap over fasteners on door leaf, **as directed**.
    - f. Electric Option: Electric monitoring switch **OR** Electric through wires and monitor **OR** Electric through wires **OR** Concealed power transfer **OR** Exposed power transfer contact switch, **as directed**.
  - 3. Continuous, Gear-Type Hinges: Extruded-aluminum, pinless, geared hinge leaves joined by a continuous extruded-aluminum channel cap; with concealed, self-lubricating thrust bearings.
    - a. Grade: Grade 1-150 **OR** 1-300 **OR** 1-600 **OR** 2-150 **OR** 2-300 **OR** 2-600 **OR** 3-150 **OR** 3-300, **as directed**.
    - b. Hinges for Fire-Rated Assemblies: With steel fire pins to hold fire-rated doors in place if required by tested listing.
    - c. Mounting: Concealed leaf **OR** Swing clear **OR** Full surface, with removable continuous caps over fasteners **OR** Half surface, concealed jamb leaf and with removable continuous cap over fasteners on door leaf, **as directed**.
    - d. Electric Option: Electric monitor **OR** Electric through wires and monitor **OR** Electric through wires **OR** Electric power transfer **OR** Exposed switch **OR** Exposed contact **OR** Removable electric through wires, **as directed**.
- F. Mechanical Locks And Latches
  - 1. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
  - 2. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
    - a. Bored Locks: Minimum **1/2-inch (13-mm)** latchbolt throw.
    - b. Mortise Locks: Minimum **3/4-inch (19-mm)** latchbolt throw.
    - c. Deadbolts: Minimum **1-inch (25-mm) OR 1.25-inch (32-mm)** bolt throw, **as directed**.
  - 3. Lock Backset: **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)**, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Lock Trim:
    - a. Description: As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
    - b. Levers: Wrought **OR** Forged **OR** Cast, **as directed**.
    - c. Knobs: Wrought **OR** Forged **OR** Cast, **as directed**.
    - d. Escutcheons (Roses): Wrought **OR** Forged **OR** Cast, **as directed**.
    - e. Dummy Trim: Match knob **OR** lever, lock trim and escutcheons.
    - f. Operating Device: Lever **OR** Knob, **as directed** with escutcheons (roses).
  - 5. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latchbolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.

- a. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
  - c. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
  - d. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.
  6. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; Series 4000.
  7. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Operational **OR Security, as directed** Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.
  8. Interconnected Locks: BHMA A156.12; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; Series 5000.
  9. Roller Latches: BHMA A156.16; Grade 1; rolling plunger that engages socket or catch, with adjustable roller projection.
    - a. Material: Brass **OR Bronze, as directed**.
    - b. Mounting: Surface **OR Mortise, as directed**.
  10. Push-Pull Latches: Bored, BHMA A156.2; Series 4000 **OR Mortise, BHMA A156.13, as directed**; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with paddle handles that retract latchbolt; capable of being mounted vertically or horizontally.
    - a. Lever and Escutcheon Material: Brass **OR Bronze OR Stainless steel OR Aluminum, as directed**.
    - b. Lettering: Engrave with the words "Pull" and "Push."
    - c. Lead Lining: **0.047 inch (1.2 mm)** thick for escutcheon plate.
- G. Auxiliary Locks
1. Bored Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with strike that suits frame.
    - a. Backset: **2-3/8 inches (60 mm) OR 2-3/4 inches (70 mm), as directed**.
    - b. Material: Aluminum **OR Brass OR Bronze OR Stainless steel OR Zinc alloy, as directed**.
    - c. Deadlatches: Deadlocking latchbolt operated by key either side **OR key outside and turn inside OR turn inside with no cylinder, as directed**.
    - d. Deadlocks: Deadbolt operated by key either side **OR key outside and turn inside OR turn inside with no cylinder OR key outside, no trim inside, as directed**.
  2. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with strike that suits frame.
    - a. Backset: **2-3/4 inches (70 mm)**.
    - b. Material: Aluminum **OR Brass OR Bronze OR Stainless steel OR Zinc alloy, as directed**.
    - c. Deadlocks: Deadbolt operated by key either side **OR outside and turn inside OR one side, as directed**.
    - d. Deadlatches: Latchbolt and auxiliary deadlatch operated by key either side **OR outside and turn inside, as directed**.
    - e. Deadlocks for Sliding Doors: Expanding- or interlocking-type deadbolt operated by key either side **OR outside and turn inside OR one side, as directed**.
    - f. Deadlatches for Sliding Doors: Hook-type latchbolt operated by key either side **OR outside and handle inside, as directed**.
  3. Narrow Stile Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with strike that suits frame.
    - a. Backset: **0.98 inch (25 mm) OR 1.125 inches (29 mm) OR 1.25 inches (32 mm) OR 1.5 inches (38 mm) OR 1.75 inches (44 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2.25 inches (57 mm) OR 2.5 inches (64 mm), as directed**.
    - b. Strike: Flat **OR Flat with extra-long lip OR Radius OR Radius with weatherstrip OR Bevel, as directed**.
    - c. Case Material: Steel **OR Stainless steel, as directed**.
    - d. Armored Front and Strike Material: Aluminum **OR Brass OR Bronze OR Stainless steel, as directed**.
    - e. Deadlock: Deadlocking bolt.
      - 1) Operation: Key both sides **OR outside and operating trim inside, as directed**.
      - 2) Door Application: Swinging **OR Sliding door, as directed**.
    - f. Deadlatch: Latchbolt with auxiliary deadlatch operated by key outside and paddle or lever inside; for single swinging doors.



- g. Multipoint Lock: Deadlocking bolt for pairs of swinging doors.
  - 1) Operation: Key both sides **OR** outside and turn, lever, or knob inside, **as directed**.
  - 2) Type: Two **OR** Three point, **as directed**.
- h. Latch/Lock: Deadbolt and latchbolt; both operated by key both sides; inside handle operates only latchbolt.
- 4. Push-Button Combination Locks: BHMA A156.5; cylindrical; Grade 1 **OR** mortise; Grade 2, **as directed**; lock opens by entering a one- to five-digit code by pushing correct buttons in correct sequence; automatically relocks when door is closed; with strike that suits frame.
  - a. Lockset Configuration: Standard **OR** Privacy with inside push button, **as directed**.
  - b. Auxiliary Lock Configuration: Deadbolt **OR** Deadlocking latch **OR** Deadlocking rim latch, **as directed**.
  - c. Override: By key cylinder.
- H. Electric Strikes
  - 1. Electric Strikes: BHMA A156.31; Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; with faceplate to suit lock and frame.
    - a. Material: Steel **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-aluminum alloy, **as directed**.
    - b. Mounting: Mortised **OR** Semirim mounted **OR** Rim mounted, **as directed**.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Use fail-secure electric strikes with fire-rated devices.
  - 3. Monitoring: Mechanical latchbolt **OR** Infrared latchbolt **OR** Mechanical strike **OR** Infrared strike, **as directed**.
  - 4. Options: Lip extension kit.
- I. Electromagnetic Locks
  - 1. Electromagnetic Locks: BHMA A156.23; electrically powered; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door; full-exterior or full-interior type, as required by application indicated.
    - a. Direct-Hold Type: Lock mounted on bottom of header; strike flush mounted on door push side **OR** face of header; strike angle mounted on door pull side **OR** side of jamb; strike flush mounted on door push side, **as directed**.
    - b. Shear Type: Lock mounted on face of header; strike angle mounted on door **OR** mortised in header; strike mortised in top of door **OR** mortised in jamb; strike mortised in edge of door **OR** mortised in bottom of door; strike mortised in floor **OR** mortised in floor; strike mortised in bottom of door, **as directed**.
    - c. Strength Ranking: 1500 lbf (6672 N) **OR** 1000 lbf (4448 N) **OR** 500 lbf (2224 N), **as directed**.
    - d. Inductive Kickback Peak Voltage: Not more than 53 **OR** 0 V, **as directed**.
    - e. Residual Magnetism: Not more than 4 lbf (18 N) **OR** 0 lbf (0 N), **as directed** to separate door from magnet.
    - f. Options:
      - 1) Magnetic bond sensor.
      - 2) Continuous housing for full width of door.
      - 3) Continuous housing for full height of door.
      - 4) Single LED indicators.
      - 5) Double LED indicators.
      - 6) Adjustable time delay with automatic relock.
      - 7) Integral door position switch.
  - 2. Delayed-Egress Electromagnetic Locks: BHMA A156.24, electrically powered, with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door; depressing push bar for more than 3 seconds initiates irreversible alarm and 15-second delay for egress. When integrated with fire alarm, fire alarm voids 15-second delay.
    - a. Grade: Security Grade, activated from secure side of door by initiating device **OR** Movement Grade, activated by door movement as initiating device, **as directed**.
- J. Electromechanical Locks



1. Electromechanical Locks: BHMA A156.25; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; motor or solenoid driven; bored **OR** mortise latchbolt **OR** mortise deadbolt **OR** mortise deadlocking latchbolt, **as directed**; with strike that suits frame.
- K. Self-Contained Electronic Locks
  1. Self-Contained Electronic Locks: BHMA A156.25, bored **OR** mortise, **as directed**; with internal, battery-powered, self-contained electronic locks; consisting of complete lockset, motor-driven lock mechanism, and actuating device; enclosed in zinc-dichromate-plated, wrought-steel case, and strike that suits frame. Provide key override, low-battery detection and warning, LED status indicators, and ability to program at the lock.
    - a. Actuating Device: Digital keypad **OR** Magnetic-stripe card reader, **as directed**.
      - 1) Card: Manufacturer's standard **OR** 0.030-inch- (0.76-mm-) thick PVC or polyester **OR** Custom, **as directed**.
      - 2) Accessory: Card encoder and software.
    - b. Faceplate Material: Wrought brass **OR** Wrought bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - c. Trim: Lever **OR** Knob **OR** Match trim specified for mechanical locks, **as directed**.
    - d. Function: Latch with **OR** Deadbolt with **OR** Latch without **OR** Deadbolt without, **as directed** key.
- L. Exit Locks And Exit Alarms
  1. Exit Locks and Alarms: BHMA A156.29, Grade 1.
  2. Exit Locks: Surface mounted; battery powered, housed in metal case; with manufacturer's standard strike that suits frame; with red-and-white lettering reading "EMERGENCY EXIT PUSH TO OPEN--ALARM WILL SOUND."
    - a. Single-Door **OR** Pairs-of-Door Type, **as directed**: Activated by arm, push plate, or paddle **OR** horizontal bar, **as directed**.
    - b. Options:
      - 1) Low-battery alert.
      - 2) Outside key control.
      - 3) Audible alarm that sounds when unauthorized use of door occurs.
      - 4) Silent alarm with remote signal capability for connection to remote indicating panel.
      - 5) Strike: Surface **OR** Mortise, **as directed**.
  3. Stand-Alone Exit Alarms: Surface mounted on door **OR** Mounted separate from door and activated by door movement switch, **as directed**.
    - a. Options:
      - 1) Low-battery alert.
      - 2) Outside key control.
      - 3) Audible alarm that sounds when unauthorized use of door occurs.
      - 4) Automatic rearming after authorized use, with adjustable time delay, **as directed**.
      - 5) Remote signal capability for connection to remote indicating panel.
- M. Surface Bolts
  1. Surface Bolts: BHMA A156.16.
  2. Half-Round Surface Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, 6-inch (152-mm) polished-brass or burnished-steel, half-round rod and knob; minimum 7/8-inch (22-mm) throw; with universal strike.
  3. Interlocking Surface Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, 6-inch (152-mm) extruded-brass or aluminum, interlocking track and rod; minimum 15/16-inch (24-mm) throw; with universal or mortise strike.
  4. Fire-Rated Surface Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, 8-inch (203-mm) steel bolt with 2 steel guides; minimum 1-inch (25-mm) throw; listed and labeled for fire-rated doors; with universal strike.
  5. Dutch-Door Surface Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, polished-brass bolt and knob, minimum 3/4-inch (19-mm) throw, with standard strike.
- N. Manual Flush Bolts

1. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16; minimum **3/4-inch (19-mm)** throw; designed for mortising into door edge.
  2. Manual-Extension Flush Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, fabricated from extruded brass or aluminum, with **12-inch (305-mm)** rod actuated by flat lever; listed and labeled for fire-rated doors, **as directed**. Provide with matching **OR** dustproof strike, **as directed**.
  3. Slide Flush Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, cast brass, with rod actuated by slide. Provide with matching **OR** dustproof strike, **as directed**.
  4. Tubular Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, polished-brass or polished-bronze, oval turn knob and escutcheon; minimum **9/16-inch (14-mm)** steel bolt with **1/2-inch (13-mm)** throw. Provide with matching **OR** dustproof strike, **as directed**.
  5. Dustproof Strikes: Locking type, Grade 1, polished wrought brass, with **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** diameter, spring-tension plunger.
- O. Automatic And Self-Latching Flush Bolts
1. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16; minimum **3/4-inch (19-mm)** throw; designed for mortising into door edge.
  2. Automatic Flush Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, fabricated from steel and brass components, with spring-activated bolts that automatically retract when active leaf is opened and that automatically engage when active door depresses bolt trigger; listed and labeled for fire-rated doors, **as directed**. Provide brass or stainless-steel cover plate, top and bottom matching **OR** dustproof strikes, **as directed**, guides, guide supports, wear plates, and shims.
  3. Self-Latching Flush Bolts: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**, fabricated from steel and brass components, with spring-activated bolts that automatically engage when active door depresses trigger; listed and labeled for fire-rated doors, **as directed**. Bolts are manually retracted by a slide in the bolt face. Provide brass or stainless-steel cover plate, matching **OR** dustproof, **as directed** top and bottom strikes, guides, guide supports, wear plates, and shims.
  4. Dustproof Strikes: Locking type, Grade 1, polished wrought brass, with **3/4-inch- (19-mm-)** diameter, spring-tension plunger.
- P. Exit Devices And Auxiliary Items
1. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3.
  2. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
  3. Fire Exit Devices: Devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252.
  4. Rim Exit Devices: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**.
    - a. Type: Type 1, rim **OR** Type 4, narrow stile **OR** Type 28, incorporating a deadbolt, **as directed**.
    - b. Grade: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**.
    - c. Actuating Bar: Cross bar **OR** Push pad **OR** Narrow-stile push pad, **as directed**.
    - d. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Wrought steel, **as directed**.
    - e. Electrified Options:
      - 1) Pushpad monitor switch.
      - 2) Double-pushpad monitor switch.
      - 3) Electric locking and unlocking.
      - 4) Delayed egress.
      - 5) Alarm.
  5. Mortise Exit Devices: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**.
    - a. Type: Type 3 **OR** Type 10, narrow stile, **as directed**.
    - b. Grade: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**.
    - c. Actuating Bar: Cross bar **OR** Push pad **OR** Narrow-stile push pad, **as directed**.
    - d. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Wrought steel, **as directed**.

- e. Electrified Options:
  - 1) Pushpad monitor switch.
  - 2) Double-pushpad monitor switch.
  - 3) Electric locking and unlocking.
  - 4) Delayed egress.
  - 5) Alarm.
6. Surface Vertical-Rod Exit Devices: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed.**
  - a. Type: Type 2 **OR** Type 5, narrow stile, **as directed.**
  - b. Grade: Grade 1 **OR** 2, as directed.
  - c. Actuating Bar: Cross bar **OR** Push pad **OR** Narrow-stile push pad, **as directed.**
  - d. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Wrought steel, **as directed.**
  - e. Configuration: Top and bottom rods **OR** Top rod, **as directed.**
  - f. Electrified Options:
    - 1) Pushpad monitor switch.
    - 2) Double-pushpad monitor switch.
    - 3) Electric locking and unlocking.
    - 4) Delayed egress.
    - 5) Alarm.
7. Concealed Vertical-Rod Exit Devices: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed.**
  - a. Type: Type 6, narrow stile **OR** Type 7, for wood doors **OR** Type 8, for metal doors, **as directed.**
  - b. Grade: Grade 1 **OR** 2, as directed.
  - c. Actuating Bar: Cross bar **OR** Push pad **OR** Narrow-stile push pad, **as directed.**
  - d. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Wrought steel, **as directed.**
  - e. Electrified Options:
    - 1) Pushpad monitor switch.
    - 2) Double-pushpad monitor switch.
    - 3) Electric locking and unlocking.
    - 4) Delayed egress.
    - 5) Alarm.
8. Combination Exit Devices: Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed.**
  - a. Type: Type 9, rim and surface vertical rod **OR** Type 11, mortise and surface vertical rod **OR** Type 12, mortise and concealed vertical rod, **as directed.**
  - b. Grade: Grade 1 **OR** 2, as directed.
  - c. Actuating Bar: Cross bar **OR** Push pad **OR** Narrow-stile push pad, **as directed.**
  - d. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Wrought steel, **as directed.**
  - e. Electrified Options:
    - 1) Pushpad monitor switch.
    - 2) Double-pushpad monitor switch.
    - 3) Electric locking and unlocking.
    - 4) Delayed egress.
    - 5) Alarm.
9. Automatic Latching Two-Point Bolts: Grade 1.
  - a. Type: Type 23, concealed **OR** Type 24, surface, **as directed.**
  - b. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed.**
10. Extension Flush Bolt Sets: BHMA A156.3; Grade 1.
  - a. Type: Type 25, automatic **OR** Type 27, self-latching, **as directed.**
  - b. Material: Brass **OR** Bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed.**
11. Electronic Exit Bars: Nonlatching electronic actuating (releasing) device activated by an adjustable capacitance sensor and with no moving parts; listed and labeled as panic exit hardware. Fabricate bar from extruded aluminum, and provide door and frame transfer device and 16 feet (4.9 m) of cord to route wiring off the door frame.





12. Extruded-Aluminum Removable Mullions: With malleable-iron top and bottom retainers, and prepared for strikes as follows:
  - a. Strikes: Two standard recessed strikes **OR** Two monitor strikes **OR** One standard and one electric strike, **as directed**.
13. Tube-Steel Removable Mullions: With malleable-iron top and bottom retainers, and prepared for strikes as follows:
  - a. Strikes: Two standard recessed strikes **OR** Two monitor strikes **OR** One standard and one electric strike, **as directed**.
14. Fire-Exit Removable Mullions: Provide removable mullions for use with fire exit devices complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire and panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305 and NFPA 252. Use mullions only with exit devices for which they have been tested.
15. Dummy Push Bar: Nonfunctioning push bar matching functional push bar.
  - a. Operation: Rigid **OR** Movable **OR** Movable with monitor switch, **as directed**.
16. Exit Device Outside Trim: Lever **OR** Lever with cylinder **OR** Knob **OR** Knob with cylinder **OR** Pull **OR** Pull with cylinder **OR** Thumb turn with cylinder, **as directed**; material and finish to match locksets, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Match design for lock trim, unless otherwise indicated.
17. Through-Bolt Fasteners: For exit devices and trim on metal doors **OR** non-fire-rated wood doors **OR** fire-rated wood doors, **as directed**.

Q. Lock Cylinders

1. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
2. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 **OR** 1A **OR** 2, **as directed**; permanent cores that are interchangeable **OR** removable, **as directed**; face finished to match lockset.
  - a. Number of Pins: Five **OR** Six **OR** Seven, **as directed**.
  - b. Type: Mortise **OR** Rim **OR** Bored-lock, **as directed** type.
3. High-Security Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.30; Grade 1 **OR** 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**; Type M, mechanical **OR** E, electrical, **as directed**; permanent cores that are removable; face finished to match lockset.
  - a. Number of Pins: Six **OR** Seven, **as directed**.
  - b. Type: Mortise **OR** Rim **OR** Bored-lock, **as directed** type.
4. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.
5. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

R. Keying

1. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference.
  - a. No Master Key System: Only change keys operate cylinder.
  - b. Master Key System: Change keys and a master key operate cylinders.
  - c. Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, and a grand master key operate cylinders.
  - d. Great-Grand Master Key System: Change keys, a master key, a grand master key, and a great-grand master key operate cylinders.
  - e. Existing System:
    - 1) Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
    - 2) Re-key Owner's existing master key system into new keying system.
  - f. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.
2. Keys: Nickel silver **OR** Brass, **as directed**.
  - a. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:

- 1) Notation: "DO NOT DUPLICATE." **OR** Information to be furnished by Owner., **as directed**
  - b. Quantity: In addition to one extra key blank for each lock, provide the following:
    - 1) Cylinder Change Keys: Three.
    - 2) Master Keys: Five.
    - 3) Grand Master Keys: Five.
    - 4) Great-Grand Master Keys: Five.
- S. Key Control System
1. Key Control Cabinet: BHMA A156.5; metal cabinet with baked-enamel finish; containing key-holding hooks, labels, 2 sets of key tags with self-locking key holders, key-gathering envelopes, and temporary and permanent markers; with key capacity of 150 percent of the number of locks.
    - a. Multiple-Drawer Cabinet: Cabinet with drawers equipped with key-holding panels and key envelope storage, and progressive-type ball-bearing suspension slides. Include single cylinder lock to lock all drawers.
    - b. Wall-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet with hinged-panel door equipped with key-holding panels and pin-tumbler cylinder door lock.
    - c. Portable Cabinet: Tray for mounting in file cabinet, equipped with key-holding panels, envelopes, and cross-index system.
  2. Key Lock Boxes: Designed for storage of two **OR** 10 keys, **as directed**, with tamper switches to connect to intrusion detection system, **as directed**.
  3. Cross-Index System: Multiple **OR** Single, **as directed**-index system for recording key information. Include three receipt forms for each key-holding hook. Set up by key control manufacturer **OR** Installer, **as directed**.
  4. Key Control System Software: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1; multiple-index system for recording and reporting key-holder listings, tracking keys and lock and key history, and printing receipts for transactions. Include instruction manual.
- T. Operating Trim
1. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6; aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Flat Push Plates: 0.050 inch (1.3 mm) **OR** 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, **as directed**, 4 inches wide by 16 inches high (102 mm wide by 406 mm high), with square corners and beveled edges; secured with exposed screws.
  3. Push-Pull Plates: 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, 3-1/2 inches wide by 15-3/4 inches high (89 mm wide by 400 mm high), with square corners, beveled edges, and raised integral lip; secured with exposed screws.
  4. Straight Door Pulls: With minimum clearance of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) from face of door.
    - a. Type: 3/4-inch (19-mm) constant-diameter **OR** variable-diameter **OR** flattened-round **OR** hospital-type pull, **as directed**.
    - b. Mounting: Surface applied with concealed fasteners **OR** Through bolted with oval-head machine screws and countersunk washers **OR** Back to back with threaded sleeves, **as directed**.
    - c. Overall Length: 9 inches (229 mm), **as directed**.
  5. Offset Door Pulls: 1-inch (25-mm) constant-diameter pull with minimum clearance of 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) from face of door and offset of 2 inches (51 mm).
    - a. Mounting: Surface applied with concealed fasteners **OR** Through bolted with oval-head machine screws and countersunk washers **OR** Back to back with threaded sleeves, **as directed**.
    - b. Overall Length: 9 inches (229 mm).
  6. Flush Door Pulls: Mortised 1/2 inch (13 mm) deep; secured with screws.
    - a. Shape: Rectangular with rectangular recess.
    - b. Size: 3-1/2 inches wide by 4-3/4 inches high (89 mm wide by 121 mm high).
  7. Straight Pull-Plate Door Pulls: 0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick plate, 4 inches wide by 16 inches high (102 mm wide by 406 mm high) with square corners and beveled edges; pull with minimum clearance of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) from face of door.

- a. Type: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** constant-diameter **OR** variable-diameter **OR** flattened-round **OR** hospital-type pull, **as directed**.
- b. Mounting: Surface applied with concealed fasteners **OR** Through bolted with oval-head machine screws and countersunk washers **OR** Back to back with threaded sleeves, **as directed**.
- c. Overall Pull Length: **9 inches (229 mm)**.
8. Offset Push-Pull Door Pulls: **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick plate, **4 inches wide by 16 inches high (102 mm wide by 406 mm high)** with square corners and beveled edges; **1-inch (25-mm)** constant-diameter pull with minimum clearance of **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** from face of door and offset of **2 inches (51 mm)**.
  - a. Overall Pull Length: **9 inches (229 mm)**.
9. Single Push Bar: Horizontal bar, with minimum clearance of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** from face of door.
  - a. Shape and Size: **1-inch (25-mm)** constant-diameter round bar **OR** Minimum **3/8-by-1-1/4-inch (10-by-32-mm)** flat bar, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting: Surface applied with concealed fasteners **OR** Through bolted with oval-head machine screws and countersunk washers, **as directed**.
10. Double Pull Bar: Two horizontal bars connected by matching vertical pull bar and spaced at **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c.; with minimum clearance of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** from face of door.
  - a. Shape and Size: **1-inch (25-mm)** constant-diameter round bars **OR** Minimum **3/8-by- 1-1/4-inch (10-by-32-mm)** flat bars, **as directed**.
  - b. Mounting: Surface applied with concealed fasteners **OR** Through bolted with oval-head machine screws and countersunk washers, **as directed**.

#### U. Accessories For Pairs Of Doors

1. Coordinators: BHMA A156.3; consisting of active-leaf, hold-open lever and inactive-leaf release trigger; fabricated from steel with nylon-coated strike plates; with built-in, adjustable safety release; and with internal override.
2. Carry-Open Bars: BHMA A156.3; prevent the inactive leaf from opening before the active leaf; provide polished brass or bronze carry-open bars with strike plate for inactive leaves of pairs of doors unless automatic or self-latching bolts are used.
3. Flat Overlapping Astragals: BHMA A156.22; flat primed steel **OR** zinc-plated steel **OR** aluminum **OR** stainless steel **OR** brass metal bar, **as directed**, surface mounted on face of door with screws; minimum **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick by **2 inches (51 mm)** wide by full height of door.
4. Rigid, Housed Astragals: BHMA A156.22; gasket material held in place by metal housing; fastened to face of door with screws.
  - a. Gasket Material: Closed-cell sponge silicone **OR** Closed-cell sponge neoprene **OR** Neoprene **OR** Silicone bulb, **as directed**.
  - b. Housing Material: Aluminum **OR** Copper alloy (brass or bronze), **as directed**.
5. Overlapping-with-Gasket Astragals: BHMA A156.22; T-shaped metal, surface mounted on edge of door with screws; with integral gasket and base metal as follows:
  - a. Base Metal: Primed steel **OR** Zinc-plated steel **OR** Aluminum **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  - b. Gasket Material: Vinyl **OR** Silicone **OR** Sponge neoprene **OR** Brush pile **OR** Polypropylene, **as directed**.

#### V. Surface Closers

1. Surface Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves and forged-steel main arm. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
2. Cast-Aluminum Surface Closers: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; Traditional Type with mechanism enclosed in cast-aluminum alloy shell.
  - a. Mounting: Hinge side **OR** Opposite hinge side **OR** Parallel arm **OR** Bracket, **as directed**.

- b. Type: Regular arm **OR** Fusible-link holder arm **OR** Two-point hold-open arm **OR** Delayed action closing, **as directed**.
    - c. Backcheck: Factory preset **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**, effective between 60 and 85 degrees of door opening.
  - 3. Surface Closer without Cover: Grade 1 **OR** 2 Modern Type, **as directed**.
    - a. Mounting: Hinge side **OR** Opposite hinge side **OR** Parallel arm **OR** Bracket **OR** Hinge side top jamb **OR** Opposite side top jamb, **as directed**.
    - b. Type: Regular arm **OR** Hold open **OR** Fusible-link holder arm **OR** Slide track arm **OR** Dead stop **OR** Dead stop hold open **OR** Delayed action closing, **as directed**.
    - c. Backcheck: Factory preset **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**, effective between 60 and 85 degrees of door opening.
    - d. Closing Power Adjustment: At least 50 **OR** 35 **OR** 15 percent more than minimum tested value, **as directed**.
  - 4. Surface Closer with Cover: Grade 1 **OR** 2 Modern Type, **as directed**; with mechanism enclosed in cover.
    - a. Mounting: Hinge side **OR** Opposite hinge side **OR** Parallel arm **OR** Bracket **OR** Hinge side, top jamb **OR** Opposite side, top jamb, **as directed**.
    - b. Type: Regular arm **OR** Hold open **OR** Fusible-link holder arm **OR** Slide track arm **OR** Dead stop **OR** Dead stop hold open **OR** Delayed action closing, **as directed**.
    - c. Backcheck: Factory preset **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**, effective between 60 and 85 degrees of door opening.
    - d. Cover Material: Aluminum **OR** Plated steel **OR** Molded plastic, **as directed**.
    - e. Closing Power Adjustment: At least 50 **OR** 35 **OR** 15 percent more than minimum tested value, **as directed**.
- W. Concealed Closers
- 1. Concealed Closers: BHMA A156.4; rack-and-pinion hydraulic type with adjustable sweep and latch speeds controlled by key-operated valves. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
  - 2. Concealed-in-Door Closer: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; mortised into top rail of minimum ~~1-3/4-inch~~ (44-mm) thick doors and track mortised into head frame; with double lever arm indicated.
    - a. Type: Surface shoe **OR** Mortised soffit plate, **as directed**.
    - b. Arm: Regular **OR** Hold open, **as directed**.
    - c. Closing Power Adjustment: At least 50 **OR** 35 **OR** 15 percent more than minimum tested value, **as directed**.
  - 3. Concealed Overhead Closer: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; mortised into head frame; with cast-metal body and exposed cover plate.
    - a. Type: Exposed arm with surface shoe, single acting **OR** Concealed arm and track, butt or pivot hung, single acting **OR** Concealed arm and track, center pivoted, single acting **OR** Concealed arm and track, center pivoted, double acting, **as directed**.
    - b. Arm: Regular **OR** Automatic hold open **OR** Manually selected hold open **OR** Fusible-link holder arm, **as directed**.
    - c. Track: Regular **OR** Automatic hold open **OR** Manually selected hold open, **as directed**.
    - d. Cover Plate Material: Aluminum **OR** Plated steel, **as directed**.
    - e. Backcheck: Factory preset **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**.
    - f. Closing Power Adjustment: At least 50 **OR** 35 percent more than minimum tested value, **as directed**.
  - 4. Concealed Floor Closer: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; with cement case and cast-iron closer body case and top pivot; for single **OR** double-acting doors, **as directed**.
    - a. Type: Center pivoted; include top pivot **OR** Offset pivoted; include top pivot **OR** Independently hung, **as directed**.
    - b. Fire Rated: Listed for use with labeled fire-rated doors where indicated.
    - c. Function: Regular **OR** Automatic hold open **OR** Manually selected hold open **OR** Delayed action closing, **as directed**.



- d. Backcheck: Factory preset **OR** Adjustable, **as directed**.
  - e. Closing Power Adjustment: At least 50 **OR** 35 percent more than minimum tested value, **as directed**.
  - f. Case Depth: Regular, **4 inches (100 mm)** **OR** Shallow, **2 inches (50 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - g. Floor Plates: Provide flush cover plates matching door hardware finish **OR** recessed floor plates with insert of floor finish material and extended closer spindle to accommodate thickness of floor finish, **as directed** unless thresholds are indicated.
    - 1) Material: Aluminum **OR** Plated steel, **as directed**.
- X. Closer Holder Release Devices
- 1. Closer Holder Release Devices: BHMA A156.15; Grade 1; closer connected with separate or integral releasing and fire- or smoke-detecting devices. Door shall become self-closing on interruption of signal to release device. Automatic release is activated by smoke detection system **OR** loss of power, **as directed**.
    - a. Type: Single-point hold open **OR** Multiple-point hold open **OR** Free-swinging release, **as directed**.
    - b. Mounting: Surface mounted on face of door **OR** Surface mounted on face of top jamb **OR** Surface mounted on stop **OR** Mortised into top rail of door **OR** Mortised into top jamb **OR** Recessed into floor, **as directed**.
    - c. Options: Adjustable backcheck **OR** Integral smoke detector **OR** Adjustable spring power **OR** Adjustable hold-open manual release force, **as directed**.
- Y. Mechanical Stops And Holders
- 1. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16; polished cast brass, bronze, or aluminum base metal, **as directed**.
  - 2. Rigid-Type Floor Stop: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; with rubber bumper; for surface-screw **OR** expansion-shield, **as directed** application.
  - 3. Dome-Type Floor Stop: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; with minimum **1-inch- (25-mm-)** high bumper for doors without threshold and **1-3/8-inch- (35-mm-)** high bumper for doors with threshold; provide with extruded aluminum riser for carpet installations.
  - 4. Combination Floor Stop and Holder: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; for surface-screw **OR** expansion-shield application, **as directed**; with semiautomatic hold open **OR** automatic hold open and release by pushing door, **as directed**.
  - 5. Manual Combination Floor Stop and Holder: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)** long, with holder, keeper, and rubber bumper; for surface-screw **OR** expansion-shield application, **as directed**.
  - 6. Chain Door Stops: Grade 2; welded chain, each end attached to compression springs, both covered with protective sleeve; for surface-screw application.
  - 7. Wall Bumpers: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; with rubber bumper; **2-1/2-inch (64-mm)** diameter, minimum **3/4-inch (19-mm)** projection from wall; with backplate for concealed fastener installation; with convex **OR** concave, **as directed** bumper configuration.
  - 8. Roller-Type Wall Bumpers: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; minimum **4-3/8-inch (111-mm)** projection from wall; for surface-screw application.
  - 9. Lever-Type Door Holders: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; minimum **4-inch- (102-mm-)** long arm that swings up and remains in vertical position; with replaceable rubber tip; for surface-screw application.
  - 10. Plunger-Type Door Holders: Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**; minimum **1-1/8-inch (29-mm)** plunger throw; with replaceable rubber tip; for surface-screw application.
- Z. Electromagnetic Stops And Holders
- 1. Electromagnetic Door Holders: BHMA A156.15, Grade 1; wall-mounted electromagnetic single **OR** floor-mounted electromagnet single **OR** floor-mounted electromagnet double unit, **as directed** with strike plate attached to swinging door; coordinated with fire detectors and interface with fire alarm system for labeled fire-rated door assemblies.



AA. Overhead Stops And Holders

1. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.
2. Overhead Concealed Slide Holders: Type 1; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; hold open and release by push and pull of door unless control is set in inactive position; with stop, shock absorber, and adjustable holding pressure; for single **OR** double, **as directed**-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
3. Overhead Concealed Slide Stops: Type 1; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; release by push and pull of door unless control is set in inactive position; with stop, shock absorber, and adjustable holding pressure; for single **OR** double, **as directed**-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
4. Overhead Surface-Mounted Slide Holders: Type 2; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; hold open and release by push and pull of door unless control is set in inactive position; with stop, shock absorber, and adjustable holding pressure; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
5. Overhead Surface-Mounted, Concealed Slide Stops: Type 2; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; release by push and pull of door unless control is set in inactive position; with stop, shock absorber, and adjustable holding pressure; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
6. Overhead Surface-Mounted, Jointed-Arm Holders: Type 3; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; hold open and release by push and pull of door; control capable of being set in inactive position; with stop and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
7. Overhead Surface-Mounted, Jointed-Arm Stops: Type 3; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; release by push and pull of door; control capable of being set in inactive position; with stop and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
8. Overhead Concealed, Friction Slide Holders: Type 4; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with frictional element held under adjustable pressure, free-acting shoulder pivots, and shock absorber; for single **OR** double, **as directed**-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
9. Overhead Concealed, Nonfriction Slide Stops: Type 4; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with nonfrictional element held under adjustable pressure and shock absorber; for single **OR** double, **as directed**-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
10. Overhead Concealed, Nonfriction Slide Holders: Type 4; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with nonfrictional element held under adjustable pressure, automatic hold-open, and shock absorber; for single **OR** double, **as directed**-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
11. Overhead Surface-Mounted, Friction Slide Holders: Type 5; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with frictional element held under adjustable pressure, free-acting shoulder pivots, and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
12. Overhead Surface-Mounted, Nonfriction Slide Stops: Type 5; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with nonfrictional element held under adjustable pressure and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
13. Overhead Surface-Mounted, Nonfriction Slide Holders: Type 5; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; with nonfrictional element held under adjustable pressure, automatic hold-open, and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
14. Overhead Surface-Mounted Rod Holders: Type 8; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; hold open and release by push and pull of door unless roller cam is set in inactive position; with stop, shock absorber, and adjustable spring tension; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
15. Overhead Surface-Mounted Rod Stops: Type 8; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; release by push and pull of door unless roller cam is set in inactive position; with stop, shock absorber, and adjustable spring tension; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
16. Overhead Surface-Mounted Cantilever Holders: Type 9; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; hold open and release by push and pull of door or thumb turn; with stop and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.
17. Overhead Surface-Mounted Cantilever Stops: Type 9; Grade 1 **OR 2, as directed**; release by push and pull of door or thumb turn; with stop and shock absorber; for single-acting doors opening 110 degrees.

BB. Door Gasketing

1. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; air leakage not to exceed **0.50 cfm per foot (0.000774 cu. m/s per m)** of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to

- ASTM E 283; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
2. Adhesive-Backed Perimeter Gasketing: Vinyl bulb **OR** Sponge silicone **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene bulb **OR** Sponge neoprene gasket material, **as directed** applied to frame rabbet with self-adhesive.
  3. Spring-Metal Perimeter Gasketing: Minimum **0.008-inch- (0.20-mm-)** thick brass or bronze **OR** **0.008-inch- (0.20-mm-)** thick stainless steel **OR** **0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-)** thick aluminum gasket material, **as directed** fastened to frame rabbet with nails or screws.
  4. Rigid, Housed, Perimeter Gasketing: Sponge silicone **OR** Sponge neoprene **OR** Silicone bulb **OR** Polyurethane bulb **OR** Vinyl bulb **OR** Vinyl brush **OR** Nylon brush **OR** Thermoplastic elastomer, **as directed** gasket material held in place by aluminum **OR** brass or bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed** housing; fastened to frame stop with screws.
  5. Adjustable, Housed, Perimeter Gasketing: Screw-adjustable sponge silicone **OR** sponge neoprene **OR** silicone bulb **OR** polyurethane bulb **OR** vinyl bulb **OR** vinyl brush **OR** nylon brush **OR** thermoplastic elastomer gasket material, **as directed**, held in place by aluminum **OR** brass or bronze **OR** stainless steel housing, **as directed**; fastened to frame stop with screws.
  6. Interlocking Perimeter Gasketing: Minimum **0.018-inch- (0.46-mm-)** thick zinc **OR** **0.015-inch- (0.38-mm-)** thick bronze gasket material, **as directed** consisting of two pieces, one fastened to door and one fastened to frame, that interlock when door is closed; mounted with screws.
  7. Overlapping Astragals for Meeting Stiles: EPDM strip **OR** Vinyl strip **OR** Nylon brush gasket material, **as directed** held in place by aluminum **OR** bronze, **as directed** housing and overlapping when doors are closed; mounted to face of meeting stile with screws; surface mounted to each **OR** one door, **as directed**.
  8. Meeting Astragals for Meeting Stiles: Silicone bulb **OR** Neoprene bulb **OR** Vinyl bulb **OR** Nylon brush **OR** Brush pile **OR** Thermoplastic elastomer gasket material, **as directed** held in place by aluminum **OR** bronze housing, **as directed** mounted with screws.
    - a. Mounting: Surface mounted on face of each door **OR** Surface mounted on face of one door **OR** Semimortised into edge of each door **OR** Semimortised into edge of one door **OR** Mortised into edge of each door **OR** Mortised into edge of one door, **as directed**.
  9. Adjustable Astragals for Meeting Stiles: Screw-adjustable silicone **OR** neoprene **OR** vinyl **OR** vinyl-covered magnet **OR** brush pile **OR** thermoplastic elastomer gasket material, **as directed** held in place by aluminum **OR** bronze housing, **as directed** mounted with screws.
    - a. Mounting: Surface mounted on face **OR** Semimortised into edge **OR** Mortised into edge of each door, **as directed**.
  10. Door Sweeps: Neoprene **OR** Vinyl **OR** Nylon brush **OR** Polyurethane **OR** Silicone gasket material, **as directed** held in place by flat aluminum **OR** bronze, **as directed** housing or flange; surface mounted to face of door with screws.
  11. Door Shoes: Vinyl **OR** Thermoplastic elastomer **OR** Neoprene **OR** Brush pile gasket material, **as directed** held in place by aluminum **OR** bronze housing, **as directed**; mounted to bottom edge of door with screws.
    - a. Extended Housing: One side **OR** Both sides of door, **as directed**.
    - b. Mounting: Surface mounted on **OR** Mortised into bottom edge of door, **as directed**.
  12. Automatic Door Bottoms: Sponge neoprene **OR** Sponge silicone **OR** Thermoplastic elastomer **OR** Nylon brush gasket material, **as directed** held in place by aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** aluminum lined with **0.047-inch (1.2-mm)** thick lead housing, **as directed** that automatically drops to form seal when door is closed; mounted to bottom edge of door with screws.
    - a. Mounting: Surface mounted on face **OR** Semimortised into bottom **OR** Mortised into bottom of door, **as directed**.
    - b. Type: Low-closing-force type for doors required to meet accessibility requirements.

#### CC. Thresholds

1. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21; fabricated to full width of opening indicated.
2. Compressing-Top Thresholds: Metal member with compressible vinyl seal on top of threshold that seals against bottom of door; and base metal of aluminum **OR** extruded bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

3. Saddle Thresholds:
    - a. Type: Smooth top **OR** Fluted top **OR** Fluted top and offset **OR** Thermal break and fluted top **OR** Applied gasketed stop and fluted top **OR** Carpet separator with fluted top **OR** Fluted top, barrier free, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  4. Half-Saddle Thresholds: Fluted-top metal member; and base metal of aluminum **OR** extruded bronze, **as directed**.
  5. Interlocking Thresholds: Fluted-top metal member with integral lip designed to engage a hook strip applied to door.
    - a. Type: Single lip **OR** Double lip **OR** Double-lip water return **OR** Double-lip water return with aluminum pan **OR** Single lip with thermal barrier, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze, **as directed**.
  6. Latching/Rabbeted Thresholds:
    - a. Type: Fluted **OR** Smooth **OR** Offset with fluted top, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze, **as directed**.
  7. Latching/Rabbeted Thresholds with Gasket: Fluted-top metal member with gasket.
    - a. Type: Offset **OR** Thermal barrier, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze, **as directed**.
    - c. Gasket Material: Vinyl **OR** Silicone **OR** Neoprene **OR** Brush pile **OR** Closed-cell sponge neoprene, **as directed**.
  8. Latching/Rabbeted Panic Thresholds:
    - a. Type: Fluted, barrier free **OR** Fluted with gasket top, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze, **as directed**.
  9. Plate Thresholds: Solid metal plate.
    - a. Top Surface: Fluted **OR** Fluted with slip-resistant abrasive, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded brass or bronze **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  10. Ramped Thresholds: Modular, interlocking, sloped, fluted-top metal assemblies with closed return ends; 1:12 slope.
    - a. Top Surface: Fluted **OR** Fluted with slip-resistant abrasive, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze, **as directed**.
  11. Saddle Thresholds for Floor Closers: Fluted top.
    - a. Type: Type A, for center-hung doors; ends not mitered **OR** Type B, for offset-hung doors; ends not mitered **OR** Type C, for center-hung doors; ends mitered **OR** Type D, for offset-hung doors; ends mitered, **as directed**.
    - b. Base Metal: Aluminum **OR** Extruded bronze, **as directed**.
- DD. Sliding Door Hardware
1. Sliding Door Hardware: BHMA A156.14; consisting of complete sets including rails, hangers, supports, bumpers, floor guides, and accessories indicated.
  2. Horizontal Sliding Door Hardware: Grade 1; rated for minimum door weight of 240 lb (109 kg) **OR** 320 lb (145 kg) **OR** 450 lb (205 kg) **OR** 560 lb (254 kg) **OR** 640 lb (290 kg) **OR** 800 lb (363 kg) **OR** 1000 lb (455 kg) **OR** 1500 lb (681 kg), **as directed**.
    - a. Material: Wrought steel **OR** Galvanized steel or anodized aluminum, **as directed**.
    - b. Rail: Box without mounting brackets **OR** Box with attached mounting brackets **OR** Box with attached flashing **OR** Round without mounting brackets **OR** Round with attached mounting brackets, **as directed**.
    - c. Rail Supports: Single sidewall **OR** Double sidewall **OR** Triple sidewall **OR** Single overhead **OR** Single overhead parallel **OR** Single overhead cross-ear **OR** Double overhead cross-ear **OR** Triple overhead cross-ear style, **as directed**.
      - 1) Provide intermediate, end, and splice type track supports as required by rail configuration and door weight indicated.
    - d. Hanger Configuration: Four-wheel truck **OR** hanger assembly with top mounting plate **OR** hanger assembly with drop bolt **OR** hanger assembly with single drop strap **OR** hanger assembly with double drop strap, **as directed**.
      - 1) Wheel Assembly: Steel wheels with ball bearings.
    - e. Accessories:



- 1) Continuous bottom guide.
  - 2) Guide rail and guide rail brackets as required by rail configuration.
  - 3) Bow handle, minimum 6 inches (150 mm) in overall length.
  - 4) Flush pull, minimum 4 by 5-1/2 by 3/4 inch (100 by 140 by 19 mm), mortised into door.
  - 5) Cane bolt, minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter by 12 inches (305 mm) long.
  - 6) Stay roller, minimum 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter wheel.
  - 7) Floor center stop of cast iron.
  - 8) End guide and stop.
  - 9) Parallel door floor guides.
  - 10) Door stop.
  - 11) Sliding door latch.
  - 12) Bumper shoe, minimum 0.0598-inch (1.5-mm) thickness.
  - 13) Cremona bolt with lever handle, minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter oval or round rod, and rod guides at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  - 14) Top spring bolt, minimum 6 inches (150 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm), as directed; malleable iron and with angle or surface strike and 24-inch (610-mm) chain.
  - 15) Foot bolt minimum 6 inches (150 mm) OR 8 inches (200 mm), as directed; wrought steel, cast iron, or malleable iron.
3. Bypassing Sliding Door Hardware: Rails and door hardware that allow vertical adjustment and rated for doors weighing up to 120 lb (54 kg) (Grade 1) OR 80 lb (36 kg) (Grade 1) OR 40 lb (18 kg) (Grade 2), as directed.
- a. Rail Material: Galvanized wrought steel OR Extruded aluminum, as directed.
  - b. Rail Configuration: V-grooved double leg OR V-grooved double leg with fascia OR I-beam, as directed.
  - c. Mounting: Top hung OR Bottom supporting with overhead guide, as directed.
  - d. Wheel Assembly: Two wheel or four wheel, with roller bearings.
  - e. Pulls: Flush, mortised into door OR Cast, forged, or extruded brass or bronze surface-applied type OR Wrought brass or bronze edge type, mortised into edge of door OR Sliding door latch OR Sliding door lock with emergency release, as directed.
  - f. Accessories:
    - 1) Bumper stops; wrought steel.
    - 2) Floor guides.
4. Pocket Sliding Door Hardware: Grade 1; rated for doors weighing up to 120 lb (54 kg) OR 80 lb (36 kg), as directed, overhead box rails and door hardware that allows vertical adjustment.
- a. Rail Material: Galvanized wrought steel OR Extruded aluminum, as directed.
  - b. Door Type: Single OR Biparting, as directed.
  - c. Rail Configuration: V-grooved double leg OR I-beam, as directed.
  - d. Wheel Assembly: Two wheel or four wheel, roller bearings.
  - e. Pulls: Flush, mortised into door OR Cast, forged, or extruded brass or bronze surface-applied type OR Wrought brass or bronze edge type, mortised into edge of door OR Sliding door latch OR Sliding door lock with emergency release, as directed.
  - f. Accessories:
    - 1) Bumper stops; wrought steel.
    - 2) Floor guides installed within pocket.

#### EE. Folding Door Hardware

1. General: BHMA A156.14; complete sets including overhead rails, hangers, supports, bumpers, floor guides, and accessories indicated.
2. Bifolding Door Hardware: Rated for door panels weighing up to 50 lb (23 kg) (Grade 1) OR 30 lb (14 kg) (Grade 2), as directed; with rails and door hardware that allow horizontal and vertical adjustment.
  - a. Rail Material: Galvanized wrought steel OR Extruded aluminum, as directed.
  - b. Rail Configuration: V-grooved double leg OR V-grooved double leg with fascia OR I-beam, as directed.

- c. Mounting: Surface mounted overhead **OR** Top and bottom hung, **as directed**.
  - d. Wheel Assembly: Two wheel or four wheel, with roller bearings.
3. Multiple Folding Door Hardware: Rated for door panels weighing up to **50 lb (23 kg)** (Grade 1) **OR 30 lb (14 kg)** (Grade 2), **as directed**; with rails and door hardware that allows horizontal and vertical adjustment.
  - a. Rail Material: Galvanized wrought steel **OR** Extruded aluminum, **as directed**.
  - b. Rail Configuration: V-grooved double leg **OR** V-grooved double leg with fascia **OR** I-beam, **as directed**.
  - c. Mounting: Surface mounted overhead **OR** Top and bottom hung, **as directed**.
  - d. Wheel Assembly: Two wheel or four wheel, with roller bearing.
- FF. Metal Protective Trim Units
  1. Metal Protective Trim Units: BHMA A156.6; fabricated from **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick aluminum **OR** brass **OR** bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**; with manufacturer's standard machine or self-tapping screw fasteners.
  2. Armor Plates: **36 inches (914 mm) OR 40 inches (1016 mm) OR 42 inches (1067 mm)** high, **as directed by** door width with allowance for frame stops.
  3. Kick Plates: **8 inches (203 mm) OR 10 inches (254 mm) OR 12 inches (305 mm)** high, **as directed by** door width with allowance for frame stops.
  4. Mop Plates: **4 inches (102 mm) OR 6 inches (152 mm)** high, **as directed by 1 inch (25 mm)** less than door width.
  5. Stretcher Plates: **6 inches (152 mm) OR 8 inches (203 mm)** high, **as directed by** door width with allowance for frame stops.
  6. Nonmortise Angle Door Edging: **48-inch- (1220-mm-) OR 42-inch- (1067-mm-)** high, **as directed by** minimum **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick metal sheet formed into angle shape; with **1-1/4-inch (32-mm)** length of leg on face of door; for surface mounting on door.
    - a. Leg Offset: To accommodate door protection plate of type indicated.
  7. Mortise Angle Door Edging: **48-inch- (1220-mm) OR 42-inch- (1067-mm-)** high, **as directed by** minimum **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick metal sheet formed into angle shape; with **7/8-inch (22-mm)** length of leg on face of door; for mortise application into edge of door.
  8. Nonmortise Cap Door Edging: **48-inch- (1220-mm) OR 42-inch- (1067-mm-)** high, **as directed by** minimum **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick metal sheet formed into "U" shape; with **1-1/4-inch (32-mm)** length of leg on faces of door; for surface mounting on door.
    - a. Leg Offset: To accommodate door protection plate of type indicated.
  9. Mortise Cap Door Edging: **48-inch- (1220-mm) OR 42-inch- (1067-mm-)** high, **as directed by** minimum **0.050-inch- (1.3-mm-)** thick metal sheet formed into "U" shape; with **7/8-inch (22-mm)** length of leg on faces of door; for mortise application into edge of door.
- GG. Plastic Protection Plates
  1. Plastic Protection Plates: BHMA A156.6; fabricated with four sides beveled; plastic laminate; **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick; NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS **OR** rigid plastic; **0.060-inch- (1.5-mm-)** thick, PVC or acrylic-modified vinyl plastic **OR** acrylic; **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** thick, **as directed**.
  2. Armor Plates: **36 inches (914 mm) OR 40 inches (1016 mm) OR 42 inches (1067 mm)**, high, **as directed by** door width with allowance for frame stops.
  3. Kick Plates: **8 inches (203 mm) OR 10 inches (254 mm) OR 12 inches (305 mm)** high **as directed by** door width with allowance for frame stops.
  4. Mop Plates: **4 inches (102 mm) OR 6 inches (152 mm)** high **as directed by 1 inch (25 mm)** less than door width.
  5. Stretcher Plates: **6 inches (152 mm) OR 8 inches (203 mm)** high **as directed by** door width with allowance for frame stops.
  6. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range **OR** Match Architect's sample **OR** As indicated by manufacturer's designations in the door hardware schedule, **as directed**.
- HH. Auxiliary Door Hardware
  1. Auxiliary Hardware: BHMA A156.16.



2. Chain Door Guards: Grade 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**; polished cast brass or bronze or extruded brass; with plate slotted to receive **6-inch- (150-mm-)** long welded chain secured to an anchor plate. Guard allows door to be opened **3 inches (75 mm)** with chain engaged in slotted plate. Equip with chain holder.
3. Rod-Type Door Guards: Grade 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**; straight door-mounted rod that engages U-shaped, jamb-mounted rod. U-shaped rod can swing 180 degrees away from door; rod limits door opening when engaged. Fabricated from polished cast brass **OR** bronze **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
4. Coat Hooks: Grade 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**; two curved hooks with rounded ends; **3-inch (75-mm)** projection from wall; for surface-screw application; fabricated from polished cast brass **OR** polished cast bronze **OR** burnished cast aluminum, **as directed**.
5. Garment Hooks: Grade 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**; one long hat hook and one small coat hook; **3-3/4-inch (95-mm)** projection from wall with **7-inch (178-mm)** overall height; for surface-screw application; fabricated from polished cast brass **OR** burnished cast aluminum, **as directed**.
6. Door Knockers: Grade 1; solid brass with engraved number and nameplates, **as directed**.
7. Wide-Angle Door Viewers: Grade 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**; solid brass with optical glass lenses; adjustable to door thickness and permitting 1-way observation with minimum 190-degree viewing angle.
8. Fire-Rated Door Viewers: Solid brass with optical glass lenses; listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies; adjustable to door thickness, and permitting 1-way observation with minimum 120 **OR** 150 **OR** 190-degree viewing angle **as directed**.
9. House Numbers: Grade 1; wrought, cast, or forged brass; **4 inches (102 mm)** high; for screw application.
10. Letter Box Plates: Grade 1 **OR 2 OR 3, as directed**; with spring-loaded front plate with brass spring and inside covered gravity flap or hood; fabricated from wrought brass **OR** wrought bronze **OR** aluminum, **as directed**.
  - a. Regular Size, Inswinging: Minimum **0.036-inch (0.9-mm)** metal thickness, with minimum **7-by-1-5/8-inch (178-by-41-mm)** opening.
  - b. Regular Size, Outswinging: Minimum **0.036-inch (0.9-mm)** metal thickness, with minimum **7-by-1-1/2-inch (178-by-38-mm)** opening.
  - c. Magazine Size, Outswinging: Minimum **0.051-inch (1.3-mm)** metal thickness, with minimum **11-by-1-7/8-inch (279-by-48-mm)** opening.
11. Silencers for Wood Door Frames: Grade 1; neoprene or rubber; minimum **5/8 by 3/4 inch (16 by 19 mm)**; fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.
12. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: Grade 1; neoprene or rubber; minimum diameter **1/2 inch (13 mm)**; fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.

## II. Auxiliary Electrified Door Hardware

1. Boxed Power Supplies: Modular unit in NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure; filtered and regulated; voltage rating and type matching requirements of door hardware served; listed and labeled for use with fire alarm systems.
2. Monitor Strikes: Cast strike with toggle **OR** Dustbox monitor for installation under standard strike, **as directed**.
3. Door Position Switches: Magnetically operated reed switch designed for concealed mounting.
4. Door and Frame Transfer Devices: Steel housing for mortise in hinge stile of door, with flexible tube for wiring bundle; accommodating doors that swing open to 120 degrees.

## JJ. FABRICATION

1. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Do not provide products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location except in conjunction with required fire-rated labels and as otherwise approved by the Owner.
  - a. Manufacturer's identification is permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
2. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal indicated, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness.

Furnish metals of a quality equal to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18.

3. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws that comply with commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
4. Fire-Rated Applications:
  - a. Wood or Machine Screws: For the following:
    - 1) Hinges mortised to doors or frames; use threaded-to-the-head wood screws for wood doors and frames, as directed.
    - 2) Strike plates to frames.
    - 3) Closers to doors and frames.
  - b. Steel Through Bolts: For the following unless door blocking is provided:
    - 1) Surface hinges to doors.
    - 2) Closers to doors and frames.
    - 3) Surface-mounted exit devices.
5. Spacers or Sex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
6. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."
7. Gasketing Fasteners: Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.

#### KK. FINISHES

1. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
3. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
2. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Steel Doors and Frames: For Surface-Applied Door Hardware: Drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
2. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."

#### C. Installation



1. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated on Drawings **OR** as follows, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - a. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - b. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  - c. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
2. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 09. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  - a. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  - b. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
3. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every **30 inches (750 mm)** of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
4. Intermediate Offset Pivots: Where offset pivots are indicated, provide intermediate offset pivots in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than one intermediate offset pivot per door and one additional intermediate offset pivot for every **30 inches (750 mm)** of door height greater than **90 inches (2286 mm)**.
5. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
  - a. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Furnish permanent cores to the Owner for installation.
6. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
7. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings **OR** in equipment room, **as directed**. Verify location with the Owner.
  - a. Configuration: Provide one power supply for each door opening **OR** least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors, **as directed**.
8. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
9. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
10. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
11. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
12. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

#### D. Field Quality Control

1. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant: Engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.
  - a. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

#### E. Adjusting

1. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  - a. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.

- b. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
    - c. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three **OR** six months, **as directed**, after date of Final Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust, including adjusting operating forces, each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.
- F. Cleaning And Protection
  - 1. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
  - 2. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
  - 3. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure that door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Final Completion.
- G. Demonstration
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration And Training".

END OF SECTION 06 01 40 91

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



## SECTION 06 05 23 00 - TIMBER BRIDGE COMPONENTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of timber bridge components. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

- #### A. Timber for Bridges shall comply with the specifications for timber bridges contained in the standard specifications of the state in which the work occurs, AASHTO's "Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges," and National Forest Products Association's "National Design Specification for Wood Construction."

- #### B. Preservative Treatment shall comply with the specifications for preservative treatment contained in the standard specifications of the state in which the work occurs, and American Wood-Preservers' Association's "Book of Standards." All timber shall be treated unless specified otherwise.

#### C. Hardware and Castings:

1. Castings: Cast steel shall comply with ASTM A 27, Grade 70-36, or gray iron castings shall comply with AASHTO M105 Class No. 30, unless otherwise specified.
2. Hardware:
  - a. Machine Bolts, Drift-Bolts, and Dowels may be either wrought iron or rolled steel. Machine bolts shall have the square heads and nuts unless otherwise specified.
  - b. Cast Washers shall be made of malleable or gray iron. The outside diameter shall not be less than 3 1/2 times the bolt diameter and its thickness equal to the bolt diameter. Plate washers shall be made of wrought iron or rolled steel. The outside diameter shall not be less than 3 1/2 times the bolt diameter, and they shall not be less than 1/4 inch thick.
  - c. Nails and Spikes shall be hot-dip zinc coated per ASTM A 153 or of Type 304 stainless steel.
  - d. Finish: Unless otherwise specified, all hardware for treated timber bridges shall be galvanized or cadmium-plated. Galvanizing shall comply with ASTM A 123 or A 153. Cadmium plating of steel shall comply with ASTM B 766.

- #### D. Timber Connectors shall be ring type or plate type and shall be galvanized in compliance with ASTM A 123 or A 153.

1. Split Ring: Fabricated from hot rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M), Grade 33 of standard manufacture.
2. Tooth Ring: Stamped cold form 16-gauge steel sheet fabricated from hot rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M), Grade 33 standard manufacture.
3. Shear-Plate Timber Connectors:
  - a. Pressed Steel Type shall be fabricated from hot rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M), Grade 33. Shear plates shall be of standard manufacture.
  - b. Malleable Iron Type shall be ASTM A 47, Grade No. 32510 (ASTM A 47M, Grade 22010). Casting shall be of standard manufacture.





- E. Structural Glue-Laminated Timber shall comply with DOC PS 20, American Structural Lumber Standard, AITC 190.1 and AITC 111. Lumber for laminating shall be of such stress grade as to provide glue-laminated members with allowable stress values of 2,000 psi in bending, 1,600 psi in tension, 1,500 psi in compression parallel to grain, and 385 psi in compression perpendicular to grain for dry condition of service.
1. Adhesives shall meet requirements for wet condition of service.
  2. Surfaces of Members shall be sealed with a penetration sealer or sealed with a sealer coat.
- F. Ties: Fabricate strap ties from hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 570 (ASTM A 570M). Hot dip galvanize after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153 (ASTM A 153M).
- G. Asphalt Cement shall comply with ASTM D946 for penetration-graded material.
- H. Surface Coarse Aggregate shall be ASTM D 692, except the gradation shall be as follows:
- | <u>Sieve Percent</u> | <u>Size Passing (Wt.)</u> |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1/2 in.              | 100                       |
| 3/8 in.              | 94-100                    |
| No. 4                | 15-45                     |
| No. 16               | 0-4                       |

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Preparation:
1. Traffic Control: When traffic is maintained on bridge under repair or is directed over a temporary run-around, furnish, erect, and maintain all barricades, flags, torches, lights, guardrails, temporary pavement markings, and traffic control signs required for the protection of the public and for the direction of traffic. Number, type, color, size and placement of all traffic control color, size, and placement of all traffic control devices and the use of a flagman shall comply with USDOT FHA MUTCD "Traffic Controls for Highway Construction and Maintenance Operations." All traffic control devices in advance of the construction limits shall also be the responsibility of the Contractor.
  2. Treated Timber: Give all cuts, abrasions, and holes made after treatment 2 applications of 60 percent creosote oil and 40 percent roofing pitch or brush coat with 2 applications of hot creosote oil and covered with hot roofing pitch. Any unfilled holes, after being treated with preservative oil, shall be plugged with treated plugs.
- B. Erection:
1. Holes:
    - a. Drift Bolts and Dowels: Bore holes for round drift bolts and dowels with a bit 1/16 inch less in diameter than the bolt or dowel to be used. The diameter of holes for square drift bolts or dowels shall be equal to the least dimension of the bolt or dowel.
    - b. Machine Bolts and Rods: Bore holes for field fabrication with a bit the same diameter as the bolt. Holes for fabrication prior to treatment shall be 1/16 inch larger than the bolt diameter.
    - c. Lag Screws: Bore hole with a bit not larger than the body of the screw at the base of the thread.
  2. Nuts and Washers: Use a washer of the size and type specified under all bolt heads and nuts except carriage bolts. The nuts of all bolts shall be locked by scoring threads after they have been finally tightened.
  3. Countersinking: Paint all recesses in treated timber formed for countersinking with hot creosote oil. Fill recesses likely to collect injurious materials with hot pitch.
  4. Framing: All lumber and timber shall be accurately cut and framed to a close fit in such manner that the joints will have even bearing over the entire contact surfaces. Place stringers in position so that knots near edges will be in the top portions of the stringer. Screw type fastenings shall be

screwed into place for the entire length of the fastener. Install the split ring and the shear plate in grooves cut by the Contractor. Force the toothed ring into the contact surfaces of the timbers jointed by means of pressure equipment.

5. Nailing: Nails and spikes shall be driven with just sufficient force to set the heads flush with the surface of the wood.

C. Maintenance and Repair Methods:

1. Timber Deck:
  - a. Remove Existing Plank Floor Deck and Fasteners and replace with new planks and fasteners. Lay the floor planks at 45 degrees to centerline of roadway. When more than one length of plank is required, stagger joints between abutting ends at least 3 feet in any two adjacent lines of plank.
  - b. Standard Wrought Washers shall be used under the heads of all lag screws and under the heads or nuts of all machine bolts. Where machine bolts are used for fastening the floor plank all nuts used shall be locknuts. Countersink heads of all lag screws and bolts in the surface of the floor. Fill recesses formed for countersinking with hot pitch.
  - c. Bituminous Surface Coat: Clean the floor of foreign materials. Apply asphalt cement at a temperature of 275 F to 350 F and at a rate of approximately 1/4 gallon per square yard of surface. The deck shall be dry at the time of bitumen application. Cover the entire surface with a thin coating of aggregate in a sufficient quantity to take up any free bitumen.
2. Hardware: Remove all corrosion by sandblasting or wire brushing. Replace all loose bolts and screws, adding washers as required. Replace deteriorated hardware.
3. Metal Tread Plates: Remove and replace treads as directed. Before installing treads, remove high spots and rough spots in the plank floor so that the treads will be in contact with the floor for their full length and width. Treads shall be laid in a heavy mop coat of asphalt filler. Treads shall be laid with a space of 1/4 inch between adjacent ends and shall be fastened by means of 3/8-inch galvanized bolts. Where bolts cannot be used, use 3/8-inch by 3-inch galvanized lag screws.
4. Timber Railroad Bridge Deck: Remove defective ties and guardrail, including fasteners, and replace with similar ties, guardrail, and fasteners as directed.
5. Repair of Structural Timber Members: Repair, including removal and replacement, shall be as directed.

END OF SECTION 06 05 23 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 05 23 00a - MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for miscellaneous carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - b. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - c. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - d. Wood furring and grounds.
  - e. Wood sleepers.
  - f. Interior wood trim.
  - g. Wood shelving and clothes rods.
  - h. Plywood backing panels.

#### C. Definitions

1. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** or greater but less than **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** in least dimension.
2. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - b. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
  - c. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.



- c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
  - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
- 3. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - a. Preservative-treated wood.
  - b. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - c. Power-driven fasteners.
  - d. Powder-actuated fasteners.
  - e. Expansion anchors.
  - f. Metal framing anchors.

#### E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
  - a. Dimension lumber framing.
  - b. Miscellaneous lumber.
  - c. Interior wood trim.
  - d. Shelving and clothes rods.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- 2. Deliver interior wood materials that are to be exposed to view only after building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work other than painting is dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity at occupancy levels.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Wood Products, General

- 1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - a. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - b. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - c. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - d. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials

- 1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWP C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
  - a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
  - b. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

2. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
  3. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
    - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
  4. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry, unless otherwise indicated **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
    - b. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
    - c. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
    - d. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas.
    - e. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.
- C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood).
    - a. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
    - b. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
    - c. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where indicated.
    - d. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
  3. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  4. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry, unless otherwise indicated **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Framing for raised platforms.
    - b. Concealed blocking.
    - c. Roof construction.
    - d. Plywood backing panels.
- D. Dimension Lumber Framing
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent **OR** 19 percent **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness, **as directed**.
  2. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade of any species.
  3. Other Framing: No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No., **as directed**, grade and any of the following species:
    - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
    - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
    - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
    - d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
    - f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
    - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.



- h. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
- i. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

E. Miscellaneous Lumber

1. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - a. Blocking.
  - b. Nailers.
  - c. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - d. Cants.
  - e. Furring.
  - f. Grounds.
  - g. Utility shelving.
2. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content of any species.
3. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - a. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or 2 Common (Sterling) **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - b. Mixed southern pine, No. 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
  - c. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - d. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
4. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - a. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
  - b. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - c. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - d. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, Common grade; NELMA.
  - e. Northern species, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, Common grade; NLGA.
  - f. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
5. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
6. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
7. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

F. Interior Wood Trim

1. General: Provide kiln-dried finished (surfaced) material without finger-jointing, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Softwood Lumber Trim for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: Provide one of the following species and grade:
  - a. Grade C Select **OR** D Select **OR** Finish **OR** Premium, **as directed**, eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA.
  - b. Grade C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWPA.

- c. Grade Superior or C & Btr **OR** Prime or D, **as directed**, Finish Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
    - d. Clear Heart **OR** Grade A **OR** Grade B, **as directed**, western red cedar; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
  3. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: Clear red oak **OR** white maple, **as directed**, selected for compatible grain and color, **as directed**.
  4. Lumber Trim for Opaque (Painted) Finish: Either finger-jointed or solid lumber, of one of the following species and grades:
    - a. Grade D Select **OR** Finish **OR** Premium, **as directed**, eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA.
    - b. Grade D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWP.
    - c. Grade A **OR** B, **as directed**, Finish aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, red alder, soft maple, sycamore, tupelo, or yellow poplar; NHLA.
  5. Moldings: Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 7 and graded according to WMMPA WM 4.
    - a. Moldings for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: N-grade eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine **OR** western red cedar **OR** Douglas fir **OR** red oak **OR** white maple, **as directed**, selected for compatible grain and color.
    - b. Moldings for Opaque (Painted) Finish: P-grade eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine **OR** aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, tupelo, or yellow poplar **OR** primed medium-density fiberboard, **as directed**.
- G. Shelving And Clothes Rods
  1. Shelving: Made from one of the following materials, **3/4-inch (19-mm)** thick. Do not use particleboard or medium-density fiberboard that contains urea formaldehyde.
    - a. Melamine-faced particleboard with radiused and filled front edge.
    - b. Particleboard with radiused and filled **OR** solid-wood, **as directed**, front edge.
    - c. Medium-density fiberboard with radiused **OR** solid-wood, **as directed**, front edge.
    - d. Wood boards of same species and grade indicated above for interior lumber trim for opaque **OR** transparent, **as directed**, finish.
  2. Shelf Cleats: **3/4-by-3-1/2-inch (19-by-89-mm)** boards **OR** **3/4-by-5-1/2-inch (19-by-140-mm)** boards with hole and notch to receive clothes rods, **as directed**, of same species and grade indicated above for interior lumber trim for opaque finish.
  3. Shelf Brackets: Prime-painted formed steel with provision to support clothes rod where rod is indicated.
  4. Clothes Rods:
    - a. **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** diameter, clear, kiln-dried hardwood rods **OR** clear, kiln-dried softwood rods; either Douglas fir or southern pine **OR** aluminum tubes, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
**1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** diameter, chrome-plated steel **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, tubes.
  5. Rod Flanges: Clear, kiln-dried hardwood turnings **OR** Clear, kiln-dried softwood turnings **OR** Aluminum **OR** Chrome-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
- H. Plywood Backing Panels
  1. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **1/2-inch (13-mm)** nominal thickness.
- I. Fasteners
  1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
    - a. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
  2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
  3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.



4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  5. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
  6. Lag Bolts: **ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M)**.
  7. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  8. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Material:
      - 1) Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.  
**OR**  
Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4)**.
- J. Metal Framing Anchors
1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G60 (Z180)** coating designation.
    - a. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
  2. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
    - a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- K. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
    - a. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

- A. Installation, General
1. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
  2. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  4. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
    - a. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c.
  6. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
    - a. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
    - b. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and **2-inch nominal- (38-mm actual-)** thickness.

- c. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)** and to solidly fill space below partitions.
    - d. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than **20 feet (6 m)** o.c.
  7. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
  8. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
    - a. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
    - b. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
  9. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
    - a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
    - b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
    - c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304 of the ICC's International Building Code.
    - d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
    - e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
    - f. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.
  10. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Wood Ground, Sleeper, Blocking, And Nailer Installation
  1. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
  2. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.
- C. Wood Furring Installation
  1. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
  2. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install **1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-)** size furring horizontally **OR** vertically **OR** horizontally and vertically, **as directed**, at **24 inches (610 mm) OR 600 mm, as directed**, o.c.
  3. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board **OR** Plaster Lath, **as directed**: Install **1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-)** size furring vertically at **16 inches (406 mm) OR 400 mm, as directed**, o.c.
- D. Wood Trim Installation
  1. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than **24 inches (610 mm)** long except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
    - a. Match color and grain pattern across joints.
    - b. Install trim after gypsum board joint-finishing operations are completed.



- c. Drill pilot holes in hardwood before fastening to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads and fill holes.
- d. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm)** for level and plumb. Install adjoining finish carpentry with **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** maximum offset for reveal installation.

E. Protection

- 1. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- 2. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 05 23 00a

## SECTION 06 05 23 00b - HEAVY TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for heavy timber construction. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes framing using timbers and round wood poles.

#### C. Definitions

1. Timbers: Lumber of **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** or greater in least dimension.
2. Poles: Round wood members, called either "poles" or "posts" in the referenced standards.
3. Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
  - b. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association.
  - c. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - d. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - f. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products and timber connectors.
  - a. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
  - b. For timber connectors, include installation instructions.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood products comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
3. Shop Drawings: For heavy timber construction. Show layout, dimensions of each member, and details of connections.
4. Certificates of Inspection: Issued by lumber grading agency for exposed timber not marked with grade stamp.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Timber Standard: Comply with AITC 108, "Standard for Heavy Timber Construction."
2. Forest Certification: Provide wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Schedule delivery of heavy timber construction to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
2. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Timber

1. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with grading rules of lumber grading agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review as applicable.
  - a. Factory mark each item of timber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - b. For exposed timber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, apply grade stamps to surfaces that will not be exposed to view, or omit grade stamps and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
2. Timber Species and Grade: Any species and grade that, for moisture content provided, complies with required structural properties.
  - a. Allowable Stress Ratings for **12-Inch Nominal (286-mm Actual)** Depth: Fb **1500 psi (10.3 MPa)** and E **1,500,000 psi (10 340 MPa)** **OR** Fb **1300 psi (9.0 MPa)** and E **1,300,000 psi (8 960 MPa)** **OR** As indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
3. Moisture Content: Provide timber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing or provide timber that is unseasoned at time of dressing but with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of installation, **as directed**.
4. Dressing: Provide dressed timber (S4S) **OR** timber that is rough sawn (Rgh), **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
5. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
6. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

### B. Round Wood Poles

1. Round Wood Poles: Clean-peeled wood poles complying with ASTM D 3200; with at least 80 percent of inner bark removed and with knots and limbs cut flush with the surface.

### C. Preservative Treatment

1. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWPAC15 requirements for "sawn building poles and posts as structural members."
  - a. Timber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated with inorganic boron (SBX) according to AWPAC31 instead of AWPAC15.
  - b. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
2. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative to comply with AWPAC4.
  - a. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
3. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium except for marine (saltwater) applications.
4. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
5. Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
6. After treatment, redry timber and poles to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
7. Mark treated timber and poles with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  - a. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
8. Application: Treat all heavy timber construction unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat items indicated on Drawings and the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Sills and similar members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - b. Timber framing members less than **18 inches (460 mm)** above grade.

### D. Timber Connectors

1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:

- a. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - b. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A 575, Grade M 1020.
  - c. Hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.
  - d. Stainless-steel plate and flat bars complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - e. Stainless-steel bars and shapes complying with ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - f. Stainless-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  2. Fabricate beam seats from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with **0.239-inch (6-mm) OR 3/16-inch (8-mm) OR 3/8-inch (9.5-mm)**, **as directed**, bearing plates, **3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter-by-12-inch- (300-mm-)** long deformed bar anchors, and **0.239-inch (6-mm)** side plates.
  3. Fabricate beam hangers from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with **0.179-inch (4.6-mm)** stirrups and **0.239-inch (6-mm)** top plates.
  4. Fabricate strap ties from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, **2-1/2 inches (63 mm)** wide by **0.179 inch (4.6 mm) OR 3 inches (75 mm)** wide by **0.239 inch (6 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  5. Fabricate tie rods from round steel bars with upset threads connected with forged-steel turnbuckles complying with ASTM A 668/A 668M.
  6. Provide bolts, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** unless otherwise indicated, complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; provide nuts complying with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, provide flat washers.
  7. Provide shear plates, **2-5/8 inches (66.7 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**, in diameter, complying with ASTM D 5933.
  8. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, **2-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.
  9. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Fabrication
1. Camber: Fabricate horizontal members and inclined members with a slope of less than 1:1, with natural convex bow (crown) up, to provide camber.
  2. Shop fabricate members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  3. Predrill for fasteners and assembly of units.
  4. Where preservative-treated members are indicated, fabricate (cut, drill, surface, and sand) before treatment to greatest extent possible. Where fabrication must be done after treatment, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
    - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
    - b. Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
  5. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
  6. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing each unit, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit except for treated wood where the treatment included a water repellent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. General: Erect heavy timber construction true and plumb. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
  - a. Install heavy timber construction to comply with Shop Drawings.
  - b. Install horizontal and sloping members with crown edge up and provide not less than **4 inches (102 mm)** of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports if not continuous.





- c. Handle and temporarily support heavy timber construction to prevent surface damage, compression, and other effects that might interfere with indicated finish.
  2. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide **1/2-inch (13-mm)** clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry, bevel cut ends **3 inches (76 mm)**; do not embed more than **4 inches (102 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Cutting: Avoid extra cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.  
**OR**  
Fit members by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing. Predrill for fasteners and assembly of units.
    - a. Finish exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks, and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
    - b. Coat crosscuts with end sealer.
    - c. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
      - 1) Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.
      - 2) Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
  4. Install timber connectors as indicated.
    - a. Unless otherwise indicated, install bolts with same orientation within each connection and in similar connections.
    - b. Install bolts with orientation as indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by the Owner.
- B. Adjusting
1. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged heavy timber construction if repairs are not approved by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 06 05 23 00b



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 05 23 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 05 73 13	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 05 73 33 - WOOD DECKING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood decking. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Solid-sawn wood roof and floor decking.
  - b. Glued-laminated wood roof and floor decking.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - a. For glued-laminated wood decking, include installation instructions and data on lumber, adhesives, and fabrication.
  - b. For preservative-treated wood products, include chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For sealants and installation adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For laminating adhesive used for glued-laminated decking, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Standard for Solid-Sawn Wood Decking: Comply with AITC 112.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Schedule delivery of wood decking to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
2. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings. Stack wood decking with surfaces that are to be exposed in the final Work protected from exposure to sunlight.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Wood Decking, General

1. General: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
2. Moisture Content: Provide wood decking with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.

#### B. Solid-Sawn Wood Decking

1. Decking Species: Alaska cedar **OR** Balsam fir **OR** Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-larch (North) **OR** Eastern spruce **OR** Hem-fir or hem-fir (North) **OR** Southern pine, **as directed**.
2. Decking Nominal Size: 2x6 **OR** 2x8 **OR** 3x6 **OR** 4x6, **as directed**.
3. Decking Grade:
  - a. Select(ed) **OR** Commercial, **as directed**, Decking.**OR**



Dense Standard **OR** Dense Select **OR** Select **OR** Dense Commercial **OR** Commercial, **as directed**, Decking.

**OR**

Select(ed) Decking or Select Dex **OR** Commercial Decking or Commercial Dex, **as directed**.

4. Grade Stamps: Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency. Apply grade stamp to surfaces that will not be exposed to view.
5. Face Surface: Rough sanded or wire brushed **OR** Saw textured **OR** Smooth, **as directed**.
6. Edge Pattern: Beaded edge **OR** Bullnosed **OR** Channel grooved **OR** Vee grooved, **as directed**.
7. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat solid-sawn wood decking according to AWPAC31 with inorganic boron (SBX) and redry wood to 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content.

C. Glued-Laminated Wood Decking

1. Face Species: Alaska cedar **OR** Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-larch (North) **OR** Ponderosa pine **OR** Southern pine **OR** Western cedars or western cedars (North), **as directed**.
2. Decking Nominal Size: 2x6 **OR** 2x8 **OR** 3x6 **OR** 3x8 **OR** 4x6 **OR** 4x8 **OR** 5x6 **OR** 5x8, **as directed**.
3. Decking Configuration: For glued-laminated wood decking indicated to be of diaphragm design and construction, provide tongue-and-groove configuration that complies with research/evaluation report.
4. Face Grade:
  - a. Custom or Supreme: Clear face is required. Occasional pieces may contain a small knot or minor characteristic that does not detract from the overall appearance.

**OR**

Decorative: Sound knots and natural characteristics are allowed, including chipped edge knots, short end splits, seasoning checks, and some pin holes. Face knot holes, stain, end splits, skip, roller split, and planer burn are not allowed.

**OR**

Service: Face knot holes, stain, end splits, skip, roller split, planer burn, and other nonstrength-reducing characteristics are allowed. Strength-reducing characteristics are not allowed.
5. Face Surface: Rough sanded or wire brushed **OR** Saw textured **OR** Smooth, **as directed**.
6. Edge Pattern: Beaded edge **OR** Bullnosed **OR** Channel grooved **OR** Vee grooved, **as directed**.
7. Laminating Adhesive: Wet-use type complying with ASTM D 2559.
  - a. Use adhesive that contains no urea-formaldehyde resins.
8. Preservative Treatment: Pressure treat lumber before gluing according to AWPAC28 for aboveground use.
  - a. Use oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.

**OR**

Use copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.

**OR**

Use waterborne preservative that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that contains no arsenic or chromium. After treating, redry wood to 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content.

**OR**

Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.

**OR**

After dressing and fabricating decking, apply copper naphthenate according to AWPAC4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

D. Accessory Materials

1. Fasteners for Solid-Sawn Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with decking standard for thickness of deck used.

2. Fasteners for Glued-Laminated Decking: Provide fastener size and type complying with requirements in "Installation" Article for installing laminated decking.
  3. Nails: Common; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type I, Style 10.
  4. Spikes: Round; complying with ASTM F 1667, Type III, Style 3.
  5. Fastener Material: Hot-dip galvanized **OR** Stainless, **as directed**, steel.
  6. Bolts for Anchoring Decking to Walls:
    - a. Carbon steel; complying with **ASTM A 307 (ASTM F 568M)** with ASTM A 563/A 563M hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers, all hot-dip zinc coated, **as directed**.
    - OR**
    - Stainless steel; complying with **ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M, Grade A1 or A4)**; with **ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  7. Installation Adhesive: For glued-laminated wood decking indicated to be of diaphragm design and construction, provide adhesive that complies with research/evaluation report.
    - a. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  8. Sealant: Latex sealant compatible with substrates **OR** Elastomeric joint sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for Use NT (nontraffic) and for Uses M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O joint substrates, **as directed**.
    - a. Use sealant that has a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  9. Penetrating Sealer: Clear sanding sealer complying with Division 09 Section "Staining And Transparent Finishing" and compatible with topcoats specified for use over it.
- E. Fabrication
1. Shop Fabrication: Where preservative-treated decking is indicated, complete cutting, trimming, surfacing, and sanding before treating.
  2. Predrill decking for lateral spiking to adjacent units to comply with referenced decking standard.
  3. Seal Coat: After fabricating and surfacing decking, apply a saturation coat of penetrating sealer in fabrication shop, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation

1. Install solid-sawn wood decking to comply with referenced decking standard.
  - a. Locate end joints for two-span continuous lay-up **OR** combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up **OR** controlled random lay-up **OR** lay-up indicated, **as directed**.
2. Install laminated wood decking to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Locate end joints for two-span continuous lay-up **OR** combination simple and two-span continuous lay-up **OR** controlled random lay-up **OR** lay-up indicated, **as directed**.
  - b. Nail each course of glued-laminated wood decking at each support with one nail slant nailed above the tongue and one nail straight nailed through the face.
    - 1) Use 12d nails for 2x6 and 2x8 decking.
    - 2) Use 30d nails for 3x6 and 3x8 decking.
    - 3) Use 60d nails for 4x6 and 4x8 decking. Predrill decking to prevent splitting.
    - 4) Use 30d tongue nails in bottom tongue and **3/8-inch (10-mm)** face spikes for 5x6 and 5x8 decking. Predrill decking at spikes to prevent splitting.
  - c. Slant nail each course of glued-laminated wood decking to the tongue of the adjacent course at **30 inches (750 mm)** o.c. and within **12 inches (300 mm)** of the end of each unit. Stagger nailing in adjacent courses **15 inches (380 mm)**.
    - 1) Use 6d nails for 2x6 and 2x8 decking.
    - 2) Use 8d nails for 3x6 and 3x8 decking.
    - 3) Use 10d nails for 4x6 and 4x8 decking.
    - 4) Use 16d nails for 5x6 and 5x8 decking.

- d. Glue adjoining decking courses together by applying a 3/8-inch (10-mm) bead of adhesive on the top of tongues according to research/evaluation report.
- 3. Anchor wood roof decking, where supported on walls, with bolts as indicated.
- 4. Where preservative-treated decking must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWP A M4.
  - a. For solid-sawn decking, use inorganic boron (SBX).
  - b. For laminated decking, use copper naphthenate.
- 5. Apply joint sealant to seal roof decking at exterior walls at the following locations:
  - a. Between decking and supports located at exterior walls.
  - b. Between decking and exterior walls that butt against underside of decking.
  - c. Between tongues and grooves of decking over exterior walls and supports at exterior walls.
- B. Adjusting
  - 1. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged decking if repairs are not approved by the Owner.
- C. Protection
  - 1. Provide temporary waterproof covering as the Work progresses to protect roof decking until roofing is applied.

END OF SECTION 06 05 73 33



Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00	Timber Bridge Components
06 05 73 33	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 05 73 33	06 05 23 00b	Heavy Timber Construction

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 10 00 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for rough carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Framing with dimension lumber.
  - b. Framing with timber.
  - c. Framing with engineered wood products.
  - d. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - e. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  - f. Wood furring and grounds.
  - g. Wood sleepers.
  - h. Utility shelving.
  - i. Plywood backing panels.

#### C. Definitions

1. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
2. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** or greater but less than **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** in least dimension.
3. Timber: Lumber of **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** or greater in least dimension.
4. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - b. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - c. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - f. WWPAA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
2. LEED Submittals:





- a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
- b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
- c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
  - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
- 3. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- 4. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - a. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  - b. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - c. Engineered wood products.
  - d. Power-driven fasteners.
  - e. Powder-actuated fasteners.
  - f. Expansion anchors.
  - g. Metal framing anchors.

#### E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
  - a. Dimension lumber framing.
  - b. Timber.
  - c. Laminated-veneer lumber.
  - d. Parallel-strand lumber.
  - e. Prefabricated wood I-joists.
  - f. Rim boards.
  - g. Miscellaneous lumber.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Wood Products, General

- 1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - a. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - b. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - c. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - d. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - a. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Lumber
  1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPAC31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
    - a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
    - b. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  2. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
  3. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
    - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
  4. Application: Treat all rough carpentry, unless otherwise indicated, **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
    - b. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
    - c. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
    - d. Wood framing members that are less than **18 inches (460 mm)** above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
    - e. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.
- C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
  1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPAC20 (lumber) and AWPAC27 (plywood).
    - a. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
    - b. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where indicated.
    - c. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
  3. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  4. Application: Treat all rough carpentry, unless otherwise indicated, **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Framing for raised platforms.
    - b. Concealed blocking.
    - c. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.



- d. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
- e. Roof construction.
- f. Plywood backing panels.

D. Dimension Lumber Framing

1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent **OR** 19 percent **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 19 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness, **as directed**.
2. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade of any species.
3. Exterior and Load-Bearing Walls **OR** Framing Other Than Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions **OR** Framing Other Than Interior Partitions, **as directed**: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) **OR** 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) **OR** 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) **OR** 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) **OR** 900,000 psi (6210 MPa), **as directed**, and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) **OR** 850 psi (5.86 MPa) **OR** 700 psi (4.83 MPa) **OR** 600 psi (4.14 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.45 MPa), **as directed**, for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
4. Ceiling Joists (Non-Load-Bearing): Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade of any species.
5. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) **OR** 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) **OR** 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) **OR** 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) **OR** 900,000 psi (6210 MPa), **as directed**, and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) **OR** 850 psi (5.86 MPa) **OR** 700 psi (4.83 MPa) **OR** 600 psi (4.14 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.45 MPa), **as directed**, for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
6. Exposed Exterior **OR** Interior, **as directed**, Framing Indicated to Receive a Stained or Natural Finish: Provide material hand-selected for uniformity of appearance and freedom from characteristics, on exposed surfaces and edges, that would impair finish appearance, including decay, honeycomb, knot-holes, shake, splits, torn grain, and wane.
  - a. Species and Grade: As indicated above for load-bearing construction of same type.
  - b. Species and Grade: Hem-fir (north), Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA.
  - c. Species and Grade: Southern pine, Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
  - d. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB, or WHPA.
  - e. Species and Grade: Mixed southern pine, Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
  - f. Species and Grade: Spruce-pine-fir, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA.
  - g. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-south; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WHPA.
  - h. Species and Grade: Hem-fir; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB, or WHPA.
  - i. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch (north); Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA.
  - j. Species and Grade: Spruce-pine-fir (south), Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, WCLIB, or WHPA.
  - k. Species and Grade: Eastern hemlock-balsam fir or eastern hemlock-tamarack; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
  - l. Species and Grade: Beech-birch-hickory, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.

- m. Species and Grade: Northern red oak, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
  - n. Species and Grade: Redwood, Clear Heart Structural **OR** Clear Structural **OR** Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; RIS.
  - o. Species and Grade: Mixed oak, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
  - p. Species and Grade: Mixed maple, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
  - q. Species and Grade: Western cedars, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB, or WWPA.
- E. Timber Framing
- 1. Provide timber framing complying with the following requirements, according to grading rules of grading agency indicated:
    - a. Species and Grade: Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (north), or Douglas fir-south; Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Species and Grade: Eastern hemlock, eastern hemlock-tamarack, or eastern hemlock-tamarack (north); Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA or NLGA.
    - c. Species and Grade: Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - d. Species and Grade: Mixed maple, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
    - e. Species and Grade: Mixed oak, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA.
    - f. Species and Grade: Southern pine, Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
    - g. Maximum Moisture Content: 20 **OR** 23, **as directed**, percent.
    - h. Additional Restriction: Free of heart centers.
- F. Engineered Wood Products
- 1. Laminated-Veneer Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559 and containing no urea formaldehyde.
    - a. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 3100 psi (21.3 MPa) **OR** 2900 psi (20.0 MPa) **OR** 2600 psi (17.9 MPa) **OR** 2250 psi (15.5 MPa), **as directed**, for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
    - b. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,000,000 psi (13 700 MPa) **OR** 1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa) **OR** 1,500,000 psi (10 300 MPa), **as directed**.
  - 2. Parallel-Strand Lumber: Structural composite lumber made from wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, evaluated and monitored according to ASTM D 5456 and manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559 and containing no urea formaldehyde.
    - a. Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: 2900 psi (20 MPa) for 12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-) depth members.
    - b. Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: 2,200,000 psi (15 100 MPa).
  - 3. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units, I-shaped in cross section, made with solid or structural composite lumber flanges and wood-based structural panel webs, let into and bonded to flanges. Provide units complying with material requirements of and with structural capacities established and monitored according to ASTM D 5055.
    - a. Provide I-joists manufactured without urea formaldehyde.
    - b. Web Material: Either oriented strand board or plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 **OR** Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exposure 1 **OR** Plywood, complying with DOC PS 1, Exterior grade, **as directed**.
    - c. Structural Properties: Provide units with depths and design values not less than those indicated.
    - d. Provide units complying with APA PRI-400, factory marked with APA trademark indicating nominal joist depth, joist class, span ratings, mill identification, and compliance with APA standard.



4. Rim Boards: Product designed to be used as a load-bearing member and to brace wood I-joists at bearing ends, complying with research/evaluation report for I-joists.
  - a. Manufacturer: Provide products by same manufacturer as I-joists.
  - b. Material: All-veneer product **OR** glued-laminated wood **OR** product made from any combination solid lumber, wood strands, and veneers, **as directed**. Provide rim boards made without urea formaldehyde.
  - c. Thickness: **1 inch (25 mm) OR 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) OR 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), as directed**.
  - d. Provide performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401, rim board **OR** rim board plus, **as directed**, grade, factory marked with APA trademark indicating thickness, grade, and compliance with APA standard.

G. Miscellaneous Lumber

1. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - a. Blocking.
  - b. Nailers.
  - c. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - d. Cants.
  - e. Furring.
  - f. Grounds.
  - g. Utility shelving.
2. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content of any species.
3. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 **OR** Standard, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species:
  - a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  - b. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
  - c. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  - d. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - e. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - f. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - g. Northern species; NLGA.
  - h. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
4. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - a. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or 2 Common (Sterling) **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - b. Mixed southern pine, No. 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
  - c. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - d. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common **OR** Construction or No. 2 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
5. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - a. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, grade; SPIB.
  - b. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north), Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - c. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common **OR** Standard or 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - d. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, Common grade; NeLMA.
  - e. Northern species, No. 2 **OR** 3, **as directed**, Common grade; NLGA.



- f. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common **OR** Standard or No. 3 Common, **as directed**, grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
  6. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
  7. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
  8. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.
- H. Plywood Backing Panels
1. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **1/2-inch (13-mm)** nominal thickness.
- I. Fasteners
1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
    - a. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
  2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
  3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
  4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  5. Lag Bolts: **ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M)**.
  6. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  7. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Material:
      - 1) Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.  
**OR**  
Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4)**.
- J. Metal Framing Anchors
1. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated **OR** of basis-of-design products, **as directed**. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
  2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G60 (Z180)** coating designation.
    - a. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
  3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
    - a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  4. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** long seat and **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
  5. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** long seat and **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
  6. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
  7. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.

8. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post **1 inch (25 mm)** above base and with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** minimum side cover, socket **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick, and standoff and adjustment plates **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)** thick.
9. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
10. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide by **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick. Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
11. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** wide by **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
12. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** wide by **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick by **36 inches (914 mm)** long.
13. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.
14. Wall Bracing:
  - a. T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, **1-1/8 inches (29 mm)** wide by **9/16 inch (14 mm)** deep by **0.034 inch (0.85 mm)** thick with hemmed edges.
  - OR**
  - Wall Bracing: Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, **15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch (24 by 24 by 1 mm)** thick with hemmed edges.

#### K. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Sill-Sealer Gaskets:
  - a. Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; **1-inch (25-mm)** nominal thickness, compressible to **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
  - OR**
  - Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
2. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
  - a. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Installation, General

1. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
2. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
3. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.

6. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
    - a. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c.
  7. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
    - a. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
    - b. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and **2-inch nominal- (38-mm actual-)** thickness.
    - c. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)** and to solidly fill space below partitions.
    - d. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than **20 feet (6 m)** o.c.
  8. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
  9. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
    - a. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
    - b. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
  10. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
    - a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
    - b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
    - c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304, of ICC's International Building Code.
    - d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
    - e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
    - f. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.
  11. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.
  12. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
    - a. Comply with approved **OR** indicated, **as directed**, fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
    - b. Use finishing nails, unless otherwise indicated. Do not countersink nail heads **OR** Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler, **as directed**.
- B. Wood Ground, Sleeper, Blocking, And Nailer Installation
1. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
  2. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.



3. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

C. Wood Furring Installation

1. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
2. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install **1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63-mm actual-)** size furring horizontally **OR** vertically **OR** horizontally and vertically, **as directed**, at **24 inches (610 mm)** **OR** 600 mm, **as directed**, o.c.
3. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board **OR** Plaster Lath, **as directed**: Install **1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-)** size furring vertically at **16 inches (406 mm)** **OR** 400 mm, **as directed**, o.c.

D. Wall And Partition Framing Installation

1. General: Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions and for load-bearing partitions where framing members bearing on partition are located directly over studs. Fasten plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. For exterior walls, provide **2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-)** **OR** **2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-)**, **as directed**, size wood studs spaced **24 inches (610 mm)** **OR** **16 inches (406 mm)** **OR** 600 mm **OR** 400 mm, **as directed**, o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. For interior partitions and walls, provide **2-by-6-inch nominal- (38-by-140-mm actual-)** **OR** **2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-)** **OR** **2-by-3-inch nominal- (38-by-64-mm actual-)**, **as directed**, size wood studs spaced **24 inches (610 mm)** **OR** **16 inches (406 mm)** **OR** 600 mm **OR** 400 mm, **as directed**, o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** high, using members of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
2. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs, except that two studs may be used for interior non-load-bearing partitions.
3. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Support headers on jamb studs.
  - a. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and headers not less than **4-inch nominal (89-mm actual)** depth for openings **48 inches (1200 mm)** and less in width, **6-inch nominal (140-mm actual)** depth for openings **48 to 72 inches (1200 to 1800 mm)** in width, **8-inch nominal (184-mm actual)** depth for openings **72 to 120 inches (1800 to 3000 mm)** in width, and not less than **10-inch nominal (235-mm actual)** depth for openings **10 to 12 feet (3 to 3.6 m)** in width.
  - b. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings **60 inches (1500 mm)** and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated or, if not indicated, according to Table R502.5(1) or Table R502.5(2), as applicable, in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
4. Provide diagonal bracing in exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner **OR** walls, at locations indicated, **as directed**, at 45-degree angle, full-story height, unless otherwise indicated. Use **1-by-4-inch nominal- (19-by-89-mm actual-)** size boards, let-in flush with faces of studs **OR** metal wall bracing, let into studs in saw kerf, **as directed**.

E. Floor Joist Framing Installation

1. General: Install floor joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** of bearing on wood or metal, or **3 inches (76 mm)** on masonry. Attach floor joists as follows:
  - a. Where supported on wood members, by toe nailing or by using metal framing anchors.

- b. Where framed into wood supporting members, by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers.
    2. Fire Cuts: At joists built into masonry, bevel cut ends **3 inches (76 mm)** and do not embed more than **4 inches (102 mm)**.
    3. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds **48 inches (1200 mm)**.
    4. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to one-sixth depth of joist, one-third at ends. Do not bore holes larger than 1/3 depth of joist; do not locate closer than **2 inches (50 mm)** from top or bottom.
    5. Provide solid blocking of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness by depth of joist at ends of joists unless nailed to header or band.
    6. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders, or partitions not less than **4 inches (102 mm)** or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness by depth of joist over supports.
    7. Anchor members paralleling masonry with **1/4-by-1-1/4-inch (6.4-by-32-mm)** metal strap anchors spaced not more than **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c., extending over and fastening to 3 joists. Embed anchors at least **4 inches (102 mm)** into grouted masonry with ends bent at right angles and extending **4 inches (102 mm)** beyond bend.
    8. Provide solid blocking between joists under jamb studs for openings.
    9. Under non-load-bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above.
      - a. Provide triple joists separated as above, under partitions receiving ceramic tile and similar heavy finishes or fixtures.
    10. Provide bridging of type indicated below, at intervals of **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c., between joists.
      - a. Diagonal wood bridging formed from bevel-cut, **1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-64-mm actual-)** size lumber, double-crossed and nailed at both ends to joists.
      - b. Steel bridging installed to comply with bridging manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Ceiling Joist And Rafter Framing Installation
1. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
    - a. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide **1-by-8-inch nominal- (19-by-184-mm actual-)** size or **2-by-4-inch nominal- (38-by-89-mm actual-)** size stringers spaced **48 inches (1200 mm)** o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
  2. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and toe nail or use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
    - a. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and **2 inches (50 mm)** deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
    - b. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and **2 inches (50 mm)** deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
  3. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide **1-by-6-inch nominal- (19-by-140-mm actual-)** size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than **48 inches (1219 mm)** o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
  4. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions, if any.
- G. Timber Framing Installation

1. Install timber with crown edge up and provide not less than **4 inches (102 mm)** of bearing on supports. Provide continuous members, unless otherwise indicated; tie together over supports as indicated if not continuous.
2. Where beams or girders are framed into pockets of exterior concrete or masonry walls, provide **1/2-inch (13-mm)** air space at sides and ends of wood members.
3. Install wood posts using metal anchors indicated.
4. Treat ends of timber beams and posts exposed to weather by dipping in water-repellent preservative for 15 minutes.

#### H. Stair Framing Installation

1. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Stringer Size: **2-by-12-inch nominal- (38-by-286-mm actual-)** size, minimum.
  - b. Stringer Material: Laminated-veneer lumber **OR** parallel-strand lumber **OR** solid lumber, **as directed**.
  - c. Notching: Notch stringers to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)** of effective depth.
  - d. Stringer Spacing: At least 3 stringers for each **36-inch (914-mm)** clear width of stair.
2. Provide stair framing with no more than **3/16-inch (4.7-mm)** variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.

#### I. Protection

1. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
2. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 11 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 11 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 11 16 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY RENOVATION

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for rough carpentry renovation. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 GENERAL

A. Quality Assurance

1. Regulatory Requirements:

- a. Fire Retardant Treated Lumber and Plywood: Bear UL FR-S classification label.
- b. Preservative Treated Wood: Provide all heart redwood, cedar, or cyprus; or preservative-treated wood at following conditions in accordance with applicable building code:
  - 1) Wood framing, woodwork, and plywood up to and including subflooring at first-floor level of structures having crawl spaces, when bottoms of such items are 150 mm (6 inches) or less from earth underneath.
  - 2) Exterior wood steps, platforms, and railings.
  - 3) Wood sills, soles, plates, furring, and sleepers that are less than 150 mm (6 inches) from earth, furring and nailers that are set into or in contact with concrete or masonry.
  - 4) Nailers, edge strips, crickets, curbs, and cants for roof decks.
  - 5) Furring strips used on walls or partitions below grade and exterior walls above grade.
  - 6) Wood members used for rough framing of openings in exterior concrete or masonry walls.

B. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. General: Deliver material to site, off-load, and handle in manner that will not damage material. Store material off ground and cover with waterproof covering. Provide adequate ventilation.
  - a. Interior Fire-Retardant Treated Wood: Keep dry at all times. Replace material that has become wet. Store off ground, in building, or covered with unbroken water-tight cover in storage yard, during transit, and at job site. Keep ventilated to avoid moisture condensation.

C. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Requirements: Execute demolition and renovation in manner to limit unnecessary dust and noise, and in compliance with applicable codes and federal or state requirements. Burning of materials on site not allowed.
2. Existing Conditions: See Detailed Scope of Work. Do not interfere with use of occupied buildings or portions of buildings. Maintain free and safe passage to and from occupied areas.
3. Protection:
  - a. Provide necessary temporary shoring and bracing to support and protect portions of existing buildings during demolition operations. Leave such shoring in place until permanent supports have been installed. Be solely responsible for design, safety, and adequacy of temporary shoring and bracing and its ability to carry load for which intended.
  - b. Contractor: Protect grounds, plantings, buildings, and any other facilities or property from damage caused by construction operations.

4. Safety: Cease operations at endangered area, and notify the Owner immediately if safety of structure appears to be endangered. Take precautions to properly support structure. Do not resume work in endangered area until safety is restored.

D. Scheduling And Sequencing

1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.

### 1.3 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Materials for Patching, Extending, and Matching:
  - a. Provide same products or types of construction as in existing structure, as needed to patch, extend, or match existing work.
    - 1) Generally, Contract Documents will not define products or standards of workmanship present in existing construction. Determine products by inspection and testing as necessary, and required workmanship by reference to existing as sample of comparison.
    - 2) Patching, extending, and matching existing work and systems shall result in complete, finished system.
  - b. Presence of product, finish, or type of construction requires that patching, extending, or matching be performed as necessary to make work complete and consistent.
2. Lumber: Each Piece of Lumber: Grade stamped by recognized association or independent inspection agency certified by American Lumber Standards Committee's Board of Review.
  - a. New Replacement Studs and Joists: Match existing and complies with Reference Standards.
  - b. Wood Studs and Joists: No. 2 Grade or better.
  - c. Sill Plates on Concrete: All heart redwood, cedar, or cyprus: or preservative-treated wood.
  - d. Blocking and Furring: Standard Grade or Better.
  - e. Preservative-Treated: AWPB LP-2, pressure-treated with waterborne preservative. Penta or creosote not allowed.
    - 1) Treat drilled holes and cuts across grain in accordance with AWPB M4.
  - f. Fire-Retardant Treated:
    - 1) Lumber: AWPB C20 Interior Type A.
    - 2) Plywood: AWPB C27 Interior Type A.
    - 3) Bear UL FR-S classification label.
  - g. Pressure-Treated Lumber: Bear AWPB Quality Mark C-2.
  - h. Seasoning: Kiln dry to following (including treated material):
  - i. Lumber Up to 50 mm (2 inches): 19 percent or less moisture content.
  - j. Preservative- and Fire-Retardant Treated Material: Mill or rip material parallel to grain prior to treatment.
3. Plywood: PS-1: Each panel identified with APA grade trademark.
  - a. Subfloor: APA Rated Sheathing, Tongue and groove, Exposure 1 (interior with exterior glue).
    - 1) Span Rating: Not less than spacing of framing members.
    - 2) Thickness: In accordance with APA Recommendations.
  - b. Roof Sheathing: APA Rated Sheathing, Exposure 1 (interior with exterior glue).
    - 1) Span Rating: Not less than spacing of framing members.
    - 2) Thickness: In accordance with APA Recommendations.
  - c. Wall Sheathing: APA CD, Exposure 1 (Interior with exterior glue).
    - 1) Span Rating: Not less than spacing of framing members.
    - 2) Thickness: As indicated.
  - d. Panel Edge Clips: Extruded aluminum or hot-dipped galvanized steel, H-shaped clips to prevent differential deflection of roof sheathing.
  - e. Fire-Retardant Treated Plywood: Bear UL FR-S classification label.

- 1) Interior Plywood Fire Retardant Treatment: AWP C27 Interior Type A.
- 2) Exterior Plywood Fire Retardant Treatment: AWP C27 Exterior Type.
- f. Seasoning: Kiln dry plywood to 15 percent or less moisture content.
  - 1) Pressure Treated Plywood: Kiln dry lumber after treatment.
- g. Nails: Type and size as recommended by APA.
4. Metal Framing Anchors: Punched and formed for nailing so that nails will be stressed in shear only.
  - a. General: Provide with nails and bolts according to manufacturers requirements.
    - 1) Nails: Zinc coated.
  - b. Types: As indicated and as required to accommodate framing.
  - c. Sizes: Of sufficient size and strength to develop full strength of supported member in accordance with applicable building code.
  - d. Metal Bridging: Minimum No. 16 U.S. Standard gage.
  - e. Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized.
5. Anchor Bolts: Furnish anchors to be built into concrete and masonry for anchorage of wood.
6. Rough Hardware: Provide necessary bolts, screws, nails, clips, plates, straps, hangers, etc., necessary for completion of renovation work. Provide correct material of proper size and strength for purpose intended, conforming to Reference Standards and applicable building codes.
  - a. Exterior Locations and for Fire-Retardant- and Preservative-Treated Wood: Provide galvanized rough hardware.
7. Vapor Barrier at Crawl Spaces: ASTM D 2103, 0.15 mm (6 mil) polyethylene sheeting.
8. Insulation: Type and R-value to comply with applicable codes and regulations.
  - a. Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665 fiberglass blankets. Exposed insulation shall be foil-faced with flame-spread rating of 25 or less in accordance with ASTM E 84, where required by applicable codes and regulations.

#### 1.4 EXECUTION

- A. Examination
  1. Units, Spaces, and Areas to be Renovated: Comply with Detailed Scope of Work.
    - a. Verify that surfaces to receive rough carpentry are prepared to require grades and dimensions.
- B. Preparation
  1. Dust Protection: Comply with Detailed Scope of Work.
  2. Building Occupation: Carry out demolition and renovation work to cause as little inconvenience to occupants as possible. See Detailed Scope of Work.
  3. Protection: See Detailed Scope of Work.
  4. Selective Demolition: Comply with Detailed Scope of Work.
- C. Laying Out Work
  1. Discrepancies: Verify dimensions and elevations indicated in layout of existing work.
    - a. Prior to commencing work, carefully compare and check Drawings (if any) for discrepancies in locations or elevations of work to be executed.
    - b. Refer discrepancies among Drawings (if any), Specifications, and existing conditions to the Owner for adjustment before work affected is performed.
      - 1) Failure to make such notification shall place responsibility on Contractor to carry out work in satisfactory, workmanlike manner.
  2. Contractor: Responsible for location and elevation of construction contemplated by Construction Documents.
- D. Performance
  1. Patching: Patch and extend existing work using skilled mechanics who are capable of matching existing quality of workmanship.



- a. Quality of Patched or Extended Work: Not less than specified for new work. If similar new work is not specified, equal to existing work.
2. General: Perform in accordance with AF&PA National Design Specification for Wood Construction, latest Edition.
  - a. Framing: Erect plumb, level and true and rigidly anchor in place. Cut framing square on bearings, closely fit, accurately set to required lines and levels.
  - b. Nail or spike members in accordance with applicable codes.
  - c. Framing: 400 mm (16 inches) OC unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Shims: Do not use shims for leveling on wood or metal bearings. Use steel or slate shims with full bearing on masonry or concrete.
  - e. Do not splice framing members between bearing points.
  - f. Metal Framing Anchors: Install where required for proper connections in accordance with manufacturer recommendations. Drive nail in each nail hole provided in anchor.
3. Wood Framing:
  - a. Openings: Frame members for passage of pipes and ducts to avoid cutting structural members. Do not cut, notch, or bore framing members for passage of pipes or conduits without the Owner's permission. Reinforce framing members as directed where damaged by cuffing.
  - b. Firestopping: Firestop concealed spaces in framing. No shutoff by framing members to prevent drafts from one space to another. Use 50 mm (2 inch) nominal thick accurately fit wood blocking to fill opening.
  - c. Joists and Beams: Sizes and spacing as indicated.
    - 1) Set crown edge-up with 90 mm (3-1/2 inch) bearing unless noted otherwise.
    - 2) Toe nail joists to wood sills with 16d nails both sides or secure with metal connectors. Lap and spike joists over supports.
    - 3) Double joists to form headers and trimmers at openings over 1,200 mm (4 feet) and support with metal joist hangers.
    - 4) Provide joist hangers at joists framing into flush wood beams.
  - d. Provide blocking or suitable edge support between members as necessary to support edges of sheathing.
  - e. Replace warped lumber in walls and joists prior to installation of finish surface.
4. Anchors: Unless otherwise indicated, bolt plates firmly to concrete or masonry with anchor bolts in accordance with applicable code.
  - a. In Masonry: Embed anchor bolts minimum 400 mm (16 inches) and provide each with nut and 50 mm (2 inch) diameter washer at bottom end. Grout bolts with mortar.
  - b. In Concrete: Embed anchor bolts minimum 200 mm (8 inches) and provide each with nut and 50 mm (2 inch) diameter washer at bottom end. 90 degree bent end may be substituted for nut and washer.
5. Wood Studs: Install at 400 mm (16 inches) OC with single bottom plate and double top plate with joints staggered.
  - a. Double studs at openings and triple at corners and intersections. Double headers with double trimmers over openings.
6. Plywood Sheathing: Install in accordance with APA Recommendations.
  - a. Provide space at end and side joints as recommended by APA.
  - b. Install panels with face grain perpendicular to supports with end-joints supported. Stagger ends of adjacent sheets 1 200 mm (4 feet) where possible.
  - c. Where support spacing exceeds maximum span for unsupported edge, provide adequate blocking, tongue and groove edges, or panel edge clips, in accordance with APA E30-L.
  - d. Nail in accordance with APA's Recommendations.
7. Preservative- and Fire-Retardant Material: Milling or ripping material parallel to grain not allowed unless material is treated after milling or ripping.
  - a. Preservative-Treated Material: Treat drilled holes and cuts across grain in accordance with AWP4 M4.

## E. Flooring Work

1. Defective Joists and Subfloor: Remove defective joists and subfloor which no longer satisfy structural requirements with new material to fulfill their structural function.
  - a. Remove ceiling, subfloor, and joists in safe manner and at minimum inconvenience to residents.
  - b. Splice, strengthen, support, or replace rotted or otherwise defective joists to fulfill their anticipated structural function.
  - c. New Replacement Joists: Comply with requirements of appropriate section specifying new flooring, including flooring manufacturer's recommendations.
  - d. Ceiling Replacement: Include removal and replacement of ceiling finish to match existing.
    - 1) Glue and screw new ceiling material to bottom of joists.
    - 2) Paint entire ceiling of space affected by replacement matching color of existing walls in accordance with Division 9 Section "Painting."
  - e. Crawl-Space Insulation: Replace insulation damaged by or removed during construction operations. If there is no existing insulation, provide new insulation, where required.
    - 1) Insulation: Type and R-value to comply with applicable codes and regulations.
  - f. New Replacement Subfloor: Install in accordance with APA Recommendations and with requirements of appropriate section specifying new flooring, including flooring manufacturer's recommendations.
    - 1) Glue and nail new subfloor to joists.
    - 2) Nail in accordance with APA's Recommendations and sufficiently to avoid squeaking floors.
  - g. Base at walls: Replace wood base (including coves and corner rounds) with new wood base to match existing.
2. Above-Grade Floors to Receive Resilient Flooring: Examine to ensure that vapor-barrier sheet is laid over ground, sheets lapped, edge joints sealed and sufficient cross ventilation exists to insure dryness.
  - a. If vapor barrier does not cover ground in crawl space, install vapor barrier in accordance with applicable codes and regulations.
    - 1) Completely cover ground at crawl spaces with minimum 150 mm (6 inch) lapped joints.
    - 2) Tape all lapped joints with water-resistive tape in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
    - 3) Protect vapor barrier from puncture and displacement. Lay heavy objects such as pieces of masonry at intervals not over 1 200 mm (4 feet) OC at lapped joints to hold in place. If punctures occur in vapor barrier, repair by placing patches of vapor-barrier material over punctures and taping all lapped joints.
  - b. If crawl space does not have enough ventilation, install additional vents in accordance with applicable codes and regulations.
3. Floors Damaged by Construction Operations: Patch floor damage to match existing floor surfaces, and comply with requirements for new flooring.

#### F. Roofing Work

1. Removal of Existing Roofing: Roofing may contain asbestos fibers. Comply with applicable codes, laws, and regulations regarding asbestos materials.
2. Defective Rafters and Sheathing: Remove defective rafters and sheathing which no longer satisfy structural requirements with new material to match existing.
  - a. Remove sheathing and rafters in safe manner and at minimum inconvenience to residents.
  - b. Splice, strengthen, support, or replace rotted or otherwise defective rafters to fulfill their anticipated structural function.
  - c. New Replacement Sheathing: Install in accordance with APA Recommendations and with requirements of applicable Division 7 roofing Sections.
    - 1) Nail in accordance with APA's Recommendations.

#### G. Blocking And Furring

1. Blocking: Install wood blocking as required for proper support of hardware, bath accessories, cabinets, and other wall-mounted items.

- a. Set true to line, level, or plumb, well-secured in stud wall and flush with back of drywall or other wall finish.
  - b. Coordinate exact locations with other sections.
2. Rough Wood Bucks: Set true and plumb and anchor to concrete or masonry with steel straps extending into wall minimum 200 mm (8 inches). Place anchors near top and bottom of buck and space uniformly at maximum 600 mm (24 inches) OC. Provide nominal 50 mm (2 inch) thick if not indicated.
3. Wood Furring: Install wood furring on masonry or concrete walls in sizes and spacing as indicated on Drawings (if any). Provide minimum 25 mm by 75-mm (1 inch by 3 inch) nominal furring strips spaced at maximum of 400 mm (16 inches) OC if not indicated.
  - a. Securely fasten wood furring at maximum 900 mm (3 feet) OC with toggle or expansion bolts, cut concrete nails or ramset anchors as required. Do not use wood plugs.
  - b. Install furring around openings and at corners.
  - c. Erect furring plumb and level, and shim out as required to provide true, even plane with surfaces suitable to receive required finish.

END OF SECTION 06 11 16 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 11 16 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
06 11 16 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 11 16 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 15 13 00 - EXTERIOR ROUGH CARPENTRY

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior rough carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

##### 1. Section Includes:

- a. Elevated decks including wood decking, plastic decking, stairs, railings, and support framing.
- b. Wood benches.

#### C. Definitions

1. Boards: Lumber of less than **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** in thickness and **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** or greater width.
2. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal (38 mm actual)** or greater but less than **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** in least dimension.
3. Timber: Lumber of **5 inches nominal (114 mm actual)** or greater in least dimension.
4. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - b. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - c. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For preservative-treated wood products, plastic decking, and metal framing anchors.
2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood products comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
3. Material Certificates:
  - a. For lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  - b. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
4. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from an approved organization/model code, as directed by the Owner:
  - a. Preservative-treated wood products.
  - b. Plastic decking.
  - c. Expansion anchors.
  - d. Metal framing anchors.
  - e. Decking fasteners.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Forest Certification: Provide wood products obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."



F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store materials under cover and protected from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
2. Handle and store plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Lumber, General

1. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and with applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - a. Factory mark each item with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - b. For items that are exposed to view in the completed Work, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - c. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.
  - d. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Dimension Lumber

1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent **OR** 19 percent **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 15 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness **OR** 19 percent for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness, **as directed**.
2. Deck and Stair Framing: Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
  - a. Hem-fir (North); NLGA.
  - b. Southern pine; SPIB.
  - c. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - d. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
  - e. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  - f. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
  - g. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - h. Douglas fir-larch (North); NLGA.
  - i. Spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

**OR**

- Deck and Stair Framing: Any species and grade with a modulus of elasticity of at least 1,500,000 psi (10 350 MPa) **OR** 1,300,000 psi (8970 MPa) **OR** 1,100,000 psi (7590 MPa) **OR** 1,000,000 psi (6900 MPa) **OR** 900,000 psi (6210 MPa), **as directed**, and an extreme fiber stress in bending of at least 1000 psi (6.9 MPa) **OR** 850 psi (5.86 MPa) **OR** 700 psi (4.83 MPa) **OR** 600 psi (4.14 MPa) **OR** 500 psi (3.45 MPa), **as directed**, for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness and 12-inch nominal (286-mm actual) width for single-member use.
3. Dimension Lumber Posts: No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2 **OR** Construction, Stud, or No. 3, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
    - a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - d. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - e. Northern species; NLGA.
    - f. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

- g. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  4. Dimension Lumber Decking and Stair Treads: No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
    - a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - d. Redwood; RIS.

**OR**

Dimension Lumber Decking and Stair Treads: Deck Heart or Construction Heart **OR** Deck Common or Construction Common, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.
  5. Dimension Lumber Railing Members: Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2 **OR** Construction or No. 2, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
    - a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - d. Redwood; RIS.
    - e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

**OR**

Dimension Lumber Railing Members: Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.
  6. Dimension Lumber for Benches: Select Structural **OR** No. 1, **as directed**, grade and as selected from the following species:
    - a. Hem-fir or hem-fir (North); NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
    - d. Redwood; RIS.
    - e. Spruce-pine-fir or spruce-pine-fir (South); NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

**OR**

Dimension Lumber for Benches: Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.
- C. Boards
1. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent.
  2. Board Decking and Stair Treads: **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** thick radius-edged decking of any of the following species and grades:
    - a. Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-south, Patio 1 **OR** Patio 2, **as directed**, WWPA.
    - b. Douglas fir-larch, Select Dex **OR** Commercial Dex, **as directed**, WCLIB.
    - c. Douglas fir-larch (North), Select Patio **OR** Commercial Patio, **as directed**, NLGA.
    - d. Hem-fir, Patio 1 **OR** Patio 2, **as directed**, WWPA.
    - e. Hem-fir, Select Dex **OR** Commercial Dex, **as directed**, WCLIB.
    - f. Hem-fir (North), Select Patio **OR** Commercial Patio, **as directed**, NLGA.
    - g. Redwood, Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**; RIS.
    - h. Southern pine, Premium **OR** Standard, **as directed**, SPIB.
    - i. Western red cedar, Patio 1 **OR** Patio 2, **as directed**, WWPA.
    - j. Western red cedar, Select Dex **OR** Commercial Dex, **as directed**, WCLIB.
    - k. Western red cedar (North), Select Patio **OR** Commercial Patio, **as directed**, NLGA.
  3. Railing Boards: Any of the following species and grades:
    - a. Douglas fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Hem-fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Redwood, Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**; RIS.
    - d. Southern pine, B & B finish; SPIB.
  4. Boards for Benches: Any of the following species and grades:
    - a. Douglas fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - b. Hem-fir, C & Btr finish or C Select; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Redwood, Heart Clear **OR** Heart B or Select Heart, **as directed**; RIS.





- d. Southern pine, Edge Grain B & B finish **OR** Near Rift B & B finish **OR** B & B finish, **as directed**; SPIB.

D. Timber

- 1. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent **OR** No limit, **as directed**.
- 2. Dressing: Provide dressed timber (S4S) or timber that is rough sawn (Rgh) unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Timber Posts:
  - a. Balsam fir, Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir-larch (North), eastern hemlock tamarack (North), hem-fir, southern pine, western hemlock, or western hemlock (North); No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, NeLMA, NLGA, SPIB, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - b. Alaska cedar; No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, WCLIB.
  - c. Southern pine; No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, SPIB.

E. Round Wood Poles

- 1. Round Wood Poles: Clean-peeled wood poles complying with ASTM D 3200; with at least 80 percent of inner bark removed and with knots and limbs cut flush with the surface.
- 2. Species: as directed by the Owner.

F. Preservative Treatment

- 1. Pressure treat boards and dimension lumber with waterborne preservative according to AWWA C2.
- 2. Pressure treat timber with waterborne preservative according to AWWA C15 requirements for "sawn building poles and posts as structural members."
  - a. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
- 3. Pressure treat poles with waterborne preservative to comply with AWWA C4.
  - a. Treatment with CCA shall include post-treatment fixation process.
- 4. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Do not use chemicals containing arsenic or chromium except for timber posts **OR** except for poles, **as directed**.
- 5. Use process that includes water-repellent treatment.
 

**OR**

Use process that does not include water repellents or other substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.
- 6. After treatment, redry boards, dimension lumber, timber, and poles to 19 percent maximum moisture content.
- 7. Mark treated wood with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
  - a. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark each piece on surface that will not be exposed or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- 8. Application: Treat all exterior rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat items indicated on Drawings and the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Framing members less than 18 inches (460 mm) above grade.
  - b. Sills and ledgers.
  - c. Members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  - d. Posts.
  - e. Round wood poles.
  - f. Decking.
  - g. Stair treads.

G. Plastic Decking

- 1. Plastic Lumber, General: Products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project for indicated occupancy and type of construction.

- a. Allowable loads and spans, as documented in evaluation reports or in information referenced in evaluation reports, shall not be less than design loads and spans indicated.
  2. Composite Plastic Lumber: Solid or hollow shapes made from a mixture of cellulose fiber and polyethylene or polypropylene.
    - a. Configuration: Provide product with grooved edges designed for fastening with concealed splines.
    - b. Surface Texture: Woodgrain **OR** Smooth **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  3. All-Plastic Lumber: Solid or hollow shapes made from high-density polyethylene (HDPE) **OR** PVC **OR** polystyrene **OR** cellular PVC, **as directed**, with no cellulose fiber.
    - a. Configuration: Provide product with grooved edges designed for fastening with concealed splines **OR** tongue-and-groove edges designed for concealed fastening, **as directed**.
    - b. Surface Texture: Woodgrain **OR** Smooth **OR** Manufacturer's standard, **as directed**.
    - c. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Fasteners
  1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.
    - a. Use stainless steel **OR** fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless-steel fasteners.
    - c. For plastic **OR** wood, **as directed**, decking, use stainless-steel fasteners where fasteners are exposed to view.
    - d. For redwood, use brass/bronze **OR** stainless-steel **OR** hot-dip galvanized-steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
  2. Nails: ASTM F 1667.
  3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
  4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  5. Lag Screws: **ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M)**.
  6. Carbon-Steel Bolts: **ASTM A 307 (ASTM F 568M)** with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers all hot-dip zinc coated.
  7. Stainless-Steel Bolts: **ASTM F 593, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M, Grade A1 or A4)**; with **ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  8. Postinstalled Anchors: Stainless-steel, chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4)**.
- I. Metal Framing Anchors
  1. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated on Drawings **OR** of basis-of-design products, **as directed**. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
  2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G60 (Z180) OR G90 (Z270) OR G185 (Z550)**, **as directed**, coating designation.
  3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  4. Joist Hangers: U-shaped, with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** long seat and **1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-)** wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
  5. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.



6. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post **1 inch (25 mm)** above base and with **2-inch- (50-mm-)** minimum side cover, socket **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick, and standoff and adjustment plates **0.108 inch (2.8 mm)** thick.
7. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.

J. Concealed Decking Fasteners

1. Deck Splines: Plastic splines designed to fit in grooves routed into the sides of decking material and be fastened to deck framing with screws. Splines provide uniform spacing of decking material. Splines are made from UV-resistant polypropylene.
2. Deck Clips: Black oxide coated stainless-steel clips designed to be fastened to deck framing with screws, and to secure decking material with teeth that also provide uniform spacing of decking material.
3. Deck Tracks: Formed metal strips designed to be fastened to deck framing and to secure decking material from underside with screws. Made from epoxy powder-coated, hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
2. Prime lumber to be painted, including both faces and edges. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting".

B. Installation, General

1. Set exterior rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit exterior rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
2. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install wood decking and stair treads with crown up (bark side down).
4. Install plastic lumber to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Secure decking to framing with concealed decking fasteners.
6. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
8. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
9. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
10. Comply with AWWA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - a. Use inorganic boron (SBX) for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - b. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
11. Securely attach exterior rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304 of the ICC's International Building Code.
  - d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
  - e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members" and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
12. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view. Make tight connections

between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

13. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.

C. Elevated Deck Joist Framing Installation

1. General: Install joists with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** of bearing on wood or metal, or **3 inches (76 mm)** on masonry. Attach floor joists where framed into wood supporting members by using wood ledgers as indicated or, if not indicated, by using metal joist hangers. Do not notch joists.
2. Frame openings with headers and trimmers supported by metal joist hangers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds **48 inches (1200 mm)**.
3. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams or girders not less than **4 inches (102 mm)** or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness by depth of joist over supports.
4. Provide solid blocking of **2-inch nominal (38-mm actual)** thickness by depth of joist at intervals of **96 inches (2438 mm)** o.c., between joists.

D. Stair Installation

1. Provide stair framing members of size, space, and configuration indicated or, if not indicated, to comply with the following requirements:
  - a. Stringer Size: **2 by 12 inches nominal (38 by 286 mm actual)**, minimum.
  - b. Notching: Notch stringers to receive treads, risers, and supports; leave at least **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)** of effective depth.
  - c. Stringer Spacing: At least three stringers for each **36-inch (914-mm)** clear width of stair.
2. Provide stair framing with no more than **3/16-inch (4.7-mm)** variation between adjacent treads and risers and no more than **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
3. Treads and Risers: Secure by gluing and nailing **OR** screwing, **as directed**, to carriages. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.

E. Railing Installation

1. Balusters: Fit to railings, glue, and nail **OR** screw, **as directed**, in place. Countersink fastener heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
2. Newel Posts: Secure to stringers and risers with through bolts **OR** lag screws **OR** countersunk-head wood screws and glue, **as directed**.
3. Railings: Secure wall rails with metal brackets. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts and glue.

END OF SECTION 06 15 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 15 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 15 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 15 13 00	06 05 73 33	Wood Decking
06 15 13 00	06 11 16 00	Rough Carpentry Renovation

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 16 23 00 - SHEATHING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for sheathing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Wall sheathing.
  - b. Roof sheathing.
  - c. Composite nail base insulated roof sheathing.
  - d. Subflooring.
  - e. Underlayment.
  - f. Building paper.
  - g. Building wrap.
  - h. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment.
  - i. Flexible flashing at openings in sheathing.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
  - c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
  - d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
  - f. For building wrap, include data on air-/moisture-infiltration protection based on testing according to referenced standards.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
  - c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
3. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - a. Preservative-treated plywood.
  - b. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.





- c. Foam-plastic sheathing.
- d. Building wrap.

D. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
  - a. Plywood.
  - b. Oriented strand board.
  - c. Fiberboard wall sheathing.
  - d. Particleboard underlayment.
  - e. Hardboard underlayment.

E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Wood Panel Products, General

1. Plywood: DOC PS 1 **OR** Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
2. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.
3. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
4. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

B. Preservative-Treated Plywood

1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC9.
  - a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
2. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Application: Treat all plywood, unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat items indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood

1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPAC27.
  - a. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - b. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - c. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for roof sheathing and where indicated.
  - d. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
3. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Application: Treat all plywood, unless otherwise indicated **OR** Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
  - a. Roof and wall sheathing within **48 inches (1220 mm)** of fire **OR** party, **as directed**, walls.

- b. Roof sheathing.
  - c. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.
- D. Wall Sheathing
- 1. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I **OR** Exterior **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
  - 2. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
  - 3. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 79/C 79M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.
    - a. Type and Thickness: Regular, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** Type X, **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - 4. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
    - a. Type and Thickness: Regular, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** Type X, **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - 5. Cellulose Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, gypsum sheathing.
    - a. Type and Thickness: Regular, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** Type X, **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - 6. Fiberboard Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 208, Type IV, Grade 1 (Regular) **OR** 2 (Structural), **as directed**, cellulosic fiberboard sheathing with square edges, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** **25/32 inch (20 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
  - 7. Extruded-Polystyrene-Foam Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 578, Type IV, in manufacturer's standard lengths and widths with tongue-and-groove or shiplap long edges as standard with manufacturer.
    - a. Thickness: **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR** **1 inch (25 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - 8. Foil-Faced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 2, aluminum-foil-faced, glass-fiber-reinforced, rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation. Foam-plastic core and facings shall have a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested individually.
    - a. Thickness: **7/16 inch (11.1 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)** **OR** **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR** **1 inch (25 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
- E. Roof Sheathing
- 1. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I **OR** Exterior **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
  - 2. Oriented-Strand-Board Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, sheathing.
- F. Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing
- 1. Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing: Rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation with oriented strand board laminated to one face complying with ASTM C 1289, Type V.
  - 2. Vented, Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing:
    - a. Rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation complying with ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, with oriented strand board adhered to spacers on one face.  
**OR**  
Rigid, cellular, polyisocyanurate thermal insulation with oriented strand board laminated to one face complying with ASTM C 1289, Type V. Oriented-strand-board face has a second layer of oriented strand board adhered to it with spacers between.
      - 1) Polyisocyanurate-Foam Thickness: **1 inch (25 mm)** **OR** **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** **OR** **2 inches (50 mm)** **OR** **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** **OR** **3 inches (76 mm)** **OR** **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)** **OR** **4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**.
      - 2) Oriented-Strand-Board Nominal Thickness: **7/16 inch (11.1 mm)** **OR** **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, **as directed**.
      - 3) Spacers: Wood furring strips or blocks not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick and spaced not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** **OR** **16 inches (400 mm)** **OR** **24 inches (600 mm)**, **as directed**, o.c.

G. Subflooring And Underlayment

1. Plywood Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I, C-C Plugged **OR** Exterior, C-C Plugged **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I, Underlayment **OR** Exposure 1, Underlayment, **as directed**, single-floor panels.
2. Oriented-Strand-Board Combination Subfloor-Underlayment: Exposure 1 single-floor panels.
3. Plywood Subflooring: Exterior, Structural I **OR** Exterior **OR** Exposure 1, Structural I **OR** Exposure 1, **as directed**, single-floor panels or sheathing.
4. Oriented-Strand-Board Subflooring: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing **OR** single-floor panels or sheathing, **as directed**.
5. Underlayment, General: Provide underlayment in nominal thicknesses indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** over smooth subfloors and not less than **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** over board or uneven subfloors.
6. Plywood Underlayment for Resilient Flooring: DOC PS 1, Exterior A-C **OR** Exterior B-C **OR** Exterior, C-C Plugged **OR** Exposure 1 Underlayment, **as directed**, with fully sanded face.
7. Plywood Underlayment for Ceramic Tile: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged, not less than **5/8-inch (15.9-mm)** nominal thickness, for ceramic tile set in organic **OR** epoxy, **as directed**, adhesive.
8. Plywood Underlayment for Carpet: DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged **OR** Exposure 1, Underlayment **OR** Interior, Underlayment, **as directed**.
9. Particleboard Underlayment: ANSI A208.1, Grade PBU **OR** M-2, Exterior Glue, complying with dimensional tolerances and thickness swell requirements of Grade PBU, **as directed**.
10. Hardboard Underlayment: AHA A135.4, Class 4 (Service), Surface S1S; with back side sanded.

H. Fasteners

1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - a. For roof and wall, **as directed**, sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
5. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
  - a. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
6. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
  - a. For steel framing less than **0.0329 inch (0.835 mm)** thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 1002.
  - b. For steel framing from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 954.
7. Screws for Fastening Oriented-Strand-Board-Surfaced, Polyisocyanurate-Foam Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

I. Weather-Resistant Sheathing Paper

1. Building Paper:
  - a. ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt-saturated organic felt), unperforated.  
**OR**

IBC Standard 1404.2, Grade D (water-vapor-permeable, kraft building paper), except that water resistance shall be not less than 1 hour and water-vapor transmission shall be not less than 75 g/sq. m x 24 h.

2. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air retarder; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 535 **OR** 152 **OR** 125 **OR** 63, **as directed**, g through 1 sq. m of surface in 24 hours per ASTM E 96, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  - b. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
3. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

J. Sheathing Joint-And-Penetration Treatment Materials

1. Sealant for Paper-Surfaced **OR** Glass-Mat, **as directed**, Gypsum Sheathing Board:
  - a. Elastomeric, medium-modulus, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant compatible with joint substrates formed by gypsum sheathing and other materials, recommended by sheathing manufacturer for application indicated, and complying with requirements for elastomeric sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".  
**OR**  
Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing, and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
2. Sheathing Tape for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum **2 inches (50 mm)** wide, **10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch (390 by 390 or 390 by 780 threads/m)**, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing board and with a history of successful in-service use.
3. Sheathing Tape for Foam-Plastic Sheathing: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by sheathing manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in sheathing.

K. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with APA AFG-01 **OR** ASTM D 3498, **as directed**, that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.
  - a. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 **OR** 70, **as directed**, g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than **0.025 inch (0.6 mm)** **OR** **0.030 inch (0.8 mm)** **OR** **0.040 inch (1.0 mm)**, **as directed**.
3. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation, General

1. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
2. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - a. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - b. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
  - c. "Nailing Schedule," and Tables in Section 2304 of the ICC's International Building Code.
  - d. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's "Standard Building Code."



- e. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."
- f. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code."
- 4. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- 5. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- 6. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- 7. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

#### B. Wood Structural Panel Installation

- 1. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30S, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- 2. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
  - a. Combination Subfloor-Underlayment:
    - 1) Glue and nail **OR** Nail, **as directed**, to wood framing.
    - 2) Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - 3) Space panels **1/8 inch (3 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
  - b. Subflooring:
    - 1) Glue and nail **OR** Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, to wood framing.
    - 2) Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - 3) Space panels **1/8 inch (3 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
  - c. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
    - 1) Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.
    - 2) Screw to cold-formed metal framing.
    - 3) Space panels **1/8 inch (3 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
  - d. Underlayment:
    - 1) Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, to subflooring.
    - 2) Space panels **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)** apart at edges and ends.
    - 3) Fill and sand edge joints of underlayment receiving resilient flooring right before installing flooring.

#### C. Gypsum Sheathing Installation

- 1. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Fasten gypsum sheathing to wood framing with nails **OR** screws, **as directed**.
  - b. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  - c. Install boards with a **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  - d. Install boards with a **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- 2. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.
- 3. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent boards without forcing. Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.



- a. Space fasteners approximately **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. and set back a minimum of **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** from edges and ends of boards.
    - b. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
  4. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
    - a. Space fasteners approximately **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. and set back a minimum of **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** from edges and ends of boards.
    - b. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- D. Fiberboard Sheathing Installation
  1. Comply with ASTM C 846 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Fasten fiberboard sheathing panels to intermediate supports and then at edges and ends. Use galvanized roofing nails or galvanized staples, **as directed**; comply with manufacturer's recommended spacing and referenced fastening schedule. Drive fasteners flush with surface of sheathing and locate perimeter fasteners at least **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** from edges and ends.
  3. Install sheathing vertically with long edges parallel to, and centered over, studs. Install solid wood blocking where end joints do not occur over framing. Allow **1/8-inch (3-mm)** open space between edges and ends of adjacent units. Stagger horizontal joints if any.
  4. Cover sheathing as soon as practical after installation to prevent deterioration from wetting.
- E. Foam-Plastic Sheathing Installation
  1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Foam-Plastic Wall Sheathing: Install vapor-relief strips or equivalent for permitting escape of moisture vapor that otherwise would be trapped in stud cavity behind sheathing.
- F. Particleboard Underlayment Installation
  1. Comply with the National Particleboard Association's recommendations for type of subfloor indicated. Fill and sand gouges, gaps, and chipped edges. Sand uneven joints flush.
    - a. Fastening Method: Glue and nail **OR** Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, underlayment to subflooring.
- G. Hardboard Underlayment Installation
  1. Comply with AHA's "Application Instructions for Basic Hardboard Products" and with hardboard manufacturer's written instructions for preparing and applying hardboard underlayment.
    - a. Fastening Method: Nail **OR** Nail or staple, **as directed**, underlayment to subflooring.
- H. Weather-Resistant Sheathing-Paper Installation
  1. General: Cover sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper as follows:
    - a. Cut back barrier **1/2 inch (13 mm)** on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
    - b. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum **4-inch (100-mm)** overlap, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Building Paper: Apply horizontally with a **2-inch (50-mm)** overlap and a **6-inch (150-mm)** end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails.
  3. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
    - b. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.
- I. Sheathing Joint-And-Penetration Treatment
  1. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

- a. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient quantity of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
- b. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing board joints, and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.
- c. Apply sheathing tape to joints between foam-plastic sheathing panels and at items penetrating sheathing. Apply at upstanding flashing to overlap both flashing and sheathing.

J. Flexible Flashing Installation

1. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
  - a. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - b. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches (100 mm), except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  - c. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
  - d. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
  - e. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

K. Protection

1. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: Protect sheathing by covering exposed exterior surface of sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper securely fastened to framing. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

END OF SECTION 06 16 23 00



Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 16 23 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 16 23 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 16 33 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 16 33 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 16 33 00	06 16 23 00	Sheathing
06 16 43 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 16 43 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 16 43 00	06 16 23 00	Sheathing
06 16 43 00	06 11 16 00	Rough Carpentry Renovation

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 17 13 00 - STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for structural glued-laminated timber. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes framing using structural glued-laminated timber.

#### C. Definitions

1. Structural Glued-Laminated (Glulam) Timber: An engineered, stress-rated timber product assembled from selected and prepared wood laminations bonded together with adhesives and with the grain of the laminations approximately parallel longitudinally.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Delegated Design: Design structural glued-laminated timber and connectors, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Structural Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of structural loads shown on Drawings without exceeding allowable design working stresses listed in AITC 117 or determined according to ASTM D 3737 and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Seismic Performance: Structural glued-laminated timber and connectors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood used for structural glued-laminated timber complies with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For laminating adhesive used for structural glued-laminated timber, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
3. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural glued-laminated timber and timber connectors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
4. Certificates of Conformance: Issued by a qualified testing and inspecting agency indicating that structural glued-laminated timber complies with requirements in AITC A190.1.

#### F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide factory-glued structural units produced by an AITC- or APA-licensed firm that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
  - a. Factory mark each piece of structural glued-laminated timber with AITC Quality Mark or APA-EWS trademark. Place mark on surfaces that will not be exposed in the completed Work.
2. Quality Standard: Comply with AITC A190.1.



3. Forest Certification: Provide structural glued-laminated timber produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. General: Comply with provisions in AITC 111.
2. Individually wrap members using plastic-coated paper covering with water-resistant seams.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Structural Glued-Laminated Timber

1. General: Provide structural glued-laminated timber that complies with AITC 117 or research/evaluation reports acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made from solid lumber laminations; do not use laminated veneer lumber.
  - b. Provide structural glued-laminated timber made with wet-use adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
    - 1) Use adhesive that contains no urea-formaldehyde resins.
2. Species and Grades for Structural Glued-Laminated Timber:
  - a. Alaska cedar **OR** Douglas fir-larch **OR** Southern pine **OR** Any species, **as directed**, in grades needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.  
**OR**  
Alaska cedar **OR** Douglas fir-larch **OR** Southern pine **OR** Any species, **as directed**, that complies with structural properties **OR** combination symbols **OR** beam stress classifications, **as directed**, indicated.
3. Species and Grades for Beams and Purlins:
  - a. Species and Beam Stress Classification: Ponderosa pine, 16F-1.3E **OR** Alaska cedar, 20F-1.5E **OR** Eastern spruce, 20F-1.5E **OR** Any species, 20F-1.5E **OR** Any species, 24F-1.7E **OR** Douglas fir-larch, 24F-1.8E **OR** Southern pine, 24F-1.8E **OR** Douglas fir-larch or southern pine, 24F-1.8E **OR** Southern pine, 30F-2.1E, **as directed**.
  - b. Lay-up: Balanced **OR** Either balanced or unbalanced, **as directed**.
4. Species and Grades for Columns and Truss Members:
  - a. Species and Combination Symbol: Alaska cedar, 70 **OR** Douglas fir-larch, 1 **OR** Douglas fir-larch, 3 **OR** Southern pine, 47 **OR** Southern pine, 50, **as directed**.
5. Appearance Grade: Premium **OR** Architectural **OR** Industrial **OR** Framing, **as directed**, complying with AITC 110.
6. Preservative Treatment after Fabrication: Where preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber is indicated, pressure treat after fabrication according to AWPA C28.
  - a. Use oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.  
**OR**  
Use copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.  
**OR**  
Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.  
**OR**  
Do not incise structural glued-laminated timber.
7. Preservative Treatment before Fabrication: Where preservative-treated structural glued-laminated timber is indicated, pressure treat lumber before gluing according to AWPA C28.
  - a. Use oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.  
**OR**  
Use copper naphthenate in a light petroleum solvent.  
**OR**  
Use a waterborne preservative that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that contains no arsenic or chromium.

**OR**

Use preservative solution without water repellents or substances that might interfere with application of indicated finishes.

**OR**

Do not incise wood used for producing structural glued-laminated timber.

**OR**

After dressing and fabricating members, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWWA M4 to surfaces cut to a depth of more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.

- 1) Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.

**OR**

Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.

8. End Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, colorless wood sealer that is effective in retarding the transmission of moisture at cross-grain cuts and is compatible with indicated finish.
9. Penetrating Sealer: Manufacturer's standard, transparent, penetrating wood sealer that is compatible with indicated finish.

#### B. Timber Connectors

1. General: Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Structural-steel shapes, plates, and flat bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - b. Round steel bars complying with ASTM A 575, Grade M 1020.
  - c. Hot-rolled steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Structural Steel, Type SS, Grade 33.
  - d. Stainless-steel plate and flat bars complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - e. Stainless-steel bars and shapes complying with ASTM A 276, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
  - f. Stainless-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** Type 316, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate beam seats from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with **0.239-inch (6-mm) OR 3/16-inch (5-mm) OR 3/8-inch (9.5-mm)**, **as directed**, bearing plates, **3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter-by-12-inch- (300-mm-) long** deformed bar anchors, and **0.239-inch (6-mm)** side plates.
3. Fabricate arch base shoes from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with **1-inch (25-mm)** base plates and **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** side plates.
4. Fabricate beam hangers from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with **0.179-inch (4.6-mm)** stirrups and **0.239-inch (6-mm)** top plates.
5. Fabricate hinge connectors from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with **0.179-inch (4.6-mm)** side plates and **3/4-inch (19-mm) OR 1-inch (25-mm)**, **as directed**, top and bottom plates.
6. Fabricate strap ties from steel **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, **2-1/2 inches (63 mm)** wide by **0.179 inch (4.6 mm) OR 3 inches (75 mm)** wide by **0.239 inch (6 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
7. Fabricate tie rods from round steel bars with upset threads connected with forged-steel turnbuckles complying with ASTM A 668/A 668M.
8. Provide bolts, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** unless otherwise indicated, complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; nuts complying with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
9. Provide shear plates, **2-5/8 inches (66.7 mm) OR 4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**, in diameter, complying with ASTM D 5933.
10. Finish steel assemblies and fasteners with rust-inhibitive primer, **2-mil (0.05-mm)** dry film thickness.
11. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies and fasteners after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.

#### C. Fabrication

1. Shop fabricate for connections to greatest extent possible, including cutting to length and drilling bolt holes.

- a. Dress exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
2. Camber: Fabricate horizontal and inclined members of less than 1:1 slope with either circular or parabolic camber equal to 1/500 of span.
3. End-Cut Sealing: Immediately after end cutting each member to final length and after preservative treatment, apply a saturation coat of end sealer to ends and other cross-cut surfaces, keeping surfaces flood coated for not less than 10 minutes.
4. Seal Coat: After fabricating, sanding, and end-coat sealing, apply a heavy saturation coat of penetrating sealer on surfaces of each unit, except for preservative-treated wood where treatment included a water repellent.

D. Factory Finishing

1. Wiped Stain Finish: Manufacturer's standard, dry-appearance, penetrating acrylic stain and sealer; oven dried and resistant to mildew and fungus.
  - a. Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
2. Clear Finish: Manufacturer's standard, two-coat, clear conversion varnish finish; oven dried and resistant to mildew and fungus.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. General: Erect structural glued-laminated timber true and plumb, and with uniform, close-fitting joints. Provide temporary bracing to maintain lines and levels until permanent supporting members are in place.
  - a. Lift with padded slings and protect corners with wood blocking.
  - b. Install structural glued-laminated timber to comply with Shop Drawings.
  - c. Install timber connectors as indicated.
2. Framing Built into Masonry: Provide **1/2-inch (13-mm)** clearance at tops, sides, and ends of members built into masonry; bevel cut ends **3 inches (76 mm)**; and do not embed more than **4 inches (102 mm)** unless otherwise indicated.
3. Fit structural glued-laminated timber by cutting and restoring exposed surfaces to match specified surfacing and finishing.
  - a. Predrill for fasteners using timber connectors as templates.
  - b. Dress exposed surfaces to remove planing or surfacing marks and to provide a finish equivalent to that produced by machine sanding with No. 120 grit sandpaper.
  - c. Coat cross cuts with end sealer.
  - d. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
    - 1) Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.

**OR**

Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.
4. Cutting: Avoid cutting after fabrication. Where field fitting is unavoidable, comply with requirements for shop fabrication.
  - a. Where preservative-treated members must be cut during erection, apply a field-treatment preservative to comply with AWPA M4.
    - 1) Use inorganic boron (SBX) treatment for members not in contact with the ground and continuously protected from liquid water.

**OR**

Use copper naphthenate treatment for members in contact with the ground or not continuously protected from liquid water.

B. Adjusting

1. Repair damaged surfaces and finishes after completing erection. Replace damaged structural glued-laminated timber if repairs are not approved by the Owner.
- C. Protection
1. Do not remove wrappings on individually wrapped members until they no longer serve a useful purpose including protection from weather, sunlight, soiling, and damage from work of other trades.
    - a. Coordinate wrapping removal with finishing work specified in Division 07. Retain wrapping where it can serve as a painting shield.

END OF SECTION 06 17 13 00

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 17 13 00	06 05 23 00	Timber Bridge Components
06 17 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 17 23 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 17 23 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 17 23 00	06 11 16 00	Rough Carpentry Renovation
06 17 43 00	06 05 23 00	Timber Bridge Components
06 17 43 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry
06 17 43 00	06 17 13 00	Structural Glued-Laminated Timber





**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 17 53 00 - METAL-PLATE-CONNECTED WOOD TRUSSES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal-plate-connected wood trusses. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Wood roof trusses.
  - b. Wood floor trusses.
  - c. Wood girder trusses.
  - d. Wood truss bracing.
  - e. Metal truss accessories.

#### C. Definitions

1. Metal-Plate-Connected Wood Trusses: Planar structural units consisting of metal-plate-connected members fabricated from dimension lumber and cut and assembled before delivery to Project site.
2. TPI: Truss Plate Institute, Inc.
3. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - b. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - c. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - d. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Structural Performance: Provide metal-plate-connected wood trusses capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated. Comply with requirements in TPI 1 unless more stringent requirements are specified below.
  - a. Design Loads: As indicated.
  - b. Maximum Deflection Under Design Loads:
    - 1) Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/180 **OR** 1/240 **OR** 1/360, **as directed**, of span.
    - 2) Floor Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/360 **OR** 1/480 **OR** 1/600, **as directed**, of span.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For wood-preservative-treated lumber, fire-retardant treated lumber, metal-plate connectors, metal truss accessories, and fasteners.
  - a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - c. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.



- d. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to truss fabricator.
- e. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
- 2. Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details for trusses.
  - a. Show location, pitch, span, camber, configuration, and spacing for each type of truss required.
  - b. Indicate sizes, stress grades, and species of lumber.
  - c. Indicate locations of permanent bracing required to prevent buckling of individual truss members due to design loads.
  - d. Indicate type, size, material, finish, design values, orientation, and location of metal connector plates.
  - e. Show splice details and bearing details.
  - f. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 3. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that wood used to produce metal-plate-connected wood trusses complies with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
- 4. Qualification Data: For metal-plate manufacturer, professional engineer, fabricator, and Installer.
- 5. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - a. Wood-preservative-treated lumber.
  - b. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  - c. Metal-plate connectors.
  - d. Metal truss accessories.

#### F. Quality Assurance

- 1. Metal Connector-Plate Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer that is a member of TPI and that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 for manufacture of connector plates.
  - a. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
  - b. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- 2. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that participates in a recognized quality-assurance program that complies with quality-control procedures in TPI 1 and that involves third-party inspection by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to the Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
- 3. Comply with applicable requirements and recommendations of the following publications:
  - a. TPI 1, "National Design Standard for Metal Plate Connected Wood Truss Construction."
  - b. TPI DSB, "Recommended Design Specification for Temporary Bracing of Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
  - c. TPI HIB, "Commentary and Recommendations for Handling, Installing & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
- 4. Wood Structural Design Standard: Comply with applicable requirements in AF&PA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."
- 5. Forest Certification: Provide metal-plate-connected wood trusses produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

#### G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Handle and store trusses to comply with recommendations of TPI HIB, "Commentary and Recommendations for Handling, Installing & Bracing Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses."
  - a. Store trusses flat, off of ground, and adequately supported to prevent lateral bending.
  - b. Protect trusses from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
  - c. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
2. Inspect trusses showing discoloration, corrosion, or other evidence of deterioration. Discard and replace trusses that are damaged or defective.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Dimension Lumber

1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - a. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - b. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - c. Provide dressed lumber, S4S.
  - d. Provide dry lumber with 19 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing.
2. Grade and Species: For truss chord and web members, provide dimension lumber of any species, graded visually or mechanically, and capable of supporting required loads without exceeding allowable design values according to AF&PA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction" and its "Supplement."
3. Permanent Bracing: Provide wood bracing that complies with requirements for miscellaneous lumber in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.

### B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Lumber

1. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPAC2, except that trusses that are not in contact with the ground and are continuously protected from liquid water may be made from lumber treated according to AWPAC31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
  - a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
  - b. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
2. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
3. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - a. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
4. Application: Treat all trusses, unless otherwise indicated **OR** trusses where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.

### C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood

1. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPAC20.
  - a. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - b. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof trusses and where indicated.
  - c. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. For exposed trusses and bracing indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
  3. For exposed trusses indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  4. Application: Treat all trusses, unless otherwise indicated **OR** items indicated on Drawings, and the following, **as directed**:
    - a. Floor trusses for bowling lanes and raised platforms.
    - b. Roof trusses.
- D. Metal Connector Plates
  1. General: Fabricate connector plates to comply with TPI 1.
  2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M; Structural Steel (SS), high-strength low-alloy steel Type A (HSLAS Type A), or high-strength low-alloy steel Type B (HSLAS Type B); **G60 (Z180)** coating designation; and not less than **0.036 inch (0.9 mm)** thick.
    - a. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
  3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**, and not less than **0.035 inch (0.88 mm)** thick.
    - a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- E. Fasteners
  1. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
    - a. Where trusses are exposed to weather, in ground contact, made from pressure-preservative treated wood, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M **OR** of Type 304 stainless steel, **as directed**.
  2. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
  3. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
  4. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  5. Lag Bolts: **ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M)**.
  6. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with **ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6)**; with **ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M)** hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  7. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
    - a. Material:
      - 1) Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
      - OR**
      - Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with **ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4)**.
- F. Metal Truss Accessories
  1. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated **OR** of basis-of-design products, **as directed**. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
  2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, **G60 (Z180)** coating designation.
    - a. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
  3. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304 **OR** 316, **as directed**.
    - a. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

4. Truss Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide by **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick. Tie fastens to one side of truss, top plates, and side of stud below.
5. Truss Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties):
  - a. Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, **2-1/4 inches (57 mm)** wide by **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick. Tie fits over top of truss and fastens to both sides of truss, top plates, and one side of stud below.  
**OR**  
Bent strap tie for fastening roof trusses to wall studs below, **2-1/2 inches (63 mm)** wide by **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick. Tie fits over top of truss and fastens to both sides of truss, inside face of top plates, and both sides of stud below.
6. Roof Truss Clips: Angle clips for bracing bottom chord of roof trusses at non-load-bearing walls, **1-1/4 inches (32 mm)** wide by **0.050 inch (1.3 mm)** thick. Clip is fastened to truss through slotted holes to allow for truss deflection.
7. Floor Truss Hangers: U-shaped hangers, full depth of floor truss, with **1-3/4-inch- (44-mm-)** long seat; formed from metal strap **0.062 inch (1.6 mm)** thick with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
8. Roof Truss Bracing/Spacers: U-shaped channels, **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide by **1 inch (25 mm)** deep by **0.040 inch (1.0 mm)** thick, made to fit between 2 adjacent trusses and accurately space them apart, and with tabs having metal teeth for fastening to trusses.

G. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.
2. Protective Coatings: SSPC-Paint 22, epoxy-polyamide primer **OR** SSPC-Paint 16, coal-tar epoxy-polyamide paint, **as directed**.

H. Fabrication

1. Cut truss members to accurate lengths, angles, and sizes to produce close-fitting joints.
2. Fabricate metal connector plates to sizes, configurations, thicknesses, and anchorage details required to withstand design loads for types of joint designs indicated.
3. Assemble truss members in design configuration indicated; use jigs or other means to ensure uniformity and accuracy of assembly with joints closely fitted to comply with tolerances in TPI 1. Position members to produce design camber indicated.
  - a. Fabricate wood trusses within manufacturing tolerances in TPI 1.
4. Connect truss members by metal connector plates located and securely embedded simultaneously in both sides of wood members by air or hydraulic press.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Install wood trusses only after supporting construction is in place and is braced and secured.
2. If trusses are delivered to Project site in more than one piece, assemble trusses before installing.
3. Hoist trusses in place by lifting equipment suited to sizes and types of trusses required, exercising care not to damage truss members or joints by out-of-plane bending or other causes.
4. Install and brace trusses according to TPI recommendations and as indicated.
5. Install trusses plumb, square, and true to line and securely fasten to supporting construction.
6. Space trusses **16 inches (406 mm)** o.c. **OR 24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. **OR** as indicated, **as directed**; adjust and align trusses in location before permanently fastening.
7. Anchor trusses securely at bearing points; use metal truss tie-downs or floor truss hangers as applicable. Install fasteners through each fastener hole in truss accessories according to manufacturer's fastening schedules and written instructions.
8. Securely connect each truss ply required for forming built-up girder trusses.
  - a. Anchor trusses to girder trusses as indicated.

9. Install and fasten permanent bracing during truss erection and before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of permanent bracing where terminating at walls or beams.
  - a. Install bracing to comply with Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
  - b. Install and fasten strongback bracing vertically against vertical web of parallel-chord floor trusses at centers indicated.
10. Install wood trusses within installation tolerances in TPI 1.
11. Do not cut or remove truss members.
12. Replace wood trusses that are damaged or do not meet requirements.
  - a. Do not alter trusses in field.

B. Repairs And Protection

1. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
2. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
3. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on exposed surfaces with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Protective Coating: Clean and prepare exposed surfaces of metal connector plates. Brush apply primer, when part of coating system, and one coat of protective coating.
  - a. Apply materials to provide minimum dry film thickness recommended by coating system manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 06 17 53 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 18 13 00	06 05 73 33	Wood Decking
06 18 16 00	06 05 23 00	Timber Bridge Components
06 18 16 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 22 13 00 - EXTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior finish carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Exterior standing and running trim.
  - b. Lumber, Plywood, and Hardboard siding.
  - c. Plywood and Hardboard soffits.
  - d. Exterior stairs and railings.
  - e. Exterior ornamental wood columns.

#### C. Definitions

1. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - b. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - c. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
  - d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - f. WWPAA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.
2. Samples: For each type of siding indicated.
3. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
4. Research/Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated wood.
5. Compliance Certificates:
  - a. For lumber that is not marked with grade stamp.
  - b. For preservative-treated wood that is not marked with treatment quality mark.
  - c. For fire-retardant-treated wood that is not marked with classification marking of testing and inspecting agency.
6. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
  - a. Exterior standing and running trim.
  - b. Exterior lumber, plywood, and hardboard siding.
  - c. Exterior plywood and hardboard soffits.
  - d. Exterior stairs and railings.
  - e. Exterior ornamental wood columns.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling



1. Protect materials against weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty for Cellular PVC Trim: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace trim that fails due to defects in manufacturing within 25 years from date of Final Completion. Failures include, but are not limited to rotting, corrosion, delamination, and excessive swelling from moisture.
2. Special Warranty for Hardboard Siding and Trim: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace siding that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, deformation or deterioration beyond normal weathering.
  - a. Warranty Period for Factory-Applied Finish: Five years from date of Final Completion.
  - b. Warranty Period for Siding and Trim (Excluding Finish): 25 years from date of Final Completion.
3. Special Warranty for Columns: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace columns that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials, General

1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
2. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
3. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.

B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials

1. Water-Repellent Preservative Treatment by Nonpressure Process: AWPAN1 (dip, spray, flood, or vacuum-pressure treatment).
  - a. Preservative Chemicals: 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC), combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos (CPF).
  - b. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants in solution to distinguish treated material from untreated material.
  - c. Application: Items not required to be pressure-preservative treated.
  - d. Application: Exterior trim and wood siding.
2. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process:
  - a. Lumber: AWPAC2 except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPAC31 with inorganic boron (SBX). Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
  - b. Plywood: AWPAC9. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 18 percent.
  - c. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
  - d. For exposed items indicated to receive transparent finish, do not use chemical formulations that contain colorants or that bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  - e. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
  - f. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

- 1) For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
  - g. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1) For exposed plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.
  - h. Application: Where indicated **OR** All exterior lumber and plywood, **as directed**.
- C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
1. Lumber: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20, Exterior type. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
  2. Plywood: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27, Exterior type. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
  3. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not contain colorants and provide materials that do not have marks from spacer sticks on the exposed face.
  4. Do not use material that does not comply with requirements for untreated material or is warped or discolored.
  5. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
    - b. For exposed plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.
  6. Application: Where indicated **OR** All exterior lumber and plywood, **as directed**.
- D. Standing And Running Trim
1. Lumber Trim for Semitransparent-Stained Finish **OR** Clear Finish **OR** Unfinished Applications, **as directed**:
    - a. Species and Grade: Redwood, Clear All Heart **OR** Hart B **OR** Clear **OR** Grade B, **as directed**; RIS.
    - b. Species and Grade: Western red cedar, Clear Heart VG (Vertical Grain) **OR** Clear Heart **OR** Grade A **OR** Grade B, **as directed**; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Species and Grade: Hem-fir, pressure-preservative treated; 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, Common; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - d. Species and Grade: Southern pine, pressure-preservative treated; B & B **OR** C & Btr **OR** D, **as directed**; SPIB.
    - e. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less, **as directed**.
    - f. Finger Jointing: Not allowed **OR** Allowed if made with wet-use adhesive complying with ASTM D 5572, **as directed**.
    - g. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth) **OR** Saw textured, **as directed**.
  2. Lumber Trim for Opaque-Stained **OR** Painted, **as directed**, Finish:
    - a. Species and Grade: Redwood, Clear **OR** Grade B, **as directed**; RIS.
    - b. Species and Grade: Western red cedar, Grade A **OR** B, **as directed**; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Species and Grade: Hem-fir, Prime or D finish **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - d. Species and Grade: Eastern white pine, eastern hemlock-balsam fir-tamarack, eastern spruce, or white woods; D Select (Quality) **OR** Finish or 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** Premium or 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - e. Species and Grade: Northern white cedar, D Select **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**; NeLMA or NLGA.



- f. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less, **as directed**.
    - g. Finger Jointing: Not allowed **OR** Allowed if made with wet-use adhesive complying with ASTM D 5572, **as directed**.
    - h. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth) **OR** Saw textured, **as directed**.
  3. Moldings for Semitransparent-Stained Finish **OR** Clear Finish **OR** Unfinished Applications, **as directed**: WMMPA WM 4, N-grade wood moldings, without finger jointing. Made from kiln-dried stock to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
    - a. Species: Redwood **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine, **as directed**.
    - b. Brick-Mold Pattern: WM 180, 1-1/4 by 2 inches (32 by 51 mm).
    - c. Drip-Cap Pattern: WM 197, 11/16 by 1-5/8 inches (17 by 41 mm).
    - d. Bed-Mold Pattern: WM 75, 9/16 by 1-5/8 inches (14 by 41 mm).
    - e. Screen-Bead Pattern: WM 144, 1/4 by 3/4 inch (6 by 19 mm).
  4. Moldings for Opaque-Stained **OR** Painted, **as directed**, Finish: WMMPA WM 4, P-grade wood moldings. Made from kiln-dried stock to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
    - a. Species: Redwood **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine, **as directed**.
    - b. Finger Jointing: Not allowed **OR** Allowed if made with wet-use adhesive complying with ASTM D 5572, **as directed**.
    - c. Brick-Mold Pattern: WM 180, 1-1/4 by 2 inches (32 by 51 mm).
    - d. Drip-Cap Pattern: WM 197, 11/16 by 1-5/8 inches (17 by 41 mm).
    - e. Bed-Mold Pattern: WM 75, 9/16 by 1-5/8 inches (14 by 41 mm).
    - f. Screen-Bead Pattern: WM 144, 1/4 by 3/4 inch (6 by 19 mm).
  5. MDO Trim: Exterior Grade B-B, MDO plywood.
  6. Cellular PVC Trim: Extruded, expanded PVC with a small-cell microstructure, made from UV- and heat-stabilized, rigid material.
    - a. Density: Not less than 31 lb/cu. ft. (500 kg/cu. m).
    - b. Heat Deflection Temperature: Not less than 130 deg F (54 deg C), per ASTM D 648.
    - c. Coefficient of Thermal Expansion: Not more than  $4.5 \times 10^{-5}$  inches/inch x deg F ( $8.1 \times 10^{-5}$  mm/mm x deg C).
    - d. Water Absorption: Not more than 1 percent, per ASTM D 570.
    - e. Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less, per ASTM E 84.
  7. Foam Plastic Moldings: Molded product of shapes indicated, with a tough outer skin on exposed surfaces; factory primed. Exposed surfaces shall not be shaped after molding. Product is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.
    - a. Density: Not less than 20 lb/cu. ft. (320 kg/cu. m).
    - b. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 75 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - c. Thickness: Not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
    - d. Width: Not more than 8 inches (204 mm).
    - e. Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- E. Lumber Siding
1. Provide kiln-dried lumber siding complying with DOC PS 20, factory coated with exterior alkyd primer, **as directed**.
  2. Species and Grade:
    - a. Clear All Heart VG **OR** Clear All Heart **OR** Clear VG (Vertical Grain) **OR** Clear **OR** Grade B, **as directed**, redwood; RIS.
    - b. Clear VG (Vertical Grain) Heart **OR** Grade A **OR** Grade B, **as directed** western red cedar; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - c. Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, Common spruce-pine-fir; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
    - d. Grade Prime or D finish **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**, pressure-preservative-treated hem-fir; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

- e. Grade D Select (Quality) **OR** Finish or 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** Premium or 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**, eastern white pine, eastern hemlock-balsam fir-tamarack, eastern spruce, or white woods; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - f. Grade D Select **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**, northern white cedar; NeLMA or NLGA.
  - g. Grade B & B **OR** C & Btr **OR** D **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**, pressure-preservative-treated southern pine; SPIB.
3. Pattern:
- a. Bevel siding, S1S2E, actual overall dimensions of **5-1/2 by 11/16 inch (140 by 17 mm)** **OR** **5-1/2 by 3/4 inch (140 by 19 mm)** **OR** **7-1/4 by 3/4 inch (184 by 19 mm)** **OR** **9-1/4 by 3/4 inch (235 by 19 mm)** **OR** **9-1/4 by 1-3/32 inches (235 by 28 mm)**, **as directed**, measured on the face and thick edge at 19 percent moisture content.
  - b. Drop siding, SPIB or WWPA pattern No. 105, actual face width (coverage) and thickness of **4-7/8 by 9/16 inch (124 by 14 mm)** **OR** **4-7/8 by 23/32 inch (124 by 18 mm)** **OR** **6-5/8 by 23/32 inch (168 by 18 mm)** **OR** **8-5/8 by 23/32 inch (219 by 18 mm)**, **as directed**, measured at 19 percent moisture content.
  - c. V-edge, smooth-faced tongue-and-groove pattern with eased edges, actual face width (coverage) and thickness of **3-1/8 by 9/16 inch (79 by 14 mm)** **OR** **3-1/8 by 23/32 inch (79 by 18 mm)** **OR** **5-1/8 by 23/32 inch (130 by 18 mm)** **OR** **6-7/8 by 23/32 inch (175 by 18 mm)**, **as directed**, measured at 19 percent moisture content.
- F. Plywood Siding
1. Plywood Type: APA-rated siding, pressure-preservative treated, **OR** factory coated with exterior acrylic latex stain, **as directed**, in panel sizes indicated.
    - a. Face Grade: 303-OC **OR** OL **OR** NR **OR** SR, **as directed**.
    - b. Face Grade: 303-6 **OR** 18 **OR** 30, **as directed-S** **OR** W **OR** S/W, **as directed**.
  2. Thickness: **11/32 inch (8.7 mm)** **OR** **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** **OR** **15/32 inch (11.9 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** **OR** **19/32 inch (15.1 mm)** **OR** **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Face Species: Southern pine **OR** Douglas fir **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Redwood, **as directed**.
  4. Pattern: Plain **OR** Channel groove; grooves **4 inches (101.6 mm)** o.c. **OR** Texture 1-11; grooves **4 inches (101.6 mm)** o.c. **OR** Reverse board-and-batten; grooves **12 inches (304.8 mm)** o.c., **as directed**.
  5. Surface: Smooth **OR** Rough sawn, **as directed**.
- G. Hardboard Siding
1. Hardboard Siding: AHA A135.6, primed with manufacturer's standard exterior primer.
    - a. Type:
      - 1) **7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick-by-6-inch- (152-mm-) OR 8-inch- (203-mm-), as directed**, wide lap siding.
      - 2) **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick-by-8-inch- (203-mm-) wide, beaded-edge lap siding.**
      - 3) **7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, shiplap-edge panels; with grooves 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) o.c., simulating wood drop siding.**
      - 4) **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick, shiplap-edge panels; with grooves 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) o.c., simulating wood drop siding.**
      - 5) **7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, square-edge flat panels; without grooves.**
      - 6) **7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, shiplap-edge panels; channel grooved with grooves 8 inches (203.2 mm) o.c.**
    - b. Texture: Smooth **OR** Wood grain **OR** Shingle **OR** Stucco, **as directed**.
  2. Primed Hardboard Trim: High-temperature-cured, high-resin, wood-fiber composite; factory primed on faces and edges. Recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.
  3. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Plywood Soffits
1. Plywood Type: Exterior, Grade A-C **OR** Grade B-C **OR** Grade C-C, plugged and touch sanded **OR** APA-rated siding, **as directed**.
    - a. Face Grade: 303-OC **OR** OL **OR** NR **OR** SR, **as directed**.



- b. Face Grade: 303-6 **OR** 18 **OR** 30, **as directed**, -S **OR** W **OR** S/W, **as directed**.
  2. Thickness: **11/32 inch (8.7 mm)** **OR** **3/8 inch (9.5 mm)** **OR** **15/32 inch (11.9 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (12.7 mm)** **OR** **19/32 inch (15.1 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  3. Face Species: Southern pine **OR** Douglas fir **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Redwood, **as directed**.
  4. Pattern: Plain **OR** Channel groove; grooves **4 inches (101.6 mm)** o.c. **OR** Texture 1-11; grooves **4 inches (101.6 mm)** o.c., **as directed**.
  5. Surface: Smooth **OR** Rough sawn, **as directed**.
- I. Hardboard Soffits
  1. Hardboard Soffits: Primed hardboard, complying with AHA A135.6, with manufacturer's standard exterior primer.
    - a. Type: **7/16-inch- (11-mm-)** **OR** **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)**, **as directed**, thick flat panels, smooth **OR** wood-grain textured **OR** stucco textured, **as directed**.
  2. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
- J. Stairs And Railings
  1. Stairs:
    - a. Treads: **1-1/4-inch (32-mm)** thick, kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated stepping with half-round or rounded edge nosing.
      - 1) Species and Grade: Douglas fir, C & Btr VG (Vertical Grain) stepping; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA **OR** Hem-fir, C & Btr VG (Vertical Grain) stepping; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA **OR** Southern pine, B & B stepping; SPIB, **as directed**.
    - b. Risers: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** thick, kiln-dried, pressure-preservative-treated finish boards.
      - 1) Species and Grade: Douglas fir, C & Btr or Superior finish; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA **OR** Hem-fir, C & Btr or Superior finish; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA **OR** Southern pine, B & B; SPIB, **as directed**.
  2. Railings: Clear, kiln-dried, solid, yellow poplar **OR** pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir **OR** pressure-preservative-treated southern pine, **as directed**; railing stock of pattern indicated.
  3. Balusters: **1-1/16-inch- (27-mm-)** square, clear, kiln-dried, solid, yellow poplar **OR** pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir **OR** pressure-preservative-treated southern pine, **as directed**.
  4. Newel Posts: Clear, kiln-dried, yellow poplar **OR** pressure-preservative-treated, Douglas fir **OR** pressure-preservative-treated, southern pine, **as directed**, turned newel posts of pattern and size indicated.
  5. Newel Posts: **2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-)** square, clear, kiln-dried yellow poplar **OR** pressure-preservative-treated Douglas fir **OR** pressure-preservative-treated southern pine, **as directed**; either solid or laminated.
- K. Ornamental Wood Columns
  1. Factory fabricate columns from clear stock, either solid or finger jointed, with a moisture content of not more than 15 **OR** 19, **as directed**, percent.
    - a. Wood Species: Redwood **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine, **as directed**.
  2. Shafts: Built up from tongue-and-groove staves joined with waterproof glue. Lathe turn shafts to provide base diameter indicated and true architectural entasis taper. Precisely mill flutes as indicated.
  3. Capital and Base: Molded glass-fiber-reinforced plastic **OR** Built up from wood components with waterproof glue. Turn circular elements on lathes.
  4. Plinths: Cast-aluminum or molded glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, constructed to ventilate the interior of column shaft.
  5. Treatment and Finishing:
    - a. Treat wood columns with water-repellant preservative by nonpressure process.
    - b. Coat inside of column shafts with bituminous mastic.
    - c. Prime columns with two coats of exterior alkyd wood primer compatible with specified topcoats.



L. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Fasteners for Exterior Finish Carpentry: Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** into wood substrate.
  - a. For face-fastening siding, provide ringed-shank siding nails unless hot-dip galvanized nails are used.
  - b. For redwood, provide brass/bronze **OR** stainless-steel **OR** hot-dip galvanized steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
  - c. For prefinished items, provide matching prefinished aluminum fasteners where face fastening is required.
  - d. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, provide stainless-steel **OR** hot-dip galvanized steel, **as directed**, fasteners.
  - e. For applications not otherwise indicated, provide stainless-steel **OR** hot-dip galvanized steel **OR** aluminum, **as directed**, fasteners.
2. Wood Glue: Waterproof resorcinol glue recommended by manufacturer for exterior carpentry use.
3. Adhesive for Cellular PVC Trim: Product recommended by trim manufacturer.
4. Flashing: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" for flashing materials installed in exterior finish carpentry.
  - a. Horizontal Joint Flashing for Panel Siding: Preformed, galvanized steel **OR** aluminum **OR** prefinished aluminum **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, Z-shaped flashing.
5. Insect Screening for Soffit Vents: Aluminum, **18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm)** mesh **OR** PVC-coated glass-fiber fabric, **18-by-14 (1.4-by-1.8-mm)** or **18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm)** mesh **OR** Stainless steel, **18-by-18 (1.4-by-1.4-mm)** mesh, **as directed**.
6. Continuous Soffit Vents: Aluminum hat channel shape with stamped louvers **OR** perforations, **as directed**, **2 inches (51 mm)** wide, and in lengths not less than **96 inches (2438 mm)**.
  - a. Net Free Area: **4 sq. in./linear ft. (280 sq. cm/m)** **OR** **6 sq. in./linear ft. (420 sq. cm/m)** **OR** **8 sq. in./linear ft. (560 sq. cm/m)**, **as directed**.
  - b. Finish: Mill finish **OR** White paint **OR** Brown paint, **as directed**.
7. Round Soffit Vents: Stamped aluminum louvered vents, **2 inches (51 mm)** **OR** **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** **OR** **3 inches (76 mm)** **OR** **4 inches (102 mm)**, **as directed**, in diameter, made to be inserted into round holes cut into soffit.
  - a. Finish: Mill finish **OR** White paint **OR** Brown paint, **as directed**.
8. Sealants: Latex, complying with ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF and with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants", recommended by sealant manufacturer and manufacturer of substrates for intended application.

M. Fabrication

1. Back out or kerf backs of standing and running trim wider than **5 inches (125 mm)**, except members with ends exposed in finished work.
2. Ease edges of lumber less than **1 inch (25 mm)** in nominal thickness to **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** radius and edges of lumber **1 inch (25 mm)** or more in nominal thickness to **1/8-inch (3-mm)** radius.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
2. Prime lumber to be painted, including both faces and edges. Cut to required lengths and prime ends. Comply with requirements in Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting".

B. Installation, General

1. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.
  - a. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
2. Install exterior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.



- a. Scribe and cut exterior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm)** for level and plumb. Install adjoining exterior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** maximum offset for reveal installation.
  - c. Install stairs with no more than **3/16-inch (4.7-mm)** variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
  - d. Coordinate exterior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate exterior finish carpentry.
- C. Standing And Running Trim Installation
1. Install flat grain lumber with bark side exposed to weather.
  2. Install cellular PVC trim to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Install trim with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than **24 inches (610 mm)** long except where necessary.
    - a. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
    - b. Stagger end joints in adjacent and related members.
  4. Fit exterior joints to exclude water. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints, where necessary for alignment.
  5. Unless otherwise indicated, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand where face fastening is unavoidable.
- D. Siding Installation
1. Install siding to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
  2. Horizontal Lumber Siding: Apply starter strip along bottom edge of sheathing or sill. Install first course of siding with lower edge at least **1/8 inch (3 mm)** below starter strip and subsequent courses lapped **1 inch (25 mm)** over course below. Nail at each stud. Do not allow nails to penetrate more than one thickness of siding.
  3. Diagonal Lumber Siding: Begin application at corner with tongue edge up. Install subsequent courses with tongue-and-groove edges tightly fitted together. Nail at each stud.
    - a. Leave **1/8-inch (3-mm)** gap at trim and corners unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer, and apply sealant.
    - b. Butt joints only over framing or blocking, nailing top and bottom on each side and staggering joints in subsequent courses.
    - c. Install prefabricated outside corners as recommended by manufacturer of siding materials.
  4. Plywood Siding: Install panels with edges over framing or blocking. Nail at **6 inches (150 mm)** o.c. at panel perimeter and **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c. at intermediate supports unless manufacturer recommends closer spacing. Leave **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** gap between adjacent panels and **1/8-inch (3-mm)** gap at perimeter, openings, and horizontal joints unless otherwise recommended by panel manufacturer.
    - a. Seal butt joints at inside and outside corners and at trim locations.
    - b. Install continuous metal flashing at horizontal panel joints.
    - c. Apply battens and corner trim as indicated. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler.
    - d. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent by countersinking and filling, by placing in grooves of siding pattern or by concealing with applied trim or battens as detailed. Do not nail through overlapping pieces.
  5. Hardboard Siding: Install hardboard siding complying with AHA's "Recommended Basic Application and Painting Instructions for Hardboard Siding." Install panels with edges over framing or blocking. Leave **3/16-inch (5-mm)** gap at perimeter, openings, and horizontal panel joints unless otherwise recommended by panel manufacturer.
    - a. Seal butt joints at inside and outside corners and at trim locations.

- b. Install continuous metal flashing at horizontal panel joints.
    - c. Apply battens and corner trim as indicated.
    - d. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent by placing in grooves of siding pattern or by concealing with applied trim or battens as detailed.
  6. Flashing: Install metal flashing as indicated on Drawings and as recommended by siding manufacturer.
  7. Finish: Apply finish within two weeks of installation.
- E. Stair And Railing Installation
  1. Treads and Risers at Exterior Stairs: Secure treads and risers by gluing and nailing to carriages. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Extend treads over carriages and finish with bullnose edge.
  2. Balusters: Fit balusters to treads, glue, and nail in place. Countersink nail heads, fill flush, and sand filler. Let into railings and glue in place.
  3. Newel Posts: Secure newel posts to stringers and risers with through bolts **OR** lag screws **OR** countersunk-head wood screws and glue, **as directed**.
  4. Railings: Secure wall rails with metal brackets. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts, and glue.
- F. Ornamental Column Installation
  1. Install columns to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Comply with requirements below unless manufacturer's written instructions state otherwise.
  2. Lay out column locations on soffits and beams and plumb down to locate column locations at supports.
  3. Set plinths in location, shim as required to temporarily level, and scribe and trim as required so that top of plinths will sit level without use of shims. Fasten plinths in place to support using pins or fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.
  4. Scribe and trim tops of columns to fit to soffits and beams. Maintain ventilation passages to interior of columns.
  5. Seal ends of columns with two coats of wood sealer or primer.
  6. Install column caps and flashing on columns and fasten to column. Install caps and flashing so that loads are not imposed on caps and so that ventilation of column interior is not blocked.
  7. Secure columns in place at top and bottom with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Adjusting
  1. Replace exterior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Exterior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- H. Cleaning
  1. Clean exterior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- I. Protection
  1. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
  2. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
    - a. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
    - b. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 06 22 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 22 13 00a - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interior finish carpentry. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Interior standing and running trim.
  - b. Fire-rated interior door and sidelight frames.
  - c. Plywood, Hardboard, and Board paneling.
  - d. Shelving and clothes rods.
  - e. Interior stairs and railings.
  - f. Interior ornamental wood columns.

#### C. Definitions

1. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  - b. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
  - c. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  - d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  - e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  - f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.
2. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.
3. MDO Plywood: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.
2. Samples: For each type of paneling indicated.
3. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and glues used at Project site, including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
  - c. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
4. Research/Evaluation Reports: Showing that fire-retardant-treated wood complies with building code in effect for Project.
5. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
  - a. Interior standing and running trim.
  - b. Interior plywood, hardboard, and board paneling.
  - c. Shelving and clothes rods.
  - d. Interior stairs and railings.



e. Interior ornamental wood columns.

F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Protect materials against weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.
2. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas.

G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty for Columns: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace columns that fail in materials or workmanship five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials, General

1. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
2. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
3. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
4. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.
5. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 **OR** M-2-Exterior Glue **OR** M-2, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin, **as directed**.
6. Melamine-Faced Particleboard: Particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, finished on both faces with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.

B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials

1. Lumber: AWWA C2 **OR** AWWA C31 (treated with inorganic boron), **as directed**. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
2. Plywood: AWWA C9. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 18 percent.
3. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
4. For exposed items indicated to receive transparent finish, do not use chemical formulations that contain colorants or that bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
5. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
6. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
7. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Application: Where indicated.

C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials

1. Lumber: Comply with performance requirements in AWWA C20, Exterior type **OR** Interior Type A, **as directed**. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
2. Plywood: Comply with performance requirements in AWWA C27, Exterior type **OR** Interior Type A, **as directed**. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
3. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not contain colorants and provide materials that do not have marks from spacer sticks on the exposed face.

4. Do not use material that does not comply with requirements for untreated material or is warped or discolored.
5. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
6. Application: Where indicated **OR** All interior lumber and plywood, **as directed**.

D. Standing And Running Trim

1. Softwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):
  - a. Species and Grade:
    - 1) Eastern white pine, C Select **OR** D Select **OR** Finish or 1 Common **OR** Premium or 2 Common, **as directed**; NeLMA or NLGA.
    - 2) Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NLGA or WWP.
    - 3) Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** Finish or 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** Premium or 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NeLMA, NLGA, or WWP.
    - 4) White woods, C Select **OR** D Select **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**; WWP.
    - 5) Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir south, Superior or C & Btr **OR** Prime or D, **as directed**, finish; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
    - 6) Southern pine, B & B **OR** C & Btr, **as directed**, finish; SPIB.
    - 7) Western red cedar, Clear Heart **OR** Grade A **OR** Grade B, **as directed**; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
  - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less, **as directed**.
  - c. Finger Jointing: Allowed **OR** Not allowed, **as directed**.
  - d. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth) **OR** Saw textured, **as directed**.
2. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):
  - a. Species and Grade: Red oak **OR** White maple **OR** Alder **OR** Aspen, basswood, cottonwood, sap gum, sycamore, white maple, or yellow poplar, **as directed**; Clear **OR** A finish **OR** B finish, **as directed**; NHLA.
  - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 13 **OR** 10 **OR** 9, **as directed**, percent.
  - c. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - d. Gluing for Width: Allowed **OR** Not allowed **OR** Use for lumber trim wider than 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
  - e. Veneered Material: Allowed **OR** Not allowed **OR** Use for lumber trim wider than 6 inches (150 mm), **as directed**.
  - f. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth) **OR** Saw textured, **as directed**.
  - g. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
3. Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted):
  - a. Species and Grade:
    - 1) Eastern white pine, D Select **OR** Finish or 1 Common **OR** Premium or 2 Common, **as directed**; NeLMA or NLGA.
    - 2) Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NLGA or WWP.
    - 3) Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; D Select (Quality) **OR** Finish or 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** Premium or 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NeLMA, NLGA, or WWP.
    - 4) White woods, D Select **OR** 1 Common **OR** 2 Common, **as directed**; WWP.
    - 5) Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir south, Superior or C & Btr **OR** Prime or D, **as directed**, finish; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
    - 6) Spruce-pine-fir, 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, Common; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWP.
    - 7) Alder, aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, sycamore, tupelo, or yellow poplar; A **OR** B, **as directed**, finish; NHLA.



- b. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less, **as directed**.
  - c. Finger Jointing: Allowed **OR** Not allowed, **as directed**.
  - d. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth) **OR** Saw textured, **as directed**.
  - e. Optional Material: Primed MDF of same actual dimensions as lumber indicated may be used in lieu of lumber.
4. Softwood Moldings for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish): WMMPA WM 4, N-grade wood moldings. Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
- a. Species: Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine **OR** Southern pine **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Douglas fir, **as directed**.
  - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less.
  - c. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - d. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
  - e. Base Pattern: WM 623, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) ogee **OR** WM 713, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) ranch **OR** WM 753, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) beaded-edge **OR** WM 620, 9/16-by-4-1/4-inch (14-by-108-mm) ogee **OR** WM 750, 9/16-by-4-1/4-inch (14-by-108-mm) beaded-edge, **as directed**, base.
  - f. Shoe-Mold Pattern: WM 129, 7/16-by-11/16-inch (11-by-17-mm) quarter-round **OR** WM 126, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) quarter-round **OR** WM 131, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) ogee, **as directed**, shoe mold.
  - g. Casing Pattern: WM 327, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) clamshell **OR** WM 366, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) featheredge **OR** WM 376, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) beaded-edge, **as directed**, casing.
  - h. Mull-Casing Pattern: WM 957, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) beaded-edge **OR** WM 973, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) bullnose **OR** WM 983, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) featheredge, **as directed**, casing.
  - i. Stop Pattern: WM 856, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ranch **OR** WM 946, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ogee **OR** WM 886, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) bullnose, **as directed**, stop.
  - j. Chair-Rail Pattern: WM 297, 11/16-by-3-inch (17-by-76-mm) chair rail.
5. Hardwood Moldings for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish): WMMPA HWM 2, N-grade wood moldings made to patterns included in WMMPA HWM 1.
- a. Species: Red oak **OR** White maple **OR** Aspen, basswood, cottonwood, sap gum, sycamore, white maple, or yellow poplar, **as directed**.
  - b. Kiln-dried softwood or MDF, with exposed surfaces veneered with species indicated, may be used in lieu of solid wood.
  - c. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
  - d. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
  - e. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
  - f. Base Pattern: HWM 633, 7/16-by-3-1/4-inch (11-by-83-mm) ogee **OR** HWM 713, 7/16-by-3-1/4-inch (11-by-83-mm) ranch **OR** HWM 753, 7/16-by-3-1/4-inch (11-by-83-mm) beaded-edge **OR** WM 620, 7/16-by-4-1/4-inch (11-by-108-mm) ogee, **as directed**, base.
  - g. Shoe-Mold Pattern: HWM 129, 7/16-by-11/16-inch (11-by-17-mm) quarter-round **OR** HWM 126, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) quarter-round **OR** HWM 131, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) ogee, **as directed**, shoe mold.
  - h. Casing Pattern: HWM 328, 1/2-by-2-1/4-inch (13-by-57-mm) clamshell **OR** HWM 366, 1/2-by-2-1/4-inch (13-by-57-mm) featheredge **OR** HWM 376, 1/2-by-2-1/4-inch (13-by-57-mm) beaded-edge, **as directed**, casing.
  - i. Mull-Casing Pattern: HWM 989, 3/16-by-2-inch (5-by-51-mm) square-edge **OR** HWM 988, 3/8-by-1-1/2-inch (9.5-by-38-mm) featheredge **OR** HWM 987, 3/8-by-2-inch (9.5-by-51-mm) featheredge, **as directed**, casing.
  - j. Stop Pattern: HWM 856, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ranch **OR** HWM 946, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ogee **OR** HWM 886, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) bullnose, **as directed**, stop.



- k. Chair-Rail Pattern: HWM 297, 11/16-by-3-inch (17-by-76-mm) chair rail.
  6. Moldings for Opaque Finish (Painted): Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
    - a. Softwood Moldings: WMMPA WM 4, P-grade.
      - 1) Species: Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine.
      - 2) Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less.
    - b. Hardwood Moldings: WMMPA HWM 2, P-grade.
      - 1) Species: Aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, tupelo, or yellow poplar.
      - 2) Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
    - c. Optional Material: Primed MDF.
    - d. Finger Jointing: Allowed **OR** Not allowed, **as directed**.
    - e. Base Pattern: WM 623, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) ogee **OR** WM 713, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) ranch **OR** WM 753, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) beaded-edge **OR** WM 620, 9/16-by-4-1/4-inch (14-by-108-mm) ogee **OR** WM 750, 9/16-by-4-1/4-inch (14-by-108-mm) beaded-edge, **as directed**, base.
    - f. Shoe-Mold Pattern: WM 129, 7/16-by-11/16-inch (11-by-17-mm) quarter-round **OR** WM 126, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) quarter-round **OR** WM 131, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) ogee, **as directed**, shoe mold.
    - g. Casing Pattern: WM 327, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) clamshell **OR** WM 366, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) featheredge **OR** WM 376, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) beaded-edge, **as directed**, casing.
    - h. Mull-Casing Pattern: WM 957, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) beaded-edge **OR** WM 973, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) bullnose **OR** WM 983, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) featheredge, **as directed**, casing.
    - i. Stop Pattern: WM 856, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ranch **OR** WM 946, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ogee **OR** WM 886, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) bullnose, **as directed**, stop.
    - j. Chair-Rail Pattern: WM 297, 11/16-by-3-inch (17-by-76-mm) chair rail.
  7. PVC-Wrapped Moldings: WMMPA WM 2 and made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 12.
    - a. Base Pattern: WM 623, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) ogee **OR** WM 713, 9/16-by-3-1/4-inch (14-by-83-mm) ranch, **as directed**, base.
    - b. Shoe-Mold Pattern: WM 129, 7/16-by-11/16-inch (11-by-17-mm) quarter-round **OR** WM 126, 1/2-by-3/4-inch (13-by-19-mm) quarter-round, **as directed**, shoe mold.
    - c. Casing Pattern: WM 327, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) clamshell **OR** WM 366, 11/16-by-2-1/4-inch (17-by-57-mm) featheredge, **as directed**, casing.
    - d. Mull-Casing Pattern: WM 973, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) bullnose **OR** WM 983, 3/8-by-1-3/4-inch (9.5-by-44-mm) featheredge, **as directed**, casing.
    - e. Stop Pattern: WM 856, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) ranch **OR** WM 886, 3/8-by-1-3/8-inch (9.5-by-35-mm) bullnose, **as directed**, stop.
    - f. Chair-Rail Pattern: WM 297, 11/16-by-3-inch (17-by-76-mm) chair rail.
    - g. Colors, Textures, and Grain Patterns: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  8. Foam Plastic Moldings: Molded product of shapes indicated, with a tough outer skin on exposed surfaces; factory primed. Exposed surfaces shall not be shaped after molding.
    - a. Density: Not less than 20 lb/cu. ft. (320 kg/cu. m).
    - b. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 75 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
    - c. Thickness: Not more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
    - d. Width: Not more than 8 inches (204 mm).
    - e. Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- E. Fire-Rated Interior Door And Sidelight Frames
  1. Frames, complete with casings, fabricated from fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant MDF with veneered exposed surfaces, or from solid fire-retardant-treated wood. Frames shall comply with NFPA 80 and be listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to





authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to NFPA 252 **OR** IBC Standard 703, **as directed**.

- a. Species: Red oak **OR** White oak **OR** White maple **OR** Cherry, **as directed**.
- b. Fire Rating: 20 minutes **OR** 30 minutes **OR** 45 minutes **OR** 60 minutes **OR** 90 minutes **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.

#### F. Paneling

1. Hardwood Veneer Plywood Paneling: Manufacturer's stock hardwood plywood panels complying with HPVA HP-1, made without urea-formaldehyde adhesive.
  - a. Face Veneer Species and Cut: Rotary-cut white birch **OR** Plain-sliced red oak **OR** Plain-sliced hickory, **as directed**.
  - b. Veneer Matching: Random match **OR** Selected for similar color and grain, **as directed**.
  - c. Backing Veneer Species: Same species as face veneer **OR** Any hardwood compatible with face species, **as directed**.
  - d. Construction: Veneer core.
  - e. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 5/32 inch (4 mm) OR 5 mm OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 5/16 inch (7.9 mm) OR 7/16 inch (11 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - f. Glue Bond: Type II (interior) **OR** I (exterior), **as directed**.
2. Hardboard Paneling: Interior factory-finished hardboard paneling complying with AHA 135.5.
  - a. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3.2 mm) OR 5/32 inch (4 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - b. Finish: Class I **OR** II, **as directed**.
  - c. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84:
    - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
3. Board Paneling: Interior wood board paneling complying with WMMPA WM 9.
  - a. Species: Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine **OR** Southern pine **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Figured red gum, **as directed**.
  - b. Grade: Clear No. 1 **OR** Clear No. 2 **OR** Knotty No. 1 **OR** Knotty No. 2 **OR** Finger jointed, **as directed**.
  - c. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less **OR** 9 percent, **as directed**.
4. Board Paneling:
  - a. Species and Grade:
    - 1) Eastern white pine, C Select **OR** D Select **OR** Finish or 1 Common **OR** Premium or 2 Common, **as directed**; NeLMA or NLGA.
    - 2) Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NLGA or WWPA.
    - 3) Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** Finish or 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** Premium or 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NeLMA, NLGA, or WWPA.
    - 4) Southern pine, B & B **OR** C & Btr **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, Paneling; SPIB.
    - 5) Western red cedar, Clear Heart **OR** Grade A **OR** Grade B, **as directed**; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - b. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 **OR** 15, **as directed**, percent with at least 85 percent of shipment at 12 percent or less, **as directed**.

#### G. Shelving And Clothes Rods

1. Exposed **OR** Closet **OR** Utility, **as directed**, Shelving: Made from one of the following materials, **as directed**, **3/4 inch (19 mm)** thick. Do not use particleboard or MDF that contains urea formaldehyde.
  - a. Particleboard with radiused and filled **OR** solid-wood, **as directed**, front edge.
  - b. MDF with radiused **OR** solid-wood, **as directed**, front edge.
  - c. MDO softwood plywood with solid-wood edge.

- d. Melamine-faced particleboard with radiused and filled **OR** applied PVC, **as directed**, front edge.
  - e. Wood boards as specified above for lumber trim for opaque **OR** softwood lumber trim for transparent **OR** hardwood lumber trim for transparent, **as directed**, finish.
  - f. Softwood Boards: Eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine; C Select (Choice) **OR** D Select (Quality) **OR** Finish or 1 Common (Colonial) **OR** Premium or 2 Common (Sterling), **as directed**; NeLMA, NLGA, or WWPA; kiln dried.
  - g. Softwood Boards: Douglas fir-larch, Douglas fir south, or hem-fir; Superior or C & Btr **OR** Prime or D, **as directed**, finish; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA; or southern pine, B & B **OR** C, **as directed**, finish; SPIB; kiln dried.
2. Shelf Cleats: **3/4-by-3-1/2-inch (19-by-89-mm)** boards **OR** **3/4-by-5-1/2-inch (19-by-140-mm)** boards **OR** **3/4-by-5-1/2-inch (19-by-140-mm)** boards with hole and notch to receive clothes rods, **as directed**, as specified above for shelving **OR** lumber trim for opaque finish **OR** softwood lumber trim for transparent finish **OR** hardwood lumber trim for transparent finish, **as directed**.
  3. Shelf Brackets with Rod Support: BHMA A156.16, B04051; prime-painted formed steel.
  4. Shelf Brackets without Rod Support: BHMA A156.16, B04041; prime-painted formed steel.
  5. Standards for Adjustable Shelf Brackets: BHMA A156.9, B04102; powder-coat finished **OR** brass-finished **OR** zinc-plated, **as directed**, steel.
  6. Adjustable Shelf Brackets: BHMA A156.9, B04112; powder-coat finished steel **OR** brass-finished steel **OR** zinc-plated steel **OR** bronze-anodized aluminum **OR** black-anodized aluminum **OR** natural aluminum, **as directed**.
  7. Standards for Adjustable Shelf Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; powder-coat finished **OR** brass-finished **OR** zinc-plated, **as directed**, steel.
  8. Adjustable Shelf Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04081 or B04091; powder-coat finished **OR** brass-finished **OR** zinc-plated, **as directed**, steel.
  9. Clothes Rods: **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** diameter, clear, kiln-dried hardwood **OR** clear, kiln-dried softwood; either Douglas fir or southern pine, **as directed**.
  10. Clothes Rods: **1-5/16-inch- (33-mm-)** diameter, aluminum tubes **OR** chrome-plated steel tubes **OR** chrome-plated steel telescoping tubes with end brackets for mounting on shelf cleats, **as directed**.
  11. Rod Flanges: Clear, kiln-dried, Douglas fir or southern pine **OR** eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine **OR** red oak **OR** white maple **OR** aspen, basswood, cottonwood, sap gum, white maple, or yellow poplar, **as directed**, turnings.
  12. Rod Flanges: Aluminum **OR** Chrome-plated steel **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
- H. Stairs And Railings
1. Treads: **1-1/16-inch (27-mm)**, clear, kiln-dried, edge-glued, rift-sawn red oak **OR** red oak **OR** hard maple **OR** poplar, **as directed**, stepping with half-round nosing.
  2. Risers: **13/16-inch (21-mm)**, clear, kiln-dried, edge-glued red oak **OR** hard maple **OR** poplar, **as directed**, stock.
  3. Risers: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** finish boards as specified above for interior lumber trim for opaque finish.
  4. Finished Stringers: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** finish boards as specified above for interior lumber trim for opaque finish.
  5. Interior Railings: Clear, kiln-dried red oak **OR** hard maple **OR** yellow poplar, **as directed**.
  6. Balusters: Clear, kiln-dried, red oak **OR** hard maple **OR** yellow poplar, **as directed**.
  7. Newel Posts: Clear, kiln-dried, red oak **OR** hard maple **OR** yellow poplar, **as directed**.
  8. Factory fabricate columns for transparent finish from clear, kiln-dried eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine **OR** aspen, basswood, cottonwood, sap gum, white maple, or yellow poplar **OR** red oak **OR** white maple **OR** mahogany, **as directed**.
  9. Factory fabricate columns for opaque finish from clear, kiln-dried eastern white, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, radiata, or sugar pine **OR** aspen, basswood, cottonwood, sap gum, white maple, or yellow poplar, **as directed**. Column staves may be finger jointed.
  10. Shafts: Built up from tongue-and-groove staves joined with waterproof glue. Lathe turn shafts to provide indicated base diameter and true architectural entasis taper. Precisely mill flutes as indicated.



11. Capital and Base: Molded glass-fiber-reinforced plastic **OR** Built up from wood components with waterproof glue. Turn circular elements on lathes, **as directed**.
12. Prime columns for opaque finish with one coat of interior wood primer compatible with specified topcoats.

#### I. Miscellaneous Materials

1. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.
  - a. Where galvanized finish is indicated, provide fasteners and anchorages with hot-dip galvanized coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
2. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.
  - a. Use wood glue that has a VOC content of 30 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Installation Adhesive for Foam Plastic Moldings: Product recommended for indicated use by foam plastic molding manufacturer.
  - a. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Paneling Adhesive: Comply with paneling manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives.
  - a. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
5. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.
  - a. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

#### J. Fabrication

1. Back out or kerf backs of the following members except those with ends exposed in finished work:
  - a. Interior standing and running trim except shoe and crown molds.
  - b. Wood board paneling.
2. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch (25 mm) in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch (1.5-mm) radius and edges of lumber 1 inch (25 mm) or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch (3-mm) radius.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
2. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

#### B. Installation, General

1. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.
  - a. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
2. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
  - a. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
  - b. Countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand where face fastening is unavoidable.

- c. Install to tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm)** for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with **1/32-inch (0.8-mm)** maximum offset for flush installation and **1/16-inch (1.5-mm)** maximum offset for reveal installation.
  - d. Install stairs with no more than **3/16-inch (4.7-mm)** variation between adjacent treads and risers and with no more than **3/8-inch (9.5-mm)** variation between largest and smallest treads and risers within each flight.
  - e. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.
- C. Standing And Running Trim Installation
1. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than **24 inches (610 mm)** long, except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
    - a. Match color and grain pattern of trim for transparent finish (stain or clear finish) across joints.
    - b. Install trim after gypsum board joint finishing operations are completed.
    - c. Drill pilot holes in hardwood before fastening to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.
- D. Paneling Installation
1. Plywood Paneling: Select and arrange panels on each wall to minimize noticeable variations in grain character and color between adjacent panels. Leave **1/4-inch (6-mm)** gap to be covered with trim at top, bottom, and openings. Install with uniform tight joints between panels.
    - a. Attach panels to supports with manufacturer's recommended panel adhesive and fasteners. Space fasteners as recommended by panel manufacturer.
    - b. Conceal fasteners to greatest practical extent.
    - c. Arrange panels with grooves and joints over supports. Fasten to supports with nails of type and at spacing recommended by panel manufacturer. Use fasteners with prefinished heads matching groove color.
  2. Hardboard Paneling: Install according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Leave **1/4-inch (6-mm)** gap to be covered with trim at top, bottom, and openings. Butt adjacent panels with moderate contact. Use fasteners with prefinished heads matching paneling color.
    - a. Wood Stud or Furring Substrate: Install with **1-inch (25-mm)** annular-ring shank hardboard nails.
    - b. Plaster or Gypsum Board Substrate: Install with **1-5/8-inch (41-mm)** annular-ring shank hardboard nails.
    - c. Nailing: Space nails **4 inches (100 mm)** o.c. at panel perimeter and **8 inches (200 mm)** o.c. at intermediate supports unless otherwise required by manufacturer.
  3. Board Paneling: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions. Arrange in random-width pattern suggested by manufacturer unless boards or planks are of uniform width.
    - a. Install in full lengths without end joints.  
**OR**  
Stagger end joints in random pattern to uniformly distribute joints on each wall.
    - b. Install with uniform end joints with only end-matched (tongue-and-groove) joints within each field of paneling.  
**OR**  
Install with uniform end joints. Locate end joints only over furring or blocking.
    - c. Select and arrange boards on each wall to minimize noticeable variations in grain character and color between adjacent boards. Install with uniform tight joints between boards.
    - d. Fasten paneling by face nailing, setting nails, and filling over nail heads.  
**OR**

Fasten paneling with trim screws, set below face and filled.

**OR**

Fasten paneling by blind nailing through tongues.

**OR**

Fasten paneling with paneling system manufacturer's concealed clips.

**OR**

Fasten paneling to gypsum wallboard with panel adhesive.

**E. Shelving And Clothes Rod Installation**

1. Cut shelf cleats at ends of shelves about **1/2 inch (13 mm)** less than width of shelves and sand exposed ends smooth.
2. Install shelf cleats by fastening to framing or backing with finish nails or trim screws, set below face and filled. Space fasteners not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. Use 2 fasteners at each framing member or fastener location for cleats **4 inches nominal (89 mm actual)** in width and wider.
  - a. Apply a bead of multipurpose construction adhesive to back of shelf cleats right before installing. Remove adhesive that is squeezed out immediately after fastening shelf cleats in place.
3. Install shelf brackets according to manufacturer's written instructions, spaced not more than **36 inches (900 mm)** o.c. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors.
4. Install standards for adjustable shelf supports according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors. Space fasteners not more than **12 inches (300 mm)** o.c.
5. Install standards for adjustable shelf brackets according to manufacturer's written instructions, spaced not more than **36 inches (900 mm)** o.c. and within **6 inches (150 mm)** of end of shelves. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors.
6. Cut shelves to neatly fit openings with only enough gap to allow shelves to be removed and reinstalled. Install shelves, fully seated on cleats, brackets, and supports.
  - a. Fasten shelves to cleats with finish nails or trim screws, set flush.
  - b. Fasten shelves to brackets to comply with bracket manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Install rod flanges for rods as indicated. Fasten to shelf cleats, framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors. Install rods in rod flanges.

**F. Stair And Railing Installation**

1. Treads and Risers at Interior Stairs: Secure treads and risers by gluing and nailing to rough carriages.
  - a. Closed Stringers: House treads and risers into wall stringers, glue, and wedge into place **OR** Cope wall stringers to fit tightly over treads and risers, **as directed**.
  - b. Open Stringers: Miter risers and stringer at open stringers. Extend tread over open stringers and finish with bullnose edge cut from tread stock and fitted to tread with mitered return at nosing.
2. Balusters: Dovetail or mortise balusters into treads, glue, and nail in place. Let into railings and glue in place.
3. Newel Posts: Secure newel posts to stringers, rough carriages, and risers with countersunk-head wood screws and glue.
4. Railings: Secure wall rails with metal brackets. Fasten freestanding railings to newel posts and to trim at walls with countersunk-head wood screws or rail bolts, and glue. Assemble railings at goosenecks, easements, and splices with rail bolts and glue.

**G. Ornamental Column Installation**

1. Install columns to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Comply with requirements below unless manufacturer's written instructions state otherwise.
2. Lay out column locations on ceiling and plumb down to locate column locations at floor.



3. Set plinths in location, shim to temporarily level, and scribe and trim as required so that tops of plinths will sit level without use of shims. Seal cut surfaces with wood sealer or primer and fasten plinths to floor using pins or fasteners as recommended by manufacturer.
  4. Set columns in location, shim as required to temporarily plumb, scribe and trim as required so that columns will sit plumb without shims.
  5. Scribe and trim tops of columns to fit to ceiling.
  6. Seal ends of columns with wood sealer or primer.
  7. Install column caps on columns and fasten to columns.
  8. Secure columns in place at top and bottom with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Adjusting
1. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- I. Cleaning
1. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- J. Protection
1. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
  2. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
    - a. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
    - b. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 06 22 13 00a

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 22 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 25 16 00 - PANELING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for paneling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Board paneling.
  - b. Flush wood paneling.
  - c. Plastic-laminate-clad flush paneling.
  - d. Stile and rail wood paneling.

#### C. Definitions

1. Paneling includes wood furring, blocking, and shims for installing paneling, unless concealed within other construction before paneling installation.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including finishing materials and processes.
  - a. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show location of paneling, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components. Include dimensioned plans and elevations.
  - a. For paneling produced from premanufactured sets, show finished panel sizes, set numbers, sequence numbers within sets, and method of cutting panels to produce indicated sizes.
  - b. For paneling veneered in fabrication shop, show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
  - c. Apply WI-certified compliance label to first page of Shop Drawings, **as directed**.
3. Samples:
  - a. Lumber and panel products for transparent finish, for each species and cut, finished on one side and one edge.
  - b. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished paneling.
  - c. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish, for each species and cut. Include at least one face-veneer seam and finish as specified.
  - d. Lumber and panel products with shop-applied opaque finish, for each finish system and color, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished.
  - e. Plastic laminates, **8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm)**, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with 1 sample applied to core material.
  - f. Corner pieces for stile and rail paneling, **18 inches (450 mm)** high by **18 inches (450 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm)** deep.
4. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For installation adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products and fabrication adhesives, documentation indicating that products contain no urea formaldehyde.



- c. Product Data for Credit(s) MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
  - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
- d. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
  - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
- 5. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates **OR** WIC-certified compliance certificates, **as directed**.

#### E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- 2. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" **OR** WIC's "Manual of Millwork," **as directed**.
  - a. Provide AWI Quality Certification Program labels and certificates for woodwork, including installation.
  - b. Provide WIC-certified compliance labels and certificates for woodwork, including installation.
- 3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.
- 4. Forest Certification: Provide paneling produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- 5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Do not deliver paneling until painting and similar operations that could damage paneling have been completed in installation areas. If paneling must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

#### G. Project Conditions

- 1. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install paneling until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

- 1. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's **OR** WIC's, **as directed**, quality standard for quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
  - a. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - b. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 **OR** M-2-Exterior Glue, **as directed**.
  - c. Particleboard: Straw-based particleboard complying with requirements in ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, except for density.

- d. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay.
    - e. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
  3. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated, or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  4. Adhesives: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
  5. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement **OR** Contact cement **OR** PVA **OR** Urea formaldehyde **OR** Resorcinol, **as directed**.
    - a. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.
  6. VOC Limits for installation Adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
    - b. Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - c. Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
    - d. Special Purpose Contact Adhesive (contact adhesive that is used to bond melamine covered board, metal, unsupported vinyl, Teflon, ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene, rubber or wood veneer 1/16 inch or less in thickness to any surface): 250 g/L.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
1. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that comply with requirements in this Article and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.
    - a. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
    - b. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
    - c. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:
    - a. Exterior Type: Organic-resin-based formulation thermally set in wood by kiln drying.
    - b. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
    - c. Mill lumber after treatment, within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking plant certified by testing and inspecting agency.
    - d. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
    - e. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.
  3. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Panels complying with the following requirements, made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.
  4. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard: Medium-density fiberboard panels complying with ANSI A208.2, made from softwood fibers, synthetic resins, and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 200 or less per ASTM E 84.
- C. Installation Materials
1. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, fire-retardant-treated, **as directed**, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.



2. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

D. Fabrication, General

1. Paneling Grade: Provide Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**, grade paneling complying with referenced quality standard.
2. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
3. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
4. Arrange paneling in shop or other suitable space in proposed sequence for examination by the Owner. Mark units with temporary sequence numbers to indicate position in proposed layout.
  - a. Lay out one elevation at a time if approved by the Owner.
  - b. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of the date and time when layout will be available for viewing.
  - c. Provide lighting of similar type and level as that of final installation for viewing layout, unless otherwise approved by the Owner.
  - d. Rearrange paneling as directed by the Owner until layout is approved.
  - e. Do not trim end units and other nonmodular size units to less than modular size until after the Owner's approval of layout. Indicate trimming by masking edges of units with nonmarking material.
  - f. Obtain the Owner's approval of layout before start of assembly. Mark units and Shop Drawings with assembly sequence numbers based on approved layout.
5. Complete fabrication, including assembly and finishing, **as directed**, to maximum extent possible, before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
6. Shop cut openings, to maximum extent possible, to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

E. Board Paneling For Transparent Finish

1. Grade: Provide Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
2. Wood Species and Cut: Hickory, quarter sawn **OR** Red gum, plain sawn **OR** Western white pine, plain sawn **OR** Cypress, plain sawn, **as directed**.
3. Pattern: 1-by-6, vee joint, tongue and groove, **5-1/16-inch (129-mm)** coverage **OR** 1-by-8, pickwick paneling (WWPA Pattern WP-2), **6-3/4-inch (172-mm)** coverage **OR** 1-by-4, beaded ceiling, **3-3/16-inch (81-mm)** coverage **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
4. Shop fabricate board paneling in lengths to provide pieces that are uninterrupted by joints **OR** random-lengths, **as directed**. Machine edges of boards to provide joint profiles indicated.
5. Preassemble board paneling into largest units that can be delivered into installation areas using permanent or temporary backing members as indicated. To maximum extent possible, fabricate units in sizes determined by field measurements of existing conditions and that will avoid fitting in the field; make provision for separate scribing pieces to be fitted to adjoining finished surfaces. Provide shop-prepared detachable pieces for forming joints with other units at Project site and with other types of architectural woodwork.

F. Board Paneling For Opaque Finish

1. Grade: Provide Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
2. Wood Species: Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood, **as directed**.

3. Pattern: 1-by-6, vee joint, tongue and groove, 5-1/16-inch (129-mm) coverage **OR** 1-by-8, pickwick paneling (WWPA Pattern WP-2), 6-3/4-inch (172-mm) coverage **OR** 1-by-4, beaded ceiling, 3-3/16-inch (81-mm) coverage **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  4. Shop fabricate board paneling in lengths to provide pieces that are uninterrupted by joints **OR** random-lengths, **as directed**. Machine edges of boards to provide joint profiles indicated.
  5. Preassemble board paneling into largest units that can be delivered into installation areas using permanent or temporary backing members as indicated. To maximum extent possible, fabricate units in sizes determined by field measurements of existing conditions and that will avoid fitting in the field; make provision for separate scribing pieces to be fitted to adjoining finished surfaces. Provide shop-prepared detachable pieces for forming joints with other units at Project site and with other types of architectural woodwork.
- G. Flush Wood Paneling For Transparent Finish
1. Grade: Provide Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
  2. Wood Species and Cut: White oak, rift sliced **OR** Cherry, plain sliced **OR** Butternut, plain sliced **OR** Avodire, quarter sliced, **as directed**.
    - a. Lumber Trim and Edges: At paneling fabricator's option, trim and edges indicated as solid wood (except moldings) may be either lumber or veneered construction of same species and cut as panel faces and compatible with grain and color of panel faces.
  3. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book **OR** Slip **OR** Random, **as directed** match.
  4. Matching within Panel Face: Running **OR** Balance **OR** Center-balance, **as directed**, match.
  5. Panel-Matching Method:
    - a. No matching is required between panels. Select and arrange panels for similarity of grain pattern and color between adjacent panels.  
**OR**  
Premanufactured sets used full width **OR** Premanufactured sets selectively reduced in width **OR** Sequence-matched, uniform-size sets **OR** Blueprint-matched panels and components, **as directed**, within each separate area.
  6. Vertical Panel-Matching Method: Continuous match; veneer leaves of upper panels are continuations of veneer leaves of lower panels **OR** Vertical book match; veneer leaves are individually book matched from lower panels to upper panels **OR** Vertical slip match; veneer leaves are individually slip matched from lower panels to upper panels **OR** Panel vertical book match; panels are book matched from lower panels to upper panels **OR** Panel vertical slip match; panels are slip matched from lower panels to upper panels, **as directed**.
  7. Panel Core Construction: Hardwood veneer-core plywood **OR** Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant, medium-density fiberboard, **as directed**.
  8. Exposed Panel Edges: Solid wood or wood veneer matching faces **OR** Legs of metal channels forming reveals **OR** Bronze flat bars 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick by depth of panels, **as directed**.
  9. Panel Reveals: Matte black plastic laminate **OR** Bronze sheet **OR** Stainless-steel sheet **OR** Bronze channels, 1 by 1 by 1/8 inch (25.4 by 25.4 by 3.2 mm) thick **OR** Stainless-steel channels, 1 by 1 by 1/16 inch (25.4 by 25.4 by 1.6 mm) thick, **as directed**.
  10. Fire-Retardant-Treated Paneling: Provide panels consisting of wood-veneer and fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant, medium-density fiberboard. Panels shall have a flame-spread index of 75 **OR** 25, **as directed**, or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less per ASTM E 84.
    - a. Provide paneling of 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum thickness.
- H. Plastic-Laminate-Clad Flush Paneling
1. Grade: Provide Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
  2. Plastic-Laminate Cladding: High-pressure decorative laminate, in the following grades:
    - a. Faces: Grade HGS **OR** VGS **OR** SGF **OR** HGF **OR** VGF, **as directed**.
    - b. Backs: Grade BKH **OR** BKV **OR** BKL, **as directed**.
    - c. Exposed Edges: Same as faces or Grade VGS.
  3. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed surfaces complying with the following requirements:

- a. As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
  - b. Match the Owner's samples.
  - c. As selected by the Owner from laminate manufacturer's full range in the following categories:
    - 1) Solid colors, gloss **OR** matte, **as directed**, finish.
    - 2) Solid colors with core same color as surface, gloss **OR** matte, **as directed**, finish.
    - 3) Wood grains, gloss **OR** matte, **as directed**, finish.
    - 4) Patterns, gloss **OR** matte, **as directed**, finish.
  4. Panel Core Construction: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant, medium-density fiberboard, **as directed**.
  5. Fire-Retardant-Treated Paneling: Provide panels consisting of fire-retardant plastic laminate and fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant, medium-density fiberboard. Panels shall have a flame-spread index of 75 **OR** 25, **as directed**, or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less per ASTM E 84.
    - a. Provide paneling of 3/4-inch (19-mm) minimum thickness.
- I. Stile And Rail Wood Paneling For Transparent Finish
1. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
  2. Wood Species: White oak, rift sawn/sliced **OR** Figured English ash, quarter sawn/sliced **OR** Butternut, plain sawn/sliced **OR** Figured red gum, plain-sawn/sliced panels, quarter-sawn/sliced stiles and rails, **as directed**.
  3. Stiles and Rails: At fabricator's option, stiles and rails may be either lumber or veneered construction with edges banded or with lumber moldings, as indicated, to conceal core and veneer joints.
  4. Panels: Flat panels **OR** Raised panels with veneered faces and solid lumber rims **OR** Raised panels with veneered faces extending across rims **OR** Raised panels made from edge-glued solid lumber, **as directed**.
  5. Insert Panels:
    - a. Blueprint matched in a horizontal sequence for adjacent panels and doors, with continuous vertical matching between adjacent panels. Book and balance **OR** Book, balance, and center, **as directed**, match face-veneer leaves within each panel.  
**OR**  
 Cut panels from premanufactured, sequence-matched sets of book-matched veneered panels. Cut panels with an even **OR** even or odd, **as directed**, number of veneer leaves centered in each panel and with each of the remainders at least half as wide as the full veneer leaves, **as directed**. Cut panels with continuous matching between vertically adjacent panels; veneer leaves of upper panels are continuations of veneer leaves of panels below them.  
**OR**  
 Book and balance match face veneers within panels. No matching is required between adjacent panels; select and arrange panels for similarity of grain pattern and color between adjacent panels.
  6. Shop assemble stile and rail paneling into largest units practical for delivery and installation. Provide shop-prepared detachable joints for necessary field connections. Sand and pull joints tight in shop so field joints will comply with joint tolerances for specified grade. Unless otherwise indicated, provide continuous mortise-and-tenon joints between panel units and provide removable temporary protection for joints during handling and delivery.
    - a. Outside Corner of Stile and Rail Paneling: Shop prepare using lock-mitered or mitered-and-splined construction. Assemble, sand, and glue in shop, if site conditions permit.
- J. Stile And Rail Wood Paneling For Opaque Finish
1. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
  2. Wood Species: Any closed-grain hardwood **OR** Eastern white pine, ponderosa pine, sugar pine, or western white pine, **as directed**.



3. Stiles and Rails: Either solid lumber or particleboard, shop filled on face, with veneered or lumber-banded edges, at paneling fabricator's option.
  4. Flat Insert Panels: Medium-density fiberboard or particleboard with shop-filled face.
  5. Raised Insert Panels: Medium-density overlaid softwood plywood (Exterior) APA MDO EXT, machined to profile indicated and shop filled on exposed machined surfaces **OR** Medium-density fiberboard, machined to profile indicated, **as directed**.
  6. Provide fire-retardant treatment of stile and rail paneling as indicated below. For components of paneling fabricated from solid lumber, mill pieces before treatment.
    - a. For stiles and rails, use fire-retardant-treated lumber or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard.
    - b. For built-up stiles and rails, use fire-retardant particleboard with fire-retardant lumber edge-bands or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard.
    - c. For insert panels, use fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard.

**OR**  
For insert panels, use fire-retardant particleboard with closed-grain hardwood veneer on face and back.
  7. Shop assemble stile and rail paneling into largest units practical for delivery and installation. Provide shop-prepared detachable joints for necessary field connections. Sand and pull joints tight in shop so field joints will comply with joint tolerances for specified grade. Unless otherwise indicated, provide continuous mortise-and-tenon joints between panel units and provide removable temporary protection for joints during handling and delivery.
    - a. Outside Corner of Stile and Rail Paneling: Shop prepare using lock-mitered or mitered-and-splined construction. Assemble, sand, and glue in shop, if site conditions permit.
- K. Shop Finishing
1. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as paneling to be finished.
  2. General:
    - a. Finish paneling at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

**OR**  
Shop finish transparent-finished paneling at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 07 for finishing of opaque-finished paneling.

**OR**  
Drawings indicate paneling that is required to be shop finished. Finish such paneling at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 07 for finishing paneling not indicated to be shop finished.
  3. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for transparent-finished paneling specified to be field finished. Refer to Division 07 for material and application requirements.
  4. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing paneling, as applicable to each unit of work.
    - a. Backpriming: Apply two coats of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of paneling. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad paneling do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate.
  5. Transparent Finish:
    - a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
    - b. AWI Finish System: TR-0, synthetic penetrating oil **OR** TR-3, cellulose acetate butyrate or water-reducible acrylic lacquer **OR** TR-4, conversion varnish **OR** TR-5, catalyzed vinyl lacquer, **as directed**.
    - c. WIC Finish System: 2, water-reducible acrylic lacquer **OR** 3b., catalyzed vinyl lacquer **OR** 4, conversion varnish **OR** 6, penetrating oil, **as directed**.
    - d. Staining: None required **OR** Match approved sample for color **OR** Match the Owner's sample, **as directed**.
    - e. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.



- f. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
- g. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining (if any), apply paste wood filler to open-grain woods and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
  - 1) Apply wash-coat sealer after staining and before filling.
- h. Sheen: Flat, 15-30 **OR** Satin, 31-45 **OR** Semigloss, 46-60 **OR** Gloss, 61-100, **as directed**, gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.
- 6. Opaque Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, color, effect, and sheen, with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.
  - a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
  - b. AWI Finish System: OP-4, conversion varnish **OR** OP-5, catalyzed vinyl, **as directed**.
  - c. WIC Finish System: 3b., catalyzed vinyl lacquer **OR** 4, conversion varnish **OR** 7a., synthetic enamel, **as directed**.
  - d. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - e. Sheen: Flat, 10-25 **OR** Satin, 30-50 **OR** Semigloss, 55-75 **OR** Gloss, 80-100, **as directed**, gloss units.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

- 1. Before installation, condition paneling to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- 2. Before installing paneling, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

#### B. Installation

- 1. Grade: Install paneling to comply with requirements for same grade specified in Part 1.2 for fabrication of type of paneling involved.
- 2. Install paneling level, plumb, true, and straight with no distortions. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**. Install with no more than **1/16 inch in 96-inch (1.6 mm in 2400-mm)** vertical cup or bow and **1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm)** horizontal variation from a true plane.
  - a. For flush paneling with revealed joints, install with variations in reveal width, alignment of top and bottom edges, and flushness between adjacent panels not exceeding **1/32 inch (0.8 mm) OR 1/16 inch (1.5 mm), as directed**.
- 3. Scribe and cut paneling to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- 4. Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips **OR** splined connection strips **OR** blind nailing, **as directed**. Do not use face fastening unless covered by trim **OR** otherwise indicated, **as directed**.
- 5. Complete finishing work specified in this Section to extent not completed at shop or before installation of paneling. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are applied in shop.
- 6. Refer to Division 07 for final finishing of installed paneling.

#### C. Adjusting And Cleaning

- 1. Repair damaged and defective paneling, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace paneling. Adjust for uniform appearance.
- 2. Clean paneling on exposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 06 25 16 00

## SECTION 06 41 13 00 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for interior architectural woodwork. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Interior standing and running trim.
  - b. Interior frames and jambs.
  - c. Stairwork and rails.
  - d. Flush wood paneling and wainscots.
  - e. Interior ornamental work.
  - f. Wood cabinets.
  - g. Plastic-laminate cabinets.
  - h. Wood countertops.
  - i. Plastic-laminate countertops.
  - j. Solid-surfacing-material countertops.
  - k. Laminated-plastic laboratory tops.
  - l. Closet and utility shelving.
  - m. Shop finishing of interior woodwork.

#### C. Definitions

1. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
2. Rough carriages for stairs are a part of interior architectural woodwork. Platform framing, headers, partition framing, and other rough framing associated with stairwork are specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For panel products, high-pressure decorative laminate, adhesive for bonding plastic laminate, solid-surfacing material, fire-retardant-treated materials, cabinet hardware and accessories, handrail brackets, and finishing materials and processes.
  - a. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
3. Samples:
  - a. Lumber with or for transparent finish, for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.
  - b. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished woodwork.
  - c. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish for each species and cut. Include at least one face-veneer seam and finish as specified.
  - d. Lumber and panel products with shop-applied opaque finish, for each finish system and color, with exposed surface finished.
  - e. Plastic-laminates, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.
  - f. Thermoset decorative panels, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish.
  - g. Solid-surfacing materials.

- h. Corner pieces as follows:
  - 1) Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails, as well as exposed end pieces, **18 inches (450 mm)** high by **18 inches (450 mm)** wide by **6 inches (150 mm)** deep.
  - 2) Miter joints for standing trim.
- i. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.
- 4. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For installation adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4:
    - 1) For each composite-wood product used, documentation indicating that the bonding agent contains no urea formaldehyde.
    - 2) For each adhesive used, documentation indicating that the adhesive contains no urea formaldehyde.
  - c. Product Data for Credit(s) MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
  - d. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
- 5. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.
- 6. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates **OR** WI-certified compliance certificates, **as directed**.

#### E. Quality Assurance

- 1. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of woodwork.
- 2. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" **OR** WI's "Manual of Millwork", **as directed**.
  - a. Provide AWI Quality Certification Program labels and certificates for woodwork, including installation.
  - b. Provide WI-certified compliance labels and certificates for woodwork, including installation.
- 3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.
- 4. Forest Certification: Provide interior architectural woodwork produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- 5. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

- 1. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's **OR** WI's, **as directed**, quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: Red oak, plain sawn or sliced **OR** White oak, rift sawn or cut **OR** White ash, plain sawn or sliced **OR** Hickory, plain sawn or sliced, **as directed**.
  3. Wood Species for Opaque Finish: Any closed-grain hardwood **OR** Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine, **as directed**.
  4. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
    - a. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
    - b. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
    - c. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 **OR** M-2-Exterior Glue, **as directed**.
    - d. Particleboard: Straw-based particleboard complying with requirements in ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, except for density.
    - e. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay.
    - f. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
  5. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.
    - a. Provide PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 on components with exposed or semiexposed edges.
  6. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  7. Chemical-Resistant, High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGP.
  8. Solid-Surfacing Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ISSFA-2.
    - a. Type: Standard type or Veneer type made from material complying with requirements for Standard type, as indicated, unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
    - b. Colors and Patterns: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  9. Float Glass for Cabinet Doors: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear) **OR** 2 or 3 (tinted), **as directed**, Quality-Q3, 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**, thick.
    - a. Tint Color: Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
  10. Tempered Float Glass for Cabinet Doors: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1 (clear) **OR** 2 or 3 (tinted), **as directed**, Quality-Q3, with exposed edges seamed before tempering, 6 mm thick, unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Tint Color: Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
  11. Mirror Glass for Cabinet Doors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Select **OR** Glazing, **as directed**, Quality-Q3, 3.0 mm **OR** 4.0 mm **OR** 5.0 mm **OR** 6.0 mm, **as directed**, thick.
  12. Decorative Glass for Cabinet Doors: Provide decorative glass complying with Division 08 Section "Decorative Glass Glazing".
  13. Tempered Float Glass for Cabinet Shelves: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1 (clear) **OR** 2 or 3 (tinted), **as directed**, Quality-Q3; with exposed edges seamed before tempering, 6 mm thick.
    - a. Tint Color: Blue-green **OR** Bronze **OR** Green **OR** Gray, **as directed**.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials
1. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this Article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.
    - a. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
    - b. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
    - c. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPAC20 (lumber) and AWPAC27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:
  - a. Exterior Type: Organic-resin-based formulation thermally set in wood by kiln drying.
  - b. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
  - c. Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking plant certified by testing and inspecting agency.
  - d. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
  - e. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.
3. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Panels made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.
4. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard: Medium-density fiberboard panels complying with ANSI A208.2, made from softwood fibers, synthetic resins, and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 200 or less per ASTM E 84.

C. Cabinet Hardware And Accessories

1. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
2. Butt Hinges: **2-3/4-inch (70-mm)**, 5-knuckle steel hinges made from **0.095-inch- (2.4-mm-)** thick metal, and as follows:
  - a. Semiconcealed Hinges for Flush Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01361.
  - b. Semiconcealed Hinges for Overlay Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01521.
3. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 100 **OR** 135 **OR** 170, **as directed**, degrees of opening, self-closing.
4. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
5. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal **OR** plastic, **as directed**, **4 inches (100 mm)** long, **5/16 inch (8 mm)** in diameter **OR** **5 inches (127 mm)** long, **2-1/2 inches (63.5 mm)** deep, and **5/16 inch (8 mm)** in diameter, **as directed**.
6. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141 **OR** Push-in magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03131 **OR** Roller catches, BHMA A156.9, B03071 **OR** Ball friction catches, BHMA A156.9, B03013, **as directed**.
7. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081 **OR** BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112, **as directed**.
8. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal **OR** plastic **OR** metal, two-pin type with shelf hold-down clip, **as directed**.
9. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.
  - a. Standard Duty (Grade 1, Grade 2, and Grade 3): Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer; full-extension **OR** partial-extension, **as directed**, type; zinc-plated steel **OR** epoxy-coated steel, **as directed**, with polymer rollers.
  - b. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mounted; full-extension **OR** full-overtravel-extension, **as directed**, type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
  - c. Box Drawer Slides: Grade 1 **OR** Grade 1HD-100, **as directed**; for drawers not more than **6 inches (150 mm)** high and **24 inches (600 mm)** wide.
  - d. File Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100 **OR** Grade 1HD-200, **as directed**; for drawers more than **6 inches (150 mm)** high or **24 inches (600 mm)** wide.
  - e. Pencil Drawer Slides: Grade 2 **OR** Grade 1, **as directed**; for drawers not more than **3 inches (75 mm)** high and **24 inches (600 mm)** wide.
  - f. Keyboard Slides: Grade 1 **OR** Grade 1HD-100, **as directed**; for computer keyboard shelves.

- g. Trash Bin Slides: Grade 1HD-100 **OR** Grade 1HD-200, **as directed**; for trash bins not more than **20 inches (500 mm)** high and **16 inches (400 mm)** wide.
  10. Plastic **OR** Aluminum, **as directed**, Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: BHMA A156.9, B07063.
  11. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
  12. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
  13. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: **1-1/4-inch (32-mm) OR 2-inch (51-mm)**, **as directed**, OD, brown **OR** black, **as directed**, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
  14. Paper Slots: **12 inches (305 mm) OR 17 inches (432 mm)**, **as directed**, long by **1-3/4 inches (45 mm)** wide by **1 inch (25 mm)** deep; brown **OR** black, **as directed**, molded-plastic, paper-slot liner with **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** lip.
  15. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
    - a. Dark, Oxidized, Satin Bronze, Oil Rubbed: BHMA 613 for bronze base; BHMA 640 for steel base; match the Owner's sample.
    - b. Bright Brass, Clear Coated: BHMA 605 for brass base; BHMA 632 for steel base.
    - c. Satin Brass, Blackened, Bright Relieved, Clear Coated: BHMA 610 for brass base; BHMA 636 for steel base.
    - d. Satin Chromium Plated: BHMA 626 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 652 for steel base.
    - e. Bright Chromium Plated: BHMA 625 for brass or bronze base; BHMA 651 for steel base.
    - f. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
  16. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.
- D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips:
    - a. Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.  
**OR**  
Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
  2. Rough Carriages for Stairs:
    - a. Select Structural **OR** No. 1 **OR** No. 2, **as directed**, grade and any of the following species, kiln dried to 15 percent maximum moisture content:
      - 1) Douglas fir-larch.
      - 2) Douglas fir-south.
      - 3) Douglas fir-larch (north).
      - 4) Hem-fir.
      - 5) Hem-fir (north).
      - 6) Southern pine.
      - 7) Spruce-pine-fir (south).
      - 8) Spruce-pine-fir.  
**OR**  
 Laminated veneer lumber, made with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559, and with the following allowable design values as determined according to ASTM D 5456:
      - 1) Extreme Fiber Stress in Bending, Edgewise: **2850 psi (19.7 MPa) OR 2600 psi (17.9 MPa) OR 2500 psi (17.2 MPa)**, **as directed**, for **12-inch nominal- (286-mm actual-)** depth members.
      - 2) Modulus of Elasticity, Edgewise: **2,000,000 psi (13 800 MPa) OR 1,800,000 psi (12 400 MPa)**, **as directed**.
  3. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
  4. Handrail Brackets: Cast **OR** Extruded **OR** Stamped, **as directed**, from malleable iron **OR** aluminum **OR** bronze **OR** stainless steel, **as directed**, with wall flange drilled for exposed anchor



- OR** and tapped for concealed hanger bolt, **as directed**, and with support arm for screwing to underside of rail. Sized to provide **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** clearance between handrail and wall.
5. Handrail/Bumper Rail Brackets: Pairs of extruded-aluminum channels; one for fastening to back of rail and one for fastening to face of wall. They are then assembled in overlapping fashion and fastened together top and bottom with self-tapping screws. Sized to provide **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** clearance between handrail and wall.
  6. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
  7. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
    - b. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.
  8. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement **OR** Contact cement **OR** PVA **OR** Urea formaldehyde **OR** Resorcinol, **as directed**.
    - a. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.
- E. Fabrication, General
1. Interior Woodwork Grade: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**, grade interior woodwork complying with referenced quality standard.
  2. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
  3. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
  4. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
    - a. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members **3/4 Inch (19 mm)** Thick or Less: **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.
    - b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than **3/4 Inch (19 mm)** Thick: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
    - c. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**.
  5. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, **as directed**, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  6. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
    - a. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.
  7. Install glass to comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and in GANA's "Glazing Manual." For glass in wood frames, secure glass with removable stops.
- F. Interior Standing and Running Trim:
1. For transparent-finished trim items wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.
  2. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
  3. Assemble casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.
- G. Interior Frames and Jambs
1. Products fabricated from particleboard or medium-density fiberboard with veneered, exposed surfaces.

- H. Fire-Rated Interior Frames and Jambs
1. Products fabricated from fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard with veneered, exposed surfaces and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
    - a. Fire Rating: 20 minutes.
- I. Stairwork and Rails:
1. Treads: Transparent **OR** Opaque, **as directed**, finish.
  2. Risers: Transparent **OR** Opaque, **as directed**, finish.
  3. Stringers: Transparent **OR** Opaque, **as directed**, finish.
  4. Balusters: Transparent **OR** Opaque, **as directed**, finish.
  5. Handrails: Transparent **OR** Opaque, **as directed**, finish.
  6. Scotia, Cove, and Other Moldings: Transparent **OR** Opaque, **as directed**, finish.
- J. Flush Wood Paneling and Wainscots:
1. Lumber Trim and Edges: At fabricator's option, trim and edges indicated as solid wood (except moldings) may be either lumber or veneered construction compatible with grain and color of veneered panels.
  2. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book **OR** Slip **OR** Random, **as directed**, match.
  3. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: Running **OR** Balance **OR** Center-balance, **as directed**, match.
  4. Panel-Matching Method (Economy Grade): No matching between panels is required. Select and arrange panels for similarity of grain pattern and color between adjacent panels.
  5. Panel-Matching Method (Custom or Premium Grade): In each separate area, use premanufactured sets used full width **OR** premanufactured sets selectively reduced in width **OR** sequence-matched, uniform-size sets, **as directed**.
  6. Fire-Retardant-Treated Paneling: Provide panels consisting of wood veneer and fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard. Panels shall have flame-spread index of 75 **OR** 25, **as directed**, or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less per ASTM E 84.
- K. Interior Ornamental Work
1. Interior ornamental work includes the following:
    - a. Balustrades.
    - b. Columns.
    - c. Grilles.
    - d. Mantels.
    - e. Pediment heads.
    - f. Pilasters.
- L. Wood Cabinets for Transparent Finish:
1. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay **OR** Reveal overlay **OR** Reveal overlay on face frame **OR** Flush inset **OR** Flush inset with face frame **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  2. WI Construction Style: Style A, Frameless **OR** B, Face Frame, **as directed**.
  3. WI Construction Type: Type I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together **OR** II, single-length sections to fit access openings, **as directed**.
  4. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: Flush overlay **OR** Reveal overlay **OR** Lipped **OR** Flush, **as directed**.
  5. Reveal Dimension: 1/2 inch (13 mm) **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  6. Grain Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels **OR** Horizontally for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  7. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Book **OR** Slip **OR** Random, **as directed**, match.
  8. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: Running **OR** Balance **OR** Center-balance, **as directed**, match.



9. Semiexposed Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Same species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces **OR** Thermoset decorative panels **OR** Compatible species to that indicated for exposed surfaces, stained to match, **as directed**.
10. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber, same species indicated for exposed surfaces **OR** Solid-hardwood lumber, stained to match species indicated for exposed surfaces **OR** Solid hardwood lumber **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
11. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
12. Provide dust panels of **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

M. Wood Cabinets for Opaque Finish:

1. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay **OR** Reveal overlay **OR** Reveal overlay on face frame **OR** Flush inset **OR** Flush inset with face frame **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. WI Construction Style: Style A, Frameless **OR** B, Face Frame, **as directed**.
3. WI Construction Type: Type I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together **OR** II, single-length sections to fit access openings, **as directed**.
4. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: Flush overlay **OR** Reveal overlay **OR** Lipped **OR** Flush, **as directed**.
5. Reveal Dimension: **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
6. Species for Exposed Lumber Surfaces: Any closed-grain hardwood.
7. Panel Product for Exposed Surfaces: Medium-density fiberboard **OR** overlay, **as directed**.
8. Semiexposed Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Match materials indicated for exposed surfaces **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
9. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
10. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
11. Provide dust panels of **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

N. Plastic-Laminate Cabinets:

1. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay **OR** Reveal overlay **OR** Reveal overlay on face frame **OR** Flush inset **OR** Flush inset with face frame **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
2. WI Construction Style: Style A, Frameless **OR** B, Face Frame, **as directed**.
3. WI Construction Type: Type I, multiple self-supporting units rigidly joined together **OR** II, single-length sections to fit access openings, **as directed**.
4. WI Door and Drawer Front Style: Flush overlay **OR** Reveal overlay **OR** Lipped **OR** Flush, **as directed**.
5. Reveal Dimension: **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
6. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate as follows:
  - a. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS **OR** HGL, **as directed**.
  - b. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP, **as directed**.
  - c. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS **OR** VGS, **as directed**.
  - d. Edges: Grade HGS **OR** Grade VGS **OR** PVC tape, **0.018-inch (0.460-mm)** minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish **OR** PVC T-mold matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish **OR** PVC edge banding, **0.12 inch (3 mm)** thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish, **as directed**.
7. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS **OR** High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade CLS **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
8. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
9. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood **OR** Thermoset decorative panels, **as directed**.
10. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample, **as directed**.
11. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As selected by the Owner from laminate manufacturer's full range of solid colors **OR** wood grains **OR** patterns, **as directed**, gloss **OR** matte, **as directed**, finish.

12. Provide dust panels of **1/4-inch (6.4-mm)** plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.
- O. Wood Countertops
1. Type of Top:
    - a. Solid wood for transparent finish, edge glued, with crown direction reversed in adjacent boards, to produce widths indicated. Select boards for similarity of color and grain and arrange boards for optimum match between adjacent boards.  
**OR**  
Solid laminated for transparent finish. Narrow strips of lumber glued together with crown direction reversed in adjacent strips. Arrange strips for random mix of color and grain.  
**OR**  
Panel product for transparent finish (wood veneer laminated over core).
      - 1) Core Material: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard **OR** Particleboard **OR** Medium-density fiberboard **OR** Particleboard made with exterior glue **OR** Medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue **OR** Exterior-grade plywood **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard, **as directed**.
- P. Plastic-Laminate Countertops:
1. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate Grade: HGS **OR** HGP, **as directed**.
  2. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As selected by the Owner from laminate manufacturer's full range of solid colors **OR** wood grains **OR** patterns, **as directed**, gloss **OR** matte, **as directed**, finish.
  3. Edge Treatment: Same as laminate cladding on horizontal surfaces **OR** Lumber edge for transparent finish matching wood species and cut on cabinet surfaces **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  4. Core Material at Sinks: Particleboard made with exterior glue **OR** Medium-density fiberboard made with exterior glue or exterior-grade plywood, **as directed**.
- Q. Solid-Surfacing-Material Countertops:
1. Solid-Surfacing-Material Thickness: **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** **3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**.
  2. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  3. Fabricate tops in one piece with shop-applied backsplashes **OR** loose backsplashes for field application, **as directed**. Comply with solid-surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  4. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in shop.
- R. Laminated-Plastic Laboratory Tops
1. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: Grade HGS **OR** Grade HGP **OR** Chemical-resistant, Grade HGP, **as directed**.
  2. Colors and Patterns: Provide materials and products that result in colors and patterns of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  3. Core Material: Particleboard **OR** Particleboard made with exterior glue **OR** Fire-retardant particleboard **OR** Rotary-cut lauan or closed-grain hardwood plywood **OR** Exterior-grade rotary-cut lauan or closed-grain hardwood plywood, **as directed**.
- S. Closet And Utility Shelving
1. Shelf Material: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** solid lumber **OR** veneer-faced panel product with solid-lumber edge **OR** veneer-faced panel product with veneer edge banding **OR** thermoset decorative panel with solid-lumber edge **OR** thermoset decorative panel with PVC or polyester edge banding **OR** medium-density fiberboard with solid-lumber edge **OR** particleboard with solid-lumber edge **OR** medium-density fiberboard with radiused edge **OR** particleboard with radiused and filled edge, **as directed**.
  2. Cleats: **3/4-inch (19-mm)** solid lumber **OR** thermoset decorative panel **OR** panel product, **as directed**.

3. Wood Species: Match species indicated for other types of transparent-finished architectural woodwork located in same area of building, unless otherwise indicated **OR** Match species indicated for door to closet where shelving is located **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood **OR** Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine, **as directed**.

**T. Shop Finishing**

1. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as items to be finished.
2. General: Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
3. General: Shop finish transparent-finished interior architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 07 for finishing opaque-finished architectural woodwork.
4. General: Drawings indicate items that are required to be shop finished. Finish such items at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 07 for finishing architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.
5. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for transparent-finished items specified to be field finished. Refer to Division 07 for material and application requirements.
6. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
  - a. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.

**U. Transparent Finish:**

1. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
2. AWI Finish System: Acrylic lacquer **OR** Conversion varnish **OR** Catalyzed vinyl, **as directed**.
3. WI Finish System: 2, water-reducible acrylic lacquer **OR** 3b., catalyzed vinyl lacquer **OR** 4, conversion varnish, **as directed**.
4. Staining: None required **OR** Match approved sample, **as directed**.
5. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
6. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
7. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining (if any), apply paste wood filler to open-grain woods and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
  - a. Apply wash-coat sealer after staining and before filling.
8. Sheen: Flat, 15-30 **OR** Satin, 31-45 **OR** Semigloss, 46-60 **OR** Gloss, 61-100, **as directed** gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

**V. Opaque Finish:**

1. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
2. AWI Finish System: Conversion varnish **OR** Catalyzed vinyl, **as directed**.
3. WI Finish System: 3b., catalyzed vinyl lacquer **OR** 4, conversion varnish **OR** 7a., synthetic enamel, **as directed**.
4. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
5. Sheen: Flat, 15-30 **OR** Satin, 31-45 **OR** Semigloss, 46-60 **OR** Gloss, 61-100, **as directed**, gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

**A. Preparation**

1. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
2. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

B. Installation

1. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 1.2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
2. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 1.2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
3. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**.
4. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
5. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
6. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.
7. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than **36 inches (900 mm) OR 60 inches (1500 mm) OR 96 inches (2400 mm)**, as directed, long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
  - a. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler, sand smooth, and finish same as wood base if finished.
  - b. Install wall railings on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.
  - c. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**.
8. Paneling: Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips **OR** splined connection strips, as directed. Do not use face fastening, unless covered by trim **OR** otherwise indicated.
  - a. Install flush paneling with no more than **1/16 inch in 96-inch (1.5 mm in 2400-mm)** vertical cup or bow and **1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm)** horizontal variation from a true plane.
9. Stairs: Securely anchor carriages to supporting substrates. Install stairs with treads and risers no more than **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from indicated position.
10. Railings:
  - a. General: Install rails with no more than **1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm)** variation from a straight line.
  - b. Stair Rails: Glue and dowel or pin balusters to treads and railings, and railings to newel posts.
  - c. Wall Rails: Support rails on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.
11. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - a. Install cabinets with no more than **1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm)** sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - b. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
  - c. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for **1-inch (25-mm)** penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips **OR** No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish **OR** toggle bolts through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish, as directed.

12. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
  - a. Align adjacent solid-surfacing-material countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
  - b. Install countertops with no more than **1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm)** sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - c. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
  - d. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
13. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
14. Refer to Division 07 for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.

C. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
2. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
3. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 06 41 13 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 41 93 00	06 01 40 91	Door Hardware
06 42 13 00	06 25 16 00	Paneling
06 42 16 00	06 25 16 00	Paneling

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 42 19 00 - PLASTIC PANELING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for plastic paneling. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes glass-fiber reinforced plastic (FRP) wall paneling and trim accessories.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For laminating adhesive and composite wood products used in factory-laminated plastic panels, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
3. Samples: For plastic paneling and trim accessories.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 **OR** 200, **as directed**, or less.
  - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
  - c. Testing Agency: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction **OR** FM Approvals **OR** UL, **as directed**.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Plastic Sheet Paneling

1. General: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D 5319.
  - a. Nominal Thickness: Not less than **0.075 inch (1.9 mm) OR 0.09 inch (2.3 mm) OR 0.12 inch (3.0 mm), as directed**.
  - b. Surface Finish: Smooth **OR** Molded pebble texture **OR** Smooth surface with filled grooves at **4 inches (102 mm) o.c. to resemble tile OR As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, as directed**.
  - c. Color: White **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

#### B. Factory-Laminated Plastic Panels

1. General: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D 5319, laminated to plywood **OR** oriented strand board **OR** fire-retardant particleboard **OR** gypsum board **OR** high-impact gypsum board **OR** moisture- and mold-resistant gypsum board, **as directed**.
  - a. Glass-Fiber Reinforced Plastic Panel Nominal Thickness: Not less than **0.03 inch (0.76 mm) OR 0.05 inch (1.3 mm) OR 0.075 inch (1.9 mm) OR 0.09 inch (2.3 mm), as directed**.
  - b. Surface Finish: Smooth **OR** Molded pebble texture **OR** Smooth surface with filled grooves at **4 inches (102 mm) o.c. to resemble tile OR As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, as directed**.
  - c. Color: White **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.



- d. Plywood: DOC PS 1, Exterior B-C, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) OR 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19.1 mm), as directed**, thick.
- e. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2, **1/4 inch (6.4 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19.1 mm), as directed**, thick.
- f. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Product complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-S, except for modulus of rupture; with flame-spread index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84; and **3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR 1/2 inch (12.7 mm), as directed**, thick.
- g. Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Regular, **1/2 inch (12.7 mm) OR Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), as directed**.
- h. High-Impact Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, with Type X core, and **0.010-inch (0.254-mm) OR 0.020-inch (0.508-mm) OR 0.030-inch (0.762-mm) OR 0.081-inch (2.057-mm), as directed**, plastic film laminated to back side for greater resistance to through penetration (impact resistance).
- i. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M or ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**, Type X, with moisture- and mold-resistant core and surfaces.
- j. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturers standard adhesive that does not contain urea formaldehyde.

#### C. Accessories

- 1. Trim Accessories: Manufacturer's standard one-piece **OR** two-piece, snap-on, **as directed**, vinyl extrusions designed to retain and cover edges of panels. Provide division bars, inside corners, outside corners, and caps as needed to conceal edges.
  - a. Color: White **OR** Match panels **OR** As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- 2. Exposed Fasteners: Nylon drive rivets recommended by panel manufacturer.
- 3. Concealed Mounting Splines: Continuous, H-shaped aluminum extrusions designed to fit into grooves routed in edges of factory-laminated panels and to be fastened to substrate.
- 4. Adhesive: As recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer.
  - a. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 5. Sealant: Single-component, mildew-resistant, neutral-curing silicone **OR** Single-component, mildew-resistant, acid-curing silicone **OR** Latex, **as directed**, sealant recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
  - a. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

- 1. Remove wallpaper, vinyl wall covering, loose or soluble paint, and other materials that might interfere with adhesive bond.
- 2. Prepare substrate by sanding high spots and filling low spots as needed to provide flat, even surface for panel installation.
- 3. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of adhesive, including oil, grease, dirt, and dust.
- 4. Condition panels by unpacking and placing in installation space before installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- 5. Lay out paneling before installing. Locate panel joints where indicated **OR** to provide equal panels at ends of walls not less than half the width of full panels **OR** so that trimmed panels at corners are not less than **12 inches (300 mm) wide, as directed**.
  - a. Mark plumb lines on substrate at trim accessory **OR** panel joint, **as directed**, locations for accurate installation.

- b. Locate trim accessories **OR** panel joints, **as directed**, to allow clearance at panel edges according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Installation

1. Install plastic paneling according to manufacturer's written instructions.  
**OR**  
Install panels in a full spread of adhesive.  
**OR**  
Install panels with fasteners. Layout fastener locations and mark on face of panels so that fasteners are accurately aligned.
  - a. Drill oversized fastener holes in panels and center fasteners in holes.
  - b. Apply sealant to fastener holes before installing fasteners.
2. Install factory-laminated panels using concealed mounting splines in panel joints.
3. Install trim accessories with adhesive and nails or staples. Do not fasten through panels.
4. Fill grooves in trim accessories with sealant before installing panels and bed inside corner trim in a bead of sealant.
5. Maintain uniform space between panels and wall fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
6. Maintain uniform space between adjacent panels and between panels and floors, ceilings, and fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
7. Remove excess sealant and smears as paneling is installed. Clean with solvent recommended by sealant manufacturer and then wipe with clean dry cloths until no residue remains.

END OF SECTION 06 42 19 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 42 19 00	06 25 16 00	Paneling
06 43 13 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 43 16 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 44 39 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 46 13 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 46 13 00	06 22 13 00	Exterior Finish Carpentry
06 46 13 00	06 22 13 00a	Interior Finish Carpentry
06 46 19 00	01 22 16 00	No Specification Required
06 46 19 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry
06 46 19 00	06 22 13 00	Exterior Finish Carpentry
06 46 19 00	06 22 13 00a	Interior Finish Carpentry
06 46 19 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 46 23 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 46 26 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 46 29 00 - EXTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for exterior architectural woodwork. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Exterior standing and running trim.
  - b. Exterior frames and jambs.
  - c. Exterior shutters.
  - d. Exterior ornamental work.
  - e. Shop priming exterior woodwork.
  - f. Shop finishing exterior woodwork.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product and process indicated and incorporated into items of exterior architectural woodwork during fabrication, finishing, and installation.
  - a. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
  - b. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
3. Samples: For lumber for exterior wood stain finish and lumber and panel products for shop-applied opaque finish, for each finish system and color, with one-half of exposed surface finished.
4. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.
5. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates **OR** WI-certified compliance certificates, **as directed**.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" **OR** WI's "Manual of Millwork", **as directed**.
  - a. Provide AWI Quality Certification Program labels and certificates indicating that woodwork, including installation.
  - b. Provide WI-certified compliance labels and certificates indicating that woodwork, including installation.
2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.



3. Forest Certification: Provide exterior architectural woodwork produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's **OR** WI's, **as directed**, quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
  - a. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
  - b. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Exterior **OR** Medium Density Overlay, **as directed**.

### B. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials

1. Preservative Treatment by Nonpressure Process: Comply with AWPA N1 using the following preservative for woodwork items indicated to receive water-repellent preservative treatment:
  - a. Water-Repellent Preservative: Formulation made specifically for dip treatment of woodwork items and containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC) complying with AWPA P8 as its active ingredient.
  - b. Water-Repellent Preservative/Insecticide: Formulation made specifically for dip treatment of woodwork items and containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate (IPBC) as its active ingredient, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient, both complying with AWPA P8.
2. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2 (lumber) and AWPA C9 (plywood) and the following:
  - a. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
  - b. Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content, respectively, of 19 and 15 percent. Do not use materials that are warped or do not comply with requirements for untreated materials.
  - c. Mark each treated item with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
3. Extent of Treatment: Treat blocking and nailers by pressure process and treat other exterior architectural woodwork either by pressure or nonpressure process.
  - a. Items fabricated from the following wood species need not be treated:
    - 1) Redwood **OR** All-heart redwood, **as directed**.
    - 2) Western red cedar **OR** All-heart western red cedar, **as directed**.
    - 3) Teak.
    - 4) African mahogany.

### C. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials

1. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, provide materials that comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood), exterior type.
  - a. Fire-Retardant Chemicals: Use chemical formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
  - b. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
  - c. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.

- d. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
  - e. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Installation Materials
1. Blocking, Shims, and Nailers: Softwood or hardwood lumber, pressure-preservative treated **OR** fire-retardant treated, **as directed**, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
  2. Nails: Aluminum **OR** Hot-dip galvanized **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
  3. Screws: Aluminum **OR** Bronze **OR** Hot-dip galvanized **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.
    - a. Provide self-drilling screws for metal framing supports, as recommended by metal-framing manufacturer.
  4. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts, unless otherwise indicated. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
- E. Fabrication
1. Wood Moisture Content: 9 to 15 **OR** 10 to 15 **OR** 7 to 12, **as directed**, percent.
  2. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
    - a. Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members **3/4 Inch (19 mm)** Thick or Less: **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
    - b. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than **3/4 Inch (19 mm)** Thick: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**.
  3. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  4. Shop cut openings, to maximum extent possible, to receive hardware, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Smooth edges of cutouts and seal with a water-resistant coating suitable for exterior applications.
  5. Woodwork for Transparent Finish:
    - a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
    - b. Wood Species: Teak **OR** African mahogany **OR** White oak **OR** All-heart redwood **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Eastern white pine, **as directed**.
  6. Woodwork for Opaque Finish:
    - a. Grade: Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
    - b. Wood Species: All-heart redwood **OR** Western red cedar **OR** Ponderosa pine **OR** Eastern white pine, sugar pine, or western white pine **OR** Any closed-grain hardwood, **as directed**.
  7. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
  8. Shop Priming: Shop prime woodwork for paint finish with one coat of wood primer specified in Division 07.
    - a. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to surfaces installed in contact with concrete or masonry and to end-grain surfaces.
  9. Shop Finishing: Entire finish of exterior architectural woodwork is specified in this Section. To greatest extent possible, finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop. Defer only final touchup and cleaning until after installation.
    - a. Grade: Same grade as item to be finished **OR** Premium **OR** Custom **OR** Economy, **as directed**.
    - b. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to surfaces installed in contact with concrete or masonry and to end-grain surfaces.
    - c. AWI Finish System: Conversion varnish **OR** Catalyzed polyurethane, **as directed**.



- d. WI Finish System: 4, conversion varnish **OR** 5, catalyzed polyurethane **OR** 7a., synthetic enamel, **OR as directed**.
- e. Sheen: Satin 31-45 **OR** Semigloss 46-60 **OR** Gloss 61-100, **as directed**, gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

- 1. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- 2. Deliver concrete inserts and similar anchoring devices to be built into substrates well in advance of time substrates are to be built.
- 3. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

#### B. Installation

- 1. Quality Standard: Install woodwork to comply with same grade specified in Part 1.2 for type of woodwork involved.
- 2. Install woodwork true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**.
- 3. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, and refinish cut surfaces or repair damaged finish at cuts.
- 4. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
- 5. Preservative-Treated Wood: Where cut or drilled in field, treat cut ends and drilled holes according to AWPA M4.
- 6. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure to grounds, stripping and blocking with countersunk concealed fasteners and blind nailing. Use fine finishing nails for exposed nailing, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
- 7. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than **36 inches (900 mm)** long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
  - a. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than **1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm)**.
- 8. Complete finishing work specified in this Section to extent not completed at shop or before installation of woodwork. Fill nail and screw holes with matching filler where exposed.
- 9. Refer to Division 07 for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork.

#### C. Adjusting And Cleaning

- 1. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; replace woodwork where not possible to repair. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- 2. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 06 46 29 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 46 29 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork
06 46 36 00	06 41 13 00	Interior Architectural Woodwork

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 48 13 00 - WOOD DOORS

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for wood doors. Products shall be as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

### 1.2 GENERAL

A. Definitions

1. Supply-and-Delivery-Only Contract: Includes supply and delivery to site FOB destination. Freight prepaid. Unless otherwise specified or scheduled, unloading and handling at site is by the Owner.
2. Supply-and-Install Contract: Includes supply, delivery to site FOB destination, freight prepaid, unloading and handling at site, and installation.

B. System Description

1. Door Assemblies: Include doors, frames, and hardware.
  - a. Provide with fire rating as indicated or specified.
2. Security Entry Door System (Assembly) Performance Requirements:
  - a. Forced Entry: ASTM F 476, Grade 40.

C. Submittals

1. Shop Drawings:
  - a. Indicate location, size, elevation, details of construction, marks used to identify doors, location and extent of hardware blocking, fire rating, factory preparation requirements for each door type. Drawings shall include catalog cuts or descriptive data for weatherstripping and thresholds to be used.
2. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
  - a. Test Reports: Results of testing by accredited independent laboratory demonstrating compliance of door systems with specified performance requirements.
    - 1) Indicate that tests were performed in accordance with standard referenced.
  - b. Certificates: Manufacturer's written certification that door systems meet or exceed specified requirements.
  - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Closeout Submittals:
  - a. Operation and maintenance data.
  - b. Special warranty.

D. Quality Assurance

1. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with following:
  - a. Fire-Rated Label: Determined using ASTM E 152, and bear label of UL or other recognized fire-rating program acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 1) If any door or frame scheduled to be fire-rated cannot qualify for appropriate labeling because of its design, hardware, or any other reason, advise the Owner prior to submission of bids.
  - b. Accessibility: (Required for accessible units only, including main building entrances.)
    - 1) Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 as amended (42 USC 4152-4157) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 40).
      - a) Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS).

- 2) Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 as amended (29 USC 794) and HUD implementing regulations (24 CFR Part 8 ).
- 3) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines (24 CFR Chapter 1).
- 4) Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (28 CFR Part 35).
2. Mock-ups: Install one mock-up of each type of door system, including doors, frames, hardware, thresholds, and accessories.
  - a. Location: As directed.
  - b. Approved Mock-up: Standard for rest of work, and may remain part of completed project.
- E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
  1. Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading: Pack materials at manufacturing plant to prevent damage during shipping.
    - a. Delivery: Do not deliver doors to building until it is entirely enclosed, drywall and concrete work is completed, and humidity in building has reached average relative humidity of locality.
    - b. Storage: Stack doors flat and off floor in manner to prevent warping or twisting, and to provide ventilation. Do not drag doors across one another.
    - c. Protection: Protect doors during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration, and from extremes in temperature and humidity. Comply with "On-site Care" recommendations of NWWDA Care and Finishing of Wood Doors, and with manufacturer's recommendations.
  2. Acceptance at Site: Inspect door systems upon delivery. Replace damaged or defective materials before installation.
- F. Project Conditions
  1. Field Measurements: Field measure openings for door systems before start of fabrication.
- G. Scheduling And Sequencing
  1. Scheduling and Completion: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.
- H. Warranty
  1. Special Warranty:
    - a. Swinging Doors and Standard Closet Doors Warranty: Provide one-year written warranty covering materials and installation for wood doors.
      - 1) Include coverage of hardware.
      - 2) Cover warping (bow, cup, or twist), photographing of construction below face veneers, tolerance limitations of NWWDA I.S. 1-A.
      - 3) Cover delamination.
      - 4) Glazing not included.
      - 5) Defects resulting from vandalism not included.
    - b. Heavy-Duty Closet Doors Warranty: Provide manufacturer's five-year written warranty covering materials and installation for bifold closet doors.
    - c. For Supply-and-Delivery-Only Contract:
      - 1) Contractor: Agrees to supply and deliver to the Owner, free of charge, any required replacement parts that can be readily installed by the Owner without special tools.
      - 2) Contractor: Agrees to supply and deliver to the Owner, free of charge, complete replacement door, when defective part or parts cannot be installed without use of special tools.
    - d. For Supply-and-Install Contract: Contractor: Agrees to supply and install. free of charge, any required replacement parts or complete replacement door.

### 1.3 PRODUCTS

#### A. Door Frames

1. Wood Frames: Kiln dried Ponderosa Pine, toxic-treated, and primed.
    - a. Applied stops are permitted, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Steel Frames:
    - a. Steel: ASTM A 366 cold rolled steel.
    - b. Steel Frames and/or Adapter Frames: Minimum of 18 gage (1.07 mm) galvanized bonderized steel, pre-drilled and reinforced for hinges as required.
      - 1) Shape of Frame: Generally L-shaped.
    - c. Heavy-Duty Door Frames: 16 gage (1.35 mm) minimum thickness.
      - 1) When required, provide B-Label, 1-1 /2 hour fire rating.
    - d. Security Door Frames: Comply with SDI 100, minimum of 14 gage (1.70 mm) galvanized bonderized steel, pre-drilled and reinforced for hinges as required.
      - 1) When required, provide B-Label, 1-1 /2 hour fire rating.
      - 2) Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
    - e. Preparation for Hardware: Machine and reinforce frames for attachment of hardware, including mortising, drilling, and tapping for hinges and mortised hardware.
    - f. Frame Anchors: Provide jamb anchors as suitable for wall conditions and floor anchors, minimum 18 gage.
      - 1) Provide welded type frames with temporary spreader bars.
- B. Interior Wood Swinging Doors
1. Standard Products: Doors shall be of type, size, and design indicated, and shall be standard products of manufacturers regularly engaged in manufacture of wood doors.
    - a. Marking: Each door shall bear stamp, brand, or other identifying mark indicating quality and construction of door. Identifying mark or separate certification shall include identification of standard on which construction of door is based, and identity of manufacturing plant.
  2. Interior Wood Doors: NWWDA I.S. 1-A.
    - a. Thickness: 44.4 mm (1-3/4 inch) unless otherwise indicated or scheduled.
    - b. Adhesives: NWWDA I.S. 1-A, Type II.
    - c. Prefitting: Provide doors prefitted or unfitted at option of Contractor.
    - d. Faces, stiles, and rails bonded to cores.
  3. Core Construction:
    - a. Solid Core Door NWWDA Construction Type: One of following (as specified):
      - 1) PC-5 or PC-7 (5- or 7-ply) with particleboard core, bonded.
        - a) Stiles: Full core thickness and minimum 34 mm (1-3/8 inch) face width.
      - 2) SLC-5 or SLC-7 (5- or 7-ply) provide with glued wood-block core, bonded.
        - a) Stiles: Full core thickness and minimum 19 mm (3/4 inch) face width.
      - 3) Stiles and Rails: Top and bottom rails for particleboard and wood-block core doors shall have minimum 29 mm (1-1/8 inch) face width by full core thickness.
    - b. Hollow-Core Doors: NWWDA IHC (Institutional Hollow Core) or SHC (Standard Hollow Core), as specified.
      - 1) Provide with heavy-duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware.
      - 2) Hinge Stile: Minimum 25 mm (1 inch) minimum thick.
    - c. Stile Edge Bands: Mill option specie.
      - 1) No visible finger-joints acceptable in stile edge bands.
      - 2) When used, locate finger-joints under hardware.
    - d. Fire-Rated Door NWWDA Construction Type: As required for fire rating indicated or scheduled.
      - 1) Mineral Core Doors: Provide with heavy duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks, and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware including closers and exit devices.
        - a) Reinforcement Blocking: In compliance with manufacturer's labeling requirements.
      - 2) Provide factory prefitting and premachining as required for fire-rated labels.

- 3) Means of Egress Fire Doors: Provide doors with maximum 232 degrees C (450 degree F) temperature rise rating in 30 minutes of fire exposure.
- e. Wood Stiles, Rails, Lock Blocks, and Other Reinforcement: Wood:
  - 1) Rail Blocks: Not less than 125 mm (5 inches) wide by full core thickness.
  - 2) Split Resistance: NWWDA TM-5, average of ten test samples shall be not less than 225 load kilograms (500 load pounds).
  - 3) Direct Screw Withdrawal: NWWDA TM-10, average of ten test samples shall be not less than 315 load kilograms (700 load pounds) when tested for direct screw withdrawal using steel, fully threaded wood screw.
  - 4) Cycle/Swing: NWWDA TM-7. 200,000 cycles with no loose hinge screws or other visible signs of failure.
- f. Under Cutting: Preserve full bottom rail.
4. Face Panels:
  - a. Painted Finish: NWWDA I.S. 1-A, minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
  - b. Plastic Laminate Finish: NEMA LD 3, high pressure decorative laminate, Grade GP50, 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) thick.
    - 1) Faces: Adhesively apply over minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
    - 2) Edges: Adhesively apply plastic laminate matching face panels.
    - 3) Color and Pattern: As selected.

#### C. Hardware

1. General: Comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.1 and applicable accessibility regulatory requirements and perform functions for which it was intended.
2. Butts and Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1, as scheduled.
  - a. Install non-rising pins (NRP) on out-swing residential unit entry doors.
  - b. Self Closing: ANSI/BHMA A156.17.
  - c. Security Door: Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
3. Fire-Rated Door Hardware: Comply with NFPA 80.
  - a. Exit Doors: Comply with NFPA 101 (Life Safety Code) for exit doors, as well as other requirements specified.
  - b. Labeling and Listing: Listed in UL Building Materials Directory.
    - 1) In Lieu of UL Labeling and Listing: Test reports from nationally recognized testing agency showing that hardware has been tested in accordance with UL test methods and conforms to NFPA requirements.
  - c. Install minimum latch throw as specified on label of individual door.
  - d. Provide hardware listed by UL, except where heavier materials, larger sizes, or higher grades are specified.
  - e. Closers: ANSI/BHMA A156.4.
4. Lock Sets and Passage Sets: As scheduled. Comply with following standards:
  - a. Bored and Preassembled Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Grade 2.
  - b. Dead Bolt: ANSI/BHMA A156.5.
  - c. Mortise Locks and Latches: ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Grade 1 or Security Grade, single or multiple throw.
  - d. Interconnected Deadlock and Passage Set: ANSI/BHMA A156.12, Grade 2.
  - e. Cylindrical Lock: Grade 2 cylindrical deadbolt lock/passage set combination.
  - f. Security Door Locksets: ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Security Grade or UL 437 Key locks.
    - 1) Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
  - g. Keys: Provide two keys for each lock provided. Provide master keying and keying alike on any locks as directed at no additional charge.
  - h. Locks: Provide with interchangeable cores.
5. Door Viewers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16.

#### D. Factory Fitting And Machining

1. Doors: Prefit, bevel, mortise, and machine doors at factory in accordance with NWWDA I.S. 1-A.

- a. Comply with hardware schedules and door frame Shop Drawings with hardware templates to ensure proper fit of doors and hardware.
      - 1) Take accurate field measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with machining in factory.
    - b. Machine doors for hardware requiring cutting of doors.
    - c. Fit doors to frame bevel lock edge of doors (1/8 inch) for each (2 inches) of door thickness.
    - d. Finish all surfaces, including both faces, top and bottom and edges of doors smooth to touch.
  2. Edge Sealing: Seal wood end grain exposed at edges and cutouts of doors against moisture penetration prior to shipment.
    - a. Sealer: Two coats of spar varnish or other sealer recommended by door manufacturer.
  3. Tolerances: Comply with NWWDA tolerance requirements for prefabricating.
- E. Door Assemblies
  1. Prehung Swinging Doors: Prehung door with matching wood frame complete with hinges, lockset or passage set, and other hardware, as indicated or specified.
  2. Fire-Rated Doors and Frames: NFPA 80 and bear identifying label of UL or nationally recognized testing agency qualified to perform certification programs indicating that units conform to requirements for class indicated.
    - a. Labels: Metal with raised or incised markings.
    - b. Hardware: As required to maintain fire rating and receive label.
  3. Security Entry Frames and Doors:
    - a. Comply with Performance Requirements in this Section.
    - b. Fire Rating: When required, provide B-Label, 1-1/2 hour fire rating.
- F. Closet Doors
  1. Heavy-Duty Bifold Closet Doors: Particleboard bifold doors, prime painted, factory premachined, complete with manufacturer's standard hardware to provide complete operating bifold doors.
    - a. Panels: 721 kg/ cubic m (45 PCF) industrial-grade particle board, 19.1 mm (3/4 inch) thick.
      - 1) Long Edges: Plasticized.
      - 2) Room Side: Filled and prime painted.
      - 3) Closet Side: Prime painted.
      - 4) Exposed Surfaces Finish: Painted or plastic laminate as indicated or scheduled.
    - b. Track: No. 6063-T6 extruded aluminum, 20.5 mm (13/16 inch) by 32 mm (1-1/4 inch).
      - 1) Track Guides: Delrin.
    - c. Hardware: Factory-applied to doors and track.
      - 1) Pivot and Mounting Hardware: 14 gage cold-rolled steel, carbonized for strength and durability.
      - 2) Top Pivot and Guide Pins: 75 mm (3 inch) removable compensating pins.
      - 3) Toggle Pivot: Ensure doors remain in place.
      - 4) Spring Enclosure: Provide positive closing with little effort and keep doors closed.
      - 5) Bottom Pivot: Carry weight of door, floor-mounted, and designed for vertical and horizontal adjustment.
      - 6) Panel Brackets: Wrap-around feature to eliminate unnecessary stress on screws.
      - 7) Panels: Hinged together with continuous piano hinges inserted into routed grooves and secured with tempered pins.
      - 8) Pulls: As selected from manufacturer's standards.
    - d. Doors: Comply with accessibility requirements (as specified).
  2. Standard Bifold Closet Doors: Provide complete manufacturer's standard hardware, including tracks, hinges, guides, and pulls to provide complete operating bifold doors.
    - a. Hollow-Core Doors: NWWDA I.S. 1-A and NWWDA IHC (Institutional Hollow Core).
      - 1) Provide with heavy-duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware.
    - b. Doors: 34.9 mm (1-3/8 inch) thick unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Surface-Mounted Pulls: As selected from manufacturer standards.



3. Standard Sliding Closet Doors: Provide complete manufacturer's standard hardware, including tracks, guides, and pulls to provide complete operating sliding doors.
  - a. Hollow-Core Doors: NWWDA I.S. 1-A and NWWDA IHC (Institutional Hollow Core).
    - 1) Provide with heavy-duty wood stiles, rails, lock blocks and other reinforcement inside core as required to allow for secure screw attachment of hardware.
  - b. Doors: 34.9 mm (1-3/8 inch) thick unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Recessed Pulls: As selected from manufacturer standards.
4. Standard Closet Door Face Panels:
  - a. Painted Finish: NWWDA I.S. 1-A, minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
  - b. Plastic Laminate Finish: NEMA LD 3, high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade GP50, 1.3 mm (0.050 inch) thick.
    - 1) Faces: Adhesively apply over minimum 3 mm (1/8 inch) thick hardboard.
    - 2) Edges: Adhesively apply plastic laminate matching face panels.
    - 3) Color and Pattern: As selected.

#### G. Finishes

1. Painted Wood Finish: One of following as indicated or scheduled:
  - a. Factory Finish: NWWDA System No. 10-Conversion Varnish.
    - 1) Color: As selected.
  - b. Field Finish: Factory primed for field paint under Division 9 Section "Painting."
2. Painted Steel Finish: Clean and free from serious surface blemishes.
  - a. Exposed Surfaces: ASTM A 591 electrolytic zinc-coated steel, Class A.
  - b. Primer: ANSI A224.1, factory-applied primer.
  - c. Finish Coat: One of following as specified or scheduled:
    - 1) Factory Finish: Electrostatically factory applied baked-on enamel finish.
      - a) Color: As selected from manufacturer's list of colors.
    - 2) Field Finish: Factory-primed for field paint under Division 9 Section "Painting."

### 1.4 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Site Verification of Conditions:
  - a. Existing Conditions: Examine openings before beginning installation.
  - b. Field Measurements: Verify field measurements are as indicated on Shop Drawings.
  - c. Before installation of doors, verify that frames are proper size, location, type, and swing characteristics for door, and are installed with plumb jambs and level heads as required for proper installation of doors.
  - d. Reject doors with defects.
  - e. Do not proceed with installation until conditions are satisfactory.

#### B. Preparation

1. Protection: Protect adjacent elements from damage and disfiguration in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
  - a. Contractor: Responsible for damage to buildings and any other facilities or property caused by construction operations.
  - b. Repair or replace damaged elements in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
2. Existing Doors: Remove existing doors and debris from site in accordance with Detailed Scope of Work.
3. Preparation: Prepare existing openings in accordance with ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
4. Wood Door Preparation:
  - a. Conditioning: Condition wood doors to average humidity in installation area prior to hanging.

- b. Prefitting: Prefit wood doors to frames and machine for hardware to whatever extent not previously worked at factory as required for proper fit and uniform clearance at each edge.
    - c. Sealing: Before installation of hardware on wood doors, brush apply sealer to all job site cut or planed surfaces.
- C. Door Frame Installation
  - 1. Door Frames: Install in accordance with ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
    - a. Set frames accurately in accordance with details, straight and free of twist with head level, jambs plumb, and without distortion. Rigidly anchor to walls and partitions and securely brace until surrounding work is completed.
  - 2. Wood Frames: Set plumb and square, and rigidly anchor in place using finish type nails. Provide double wedge blocking near top, bottom, and midpoint of each jamb.
  - 3. Steel Frames: Comply with SDI 105:
    - a. Fire-Rated Openings: Place frames and provide clearances in accordance with NFPA 80 and GA 253.
    - b. Field Welds: Make welds full length of joints. Remove splatter, and grind exposed welds to match adjacent surfaces. Provide the Owner with ample notice to review welds before finish operations begin.
    - c. Wherever possible, leave spreader bars in place until frames are securely anchored.
- D. Wood Door Installation
  - 1. General: Install doors in accordance with NWWDA I.S. 1-A, ASTM E 737, manufacturer's recommendations, and approved Shop Drawings.
    - a. Install doors and frames securely, straight, plumb, and level without distortion.
  - 2. Wood Doors: Install wood doors in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
    - a. Prefit Doors: Fit to frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
    - b. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted with fire-rated doors.
    - c. Hanging: After sizing doors, fit and machine for hardware as scheduled.
      - 1) Hang doors to be free of binding, with hardware functioning properly.
    - d. Clearances for Nonfire-Rated Doors:
      - 1) Jamb: 3 mm (1/8 inch), 3 mm (1/8 inch) bevel in 50 mm (2 inches).
      - 2) Head: 3 mm (1/8 inch).
      - 3) Bottom at Decorative Floor Finish or Covering: 13 mm (1/2 inch).
      - 4) Bottom at Threshold: 6 mm (1/4 inch) between bottom of door and top of threshold.
    - e. Clearances for Fire Rated Doors: Comply with NFPA 80 and local code.
      - 1) Bevel fire-rated doors 3 mm in 50 mm (1/8 inch in 2 inches) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
    - f. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining as specified above.
  - 3. Fire-Rated Doors:
    - a. Installation, Hardware, and Operational Characteristics: Comply with NFPA 80, NFPA 101, and manufacturer's recommendations.
    - b. Factory-Applied Labels: Remain intact where installed. Do not trim labeled hinge stile edge and top edge of door.
      - 1) Do not paint over labels.
    - c. Clearances for Fire-Rated Doors: Comply with NFPA 80 and local code.
      - 1) Lockstile Edge and Bottom Edge: May be trimmed only to extent recommended by door manufacturer.
      - 2) Bevel fire-rated doors 3 mm in 50 mm (1/8 inch in 2 inches) at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
    - d. Seal cut surfaces after fitting and machining as specified above.
- E. Hardware Installation

1. General: Install hardware in accordance with SDI 109, DHI recommended locations, and manufacturers recommendations.
2. Fastening: Furnish items of hardware with attachment screws, bolts, nuts, etc., as required to attach hardware to type of material involved and with finish to match adjacent hardware.
  - a. Make attachments to metal by template machine screws.
  - b. Through-bolt hardware such as door closers, forearm shoes of closers, holding devices, and panic hardware mounted on doors or panels.
  - c. Attach hardware to masonry or concrete with expansion bolts or similar drilled anchors to develop full strength of attached device. Set expansion anchors in solid masonry, not mortar joints.
3. Accessories:
  - a. Smoke Seals and Sound-stripping: Run full height of both jambs and full width of head.
  - b. Thresholds: Run full width of opening. Install thresholds with continuous threshold anchors cast into slab and set in sealant.

F. Door Assemblies Installation

1. Prehung Wood Doors in Frames with Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Bifold Closet Doors with Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturers recommendations.
3. Sliding Closet Doors with Hardware: Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Adjusting: At completion of job, check, adjust, and lubricate hardware as required, and leave doors and hardware in proper operating condition.
  - a. Operation: Rehang or replace doors which do not swing or operate freely.
2. Cleaning: Comply with requirements of Detailed Scope of Work.
  - a. Clean doors after installation to remove foreign matter and surface blemishes.
  - b. Scratched or Abraded Painted Surfaces: Touch-up with primer and enamel paint compatible with factory finish.

H. Protection

1. Installed Work: Protect doors from damage after installation, as recommended by door manufacturer, to ensure that doors will be without damage or deterioration at project completion.
2. Replacement: Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation.
  - a. Causes for Rejection of Wood Doors: Include warp, chips, scratches, or gouges of veneer, and finish defects.

END OF SECTION 06 48 13 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 48 16 00	06 48 13 00	Wood Doors

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 51 13 00 - PLASTIC LUMBER

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of plastic lumber. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Basic Uses

1. For both residential and municipal applications, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) products are well suited for decking, porch flooring, docks, piers, furnishings, fencing, and lawn and garden items. HDPE products are cost-effective alternatives for ground contact and animal contact, wet, and environmentally harsh conditions.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data and Certificates: For each product indicated.
  - a. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show location of paneling, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components. Include dimensioned plans and elevations.
  - a. Show details full size.
  - b. Show locations and sizes of furring and blocking, including concealed blocking specified in other Sections.
  - c. Apply WI Certified Compliance Program label to first page of Shop Drawings.
3. Samples for initial selection for high-pressure decorative laminates.
4. Samples for verification for plastic laminates, **8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) OR 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm), as directed**, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with one sample applied to core material and specified edge material applied to one edge.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer **OR** Fabricator, **as directed**.
6. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates **OR** WI Certified Compliance Program certificates, **as directed**.
7. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials from ICC-ES.

#### D. Limitations

1. Plastic lumber has less rigidity (modulus of elasticity) and greater elongation than wood lumber. Therefore, it is not recommended for use as a true structural member. Examples of applications that are inappropriate would be load-bearing walls, deck framing, and floor joists. It is recommended that an engineering study be performed prior to use of HDPE products if the application involves structural requirements. For commercial applications where the system design calls for concentrated loads, structural plastic lumber should be considered.
2. When utilizing HDPE products for decking or flooring, pay careful attention to joist spacing and joist spans. Consult manufacturer for allowable live loads, deflection limits, joist spacing, and joist spans.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Plastic lumber shall meet applicable standards established by ASTM for recycled plastic lumber and hygrothermal testing.
2. Plastic lumber shall pass testing by UL and meet flammability standards established by ASTM.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. High-density polyethylene (HDPE), UV-inhibited pigment systems, foaming compounds, and selected process additives, shall be derived from post-consumer bottle waste, such as milk and detergent bottles, then compounded into a rigid board stock material, with the resulting finished product containing minimum 75% recycled plastic by weight.
2. Plastic lumber shall have exceptional resistance to corrosive substances, oil and fuels, insects, fungi, salt spray, and other environmental stresses. They shall not absorb moisture; nor shall they rot, splinter, or crack.
3. HDPE products shall be manufactured in standard dimensional lumber sizes, and shapes.
4. Color of plastic lumber shall be selected from manufacturer's standard colors.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. HDPE products shall have the capability of being fabricated and installed with the same tools used to work wood lumber. The product shall cut and drill very cleanly, as there is no grain to split or chip. It shall not be necessary to pre-drill the plastic lumber when fastening. Stainless steel or coated decking nails and screws are recommended for use with HDPE products. Screws offer the best form of attachment; however, nails and staples may also be utilized in some applications.
2. The use of full length boards is suggested to avoid unattractive butt-to-butt joints.
3. HDPE products offer multiple deck board attachment options to accommodate expansion and contraction concerns in different climatic conditions and to address specific installation parameters. These options include:
  - a. Tongue and groove deck board attachment with toe screwing options.
  - b. Direct screw attachment with feature strip options.
  - c. Floating attachment with clip options.
  - d. Floating attachment with groove & groove options.

B. Maintenance

1. HDPE products are unaffected by most corrosive substances and will not absorb moisture. To maintain the original finish, clean the lumber with soap and water. No sealing or painting is required; as a general rule, paint will not adhere to HDPE products.
2. Clean graffiti from the plastic lumber with the use of a conventional all-purpose cleaner or petroleum-based cleaner.
3. If the skin or surface layer of an HDPE product becomes marred or blemished, sand off the top skin. The surface can also be buffed to eliminate abrasions.

END OF SECTION 06 51 13 00

## SECTION 06 51 13 00a - COMPOSITE PLASTIC LUMBER

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of composite plastic lumber. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Basic Uses

1. Composite plastic lumber or boards are well designed for deck, porch, boardwalk, dock, and similar applications. These boards may also be used for many lumber applications, where a non-load bearing member is required. This material is particularly well suited for outdoor uses due to its durability characteristics. Composite boards have many beneficial properties for decking applications, including:
  - a. Low moisture absorption.
  - b. No rotting, splitting or splintering.
  - c. Inherent termite and UV resistance.
  - d. Excellent dimensional stability and wet/dry traction.
  - e. No toxic compounds (CCA) to leach into soil or groundwater.
  - f. Workability and appearance of natural lumber products.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data and Certificates: For each product indicated.
  - a. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show location of paneling, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components. Include dimensioned plans and elevations.
  - a. Show details full size.
  - b. Show locations and sizes of furring and blocking, including concealed blocking specified in other Sections.
  - c. Apply WI Certified Compliance Program label to first page of Shop Drawings.
3. Samples for initial selection for high-pressure decorative laminates.
4. Samples for verification for plastic laminates, **8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) OR 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm), as directed**, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with one sample applied to core material and specified edge material applied to one edge.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer **OR** Fabricator, **as directed**.
6. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates **OR** WI Certified Compliance Program certificates, **as directed**.
7. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials from ICC-ES.

#### D. Limitations

1. Composite plastic lumber has less rigidity (modulus of elasticity) than wood lumber and is more flexible. Therefore, this material should not be employed as a structural component unless an engineering study indicates that its use is appropriate. These boards are not intended to be used as joists, beams, studs, columns or stringers.
2. When utilizing composite plastic lumber products for decking, pay careful attention to joist spacing and joist spans. Consult manufacturer for allowable live loads, deflection limits, joist spacing, and joist spans.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Composite plastic lumber shall meet applicable standards established by ASTM for recycled plastic lumber.



2. Plastic lumber shall meet flammability standards established by ASTM.

F. Handling

1. This material is more flexible and more dense than wood, which should be considered when handling boards.
2. Storing boards on uneven or unsupported surfaces may lead to deformation of the material. Therefore, always store boards on a flat surface, or support with dunnage on centers of 24" or less.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Composite plastic lumber products shall be composed of approximately 65% recycled wood/natural fiber and 35% recycled plastic, with selected process additives. The plastic raw material utilized in this product is recycled plastic. It shall be processed to a uniform feedstock, compounded with recovered fibers and extruded into a rigid board product.
2. Colors and sizes of composite plastic lumber shall be selected from manufacturer's standard.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Composite plastic lumber products shall have the capability of being fabricated and installed with the same tools used to work wood lumber. The product shall cut and drill very cleanly, as there is no grain to split or chip. For best results, use carbide-tipped blades and bits.
2. For optimum water drainage, allow a gap of 3/16" to 1/4" between boards.
3. Both nails and screws may be used to attach USPL composite boards; stainless steel or coated screw type fasteners are recommended.
4. #8, 2 1/2" stainless steel or ceramic-coated deck screws are recommended for 5/4x6 boards, and #10, 3" stainless steel or ceramic-coated deck screws are recommended for 2x6 boards for best results.
5. In cold weather, consider pre-drilling screw holes. Do not use fasteners within 3/4" of the edge of a board. Pneumatic nail guns work with this material.

B. Maintenance

1. Composite boards will weather to a lighter hue during the first few months; fading may take much longer in shaded areas.
2. To clean dirt and most stains from the deck boards, use common deck cleaners available in hardware stores, home centers and lumberyards. Oil stains from grills and foods may require the use of a degreasing cleaner or light sanding to remove the stain. Mold and mildew are common on many exterior surfaces, and they may form on composite plastic lumber. Use common deck washes that contain sodium hypochlorite for best cleaning results.

END OF SECTION 06 51 13 00a

## SECTION 06 51 13 00b - STRUCTURAL PLASTIC LUMBER

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of structural plastic lumber. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Basic Uses

1. Structural plastic lumber products are used in a variety of commercial and marine applications and are often the product of choice for exterior applications where resistance to salt and fresh water, marine borers, and other environmentally harsh conditions is required. Due to the unique composition of structural plastic lumber, the product can be used for a number of structural members in commercial and shoreline timberwork.
2. It is well suited for:
  - a. Dock and deck planks
  - b. Wale timbers
  - c. Sheet piling
  - d. Camels
  - e. Pilings
  - f. Fenders
  - g. Channel markers
  - h. Posts, beams, and joists

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data and Certificates: For each product indicated.
  - a. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
2. Shop Drawings: Show location of paneling, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components. Include dimensioned plans and elevations.
  - a. Show details full size.
  - b. Show locations and sizes of furring and blocking, including concealed blocking specified in other Sections.
  - c. Apply WI Certified Compliance Program label to first page of Shop Drawings.
3. Samples for initial selection for high-pressure decorative laminates.
4. Samples for verification for plastic laminates, **8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) OR 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm), as directed**, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with one sample applied to core material and specified edge material applied to one edge.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer **OR** Fabricator, **as directed**.
6. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates **OR** WI Certified Compliance Program certificates, **as directed**.
7. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials from ICC-ES.

#### D. Limitations

1. This type of plastic lumber product has a significantly higher modulus of elasticity (MOE) than conventional forms of plastic lumber. However, the MOE of structural plastic lumber is lower than wood timber in good condition; therefore, it is important to evaluate the suitability of this product for specific uses. It is recommended that an engineering study be performed prior to use of structural plastic lumber products for structural applications. Building code regulations vary by region, so all users should consult local building and safety codes prior to installation for specific requirements.



E. Quality Assurance

1. Structural plastic lumber shall meet applicable standards established by ASTM for recycled plastic lumber and hygrothermal testing.
2. Plastic lumber shall meet flammability standards established by ASTM.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Structural plastic lumber shall be a high-performance construction material consisting of a patented formula of recycled plastic, fiberglass, and selected additives. The plastic raw material utilized in structural plastic lumber is derived from post-consumer bottle waste such as milk and detergent bottles. This material is compounded into a consistent, reinforced plastic timber product using reactive compatibilizers, creating a strong and stable plastic/fiber matrix.
2. Colors, sizes, and shapes of structural plastic lumber shall be selected from manufacturer's standard.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Installation

1. Structural plastic lumber can be fabricated and installed with the same tools used to work wood lumber. The product will cut and drill very cleanly, as there is no grain to split or chip, or knots to bind tools and bend fasteners. It is reinforced with glass fibers, and precautions should be taken when fabricating this product. Maintain adequate ventilation when generating fabrication dust, and personal respiratory protection such as dust masks should be employed during fabrication, as well as safety glasses or goggles.
2. Pilings and sheet piling products can be driven with piledriving equipment such as vibratory hammers, land-based or barge-mounted drop hammers, or waterjets. For sheet piling installations, backfill soils should always be analyzed to determine that the proper amount of force would be exerted on the sheet piling system. For shoreline timberwork applications, structural plastic lumber is used with conventional hardware such as stainless or galvanized bolts, tie rods, nuts, washers, and anchor systems.
3. When utilizing structural plastic lumber products for decking, pay careful attention to joist spacing and joist spans. Consult manufacturer for allowable live loads, deflection limits, joist spacing, and joist spans.

B. Maintenance

1. Structural plastic lumber products are unaffected by most corrosive substances and will not absorb moisture. To maintain the original finish, clean the lumber with soap and water. No sealing or painting is required; as a general rule, paint will not adhere well to these products.
2. Clean graffiti from the plastic lumber with the use of a conventional all-purpose cleaner or petroleum-based cleaner. If the skin or surface layer of plastic lumber becomes marred or blemished, sand off the top skin. The surface can also be buffed to eliminate abrasions.

END OF SECTION 06 51 13 00b



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 65 00 00	06 05 23 00a	Miscellaneous Carpentry

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 74 13 00 - PULTRUDED FIBERGLASS INDUSTRIAL GRATING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for pultruded fiberglass industrial grating. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Shop drawings of all fabricated gratings and accessories in accordance with the provisions of this Section.
2. Manufacturer's shop drawings clearly showing material sizes, types, styles, part or catalog numbers, complete details for the fabrication of and erection of components including, but not limited to, location, lengths, type and sizes of fasteners, clip angles, member sizes, and connection details.
3. Manufacturer's published literature including structural design data, structural properties data, grating load/deflection tables, corrosion resistance tables, certificates of compliance, test reports as applicable, concrete anchor systems and their allowable load tables, and design calculations for systems not sized or designed in the contract documents.
4. Sample pieces of each item specified herein for acceptance as to quality and color. Sample pieces shall be manufactured by the method to be used in the work.

#### C. Quality Assurance

1. All items to be provided under this Section shall be furnished only by manufacturers having experience in the design and manufacture of similar products and systems. If requested, experience shall be demonstrated by a record of at least five (5) previous, separate, similar successful installations in the last five (5) years.

#### D. Product Delivery And Storage

1. Delivery of Materials: Manufactured materials shall be delivered in original, unbroken pallets, packages, containers, or bundles bearing the label of the manufacturer. Adhesives, resins and their catalysts and hardeners shall be crated or boxed separately and noted as such to facilitate their movement to a dry indoor storage facility.
2. Storage of Products: All materials shall be carefully handled to prevent them from abrasion, cracking, chipping, twisting, other deformations, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area and free from contact with soil and water. Store adhesives, resins and their catalysts and hardeners in dry indoor storage facilities between 70 and 85 degrees Fahrenheit (21 to 29 degrees Celsius) until they are required.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. General

1. All FRP items furnished under this Section shall be composed of fiberglass reinforcement and resin in qualities, quantities, properties, arrangements and dimensions as necessary to meet the design requirements and dimensions as specified or required.
2. Fiberglass reinforcement shall be a combination of continuous roving, continuous strand mat, and surfacing veil in sufficient quantities as needed by the application and/or physical properties required.
3. Resins shall be vinyl ester or isophthalic with chemical formulations as necessary to provide the corrosion resistance, strength and other physical properties as required.

4. All finished surfaces of FRP items and fabrications shall be smooth, resin-rich, free of voids and without dry spots, cracks, crazes or unreinforced areas. All glass fibers shall be well covered with resin to protect against their exposure due to wear or weathering.
5. All pultruded structural shapes shall be further protected from ultraviolet (UV) light with 1) integral UV inhibitors in the resin and 2) a synthetic surfacing veil to help produce a resin rich surface.
6. All FRP products shall have a tested flame spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E-84 Tunnel Test. Gratings shall also have a tested burn time of less than 30 seconds and an extent of burn rate of less than or equal to 10 millimeters per ASTM D-635.
7. All grating clips shall be manufactured of Type 316SS (stainless steel).

**B. Pultruded Grating**

1. **Manufacture:** Grating components shall be high strength and high stiffness pultruded elements having a maximum of 70% and a minimum of 60% glass content (by weight) of continuous roving and continuous strand mat fiberglass reinforcements. The finished surface of the product shall be provided with a surfacing veil to provide a resin rich surface which improves corrosion resistance and resistance to ultraviolet degradation. Bearing bars shall be interlocked and epoxied in place with a two piece cross rod system to provide a mechanical and chemical lock.
2. **Non-slip surfacing:** Grating shall be provided with a quartz grit bonded and baked to the top surface of the finished grating product.
3. **Fire rating:** Grating shall be fire retardant with a tested flame spread rating of 15 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84. Manufacturer may be required to provide certification of ASTM E84 test on grating panels from an independent testing laboratory. Certification shall be dated within the past two years. Test data shall be from full scale testing of actual production grating, of the same type and material supplied on the project. Test data performed only on the base resin shall not be acceptable.
4. **Resin system:** The resin system used in the manufacture of the grating shall be VEFR, vinyl ester or ISOFR, isophthalic. Manufacturer may be required to submit corrosion data from tests performed on actual grating products in standard chemical environments. Corrosion resistance data of the base resin from the manufacturer is not a true indicator of grating corrosion resistance and shall not be accepted.
5. **Color:** Gray or Yellow.
6. **Depth:** 2" deep load bars with a tolerance of plus or minus 1/32".
7. **Mesh Configuration:** 2" load bar spacing, 6" tie bar spacing on centers.
8. **Load/Deflection:** Grating shall meet manufacturer's published safe recommended loadings with deflection not to exceed the following:
  - a. Uniform distributed load over a 66" span: 50 pounds per square foot, with a maximum deflection of 0.13".
9. **Substitutions:** Other products of equal strength, stiffness, corrosion resistance and overall quality may be submitted with the proper supporting data to the engineer for approval.

**C. Grating Fabrication**

1. **Measurements:** Grating supplied shall meet the minimum dimensional requirements as shown or specified. The Contractor shall provide and/or verify measurements in field for work fabricated to fit field conditions as required by grating manufacturer to complete the work.
  - a. Determine correct size and locations of required holes or cutouts from field dimensions before grating fabrication.
2. **Layout:** Each grating section shall be readily removable, except where indicated on drawings. Manufacturer to provide openings and holes where located on the contract drawings. Grating supports shall be provided at openings in the grating by contractor where necessary to meet load/deflection requirements specified herein. Grating openings which fit around protrusions (pipes, cables, machinery, etc.) shall be discontinuous at approximately the centerline of opening so each section of grating is readily removable. Gratings shall be fabricated free from warps, twists, or other defects which affect appearance and serviceability.

3. Sealing: All shop fabricated grating cuts shall be coated with vinyl ester resin to provide maximum corrosion resistance. All field fabricated grating cuts shall be coated similarly by the contractor in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. Hardware: Type 316 stainless steel hold-down clips shall be provided and spaced at a maximum of four feet apart with a minimum of four per piece of grating, or as recommended by the manufacturer.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Inspection

1. Shop inspection is authorized as required by the Owner and shall be at Owner's expense. The fabricator shall give ample notice to Contractor prior to the beginning of any fabrication work so that inspection may be provided.
2. The grating shall be as free, as commercially possible, from visual defects such as foreign inclusions, delamination, blisters, resin burns, air bubbles and pits.

#### B. Installation

1. Contractor shall install gratings in accordance with manufacturer's assembly drawings. Lock grating panels securely in place with hold-down fasteners as specified herein. Field cut and drill fiberglass reinforced plastic products with carbide or diamond tipped bits and blades. Seal cut or drilled surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Follow manufacturer's instructions when cutting or drilling fiberglass products or using resin products; provide adequate ventilation.

END OF SECTION 06 74 13 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
06 74 13 00	05 53 13 00	Gratings

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 06 82 00 00 - PULTRUDED FIBERGLASS STRUCTURAL SHAPES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of pultruded fiberglass structural shapes. Products shall match existing materials and/or shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Shop drawings of all fabricated structural systems and accessories.
2. Manufacturer's shop drawings clearly showing material sizes, types, styles, part or catalog numbers, complete details for the fabrication of and erection of components including, but not limited to, location, lengths, type and sizes of fasteners, clip angles, member sizes, and connection details.
3. Manufacturer's published literature including structural design data, structural properties data, corrosion resistance tables, certificates of compliance, test reports as applicable, and design calculations for systems not sized or designed in the contract documents, sealed by a Professional Engineer.
4. Sample pieces of each item specified herein for acceptance as to quality and color. Sample pieces shall be manufactured by the method to be used in the work.

#### C. Quality Assurance

1. All items to be provided under this Section shall be furnished only by manufacturers having experience in the design and manufacture of similar products and systems. If requested, experience shall be demonstrated by a record of at least five (5) previous, separate, similar successful installations in the last five (5) years.

#### D. Product Delivery and Storage

1. Delivery of Materials: Manufactured materials shall be delivered in original, unbroken pallets, packages, containers, or bundles bearing the label of the manufacturer. Adhesives, resins and their catalysts and hardeners shall be crated or boxed separately and noted as such to facilitate their movement to a dry indoor storage facility.
2. Storage of Products: All materials shall be carefully handled to prevent them from abrasion, cracking, chipping, twisting, other deformations, and other types of damage. Store items in an enclosed area and free from contact with soil and water. Store adhesives, resins and their catalysts and hardeners in dry indoor storage facilities between 70 and 85 degrees Fahrenheit (21 to 29 degrees Celsius) until they are required.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Materials

1. All structural shapes shall be manufactured by the pultrusion process with a glass content minimum of 45%, maximum of 55% by weight for maximum sunlight and chemical resistance. The structural shapes shall be composed of fiberglass reinforcement and resin in qualities, quantities, properties, arrangements and dimensions as necessary to meet the design requirements and dimensions as specified in the Contract Documents.
2. Fiberglass reinforcement shall be a combination of continuous roving, continuous strand mat, and surfacing veil in sufficient quantities as needed by the application and/or physical properties required.
3. Resins shall be ISO, non-fire retardant isophthalic polyester; ISOFR, fire retardant isophthalic polyester or VEFR, vinyl ester, with chemical formulation necessary to provide the corrosion resistance, strength and other physical properties as required.

4. All finished surfaces of FRP items and fabrications shall be smooth, resin-rich, free of voids and without dry spots, cracks, crazes or unreinforced areas. All glass fibers shall be well covered with resin to protect against their exposure due to wear or weathering.
5. All pultruded structural shapes shall be further protected from ultraviolet (UV) attack with 1) integral UV inhibitors in the resin and 2) a synthetic surfacing veil to help produce a resin rich surface.
6. All FRP products shall have a tested flame spread rating of 25 or less per ASTM E-84 Tunnel Test.

B. Pultruded structural shapes shall have the minimum longitudinal mechanical properties listed below:

Property	ASTM Method	Value	Units
Tensile Strength	D-638	30,000 (206)	psi (MPa)
Tensile Modulus	D-638	$2.5 \times 10^6$ (17.2)	psi (GPa)
Flexural Strength	D-790	30,000 (206)	psi (MPa)
Flexural Modulus	D-790	$1.8 \times 10^6$ (12.4)	psi (GPa)
Flexural Modulus (Full Section)	N/A	$2.8 \times 10^6$ (19.3)	psi (GPa)
Short Beam Shear (Transverse)	D-2344	4,500 (31)	psi (MPa)
Shear Modulus (Transverse)	N/A	$4.5 \times 10^5$ (3.1)	psi (GPa)
Coefficient of Thermal Expansion	D-696	$8.0 \times 10^{-6}$ ( $1.4 \times 10^{-6}$ )	in/in/°F (cm/cm/°C)
Flame Spread	E-84	25 or less	N/A

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Fabrication

1. Measurements: Structural Shapes supplied shall meet the minimum dimensional requirements as shown or specified. The Contractor shall provide and/or verify measurements in field for work fabricated to fit field conditions as required by manufacturer to complete the work. Determine correct size and locations of required holes or coping from field dimensions before structural shape fabrication.
2. Sealing: All shop fabricated cuts or drilling shall be coated with vinyl ester resin to provide maximum corrosion resistance. All field fabricated cuts or drilling shall be coated similarly by the contractor in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
3. Hardware: Type 316 stainless steel connection hardware shall be provided.

#### B. Inspection

1. Shop inspection shall be authorized as required by the Owner and shall be at Owner's expense. The fabricator shall give ample notice to Contractor prior to the beginning of any fabrication work so that inspection may be provided.
2. The structural shapes shall be as free, as commercially possible, from visual defects such as foreign inclusions, delamination, blisters, resin burns, air bubbles and pits.

END OF SECTION 06 82 00 00

## SECTION 07 05 13 00 - BUILT-UP COAL-TAR ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for built-up coal-tar roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Built-up coal-tar roofing.
  - b. Vapor retarder.
  - c. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to built-up roofing.
2. Bitumen: A generic term for either asphalt or coal-tar pitch.
3. Hot Coal-Tar Pitch: Coal-tar pitch heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 25 centipoise for either mopping or mechanical application, within a range of plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)**, measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.
4. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)**, measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed built-up roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Built-up roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by built-up roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design (if built-up roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7): Provide built-up roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing (if Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard): Provide built-up roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a built-up roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
  - b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.



5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with the DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For built-up roofing. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Base flashings and built-up terminations.
  - b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
  - d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
  - a. Built-up roofing materials, including base sheet, ply sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
  - b. Roof insulation.
  - c. **3 lb (1.5 kg)** of aggregate surfacing material in gradation and color indicated.
  - d. Walkway pads.
  - e. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that built-up roofing complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of built-up roofing.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of built-up roofing, from the ICC-ES **OR** other applicable model code organization, **as directed**.
9. Maintenance Data: For built-up roofing to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for built-up roofing identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications (if Project is FM Global insured and if a certified roofing installer is required): A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by built-up roofing manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations (if required to comply with FM Approvals, UL, or another building code, or to comply with provisions of manufacturer's special warranty): Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for built-up roofing from same manufacturer as built-up roofing or approved by built-up roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical built-up roofing materials

- by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
  2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
    - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
  3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
  4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of built-up roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - a. Special warranty includes built-up roofing membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of built-up roofing.
    - b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
- 1.2 PRODUCTS
- A. Base-Sheet Materials
1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum **3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m)**.
  2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.  
**OR**  
Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.  
**OR**  
Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
- B. Roofing Membrane Plies
1. Ply Sheet: ASTM D 227, coal-tar-saturated organic felt.  
**OR**





Ply Sheet: ASTM D 4990, Type I, coal-tar-impregnated, glass-fiber felt and the physical properties of ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** VI, **as directed**.

C. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.  
**OR**  
Backer Sheet: Roofing manufacturer's standard spun-bonded, nonwoven, polyester-reinforced fabric, of standard color and weight, suitable for application method specified.
2. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, polyester-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt sheet; granular surfaced base flashing; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
3. Polyester Flashing Sheet: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-coated, polyester-reinforced fabric, base flashing, suitable for application method specified.
4. Fabric Termination: Roofing manufacturer's standard polyester cloth, suitable for application and for reinforcing top seal of base flashing.

D. Bitumen Materials

1. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.  
**OR**  
Coal-Tar Primer: ASTM D 43.
2. Coal-Tar Pitch: ASTM D 450, Type I.
3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** IV **OR** III or IV as recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer for application, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.

E. Auxiliary Built-Up Roofing Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with built-up roofing.
  - a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - 4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 5) Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
    - 7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - 8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - 9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with built-up base flashings.
3. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing manufacturer for application.
4. SBS-Modified Asphalt Flashing Cement: Roofing manufacturer's standard, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
5. Coal-Tar Roofing Cement: ASTM D 5643, coal-tar-based roofing cement, asbestos free.
6. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening built-up roofing components

- to substrate, tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing manufacturer.
7. Metal Flashing Sheet: Metal flashing sheet is specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
  8. Metal Termination Bars: Roofing manufacturer's standard predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately **1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm)** thick; with anchors.
  9. Roof Coatings: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.  
**OR**  
Roof Coatings: ASTM D 6083, acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces.  
a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.
  10. Aggregate Surfacing: ASTM D 1863, No. 6 or No. 67, clean, dry, opaque, water-worn gravel or crushed stone, free of sharp edges **OR** crushed slag, free of sharp edges, **as directed**.
  11. Walkway Pads: Mineral-granule-surfaced, reinforced asphaltic composition **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted solid-rubber, surface-textured, **as directed**, slip-resisting pads, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to built-up roofing manufacturer, **3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, minimum.
  12. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide miscellaneous accessories recommended by built-up roofing manufacturer.
- F. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
  2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.
- G. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, **6 mils (0.15 mm)** thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of **0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**.  
a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.  
**OR**  
Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
  2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper/polyethylene laminate, two layers, reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, laminated and edge reinforced, with maximum permeance rating of **0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)** and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
  3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of **40-mil- (1.0-mm-)** thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**; cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: **30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-)** thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s**



x sq. m); cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

4. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

#### H. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
3. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
  - a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  - b. Type V, OSB facer, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.
  - c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick.
4. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
5. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
6. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
7. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of **1/8 inch per 12 inches (1:96) OR 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)**, **as directed**, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

#### I. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with built-up roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate and acceptable to roofing manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
6. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.  
**OR**  
Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
7. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Carpentry", **as directed**.
8. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.  
**OR**  
Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
9. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.  
**OR**

Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.

**OR**

Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, as directed, thick, factory primed, as directed.

**OR**

Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, as directed, thick.

10. Substrate Joint Tape: **6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-)** wide, coated, glass fiber.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
  - a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
  - d. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
  - e. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - f. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - 1) Test for moisture by pouring **1 pint (0.5 L)** of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
  - g. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt **OR** coal-tar, as directed, primer at a rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

#### C. Substrate Board Installation

1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
    - a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
- OR**
- Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to built-up roofing manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Vapor-Retarder Installation

1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  - a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
  - a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.  
**OR**  
Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
4. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt **19 inches (483 mm)** over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.
5. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into built-up roofing system.

E. Insulation Installation

1. Comply with built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
2. Install one lapped base sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten **4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-)** width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck, spaced **16 feet (4.88 m)** apart for roof slopes greater than **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) OR 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24)**, **as directed**.
4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of built-up roofing with vertical surfaces or angle changes greater than 45 degrees.
5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
  - a. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is **2.7 inches (68 mm)** or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction.
  - a. Where installing composite and noncomposite board insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
  - a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
  - b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.  
**OR**



Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

**OR**

Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - b. If fastening is calculated from ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - c. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.

**OR**

Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

**OR**

Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
13. If cover boards will be field installed over roof insulation and immediately below built-up roofing, install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing manufacturer.
  - a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

**OR**

Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

  - b. Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside and immediately bond cover board to substrate.

#### F. Built-Up Roofing Installation, General

1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
  - a. Install roofing system BU-3 **OR 4 OR 5, as directed**, -N **OR I OR C, as directed**, -A-A, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and requirements in this Section.
2. For roofing that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install built-up roofing membrane according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing" and as follows:
  - a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR I (insulated) OR C (concrete or nonnailable), as directed**.
  - b. Base Sheet: 1 **OR 1**, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
  - c. Number of Organic Felt Ply Sheets: 2 **OR 3 OR 4, as directed**.
  - d. Number of Glass Fiber Ply Sheets: 1, top ply **OR 2 OR 3 OR 4, as directed**.
  - e. Surfacing Type: A (aggregate).

3. Start installation of built-up roofing in presence of manufacturer's technical personnel.
  4. Where roof slope exceeds **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48) OR 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24)**, **as directed**, install built-up roofing sheets parallel with slope.
    - a. Backnail built-up roofing sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
  6. Coordinate installation of built-up roofing so insulation and other components of built-up roofing not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
    - a. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed built-up roofing sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt with joints and edges sealed.
    - b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
    - c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
  7. Bitumen Heating: Do not raise bitumen temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed bitumen manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during bitumen heating. Do not heat bitumen within **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of flash point. Discard bitumen maintained for more than 4 hours at a temperature exceeding **325 deg F (163 deg C)** for coal-tar pitch or finished blowing temperature for roofing asphalt, **as directed**.
    - a. Mopping Weights: For interply and other moppings, unless otherwise indicated, apply solid moppings of hot coal-tar pitch between ply sheets at a minimum rate of **20 lb/100 sq. ft. (1 kg/sq. m)**.
  8. SEBS-Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  9. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent bitumen and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging built-up roofing components or adjacent building construction.
- G. Roofing Membrane Installation
1. If sheathing paper is required over wood decks by built-up roofing manufacturer, loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  2. Install lapped base sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
    - a. Mechanically fasten to substrate, for nailable substrate.  
**OR**  
Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.  
**OR**  
Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**, for nonnailable or insulated substrates.
  3. Monolithic Membrane: Install two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, ply sheets starting at low point of roofing system. Align ply sheets without stretching. Shingle side laps of ply sheets uniformly to achieve required number of plies throughout thickness of roofing membrane. Shingle in direction to shed water. Extend ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants. Embed each ply sheet in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch to form a uniform membrane without ply sheets touching.  
**OR**  
Composite Membrane: Install two **OR** three **OR** four, **as directed**, organic felt ply sheets starting at low point of roofing system. Align organic felt ply sheets without stretching. Shingle side laps of organic felt ply sheets uniformly to achieve required number of plies throughout thickness of roofing membrane. Shingle in direction to shed water.
    - a. Install finish layer of one lapped coal-tar, glass-fiber ply sheet course over shingled organic felt ply sheets, starting at low point of built-up roofing. Offset laps from laps of preceding

- ply sheets and align coal-tar, glass-fiber ply sheet without stretching. Lap in direction to shed water.
- b. Extend ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
  - c. Embed each ply sheet in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch applied at rate required by built-up roofing manufacturer, to form a uniform membrane without ply sheets touching.
4. If delayed flood coating and aggregate surfacing of coal-tar, glass-fiber membrane or finish layer are permitted, glaze-coat roofing membrane surface with hot coal-tar pitch applied at a rate of **10 to 15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.5 to 0.75 kg/sq. m)** if aggregate surfacing is not applied immediately.
  5. Aggregate Surfacing: If surfacing roofing membrane with aggregate, promptly after installing and testing roofing membrane, base flashing, and stripping, flood-coat roof surface with **70 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.5 kg/sq. m)** of hot coal-tar pitch. While flood coat is hot and fluid, cast the following average weight of aggregate in a uniform course:
    - a. Aggregate Weight: **400 lb/100 sq. ft. (20 kg/sq. m)** for gravel or crushed stone or **300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m)** for slag.
    - b. Sweep loose aggregate from roof surface and apply another flood coat of not less than **85 lb/100 sq. ft. (4.15 kg/sq. m)** of hot coal-tar pitch. While flood coat is hot and fluid, apply a uniform course of aggregate at the following rate. Sweep away loose aggregate and fully embed aggregate by lightly rolling into finished roof surface.
      - 1) Aggregate Weight: **300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m)** for gravel or crushed stone **200 lb/100 sq. ft. (10 kg/sq. m)** for slag, average.
  6. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Sweep away loose aggregate surfacing and set walkway pads in additional flood coat of hot coal-tar pitch.
- H. Flashing And Stripping Installation
1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
    - a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by built-up roofing manufacturer.
    - b. Backer Sheet Application: Install single backer sheet and adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** asphalt roofing cement **OR** SBS-modified asphalt roofing cement **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Backer Sheet Application: Install two **OR** three, **as directed**, backer sheets and adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
    - c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than **425 deg F (218 deg C)**. Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in SBS-modified asphalt roofing cement **OR** asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
  2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above built-up roofing and **4 inches (100 mm)** onto field of built-up roofing.
  3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
    - a. Securely fasten top termination of base flashing with continuous metal termination bar anchored into substrate.
    - b. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
  4. Apply roof coatings to smooth base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.
  5. Install stripping, according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, where metal flanges and edgings are set on built-up roofing.
    - a. Flashing-Sheet Stripping: Install flashing-sheet stripping in a cold-applied adhesive or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch and extend onto roofing membrane.



**OR**

Built-up Stripping: Install stripping of not less than two roofing membrane ply sheets, setting each ply in a continuous coal-tar roofing cement or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch, and extend onto roofing membrane **4 inches (100 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.

6. Roof Drains: Set **30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm)** metal flashing in bed of asphalt roofing cement on completed built-up roofing. Cover metal flashing with built-up roofing cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** **OR 6 inches (150 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of built-up roofing. Clamp built-up roofing, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.

- a. Flashing-Sheet Stripping: Install flashing-sheet stripping in cold-applied adhesive or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch and extend onto roofing membrane.

**OR**

Built-up Stripping: Install stripping of not less than 2 roofing membrane ply sheets, setting each ply in a continuous coating of coal-tar roofing cement or in a solid mopping of hot coal-tar pitch, and extend onto roofing membrane **4 inches (100 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.

## I. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Perform roof tests and inspections, observe flood tests, and prepare test reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of built-up roofing as follows:
  - a. Approximate quantities of components within built-up roofing will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
  - b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Built-up Roofing."
  - c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to built-up roofing manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Flood Testing: Flood test each roofing membrane area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing roofing and flashing but before overlying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
  - a. Flood to an average depth of **2-1/2 inches (65 mm)** with a minimum depth of **1 inch (25 mm)** and not exceeding a depth of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Maintain **2 inches (50 mm)** of clearance from top of base flashing.
  - b. Flood each area for **24 OR 48 OR 72, as directed**, hours.
  - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are watertight.
4. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

## J. Protecting And Cleaning

1. Protect built-up roofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove built-up roofing that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.



END OF SECTION 07 05 13 00

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 05 13 00a - CSPE MEMBRANE ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for chlorosulfonate-polyethylene (CSPE) roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Adhered CSPE membrane roofing system.
  - b. Mechanically fastened CSPE membrane roofing system.
  - c. Loosely laid and ballasted CSPE membrane roofing system.
  - d. Vapor retarder.
  - e. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
4. FM Approvals Listing, **as directed**: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120 **OR** Class 1A-135 **OR** Class 1A-150 **OR** Class 1A-165, **as directed**.
  - b. Hail Resistance: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 **OR** 29, **as directed**, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
6. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low **OR** steep, **as directed**, slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.



2. LEED Submittals:
    - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, documentation indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
    - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
  3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  4. Samples: For each product included in the roofing system.
  5. Research/evaluation reports.
  6. Field quality-control reports.
  7. Maintenance data.
  8. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
  3. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  4. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  5. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
  2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
    - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
  3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
  4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. CSPE Membrane Roofing

1. CSPE: ASTM D 5019, Type 1, Grade 2, **45-mil- (1.1-mm-)** thick, reinforced, flexible uncured sheet formed from CSPE, and as follows:
  - a. Exposed Face Color: White **OR** Blue **OR** Light gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

### B. Auxiliary Membrane Roofing Materials

1. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
  - a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - 4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
    - 6) Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
    - 7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - 8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - 9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
    - 10) Other Adhesives and Sealants: 250 g/L.
2. Sheet Flashing: **45-mil- (1.1-mm-)** thick, reinforced and **55-mil- (1.4-mm-)** thick, non-reinforced CSPE as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use.
3. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based, **as directed**.
4. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
5. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately **1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm)** thick; with anchors.
6. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately **1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick (25 mm wide by 1.3 mm thick)**, prepunched.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
8. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

### C. Substrate Boards

1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

### D. Vapor Retarder



1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, **6 mils (0.15 mm)** thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of **0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**.
  - a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
  - b. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn with maximum permeance rating of **0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)** and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

#### E. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by CSPE membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, **1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m)** OR Type X, **1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, **1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m)** OR Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m)** OR Type IX, **1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, **1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m)** OR Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m)** OR Type IX, **1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
  - a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  - OR**
  - Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 OR Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board on one major surface, as indicated below by type, and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other.
  - a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  - b. Type V, OSB facer, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.
  - c. Type VII, glass mat faced gypsum board facer, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)** unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

#### F. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphalt, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
  4. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one- or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
  5. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
  6. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
 Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
 Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, as directed, thick, factory primed, as directed.  
**OR**  
 Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, as directed, thick.
  7. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.
- G. Asphalt Materials
1. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or Type IV **OR** ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified, as directed.
  2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
- H. Aggregate Ballast (for loosely laid and aggregate-ballasted installations)
1. Aggregate Ballast: Provide aggregate ballast that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation, of the following type and size:
    - a. Aggregate Type: Smooth, washed, riverbed gravel or other acceptable smooth-faced stone **OR** Crushed gravel or crushed stone, as directed.
    - b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from **3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm)**.  
**OR**  
 Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from **1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm)**.  
**OR**  
 Size: ASTM D 448, Size 3, ranging in size from **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)**.
- I. Roof Pavers
1. Lightweight Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled; and as follows:
    - a. Size: 8 by 16 inches (200 by 400 mm) **OR** 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 12 by 16-1/2 inches (300 by 420 mm) **OR** 12 by 18 inches (300 by 450 mm), as directed.
    - b. Weight: At least 10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m) but not exceeding 18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m).
    - c. Compressive Strength: **2500 psi (17 MPa) OR 5000 psi (34 MPa)**, as directed, minimum.
    - d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Heavyweight Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, as directed, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:



- a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), as directed.** Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in length, height, and thickness.
- b. Weight: **18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) OR 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), as directed.**
- c. Compressive Strength: **7500 psi (52 MPa) OR 6500 psi (45 MPa), as directed,** minimum.
- d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

#### J. Walkways

1. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads **OR** rolls, **as directed**, approximately **3/16 inch (5 mm)** thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
2. Walkway Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm), as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
  - a. Size: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) **OR** 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) **OR 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm), as directed.** Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in length, height, and thickness.
  - b. Weight: **18 lb/sq. ft. (90 kg/sq. m) OR 22 lb/sq. ft. (110 kg/sq. m), as directed.**
  - c. Compressive Strength: **7500 psi (52 MPa) OR 6500 psi (45 MPa), as directed,** minimum.
  - d. Colors and Textures: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
4. Install acoustical roof deck rib insulation strips, specified in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking", according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions, immediately before installation of overlying construction and to remain dry.

#### B. Substrate Board

1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  - a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

**OR**

Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

#### C. Vapor-Retarder Installation

1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  - a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed.**

2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
  - a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.

**OR**

Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
3. Built-Up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt **19 inches (483 mm)** over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.
4. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

D. Insulation Installation

1. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
2. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
3. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
4. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is **2.7 inches (68 mm)** or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction.
  - a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
5. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
  - a. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
  - a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
  - b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.
  - c. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

**OR**

Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
8. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

**OR**

Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
9. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.



**OR**

Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

- b. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.

**OR**

Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

**OR**

Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

- 10. Loosely Laid Insulation: Loosely lay insulation units over substrate.
- 11. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**.
  - a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
- OR**
- 12. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
- 12. Install slip sheet over insulation **OR** cover board, **as directed**, and immediately beneath membrane roofing.

#### E. Adhered Membrane Roofing Installation

- 1. Adhere membrane **OR** fabric-backed membrane, **as directed**, roofing over area to receive roofing according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll membrane roofing and allow to relax before installing.
- 2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- 3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- 4. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
- 5. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- 6. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- 7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun. Weld seams as follows:
  - a. Weld Method: Hot air **OR** Solvent, **as directed**.
  - b. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
  - c. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
  - d. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
- 8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
- 9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.

#### F. Mechanically Fastened Membrane Roofing Installation

- 1. Mechanically fasten membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. For in-splice attachment, install membranes roofing with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.

2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
  3. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
  4. Mechanically fasten or adhere membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
  5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
  6. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of CSPE sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within membrane seam and mechanically fasten CSPE sheet to roof deck.
  7. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun. Weld seams as follows:
    - a. Weld Method: Hot air **OR** Solvent, **as directed**.
    - b. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
    - c. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
    - d. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
  8. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
  9. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition and to not void warranty for existing membrane roofing system.
- G. Loosely Laid And Ballasted Membrane Roofing Installation
1. Loosely lay membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Comply with requirements in SPRI RP-4 for System 1 **OR** System 2 **OR** System 3, **as directed**.
  2. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
  3. Accurately align membrane roofing, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
  4. Mechanically fasten or adhere perimeter of membrane roofing according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.  
**OR**  
Mechanically fasten **OR** adhere, **as directed**, membrane roofing at corners, perimeters, and transitions according to requirements in SPRI RP-4.
    - a. At corners and perimeters, omit aggregate ballast leaving membrane roofing exposed.
    - b. At corners and perimeters, adhere a second layer of membrane roofing.
  5. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  6. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun. Weld seams as follows:
    - a. Weld Method: Hot air **OR** Solvent, **as directed**.
    - b. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
    - c. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
    - d. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.
  7. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.
  8. Install membrane roofing and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing.
  9. Install protection mat over membrane roofing, overlapping a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**. Install an additional protection mat layer at projections, pipes, vents, and drains, overlapping a minimum of **12 inches (300 mm)**.

10. Aggregate Ballast: Apply uniformly over membrane roofing at the rate required by membrane roofing system manufacturer, but not less than the following, spreading with care to minimize possibility of damage to membrane roofing system. Lay ballast as membrane roofing is installed, leaving membrane roofing ballasted at the end of the workday.
    - a. Ballast Weight: Size 4 aggregate, **10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).**  
**OR**  
Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, **13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m)**, at corners and perimeter; Size 4 aggregate, **10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m)**, elsewhere.  
**OR**  
Ballast Weight: Size 2 aggregate, **13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).**
  11. Roof-Paver Ballast: Install lightweight **OR** heavyweight, **as directed**, roof-paver ballast according to manufacturer's written instructions.  
**OR**  
Roof-Paver and Aggregate Ballast: Install heavyweight roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions on roof corners and perimeter.
    - a. Install Size 4 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of **10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m).**  
**OR**  
Install Size 2 aggregate ballast elsewhere on roofing at a minimum rate of **13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m).**
- H. Base Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
  3. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
  4. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation. Complete welding of seams within 24 hours of exposing CSPE sheet or before curing of CSPE sheet has begun.
  5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars, **as directed**.
- I. Walkway Installation
1. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Roof-Paver Walkways: Install walkway roof pavers according to manufacturer's written instructions in locations indicated, to form walkways. Leave **3 inches (75 mm)** of space between adjacent roof pavers.
- J. Field Quality Control
1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform inspections.
  2. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  3. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  4. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- K. Protecting And Cleaning
1. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for

- deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
  3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 05 13 00a

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



## SECTION 07 05 13 00b - APP-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for atactic-polypropylene (APP) modified bituminous membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Atactic-polypropylene (APP) modified bituminous membrane roofing.
  - b. Hybrid roofing system that combines built-up ply sheets with APP-modified bituminous membrane.
  - c. Vapor retarder.
  - d. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
  - b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.



**OR**

Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

**OR**

Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to Cool Roof Rating Council's CRRC-1.

**E. Submittals**

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
  - d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
  - a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
  - b. Roof insulation.
  - c. Walkway pads or rolls.
  - d. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES **OR** applicable model code organization, **as directed**.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

**F. Quality Assurance**

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
  - b. Warranty Period: **10 OR 15 OR 20 OR 25 OR 30, as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. APP-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials

1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.  
**OR**  
Granule-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Material: Mineral ceramic coated **OR** slate, **as directed**.
  - b. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

B. Base-Sheet Materials

1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum **3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m)**.
2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified, asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.



- a. Weight: **25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m)** **OR** **40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m)** **OR** **50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m)** **OR** **60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m)** **OR** **75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m)**, **as directed**, minimum.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

C. Base-Ply Sheet Materials

1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

D. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

2. Smooth-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

**OR**

Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

- a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

E. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
- a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
- 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
  - 2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
  - 3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
  - 4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
  - 5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.

- 6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
  - 7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
  - 8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  - 9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
  2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
  3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
  4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
  5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.
  6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
  7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
  8. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
  9. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated **OR** Slate, **as directed**, roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing **No. 8 (2.36-mm)** sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on **No. 40 (0.425-mm)** sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
  10. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
- F. Substrate Boards
1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
  2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.
- G. Vapor Retarder
1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, **6 mils (0.15 mm)** thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of **0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**.
    - a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.  
**OR**  
Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
  2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, with maximum permeance rating of **0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)** and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
  3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of **40-mil- (1.0-mm-)** thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating

of **0.1 perm** (**6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m**); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

**OR**

Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: **30- to 40-mil-** (**0.76- to 1.0-mm-**) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm** (**6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m**); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.

4. Glass-Fiber Felt: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

**H. Roof Insulation**

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, **1.6-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type X, **1.3-lb/cu. ft. (21-kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, **1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type IX, **1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, **1.35-lb/cu. ft. (22-kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft. (18-kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type IX, **1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
  - a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.

**OR**

Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board, as indicated below by type, on one major surface and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
  - a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  - b. Type V, OSB facer, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.
  - c. Type VII, glass-mat-faced gypsum board facer, **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of **1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48)** unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

**I. Insulation Accessories**

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards, **as directed**, to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.



**OR**

Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

**OR**

Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

4. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.

**OR**

Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.

5. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.

**OR**

Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.

7. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.

**OR**

Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.

**OR**

Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.

**OR**

Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.

8. Substrate Joint Tape: **6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-)** wide, coated, glass-fiber joint tape.

J. Coating Materials

1. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified, fibered **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, filled or fibered, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, asbestos free.
2. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, nonfibered.
3. Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** Type III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.
4. Roof Coating: Acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces and complying with ASTM D 6083.
- a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.

K. Walkways

1. Walkway Pads: Reinforced asphaltic composition pads with slip-resisting mineral-granule surface **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted rubber pads with slip-resisting textured surface, **as directed**, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer, **3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, minimum.
2. Walkway Backer Strips: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
3. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
- a. Granule Material: Mineral ceramic coated **OR** slate, **as directed**.
- b. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
  - a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".
  - d. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - e. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - 1) Test for moisture by pouring **1 pint (0.5 L)** of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
  - f. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
  - g. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

#### C. Substrate Board Installation

1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  - a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.

**OR**

Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

#### D. Vapor-Retarder Installation

1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  - a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:

- a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.  
**OR**  
Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
  3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
  4. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt **19 inches (483 mm)** over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.
  5. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.
- E. Insulation Installation
1. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
  2. If mechanically fastening base sheet to substrate before adhering first layer of insulation, install one lapped base-sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten **4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-)** width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck at the following spacing:
    - a. **16 feet (4.88 m)** apart for roof slopes steeper than **1 inch per 12 inches (1:12)** but less than **3 inches per 12 inches (3:12)**.
    - b. **48 inches (1220 mm)** apart for roof slopes steeper than **3 inches per 12 inches (3:12)**.
  4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of roofing membrane system with vertical surfaces or angle changes more than 45 degrees.
  5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
  6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
    - a. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is **2.7 inches (68 mm)** or more, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction.
    - a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
  8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
  9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
  10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
    - a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
    - b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.  
**OR**  
Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.  
**OR**  
Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.





- a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored-design uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
- a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - b. If fastening is calculated from ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored-design uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    - 1) Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.  
**OR**  
Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.  
**OR**  
Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  - c. If cover boards will be field installed over roof insulation and immediately below roofing membrane, install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction from joints of insulation below. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing system manufacturer.
    - 1) Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.  
**OR**  
Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    - 2) Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside, and immediately bond cover board to substrate.

F. Roofing Membrane Installation, General

1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - a. Install roofing system MBA **OR** MBAH, **as directed**, -3 **OR** 4, **as directed**, -N **OR** I **OR** C, **as directed**, -T **OR** L, **as directed**, -S **OR** M, **as directed**, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and to requirements in this Section.
2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
  - a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR** I (insulated) **OR** C (concrete or nonnailable), **as directed**.
  - b. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
  - c. Base Sheet: One **OR** One, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
  - d. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
  - e. Number of APP-Modified Asphalt Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
  - f. Surfacing Type: S (smooth) **OR** M (mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet), **as directed**.

3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
  4. Where roof slope exceeds **1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24) OR 3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18)**, **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
    - a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
  6. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
    - a. At end of each day's work, provide tie-offs to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
    - b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
    - c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
  7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.

**OR**

Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.
- G. Base-Sheet Installation
1. If sheathing paper is required over wood decks by roofing system manufacturer, loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  2. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
    - a. Mechanically fasten to substrate, for nailable substrate.

**OR**

Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.

**OR**

Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**, for nonnailable or insulated substrates.
- H. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
    - a. Shingle side laps of glass-fiber base-ply sheets uniformly to ensure that required number of glass-fiber base-ply sheets covers substrate at any point. Shingle in direction to shed water.
    - b. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.
- I. APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation
1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane cap sheet **OR** sheet and cap sheet, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants, installing as follows:



- a. Adhere to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.  
**OR**  
Torch apply to substrate.
- b. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
- 2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
  - a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
  - b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
- 3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.

#### J. Flashing And Stripping Installation

- 1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof; secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, and as follows:
  - a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
  - b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
  - c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
- 2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above roofing membrane and **4 inches (100 mm)** onto field of roofing membrane.
- 3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
  - a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
- 4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- 5. Roof Drains: Set **30-by-30-inch- (760-by-760-mm-)** square metal flashing in bed of roofing-manufacturer-approved asphaltic adhesive on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** **OR 6 inches (150 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
  - a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

#### K. Coating Installation

- 1. Apply coating to roofing membrane **OR** roofing membrane and base flashings, **as directed**, according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method to provide a dry film thickness of not less than **20 mils (0.5 mm)**, **as directed**.

#### L. Walkway Installation

- 1. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive, using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Walkway Strips: Install walkway cap sheet **OR** backer and cap sheet, **as directed**, strips over roofing membrane using same application method as used for roofing membrane cap sheet.

M. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
  - a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
  - b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - a. Notify the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

N. Protecting And Cleaning

1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 05 13 00b

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 05 13 00c - SBS-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) modified bituminous membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) modified bituminous membrane roofing.
  - b. Hybrid roofing system that combines built-up ply sheets with SBS-modified bituminous membrane roofing.
  - c. Vapor retarder.
  - d. Roof insulation.
2. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking".

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)**, measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Corner Uplift Pressure: <Insert **lbf/sq. ft. (kPa/sq. m)**>.
  - b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: <Insert **lbf/sq. ft. (kPa/sq. m)**>.
  - c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: <Insert **lbf/sq. ft. (kPa/sq. m)**>.
4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed**.
  - b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed**.
5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.





6. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
7. Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to Cool Roof Rating Council's CRRC-1.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
  - d. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
4. Samples: For the following products:
  - a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
  - b. Roof insulation.
  - c. **3 lb (1.5 kg)** of aggregate surfacing material in gradation and color indicated.
  - d. Walkway pads or rolls.
  - e. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES **OR** applicable model code organization, **as directed**.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

H. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

I. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
  - b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15 **OR** 20 **OR** 25 **OR** 30, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. SBS-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials

1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.  
**OR**  
Granule-Surface Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
3. Metal-Foil-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer-coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.





B. Base-Sheet Materials

1. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum **3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m)**.
2. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified, asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
  - a. Weight: **25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) OR 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) OR 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) OR 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m) OR 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), as directed**, minimum.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

C. Base-Ply Sheet Materials

1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

D. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

2. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

**OR**

Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

- a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer-coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
3. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

E. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
  - a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

- b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
      - 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      - 2) Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
      - 3) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
      - 4) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
      - 5) Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
      - 6) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
      - 7) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
      - 8) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
      - 9) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
    2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
    3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
    4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
    5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.
    6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
    7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
    8. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
    9. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing **No. 8 (2.36-mm)** sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on **No. 40 (0.425-mm)** sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
    10. Aggregate Surfacing: ASTM D 1863, No. 6 or No. 67, clean, dry, opaque, water-worn gravel or crushed stone, free of sharp edges **OR** crushed slag, free of sharp edges, **as directed**.
    11. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
  - F. Substrate Boards
    1. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board, **5/8 inch (16 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Substrate Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board, **3/4 inch (19 mm) OR 1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, seal coated.
    2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.
  - G. Vapor Retarder
    1. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, **6 mils (0.15 mm)** thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of **0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m)**.

- a. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

**OR**

Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.

2. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, with maximum permeance rating of **0.50 perm** (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive, **as directed**.
3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of **40-mil-** (1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm** (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: **30- to 40-mil-** (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of **0.1 perm** (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
4. Glass-Fiber Felt: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

#### H. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, **1.6-lb/cu. ft.** (26-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type X, **1.3-lb/cu. ft.** (21-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, square edged.
3. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, **1.35-lb/cu. ft.** (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft.** (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, **1.8-lb/cu. ft.** (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density.
4. Composite Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type II, **1.35-lb/cu. ft.** (22-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type VIII, **1.15-lb/cu. ft.** (18-kg/cu. m) **OR** Type IX, **1.8-lb/cu. ft.** (29-kg/cu. m), **as directed**, minimum density, with factory-applied facings, as follows:
  - a. Facer: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, asphalt coated, **1/2 inch** (13 mm) thick.  
**OR**  
Facer: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch** (11 mm) thick.
5. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2 **OR** Type II, Class I, Grade 3, **as directed**, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
6. Composite Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, with factory-applied facing board, as indicated below by type, on one major surface and felt or glass-fiber mat facer on the other surface.
  - a. Type IV, cellulosic-fiber-insulating-board facer, Grade 2, **1/2 inch** (13 mm) thick.
  - b. Type V, OSB facer, **7/16 inch** (11 mm) thick.
  - c. Type VII, glass-mat-faced gypsum board facer, **1/4 inch** (6 mm) thick.
7. Perlite Board Insulation: ASTM C 728, rigid, mineral-aggregate thermal insulation board composed of expanded perlite, cellulosic fibers, binders, and waterproofing agents with top surface seal coated.
8. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, fibrous-felted, rigid insulation boards of wood fiber or other cellulosic-fiber and water-resistant binders, asphalt impregnated, chemically treated for deterioration.
9. Cellular-Glass Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV, rigid, cellular-glass thermal board insulation faced with manufacturer's standard kraft-paper sheets.
10. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of **1/4 inch per 12 inches** (1:48) unless otherwise indicated.
11. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

I. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
3. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.  
**OR**  
Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.  
**OR**  
Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
4. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.  
**OR**  
Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
5. Wood Nailer Strips: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" OR "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
6. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.  
**OR**  
Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
7. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Cover Board: DOC PS 2, Exposure 1, OSB, **7/16 inch (11 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, factory primed, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
8. Substrate Joint Tape: **6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-)** wide, coated, glass-fiber joint tape.

J. Walkways

1. Walkway Pads: Reinforced asphaltic composition pads with slip-resisting mineral-granule surface **OR** Polymer-modified, reconstituted rubber pads with slip-resisting textured surface, **as directed**, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer, **3/8 inch (10 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, thick, minimum.
2. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:



- a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - c. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 5 Section "Steel Deck."
  - d. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - e. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - 1) Test for moisture by pouring **1 pint (0.5 L)** of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
  - f. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
  - g. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

**B. Preparation**

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
4. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

**C. Substrate Board Installation**

1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  - a. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.  
**OR**  
Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

**D. Vapor-Retarder Installation**

1. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  - a. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape **OR** adhesive, **as directed**.
2. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
  - a. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.  
**OR**  
Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.



3. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of **3-1/2 inches (90 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
4. Built-up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt **19 inches (483 mm)** over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.
5. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

E. Insulation Installation

1. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
2. Install one lapped base-sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Nailer Strips: Mechanically fasten **4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-)** width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck at the following spacing:
  - a. **16 feet (4.88 m)** apart for roof slopes steeper than **1 inch per 12 inches (1:12)** but less than **3 inches per 12 inches (3:12)**.
  - b. **48 inches (1220 mm)** apart for roof slopes steeper than **3 inches per 12 inches (3:12)**.
4. Insulation Cant Strips: Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of roofing membrane system with vertical surfaces or angle changes more than 45 degrees.
5. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
6. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with insulation.
  - a. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch (6 mm)** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
7. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is **2.7 inches (68 mm)** or more, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction.
  - a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
8. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
9. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
10. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
  - a. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.
  - b. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.

**OR**

Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

**OR**

Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
11. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  - a. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  - b. If number of fasteners will be based on ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored design uplift pressure, fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.



12. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
  13. If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements are proposed as a performance standard, fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  14. If fastening is calculated from ASCE/SEI 7's uplift pressure or SPRI's factored design uplift pressure, fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    - a. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of equiviscous temperature.  
**OR**  
Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.  
**OR**  
Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- F. If cover boards will be field installed over roof insulation and immediately below roofing membrane, install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction from joints of insulation below. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck, **as directed**. Tape joints if required by roofing system manufacturer.
- a. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.  
**OR**  
Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - b. Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside, and immediately bond cover board to substrate.
- G. Roofing Membrane Installation, General
1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
    - a. Install roofing system MBS **OR** MBSH, **as directed**, -2 **OR** 3 **OR** 4, **as directed**, -N **OR** I **OR** C, **as directed**, -T **OR** M **OR** L, **as directed**, -A **OR** M **OR** F, **as directed**, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and to requirements in this Section.
  2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
    - a. Deck Type: N (nailable) **OR** I (insulated) **OR** C (concrete or nonnailable), **as directed**.
    - b. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** M (mopped) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
    - c. Base Sheet: One **OR** One, installed over sheathing paper, **as directed**.
    - d. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
    - e. Number of SBS-Modified Asphalt Sheets: One **OR** Two, **as directed**.
    - f. Surfacing Type: A (aggregate) **OR** M (mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet) **OR** F (foil-surfaced cap sheet), **as directed**.
  3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
  4. Where roof slope exceeds **1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24)** **OR** **3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18)**, **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.

- a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips **OR** substrate, **as directed**, according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
  6. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
    - a. At end of each day's work, provide tie-offs to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
    - b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
    - c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
  7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.  
**OR**  
Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.
- H. Base-Sheet Installation
  1. Loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** and **6 inches (150 mm)**, respectively.
  2. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
    - a. Mechanically fasten to substrate, for nailable substrate.  
**OR**  
Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.  
**OR**  
Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**, for nonnailable or insulated substrates.
- I. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
  1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
    - a. Shingle side laps of glass-fiber base-ply sheets uniformly to ensure that required number of glass-fiber base-ply sheets covers substrate at any point. Shingle in direction to shed water.
    - b. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.
- J. SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation
  1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane cap sheet **OR** sheet and cap sheet, **as directed**, according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants, installing as follows:
    - a. Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than **425 deg F (218 deg C)**.  
**OR**  
Adhere to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.  
**OR**



- Torch apply to substrate.
- b. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
- 2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
  - a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
  - b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
- 3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.
- 4. Aggregate Surfacing: Promptly after installing and testing roofing membrane, base flashing, and stripping, flood-coat roof surface with **60 lb/100 sq. ft. (3 kg/sq. m)** of hot roofing asphalt. While flood coat is hot and fluid, cast the following average weight of aggregate in a uniform course:
  - a. Aggregate Weight: **400 lb/100 sq. ft. (20 kg/sq. m)** for gravel or crushed stone or **300 lb/100 sq. ft. (15 kg/sq. m)** for slag.

#### K. Flashing And Stripping Installation

- 1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof; secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, and as follows:
  - a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
  - b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
  - c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than **425 deg F (218 deg C)**. Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
- 2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above roofing membrane and **4 inches (100 mm)** onto field of roofing membrane.
- 3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
  - a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
- 4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- 5. Roof Drains: Set **30-by-30-inch- (760-by-760-mm-)** square metal flashing in bed of asphalt roofing cement on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm) OR 6 inches (150 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
  - a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

#### L. Walkway Installation

- 1. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Set walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive.

**OR**

Set walkway pads in additional pour coat of hot roofing asphalt after aggregate surfacing of modified bituminous roofing membrane.

2. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: Install walkway cap sheet strips over roofing membrane using same application method as used for roofing membrane cap sheet. Install walkway cap sheet strips before flood coat and aggregate surface is applied, **as directed**.

**M. Field Quality Control**

1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
  - a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
  - b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - a. Notify the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

**N. Protecting And Cleaning**

1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 05 13 00c

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 05 13 00d - PREPARATION FOR RE-ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for preparation for re-roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Roof tear-off.
  - b. Partial roof tear-off.
  - c. Temporary roofing membrane.
  - d. Roof re-cover preparation.
  - e. Removal of base flashings.

#### C. Materials Ownership

1. Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain the Owner's property, demolished materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

#### D. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Existing Membrane Roofing System: Built-up asphalt, Built-up coal-tar, EPDM, CSPE, PVC, TPO, APP-modified bituminous, or SBS-modified bituminous roofing membrane, roof insulation, surfacing, and components and accessories between deck and roofing membrane.
3. Roof Re-Cover Preparation: Existing roofing membrane that is to remain and be prepared for reuse.
4. Roof Tear-Off: Removal of existing membrane roofing system from deck.
5. Partial Roof Tear-Off: Removal of a portion of existing membrane roofing system from deck or removal of selected components and accessories from existing membrane roofing system.
6. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and reinstalled.
7. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not indicated to be removed.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Temporary Roofing: Include Product Data and description of temporary roofing system. If temporary roof will remain in place, submit surface preparation requirements needed to receive permanent roof, and submit a letter from roofing membrane manufacturer stating acceptance of the temporary membrane and that its inclusion will not adversely affect the roofing system's resistance to fire and wind or its FM Global rating, **as directed**.
3. Coal tar roofs can't be mixed with asphalt roofs. Test materials in accordance with the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
4. Fastener pull-out test report.
5. Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including exterior and interior finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as having been damaged by reroofing operations. Submit before Work begins.
6. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes, such as asbestos-containing material, by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.



7. Qualification Data: For Installer including certificate that Installer is licensed to perform asbestos abatement and is approved by warrantor of existing roofing system.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: Installer of new membrane roofing system, licensed to perform asbestos abatement in the State or jurisdiction where Project is located, **as directed**, and approved by warrantor of existing roofing system to work on existing roofing, **as directed**.
2. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning membrane roofing removal. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Reroofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Project Conditions

1. the Owner will occupy portions of building immediately below reroofing area. Conduct reroofing so the Owner's operations will not be disrupted. Provide the Owner with not less than 72 hours' notice of activities that may affect the Owner's operations.
  - a. Coordinate work activities daily with the Owner so the Owner can place protective dust or water leakage covers over sensitive equipment or furnishings, shut down HVAC and fire-alarm or -detection equipment if needed, and evacuate occupants from below the work area.
  - b. Before working over structurally impaired areas of deck, notify the Owner to evacuate occupants from below the affected area. Verify that occupants below the work area have been evacuated before proceeding with work over the impaired deck area.
2. Protect building to be reroofed, adjacent buildings, walkways, site improvements, exterior plantings, and landscaping from damage or soiling from reroofing operations.
3. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
4. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding will be maintained by the Owner as far as practical.
  - a. A roof moisture survey of existing membrane roofing system is available for Contractor's reference.
  - b. The results of an analysis of test cores from existing membrane roofing system are available for Contractor's reference.
  - c. Construction Drawings and Project Manual for existing roofing system are provided for Contractor's reference. Contractor is responsible for conclusions derived from existing documents.
5. Limit construction loads on roof, as directed by the Owner. Rooftop equipment wheel loads and for uniformly distributed loads.
6. Weather Limitations: Proceed with reroofing preparation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit Work to proceed without water entering existing roofing system or building.
7. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials such as asbestos-containing materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - a. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner before start of the Work. Existing roof will be left no less watertight than before removal.
  - b. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify the Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by the Owner under a separate contract.

**OR**

Hazardous Materials: Present in building to be reroofed. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.

- a. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- b. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except according to procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

- c. Coordinate with hazardous material remediation subcontractor to prevent water from entering existing roofing system or building.

H. Warranty

1. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during reroofing, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing roofing system warranty. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
  - a. Notify warrantor of existing roofing system on completion of reroofing, and obtain documentation verifying that existing roofing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Infill Materials

1. Use infill materials matching existing membrane roofing system materials unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Infill materials are specified in a Division 07.

B. Temporary Roofing Materials

1. Design and selection of materials for temporary roofing are responsibilities of Contractor.
2. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum **3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m)**.
3. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet.
4. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.
5. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
6. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or IV.

C. Recover Boards

1. Recover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, cellulosic-fiber insulation board; **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.  
**OR**  
Recover Board: Fan-folded, unfaced, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; **3/16-inch (5-mm)** **OR** **1/4-inch (6-mm)** **OR** **3/8-inch (10-mm)**, **as directed**, nominal thickness.  
**OR**  
Recover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate; **1/4 inch (6 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** Type X, **5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Recover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber-reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate; **1/4 inch (6 mm)** **OR** **3/8 inch (10 mm)** **OR** **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** **5/8 inch (16 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.  
**OR**  
Recover Board: ASTM C 728, perlite board; **1/2 inch (13 mm)** **OR** **3/4 inch (19 mm)** **OR** **1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**, thick.
2. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners, No. 12 or 14, and metal or plastic plates listed in FM Approval's "Approval Guide," designed for fastening recover boards to deck.

D. Auxiliary Reroofing Materials

1. General: Auxiliary reroofing preparation materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with components of existing and new membrane roofing system.
2. Base Sheet Fasteners: Capped head, factory-coated steel fasteners, listed in FM Approval's "Approval Guide."
3. Metal Flashing Sheet: Metal flashing sheet is specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".



### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Protect existing membrane roofing system that is indicated not to be reroofed.
  - a. Loosely lay **1-inch- (25-mm-)** minimum thick, molded expanded polystyrene (MEPS) insulation over the roofing membrane in areas indicated. Loosely lay **15/32-inch (12-mm)** plywood or OSB panels over MEPS. Extend MEPS past edges of plywood or OSB panels a minimum of **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - b. Limit traffic and material storage to areas of existing roofing membrane that have been protected.
  - c. Maintain temporary protection and leave in place until replacement roofing has been completed. Remove temporary protection on completion of reroofing.
2. Coordinate with the Owner to shut down air-intake equipment in the vicinity of the Work. Cover air-intake louvers before proceeding with reroofing work that could affect indoor air quality or activate smoke detectors in the ductwork.
3. During removal operations, have sufficient and suitable materials on-site to facilitate rapid installation of temporary protection in the event of unexpected rain.
4. Maintain roof drains in functioning condition to ensure roof drainage at end of each workday. Prevent debris from entering or blocking roof drains and conductors. Use roof-drain plugs specifically designed for this purpose. Remove roof-drain plugs at end of each workday, when no work is taking place, or when rain is forecast.
  - a. If roof drains are temporarily blocked or unserviceable due to roofing system removal or partial installation of new membrane roofing system, provide alternative drainage method to remove water and eliminate ponding. Do not permit water to enter into or under existing membrane roofing system components that are to remain.
5. Verify that rooftop utilities and service piping have been shut off before beginning the Work.

#### B. Roof Tear-Off

1. General: Notify the Owner each day of extent of roof tear-off proposed for that day and obtain authorization to proceed.
2. Remove aggregate ballast from roofing membrane. Store aggregate ballast for reuse, **as directed**.
3. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing using a power broom.
4. Remove pavers and accessories from roofing membrane. Store and protect pavers and accessories for reuse, **as directed**. Discard cracked pavers, **as directed**.
5. Remove protection mat and extruded-polystyrene insulation from protected roofing membrane.
  - a. Discard extruded-polystyrene insulation that is wet and exceeds **8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m)**.
  - b. Store extruded-polystyrene insulation for reuse and protect from physical damage.
6. Roof Tear-Off: Remove existing roofing membrane and other membrane roofing system components down to the deck.
  - a. Remove cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**.
  - b. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry. Remove unadhered bitumen and felts and wet felts.
  - c. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck. A maximum of **15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.72 kg/sq. m)** of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
  - d. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface, **as directed**.
7. Partial Roof Tear-Off: Where indicated, remove existing roofing membrane and other membrane roofing system components down to the deck.
  - a. Remove cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**.
  - b. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry. Remove unadhered bitumen and felts and wet felts.
  - c. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck. A maximum of **15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.72 kg/sq. m)** of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
  - d. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface, **as directed**.

**OR**

Partial Roof Tear-Off: Remove existing roofing membrane and immediately check for presence of moisture by visually observing cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**, that will remain.

- a. Coordinate with the Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections immediately after membrane removal.
- b. With an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter, spot check cover boards **OR** roof insulation **OR** substrate boards, **as directed**, that will remain.
- c. Remove wet or damp boards and roof insulation. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents, **as directed**.
- d. Bitumen and felts that are firmly bonded to concrete decks are permitted to remain if felts are dry. Remove unadhered bitumen and felts and wet felts.
- e. Remove excess asphalt from steel deck. A maximum of **15 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.72 kg/sq. m)** of asphalt is permitted to remain on steel decks.
- f. Remove fasteners from deck or cut fasteners off slightly above deck surface, **as directed**.

C. Deck Preparation

1. Inspect deck after tear-off **OR** partial tear-off, **as directed**, of membrane roofing system.
2. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263 or by pouring **1 pint (0.5 L)** of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if moisture condenses under the plastic sheet or if asphalt test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
3. If broken or loose fasteners that secure deck panels to one another or to structure are observed or if deck appears or feels inadequately attached, immediately notify the Owner. Do not proceed with installation until directed by the Owner.
4. If deck surface is not suitable for receiving new roofing or if structural integrity of deck is suspect, immediately notify the Owner. Do not proceed with installation until directed by the Owner.
5. Provide additional deck securement as indicated on Drawings.
6. Replace deck as indicated on Drawings. Replacement deck is specified in Division 31 **OR** Division 03 **OR** Division 21 Section(s) "Fire-suppression Standpipes".

D. Infill Materials Installation

1. Immediately after removal of selected portions of existing membrane roofing system, and inspection and repair, if needed, of deck, fill in the tear-off areas to match existing membrane roofing system construction.
  - a. Installation of infill materials is specified in Division 07.
  - b. Install new roofing membrane patch over roof infill area. If new roofing membrane is installed the same day tear-off is made, roofing membrane patch is not required.

E. Temporary Roofing Membrane

1. Install approved temporary roofing membrane over area to be reroofed.

**OR**

Install temporary roofing membrane over area to be reroofed. Install two glass-fiber felts **OR** Mechanically fasten base sheet and install a glass-fiber felt, **as directed**, lapping each sheet **19 inches (483 mm)** over preceding sheet. Embed glass-fiber felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within equiviscous temperature range. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt.

2. Remove temporary roofing membrane before installing new roofing membrane.

**OR**

Prepare the temporary roof to receive new roofing membrane according to approved temporary roofing membrane proposal **OR** by patching and repairing temporary roofing membrane, **as directed**. Restore temporary roofing membrane to watertight condition. Obtain approval for temporary roof substrate from roofing membrane manufacturer and the Owner before installing new roof.





F. Roof Re-Cover Preparation

1. Remove blisters, ridges, buckles, mechanically attached roofing membrane fastener buttons projecting above the membrane, **as directed**, and other substrate irregularities from existing roofing membrane that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
  - a. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
  - b. Scarify the surface of sprayed polyurethane foam as necessary to achieve a sufficiently uniform plane to receive new recover boards.
  - c. Broom clean existing substrate.
  - d. Coordinate with the Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections before proceeding with installation of recover boards.
  - e. Verify that existing substrate is dry before proceeding with installation of recover boards. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
  - f. Remove materials that are wet or damp. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
2. Remove blisters, ridges, buckles, mechanically attached roofing membrane fastener buttons projecting above the membrane, **as directed**, and other substrate irregularities from existing roofing membrane that inhibit new recover boards **OR** roofing membrane, **as directed**, from conforming to substrate.
  - a. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
  - b. Scarify the surface of sprayed polyurethane foam as necessary to achieve a sufficiently uniform plane to receive new recover boards **OR** roofing membrane, **as directed**.
  - c. Broom clean existing substrate.
  - d. Coordinate with the Owner's inspector to schedule times for tests and inspections.
  - e. Verify that existing substrate is dry before proceeding with installation. Spot check substrates with an electrical capacitance moisture-detection meter.
  - f. Remove materials that are wet and damp. Removal will be paid for by adjusting the Contract Sum according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents.
3. Remove blisters and areas of membrane not fully adhered.  
**OR**  
 Remove mechanically attached roofing membrane fastener buttons projecting above the membrane and other, **as directed**, substrate irregularities that inhibit new recover boards from conforming to substrate.
  - a. Remove loose aggregate from aggregate-surfaced built-up bituminous roofing with a power broom.
  - b. Clean substrate of contaminants such as dirt, debris, oil, and grease that can affect adhesion of coated foamed roofing.
  - c. Power vacuum the existing roof surface. If recommended by foam manufacturer, prime dried surface at recommended rate with recommended primer.
  - d. Scarify the surface of coated polyurethane roofing as necessary to achieve a suitable substrate for new roofing.
  - e. Provide additional uplift securement for existing roofing system with new screws and plates applied to each roof zone at the following densities:
    - 1) Field of roof, one fastener for each.
    - 2) Corners of roof, one fastener for each.
    - 3) Perimeters of roof, one fastener for each. Width of perimeter zone of roof as directed by the Owner.
  - f. Verify that surface is dry by pressing litmus paper to surface areas most likely to retain moisture, such as shaded areas and low spots. If paper changes color, surface is too wet to apply foam.
  - g. Build up isolated low spots on existing roofing membrane with sprayed foam specified in Division 07 Section "Coated Foamed Roofing" to prevent ponding.

G. Existing Base Flashings

1. Remove existing base flashings around parapets, curbs, walls, and penetrations.
    - a. Clean substrates of contaminants such as asphalt, sheet materials, dirt, and debris.
  2. Do not damage metal counterflashings that are to remain. Replace metal counterflashings damaged during removal with counterflashings of same metal, weight or thickness, and finish **OR** specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim" **OR** specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Specialties", **as directed**.
  3. Inspect parapet sheathing for deterioration and damage. If parapet sheathing has deteriorated, immediately notify the Owner.
  4. Remove existing parapet sheathing and replace with new pressure-preservative **OR** exterior fire-retardant, **as directed**, -treated plywood sheathing, 19/32 inch (15 mm) thick. If parapet framing has deteriorated, immediately notify the Owner.
    - a. Plywood parapet sheathing is specified in Division 06 Section(s) "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry", **as directed**.
- H. Fastener Pull-Out Testing
1. Perform **OR** Retain independent testing and inspecting agency to conduct, **as directed**, fastener pull-out tests according to SPRI FX-1, and submit test report to the Owner **OR** roofing membrane manufacturer, **as directed**, before installing new membrane roofing system.
    - a. Obtain the Owner's **OR** roofing membrane manufacturer's, **as directed**, approval to proceed with specified fastening pattern. the Owner **OR** Roofing membrane manufacturer, **as directed**, may furnish revised fastening pattern commensurate with pull-out test results.
- I. Recover Board Installation
1. Install recover boards over roof insulation **OR** roofing membrane, **as directed**, with long joints in continuous straight lines and end joints staggered between rows. Loosely butt recover boards together and fasten to deck, **as directed**.
    - a. Tape joints of recover boards if required by roofing membrane manufacturer.
    - b. Fasten recover boards to resist wind-uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof specified in Division 07 Section "Built-up Asphalt Roofing".
    - c. Install additional fasteners near board corners and edges as necessary to conform boards to substrate and to adjacent boards.
- J. Disposal
1. Collect demolished materials and place in containers. Promptly dispose of demolished materials. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
    - a. Storage or sale of demolished items or materials on-site is not permitted.
  2. Transport and legally dispose of demolished materials off the Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 07 05 13 00d

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 05 13 00	07 53 16 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 11 13 00 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bituminous dampproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hot-applied asphalt dampproofing.
  - 2. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
  - 3. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. LEED Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: For dampproofing, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For dampproofing, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course, molded-sheet drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

- B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise required.

## 2.2 HOT-APPLIED ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Hot-Applied Asphalt: ASTM D 449, Type II **OR** Type III, **as directed**.
- B. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.3 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 4586, Type I, Class 1, fibered.
- B. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 4479, Type I, fibered or nonfibered.
- C. VOC Content: 250 **OR** 300, **as directed**, g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- B. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.
- D. VOC Content: Zero **OR** 30 g/L or less, **as directed**.
- E. Low-Emitting Materials: Dampproofing shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
- C. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - D. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668, Type I.
  - E. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar **OR** Asbestos-free fibered mastic, **as directed**, of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
  - F. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** thick, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphalitic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.
  - G. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced on one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, with a compressive strength of not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  - H. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  - I. Protection Course: Smooth-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380, Class S, Type III.
- 2.6 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS
- A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Section 334600 "Subdrainage."
  - B. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 70 (0.21-mm)** sieve laminated to one side of the core; and with a vertical flow rate of **9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m)**.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of bituminous dampproofing work.
  1. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.



- B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to the dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any, as recommended in writing by prime material manufacturer.
- C. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** over outside face of footing.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing **12 inches (300 mm)** onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where shown as "reinforced," by embedding an **8-inch- (200-mm-)** wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
  - 2. Lap dampproofing at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete and masonry single-wythe masonry walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

### 3.4 HOT-APPLIED ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Do not apply hot asphalt when substrate condition causes foaming.
- B. Kettle Temperature: Comply with dampproofing-material manufacturer's written instructions, and keep at least **25 deg F (14 deg C)** below the flash point.
- C. Prime masonry and other porous substrates.
- D. Apply a uniform coat of hot asphalt by mopping or spraying at not less than **20 lb or 2.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (1 kg or 1 L/sq. m)**.
  - 1. Apply a second coat to below-grade foundation walls and where first application has failed to produce a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage. Apply second coat at the rate specified for first coat.

### 3.5 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

### 3.6 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat primer and one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 5 gal./100 sq. ft. (2 L/sq. m).
- C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies, Stone Veneer Assemblies and Dimension Stone Cladding: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- H. Interior Face of Exterior Concrete Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

- I. Interior Face of Single-Wythe Exterior Masonry Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than **1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).**

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
  1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
  2. Install protection course on same day **OR** within 24 hours, **as directed**, of installation of dampproofing (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate dampproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
  1. Install protection course before installing drainage panels.

### 3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 11 13 00	07 14 16 00	Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 13 13 00 - BITUMINOUS WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bituminous waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include recommendations for method of application, primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and protection course.

#### C. Delivery, Storage And Handling

1. Waterproofing materials shall be delivered to the project site in the original sealed containers bearing the name of the manufacturer, contents and brand name. Asphalt shall be protected from freezing in a weathertight enclosure. Reinforcement fabrics shall be protected from moisture damage and moisture absorption in a weathertight enclosure or shall be stored off the ground on pallets, and covered on top and all sides with breathable-type canvas tarpaulins. Plastic sheets cause condensation buildup and therefore shall not be used to cover waterproofing materials. Damaged or deteriorated materials shall be removed from project site.

#### D. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of waterproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until waterproofing has cured.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Asphalt Waterproofing

1. Primer: Primer for hot-applied asphalt waterproofing shall conform to ASTM D41, asbestos-free, non-fibrated, manufactured with highly ductile soft asphalts and selected hydrocarbons.
2. Above-Grade Hot-Applied Asphalt: For above-grade applications where asphalt will not be exposed to temperatures exceeding 122 degrees F (50 degrees C), hot-applied asphalt for membrane waterproofing system shall conform to ASTM D449, Type II. For above-grade applications where asphalt will be exposed to sunlight and temperatures exceeding 122 degrees F (50 degrees C), hot-applied asphalt shall conform to ASTM D449, Type III.
3. Below-Grade Hot-Applied Asphalt: Hot-applied asphalt for below-grade applications shall conform to ASTM D449, Type I, asbestos-free, manufactured from crude petroleum, suitable for use with membrane waterproofing systems.
4. Reinforcement Fabrics
  - a. Cotton Fabrics: Cotton fabrics shall be woven entirely of cotton conforming with ASTM D173, thoroughly and uniformly saturated with asphalt.
  - b. Woven Burlap Fabrics: Woven burlap fabrics shall be composed of 100 percent jute fiber and two cotton threads at each selvage conforming with ASTM D1327, thoroughly and uniformly saturated with asphalt. The fabric mesh shall not be completely closed or sealed by the process of saturation. Sufficient porosity shall be maintained to allow successive moppings of the plying asphalt to seep through. The surface shall not be coated or covered with talc or any other substances that will interfere with the adhesion between fabric and plying asphalt. The fabric surface shall be uniformly smooth and free of



irregularities, folds and knots. The finished woven burlap fabrics shall be free of ragged edges, untrue edges, breaks or cracks, and other visible external defects.

- c. Glass Fabrics: Glass fabrics shall conform to ASTM D1668 Type I, asphalt-treated woven glass waterproofing fabrics coated with asphalt.
- d. Flashing Cement: Flashing cement shall conform to ASTM D4586, Type I, trowel grade, asbestos free, manufactured from asphalts characterized as adhesive, healing and ductile.

#### B. Insulation Boards

- 1. Insulation boards shall conform to ASTM C208 cellulosic fiber boards, construction grade, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick, fibrous-felted homogeneous panel. Insulation boards shall be manufactured from ligno-cellulosic fibers (wood or cane) by a felting or molding process, asphalt-saturated or coated, with a density of **10 to 31 psf (49 to 151 kg/square meter)**. Surfaces of insulation boards shall be free of cracks, lumps, excessive departure from planeness, or other defects that adversely affect performance.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Surface Preparation

- 1. Surfaces scheduled for bituminous waterproofing shall be prepared in accordance with waterproofing manufacturer's recommendations. Surface preparation shall be approved prior to waterproofing application.
- 2. Protection of Surrounding Areas: Before starting the waterproofing work, the surrounding areas and surfaces shall be protected from spillage and migration of asphalt onto other work. Drains and conductors shall be protected from clogging with asphalt.
- 3. Masonry Surfaces: Surfaces shall be free of oil, grease, dirt, laitance, loose material, frost, debris and other contaminants. Mortar joints shall be flush and free of extraneous mortar and chipped or broken masonry.
- 4. Concrete Surfaces: Surfaces shall be properly cured, free of form release agents, oil, grease, dirt, laitance, loose material, frost, debris and other contaminants. Form ties shall be cut flush with surface. Sharp protrusions and form match lines shall be removed. Holes, voids, spalled areas and cracks which can damage waterproofing materials shall be repaired. Rough surfaces shall be parged with a well-adhering coat of cement mortar.
- 5. Metal Surfaces: Surfaces shall be dry and be free of rust, scale, loose paint, oil, grease, dirt, frost and debris.

#### B. Hot-Applied Asphalt Waterproofing

- 1. Asphalt waterproofing shall be applied when the ambient temperature is **40 degrees F (4 degrees C)** or above. Heating kettles and tanks shall be provided with automatic thermostatic control capable of maintaining asphalt temperature. Controls shall be calibrated and maintained in working order for duration of work. At time of application, asphalt shall not be heated above the equiviscous temperature (EVT) recommended by manufacturer. Immediately before use, temperature shall be measured with a portable thermometer at the point of application. EVT and flashpoint temperatures of asphalt in kettle shall be conspicuously posted on kettle. Asphalt with a temperature not conforming to the manufacturer's recommendations shall be returned to the kettle. Asphalt overheated by more than **50 degrees F (10 degrees C)** for more than 1 hour shall be removed from site.
- 2. Below-Grade Wall Waterproofing: Waterproofing for foundation walls shall consist of a 1-ply **OR** 2-ply **OR** 3-ply **OR** 4-ply **OR** 5-ply, **as directed**, hot-applied asphalt membrane system. Fabrics shall be installed using the "shingle" method. Joints shall be caulked prior to primer applications. Primer shall be applied at a rate of **1/2 gallon per 100 square feet (0.2 L/square meter)**. Fabrics shall be overlapped at ends and staggered a minimum **10 inch (250 mm)** for 1-ply **OR** **19 inch (480 mm)** for 2-ply **OR** **24 inch (610 mm)** for 3-ply **OR** **27 inch (685 mm)** for 4-ply **OR** **30 inch (750 mm)** for 5-ply, **as directed**, system. End-to-end taping is not acceptable. Each fabric shall be firmly embedded into a solid uniform coating of hot asphalt at a rate of **20 pounds per 100 square**

feet (0.98 kg/square meter) by pressing with broom. Fabrics shall not touch fabrics. Hot asphalt shall penetrate each fabric to provide the required adhesion. Asphalt between fabrics shall not be excessive to prevent slippage. Waterproofing system consisting of two or more fabrics shall be provided with fabric reinforcement at corners, angles, over construction joints, and in locations where waterproofing fabrics are subject to unusual stress.

3. Floor Waterproofing: Primer shall be applied at a rate of 1/2 gallon per 100 square feet (0.2 L/square meter). Primer shall not be left in puddles. Primer shall be dry to the touch before application of asphalt. Where slab abuts walls, first reinforcing fabric shall extend 6 inches (150 mm) minimum on slab and 8 inches (200 mm) on wall. At vertical corners, first fabric shall extend minimum 5 inches (125 mm) from corner on each side. Second fabric shall lap the first fabric 2 inches (50 mm) minimum. At floor drains, and elsewhere as indicated, the fabric shall extend into a clamping device, set in a heavy coating of flashing cement, and securely clamped.

C. Flood Testing

1. Prior to concealment, waterproofed floors over occupied spaces shall be tested for watertightness. Drains shall be plugged and floors shall be submerged with 3 inches (75 mm) of clean water. Water shall be permitted to stand for a minimum of 24 hours. If leaks occur, water shall be drained and repairs made. Upon completion of repairs, floors shall be flooded with 3 inches (75 mm) of clean water and flood testing shall be repeated for minimum of 24 hours from the time each leak is repaired. Waterproofing system shall be completely watertight, and shall be approved in writing before covering up with other materials. Additional coats of asphalt are not an acceptable method for repairing leaks.

D. Clean-Up

1. Surfaces of other work which are stained with waterproofing materials shall be cleaned with a cleaner recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

E. Protection Of Completed Work

1. Floor Waterproofing: The completed waterproofing work shall be protected from damage during and after construction. Protective covering shall be placed immediately before proceeding with the work which will conceal the waterproofing.
2. Wall Waterproofing: Waterproofing against which backfill is to be placed shall be protected with a single layer of insulation board. Insulation boards shall be pressed into the final mopping while the asphalt is still hot, with edges of boards placed into moderate contact and joints staggered. For two-layer installation, joints in second layer shall be staggered over joints in first layer. Where surfaced insulation board is used, the surfaced side shall face outward. Boards shall be carefully and neatly fitted around projections, and shall cover the entire surface of the waterproofing materials. Waterproofing system not covered with protection board shall be protected to prevent damage from subsequent building operations. Installed boards shall not remain exposed at the end of a work day.

END OF SECTION 07 13 13 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 13 13 00	07 11 13 00	Bituminous Dampproofing

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 13 53 00 - ELASTOMERIC SHEET WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for elastomeric sheet waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Butyl rubber sheet waterproofing.
  - b. EPDM rubber sheet waterproofing.
  - c. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - d. Insulation.
  - e. Plaza deck pavers and paver pedestals.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product test reports.
4. Special warranties.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
5. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.

#### G. Warranty



1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace waterproofing material that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Sheet Waterproofing

1. Butyl Rubber Sheet: ASTM D 6134, Type II, **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** **OR 90-mil- (2.3-mm-)** **OR 120-mil- (3.0-mm-)**, **as directed**, thick flexible sheet, unreinforced, formed from isobutylene-isoprene rubber.
2. EPDM Rubber Sheet: ASTM D 6134, Type I, **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick flexible sheet, unreinforced, formed from EPDM.

### B. Auxiliary Materials

1. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
  - a. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Concealed Sheet Flashing: Same material, construction, and thickness as sheet waterproofing or **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick, uncured EPDM as required by manufacturer.
3. Exposed Sheet Flashing: **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick EPDM, cured or uncured, as required by manufacturer.
4. Bonding Adhesives: Adhesive for bonding polymeric sheets and sheet flashings to substrates and projections.
5. Splicing Cement and Cleaner: Single-component butyl splicing cement and solvent-based splice cleaner.
  - a. Butyl Gum Tape: **30-mil- (0.76-mm-)** thick-by-**6-1/4-inch- (160-mm-)** wide, uncured butyl with polyethylene release film.
6. Lap Sealant: Single-component sealant.
7. In-Seam Sealant: Single-component sealant.
8. Water Cutoff Mastic: Butyl mastic sealant.
9. Waterproofing and Sheet Flashing Accessories: Provide sealants, pourable sealers, cone and vent flashings, inside and outside corner flashings, termination reglets, and other accessories recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use.
10. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard aluminum bars, approximately **1 inch (25 mm)** wide, prepunched, with zinc-alloy-body fasteners and stainless-steel pins.
11. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:
  - a. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, nominal, for vertical applications; **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, nominal, elsewhere.
  - b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
12. Protection Course:
  - a. Faced, fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation sandwiched between 2 sheets of plastic film, nominal thickness **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, with compressive strength of not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  - b. Unfaced, fan-folded, extruded-polystyrene board insulation, nominal thickness **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with compressive strength of not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621.
  - c. Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  - d. Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, **0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m)** minimum density, **1-inch (25-mm)** minimum thickness.

C. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels

1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 70 (0.21-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of **9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m)**.
3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 40 (0.425-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than **2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m)**.

D. Insulation

1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
  - a. Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - b. Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - c. Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - d. Type V, **100-psi (690-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** or Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels.
3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** or Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** **OR** Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with 1 side having ribbed drainage channels.
5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with 1 side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.

E. Plaza Deck Pavers

1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength **7500 psi (52 MPa)** **OR** **6500 psi (45 MPa)**, **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
  - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, HDPE, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** **OR** **3/16 inch (5 mm)** **OR** **1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of **5000 psi (34 MPa)** at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Surface Preparation

1. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
3. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
4. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.
5. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
6. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at drains and protrusions.

#### B. Fully Adhered Sheet Installation

1. Install fully adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in ASTM D 5843.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply bonding adhesive to substrates at required rate and allow to partially dry.
4. Apply bonding adhesive to sheets and firmly adhere sheets to substrates. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.
5. Install fully adhered sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
6. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.
7. Horizontal Application: Apply sheets with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  - a. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal sheet waterproofing in place with clamping ring.

#### C. Partially Adhered Sheet Installation

1. Install partially adhered sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply bonding adhesive to the following areas of substrates and to each sheet at required rate and allow to partially dry:
  - a. Upper 25 percent of length of each sheet and 18 inches (457 mm) around perimeter of each sheet.
4. Firmly adhere sheets to substrate. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of sheet.
5. Install partially adhered sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
6. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.

#### D. Compartmented, Loosely Laid Sheet Installation

1. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets over entire area to receive waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Accurately align sheets and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required. Stagger end laps.
3. Apply continuous beads of water cutoff mastic, of size recommended by waterproofing manufacturer, to substrates in a 60-by-60-inch (1500-by-1500-mm) grid pattern before installing sheet.

4. Apply sheets with side laps shingled with slope of deck where possible.
  5. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal sheet waterproofing in place with clamping ring.
  6. Install compartmented, loosely laid sheets and auxiliary materials to tie into existing waterproofing.
  7. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in waterproofing not complying with requirements. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with sheet waterproofing extending beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- E. Seam Installation
1. Cement Splice: Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement and in-seam sealant, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a splice not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** wide and to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.
  2. Cement and Tape Splice: Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement and butyl gum tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet terminations.
- F. Sheet Flashing Installation
1. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Form wall flashings using exposed sheet flashing.
  3. Extend deck sheet waterproofing to form wall flashings.
    - a. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with uncured sheet flashing.
    - b. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
  4. Cover expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints by extending deck sheet waterproofing over joints.
  5. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings with mechanically anchored termination bars.
- G. Protection Course Installation
1. Install protection course over waterproofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions and before beginning subsequent construction operations. Minimize exposure of membrane.
    - a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.
- H. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- I. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within **3/4 inch (19 mm)** of projections and penetrations.
  2. On vertical surfaces, place and secure insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions.



3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

J. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**, -height paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
  - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
  - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within **1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48)** of surface plane in any direction.

K. Protection And Cleaning

1. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 13 53 00



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 13 53 00	03 01 30 71a	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 14 13 00 - HOT FLUID-APPLIED RUBBERIZED ASPHALT WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for hot fluid-applied rubberized asphalt waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Rubberized-asphalt waterproofing membrane, unreinforced and reinforced.
  - b. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - c. Insulation.
  - d. Plaza deck pavers.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins to adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
  - a. Include setting drawings showing layout, sizes, sections, profiles, and joint details of pedestal-supported concrete pavers.
3. Product test reports.
4. Sample warranties

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project and is eligible to receive special warranties specified.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
3. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, or when temperature is below **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)**.
  - a. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
2. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace waterproofing and sheet flashings that do not comply with requirements or that fail to remain watertight within five **OR 10, as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Waterproofing Membrane

1. Hot Fluid-Applied, Rubberized-Asphalt Waterproofing Membrane: Single component; 100 percent solids; hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt.

### B. Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Elastomeric Flashing Sheet: **50-mil- (1.3-mm-)** minimum, uncured sheet neoprene as follows:
  - a. Tensile Strength: **1400 psi (9.6 MPa)** minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C.
  - b. Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412.
  - c. Tear Resistance: **125 psi (860 kPa)** minimum; ASTM D 624, Die C.
  - d. Brittleness: Does not break at minus **30 deg F (34 deg C)**; ASTM D 2137.

### C. Auxiliary Materials

1. Primer: ASTM D 41, asphaltic primer.
2. Elastomeric Sheet: **50-mil- (1.3-mm-)** minimum, uncured sheet neoprene as follows:
  - a. Tensile Strength: **1400 psi (9.6 MPa)** minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C.
  - b. Elongation: 300 percent minimum; ASTM D 412.
  - c. Tear Resistance: **125 psi (860 kPa)** minimum; ASTM D 624, Die C.
  - d. Brittleness: Does not break at minus **30 deg F (34 deg C)**; ASTM D 2137.
3. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum termination bars; approximately **1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm)** thick; with anchors.
4. Sealants and Accessories: Manufacturer's recommended sealants and accessories.
5. Reinforcing Fabric: Manufacturer's recommended, spun-bonded polyester fabric.
6. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and nominal thickness of **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6 mm), as directed.**
7. Protection Course: Manufacturer's standard, **80- to 90-mil- (2.0- to 2.3-mm-)** thick, fiberglass-reinforced rubberized asphalt or modified bituminous sheet.

### D. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels

1. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 70 (0.21-mm)** sieve, laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of **9 to 15 gpm/ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).**
2. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 40 (0.43-mm)** sieve, laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than **2.8 gpm/ft. (35 L/min. per m).**

### E. Insulation

1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square **OR** shiplap, **as directed**, edged.
  - a. Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - b. Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - c. Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - d. Type V, **100-psi (690-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
2. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa) OR Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa), as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.

3. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** OR Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven, geotextile filter fabric.
4. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** OR Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
5. Geotextile-Faced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven, geotextile filter fabric.

F. Plaza Deck Pavers

1. Plaza Deck Pavers:
  - a. Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".  
**OR**  
Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".  
**OR**  
Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength **7500 psi (52 MPa)** **OR** **6500 psi (45 MPa)**, **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
    - 1) Thickness: **1-5/8 inches (41 mm)** **OR** **1-3/4 inches (45 mm)** **OR** **2 inches (51 mm)** **OR** **2-3/8 inches (60 mm)**, **as directed**.
    - 2) Face Size: **8-7/8 inches (225 mm)** square **OR** **9 inches (229 mm)** square **OR** **9 by 18 inches (229 by 457 mm)** **OR** **12 inches (305 mm)** square **OR** **12 by 24 inches (305 by 610 mm)** **OR** **18 inches (457 mm)** square **OR** **24 inches (610 mm)** square, **as directed**.
    - 3) Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
  3. Paver Supports: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** **OR** **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, **as directed**.
    - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of **5000 psi (34 MPa)** at 28 days, and air content of 6 percent.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Preparation

1. Clean and prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
3. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
4. Remove grease, oil, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.

- a. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D 4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
  5. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, and other voids.
- B. Joints, Cracks, And Terminations
1. Prepare and treat substrates to receive waterproofing membrane, including joints and cracks, deck drains, corners, and penetrations according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Rout and fill joints and cracks in substrate. Before filling, remove dust and dirt according to ASTM D 4258.
    - b. Adhere strip of elastomeric sheet to substrate in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Extend elastomeric sheet a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** on each side of moving joints and cracks or joints and cracks exceeding **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick, and beyond deck drains and penetrations. Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over elastomeric sheet.
    - c. Embed strip of reinforcing fabric into a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Extend reinforcing fabric a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** on each side of nonmoving joints and cracks not exceeding **1/8 inch (3 mm)** thick, and beyond roof drains and penetrations.
      - 1) Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over reinforcing fabric.
  2. At expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall or deck-to-deck joints, bridge joints with elastomeric sheet extended a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** on each side of joints and adhere to substrates in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt. Apply second layer of hot fluid-applied, rubberized asphalt over elastomeric sheet.
- C. Flashing Installation
1. Install elastomeric flashing sheets at terminations of waterproofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Prime substrate with asphalt primer.
  3. Install elastomeric flashing sheet and adhere to deck and wall substrates in a layer of hot rubberized asphalt.
  4. Extend elastomeric flashing sheet up walls or parapets a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above plaza deck pavers and **6 inches (150 mm)** onto deck to be waterproofed.
  5. Install termination bars and mechanically fasten to top of elastomeric flashing sheet at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
- D. Membrane Application
1. Apply primer, at manufacturer's recommended rate, over prepared substrate and allow to dry.
  2. Heat and apply rubberized asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Heat rubberized asphalt in an oil- or air-jacketed melter with mechanical agitator specifically designed for heating rubberized asphalt.
  3. Start application with manufacturer's authorized representative present.
  4. Unreinforced Membrane: Apply hot rubberized asphalt to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated. Spread to form a uniform, unreinforced, seamless membrane, **180-mil (4.5-mm)** minimum thickness **OR 180-mil (4.5-mm)** average thickness, but not less than **125 mil (3.2 mm)** thick, **as directed**.
  5. Reinforced Membrane: Apply hot rubberized asphalt to substrates and adjoining surfaces indicated. Spread to a thickness of **90 mils (2.3 mm)**; embed reinforcing fabric, overlapping sheets **2 inches (50 mm)**; spread another **125-mil- (3.2-mm-)** thick layer to provide a uniform, reinforced, seamless membrane **215 mils (5.5 mm)** thick.
  6. Apply waterproofing over prepared joints and up wall terminations and vertical surfaces to heights indicated or required by manufacturer.



7. Cover waterproofing with protection course with overlapped joints before membrane is subject to backfilling **OR** construction or vehicular traffic, **as directed**.
- E. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
  1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use methods that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- F. Insulation Installation
  1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within **3/4 inch (19 mm)** of projections and penetrations.
  2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units into rubberized asphalt according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
- G. Plaza Deck Paver Installation
  1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" **OR** Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
  2. Install concrete pavers in locations indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Accurately install fixed-height **OR** adjustable-height, **as directed**, paver pedestals and accessories in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
    - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
  4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
    - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
  5. Install pavers to not vary more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
  6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within **1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48)** of surface plane in any direction.
- H. Cleaning And Protection
  1. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
  2. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
  3. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 13 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 14 16 00 - COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for cold fluid-applied waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

##### 1. Section Includes:

- a. Single-component polyurethane waterproofing.
- b. Two-component polyurethane waterproofing.
- c. Polyester waterproofing.
- d. Latex-rubber waterproofing.
- e. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
- f. Insulation.
- g. Plaza deck pavers.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
3. Product test reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is approved or licensed by **OR** acceptable to, **as directed**, waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - a. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, shelf life, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
4. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than **5 deg F (3 deg C)** above dew point.

#### G. Warranty



1. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which waterproofing manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. Single-Component Polyurethane Waterproofing
  1. Single-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
  2. Single-Component, Reinforced, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
  3. Single-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
- B. Two-Component Polyurethane Waterproofing
  1. Two-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
  2. Two-Component, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
  3. Two-Component, Reinforced, Unmodified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
- C. Polyester Waterproofing
  1. Two-Component, Reinforced, Unsaturated Polyester Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
- D. Latex-Rubber Waterproofing
  1. Two-Component, Unreinforced, Latex-Rubber Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
  2. Two-Component, Reinforced, Latex-Rubber Waterproofing: Comply with ASTM C 836 and with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
- E. Auxiliary Materials
  1. General: Provide auxiliary materials recommended by manufacturer to be compatible with one another and with waterproofing, as demonstrated by waterproofing manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. Primer: Manufacturer's standard, factory-formulated polyurethane or epoxy primer.
  3. Sheet Flashing: **50-mil- (1.3-mm-)** minimum, nonstaining, uncured sheet neoprene.
    - a. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended contact adhesive.
  4. Membrane-Reinforcing Fabric: Nonwoven, needle-punched white polyester fabric, **6-oz./sq. yd. (200-g/sq. m) OR 5-oz./sq. yd. (169-g/sq. m) OR 3.2-oz./sq. yd. (109-g/sq. m) OR** manufacturer's standard, **as directed**, weight.
  5. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Manufacturer's recommended fiberglass mesh or polyester fabric.
  6. Joint Sealant: Multicomponent polyurethane sealant, compatible with waterproofing, complying with ASTM C 920 Type M, Class 25; Grade NS for sloping and vertical applications or Grade P for deck applications; Use NT exposure; and as recommended by manufacturer for substrate and joint conditions.
    - a. Backer Rod: Closed-cell polyethylene foam.
- F. Protection Course
  1. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners and as follows:

- a. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, nominal, for vertical applications; **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, nominal, elsewhere.
  - b. Adhesive: Rubber-based solvent type recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for type of protection course.
  2. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced one or both side(s) with plastic film, nominal thickness of **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, with compressive strength not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621 and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
  3. Protection Course: Unfaced, fan-folded, rigid, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; nominal thickness of **1/4 inch (6 mm)** with compressive strength of not less than **8 psi (55 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621.
  4. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of molded-polystyrene board insulation faced both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness of **1/4 inch (6 mm) OR 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) OR 1/2 inch (13 mm)**, **as directed**, with compressive strength not less than **12 psi (83 kPa)** per ASTM D 1621 and water absorption by volume of less than 1 percent per ASTM C 272.
  5. Protection Course: Unfaced, extruded-polystyrene board insulation; ASTM C 578, Type X, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** thick.
  6. Protection Course: Molded-polystyrene board insulation, ASTM C 578, Type I, **0.90-lb/cu. ft. (15-kg/cu. m)** minimum density, **1-inch (25-mm)** minimum thickness.
- G. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels
1. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".
  2. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 70 (0.21-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of **9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m)**.
  3. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 40 (0.43-mm)** sieve, laminated to one side with or without a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than **2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m)**.
- H. Insulation
1. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
    - a. Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
    - b. Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
    - c. Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
    - d. Type V, **100-psi (690-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  2. Unfaced, Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa) OR Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.
  3. Geotextile-Faced, Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type IV, **25-psi (173-kPa) OR Type VI, 40-psi (276-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with a nonwoven-geotextile filter fabric.
  4. Unfaced, Plaza Deck, Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa) OR Type VII, 60-psi (414-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.
  5. Geotextile-Faced, Plaza Deck, Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with manufacturer's standard, nonwoven-geotextile filter fabric.



### I. Plaza Deck Pavers

1. Plaza Deck Pavers: Brick **OR** Concrete **OR** Asphalt-block, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
2. Plaza Deck Pavers: Granite **OR** Limestone **OR** Marble **OR** Quartz-based stone **OR** Slate, **as directed**, pavers specified in Division 09 Section "Stone Flooring".
3. Plaza Deck Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, **as directed**, manufactured for use as plaza deck pavers; minimum compressive strength of **7500 psi (52 MPa) OR 6500 psi (45 MPa)**, **as directed**, ASTM C 140; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance according to ASTM C 67.
  - a. Thickness: **1-5/8 inches (41 mm) OR 1-3/4 inches (45 mm) OR 2 inches (51 mm) OR 2-3/8 inches (60 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - b. Face Size: **8-7/8 inches (225 mm) square OR 9 inches (229 mm) square OR 9-by-18 inches (229-by-457 mm) OR 12 inches (305 mm) square OR 12-by-24 inches (305-by-610 mm) OR 18 inches (457 mm) square OR 24 inches (610 mm) square** **OR** As indicated, **as directed**.
  - c. Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match sample **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
4. Setting Bed: Provide aggregate **OR** mortar **OR** bituminous, **as directed**, setting-bed materials specified in Division 32 Section "Unit Paving".
5. Paver Pedestals: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 3/16 inch (5 mm) OR 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - a. Concrete Fill: ACI 301, compressive strength of **5000 psi (34 MPa)** at 28 days and air content of 6 percent.

## 1.3 EXECUTION

### A. Surface Preparation

1. Clean and prepare substrate according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
2. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage or overspray affecting other construction.
3. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.
4. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
  - a. Abrasive blast clean concrete surfaces uniformly to expose top surface of fine aggregate according to ASTM D 4259 with a self-contained, recirculating, blast-cleaning apparatus. Remove material to provide a sound surface free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, or form-release agents. Remove remaining loose material and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
5. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, and other voids.

### B. Preparation At Terminations And Penetrations

1. Prepare vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at expansion joints, drains, and sleeves according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Prime substrate unless otherwise instructed by waterproofing manufacturer.
3. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications, and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

- a. Provide sealant cants around penetrations and at inside corners of deck-to-wall butt joints when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
- C. Joint And Crack Treatment
1. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks, complying with ASTM D 4258, before coating surfaces.
    - a. Comply with ASTM C 1193 for joint-sealant installation.
    - b. Apply bond breaker between sealant and preparation strip.
    - c. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness of preparation strip extending a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)** along each side of joint. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat.
  2. Install sheet flashing and bond to deck and wall substrates where indicated or required according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Extend sheet flashings onto perpendicular surfaces and other work penetrating substrate according to ASTM C 898.
- D. Waterproofing Application
1. Apply waterproofing according to ASTM C 898 **OR** ASTM C 1471, **as directed**, and manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Start installing waterproofing in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
  3. Apply primer over prepared substrate.
  4. Unreinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by spray, roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other application method suitable to slope of substrate.
    - a. Apply one or more coats of waterproofing to obtain a seamless membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film thickness of **60 mils (1.5 mm)** and a minimum dry film thickness of **50 mils (1.3 mm)** at any point **OR 120 mils (3 mm), as directed**.
    - b. Apply waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
    - c. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)**.
  5. Reinforced Waterproofing Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other suitable application method.
    - a. Apply first coat of waterproofing, embed membrane-reinforcing fabric, and apply second coat of waterproofing to completely saturate reinforcing fabric and to obtain a seamless reinforced membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film total thickness of **70 mils (1.8 mm) OR 80 mils (2 mm) OR 120 mils (3 mm) as directed**.
    - b. Apply reinforced waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
    - c. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every **100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m)**.
  6. Install protection course with butted joints over nominally cured membrane before starting subsequent construction operations.
    - a. Molded-sheet drainage panels **OR** Insulation drainage panels **OR** Board insulation, **as directed**, may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.
- E. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile fabric to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- F. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within **3/4 inch (19 mm)** of projections and penetrations.



2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use type of adhesive recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer.
3. On horizontal surfaces, place insulation units unadhered according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

G. Plaza Deck Paver Installation

1. Setting Bed: Install setting bed in locations and of thickness indicated to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section(s) "Unit Paving" OR Division 09 Section(s) "Stone Flooring", **as directed**.
2. Install concrete pavers, in locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Accurately install fixed **OR** adjustable, **as directed**, height paver pedestals in locations and to elevations required. Adjust for final level and slope with shims.
  - a. Fill paver pedestal with concrete mix, strike smooth with top of pedestal, and cure according to ACI 301.
4. Loosely lay pavers on pedestals, maintaining a uniform open joint width. Tightly seat pavers against spacers to eliminate lateral movement or drift of paving assembly. Align joint patterns parallel in each direction.
  - a. Lay out pavers to avoid less-than-half-width pavers at perimeter or other terminations.
5. Install pavers to not vary more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in elevation between adjacent pavers or more than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** from surface plane elevation of individual paver.
6. Maintain tolerances of paving installation within **1/4 inch in 10 feet (1:48)** of surface plane in any direction.

H. Field Quality Control

1. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlaying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
  - a. Flood to an average depth of **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** with a minimum depth of **1 inch (25 mm)** and not exceeding a depth of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Maintain **2 inches (50 mm)** of clearance from top of sheet flashings.
  - b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48 **OR** 72, **as directed**, hours.
  - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
2. Engage an independent testing agency to observe flood testing and examine underside of decks and terminations for evidence of leaks during flood testing.

I. Curing, Protection, And Cleaning

1. Cure waterproofing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, taking care to prevent contamination and damage during application stages and curing.
  - a. Do not permit foot or vehicular traffic on unprotected membrane.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
3. Protect installed board insulation **OR** insulation drainage panels, **as directed**, from damage due to ultraviolet light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Immediately after installation, provide temporary coverings where insulation will be subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction.
4. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 16 00

## SECTION 07 16 13 00 - MODIFIED CEMENT WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modified cement waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes polymer-modified cement waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete, concrete unit masonry, and clay masonry.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for polymer-modified cement waterproofing.
2. Samples: For each type of polymer-modified cement waterproofing indicated.
3. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
4. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of polymer-modified cement waterproofing.
6. Field quality-control reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying polymer-modified cement waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit polymer-modified cement waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Field-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing

1. Admixture for Field Mixing: Manufacturer's standard polymer admixture for mixing with portland cement and sand to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists positive-side **OR** negative-side, **as directed**, hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.



- a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at **30 feet (9 m)** when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
  - b. Compressive Strength: Minimum **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
  - c. Flexural Strength: Minimum **710 psi (4.8 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
  - d. Bond Strength: Minimum **220 psi (1.5 MPa)** at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
- B. Prepackaged, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing
1. Negative-Side, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Manufacturer's proprietary blend of dry cementitious and other ingredients for mixing with potable water **OR** polymer admixture, **as directed**, to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists negative-side hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.
    - a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at **30 feet (9 m)** when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
    - b. Compressive Strength: Minimum **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
    - c. Flexural Strength: Minimum **710 psi (4.8 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
    - d. Bond Strength: Minimum **220 psi (1.5 MPa)** at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
    - e. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.
  2. Positive-Side, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Manufacturer's proprietary blend of dry cementitious and other ingredients for mixing with potable water or polymer admixture to produce a waterproof coating that is suitable for vertical and horizontal applications below or above grade, is breathable, resists positive-side hydrostatic pressure, has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction, and has properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.
    - a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at **30 feet (9 m)** when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
    - b. Compressive Strength: Minimum **4000 psi (27.6 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
    - c. Flexural Strength: Minimum **710 psi (4.8 MPa)** at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 348.
    - d. Bond Strength: Minimum **220 psi (1.5 MPa)** at 14 days when tested according to ASTM C 321.
    - e. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** As selected from full range **OR** As indicated in a color schedule, **as directed**.
- C. Accessory Materials
1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
  4. Slurry-Coat and Protective-Topping Sand: ASTM C 144.

5. Trowel-Coat Sand: ASTM C 33, fine aggregate.
6. Polymer Admixture for Protective Topping: Polymer bonding agent and admixture designed to improve adhesion to prepared substrates and to not create a vapor barrier.
7. Water: Potable.

D. Mixes

1. Field-Mixed, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Add polymer admixture to portland cement and sand according to manufacturer's written instructions. Blend together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.  
**OR**  
Prepackaged, Polymer-Modified Cement Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to mixing liquid according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
2. Protective Topping: Measure, batch, and mix portland cement and sand in the proportion of 1:3 and water gaged with a polymer admixture. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation

1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
    - 1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
    - 2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
  - b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
    - 1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.
    - 2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  - c. Clean clay masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 5703.



- d. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application

- 1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
  - a. Saturate surface with water for several hours prior to application with water and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
  - b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR Two OR Three, as directed.**
    - 1) Coating Thickness: Maximum application thickness of **47 mils (1.2 mm)** per coat for total thickness as required for specified water permeability **OR of 100 mils (2.5 mm), as directed.**
    - 2) Apply first coat as a slurry with brush or roller, and apply subsequent coats with brush, roller, spray, or trowel.
    - 3) Vigorously work first coat onto the substrate, forcing the material into surface voids. Apply each subsequent coat into full contact with previous coat.
    - 4) Allow manufacturer's recommended time between coats. Dampen surface between coats.
- 2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth troweled **OR Brushed OR Textured, as directed.**
- 3. Curing: Air-cure waterproofing for not less than five days immediately after application and prior to being placed in service.
- 4. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for not less than three days immediately after application has set, followed by air drying prior to being placed in service unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- 5. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
  - a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
  - b. Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of **24 inches (600 mm)** for cast-in-place concrete and **48 inches (1200 mm)** for masonry.
  - c. Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of **12 inches (300 mm)**, where floors, but not walls, are treated.
  - d. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.
- 6. Protective Floor Topping: Apply **1-inch- (25.4-mm-)** thick, protective topping over floor surfaces.

D. Field Quality Control

- 1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 13 00

## SECTION 07 16 16 00 - CRYSTALLINE WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for crystalline waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes crystalline waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete and concrete unit masonry.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for crystalline waterproofing.
2. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
3. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for crystalline waterproofing.
5. Field quality-control reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying crystalline waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit crystalline waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Waterproofing Materials

1. Crystalline Waterproofing: Prepackaged, gray-colored **OR** white-colored, **as directed**, proprietary blend of portland cement, specially treated sand, and active chemicals that, when mixed with water and applied, penetrates into concrete and concrete unit masonry and reacts chemically with the byproducts of cement hydration in the presence of water to develop crystalline growth within substrate capillaries to produce an impervious, dense, waterproof substrate; that has VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction; with properties meeting or exceeding the criteria specified below.

- a. Water Permeability: Maximum zero for water at 30 feet (9 m) when tested according to CE CRD-C 48.
- b. Compressive Strength: Minimum 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

B. Accessory Materials

1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
5. Polymer Admixture for Protective Topping: Polymer bonding agent and admixture designed to improve adhesion to prepared substrates and not to create a vapor barrier.
6. Water: Potable.

C. Mixes

1. Crystalline Waterproofing: Add prepackaged dry ingredients to water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Mix together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency.
2. Protective Topping: Measure, batch, and mix portland cement and sand in the proportion of 1:3 and water gaged with a polymer admixture. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation

1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately 1 inch (25.4 mm) deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.

- 1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
    - 2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
  - b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
    - 1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.
    - 2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
  - c. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Application
  1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
    - a. Saturate surface with water for several hours prior to application and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
    - b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Number of Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR Two OR Three, as directed**.
    - d. Application Method: Brush **OR** Spray, **as directed**. Apply to ensure that each coat fills voids and is in full contact with substrate or previous coat.
    - e. Dampen surface between coats.
  2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth **OR** Brushed **OR** Spray Textured, **as directed**.
  3. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three, **as directed**, days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  4. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
    - a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
      - 1) Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of **24 inches (600 mm)** for cast-in-place concrete and **48 inches (1200 mm)** for masonry.
      - 2) Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of **12 inches (300 mm)**, where floors, but not walls, are treated.
      - 3) Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.
  5. Protective Topping: Apply **1-inch- (25.4-mm-)** thick, protective topping over floor surfaces.
- D. Field Quality Control
  1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 16 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 16 19 00 - METAL-OXIDE WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal-oxide waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes metal-oxide waterproofing for positive or negative-side application to concrete, concrete unit masonry, and clay masonry.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions and installation instructions for metal-oxide waterproofing.
2. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
3. Product Certificates: For waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials, from manufacturer.
4. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for metal-oxide waterproofing.
5. Field quality-control reports.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying metal-oxide waterproofing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance, and that employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit metal-oxide waterproofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Proceed with waterproofing work only after pipe sleeves, vents, curbs, inserts, drains, and other projections through the substrate to be waterproofed have been completed. Proceed only after substrate defects, including honeycombs, voids, and cracks, have been repaired to provide a sound substrate free of forming materials, including reveal inserts.
3. Ambient Conditions: Proceed with waterproofing work only if temperature is maintained at **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** or above during work and cure period, and space is well ventilated and kept free of water.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Waterproofing Materials

1. Metal-Oxide Waterproofing Compound: A product specifically formulated for waterproofing concrete and masonry substrates; containing pulverized iron and a chemical oxidizing agent to cause the iron particles to rust and grow in size in the presence of water; with VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### B. Accessory Materials

1. Patching Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious repair mortar, crack filler, or sealant recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs,



reveals, and other imperfections; compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Plugging Compound: Factory-premixed cementitious compound with hydrophobic properties and recommended by waterproofing manufacturer; resistant to water and moisture but vapor permeable for all standard applications (vertical, overhead, and horizontal surfaces not exposed to vehicular traffic); compatible with substrate and other materials indicated; and VOC content complying with limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
4. Sand: ASTM C 144.
5. Water: Potable.

C. Mixes

1. Metal-Oxide Coats: Add metal-oxide waterproofing compound to portland cement, sand, and water according to manufacturer's written instructions. Blend together with mechanical mixer or by hand to required consistency for each coat.
2. Protection Coat: Field mix protection coat consisting of portland cement and sand as recommended by same manufacturer as metal-oxide waterproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions for application over waterproofing. Measure, batch, and mix materials with potable water. Blend together with mechanical mixer to required consistency.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for suitable conditions where waterproofing is to be applied.
2. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
3. Notify the Owner in writing of active leaks or defects that would affect system performance.

B. Preparation

1. Protect other work from damage caused by cleaning, preparation, and application of waterproofing. Provide temporary enclosure to confine spraying operation and to ensure adequate ambient temperatures and ventilation conditions for application.
2. Do not allow waterproofing, patching, and plugging materials to enter reveals or annular spaces intended for resilient sealants or gaskets, such as joint spaces between pipes and pipe sleeves.
3. Stop active water leaks with plugging compound according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Repair damaged or unsatisfactory substrate with patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. At holes and cracks in substrate, remove loosened chips and cut reveal with sides perpendicular to surface, not tapered, and approximately **1 inch (25.4 mm)** deep. Fill reveal with patching compound flush with surface.
5. Surface Preparation: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, mortar spatter, grease, oils, paint, curing compounds, and form-release agents to ensure that waterproofing bonds to surfaces.
  - a. Clean concrete surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.
    - 1) Scratch- and Float-Finished Concrete: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution according to ASTM D 4260.
    - 2) Prepare smooth-formed and trowel-finished concrete by mechanical abrading or abrasive-blast cleaning according to ASTM D 4259.
  - b. Clean concrete unit masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 4261.
    - 1) Lightweight Concrete Unit Masonry: Etch with 10 percent muriatic (hydrochloric) acid solution or abrade surface by wire brushing. Remove acid residue until pH readings of water after rinse are not more than 1.0 pH lower or 2.0 pH higher than pH of water before rinse.

- 2) Medium- and Normal-Weight Concrete Unit Masonry: Sandblast or bushhammer to a depth of **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- c. Clean clay masonry surfaces according to ASTM D 5703.
- d. Concrete Joints: Clean reveals according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Application

1. General: Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for application and curing.
  - a. Saturate surface for several hours prior to application with water and maintain damp condition until applying waterproofing. Remove standing water.
  - b. Apply waterproofing to surfaces indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Number of Metal-Oxide Coats: Number required for specified water permeability **OR Two OR Three, as directed.**
  - d. Application Method: Brush apply the waterproofing, vigorously working first coat onto the substrate and forcing the material into surface voids. Brush each subsequent coat into full contact with previous coat.
  - e. Dampen surface between coats.
  - f. Allow each coat to set for 24 hours between coats.
  - g. Protection Coat: Apply to a thickness of **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 1/4 inch (6 mm), as directed,** for walls and **1 inch (25 mm)** for floors.
2. Final Coat Finish: Smooth **OR** Brushed **OR** Textured, **as directed.**
3. Curing: Moist-cure waterproofing for three days immediately after final coat has set, followed by air drying prior to being placed in service, unless otherwise recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Waterproofing Treatment Extensions: Extend waterproofing treatment as follows:
  - a. Onto columns integral with treated walls.
  - b. Onto interior nontreated walls intersecting exterior treated walls, for a distance of **24 inches (600 mm)** for cast-in-place concrete and **48 inches (1200 mm)** for masonry.
  - c. Onto exterior walls and onto both exterior and interior columns, for a height of **12 inches (300 mm)**, where floors, but not walls, are treated.
  - d. Onto every substrate in areas indicated for treatment, including pipe trenches, pipe chases, pits, sumps, and similar offsets and features.

D. Field Quality Control

1. Inspection: Engage manufacturer's representative to inspect completed application and provide a written report that application complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 16 19 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 17 13 00 - BENTONITE WATERPROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for bentonite waterproofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Bentonite waterproofing.
  - b. Molded-sheet drainage panels.
  - c. Insulation.

#### C. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include product specifications and manufacturer's written installation instructions.
2. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for interface with other work.
3. Samples: For each of the following products, in sizes indicated:
  - a. Waterproofing: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
  - b. Drainage Panels: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
  - c. Insulation: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
4. Material Certificates: For each type of bentonite waterproofing, from manufacturer.
5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency **OR** a qualified testing agency, **as directed**, for bentonite waterproofing.
6. Field quality-control reports.
7. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### D. Quality Assurance

1. Source Limitations: Obtain bentonite waterproofing system from single source from single manufacturer. Obtain accessory products used with bentonite waterproofing from sources acceptable to bentonite waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### E. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original unopened and undamaged containers.
2. Store materials in a dry, well-ventilated space.
3. Remove and replace bentonite materials that have been prematurely exposed to moisture.

#### F. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit bentonite waterproofing to be installed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
  - a. Do not apply waterproofing materials to surfaces where ice or frost is visible. Do not apply bentonite waterproofing materials in areas with standing water.
  - b. Placing bentonite clay products in panel or composite form on damp surfaces is allowed if approved in writing by manufacturer.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Installer agree(s) to repair or replace components of bentonite waterproofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Geotextile/Bentonite Sheets

1. Geotextile/Bentonite Waterproofing: Minimum of **1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite clay granules between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together.
  - a. Grab Tensile Strength: **95 lbf (422 N)** according to ASTM D 4632.
2. Contaminant-Resistant Geotextile/Bentonite Waterproofing: Minimum of **1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite clay granules specially formulated for use in saltwater or contaminated ground water, between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together.
  - a. Grab Tensile Strength: **95 lbf (422 N)** according to ASTM D 4632.
3. Geotextile-Geomembrane/Bentonite Waterproofing: Minimum of **1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite clay granules between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together; and the woven fabric coated with a low-permeable polypropylene geomembrane.
  - a. Grab Tensile Strength: **95 lbf (422 N)** according to ASTM D 4632.
4. Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum of **1.1 lb/sq. ft. (5.4 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite clay granules bonded to nonwoven geotextile polypropylene fabric, with HDPE bonded to surface of nonwoven fabric.
  - a. Grab Tensile Strength: **120 lbf (534 N)** according to ASTM D 4632.
  - b. Puncture Resistance: **140 lbf (620 N)** according to ASTM D 4833.
  - c. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
5. Contaminant-Resistant Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum of **1.1 lb/sq. ft. (5.4 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite clay granules specially formulated for use in saltwater or contaminated ground water, bonded to nonwoven geotextile polypropylene fabric, with HDPE bonded to surface of nonwoven fabric.
  - a. Grab Tensile Strength: **120 lbf (534 N)** according to ASTM D 4632.
  - b. Puncture Resistance: **140 lbf (620 N)** according to ASTM D 4833.
  - c. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.

### B. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane

1. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum **90-mil- (2.3-mm-)** thick membrane consisting of a **12-mil- (0.5-mm-)** thick, HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay granules **78 mils (1.9 mm)** thick.
  - a. Puncture Resistance: **169 lbf (752 N)** according to ASTM E 154.
  - b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
2. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane with Protective Facing: Minimum **170-mil- (4.3-mm-)** thick membrane consisting of HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay granules and with a spun polypropylene facing.
  - a. Puncture Resistance: **169 lbf (752 N)** according to ASTM E 154.
  - b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
3. Composite HDPE/Bentonite-Polymer Membrane: Minimum **200-mil- (5-mm-)** thick membrane consisting of HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite-polymer clay granules.
  - a. Puncture Resistance: **75 lbf (334 N)** according to ASTM D 4833.
  - b. Vapor Permeance: 0.005 perms according to ASTM E 96.
4. Composite Gastight HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum **150-mil- (3.8-mm-)** thick membrane consisting of a **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick, HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay.

- a. Puncture Resistance: **169 lbf (752 N)** according to ASTM E 154.
  - b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
5. Composite Saline/Alkaline HDPE/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum **150-mil- (3.8-mm-)** thick membrane consisting of a **60-mil- (1.5-mm-)** thick, HDPE geomembrane liner bonded to a layer of bentonite clay granules.
  - a. Puncture Resistance: **169 lbf (752 N)** according to ASTM E 154.
  - b. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perms according to ASTM E 96.
- C. Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane
  1. Geotextile/Bentonite-Polymer Waterproofing: Minimum **250-mil- (6.4-mm-)** thick membrane of bentonite-polymer clay granules between two layers of geotextile polypropylene fabric, one woven and one nonwoven, needle punched and heat fused together.
    - a. Puncture Resistance: **75 lbf (334 N)** according to ASTM D 4833.
    - b. Vapor Permeance: 0.005 perms according to ASTM E 96.
- D. Bentonite Panels
  1. Standard Panels: **3/16-inch- (5-mm-)** thick, corrugated kraft-paper panels with a minimum of **1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite confined in corrugations of boards.
  2. Coated Panels: **3/16-inch- (5-mm-)** thick, corrugated kraft-paper panels specially coated to resist premature hydration due to incidental moisture; filled with a minimum of **1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m)** of bentonite.
  3. Contaminant-Resistant Panels: **3/16-inch- (5-mm-)** thick, corrugated kraft-paper panels with a minimum of **1.0 lb/sq. ft. (5 kg/sq. m)** of contaminant-resistant granular bentonite specially formulated for use in contaminated ground-water conditions; confined in corrugations of boards.
- E. Installation Accessories
  1. Granular Bentonite: Sodium bentonite clay containing a minimum of 90 percent montmorillonite (hydrated aluminum silicate), with a minimum of 90 percent passing a **No. 20 (0.85-mm)** sieve.
  2. Bentonite Mastic: Trowelable consistency, bentonite compound, specifically formulated for application at joints and penetrations.
  3. Granular Bentonite Tubes: Manufacturer's standard **2-inch- (50-mm-)** diameter, water-soluble tube containing approximately **1.5 lb/ft. (2.2 kg/m)** of bentonite; hermetically sealed; designed specifically for placing on wall footings at line of joint with exterior base of wall.
  4. Termination Bar: Extruded-aluminum or formed-stainless-steel bars with upper flange to receive sealant.
  5. Plastic Protection Sheet: Polyethylene sheeting complying with ASTM D 4397; thickness recommended by waterproofing manufacturer to suit application but at least **6 mils (0.15 mm)** thick.
  6. Cement Grout Patching Material: Manufacturer's recommended grout mix compatible with substrate being patched.
  7. Masonry Fasteners: Case-hardened nails or hardened-steel, powder-actuated fasteners. Depending on manufacturer's written requirements, provide **1/2- or 1-inch- (13- or 25-mm-)** diameter washers under fastener heads.
  8. Sealants: As recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer. Comply with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
  9. Tapes: Waterproofing manufacturer's recommended tape for joints between sheets, membranes, or panels.
  10. Adhesive: Water-based adhesive used to secure waterproofing to both vertical and horizontal surfaces.
  11. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners, and as follows:
    - a. Thickness: **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, nominal, for vertical applications; **1/4 inch (6 mm)**, nominal, elsewhere.
  12. Geotextile Protection Course: As recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
  13. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage".



14. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 70 (0.21-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a vertical flow rate of **9 to 15 gpm per foot (112 to 188 L/min. per m)**.
15. Woven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Manufactured composite subsurface drainage panels consisting of a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding **No. 40 (0.425-mm)** sieve laminated to one side with **OR** without, **as directed**, a polymeric film bonded to the other side of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core, with a horizontal flow rate not less than **2.8 gpm per foot (35 L/min. per m)**.
16. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square **OR** shiplap, **as directed**, edged.
  - a. Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - b. Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
  - c. Type V, **100-psi (690-kPa)** minimum compressive strength.
17. Unfaced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.
18. Geotextile-Faced Wall Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** minimum compressive strength; fabricated with tongue-and-groove edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels faced with nonwoven geotextile filter fabric.
19. Unfaced Plaza Deck Insulation Drainage Panels: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, Type VI, **40-psi (276-kPa)** **OR** Type VII, **60-psi (414-kPa)**, **as directed**, minimum compressive strength; unfaced; fabricated with shiplapped or channel edges and with one side having ribbed drainage channels.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate preparations affecting performance of bentonite waterproofing.
2. Verify that substrate is complete and that work that will penetrate waterproofing is complete and rigidly installed.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Coordinate work in the vicinity of waterproofing to ensure proper conditions for installing the waterproofing system and to prevent damage to waterproofing after installation.
2. Formed Concrete Surfaces: Remove fins and projections. Fill voids, rock pockets, form-tie holes, and other defects with bentonite mastic or cement grout patching material according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Horizontal Concrete Surfaces: Remove debris, standing water, oily substances, mud, and similar substances that could impair the bonding ability of concrete or the effectiveness of waterproofing. Fill voids, cracks greater than **1/8 inch (3 mm)**, honeycomb areas, and other defects with bentonite mastic or cement grout patching material according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Excavation Support and Protection System: If water is seeping, use plastic protection sheets or other suitable means to prevent wetting the bentonite waterproofing. Fill minor gaps and spaces **1/8 inch (3 mm)** wide or wider with wood, metal, concrete, or other appropriate filling material. Cover or fill large voids and crevices with cement mortar according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Installation, General

1. Install waterproofing and accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Apply granular bentonite around penetrations in horizontal surfaces and changes in plane according to manufacturer's details in preparation for granular bentonite tubes and mastic.
  - b. Apply granular bentonite tubes, bentonite mastic, or both at changes of plane, construction joints in substrate, projections, and penetrations.
2. Apply granular bentonite tubes continuously on footing against base of wall to be waterproofed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Protect waterproofing from damage and wetting before and during subsequent construction operations. Repair punctures, tears, and cuts according to manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Install protection course before backfilling or placing overburden when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

D. Geotextile/Bentonite Sheet Installation

1. General: Install a continuous layer of waterproofing sheets directly against concrete to be waterproofed. Lap ends and edges a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** on horizontal and vertical substrates. Stagger end joints between sheets a minimum of **24 inches (600 mm)**. Fasten seams by stapling to adjacent sheet or nailing to substrate.
2. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Place waterproofing sheets on compacted substrate with ends and edges lapped and stapled.
  - a. Install a layer of waterproofing sheets under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
3. Concrete Walls: Starting at bottom of wall, apply waterproofing sheets horizontally with primary backing side against wall. Secure with masonry fasteners spaced according to manufacturer's written instructions. Extend to bottom of footing, grade beam, or wall, and secure.
  - a. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing sheets to within **2 inches (50 mm)** of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.  
**OR**  
Termination at Grade: Fasten top edge of waterproofing sheets to wall and protect top edge with sheet metal counterflashing. Cover waterproofing with a lapped course of plastic protection sheets if backfilling does not proceed immediately.
4. Excavation Support and Protection (Permanent Shoring): Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates, using bentonite mastic and waterproofing sheets, according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for each configuration.
  - a. Install a layer of waterproofing sheets, with ends and edges lapped and nailed to shoring. Cover waterproofing with plastic protection sheets if needed for protection from precipitation; remove plastic sheets before placing concrete.
  - b. Inspect and repair waterproofing after reinforcing steel has been placed. Coordinate and control concrete placement to avoid damage to waterproofing.

E. Composite HDPE/Bentonite Membrane Installation

1. General: Install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane with ends and edges lapped a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)**. Stagger end joints between membranes. Seal joints with permanent seam tape.
2. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with HDPE side down and staple ends and edges.
  - a. Install under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
  - b. Protect waterproofing from damage caused by reinforcing bar supports with sharp edges.
3. Slabs: Starting at lowest point, install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)**.
4. Vertical Concrete or Masonry Walls: Apply mastic around penetrations and form continuous **2-inch (50-mm)** cant at intersection of footings and walls with mastic.



- a. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane horizontally, extending a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** onto the footing. Lap membrane ends and edges a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)**.
    - b. Secure membrane to wall with adhesive or washer-headed fasteners, and tape terminations of membrane at grade.
  5. Excavation Support and Protection: Cut, clean, and treat tiebacks and similar projections. Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates. If water is present, cover shoring and lagging with plastic protection sheets.
    - a. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and nailed to shoring.
  6. Horizontal Roofs, Plazas, and between Slabs: Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and taped a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)**.
    - a. Prime concrete substrates. Primer may be omitted on concrete surfaces that comply with requirements for dryness, surface texture, and freedom from imperfections.
    - b. Install bentonite side of membrane against the material to be waterproofed.
    - c. Terminations at Vertical Surfaces: Provide a fillet or cant at intersection of horizontal and vertical substrates. Extend waterproofing membrane to top of curb or to a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** above plane of waterproofing; secure with manufacturer's recommended tape.
    - d. Cover waterproofing with a plastic slip-sheet.
- F. Composite Geotextile-HDPE/Bentonite Membrane Installation
1. General: Install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane with ends and edges lapped a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)**. Stagger end joints between membranes. Seal joints with permanent seam tape.
  2. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with HDPE side down and staple ends and edges.
    - a. Install under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
    - b. Protect waterproofing from damage caused by reinforcing bar supports with sharp edges.
  3. Concrete Walls: Starting at bottom of wall, apply waterproofing membrane with HDPE side facing Installer; overlap sheets **3 inches (75 mm)**. Secure with powder-actuated fasteners or case-hardened nails. Extend to bottom of footing, grade beam, or wall, and secure.
    - a. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing membrane to within **2 inches (50 mm)** of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.
  4. Excavation Support and Protection (Permanent Shoring): Cut, clean, and treat tiebacks and similar projections. Encase tieback rods, nuts, and plates. If water is present, cover shoring and lagging with plastic protection sheets; remove plastic sheets before placing concrete.
    - a. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and mechanically secured to shoring.
    - b. Inspect and repair waterproofing membrane after reinforcing steel has been placed. Coordinate and control concrete placement to avoid damage to waterproofing.
  5. Horizontal Slabs, Roofs, and Plazas: Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped and taped a minimum of **3 inches (75 mm)**.
    - a. Clean overlap area and apply waterproof tape, rolling the exposed edge to seal to sheet below.
    - b. Turn edges up and seal to vertical surfaces.
    - c. Cover waterproofing with a plastic slip-sheet.
- G. Bentonite Panel Installation

1. General: Install a continuous layer of bentonite waterproofing panels with ends and edges lapped a minimum of **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** unless otherwise indicated. Stagger joints in adjoining panel rows.
    - a. Install a double layer of waterproofing panels, with ends and edges butted instead of lapped and with second layer of joints staggered over first. Staple panels together to hold them in place.
  2. Concrete Walls: Starting at bottom of wall, apply waterproofing panels with ends and edges lapped and with vertical joints staggered. Secure with fasteners or adhesive recommended in writing by manufacturer. Extend to bottom of footing, grade beam, or wall.
    - a. Horizontal-to-Vertical Transitions: Install granular bentonite tubes immediately before backfilling and compact backfill over the joint.
    - b. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing panels to within **2 inches (50 mm)** of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.  
**OR**  
Termination at Grade: Fasten top edge of waterproofing panels to wall and protect top edge with sheet metal counterflashing.
    - c. Cover waterproofing panels with a lapped course of plastic protection sheets; remove plastic sheets before backfilling.
- H. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel Installation
1. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall or deck substrate. Use adhesives or mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
    - a. For vertical applications, install board insulation **OR** protection course, **as directed**, before installing drainage panels.
- I. Insulation Installation
1. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness and insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within **3/4 inch (19 mm)** of projections and penetrations.
  2. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
- J. Field Quality Control
1. Inspection: Arrange for manufacturer's representative to inspect completed waterproofing installation before covering with other construction and provide written report that installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Remove and replace applications of bentonite waterproofing where inspection indicates that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  2. Flood Testing: Flood test each deck area for leaks, according to recommendations in ASTM D 5957, after completing waterproofing but before overlaying construction is placed. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug or dam drains, and flood with potable water.
    - a. Flood to an average depth of **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** with a minimum depth of **1 inch (25 mm)** but not exceeding a depth of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Maintain **2 inches (50 mm)** of clearance from top of membrane flashings.
    - b. Flood each area for 24 **OR** 48, **as directed**, hours.
    - c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood test, and make further repairs until waterproofing installation is watertight.
  3. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 17 13 00

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 19 13 00 - WATER REPELLENTS

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water repellents. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes penetrating and film-forming water-repellent coatings for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
  - a. Concrete (unpainted).
  - b. Cast stone.
  - c. Brick masonry.
  - d. Concrete unit masonry (unpainted and unglazed).
  - e. Portland cement plaster (stucco).
  - f. Stonework.

#### C. Performance Requirements

1. Performance Testing: Provide water repellents that comply with test-performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed by manufacturer **OR** based on Project-specific preconstruction testing, **as directed**, by a qualified independent testing agency on manufacturer's standard products applied to substrates simulating those on Project using same application methods to be used for Project.
  - a. Engage testing agency to perform preconstruction tests on laboratory mockups.
  - b. Select sizes and configurations of assemblies to adequately demonstrate capability of water repellents to comply with performance requirements.
  - c. Notify the Owner seven days in advance of the dates and times when assemblies will be constructed.
2. Absorption: Minimum 80 **OR** 90, **as directed**, percent reduction of absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
  - a. Brick: ASTM C 67.
  - b. Stone: ASTM C 97.
  - c. Concrete Unit Masonry: ASTM C 140.
  - d. Hardened Concrete: ASTM C 642.
3. Water-Vapor Transmission: Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 96.
4. Permeability: Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM D 1653.
5. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Maximum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, per ASTM E 514.
6. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water repellency after 2500 hours of weathering in comparison to specimens before weathering, per ASTM G 154.
  - a. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
  - b. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Product test reports.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.



#### F. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in Part 1.1 "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
  - a. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

### 1.2 PRODUCTS

#### A. Penetrating Water Repellents

1. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
2. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
3. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Pigmented, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
4. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, monomeric compound containing 20 percent or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with more than **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** of VOCs.
5. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
6. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
7. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes containing 10 percent or more solids; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with more than **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** of VOCs.
8. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blends with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
9. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blends with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
10. Proprietary-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins (silanes or siloxanes), polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
11. Proprietary-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins (silanes or siloxanes), polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.

#### B. Film-Forming Water Repellents

1. Silicone Sealer, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, polymerized, silicone-resin water repellent for dense substrates; with a solvent- or water-based solution containing not less than 3 and up to 5 percent solids by weight; and with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
2. Silicone-Sealer, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, polymerized, silicone-resin water repellent for dense substrates; with a solvent- or water-based solution containing not less than 3 and up to 5 percent solids by weight; and with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
3. Proprietary-Blend, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins, acrylics, polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
4. Proprietary-Blend, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, consisting of 1 or several different resins, acrylics, polymers, stearates, or oils plus other compounds or products of components; and with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.

5. Silicate, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear, with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
6. Acrylic, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Clear **OR** Pigmented, **as directed**, breathing coating of acrylic resins; with a water-based, solvent-based, or acrylic emulsion solution containing less than 15 percent solids by volume; and with **3.3 lb/gal. (400 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
  - a. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
7. Acrylic, Film-Forming Water Repellent: Pigmented, with **5 lb/gal. (600 g/L)** or less of VOCs.
  - a. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** Match samples **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of substances that might interfere with penetration or performance of water repellents. Test for moisture content, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure that surface is dry enough.
  - a. Cast-in-Place Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that could prevent adhesion or penetration of water repellents.
  - b. Clay Brick Masonry: Clean clay brick masonry per ASTM D 5703.
2. Test for pH level, according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure chemical bond to silicate minerals.
3. Protect adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live plants and grass.
4. Coordination with Sealants: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.
  - a. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those used in the work.
5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Application

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
2. Apply a heavy-saturation spray coating of water repellent on surfaces indicated for treatment using low-pressure spray equipment. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for using airless spraying procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Precast Concrete: At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent on precast concrete units may be completed before installing units. Mask sealant-bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.
3. Apply a second saturation spray coating, as directed, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

#### C. Cleaning

1. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Repair damage caused by water-repellent application. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 07 19 13 00

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 19 16 00	07 19 13 00	Water Repellents

---

NOT FOR BID



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 21 13 13 - MODIFIED BITUMOUS PROTECTED MEMBRANE ROOFING

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for modified bituminous protected membrane roofing. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes APP-modified and SBS-modified bituminous protected membrane roofing.

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
2. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus **25 deg F (14 deg C)**, measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
2. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
3. Roofing System Design: If membrane roofing system is to be designed to withstand uplift pressure established by ASCE/SEI 7, provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - a. Corner Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
  - c. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: as directed by the Owner.
4. FM Approvals Listing: If Project is FM Global insured or if FM Approvals requirements will set a minimum quality standard, provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - a. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-60 **OR** Class 1A-75 **OR** Class 1A-90 **OR** Class 1A-105 **OR** Class 1A-120, **as directed.**
  - b. Hail Resistance Rating: MH **OR** SH, **as directed.**
5. Energy Performance (if required for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance Index not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.  
**OR**  
Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with the DOE's ENERGY STAR requirements): Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.  
**OR**



Energy Performance (for roofs that must comply with California Energy Commission's CEC-Title 24): Provide roofing system with initial Solar Reflectance not less than 0.70 and Thermal Emittance not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - a. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - b. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - c. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
4. Samples: For the following products:
  - a. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
  - b. Roof insulation.
  - c. 10 lb (4.5 kg) of aggregate ballast in gradation and color indicated.
  - d. Roof paver, full sized, in each color and texture required.
5. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.
6. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
7. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
8. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES or applicable model code organization.
9. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.
10. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed **OR** FM Approvals approved, **as directed**, for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
3. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
4. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108, Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
5. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
6. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

2. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
    - a. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
  3. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
  4. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - a. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, roof pavers, and other components of membrane roofing system.
    - b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 15, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

- A. APP-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials
1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
  2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.  
**OR**  
Granule-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
- B. SBS-Modified Asphalt-Sheet Materials
1. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
  2. Smooth-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.  
**OR**



Granule-Surface Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

**OR**

Metal-Foil-Surfaced Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

- a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel, **as directed**.

#### C. Base-Sheet Materials

1. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.
  - a. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m) **OR** 40 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.95 kg/sq. m) **OR** 50 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.4 kg/sq. m) **OR** 60 lb/100 sq. ft. (2.9 kg/sq. m) **OR** 75 lb/100 sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m), **as directed**, minimum.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 4897, Type II, venting, nonperforated, heavyweight, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber base sheet with coarse granular surfacing or embossed venting channels on bottom surface.

**OR**

Base Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

#### D. Base-Ply Sheet Materials

1. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178, Type IV **OR** Type VI, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

#### E. Base Flashing Sheet Materials

1. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 2626, asphalt-saturated and -coated organic felt, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

**OR**

Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6164, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

2. Smooth-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6222, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade S, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
3. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet (for use with APP-modified roofing membranes): ASTM D 6222, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester

fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6223, Grade G, Type I or II, APP-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

- a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
4. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet (for use with SBS-modified roofing membranes): ASTM D 6164, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with polyester fabric) **OR** ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers) **OR** ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers), **as directed**; granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Granule Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Tan, **as directed**.
5. Metal-Foil-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6298, metal-foil surfaced SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - a. Foil Surfacing: Aluminum **OR** Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Aluminum, fluoropolymer coated finish, of color and gloss selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
6. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

F. Auxiliary Roofing Membrane Materials

1. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
  - a. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - 1) Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - 2) Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - 3) Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 4) Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - 5) Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
    - 6) Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - 7) Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - 8) Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
2. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
3. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III **OR** Type IV **OR** Type III or IV as recommended by roofing manufacturer for application, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
4. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
5. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing manufacturer for application.
6. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen, nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
7. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate, tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
8. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.  
**OR**  
Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, cellulosic-fiber insulation board.
9. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."



10. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated **OR** Slate, **as directed**, roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing **No. 8 (2.36-mm)** sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on **No. 40 (0.425-mm)** sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
11. Separator Sheet: Polyethylene sheet, **4 mils (0.1 mm)** thick, minimum.
12. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

G. Coating Materials

1. Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified, fibered **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, filled or fibered, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, asbestos free.  
**OR**  
Roof Coating: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, mineral-colloid-emulsified **OR** Class 2, chemically emulsified, **as directed**, asphalt emulsion, nonfibered.  
**OR**  
Roof Coating: ASTM D 2824, Type I, nonfibered **OR** Type III, fibered, asbestos-free, **as directed**, aluminum-pigmented asphaltic coating.  
**OR**  
Roof Coating: Acrylic elastomer emulsion coating, formulated for use on bituminous roof surfaces and complying with ASTM D 6083.  
a. Color: White **OR** Gray **OR** Buff, **as directed**.

H. Roof Insulation

1. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation, **as directed**.
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VI, **1.8 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m)** **OR** Type VII, **2.2 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m)**, **as directed**, with two or four edges rabbeted.
3. Mortar-Faced, Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type VI, **1.8-lb/cu. ft. (29-kg/cu. m)** minimum density, with tongue-and-groove edges on long dimension, and latex-modified cement mortar topping, **3/8 inch (9 mm)** thick, **4.5 lb/sq. ft. (19.5 kg/sq. m)** **OR** **15/16 inch (23 mm)** thick, **11 lb/sq. ft. (53.7 kg/sq. m)**, **as directed**.

I. Insulation Accessories

1. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
2. Protection Mat: Woven or nonwoven polypropylene, polyolefin, or polyester fabric, water permeable and resistant to UV degradation, type and weight as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.
3. Metal Securement System: Perimeter securement flashing and strapping fabricated from stainless steel, a minimum of **0.031 inch (0.8 mm)** thick. Provide fasteners as recommended by mortar-faced insulation manufacturer.

J. Ballast

1. Aggregate Ballast: Washed, crushed stone or smooth stone that will withstand weather exposure without significant deterioration and will not contribute to membrane degradation; of the following size:
  - a. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 5, ranging in size from **1/2 to 1 inch (13 to 25 mm)**.
  - b. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 4, ranging in size from **3/4 to 1-1/2 inches (19 to 38 mm)**.
  - c. Size: ASTM D 448, Size 2, ranging in size from **1-1/2 to 2-1/2 inches (38 to 63 mm)**.
2. Interlocking Roof Pavers: Interlocking, lightweight concrete units, specially factory cast for use as roof ballast; grooved back, with four-way drainage capability; beveled, doweled, or otherwise profiled. Size and weight shall be as directed.
  - a. Compressive Strength: **2500 psi (17 MPa)** **OR** **5000 psi (34 MPa)**, **as directed**, minimum.
  - b. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.



3. Roof Pavers: Heavyweight, hydraulically pressed, concrete units, square edged **OR** with top edges beveled **3/16 inch (5 mm)**, **as directed**, factory cast for use as roof pavers; absorption not greater than 5 percent, ASTM C 140; no breakage and maximum 1 percent mass loss when tested for freeze-thaw resistance, ASTM C 67; and as follows:
  - a. Size: **24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm)**. Manufacture pavers to dimensional tolerances of plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** in length, height, and thickness.
  - b. Weight: Weight shall be as directed.
  - c. Compressive Strength: **7500 psi (52 MPa) OR 6500 psi (45 MPa)**, **as directed**, minimum; ASTM C 140.
  - d. Colors and Textures: As indicated by manufacturer's designations **OR** As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - e. Paver Supports: Integral corner pedestals.  
**OR**  
Paver Supports: Paver manufacturer's standard SBR rubber, high-density polyethylene, or polyurethane paver support assembly, including fixed-height **OR** adjustable or stackable, **as directed**, pedestals, shims, and spacer tabs for joint spacing of **1/8 inch (3 mm) OR 3/16 inch (5 mm) OR 1/8 to 3/16 inch (3 to 5 mm)**, **as directed**.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
  - a. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - b. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations.
  - c. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - d. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - 1) Test for moisture by pouring **1 pint (0.5 L)** of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
  - e. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### B. Preparation

1. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
2. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
3. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of **3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m)** and allow primer to dry.

#### C. Roofing Membrane Installation, General

1. If referencing NRCA's roof assembly identification matrix system, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - a. Install roofing system **MBA OR S, as directed, -4-C-T OR M OR L, as directed, -P**, according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and requirements in this Section.





2. For roof system that exceeds requirements of NRCA's roof assemblies, install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
    - a. Membrane: A (APP) **OR** S (SBS), **as directed**.
    - b. Deck Type: C (concrete or nonnailable).
    - c. Adhering Method: T (torched) **OR** M (mopped) **OR** L (cold-applied adhesive), **as directed**.
    - d. Base Sheet: One.
    - e. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: One.
    - f. Number of Modified Asphalt Sheets: Two.
    - g. Surfacing Type: P (protected).
  3. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
  4. Where roof slope exceeds **1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24)** **OR** **3/4 inch per 12 inches (1:18)**, **as directed**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
    - a. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
  6. Coordinate installing roofing system so components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
    - a. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt with joints and edges sealed.
    - b. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
    - c. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
  7. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within **25 deg F (14 deg C)** of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.  
**OR**  
 Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  8. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.
- D. Base-Sheet Installation
1. Install lapped base sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
    - a. Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.  
**OR**  
 Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.
- E. Base-Ply Sheet Installation
1. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend glass-fiber base-ply sheets over and terminate beyond cants. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt, to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.
- F. Modified Bituminous Membrane Installation

1. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane sheet and cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
    - a. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
  2. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
    - a. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
    - b. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
  3. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.
- G. Flashing And Stripping Installation
1. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloping and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
    - a. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
    - b. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive, **as directed**.  
**OR**  
Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt **OR** cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer, **as directed**.
    - c. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.  
**OR**  
Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than **425 deg F (218 deg C)**. Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
  2. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of **8 inches (200 mm)** above roofing membrane and **4 inches (100 mm)** onto field of roofing membrane.
  3. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
    - a. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement, **as directed**.
  4. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
  5. Roof Drains: Set **30-by-30-inch (760-by-760-mm)** metal flashing in bed of roofing-manufacturer-approved asphaltic adhesive on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm) OR 6 inches (150 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
    - a. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Coating Installation
1. Apply coatings to base flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions, by spray, roller, or other suitable application method.
- I. Insulation Installation
1. Loosely lay separator sheet over cooled roofing membrane, with minimum **2-inch (50-mm)** side laps and **4-inch (100-mm)** end laps.

2. Loosely lay board insulation units over roofing membrane, with long joints of insulation in continuous straight lines and with end joints staggered between rows. Abut edges and ends between units.
3. Install one or more layers of insulation to achieve required thickness over roofing membrane. Cut and fit to within **3/4 inch (19 mm)** of projections and penetrations.
  - a. Where overall insulation thickness is **2 inches (50 mm)** or more, install required thickness in two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered over joints of previous layer a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)** in each direction.
4. Install geotextile fabric over insulation, overlapping edges and ends at least **12 inches (300 mm)**. Do not lap ends of fabric sheets within **72 inches (1800 mm)** of roof perimeter. Extend fabric **2 to 3 inches (50 to 75 mm)** above ballast at perimeter and penetrations. Apply additional layer of fabric around penetrations to prevent aggregate from getting between penetration and insulation. Do not cover drains or restrict water flow to drains.

J. Ballast Installation

1. To roofed area, apply aggregate ballast uniformly over geotextile fabric at rate required by insulation manufacturer, but not less than the following, carefully spreading aggregate to not damage roofing membrane and base flashings. Install roof-paver ballast according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions, **as directed**. Apply ballast as insulation is installed, leaving roofing membrane insulated and ballasted at end of workday.
  - a. Ballast (Dow's "Standard Design"): **15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) OR 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), as directed**, Size 5 aggregate within **102 inches (2600 mm)** of roof perimeter and corners and **24 inches (600 mm)** of roof penetrations; **10 lb/sq. ft. (50 kg/sq. m)**, Size 5 aggregate elsewhere.
    - 1) If partially replacing aggregate ballast with roof pavers, install one row of roof pavers in lieu of aggregate ballast at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations.
  - b. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #1"): **15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) OR 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), as directed**, Size 4 aggregate within **102 inches (2600 mm)** of roof perimeter and corners and **24 inches (600 mm)** of roof penetrations; **12 lb/sq. ft. (60 kg/sq. m)**, Size 4 aggregate elsewhere.
  - c. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #1") (if combining aggregate ballast with roof pavers): **12 lb/sq. ft. (60 kg/sq. m)**, Size 4 aggregate to field of roof; install two rows of roof pavers at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
  - d. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #2") (for aggregate ballast with roof pavers at corners): **15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) OR 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), as directed**, Size 2 aggregate within **102 inches (2600 mm)** of roof perimeter and **24 inches (600 mm)** of roof penetrations; **13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m)**, Size 2 aggregate to field of roof; and install three rows of roof pavers at corners of roof according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
  - e. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #2") (if combining aggregate ballast with roof pavers at roof perimeters, corners, and penetrations): **13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m)**, Size 2 aggregate to field of roof and install three rows of concrete pavers at roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first perimeter and perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
  - f. Ballast (for Dow's "Design #3"): **15 lb/sq. ft. (75 kg/sq. m) OR 20 lb/sq. ft. (100 kg/sq. m), as directed**, Size 2 aggregate within **24 inches (600 mm)** of roof penetrations; **13 lb/sq. ft. (65 kg/sq. m)**, Size 2 aggregate to field of roof; and install four rows of roof pavers at roof perimeter and corners according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten securement strapping to center of first two perimeter and perimeter corner rows of roof pavers.
2. Walkway Pavers: Install walkways formed from one row **OR** two rows, **as directed**, of roof pavers, loosely laid and butted.

K. Roof-Paver Installation

1. Interlocking Roof Pavers: Install interlocking roof pavers over roofed area according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #1", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
3. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #2", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten roof-paver metal straps to center of first perimeter and first perimeter corner row of roof pavers.
4. For Dow's Technote 508 "Standard Design" and "Design #3", install roof pavers over roofed area according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions. Mechanically fasten roof-paver metal straps to center of first two perimeters and first two perimeter corner rows of roof pavers.
5. Install roof pavers on pedestals set according to pedestal manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Mortar-Faced Board Insulation Installation

1. Install mortar-faced board insulation loosely laid, according to manufacturer's written instructions, with tongue-and-groove joints nested. Stagger end joints of adjoining rows and abut insulation.
  - a. Mechanically fasten metal securement strapping at penetrations and at perimeter edges of mortar-faced board insulation.
  - b. Over mortar-faced board insulation, install roof pavers on roof perimeter and corners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install one row **OR** two rows, **as directed**, of **24-inch- (600-mm-)** wide roof pavers to roof perimeter, corners, and penetrations according to mortar-faced board insulation manufacturer's written instructions.

M. Field Quality Control

1. Testing Agency: Perform tests and inspections and to prepare reports.
2. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
  - a. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
  - b. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - c. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - a. Notify the Owner and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
4. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - a. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

N. Protecting And Cleaning

1. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner and Owner.
2. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Final Completion and according to warranty requirements.
3. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 21 13 13

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 21 13 13	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 05 13 00	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 53 16 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 05 13 00a	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 05 13 00b	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 13	07 05 13 00c	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 05 13 00	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 53 16 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 05 13 00a	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 05 13 00b	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 16	07 05 13 00c	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 05 13 00	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 53 16 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 05 13 00a	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 05 13 00b	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 21 13 19	07 05 13 00c	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 21 16 00 - BUILDING INSULATION

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for building insulation. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. This Section includes the following:
  - a. Perimeter insulation under slabs-on-grade.
  - b. Perimeter wall insulation (supporting backfill).
  - c. Cavity-wall insulation.
  - d. Concealed building insulation.
  - e. Exposed building insulation.
  - f. Loose-fill building insulation.
  - g. Self-supported, spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
  - h. Radiant barriers.
  - i. Vapor retarders.
  - j. Sound attenuation insulation.

#### C. Definitions

1. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. Plenum Rating: Provide glass-fiber **OR** slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber, **as directed**, insulation where indicated in ceiling plenums whose test performance is rated as follows for use in plenums as determined by testing identical products per "Erosion Test" and "Mold Growth and Humidity Test" described in UL 181, or on comparable tests from another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - a. Erosion Test Results: Insulation shows no visible evidence of cracking, flaking, peeling, or delamination of interior surface of duct assembly, after testing for 4 hours at **2500-fpm (13-m/s)** air velocity.
  - b. Mold Growth and Humidity Test Results: Insulation shows no evidence of mold growth, delamination, or other deterioration due to the effects of high humidity, after inoculation with *Chaetomium globosum* on all surfaces and storing for 60 days at 100 percent relative humidity in the dark.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: Full-size units for each type of exposed insulation indicated.
3. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, **as directed**: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
    - 1) Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
4. Product test reports.
5. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation.

#### F. Quality Assurance



1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - a. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
  - b. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
  - c. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
2. Protect plastic insulation as follows:
  - a. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  - b. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
  - c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation

1. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively:
  - a. Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m), unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Type X, 1.30 lb/cu. ft. (21 kg/cu. m).
  - c. Type VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m).
  - d. Type VII, 2.20 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m).
  - e. Type V, 3.00 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m).
2. Extruded-Polystyrene Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below and fabricated with one side having a matrix of drainage and edge channels.
  - a. Type IV, 1.60 lb/cu. ft. (26 kg/cu. m).
  - b. Type VI, 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m).
  - c. Type VII, 2.20 lb/cu. ft. (35 kg/cu. m).
3. Fabric-Faced, Extruded-Polystyrene Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, Type VI, with a density of 1.80 lb/cu. ft. (29 kg/cu. m), faced with insulation manufacturer's standard nonwoven filtration fabric and fabricated with 1 side having a matrix of drainage and edge channels.
4. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and density indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively:
  - a. Type I, 0.90 lb/cu. ft. (15 kg/cu. m).
  - b. Type VIII, 1.15 lb/cu. ft. (18 kg/cu. m).
  - c. Type II, 1.35 lb/cu. ft. (22 kg/cu. m).
5. Foil-Faced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type I, Class 1 **OR** 2, **as directed**, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed on unfaced core on thicknesses up to 4 inches (101 mm).

B. Cellular-Glass Insulation

1. Cellular-Glass Insulation: ASTM C 552 Type I (flat block) **OR** IV (board) faced on both sides with manufacturer's special kraft-paper sheets laminated to glass block with asphalt, **as directed**, with unfaced insulation passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

C. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation

1. Unfaced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA; ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; or ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
  - a. Nominal density of 1.0 lb/cu. ft. (16 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 3.7 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (25.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - b. Nominal density of not less than 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m) nor more than 1.7 lb/cu. ft. (27 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
2. Foil-Faced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; faced on 1 side with foil-scrim-kraft vapor retarder; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
  - a. Nominal density of 1.0 lb/cu. ft. (16 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 3.7 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (25.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - b. Nominal density of not less than 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m) nor more than 1.7 lb/cu. ft. (27 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
3. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
  - a. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft. (36 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - b. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - c. Nominal density of 4.25 lb/cu. ft. (68 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - d. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.5 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
4. Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; faced on 1 side with foil-scrim-kraft or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
  - a. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft. (36 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - b. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - c. Nominal density of 4.25 lb/cu. ft. (68 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - d. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of not less than 4.34 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.1 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
5. Glass-Mat-Faced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; faced on 1 side with black glass-fiber mat or black polymer finish; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
  - a. Nominal density of 1.5 lb/cu. ft. (24 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.2 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.1 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - b. Nominal density of 2.25 lb/cu. ft. (36 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - c. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft. (48 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (29.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
  - d. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), thermal resistivity of 4.5 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (31.2 K x m/W at 24 deg C).

D. Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation

1. Unfaced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and 0, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
    - a. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m), Types IA and IB, thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
    - b. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), Type II, thermal resistivity of 4.16 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (28.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
    - c. Nominal density of 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m), Type III, thermal resistivity of 4.35 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.2 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
    - d. Fiber Color: Regular color, unless otherwise indicated.
    - e. Fiber Color: Darkened, where indicated.
  2. Foil-Faced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612; faced on 1 side with foil-scrim or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 5, respectively; and of the following nominal density and thermal resistivity:
    - a. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft. (64 kg/cu. m), Types IA and IB, thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (27.7 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
    - b. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m), Type II, thermal resistivity of 4.16 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (28.8 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
    - c. Nominal density of 8 lb/cu. ft. (128 kg/cu. m), Type III, thermal resistivity of 4.35 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F (30.2 K x m/W at 24 deg C).
- E. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation
1. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
  2. Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene **OR** polypropylene-scrim-kraft, **as directed**, vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.
  3. Where glass-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt or roll form with thermal resistances indicated:
    - a. 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C) **OR** 13 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (2.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C), **as directed**.
    - b. 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
    - c. 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
    - d. 6-1/2 inches (165 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 21 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.7 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
    - e. 9-1/2 inches (241 mm) **OR** 10 inches (254 mm) **OR** 10-1/4 inches (260 mm), **as directed**, thick with a thermal resistance of 30 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (5.2 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
- F. Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Blanket Insulation
1. Unfaced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
  2. Faced, Slag-Wool-Fiber/Rock-Wool-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame spread of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.

3. Where slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt form with thermal resistances indicated:
  - a. 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 6 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (1 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
  - b. 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 13 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (2.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
  - c. 4 inches (101 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 16 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (2.8 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
  - d. 5-1/4 inches (133 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
  - e. 6 inches (152 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 22 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu at 75 deg F (3.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
- G. Loose-Fill Insulation
  1. Cellulosic-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 739, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.
  2. Glass-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type I for pneumatic application or Type II for poured application; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5.
- H. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation
  1. Self-Supported, Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: ASTM C 1149, Type I (materials applied with liquid adhesive; suitable for either exposed or enclosed applications), **OR** Type II (materials containing a dry adhesive activated by water during installation; intended only for enclosed or covered applications), **OR** Type III (materials containing an adhesive mixed with water during application; intended for application on attic floors), **as directed**, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.
- I. Radiant Barriers
  1. Interior Radiation Control Coating: ASTM C 1321. Silver-colored, not thickness-dependent, low-emissivity solvent-based **OR** water-based, **as directed**, coating, formulated for adherence to substrates indicated and with a surface emittance value of 0.25 or less as measured per ASTM C 1371.
  2. Sheet Radiant Barriers: ASTM C 1313 and as follows:
    - a. Sheet Construction: Foil on one side of substrate **OR** Foil on both sides of substrate **OR** Vacuum metallizing on substrate, **as directed**.
    - b. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5 and 10, respectively.
    - c. Water-Vapor Transmission: 1 perm, maximum **OR** 5 perms or greater, **as directed**.
- J. Vapor Retarders
  1. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
  2. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft. (12 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
  3. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb/1000 sq. ft. (10 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 perm (7.56 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively.
  4. Foil-Polyester-Film Vapor Retarders: 2 layers of 0.5-mil- (0.013-mm-) thick polyester film laminated to an inner layer of 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick aluminum foil, with maximum water-vapor transmission rate in flat condition of 0.0 g/h x sq. m and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5.





5. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
6. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.
7. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type I, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and Use O related to vapor-barrier-related substrates.
8. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and with demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

#### K. Auxiliary Insulating Materials

1. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by insulation manufacturers for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor-retarder facings.
2. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.
3. Asphalt Coating for Cellular-Glass Block Insulation: Cutback asphalt or asphalt emulsion of type recommended by manufacturer of cellular-glass block insulation.
4. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide cross ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

#### L. Insulation Fasteners

1. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  - b. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
  - a. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch- (0.762-mm-) thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  - b. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) square or in diameter.
  - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
    - 1) Crawlspace.
    - 2) Ceiling plenums.
    - 3) Attic spaces.
    - 4) Where indicated.
4. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 1 inch (25 mm) OR 2 inches (50 mm) OR 3 inches (76 mm), as directed, between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
5. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

B. Installation, General

1. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
2. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
3. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
4. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
5. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

C. Installation Of Perimeter And Under-Slab Insulation

1. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesive recommended by insulation manufacturer.
  - a. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of **24 inches (610 mm)** below exterior grade line.
2. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
3. Protect below-grade insulation on vertical surfaces from damage during backfilling by applying protection course with joints butted. Set in adhesive according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Protect top surface of horizontal insulation from damage during concrete work by applying protection course with joints butted.

D. Installation Of Cavity-Wall Insulation

1. On units of foam-plastic board insulation, install pads of adhesive spaced approximately **24 inches (610 mm)** o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates indicated.
  - a. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry".
2. Install units of cellular-glass insulation with closely fitting joints using method indicated:
  - a. Gob Method: Apply 4 gobs of adhesive per unit and set units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown. Apply gobs at each corner; spread gobs to form pads **4 inches (101 mm)** in diameter by **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick.
  - b. Serrated-Trowel Method: Apply adhesive to entire surface of each cellular-glass insulation unit with serrated trowel complying with insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
  - c. Coat edges of insulation units with full bed of adhesive to seal joints between insulation and between insulation and adjoining construction.
  - d. Coat exterior face (cold face) of installed cellular-glass block insulation course with asphalt coating.

E. Installation Of General Building Insulation

1. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
2. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
3. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm-in-winter side **OR** in location indicated, **as directed**, of construction, unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
4. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - a. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - b. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - c. Maintain **3-inch (76-mm)** clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
  - d. Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
  - e. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed **96 inches (2438 mm)**, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  - f. For wood-framed construction, install mineral-fiber blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
    - 1) With faced blankets having stapling flanges, secure insulation by inset, stapling flanges to sides of framing members.  
**OR**  
With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
5. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
  - a. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
  - b. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
  - c. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
  - d. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
6. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction where indicated on Drawings according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Retain insulation in place by metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated between insulation and glass.
  - b. Install insulation where it contacts perimeter fire-containment system to prevent insulation from bowing under pressure from perimeter fire-containment system.
7. Place loose-fill insulation into spaces indicated, by pouring **OR** by machine blowing, **as directed**, to comply with ASTM C 1015. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
  - a. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with the Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association's Special Report #3, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."
8. Apply self-supported, spray-applied cellulosic insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make it flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

9. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately **2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m).**
- F. Installation Of Insulation In Ceilings For Sound Attenuation
  1. Install **3-inch- (76-mm-)** thick, unfaced glass-fiber **OR** slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber, **as directed**, blanket insulation over suspended ceilings at partitions in a width that extends insulation **48 inches (1219 mm)** on either side of partition.  
**OR**  
Install **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** thick, unfaced glass-fiber **OR** slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber, **as directed**, blanket insulation over suspended ceilings so that insulation extends over entire ceiling.
- G. Installation Of Radiant Barriers
  1. Install interior radiation control coating system according to ASTM C 1321.
  2. Install sheet radiant barriers in locations indicated according to ASTM C 1158.
- H. Installation Of Vapor Retarders
  1. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
  2. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than two wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners **16 inches (400 mm)** o.c.
  3. Before installing vapor retarder, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
  4. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
  5. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.
  6. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.
- I. Protection
  1. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 21 16 00



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 21 19 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 21 23 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 21 26 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 21 29 00	07 21 16 00	Building Insulation
07 22 16 00	07 51 13 00	Built-Up Asphalt Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 05 13 00	Built-Up Coal-Tar Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 53 16 00	EPDM Membrane Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 05 13 00a	CSPE Membrane Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 05 13 00b	APP-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing
07 22 16 00	07 05 13 00c	SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 24 13 00 - POLYMER-BASED EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for polymer-based exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS). Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over concrete, masonry, exterior cement board, gypsum sheathing, and plywood sheathing.
  - b. Prefabricated panels consisting of EIFS applied over exterior cement board and gypsum sheathing on metal framing.
2. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors and other attachment devices to be cast in concrete and embedded in masonry assemblies.

#### C. System Description

1. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
  - a. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
  - b. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish.
2. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
  - a. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of **1-inch- (25.4-mm-)** thick EIFS mounted on **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)** thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to **528 quarts (500 L)** of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
  - b. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01.
  - c. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples per ICC-ES AC219 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000 hours when viewed under 5 times magnification per ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154 **OR** ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 155, **as directed**.
  - d. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01 **OR** 10 cycles per ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
  - e. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to **2-by-2-inch (50.8-by-50.8-mm)** clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.

- f. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC219.
  - g. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per EIMA 101.03 **OR** ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
  - h. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of **1-inch- (25.4-mm-)** thick EIFS mounted on **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)** thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded-polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at **6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa)** of air pressure difference or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per EIMA 101.02.
  - i. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of **1-inch- (25.4-mm-)** thick EIFS mounted on **1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-)** thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days per ASTM D 2247.
  - j. Wind-Driven-Rain Resistance: Resist wind-driven rain according to ICC-ES AC219.
  - k. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of **1-inch- (25.4-mm-)** thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
    - 1) Standard Impact Resistance: **25 to 49 inch-lb (2.8 to 5.6 J).**
    - 2) Medium Impact Resistance: **50 to 89 inch-lb (5.7 to 10.1 J).**
    - 3) High Impact Resistance: **90 to 150 inch-lb (10.2 to 17 J).**
    - 4) Ultra-High Impact Resistance: More than **150 inch-lb (17 J).**
  - l. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC219 when tested per ASTM E 330.
3. Performance of Prefabricated Panels: Prefabricated panels shall be designed as follows and withstand the structural performance indicated for Class PB EIFS and thermal movement limits indicated below without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- a. Delegated Design: Design prefabricated panels, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
  - b. Structural Performance: EIFS shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7.
    - 1) Wind Loads: Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Deflection Limits: Design prefabricated panels to withstand design loads without deflections greater than 1/240.
  - d. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    - 1) Temperature Change (Range): **100 deg F (55 deg C).**

E. Submittals

- 1. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
- 2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, including printed statement of VOC content.
- 3. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, lifting points for prefabricated panels, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
- 4. Panel Schedule: For prefabricated panel fabrication.
- 5. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- 6. Delegated-Design Submittal: For prefabricated panels indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 7. Material or product certificates.

8. Product test reports.
  9. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: For joint sealants from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:
    - a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
    - b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
  10. Field quality-control reports and special inspection reports.
  11. Evaluation reports
  12. Maintenance data.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.
  3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Per ASTM E 119.
    - b. Full-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per IBC Standard.
    - c. Full-Scale Diversified Fire Test: Per ASTM E 108 modified for testing vertical walls.
    - d. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per NFPA 285 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
    - e. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
    - f. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
    - g. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
  2. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
    - a. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
    - b. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
    - c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.



## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Materials

1. Compatibility: Provide adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
2. Prefabricated Panels: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing" for metal framing and with requirements in Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing and weather-resistant sheathing paper.
3. Exterior Cement Board: Not less than **5/16-inch- (8-mm-)** OR **7/16-inch- (11-mm-)**, as directed, thick, fiber cement board complying with ASTM C 1186, Type A, for exterior applications.
  - a. Fasteners: Wafer-head or flat-head steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954, with an organic-polymer coating or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 500 hours per ASTM B 117.
    - 1) Size and Length: As recommended by sheathing manufacturer for type and thickness of sheathing board to be attached.
4. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner with VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
5. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, fully self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
6. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24); and complying with one of the following:
  - a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, and polymer-based adhesive specified for base coat.
  - b. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
  - c. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation designed for adhesive attachment of insulation to substrates of type indicated, as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
7. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
  - a. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.
  - b. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  - c. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than **24 by 48 inches (610 by 1219 mm)** and in thickness indicated, but not more than **4 inches (102 mm)** thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
  - d. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
8. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
  - a. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m)**.
  - b. Intermediate-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **10 oz./sq. yd. (339 g/sq. m)** OR **12.0 oz./sq. yd. (407 g/sq. m)**, as directed.
  - c. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **15 oz./sq. yd. (509 g/sq. m)**.
  - d. Heavy-Duty Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **20 oz./sq. yd. (678 g/sq. m)**.
  - e. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **3.75 oz./sq. yd. (127 g/sq. m)**.
  - f. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m)**.
  - g. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **7.2 oz./sq. yd. (244 g/sq. m)**.



9. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following:
  - a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
  - b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
  - c. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
  - d. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation of polymer-emulsion adhesive and inert fillers that is ready to use without adding other materials.
10. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24) complying with one of the following:
  - a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
  - b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
11. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
12. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating **OR** standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance **OR** siliconized acrylic-based coating, **as directed**, complying with the following:
  - a. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
  - b. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, and fillers used with stone particles for embedding in finish coat to produce an applied-aggregate finish.
    - 1) Aggregate: Marble chips of size and color as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  - c. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
  - d. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
13. Water: Potable.
14. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; selected for properties of pullout, tensile, and shear strength required to resist design loads of application indicated; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and of the following description:
  - a. For attachment to steel studs from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.
  - b. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than **0.0179 inch (0.45 mm)** in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.
  - c. For attachment to wood framing members and plywood sheathing, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002, Type W.
  - d. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
  - e. For attachment, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners suitable for substrate.
15. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.
  - a. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.



- b. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
- c. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
- d. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
- e. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.

**B. Elastomeric Sealants**

- 1. Elastomeric Sealant Products: Provide EIFS manufacturer's listed and recommended chemically curing, elastomeric sealant that is compatible with joint fillers, joint substrates, and other related materials, and complies with requirements for products and testing indicated in ASTM C 1481 and with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for products corresponding to description indicated below:
  - a. Multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant.
  - b. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone sealant.
  - c. Provide sealants, used inside the weatherproofing system, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2. Preformed Foam Sealant Products: Provide sealant compatible with adjacent materials and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
- 3. Sealant Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

**C. Mixing**

- 1. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

**D. Panel Fabrication**

- 1. Panel Framing: Fabricate panel framing to comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing".
  - a. Connect panel framing by welding unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Connections: Provide connections capable of adjustment, complying with erection tolerance requirements, to anchor panels to structure.
- 2. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with requirements in "Exterior Cement-Board Installation" Article.
- 3. EIFS Application: Apply EIFS to sheathed metal-framed panels to comply with requirements in "Trim Installation," "Insulation Installation," "Base-Coat Installation," and "Finish-Coat Installation" articles and as follows:
  - a. Wrap base coat and reinforcing mesh at edges of panels and extend coverage not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** over backs of panels unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Wrap base coat and reinforcing mesh at edges of panels and extend coverage not less than full thickness to cover edges of metal framing unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Continue finish coat around corners at edges of panels, unless otherwise indicated, and extend to location indicated for sealant application. Do not extend finish coat over surfaces where sealant will be applied.
  - d. Continue finish coat around corners at edges of panels and extend over edges to cover base coat unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Panel Fabrication Tolerances: Comply with the following:
  - a. Overall Height and Width: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
  - b. Cumulative Height and Width over Length of Building: Not more than **3/8 inch (9.6 mm)**.
  - c. Openings within One Unit: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)** for window and door frames.

- d. Out of Square: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
- e. Locations of Reveals and Architectural Features: Plus or minus **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
- f. Thickness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- g. Flatness: Not more than **1/8 inch in 8 feet (3.2 mm in 2.4 m)** across face of panel.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

- 1. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
- 2. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- 3. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.
  - a. Concrete Substrates: Provide clean, dry, neutral-pH substrate for insulation installation. Verify suitability of substrate by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

#### B. Exterior Cement-Board Installation

- 1. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with cement-board manufacturer's written instructions and evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Install board with steel drill screws spaced no more than **8 inches (203 mm)** o.c. along framing with perimeter fasteners at least **3/8 inch (9.6 mm)** but less than **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)** from edges of boards.

#### C. EIFS Installation, General

- 1. Comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

#### D. Substrate Protection Application

- 1. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
- 2. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: Apply over sloped surfaces **OR** window sills **OR** parapets **OR** where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, to protect substrates from degradation.
- 3. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to protect wall assembly from degradation. Prime substrates, if required, and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

#### E. Trim Installation

- 1. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at window sills, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
  - a. Drip Screed/Track: Use at bottom edges of EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Window Sill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.
  - e. Parapet Cap Flashing: Use where indicated on Drawings.

#### F. Insulation Installation

- 1. Board Insulation: Adhesively **OR** Mechanically **OR** Adhesively and mechanically, **as directed**, attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:

- a. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** for factory mixed and not less than **3/8 inch (9.6 mm)** for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
- b. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
- c. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
- d. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate by method complying with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
  - 1) Steel Framing: **5/16 inch (8 mm)**.
  - 2) Wood Framing: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - 3) Concrete and Masonry: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
- e. Apply insulation over dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
- f. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
- g. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
- h. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than **12 inches (300 mm)** wide or **6 inches (150 mm)** high. Offset joints not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from corners of window and door openings and not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** from aesthetic reveals.
  - 1) Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from horizontal and **4 inches (100 mm)** from vertical joints in sheathing.
  - 2) Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
- i. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
- j. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
- k. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
- l. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than **1/32 inch (0.8 mm) OR 1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, **as directed**, from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- m. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
- n. Install foam shapes and attach to sheathing **OR** structure, **as directed**.
- o. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
- p. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
- q. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between

- casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.
- r. After installing insulation and before applying reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges with strip reinforcing mesh. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - s. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
    - 1) Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
    - 2) Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
    - 3) At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
  - t. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and EIFS protective-coating lamina.
2. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
- a. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
  - b. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
  - c. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
  - d. Where wall height or building shape changes.
  - e. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.
  - f. Where panels abut one another.
- G. Base-Coat Installation
1. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** dry-coat thickness.
  2. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within **8 inches (204 mm)** of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
    - a. Standard-impact reinforcing mesh unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
    - c. High-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
    - d. Heavy-duty reinforcing mesh where indicated.
  3. Double-Layer Reinforcing Mesh Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat and second layer of standard-impact **OR** intermediate-impact, **as directed**, reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
  4. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond perimeter. Apply additional **9-by-12-inch (230-by-300-mm)** strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply **8-inch- (200-mm-)** wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** on each side of corners.
    - a. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** wide.
    - b. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
  5. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
  6. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

- H. Finish-Coat Installation
1. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
    - a. Texture: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
    - b. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
  3. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.
- I. Installation Of Prefabricated Panels
1. General: Install panels according to Shop Drawings. Install by welding metal framing to structural-steel frame **OR** by welding to steel-weld plates anchored in concrete, **as directed**, to comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Cold-formed Metal Framing" unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Lift panels only as indicated on Shop Drawings.
    - b. Do not warp or stress panels by forcing alignment.
    - c. Adjust connections to align panels and maintain correct and uniform joint widths.
    - d. Install bracing as panels are erected. Weld securely to panel framing and to structure.
  2. Erection Tolerances: Install panels level, plumb, and true to line with no variation in plane or alignment exceeding **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** and no variation in position exceeding **1/8 inch (3.2 mm)**.
    - a. Maintain clearance between panels required for installing joint sealants.
- J. Installation Of Joint Sealants
1. Prepare joints and apply sealants, of type and at locations indicated, to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and in ASTM C 1481.
    - a. Apply joint sealants after base coat has cured but before applying finish coat.
    - b. Clean surfaces to receive sealants to comply with indicated requirements and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
    - c. Apply primer recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for surfaces to be sealed.
    - d. Install sealant backing to control depth and configuration of sealant joint and to prevent sealant from adhering to back of joint.
    - e. Apply masking tape to protect areas adjacent to sealant joints. Remove tape immediately after tooling joints, without disturbing joint seal.
    - f. Recess sealant sufficiently from surface of EIFS so an additional sealant application, including cylindrical sealant backing, can be installed without protruding beyond EIFS surface.
- K. Field Quality Control
1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
    - a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
  2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  3. EIFS Tests and Inspections: For the following:
    - a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC219, **as directed**.
  4. Prefabricated Panels: Test and inspect field welds.
  5. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
  6. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- L. Cleaning And Protection

1. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 07 24 13 00

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID



## SECTION 07 24 13 00a - WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for water drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS). Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section includes water-drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over water-resistant coating over sheathing, weather-resistant sheathing paper over sheathing, weather-resistant sheathing paper over exterior cement board, and exterior cement board over weather-resistant sheathing paper.

#### C. System Description

1. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.
2. Water-Drainage EIFS: EIFS with a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
  - a. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
  - b. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into water-drainage EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish, and including a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.
2. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
  - a. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts (500 L) of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
  - b. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01.
  - c. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples per ICC-ES AC235 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000 hours when viewed under 5 times magnification per ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154 OR ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 155, as directed.
  - d. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01 OR 10 cycles per ICC-ES AC235, as directed.





- e. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch (50.8-by-50.8-mm) clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
- f. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC235.
- g. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per EIMA 101.03 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
- h. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa) of air pressure difference or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per EIMA 101.02.
- i. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days per ASTM D 2247.
- j. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
  - 1) Standard Impact Resistance: 25 to 49 inch-lb (2.8 to 5.6 J).
  - 2) Medium Impact Resistance: 50 to 89 inch-lb (5.7 to 10.1 J).
  - 3) High Impact Resistance: 90 to 150 inch-lb (10.2 to 17 J).
  - 4) Ultra-High Impact Resistance: More than 150 inch-lb (17 J).
- k. Drainage: According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
- l. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC235 when tested per ASTM E 330.

#### E. Submittals

- 1. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
- 2. LEED Submittal:
  - a. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, including printed statement of VOC content.
- 3. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
- 4. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- 5. Material or product certificates.
- 6. Product test reports.
- 7. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: For joint sealants from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:
  - a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- 8. Field quality-control reports and special inspection reports.
- 9. Evaluation reports
- 10. Maintenance data.

#### F. Quality Assurance

- 1. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
- 2. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.

3. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Per ASTM E 119.
  - b. Full-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per IBC Standard.
  - c. Full-Scale Diversified Fire Test: Per ASTM E 108 modified for testing vertical walls.
  - d. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Per FPA 285 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
  - e. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
  - f. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
  - g. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84 **OR** IBC Standard, **as directed**.
4. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
2. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
  - a. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
  - b. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
  - c. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

H. Project Conditions

1. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above **40 deg F (4.4 deg C)** for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Materials

1. Compatibility: Provide water-resistive coating, adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
2. Exterior Cement Board: Not less than **5/16-inch- (8-mm-) OR 7/16-inch- (11-mm-), as directed** thick, fiber cement board complying with ASTM C 1186, Type A, for exterior applications.
  - a. Fasteners: Wafer-head or flat-head steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954, with an organic-polymer coating or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 500 hours per ASTM B 117.
    - 1) Size and Length: As recommended by sheathing manufacturer for type and thickness of sheathing board to be attached.
3. Water-Resistive Coatings: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation and accessories for use as water/weather-resistive barriers, compatible with substrate, and complying with physical and performance criteria of ICC-ES AC209 **OR** ICC-ES AC212, **as directed**.
  - a. Sheathing Joint Tape **OR** Compound and Tape, **as directed**: Type recommended by EIFS manufacturer for sealing joints between and penetrations through sheathing.



- b. VOC Content of Coatings Used as Insulation Adhesive: 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner with VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
5. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, fully self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
6. Drainage Mat: Three-dimensional, nonwoven, entangled filament, nylon or plastic **OR** Woven or fused, self-furring, PVC mesh lath, **as directed**, mat designed to drain incidental moisture by gravity; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
7. Spacers: Closed-cell polyethylene **OR** Woven or fused, self-furring, PVC mesh lath, **as directed** furring strips; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
8. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24); and complying with one of the following:
  - a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, and polymer-based adhesive specified for base coat.
  - b. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
  - c. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation designed for adhesive attachment of insulation to substrates of type indicated, as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
9. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
  - a. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.
  - b. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  - c. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than **24 by 48 inches (610 by 1219 mm)** and in thickness indicated but not more than **4 inches (102 mm)** thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
  - d. Channeled Board Insulation: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-fabricated profile with linear, vertical drainage channels, slots, or waves on the back side of board.
  - e. Board Insulation Closure Blocks: EIFS manufacturer's standard density, size, and configuration.
  - f. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
10. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than **120 lbf/in. (21 dN/cm)** per ASTM E 2098 **OR** EIMA 105.01, **as directed**; complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
  - a. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m).**
  - b. Intermediate-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **10 oz./sq. yd. (339 g/sq. m) OR 12.0 oz./sq. yd. (407 g/sq. m), as directed.**
  - c. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **15 oz./sq. yd. (509 g/sq. m).**
  - d. Heavy-Duty Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **20 oz./sq. yd. (678 g/sq. m).**
  - e. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **3.75 oz./sq. yd. (127 g/sq. m).**
  - f. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **4.0 oz./sq. yd. (136 g/sq. m).**

- g. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than **7.2 oz./sq. yd. (244 g/sq. m)**.
11. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following requirements:
  - a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
  - b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
  - c. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
  - d. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation of polymer-emulsion adhesive and inert fillers that is ready to use without adding other materials.
12. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation with VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with one of the following:
  - a. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
  - b. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
13. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
14. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating **OR** standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance **OR** siliconized acrylic-based coating, **as directed**, complying with the following:
  - a. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
  - b. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, and fillers used with stone particles for embedding in finish coat to produce an applied-aggregate finish.
    - 1) Aggregate: Marble chips of size and as selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  - c. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
  - d. Colors: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
15. Water: Potable.
16. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; selected for properties of pullout, tensile, and shear strength required to resist design loads of application indicated; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and of the following description:
  - a. For attachment to steel studs from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.
  - b. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than **0.0179 inch (0.45 mm)** in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.
  - c. For attachment to wood framing members and plywood sheathing, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002, Type W.
  - d. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
  - e. For attachment, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners suitable for substrate.
17. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.

- a. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
- b. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
- c. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
- d. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
- e. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
- f. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.

#### B. Elastomeric Sealants

1. Elastomeric Sealant Products: Provide EIFS manufacturer's listed and recommended chemically curing, elastomeric sealant that is compatible with joint fillers, joint substrates, and other related materials, and complies with requirements for products and testing indicated in ASTM C 1481 and with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for products corresponding to description indicated below:
  - a. Multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant.
  - b. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone sealant.
  - c. Provide sealants, for use inside the weatherproofing system, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Preformed Foam Sealant Products: Provide sealant compatible with adjacent materials and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
3. Sealant Color: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

#### C. Mixing

1. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

#### A. Preparation

1. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
2. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind drainage plane of EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
3. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

#### B. Exterior Cement-Board Installation

1. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with cement-board manufacturer's written instructions and evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Install



board with steel drill screws spaced no more than **8 inches (203 mm)** o.c. along framing with perimeter fasteners at least **3/8 inch (9.6 mm)** but less than **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)** from edges of boards.

C. EIFS Installation, General

1. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

D. Substrate Protection Application

1. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
2. Water-Resistive Coatings: Apply over substrates to protect substrates from degradation and to provide water-/weather-resistive barrier.
  - a. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: Apply over sloped surfaces **OR** window sills **OR** parapets **OR** where indicated on Drawings, **as directed**, to protect substrates from degradation.
4. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to protect wall assembly from degradation. Prime substrates, if required, and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

E. Trim Installation

1. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at window sills, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
  - a. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at window and door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Window Sill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.
  - e. Parapet Cap Flashing: Use where indicated on Drawings.

F. Drainage Mat Installation

1. Drainage Mat: Apply wrinkle free, continuously, with edges butted **OR** overlapped, **as directed**, and adhesively secured **OR** mechanically secured with fasteners, **as directed**, over water-/weather-resistive barrier according to manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Insulation Installation

1. Board Insulation: Adhesively **OR** Mechanically **OR** Adhesively and mechanically, **as directed**, attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:
  - a. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)** for factory mixed and not less than **3/8 inch (9.6 mm)** for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
  - b. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of drainage mat with adhesive once insulation is adhered to drainage mat.
  - c. Apply adhesive to ridges on back of insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in full adhesive contact over the entire surface of ridges, leaving channels free of adhesive once insulation is adhered to substrate.

- d. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
- e. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
- f. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate by method complying with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
  - 1) Steel Framing: **5/16 inch (8 mm)**.
  - 2) Wood Framing: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
  - 3) Concrete and Masonry: **1 inch (25 mm)**.
- g. Apply insulation over drainage mat and dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
- h. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
- i. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
- j. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than **12 inches (300 mm)** wide or **6 inches (150 mm)** high. Offset joints not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from corners of window and door openings and not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** from aesthetic reveals.
  - 1) Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** from horizontal and **4 inches (100 mm)** from vertical joints in sheathing.
  - 2) Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
- k. Place insulation with adhesive strips and channels, slots, or waves aligned in the vertical position for drainage. Align drainage channels, slots, or waves with channels, slots, or waves in insulation boards above and below.
- l. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
- m. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
- n. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
- o. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than **1/32 inch (0.8 mm) OR 1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**, **as directed**, from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)**.
- p. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**.
- q. Install foam shapes and attach to sheathing **OR** structure, **as directed**.
- r. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
- s. Install insulation closure blocks using ribbon-and-dab method to create air zones where indicated.
- t. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
- u. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.

- v. After installing insulation and before applying field-applied reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- w. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
  - 1) Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
  - 2) Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
  - 3) At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
- x. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and water-/weather-resistive barrier.
- 2. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
  - a. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
  - b. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
  - c. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
  - d. Where wall height or building shape changes.
  - e. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.
- H. Base-Coat Installation
  - 1. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** dry-coat thickness.
  - 2. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within **8 inches (204 mm)** of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
    - a. Standard-impact reinforcing mesh unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
    - c. High-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
    - d. Heavy-duty reinforcing mesh where indicated.
  - 3. Double-Layer Reinforcing Mesh Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat and second layer of standard-impact **OR** intermediate-impact, **as directed**, reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than **2-1/2 inches (64 mm)** or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
  - 4. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond perimeter. Apply additional **9-by-12-inch (230-by-300-mm)** strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply **8-inch- (200-mm-)** wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than **4 inches (100 mm)** on each side of corners.
    - a. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than **8 inches (200 mm)** wide.
    - b. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
  - 5. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
  - 6. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
- I. Finish-Coat Installation
  - 1. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.



2. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
  - a. Texture: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  - b. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
3. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

J. Installation Of Joint Sealants

1. Prepare joints and apply sealants, of type and at locations indicated, to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and in ASTM C 1481.
  - a. Apply joint sealants after base coat has cured but before applying finish coat.
  - b. Clean surfaces to receive sealants to comply with indicated requirements and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
  - c. Apply primer recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for surfaces to be sealed.
  - d. Install sealant backing to control depth and configuration of sealant joint and to prevent sealant from adhering to back of joint.
  - e. Apply masking tape to protect areas adjacent to sealant joints. Remove tape immediately after tooling joints, without disturbing joint seal.
  - f. Recess sealant sufficiently from surface of EIFS so an additional sealant application, including cylindrical sealant backing, can be installed without protruding beyond EIFS surface.

K. Field Quality Control

1. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
2. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
3. EIFS Tests and Inspections: For the following:
  - a. According to ICC-ES AC24 **OR** ICC-ES AC235, **as directed**.
4. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
5. Prepare test and inspection reports.

L. Cleaning And Protection

1. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 07 24 13 00a



---

Task	Specification	Specification Description
07 26 13 00	06 10 00 00	Rough Carpentry

---

NOT FOR BID

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 31 13 13 - ASPHALT SHINGLES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for asphalt shingles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Asphalt shingles.
  - b. Underlayment.

#### C. Definition

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

#### D. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and blend specified.
3. Product test reports.
4. Research/evaluation reports.
5. Maintenance data.
6. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### E. Quality Assurance

1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide asphalt shingles and related roofing materials identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per test method below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: Class A **OR** Class C, **as directed**; ASTM E 108 or UL 790, for application and roof slopes indicated.
2. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### F. Delivery, Storage, And Handling

1. Store roofing materials in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight location according to asphalt shingle manufacturer's written instructions. Store underlayment rolls on end on pallets or other raised surfaces. Do not double stack rolls.
  - a. Handle, store, and place roofing materials in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to roof deck or structural supporting members.
2. Protect unused underlayment from weather, sunlight, and moisture when left overnight or when roofing work is not in progress.

#### G. Warranty

1. Special Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace asphalt shingles that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - a. Material Warranty Period: 25 **OR** 30 **OR** 35 **OR** 40, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion, prorated, with first three **OR** five **OR** 12, **as directed**, years nonprorated.
  - b. Wind-Speed Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will resist blow-off or damage caused by wind speeds up to 60 mph (27 m/s) **OR** 75 mph (33 m/s) **OR** 80 mph (36 m/s) **OR** 100 mph (45 m/s), **as directed**, for five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.



- c. Algae-Discoloration Warranty Period: Asphalt shingles will not discolor five **OR** 10, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
- d. Workmanship Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 12, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Asphalt Shingles

1. Laminated-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.
  - a. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Notched **OR** Crenelated, **as directed**, cut.
  - b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
2. Laminated-Strip, SBS-Modified Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with UL 2218, Class IV.
  - a. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Notched **OR** Crenelated, **as directed**, cut.
  - b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
3. Multitab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing.
  - a. Tab Arrangement: Three tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Four tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Five tabs, randomly spaced, **as directed**.
  - b. Cutout Shape: Square **OR** Tapered, **as directed**.
  - c. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Stagger, **as directed**, cut.
  - d. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - e. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - f. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
4. Three-Tab-Strip, SBS-Modified Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with UL 2218, Class IV.
  - a. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - b. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - c. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
5. No-Cutout-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 3462, glass-fiber reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, self-sealing, square, and single tab.
  - a. Butt Edge: Stagger **OR** Straight, **as directed**, cut.
  - b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
6. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles **OR** Site-fabricated units cut from asphalt shingle strips. Trim each side of lapped portion of unit to taper approximately **1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**.

### B. Organic-Felt-Reinforced Asphalt Shingles

1. Laminated-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 225, laminated, multi-ply overlay construction, organic-felt reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with requirements in ASTM D 3161 for wind resistance.
  - a. Butt Edge: Straight **OR** Notched **OR** Crenelated, **as directed**, cut.
  - b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
  - c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
  - d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.

2. Multitab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 225, organic-felt reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, and self-sealing; complying with requirements in ASTM D 3161 for wind resistance.
    - a. Tab Arrangement: Three tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Four tabs, regularly spaced **OR** Six tabs, regularly spaced, scalloped edge, **as directed**.
    - b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
    - c. Algae Resistance: Granules treated to resist algae discoloration.
    - d. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  3. No-Cutout-Strip Asphalt Shingles: ASTM D 225, organic-felt reinforced, mineral-granule surfaced, self-sealing, square, and single tab; complying with requirements in ASTM D 3161 for wind resistance.
    - a. Butt Edge: Stagger **OR** Straight, **as directed**, cut.
    - b. Strip Size: Manufacturer's standard.
    - c. Color and Blends: As selected by the Owner from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Hip and Ridge Shingles: Manufacturer's standard units to match asphalt shingles **OR** Site-fabricated units cut from asphalt shingle strips. Trim each side of lapped portion of unit to taper approximately **1 inch (25 mm)**, **as directed**.
- C. Underlayment Materials
1. Felt: ASTM D 226 **OR** ASTM D 4869, **as directed**, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felts, nonperforated.
  2. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Granular Surfaced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of **55-mil- (1.4-mm-)** thick sheet; glass-fiber-mat-reinforced, SBS-modified asphalt; mineral-granule surfaced; with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
  3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, minimum of **40-mil- (1.0-mm-)** thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
  4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, High Temperature: Minimum of **30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-)** thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
    - a. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at **240 deg F (116 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus **20 deg F (29 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
  5. Granular-Surfaced Valley Lining: ASTM D 6380, Class M, organic-felt-based **OR** ASTM D 3909, mineral-granular-surfaced, glass-felt-based, **as directed**, asphalt roll roofing; **36 inches (914 mm)** wide.
- D. Ridge Vents
1. Rigid Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard, rigid section high-density polypropylene or other UV-stabilized plastic ridge vent with nonwoven geotextile filter strips and external deflector baffles; for use under ridge shingles.
  2. Flexible Ridge Vent: Manufacturer's standard, compression-resisting, three-dimensional, open-nylon or polyester-mat filter bonded to a nonwoven, nonwicking, geotextile fabric cover.
- E. Accessories
1. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.
  2. Roofing Nails: ASTM F 1667; aluminum, stainless-steel, copper, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire shingle nails, minimum **0.120-inch- (3-mm-)** diameter, barbed **OR** smooth, **as directed**, shank, sharp-pointed, with a minimum **3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-)** diameter flat head and of sufficient length to penetrate **3/4 inch (19 mm)** into solid wood decking or extend at least **1/8 inch (3 mm)** through OSB or plywood sheathing.
    - a. Where nails are in contact with metal flashing, use nails made from same metal as flashing.



3. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, **1-inch (25-mm)** minimum diameter.

F. Metal Flashing And Trim

1. General: Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
  - a. Sheet Metal: Copper **OR** Stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated steel **OR** Zinc-tin alloy-coated copper **OR** Anodized aluminum **OR** Aluminum, mill finished, **as directed**.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item.
  - a. Apron Flashings: Fabricate with lower flange a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm)**, **as directed**, over and **4 inches (100 mm)** beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and **6 inches (150 mm)** up the vertical surface.
  - b. Step Flashings: Fabricate with a headlap of **2 inches (50 mm)** and a minimum extension of **4 inches (100 mm) OR 5 inches (125 mm)**, **as directed**, over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface.
  - c. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Fabricate with concealed flange extending a minimum of **18 inches (450 mm) OR 24 inches (600 mm)**, **as directed**, beneath upslope asphalt shingles and **6 inches (150 mm)** beyond each side of chimney **OR** skylight, **as directed**, and **6 inches (150 mm)** above the roof plane.
  - d. Open-Valley Flashings: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding **10 feet (3 m)** with **1-inch- (25-mm-)** high, inverted-V profile at center of valley and equal flange widths of **10 inches (250 mm) OR 12 inches (300 mm)**, **as directed**.
  - e. Drip Edges: Fabricate in lengths not exceeding **10 feet (3 m)** with **2-inch (50-mm)** roof-deck flange and **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** fascia flange with **3/8-inch (9.6-mm)** drip at lower edge.
3. Vent Pipe Flashings: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, at least **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** thick. Provide lead sleeve sized to slip over and turn down into pipe, soldered to skirt at slope of roof, and extending at least **4 inches (100 mm)** from pipe onto roof.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Underlayment Installation

1. General: Comply with underlayment manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
  - a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than **3 inches (75 mm)** in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
  - b. Install fasteners at no more than **36 inch (900 mm)** o.c. where the basic wind speed is equal to or greater than 110 mph (176 km/h).
3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a **19-inch- (485-mm-)** wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses **19 inches (485 mm)** in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of **6 inches (150 mm)**. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Fasten with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.



- a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
- b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than **3 inches (75 mm)** in direction to shed water.
- c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
- d. Install fasteners at no more than **36 inch (900 mm)** o.c. where the basic wind speed is equal to or greater than **110 mph (176 km/h)**.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install, wrinkle free, on roof deck. Comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)**. Lap ends not less than **6 inches (150 mm)** staggered **24 inches (600 mm)** between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
  - a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
  - b. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves **24 inches (600 mm)** **OR** **36 inches (914 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
  - c. Rakes: Extend from edges of rake **24 inches (600 mm)** **OR** **36 inches (914 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
  - d. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point **18 inches (450 mm)** on each side.
  - e. Hips: Extend **18 inches (450 mm)** on each side.
  - f. Ridges: Extend **36 inches (914 mm)** on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot.
  - g. Sidewalls: Extend beyond sidewall **18 inches (450 mm)**, and return vertically against sidewall not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**.
  - h. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend beyond penetrating element **18 inches (450 mm)**, and return vertically against penetrating element not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**.
  - i. Roof Slope Transitions: Extend **18 inches (450 mm)** on each roof slope.
5. Concealed, Woven **OR** Closed-Cut, **as directed**, Valley Lining: Comply with NRCA's recommendations. Install a **36-inch- (914-mm-)** wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
  - a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over valley felt underlayment at least **6 inches (150 mm)**.
  - b. Install a **36-inch- (914-mm-)** wide strip of granular-surfaced valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face up. Lap ends of strips at least **12 inches (300 mm)** in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten to roof deck with roofing nails.
6. Metal-Flushed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install two layers of **36-inch- (914-mm-)** wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Stagger end laps between layers at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Lap ends of each layer at least **12 inches (300 mm)** in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Fasten each layer to roof deck with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
  - a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over first layer of valley felt underlayment at least **6 inches (150 mm)**.
7. Granular-Surfaced, Open-Valley Lining: Comply with NRCA's recommendations. Install a **36-inch- (914-mm-)** wide felt underlayment centered in valley. Fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment **OR** roofing, **as directed**, nails.
  - a. Lap roof-deck felt underlayment over valley felt underlayment at least **6 inches (150 mm)**.
  - b. Install an **18-inch- (450-mm-)** wide strip of valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face down. Install a second **36-inch- (914-mm-)** wide strip of valley lining centered in valley, with granular-surface face up. Lap ends of each strip at least **12 inches (300 mm)** in direction to shed water, and seal with asphalt roofing cement. Stagger end laps between succeeding strips at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Fasten each strip to roof deck with roofing nails.





## B. Metal Flashing Installation

1. General: Install metal flashings and other sheet metal to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing And Trim".
  - a. Install metal flashings according to recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual" and asphalt shingle recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Apron Flashings: Extend lower flange over and beyond each side of downslope asphalt shingles and up the vertical surface.
3. Step Flashings: Install with a headlap of **2 inches (50 mm)** and extend over the underlying asphalt shingle and up the vertical surface. Fasten to roof deck only.
4. Cricket **OR** Backer, **as directed**, Flashings: Install against the roof-penetrating element extending concealed flange beneath upslope asphalt shingles and beyond each side.
5. Open-Valley Flashings: Install centered in valleys, lapping ends at least **8 inches (200 mm)** in direction to shed water. Fasten upper end of each length to roof deck beneath overlap.
  - a. Secure hemmed flange edges into metal cleats spaced **12 inches (300 mm)** apart and fastened to roof deck.
  - b. Adhere **9-inch- (225-mm-)** wide strip of self-adhering sheet to metal flanges and to self-adhering sheet underlayment.
6. Rake Drip Edges: Install rake drip edge flashings over underlayment and fasten to roof deck.
7. Eave Drip Edges: Install eave drip edge flashings below underlayment and fasten to roof sheathing.
8. Pipe Flashings: Form flashing around pipe penetrations and asphalt shingles. Fasten and seal to asphalt shingles as recommended by manufacturer.

## C. Asphalt Shingle Installation

1. General: Install asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions, recommendations in ARMA's "Residential Asphalt Roofing Manual," and asphalt shingle recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual."
2. Install starter strip along lowest roof edge, consisting of an asphalt shingle strip with tabs removed **OR** at least **7 inches (175 mm)** wide, **as directed**, with self-sealing strip face up at roof edge.
  - a. Extend asphalt shingles **1/2 inch (13 mm) OR 3/4 inch (19 mm)**, **as directed**, over fasciae at eaves and rakes.
  - b. Install starter strip along rake edge.
3. For Three-Tab And Other Multitab-Strip Asphalt Shingles: Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with **4-inch (100-mm) OR 5-inch (125-mm) OR 6-inch (150-mm) OR 1/2-tab OR 1/3-tab OR** manufacturer's recommended, **as directed**, offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
4. For Laminated-Strip And No-Cutout-Strip Asphalt Shingles: Install first and remaining courses of asphalt shingles stair-stepping diagonally across roof deck with manufacturer's recommended offset pattern at succeeding courses, maintaining uniform exposure.
5. Install asphalt shingles by single-strip column or racking method, maintaining uniform exposure. Install full-length first course followed by cut second course, repeating alternating pattern in succeeding courses.
6. Fasten asphalt shingle strips with a minimum of four **OR** five **OR** six, **as directed**, roofing nails located according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Where roof slope exceeds 20:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots after fastening with additional roofing nails.
  - b. Where roof slope is less than 4:12, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
  - c. When ambient temperature during installation is below **50 deg F (10 deg C)**, seal asphalt shingles with asphalt roofing cement spots.
7. Woven Valleys: Extend succeeding asphalt shingle courses from both sides of valley **12 inches (300 mm)** beyond center of valley, weaving intersecting shingle-strip courses over each other. Use one-piece shingle strips without joints in valley.

- a. Do not nail asphalt shingles within **6 inches (150 mm)** of valley center.
8. Closed-Cut Valleys: Extend asphalt shingle strips from one side of valley **12 inches (300 mm)** beyond center of valley. Use one-piece shingle strips without joints in valley. Fasten with extra nail in upper end of shingle. Install asphalt shingle courses from other side of valley and cut back to a straight line **2 inches (50 mm)** short of valley centerline. Trim upper concealed corners of cut-back shingle strips.
  - a. Do not nail asphalt shingles within **6 inches (150 mm)** of valley center.
  - b. Set trimmed, concealed-corner asphalt shingles in a **3-inch- (75-mm-)** wide bed of asphalt roofing cement.
9. Open Valleys: Cut and fit asphalt shingles at open valleys, trimming upper concealed corners of shingle strips. Maintain uniform width of exposed open valley **OR** Widen exposed portion of open valley **1/8 inch in 12 inches (1:96), as directed**, from highest to lowest point.
  - a. Set valley edge of asphalt shingles in a **3-inch- (75-mm-)** wide bed of asphalt roofing cement.
  - b. Do not nail asphalt shingles to metal open-valley flashings.
10. Ridge Vents: Install continuous ridge vents over asphalt shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
11. Ridge and Hip Cap Shingles: Maintain same exposure of cap shingles as roofing shingle exposure. Lap cap shingles at ridges to shed water away from direction of prevailing winds. Fasten with roofing nails of sufficient length to penetrate sheathing.
  - a. Fasten ridge cap asphalt shingles to cover ridge vent without obstructing airflow.

END OF SECTION 07 31 13 13

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**

NOT FOR BID

## SECTION 07 31 16 00 - METAL SHINGLES

### 1.1 GENERAL

#### A. Description Of Work:

1. This specification covers the furnishing and installation of materials for metal shingles. Products shall be as follows or as directed by the Owner. Installation procedures shall be in accordance with the product manufacturer's recommendations. Demolition and removal of materials shall be as required to support the work.

#### B. Summary

1. Section Includes:
  - a. Metal-shingle panels.
  - b. Individual metal shingles.
  - c. Underlayment.
  - d. Ridge vents.
  - e. Snow guards.

#### C. Definitions

1. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

#### D. Performance Requirements

1. General Performance: Metal shingles shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
2. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal-shingle assemblies that comply with the following wind-uplift requirements.
  - a. Class: 15 **OR** 30 **OR** 60 **OR** 90, as directed, when tested according to UL 580.
  - b. Uplift Resistance: 75 lbf/sq. ft. (3.6 kPa) **OR** 120 lbf/sq. ft. (5.75 kPa) **OR** 165 lbf/sq. ft. (7.9 kPa), as directed, when tested according to UL 1897.
3. Impact Resistance: Class 3 **OR** Class 4, as directed, when tested according to UL 2218.
4. Energy Performance, Solar Reflectance (for LEED-NC Credit SS 7.2): Provide shingles with Solar Reflectance Index not less than 29 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
5. Energy Performance, ENERGY STAR: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for steep-slope roof products.
6. Recycled Content: Provide metal shingles with recycled content so that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content constitutes a minimum of 50 percent by weight.

#### E. Submittals

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
2. LEED Submittals:
  - a. Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For metal shingles, documentation indicating compliance with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
  - b. Product Data for Credit(s) MR 4.1 and MR 4.2, as directed: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.



3. Shop Drawings: For metal shingles. Show roof plans and wall elevations, **as directed**; sections at hips, gables, ridges, valleys, and eaves; details of metal shingles, flashing, trim, and accessories; and attachments to other work.
  4. Samples: Full-size components of each type of metal shingle indicated, including visible accessories.
  5. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency or performed by a qualified testing agency, for metal shingles, demonstrating compliance with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  6. Warranty: Sample of special warranties.
- F. Quality Assurance
1. Source Limitations: Obtain metal shingles from single source from single manufacturer.
  2. Fire-Test Exposure Rating: Class A **OR** Class B **OR** Class C, **as directed**, for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method UL 790 or ASTM E 108 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- G. Delivery, Storage, And Handling
1. Do not store metal-shingle materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store metal-shingle materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  2. Protect strippable protective covering on metal shingles from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of metal-shingle installation.
- H. Project Conditions
1. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
    - a. Install self-adhering sheet underlayment within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by manufacturer.
- I. Warranty
1. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal shingles and accessories that fail in materials within specified warranty period.
    - a. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Structural failures including wind uplift.
      - 2) Water penetration and hail perforation.
      - 3) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Materials-Only Warranty Period: 15 **OR** 25 **OR** 50, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
  2. Special Project Warranty: Roofing Installer's Warranty, signed by roofing Installer, covering Work of this Section, in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within the following warranty period:
    - a. Warranty Period: Two **OR** Five, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.
  3. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal shingles that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
    - a. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
      - 2) Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
      - 3) Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
    - b. Warranty Period: 10 **OR** 20, **as directed**, years from date of Final Completion.

## 1.2 PRODUCTS

### A. Sheet Metal Materials

1. Aluminum Sheet: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
  - a. Mill Finish: Uncoated aluminum sheet.
  - b. High-Performance Organic Coating (Coil-Coated Finishes): Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - 1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
    - 2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
    - 3) Concealed Surface: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat and with a minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil (0.013 mm)**.
2. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: **ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 37 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 255)**; structural quality.
  - a. Mill Finish: Satin-finish, aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet without additional coating.
  - b. Granular-Coating Finish: Entire upper surface of shingle, including flange edges, coated with ceramic-colored quartz granules or crushed stone chips bonded to shingle with a resin adhesive and sealed with a clear overglaze.
3. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: **ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275)** coating designation; structural quality.
  - a. Mill Finish: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet without additional coating **OR** with manufacturer's standard mill-phosphatized finish, **as directed**.
  - b. High-Performance Organic Coating, (Coil-Coated Finishes): Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - 1) Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
    - 2) Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
4. Copper Sheet: **ASTM B 370**; Temper H00, cold rolled, unless Temper 060 is required for forming.
  - a. Mill Finish: Nonpatinated and exposed.
  - b. Pre-Patinated Finish: Dark brown **OR** Verdigris, **as directed**, pre-patinated according to ASTM B 882.
5. Zinc-Alloy Sheet: Alloy of 99.995 percent pure electrolytic high-grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08 to 0.20 percent), titanium (0.07 to 0.12 percent), and aluminum (0.015 percent) **OR** Zinc alloy consisting of 99 percent pure zinc with 0.08 to 1.00 percent copper, 0.06 to 0.20 percent titanium, and up to 0.015 percent aluminum, **as directed**; with manufacturer's standard factory-applied, flexible, protective back coating.
  - a. Bright-Rolled Finish: Uncoated, bright-rolled zinc-alloy sheet.
  - b. Preweathered Finish: Factory-applied preweathering to uniform color.

### B. Metal Shingles

1. Aluminum Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels **OR** individual shingles, **as directed**.
  - a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes **OR** shingles **OR** Spanish tiles **OR** flat tiles **OR** scalloped tiles, **as directed**.



- 1) Material: Formed aluminum, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick OR 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick OR thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
- 2) Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard insert material in units to increase rigidity.
- 3) Exposure: 48 by 12 inches (1219 by 305 mm).
- 4) Finish: Mill OR High-performance organic coating.
- 5) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations OR As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
- b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular OR Diamond, **as directed**, shingle units.
  - 1) Material: Formed aluminum, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick OR 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick OR thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - 2) Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard insert material in units to increase rigidity.
  - 3) Exposure: 14 by 14 inches (356 by 356 mm).
  - 4) Finish: Mill OR High-performance organic coating, **as directed**.
  - 5) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations OR As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
2. Steel Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels OR individual shingles, **as directed**.
  - a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes OR shingles OR Spanish tiles OR flat tiles OR scalloped tiles, **as directed**.
    - 1) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated OR Zinc-coated (galvanized), **as directed**, steel sheet, nominal 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick OR 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick OR thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Exposure: 47-1/4 by 15-13/16 inches (1200 by 402 mm).
    - 3) Finish: Mill OR Granular coating OR High-performance organic coating, **as directed**.
    - 4) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations OR As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
  - b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular shingle units.
    - 1) Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy coated OR Zinc-coated (galvanized), **as directed**, steel sheet, nominal 0.022 inch (0.56 mm) thick OR 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick OR thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Exposure: 9 by 12 inches (229 by 305 mm).
    - 3) Finish: Mill OR Granular coating OR High-performance organic coating, **as directed**.
    - 4) Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations OR As selected from manufacturer's full range, **as directed**.
3. Copper Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels OR individual shingles, **as directed**.
  - a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes OR shingles, **as directed**.
    - 1) Material: Copper sheet, 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick) OR 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm thick) OR weight (thickness) as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Exposure: 33-1/4 by 10 inches (845 by 254 mm).
    - 3) Finish: Mill OR Pre-patinated dark brown OR Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.
  - b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular OR Diamond, **as directed**, shingle units.
    - 1) Material: Copper sheet, 12 oz./sq. ft. (0.41 mm thick) OR 16 oz./sq. ft. (0.55 mm-thick) OR weight (thickness) as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Exposure: 9-1/2 by 7-1/4 inches (241 by 184 mm).
    - 3) Finish: Mill OR Pre-patinated dark brown OR Pre-patinated verdigris, **as directed**.
4. Zinc Shingles: Factory-formed, interlocking shingle panels OR individual shingles, **as directed**.
  - a. Shingle Panels: Stamped panels resembling multiple shakes OR shingles, **as directed**.
    - 1) Material: Zinc-alloy sheet, 0.027 inch (0.70 mm) thick OR thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
    - 2) Exposure: 47-1/4 by 15-13/16 inches (1200 by 402 mm), **as directed**.
    - 3) Finish: Bright rolled OR Preweathered gray OR Preweathered black, **as directed**.



- b. Individual Shingles: Rectangular **OR** Diamond, **as directed**, shingle units.
  - 1) Material: Zinc-alloy sheet, **0.027 inch (0.70 mm)** thick **OR** thickness as needed to meet performance requirements, **as directed**.
  - 2) Exposure: **14 by 14 inches (356 by 356 mm)**.
  - 3) Finish: Bright rolled **OR** Preweathered gray **OR** Preweathered black, **as directed**.
- C. Underlayment
  1. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226 or ASTM D 4869, Type I **OR** Type II, **as directed**, asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
  2. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, Polyethylene Faced: ASTM D 1970, a minimum of **40-mil- (1.0-mm-)** thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment.
  3. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment, High Temperature: A minimum of **30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-)** thick, slip-resisting, polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer for adjoining concrete or masonry surfaces to receive underlayment and when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
    - a. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at **240 deg F (116 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
    - b. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus **20 deg F (29 deg C)**; ASTM D 1970.
  4. Slip Sheet: Building paper, **3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m)** minimum, rosin sized.
- D. Accessories
  1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other accessory items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by metal-shingle manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Metal-shingle manufacturer's flashing and trim components matching shingle material, color, and finish unless otherwise indicated or recommended in writing by metal-shingle manufacturer. Fabricate to sizes and configurations shown or required. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of the item in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  3. Ridge Vents: Metal-shingle manufacturer's continuous vented ridge caps matching material and finish of metal shingles with insect screen or insect-resisting geotextile filter strips and with external deflector baffles; for use with specified metal shingles.
    - a. Minimum Net Free Area: As required to satisfy Project requirements.
    - b. Accessories: Splices, end caps, and other accessories matching metal and finish.
  4. Snow Guards: Stop-type **OR** Bar-type, **as directed**, prefabricated aluminum **OR** copper **OR** cast-bronze **OR** zinc **OR** stainless-steel, **as directed**, units, designed to be installed without penetrating metal shingles.
    - a. Attachment: Designed to be attached to surface of metal shingles using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape **OR** mechanically anchored through predrilled holes concealed by the metal shingles, **as directed**.
    - b. Finish: Matching the metal shingles.
  5. Wood Battens: Pressure-preservative-treated wood complying with requirements in Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" **OR** "Miscellaneous Carpentry", **as directed**.
    - a. Contoured Rigid Foam: Manufacturers standard rigid foam formed to match underside contour of metal shingles.
  6. Metal Battens: Hat channels formed from zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet; ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, not less than **0.025-inch (0.64-mm)** nominal thickness, and complying with requirements in Division 5 Section Cold-Formed Metal Framing."
  7. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
  8. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, Type II, asbestos free.



9. Sealant: ASTM C 920, one-part elastomeric polymer joint sealant as recommended by metal-shingle manufacturer for installation indicated; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal shingles and remain watertight. Where sealant will be exposed, provide in color matching shingle.
10. Sheet Metal Fasteners: Noncorrosive screws, nails, and anchors designed to withstand design loads as recommended in writing by metal-shingle manufacturer.
  - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of metal shingles using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed neoprene or EPDM washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of shingles.
  - b. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
  - c. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
  - d. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - e. Fasteners for Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated **OR** Zinc-Coated, **as directed**, Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - f. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - g. Fasteners for Zinc Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
11. Felt Underlayment Nails: Aluminum, stainless-steel, or hot-dip galvanized-steel wire with low-profile capped heads or disc caps, **1-inch (25-mm)** minimum diameter.
  - a. Where nails are in contact with metal shingles or flashing, use nails made from same metal as metal shingles.
12. Wood Batten Nails: ASTM F 1667; common or box, steel wire, flat head, and smooth shank; hot-dip galvanized.

E. General Finish Requirements

1. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
2. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### 1.3 EXECUTION

A. Examination

1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - a. Examine roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing and blocking, that tops of fasteners are flush with surface, and that installation is within flatness tolerances.
  - b. Verify that substrate is sound, dry to the maximum moisture content recommended by metal-shingle manufacturer, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored and that provision has been made for flashings and penetrations through metal shingles.
  - c. Verify that vent stacks and other penetrations through metal shingles have been installed and are securely fastened.
2. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Underlayment Installation

1. General: Comply with metal-shingle and underlayment manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
2. Single-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Lap sides a minimum of **2 inches (50 mm)** over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)**. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
  - a. Install felt underlayment on roof deck not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap sides of felt over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than **3 inches (75 mm)** in direction to shed water. Lap ends of felt not less than **6 inches (152 mm)** over self-adhering sheet underlayment.
3. Double-Layer Felt Underlayment: Install on roof deck parallel with and starting at the eaves. Install a **19-inch- (485-mm-)** wide starter course at eaves and completely cover with full-width second course. Install succeeding courses lapping previous courses **19 inches (485 mm)** in shingle fashion. Lap ends a minimum of **6 inches (152 mm)**. Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least **72 inches (1830 mm)**. Fasten with felt underlayment nails.
  - a. Apply a continuous layer of asphalt roofing cement over starter course and on felt underlayment surface to be concealed by succeeding courses as each felt course is installed. Apply over entire roof **OR** at locations indicated on Drawings, **as directed**.
  - b. Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges over self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than **3 inches (75 mm)** in direction to shed water.
  - c. Terminate felt underlayment flush **OR** extended up not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**, **as directed**, against sidewalls, curbs, chimneys, and other roof projections.
4. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free; comply with low-temperature installation restrictions of underlayment manufacturer if applicable. Install at locations indicated below **OR** on Drawings, **as directed**, lapped in direction to shed water. Lap sides not less than **3-1/2 inches (89 mm)**. Lap ends not less than **6 inches (152 mm)**, staggered **24 inches (610 mm)** between courses. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within seven days.
  - a. Prime concrete and masonry surfaces to receive self-adhering sheet underlayment.
  - b. Eaves: Extend from edges of eaves **24 inches (610 mm) OR 36 inches (914 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
  - c. Rakes: Extend from edges of rakes **24 inches (610 mm) OR 36 inches (914 mm)**, **as directed**, beyond interior face of exterior wall.
  - d. Valleys: Extend from lowest to highest point **18 inches (455 mm)** on each side.
  - e. Hips: Extend **18 inches (455 mm)** on each side.
  - f. Ridges: Extend **36 inches (914 mm)** on each side without obstructing continuous ridge vent slot.
  - g. Sidewalls: Extend **18 inches (455 mm)** beyond sidewalls and return vertically against sidewalls not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**.
  - h. Dormers, Chimneys, Skylights, and Other Roof-Penetrating Elements: Extend **18 inches (455 mm)** beyond penetrating elements and return vertically against penetrating elements not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**.
  - i. Roof-Slope Transitions: Extend **18 inches (455 mm)** on each roof slope.
5. Metal-Flushed, Open-Valley Underlayment: Install one layer of **36-inch- (914-mm-)** wide felt underlayment or self-adhering sheet underlayment centered in valley and running the full length of valley in addition to the underlayment required for metal shingles. Stagger end laps between layers and lap ends of each layer at least **12 inches (305 mm)** in direction to shed water.
  - a. Solidly cement valley felt underlayment with asphalt roofing cement to the underlayment required for metal shingles.
6. Apply slip sheet with adhesive or tape before installing metal flashing and shingles.

C. Metal-Shingle Installation

1. General: Install metal shingles according to manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated; install level, plumb, and true to line.



2. Felt Interlayment: Install **18-inch- (455-mm-)** wide strip of felt underlayment over top portion of first and each succeeding course. Stagger fasten to roof deck with felt underlayment nails.
3. Maintain uniform exposure and coursing of metal shingles throughout roof.
4. Apply sealant between shingles, flashing, trim, and exposed fasteners to achieve a weathertight system.
5. Interlock and overlap shingles and stagger end joints from **OR** align joints of tile-form, **as directed**, shingle courses above and below.
6. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer of metal shingles or of the metals in contact.
  - a. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

#### D. Accessory Installation

1. General: Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
2. Metal Flashings and Trim: Install metal flashings and trim according to recommendations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
3. Ridge Vents: Install ridge vents with end closures at locations indicated.
4. Stop-Type Snow Guards: Install rows of snow guards at locations indicated. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter. Space snow guards apart in each row, offsetting by half this dimension between succeeding rows.
5. Bar-Type Snow Guards: Install rows of snow guards at locations indicated. Space rows apart horizontally, beginning from gutter.
6. Battens: Install battens according to metal-shingle manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to meet performance requirements.
  - a. Wood Battens: Install **nominal 2-by-2-inch (38-by-38-mm)** wood battens horizontally over installed underlayment with ends separated by **1/2 inch (13 mm)**, at spacing required by metal-shingle manufacturer, and securely fasten to roof deck with wood batten nails.
  - b. Metal Battens: Install **1-1/2-inch (38-mm)** metal battens horizontally over installed underlayment with ends separated by **1/2 inch (13 mm)**, at spacing required by metal-shingle manufacturer, and securely fasten to roof deck with sheet metal fasteners.
  - c. Intermediate Battens: Install **nominal 1-inch- (19-mm-)** thick wood battens with double strip of contoured rigid foam horizontally with ends separated by **1/2 inch (13 mm)**, at spacing required by metal-shingle manufacturer to uniformly support underside of metal shingles between main battens, and securely fasten to roof deck with wood batten nails.
7. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer of metal shingles or of the metals in contact.

#### E. Erection Tolerances

1. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal shingles within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)** on slope and location lines as indicated and within **1/8-inch (3-mm)** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.  
**OR**  
 Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal shingles within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

#### F. Adjusting And Cleaning

1. Remove and replace damaged or deformed metal shingles or metal shingles that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace shingles with damaged or deteriorated finishes and other components of the Work that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.